THIRD EDITION

NEUROLOGIC INTERVENTIONS

FOR PHYSICAL THERAPY

MARTIN
KESSLER

ELSEVIER

Neurologic Interventions for Physical Therapy

THIRD EDITION

Suzanne "Tink" Martin, PT, PhD

Professor and Associate Chair, Department of Physical Therapy, University of Evansville, Evansville, Indiana

Mary Kessler, PT, MHS

Associate Dean, College of Education and Health Sciences, Director Physical Therapist Assistant Program, Associate Professor, Department of Physical Therapy, University of Evansville, Evansville, Indiana

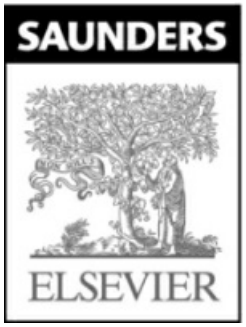


Table of Contents

Index

Copyright

ELSEVIER
SAUNDERS

3251 Riverport Lane
St. Louis, MO 63043

NEUROLOGIC INTERVENTIONS FOR PHYSICAL THERAPY,
THIRD EDITION
ISBN: 978-1-4557-4020-8

International Standard Book Number: 978-1-4557-4020-8

Executive Content Strategist: Kathy Falk
Content Development Specialist: Brandi Graham
Publishing Services Manager: Julie Eddy
Senior Project Manager: Richard Barber
Designer: Ryan Cook

Printed in the United States of America
Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contributors

Maghan C. Bretz, PT, MPT St Mary's Rehabilitation Institute, Adjunct Instructor, Department of Physical Therapy, Evansville, Indiana, Evolve videos

Terry Chambliss, PT, MHS Physical Therapist, Evansville, Indiana, Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation

Dedication

To my husband, *Terry*, who has always been there with love and support, and to my parents who were always supportive of my educational endeavors.

Tink

To Craig, my husband, who continues to provide me with love, support, and encouragement to pursue this and all of my other professional goals, and to *Kyle* and *Kaitlyn*, who still like to see their photographs in print.

A final word of thanks to my parents, *John* and *Judy Oerter*, who have always encouraged me to work hard and strive for excellence. You have always believed in me and my ability to succeed.

Mary

Preface

Tink Martin

Mary Kessler

We are gratified by the very positive responses to the first two editions of the *Neurologic Interventions for Physical Therapy* text. In an effort to make a good reference even better, we have taken the advice of reviewers and our physical therapist and physical therapist assistant students to complete a third edition. The sequence of chapters still reflects a developmental trend with motor development, handling and positioning, and interventions for children coming before the content on adults. Chapters on specific pediatric disorders and neurologic conditions seen in adults remain as well as introductory chapters on physical therapy practice and the role of the physical therapist assistant. The review of basic neuroanatomy structure and function and the chapter on proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation have been updated and continue to provide foundational knowledge. The intervention components of each chapter have been enhanced to emphasize function and the use of current best evidence in the physical therapy care of these patients. Concepts related to neuroplasticity and task-specific training are also included. All patient cases have been reworked again to reflect current practice and are formatted in a way to assist students with their documentation skills.

We continue to see that the text is used by students in both physical therapist assistant and doctor of physical therapy programs, and this certainly has broad appeal. However, as we indicated in our last preface, we continue to be committed to addressing the role of the physical therapist assistant in the treatment of children and adults with neurologic deficits. On the contrary, the use of the textbook by physical therapy students should increase the understanding of and appreciation for the psychomotor and critical-thinking skills needed by all members of the rehabilitation team to maximize the function of patients with neurologic deficits.

The Evolve site continues to be enhanced as we try to insert additional resources for faculty and students. An instructor Test Bank and PowerPoint slides have been added in this third edition. Also, newly added video clips of interventions as well as gait and proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation will allow students to increase their understanding of the subject matter and to be better prepared for the neurologic portion of their certification exam.

The mark of sophistication of any society is how well it treats the young and old, the most vulnerable segments of the population. We hope in some small measure that our continuing efforts will make it easier to unravel the mystery of directing movement, guiding growth and development, and relearning lost functional skills to improve the quality of life for the people we serve.

Acknowledgments

I again want to acknowledge the dedication and hard work of my colleague, friend, and co-author, Mary Kessler. Mary's focus on excellence is evident in the updated adult chapters. Special thanks to Dawn Welborn-Mabrey for her marvelous pediatric insights. Thank you to past contributors, Dr. Pam Ritzline, Mary Kay Solon, Dr. Donna Cech, and Terry Chambliss. Thank you to the students at the University of Evansville. You are really the reason this book happened in the first place and the reason it has evolved into its present form. I want to acknowledge the work of those at Elsevier, especially Brandi Graham, for seeing us through the timely completion of the third edition.

Tink

I must thank my good friend, mentor, colleague, and co-author, Tink Martin. Without Tink, none of these editions would have been completed. She has continued to take care of many of the details, always keeping us focused on the end result. Tink's ongoing encouragement and support have been most appreciated.

A special thank you to all of the students at the University of Evansville. They are the reason that we originally started this project, and they have continued to encourage and motivate us to update and revise the text. Additional thanks must be extended to all of the individuals who have assisted us over the last 20 years, including Dr. Catherine McGraw, Maghan Bretz, Sara Snelling, Dr. Pam Ritzline, Mary Kay Solon, Janet Szczepanski, Terry Chambliss, Suzy Sims, Beth Jankauski, and Amanda Fisher. Every person mentioned has contributed to the overall excellence and success of this text.

Mary

SECTION 1

Foundations

CHAPTER 1

The Roles of the Physical Therapist and Physical Therapist Assistant in Neurologic Rehabilitation

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- Discuss the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) and its relationship to physical therapy practice.
- Explain the role of the physical therapist in patient/client management.
- Describe the role of the physical therapist assistant in the treatment of adults and children with neurologic deficits.

Introduction

The practice of physical therapy in the United States continues to change to meet the increased demands placed on service provision by reimbursement entities and federal regulations. The profession has seen an increase in the number of physical therapist assistants (PTAs) providing physical therapy interventions for adults and children with neurologic deficits. PTAs are employed in outpatient clinics, inpatient rehabilitation centers, extended-care and pediatric facilities, school systems, and home healthcare agencies. Traditionally, the rehabilitation management of adults and children with neurologic deficits consisted of treatment derived from the knowledge of disease and interventions directed at the amelioration of patient signs, symptoms, and functional impairments. Physical therapists and physical therapist assistants help individuals "maintain, restore, and improve movement, activity, and functioning, thereby enhancing health, well-being, and quality of life" (APTA, 2014). Physical therapy is provided across the lifespan to children and adults who "may develop impairments, activity limitations, and participation restrictions" (APTA, 2014). These limitations develop as a consequence of various health conditions and the interaction of personal and environmental factors (APTA, 2014).

Sociologist Saad Nagi developed a model of health status that has been used to describe the relationship between health and function (Nagi, 1991). The four components of the Nagi Disablement Model (*disease, impairments, functional limitations,* and *disability*) evolve as the individual loses health. *Disease* is defined as a pathologic state manifested by the presence of signs and symptoms that disrupt an individual's homeostasis or internal balance. *Impairments* are alterations in anatomic, physiologic, or psychological structures or functions. *Functional limitations* occur as a result of impairments and become evident when an individual is unable to perform everyday activities that are considered part of the person's daily routine. Examples of physical impairments include a loss of strength in the anterior tibialis muscle or a loss of 15 degrees of active shoulder flexion. These physical impairments may or may not limit the individual's ability to perform functional tasks. Inability to dorsiflex the ankle may prohibit the patient from achieving toe clearance and heelstrike during ambulation, whereas a 15-degree limitation in shoulder range may have little impact on the person's ability to perform self-care or dressing tasks.

According to the disablement model, a *disability* results when functional limitations become so great that the person is unable to meet age-specific expectations within the social or physical environment (Verbrugge and Jette, 1994). Society can erect physical and social barriers that interfere with a person's ability to perform expected roles. The societal attitudes encountered by a person with a disability can result in the community's perception that the individual is handicapped. Figure 1-1 depicts the Nagi classification system of health status.

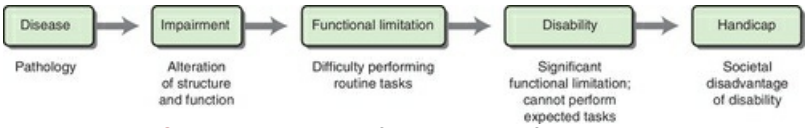


FIGURE 1-1 Nagi classification system of health status.

The second edition of the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* incorporated the Nagi Disablement Model into its conceptual framework of physical therapy practice. The use of this model has directed physical therapists (PTs) to focus on the relationship between impairment and functional limitation and the patient's ability to perform everyday activities. Increased independence in the home and community and improvements in an individual's quality of life are the expected outcomes of physical therapy interventions (APTA, 2003). However, as our practice has evolved, current practice guidelines recognize the critical roles PTs and PTAs play in providing "rehabilitation and habilitation, performance enhancement, and prevention and risk-reduction services" for patients and the overall population (APTA, 2014).

As physical therapy professionals, it is important that we understand our role in optimizing patient function. The second edition of the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* (APTA, 2003) defined *function* as "those activities identified by an individual as essential to support physical, social, and psychological well-being and to create a personal sense of meaningful living." *Function* is related to

age-specific roles in a given social context and physical environment and is defined differently for a child of 6 months, an adolescent of 15 years, and a 65-year-old adult. Factors that contribute to an individual's *functional performance* include personal characteristics, such as physical ability, emotional status, and cognitive ability; the environment in which the adult or child lives and works, such as home, school, or community; and the social expectations placed on the individual by the family, community, or society.

The World Health Organization (WHO) developed the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF), which has been endorsed by the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA). This system provides a more positive framework and standard language to describe health, function, and disability and has been incorporated into the third edition of the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. Figure 1-2 illustrates the ICF model. Health is much more than the absence of disease; rather, it is a condition of physical, mental, and social well-being that allows an individual to participate in functional activities and life situations (WHO, 2013; Cech and Martin, 2012). A biopsychosocial model is central to the ICF and defines a person's health status and functional capabilities by the interactions between one's biological, psychological, and social domains (Figure 1-3). This conceptual framework recognizes that two individuals with the same diagnosis might have very different functional outcomes and levels of participation based on environmental and personal factors.

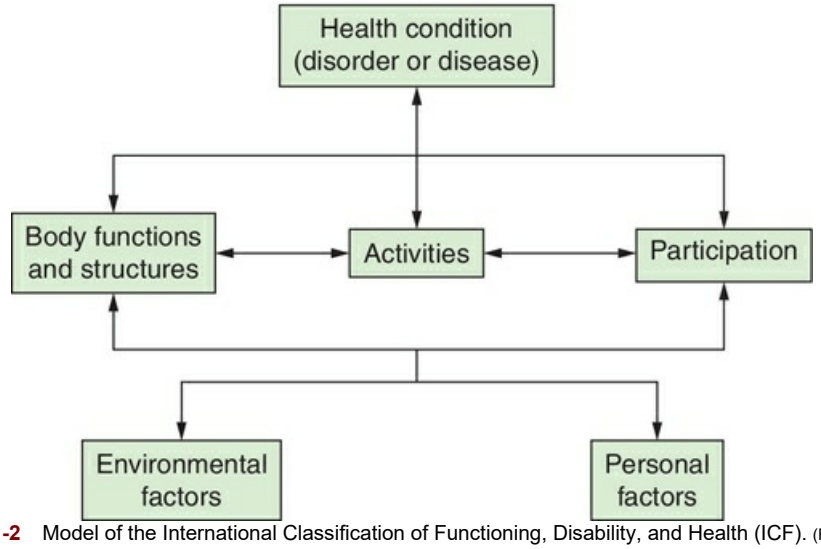


FIGURE 1-2 Model of the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF). (From Cech D, Martin S. Functional Movement Development Across the Life Span, ed 3, St Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

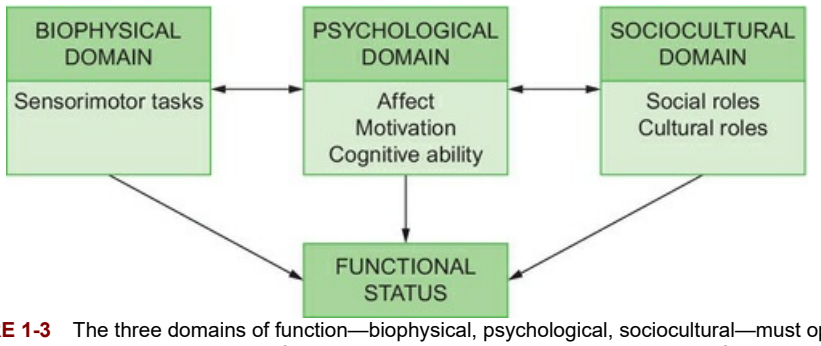


FIGURE 1-3 The three domains of function—biophysical, psychological, sociocultural—must operate independently as well as interdependently for human beings to achieve their best possible functional status. (From Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3. St Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

The ICF also presents functioning and disability in the context of health and organizes the information into two distinct parts. Part 1 addresses the components of functioning and disability as

they relate to the health condition. The health condition (disease or disorder) results from the impairments and alterations in an individual's body structures and functions (physiologic and anatomical processes). Activity limitations present as difficulties performing a task or action and encompass physical as well as cognitive and communication activities. Participation restrictions are deficits that an individual may experience when attempting to meet social roles and obligations within the environment. Functioning and disability are therefore viewed on a continuum where functioning encompasses performance of activities, and participation and disability implies activity limitations and restrictions in one's ability to participate in life situations. Part 2 of the ICF information recognizes the external environmental and internal personal factors which influence a person's response to the presence of a disability and the interaction of these factors on one's ability to participate in meaningful activities (APTA, 2014; WHO, 2013). All factors must be considered to determine their impact on function and participation (O'Sullivan, 2014; Cech and Martin, 2012).

The ICF is similar to the Nagi Model; however, the ICF emphasizes enablement rather than disability (Cech and Martin, 2012). In the ICF model, there is less focus on the cause of the medical condition and more emphasis directed to the impact that activity limitations and participation restrictions have on the individual. As individuals experience a decline in health, it is also possible that they may experience some level of disability. Thus, the ICF "mainstreams the experience of disability and recognizes it as a universal human experience" (ICF, 2014).

Various functional skills are needed in domestic, vocational, and community environments. Performance of these skills enhances the individual's physical and psychological well-being. Individuals define themselves by what they are able to accomplish and how they are able to participate in the world. Performance of functional tasks not only depends on an individual's physical abilities and sensorimotor skills but is also affected by the individual's emotional status (depression, anxiety, self-awareness, self-esteem), cognitive abilities (intellect, motivation, concentration, problem-solving skills), and ability to interact with people and meet social and cultural expectations (Cech and Martin, 2012). Furthermore, individual factors such as congenital disorders and genetic predisposition to disease, demographics (age, sex, level of education, and income), comorbidities, lifestyle choices, health habits, and environmental factors (including access to medical and rehabilitation care and the physical and social environments) may also impact the individual's function and his or her quality of life (APTA, 2014).

The role of the physical therapist in patient management

As stated earlier, physical therapists are responsible for providing rehabilitation, habilitation, performance enhancement, and preventative services (APTA, 2014). Ultimately, the PT is responsible for performing a review of the patient's history and systems and for administering appropriate tests and measures in order to determine an individual's need for physical therapy services. If after the examination the PT concludes that the patient will benefit from services, a plan of care is developed that identifies the goals, expected outcomes, and the interventions to be administered to achieve the desired patient outcomes (APTA, 2014).

The steps the PT utilizes in patient/client management are outlined in the third edition of the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* and includes *examination, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, interventions*, and *outcomes.* The PT integrates these elements to optimize the patient's outcomes, including improving the health or function of the individual or enhancing the performance of healthy individuals. Figure 1-4 identifies these elements. In the *examination,* the PT collects data through a review of the patient's history and a review of systems and then administers appropriate tests and measures. The PT then *evaluates* the data, interprets the patient's responses, and makes clinical judgments relative to the chronicity or severity of the patient's problems. Within the evaluation process, the therapist establishes a *physical therapy diagnosis* based on the patient's level of impairment and functional limitations. Use of *differential diagnosis* (a systematic process to classify patients into diagnostic categories) may be used. Once the diagnosis is completed, the PT develops a *prognosis,* which is the predicted level of improvement and the amount of time that will be needed to achieve those levels. Patient goals are also a component of the prognosis aspect of the evaluation. The development of the *plan of care* is the final step in the evaluation process. The plan of care includes short- and long-term goals and specific interventions to be administered, as well as the expected outcomes of therapy and the proposed frequency and duration of treatment. Goals and outcomes should be objective, measureable, functionally oriented, and meaningful to the patient. *Intervention* is the element of patient management in which the PT or the PTA interacts with the patient through the administration of "various physical interventions to produce changes in the [patient's] condition that are consistent with the diagnosis and prognosis" (APTA, 2014). Intervention are organized into 9 categories: "patient or client instruction (used with every patient); airway clearance techniques, assistive technology, biophysical agents; functional training in self-care and domestic, work, community, social, and civic life; integumentary repair and protection techniques; manual therapy techniques; motor function training; and therapeutic exercise" (APTA, 2014). Reexamination of the patient includes performance of appropriate tests and measures to determine if the patient is progressing with treatment or if modifications are needed. The final component related to patient management is review of patient *outcomes.* The PT must determine the impact selected interventions have had on the following: disease or disorder, impairments, activity limitations, participation, risk reduction and prevention, health, wellness, and fitness, societal resources, and patient satisfaction (APTA, 2014). Other aspects of patient/client management include the coordination (the working together of all parties), communication, and documentation of services provided.

FIGURE 1-4 The elements of patient/client management. (From American Physical Therapy Association: *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice 3.0.* Alexandria, VA, 2014, APTA.)

PTAs assist only with the intervention component of care (Clynch, 2012). All interventions performed by the PTA are directed and supervised by the PT. These interventions may include "procedural intervention(s), associated data collection, and communication—including written documentation associated with the safe, effective, and efficient completion of the task" (Crosier, 2010). All other tasks remain the sole responsibility of the PT.

The role of the physical therapist assistant in treating patients with neurologic deficits

There is little debate as to whether PTAs have a role in treating adults with neurologic deficits, as long as the individual needs of the patient are taken into consideration and the PTA follows the plan of care established by the PT. Physical therapist assistants are the only healthcare providers who "assist a physical therapist in the provision of selected interventions" (APTA, 2014). The primary PT is still ultimately responsible for the patient, both legally and ethically, and the actions of the PTA relative to patient management (APTA, 2012a). The PT directs and supervises the PTA when the PTA provides interventions selected by the PT. The APTA has identified the following responsibilities as those that must be performed exclusively by the PT (APTA, 2012a):

1. Interpretation of referrals when available
2. Initial examination, evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis
3. Development or modification of the plan of care, which includes the goals and expected outcomes
4. Determination of when the expertise and decision-making capabilities of the PT requires the PT to personally render services and when it is appropriate to utilize a PTA
5. Reexamination of the patient and revision of the plan of care if indicated
6. Establishment of the discharge plan and documentation of the discharge summary
7. Oversight of all documentation for services rendered

APTA policy documents also state that interventions that require immediate and continuous examination and evaluation are to be performed exclusively by the PT (APTA, 2012b). Specific examples of these interventions have changed recently. PTs and PTAs are advised to refer to APTA policy documents, their state practice acts, and the Commission on Accreditation in Physical Therapy Education (CAPTE) guidelines for the most up-to-date information regarding interventions that are considered outside the scope of practice for the PTA. Practitioners are also encouraged to review individual state practice acts and payer requirements for supervision requirements as they relate to the PT/PTA relationship (Crosier, 2011).

Before directing the PTA to perform specific components of the intervention, the PT must critically evaluate the patient's condition (*stability, acuity, criticality,* and *complexity*) consider the practice setting in which the intervention is to be delivered, the type of intervention to be provided, and the predictability of the patient's probable outcome to the intervention (APTA, 2012a). In addition, the knowledge base of the PTA and his or her level of experience, training, and skill level must be considered when determining which tasks can be directed to the PTA. The APTA has developed two algorithms (PTA direction and PTA supervision; Figures 1-5 and 1-6) to assist PTs with the steps that should be considered when a PT decides to direct certain aspects of a patient's care to a PTA and the subsequent supervision that must occur. Even though these algorithms exist, it is important to remember that communication between the PT and PTA must be ongoing to ensure the best possible outcomes for the patient. PTAs are also advised to become familiar with the Problem-Solving Algorithm Utilized by PTAs in Patient/Client Intervention (Figure 1-7) as a guide for the clinical problem-solving skills a PTA should employ before and during patient interventions (APTA, 2007). Unfortunately, in our current healthcare climate, there are times when the decision as to whether a patient may be treated by a PTA is determined by productivity concerns and the patient's payer source. An issue affecting some clinics and PTAs is the denial of payment by some insurance providers for services provided by a PTA. Consequently, decisions regarding the utilization of PTAs are sometimes determined by financial remuneration and not by the needs of the patient.

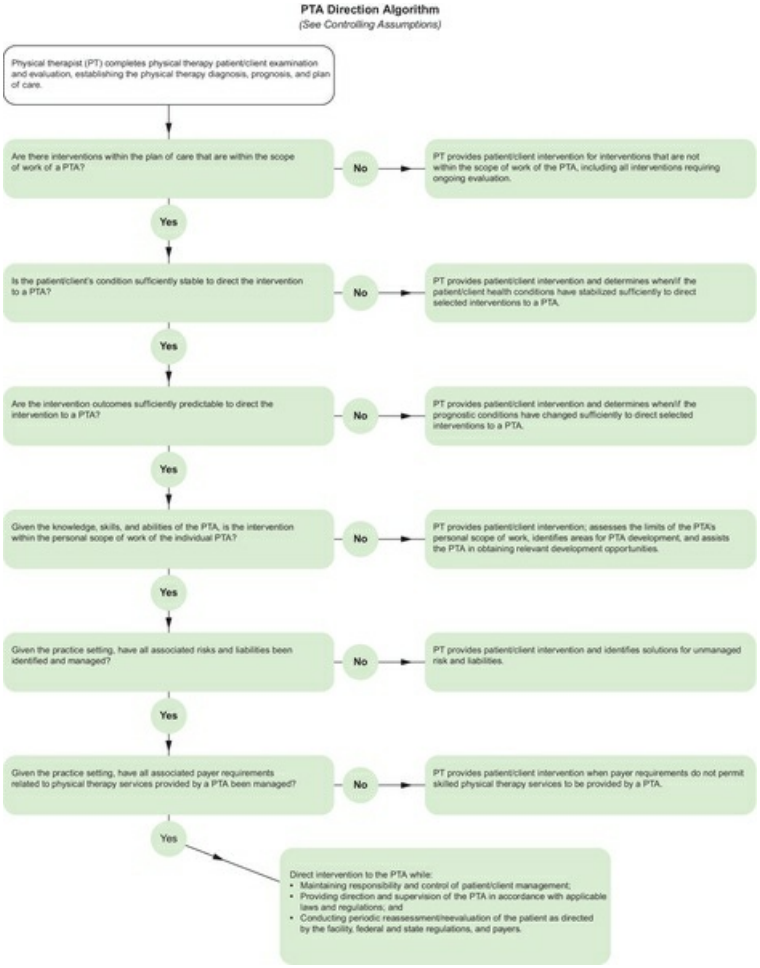


FIGURE 1-5 PTA direction algorithm. (From Crosier J: PT direction and supervision algorithms, *PT in Motion* 2(8):47, 2010.)

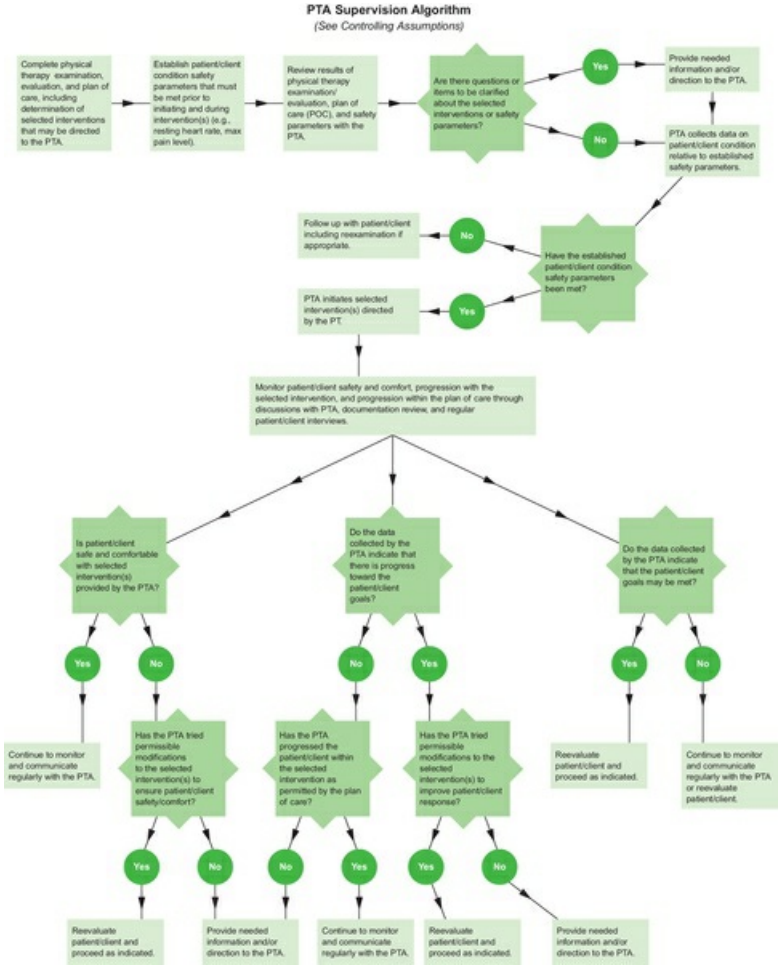


FIGURE 1-6 PTA supervision algorithm. (From Crosier J: PT direction and supervision algorithms, *PT in Motion* 2(8):47, 2010.)

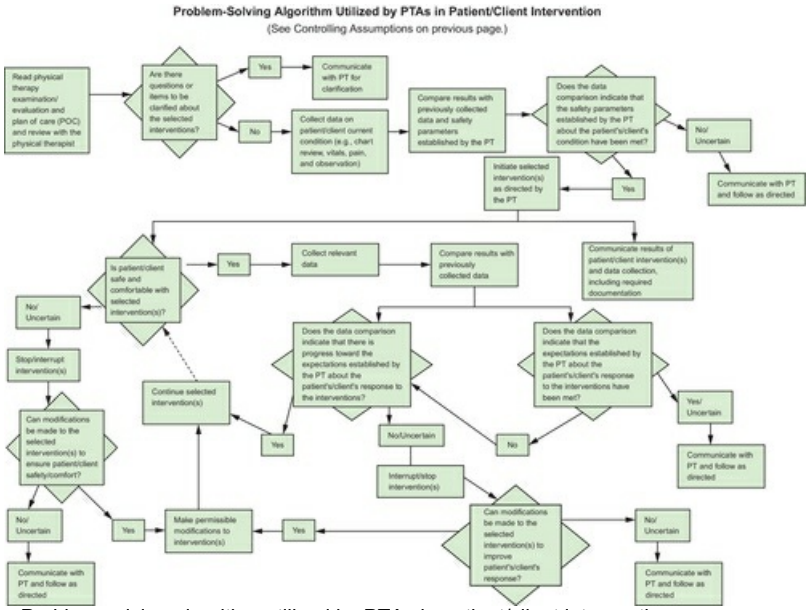


FIGURE 1-7 Problem solving algorithm utilized by PTAs in patient/client intervention. (From American Physical Therapy Association: *A normative model of physical therapist assistant education, Version 2007,* Alexandria, VA, 2007, APTA, p. 85.)

Although PTAs work with adults who have had cerebrovascular accidents, spinal cord injuries,

and traumatic brain injuries, some PTs still view pediatrics as a specialty area of practice. This narrow perspective is held even though PTAs work with children in hospitals, outpatient clinics, schools, and community settings, including fitness centers and sports-training facilities. Although some areas of pediatric physical therapy are specialized, many areas are well within the scope of practice of the generalist PT and PTA (Miller and Ratliffe, 1998). To assist in resolving this controversy, the Pediatric Section of APTA developed a draft position statement outlining the use of PTAs in various pediatric settings. The original position paper stated that "physical therapist assistants could be appropriately utilized in pediatric settings with the exception of the medically unstable, such as neonates in the ICU" (Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 1995). This document was revised in 1997 and remains available from the Section on Pediatrics. The position paper states that "the physical therapist assistant is qualified to assist in the provision of pediatric physical therapy services under the direction and supervision of a physical therapist" (Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 1997). It is recommended that PTAs should not provide services to children who are physiologically unstable (Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 1997). In addition, this position paper also states that "delegation of physical therapy procedures to a PTA should not occur when a child's condition requires multiple adjustments of sequences and procedures due to rapidly changing physiologic status and/or response to treatment" (Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 1997). The guidelines proposed in this document follow those suggested by Dr. Nancy Watts in her 1971 article on task analysis and division of responsibility in physical therapy (Watts, 1971). This article was written to assist PTs with guidelines for delegating patient care activities to support personnel. Although the term *delegation* is not used today because of the implications of relinquishing patient care responsibilities to another practitioner, the principles of patient/client management, as defined by Watts, can be applied to the provision of present-day physical therapy services. PTs and PTAs unfamiliar with this article are encouraged to review it because the guidelines presented are still appropriate for today's clinicians and are referenced in APTA documents.

The physical therapist assistant as a member of the healthcare team

The PTA functions as a member of the rehabilitation team in all treatment settings. Members of this team include the primary PT; the physician; speech, occupational, and recreation therapists; nursing personnel; the psychologist; case manager; and the social worker. However, the two most important members of this team are the patient and his or her family. In a rehabilitation setting, the PTA is expected to provide *interventions* to improve the patient's functional independence. Relearning motor activities, such as bed mobility, transfers, ambulation skills, stair climbing, and wheelchair negotiation, if appropriate, are emphasized to enhance the patient's functional mobility. In addition, the PTA participates in patient and family education and is expected to provide input into the patient's discharge plan. Patient and family instruction includes providing information, education, and the actual training of patients, families, significant others, or caregivers and is a part of every patient's plan of care (APTA, 2014; APTA, 2003). As is the case in all team activities, open and honest communication among all team members is crucial to maximize the patient's participation and achievement of an optimal functional outcome.

The rehabilitation team working with a child with a neurologic deficit usually consists of the child; his or her parents; the various physicians involved in the child's management and other healthcare professionals, such as an audiologist and physical and occupational therapists; a speech language pathologist; and the child's classroom teacher. The PTA is expected to bring certain skills to the team and to the child, including knowledge of positioning and handling, use of adaptive equipment, management of abnormal muscle tone, knowledge of developmental activities that foster acquisition of functional motor skills and movement transitions, knowledge of family-centered care and the role of physical therapy in an educational environment. Additionally, interpersonal communication and advocacy skills are beneficial as the PTA works with the child and the family, as well as others. Family teaching and instruction are expected within a family-centered approach to the delivery of various interventions embedded into the child's daily routine. Because the PTA may be providing services to the child in his or her home or school, the assistant may be the first to observe additional problems or be told of a parent's concern. These observations or concerns should be communicated immediately to the supervising PT. Due to the complexity of patient's problems and the interpersonal skill set needed to work with the pediatric population and their families, most clinics require prior work experience before employing PTAs and PTs in these treatment settings (Clynch, 2012).

PTs and PTAs are valuable members of a patient's health-care team. To optimize the relationship between the two and to maximize patient outcomes, each practitioner must understand the educational preparation and experiential background of the other. The preferred relationship between PTs and PTAs is one characterized by trust, understanding, mutual respect, effective communication, and an appreciation for individual similarities and differences (Clynch, 2012). This relationship involves direction, including determination of the tasks that can be directed to the PTA, supervision because the PT is responsible for supervising the assistant to whom tasks or interventions have been directed and accepted, communication, and the demonstration of ethical and legal behaviors. Positive benefits that can be derived from this preferred relationship include more clearly defined identities for both PTs and PTAs and a more unified approach to the delivery of high-quality, cost-effective physical therapy services.

Chapter summary

Changes in physical therapy practice have led to an increase in the number of PTAs and greater variety in the types of patients treated by these clinicians. PTAs are actively involved in the treatment of adults and children with neurologic deficits. After a thorough examination and evaluation of the patient's status, the primary PT may determine that the patient's intervention or a portion of the intervention may be safely performed by an assistant. The PTA functions as a member of the patient's rehabilitation team and works with the patient to maximize his or her ability to participate in meaningful activities. Improved function in the home, school, or community remains as the primary goal of our physical therapy interventions.

Review questions

1. Discuss the ICF model as it relates to health and function.
2. List the factors that affect an individual's performance of functional activities.
3. Discuss the elements of patient/client management.
4. Identify the factors that the PT must consider before utilizing a PTA.
5. Discuss the roles of the PTA when working with adults or children with neurologic deficits.

References

American Physical Therapy Association. *Guide to physical therapist practice.* ed 2 Alexandria, VA: APTA; 2003 pp 13–47, 679.

American Physical Therapy Association: Direction and supervision of the physical therapist assistant, 2012a, *HOD P06-05-18-26*. Available at: www.apta.org/uploadedFiles/APTAorg/About_Us/Policies/Practice/DirectionSupervisionPT Accessed January 5, 2014.

American Physical Therapy Association: Procedural interventions exclusively performed by physical therapists, 2012b, *HOD P06-00-30-36*. Available at: www.apta.org/uploadedFiles/APTAorg/About_Us/Policies/Practice?ProceduralInterventions.pdf. Accessed January 5, 2014.

American Physical Therapy Association (APTA). *Guide to physical therapist practice 3.0.* ed 3 Alexandria, VA: APTA; 2014. Available at: http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org Accessed September 24, 2014.

American Physical Therapy Association Education Division. *A normative model of physical therapist professional education, version 2007.* Alexandria, VA: APTA; 2007 pp 84–85.

Cech D, Martin S. *Functional movement development across the life span.* ed 3 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012 pp 1–13.

Clynch HM. *The role of the physical therapist assistant regulations and responsibilities.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2012 pp 23, 43–76.

Crosier J. PTA direction and supervision algorithms. *PTinMotion.* 2010. Available at: www.apta.org/PTinMotion/2010/9PTAsToday Accessed January 7, 2014.

Crosier J. *The PT/PTA relationship: 4 things to know.* February 2011. Available at: www.apta.org/PTAPatientCare Accessed January 7, 2014.

International classification of functioning, disability, and health (ICF), World Health Organization. Available at: www.who.int/classifications/icf/en/. Accessed January 5, 2014.

Miller ME, Ratliffe KT. The emerging role of the physical therapist assistant in pediatrics. In: Ratliffe KT, ed. *Clinical pediatric physical therapy.* St Louis: Mosby; 1998:15–22.

Nagi SZ. Disability concepts revisited: Implications for prevention. In: Pope AM, Tarlox AR, eds. *Disability in America: toward a national agenda for prevention.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1991:309–327.

O'Sullivan SB. Clinical decision making planning and examination. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation assessment and treatment.* ed 6 Philadelphia: Davis; 2014:1–29.

Section on Pediatrics, American Physical Therapy Association. Draft position statement on utilization of physical therapist assistants in the provision of pediatric physical therapy. *Sect Pediatr Newsl.* 1995;5:14–17.

Section on Pediatrics, American Physical Therapy Association. *Utilization of physical therapist assistants in the provision of pediatric physical therapy.* Alexandria, VA: APTA; 1997.

Verbrugge L, Jette A. The disablement process. *Soc Sci Med.* (38):1994;1–14.

Watts NT. Task analysis and division of responsibility in physical therapy. *Phys Ther.* (51):1971;23–35.

World Health Organization. *How to use the ICF: a practical manual for using the international classification of functioning, disability and health (ICF), 2013.* 2013 Geneva.

CHAPTER 2

Neuroanatomy

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- Differentiate between the central and peripheral nervous systems.
- Identify significant structures within the nervous system.
- Understand primary functions of structures within the nervous system.
- Describe the vascular supply to the brain.
- Discuss components of the cervical, brachial, and lumbosacral plexuses.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide the student with a review of neuroanatomy. Basic structures within the nervous system are described and their functions discussed. This information is important to physical therapists (PTs) and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) who treat patients with neurologic dysfunction because it assists clinicians with identifying clinical signs and symptoms. In addition, it allows the PTA to develop an appreciation of the patient's prognosis and potential functional outcome. It is, however, outside the scope of this text to provide a comprehensive discussion of neuroanatomy. The reader is encouraged to review neuroscience and neuroanatomy texts for a more in-depth discussion of these concepts.

Major components of the nervous system

The nervous system is divided into two parts, the *central nervous system* (CNS) and the *peripheral nervous system* (PNS). The CNS is composed of the brain, the cerebellum, the brain stem, and the spinal cord, whereas the PNS comprises all of the components outside the cranium and spinal cord. Physiologically, the PNS is divided into the somatic nervous system and the autonomic nervous system (ANS). Figure 2-1 illustrates the major components of the CNS.

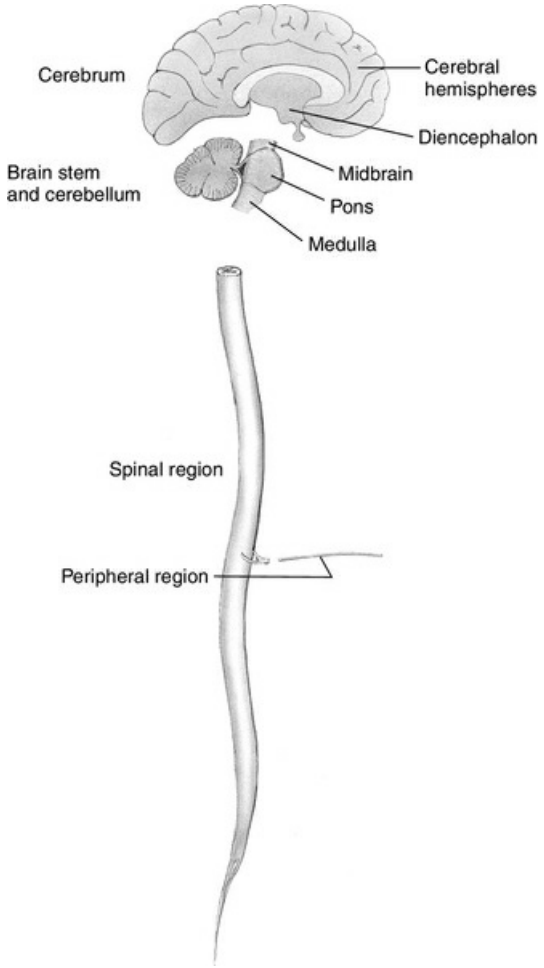


FIGURE 2-1 Lateral view of the regions of the nervous system. Regions are listed on the left, and subdivisions are listed on the right. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation*, ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

The nervous system is a highly organized communication system. *Nerve cells* within the nervous system receive, transmit, analyze, and communicate information to other areas throughout the body. For example, sensations, such as touch, proprioception, pain, and temperature, are transmitted from the periphery as electrochemical impulses to the CNS through sensory tracts. Once information is processed within the brain, it is relayed as new electrochemical impulses to peripheral structures through motor tracts. This transmission process is responsible for an individual's ability to interact with the environment. Individuals are able to perceive sensory experiences, to initiate movement, and to perform cognitive tasks as a result of a functioning nervous system.

Types of Nerve Cells

The brain, brain stem, and spinal cord are composed of two basic types of nerve cells called *neurons* and *neuroglia*. Three different subtypes of neurons have been identified based on their function: (1)

afferent neurons; (2) interneurons; and (3) efferent neurons. *Afferent* or sensory neurons are responsible for receiving sensory input from the periphery of the body and transporting it into the CNS. *Interneurons* connect neurons to other neurons. Their primary function is to process information or transmit signals (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). *Efferent/Somatic* or motor neurons transmit information to the extremities to signal muscles to produce movement.

Neuroglia are nonneuronal supporting cells that provide critical services for neurons. Different types of neuroglia (astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglia, and ependymal cells) have been identified in the CNS. Figure 2-2 depicts the types of neuroglia. *Astrocytes* are responsible for maintaining the capillary endothelium and as such provide a vascular link to neurons. Additionally, astrocytes contribute to the metabolism of the CNS, regulate extracellular concentrations of neurotransmitters, and proliferate after an injury to create a glial scar (Fitzgerald et al., 2012). *Oligodendrocytes* wrap myelin sheaths around axons in the white matter and produce satellite cells in the gray matter that participate in ion exchange between neurons. *Microglia* are known as the phagocytes of the CNS. They engulf and digest pathogens and assist with nervous system repair after injury. Ependymal cells assist with the movement of cerebrospinal fluid through the ventricles as these cells line the ventricular system (Fitzgerald et al., 2012). Schwann and satellite cells provide similar functions in the PNS.

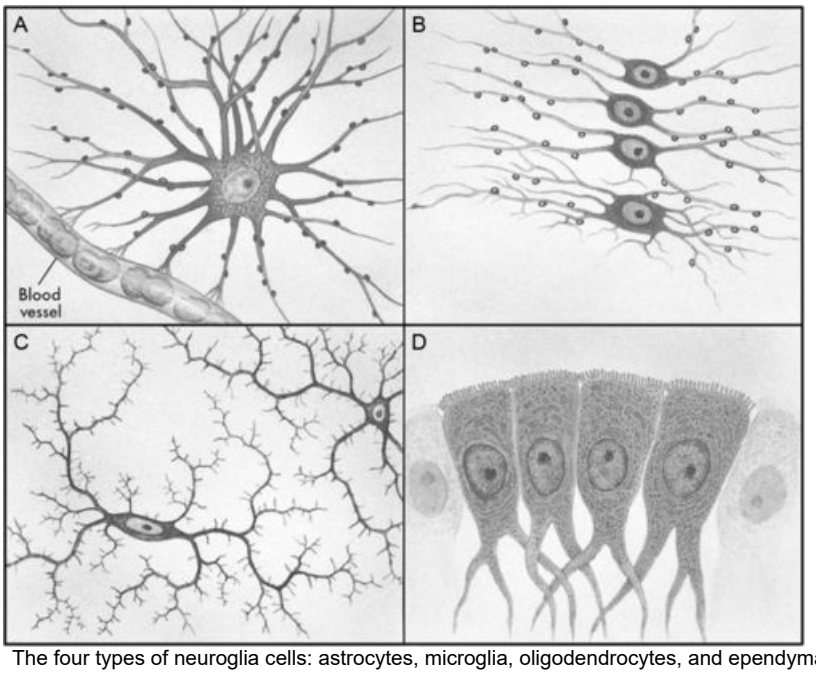


FIGURE 2-2 The four types of neuroglia cells: astrocytes, microglia, oligodendrocytes, and ependymal cells. (From Copstead LEC, Banasik JL: *Pathophysiology: biological and behavioral perspectives*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2000, WB Saunders.)

Neuron Structures

As depicted in Figure 2-3, a typical neuron consists of a cell body, dendrites, and an axon. The dendrite is responsible for receiving information and transferring it to the cell body, where it is processed. Dendrites bring impulses into the cell body from other neurons. The number and arrangement of dendrites present in a neuron vary. The cell body or soma is composed of a nucleus and a number of different cellular organelles. The cell body is responsible for synthesizing proteins and supporting functional activities of the neuron, such as transmitting electrochemical impulses and repairing cells. Cell bodies that are grouped together in the CNS appear gray and thus are called gray matter. Groups of cell bodies in the PNS are called ganglia. The axon is the message-sending component of the nerve cell. It extends from the cell body and is responsible for transmitting impulses from the cell body to target cells that can include muscle cells, glands, or other neurons.

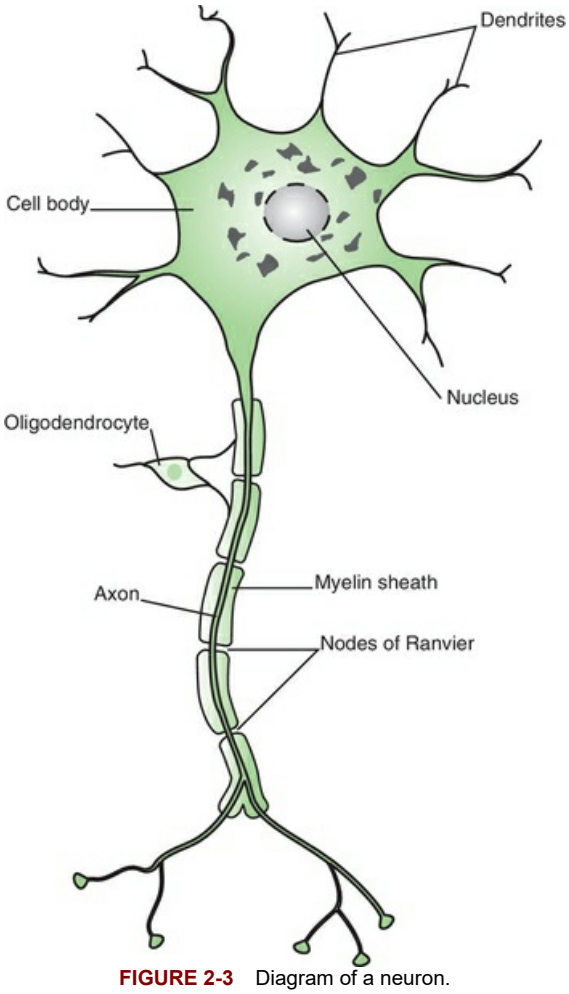


FIGURE 2-3 Diagram of a neuron.

Synapses

Synapses are the connections between neurons that allow different parts of the nervous system to communicate with and influence each other. The synaptic cleft is the intercellular space between the axon terminal and the postsynaptic target cell and is the site for interneuronal communication.

Neurotransmitters

Neurotransmitters are chemicals that are transported from the cell body and are stored in the axon terminal. Upon activation (depolarization) of the neuron, an action potential is transmitted along the axon and when it reaches the axon terminal, it causes the release of the neurotransmitter into the synaptic cleft. The neurotransmitter then binds with a receptor to elicit a change in activity of the receptor (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). An in-depth discussion of neurotransmitters is beyond the scope of this text. We will, however, discuss some common neurotransmitters because of their relationship to CNS disease. Furthermore, many of the pharmacologic interventions available to patients with CNS pathology act by facilitating or inhibiting neurotransmitter activity. Common neurotransmitters include acetylcholine, glutamate, g-aminobutyric acid (GABA), dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine. Acetylcholine conveys information in the PNS and is the neurotransmitter used by all neurons that synapse with skeletal muscle fibers (lower motor neurons) (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Acetylcholine also plays a role in regulating heart rate and other autonomic functions. Glutamate is an excitatory neurotransmitter and facilitates neuronal change during development. Excessive glutamate release is also thought to contribute to neuron destruction after an injury to the CNS. GABA is the major inhibitory neurotransmitter of the brain and glycine is the major inhibitory neurotransmitter of the spinal cord. Dopamine influences motor activity, motivation, general arousal, and cognition. Serotonin plays a role in "mood, behavior, and

inhibits pain" (Dvorak and Mansfield, 2013). Norepinephrine is used by the ANS and produces the "fight-or-flight response" to stress (Fitzgerald et al., 2012; Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

Axons

Once information is processed, it is conducted to other neurons, muscle cells, or glands by the axon. *Axons* can be myelinated or unmyelinated. *Myelin* is a lipid/protein that encases and insulates the axon. Oligodendrocytes are the cells in the CNS that produce myelin, whereas Schwann cells wrap myelin around axons in the PNS. The presence of a myelin sheath increases the speed of impulse conduction, thus allowing for increased responsiveness of the nervous system. The myelin sheath surrounding the axon is not continuous; it contains interruptions or spaces within the myelin called the nodes of Ranvier. The nodes allow for impulse conduction of the action potential as these areas control ion flow. As the impulse travels down the myelinated axon, it appears to jump from one node to the next. New action potentials are generated at each node, thus creating the appearance that the impulse skips from one node to the next. This process is called *saltatory conduction* and increases the velocity of nervous system impulse conduction (Figure 2-4). Unmyelinated axons send messages more slowly than myelinated ones (Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

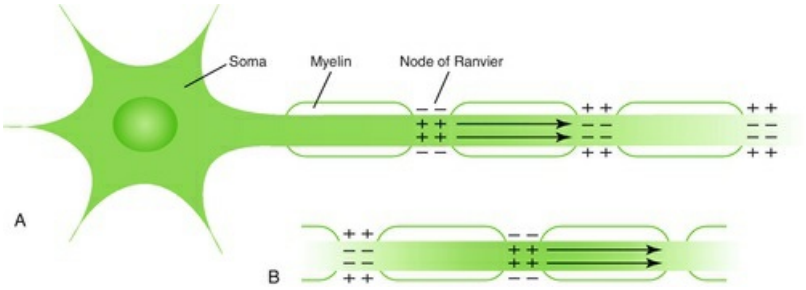


FIGURE 2-4 Saltatory conduction, or the process by which an action potential appears to jump from node to node along an axon. **A,** A depolarizing potential spreads rapidly along the myelinated regions of the axon, then slows when crossing the unmyelinated node of Ranvier. **B,** When an action potential is generated at a node of Ranvier, the depolarizing potential again spreads quickly across myelinated regions, appearing to jump from node to node.
(From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

White Matter

Areas of the nervous system with a high concentration of myelin appear white because of the fat content within the myelin. Consequently, *white matter* is composed of axons that carry information away from cell bodies. White matter is found in the brain and spinal cord. Myelinated axons are bundled together within the CNS to form fiber tracts.

Gray Matter

Gray matter refers to areas that contain large numbers of nerve cell bodies and dendrites. Collectively, these cell bodies give the region its grayish coloration. Gray matter covers the entire surface of the cerebrum and is called the cerebral cortex. The cortex is estimated to contain 50 billion neurons—approximately 500 billion neuroglial cells and a significant capillary network (Fitzgerald et al., 2012). Gray matter is also present deep within the spinal cord and is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Fibers and Pathways

Major sensory or *afferent tracts* carry information to the brain, and major motor or efferent tracts relay transmissions from the brain to smooth and skeletal muscles. Sensory information enters the CNS through the spinal cord or by the cranial nerves as the senses of smell, sight, hearing, touch, taste, heat, cold, pressure, pain, and movement. Information travels in fiber tracts composed of axons that ascend in a particular path from the sensory receptor to the cortex for perception, association, and interpretation. Motor signals descend from the cortex to the spinal cord through

efferent fiber tracts for muscle activation. Fiber tracts are designated by their point of origin and by the area in which they terminate. Thus, the corticospinal tract, the primary motor tract, originates in the cortex and terminates in the spinal cord. The lateral spinothalamic tract, a sensory tract, begins in the gray matter of the spinal cord and ascends in the lateral aspect of the cord to terminate in the thalamus. A more thorough discussion of motor and sensory tracts is presented later in this chapter.

Brain

The brain consists of the cerebrum, which is divided into two cerebral hemispheres (the right and the left), the cerebellum, and the brain stem. The surface of the cerebrum or cerebral cortex is composed of depressions *(sulci)* and ridges *(gyri)*. These convolutions increase the surface area of the cerebrum without requiring an increase in the size of the brain. The outer surface of the cerebrum is composed of gray matter approximately 2 to 4 mm thick, whereas the inner surface is composed of white matter fiber tracts (Fitzgerald et al., 2012). Information is conveyed by the white matter and is processed and integrated within the gray matter, although there are also several nuclei within the cerebral hemispheres that interconnect with the cortex and/or each other.

Supportive and Protective Structures

The brain is protected by a number of different structures and substances to minimize the possibility of injury. First, the brain is surrounded by a bony structure called the skull or cranium. The brain is also covered by three layers of membranes called *meninges,* which provide additional protection. The outermost layer is the *dura mater*. The dura is a thick, fibrous connective tissue membrane that adheres to the cranium. The dural covering has two distinct projections: the falx cerebri, which separates the cerebral hemispheres, and the tentorium cerebelli, which provides a separation between the posterior cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum. The area between the dura mater and the skull is known as the *epidural space*. The next or middle layer is the *arachnoid*. The space between the dura and the arachnoid is called the *subarachnoid space*. The cerebral arteries are located here. The third protective layer is the *pia mater*. This is the innermost layer and adheres to the brain itself. The cranial meninges are continuous with the membranes that cover and protect the spinal cord. Cerebrospinal fluid bathes the brain and circulates within the subarachnoid space. Figure 2-5 shows the relationship of the skull with the cerebral meninges.

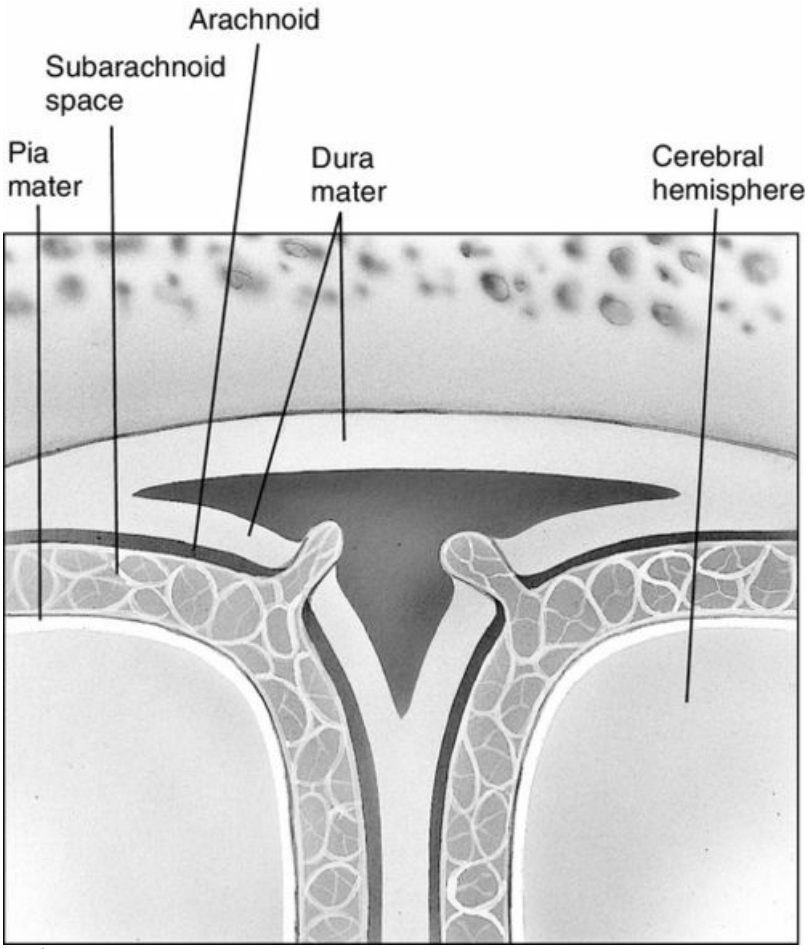


FIGURE 2-5 Coronal section through the skull, meninges, and cerebral hemispheres. The section shows the midline structures near the top of the skull. The three layers of meninges, the superior sagittal sinus, and arachnoid granulations are indicated. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

Lobes of the Cerebrum

The cerebrum is divided into four lobes—frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital—each having unique functions, as shown in Figure 2-6, *A*. The hemispheres of the brain, although apparent mirror images of one another, have specialized functions as well. This sidedness of brain function is called hemispheric specialization or lateralization.

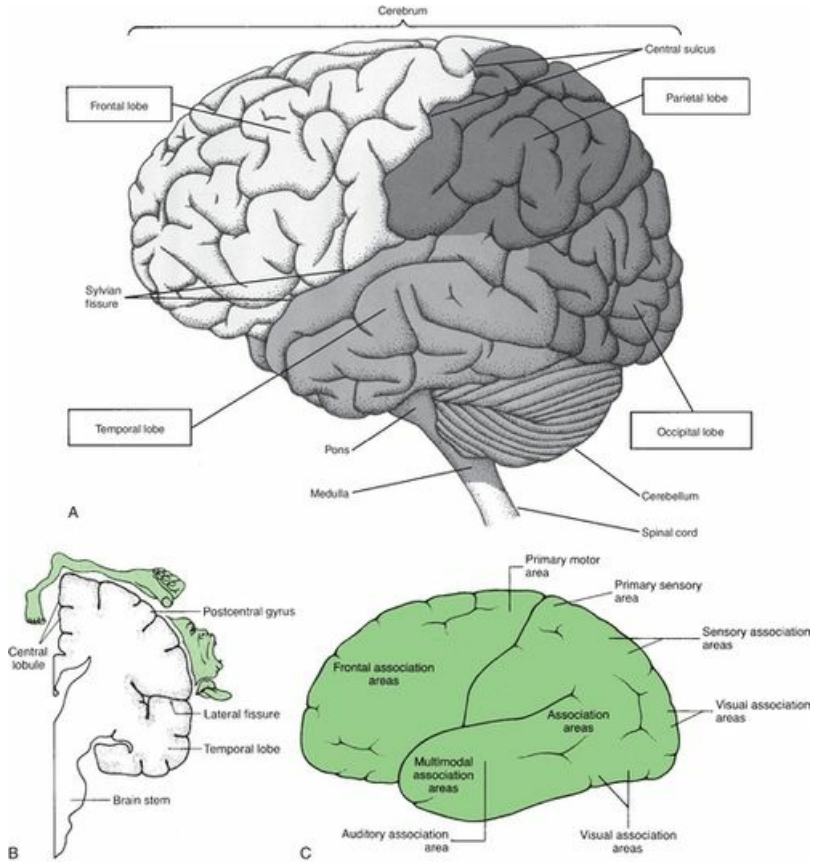


FIGURE 2-6 The brain. **A,** Left lateral view of the brain, showing the principal divisions of the brain and the four major lobes of the cerebrum. **B,** Sensory homunculus. **C,** Primary and association sensory and motor areas of the brain. (**A** from Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders; **B** and **C** from Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span,* ed 3, St Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

Frontal lobe

The frontal lobe contains the primary motor cortex. The frontal lobe is responsible for voluntary control of complex motor activities. In addition to its motor responsibilities, the frontal lobe also exhibits a strong influence over cognitive functions, including judgment, attention, awareness, abstract thinking, mood, and aggression. The principal motor region responsible for speech (Broca's area) is located within the frontal lobe. In the left hemisphere, Broca's area plans movements of the mouth to produce speech. In the opposite hemisphere, this same area is responsible for nonverbal communication, including gestures and adjustments of the individual's tone of voice.

Parietal lobe

The parietal lobe contains the primary sensory cortex. Incoming sensory information is processed within this lobe and meaning is provided to the stimuli. Perception is the process of attaching meaning to sensory information and requires interaction between the brain, body, and the individual's environment (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Much of our perceptual learning requires a functioning parietal lobe. Specific body regions are assigned locations within the parietal lobe for this interpretation. This mapping is known as the sensory homunculus (Figure 2-6, *B*). The parietal lobe also plays a role in short-term memory functions.

Temporal lobe

The temporal lobe contains the primary auditory cortex. Wernicke's area of the temporal lobe is the highest center for interpretation of all the sensory systems and allows an individual to hear and comprehend spoken language. Visual perception, musical discrimination, and long-term memory capabilities are all functions associated with the temporal lobe.

Occipital lobe

The occipital lobe contains the primary visual cortex. The eyes take in visual signals concerning objects in the visual field and relay that information. The visual association cortex is extensive and is located throughout the cerebral hemispheres.

Association Cortex

Association areas are regions within the parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes that horizontally link different parts of the cortex. For example, the sensory association cortex integrates and interprets information from all the lobes receiving sensory input and allows individuals to perceive and attach meaning to sensory experiences. Additional functions of the association areas include personality, memory, intelligence, and the generation of emotions (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Figure 2-6, *C* depicts association areas within the cerebral hemispheres.

Motor Areas of the Cerebral Cortex

The primary motor cortex, located in the frontal lobe, is primarily responsible for contralateral voluntary control of the upper and lower extremity and facial movements. Thus, a greater proportion of the total surface area of this region is devoted to neurons that control these body parts. Other motor areas include the premotor area, which controls muscles of the trunk and anticipatory postural adjustments, the supplementary motor area which controls initiation of movement, orientation of the eyes and head, and bilateral, sequential movements, and Broca's area, which is "responsible for planning movements of the mouth during speech and the grammatical aspects of language" (Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

Hemispheric Specialization

The cerebrum can be further divided into the right and left *cerebral hemispheres*. Gross anatomic differences have been demonstrated within the hemispheres. The hemisphere that is responsible for language is considered the dominant hemisphere. Approximately 95% of the population, including all right-handed individuals, are left-hemisphere dominant. Even in individuals who are left-hand dominant, the left hemisphere is the primary speech center in about 50% of these people (Geschwind and Levitsky, 1968; Gilman and Newman, 2003; Guyton, 1991; Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Table 2-1 lists primary functions of both the left and right cerebral hemispheres.

Table 2-1

Behaviors Attributed to the Left and Right Brain Hemispheres

Behavior	Left Hemisphere	Right Hemisphere
Cognition/intellect	Processing information in a sequential, linear manner Observing and analyzing details	Processing information in a simultaneous, holistic, or gestalt manner Grasping overall organization or pattern
Perception/cognition	Processing and producing language, processing verbal cues and instructions	Processing nonverbal stimuli (environmental sounds, visual cues, speech intonation, complex shapes, and designs) Visual-spatial perception Drawing inferences, synthesizing information
Academic skills	Reading: sound-symbol relationships, word recognition, reading comprehension Performing mathematical calculations	Mathematical reasoning and judgment Alignment of numerals in calculations
Motor and task performance	Planning and sequencing movements Performing movements and gestures to command	Sustaining a movement or posture, consistency in movement performance
Behavior and emotions	Organization, Expressing positive emotions	Ability to self-correct, judgment, awareness of disability and safety concerns Expressing negative emotions and perceiving emotion

(Adapted from O'Sullivan SB: Stroke. In O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, editors: *Physical rehabilitation assessment and treatment*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2001, FA Davis; O'Sullivan SB: Stroke. In O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, editors: *Physical rehabilitation*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2014, FA Davis.)

Left Hemisphere Functions

The left hemisphere has been described as the verbal or analytic side of the brain. The left hemisphere allows for the processing of information in a sequential, organized, logical, and linear manner. The processing of information in a step-by-step or detailed fashion allows for thorough analysis. For the majority of people, language is produced and processed in the left hemisphere, specifically the frontal and temporal lobes. The left parietal lobe allows an individual to recognize words and to comprehend what has been read. In addition, mathematical calculations are performed in the left parietal lobe. An individual is able to sequence and perform movements and gestures as a result of a functioning left frontal lobe. A final behavior assigned to the left cerebral hemisphere is the expression of positive emotions, such as happiness and love. Common

impairments seen in patients with left hemispheric injury include an inability to plan motor tasks (apraxia); difficulty in initiating, sequencing, and processing a task; difficulty in producing or comprehending speech; memory impairments; and perseveration of speech or motor behaviors (O'Sullivan, 2014).

Right Hemisphere Functions

The right cerebral hemisphere is responsible for an individual's nonverbal and artistic abilities. The right side of the brain allows individuals to process information in a complete or holistic fashion without specifically reviewing all the details. The individual is able to grasp or comprehend general concepts. Visual-perceptual functions including eye-hand coordination, spatial relationships, and perception of one's position in space are carried out in the right hemisphere. The ability to communicate nonverbally and to comprehend what is being expressed is also assigned to the right parietal lobe. Nonverbal skills including understanding facial gestures, recognizing visual-spatial relationships, and awareness of body image are processed in the right side of the brain. Other functions include mathematical reasoning and judgment, sustaining a movement or posture, and perceiving negative emotions, such as anger and unhappiness (O'Sullivan, 2014). Specific deficits that can be observed in patients with right hemisphere damage include poor judgment and safety awareness, unrealistic expectations, denial of disability or deficits, disturbances in body image, irritability, and lethargy.

Hemispheric Connections

Even though the two hemispheres of the brain have discrete functional capabilities, they perform many of the same actions. Communication between the two hemispheres is constant, so individuals can be analytic and yet still grasp broad general concepts. It is possible for the right hand to know what the left hand is doing and vice versa. The corpus callosum is a large group of axons that connect the right and left cerebral hemispheres and allow communication between the two cortices.

Deeper Brain Structures

Subcortical structures lie deep within the brain and include the internal capsule, the diencephalon, and the basal ganglia. These structures are briefly discussed because of their functional significance to motor function.

Internal Capsule

The internal capsule contains the major projection fibers that run to and from the cerebral cortex. All descending fibers leaving the motor areas of the frontal lobe travel through the internal capsule, a deep structure within the cerebral hemisphere. The internal capsule is made up of axons that project from the cortex to the white matter fibers (subcortical structures) located below and from subcortical structures to the cerebral cortex. The capsule is shaped like a less-than sign (<) and has five regions. The anterior limb connects to the frontal cerebral cortex, the genu contains the motor fibers that are going to some of the brain stem motor nuclei, the posterior limb carries sensory signals relayed from the thalamus to the parietal cortex and the frontal signals of the corticospinal tract. The other two limbs relay visual and auditory signals from the thalamus to the occipital and temporal lobes, respectively. A lesion within this area can cause contralateral loss of voluntary movement and conscious somatosensation, which is the ability to perceive tactile and proprioceptive input. The internal capsule is pictured in Figure 2-7.

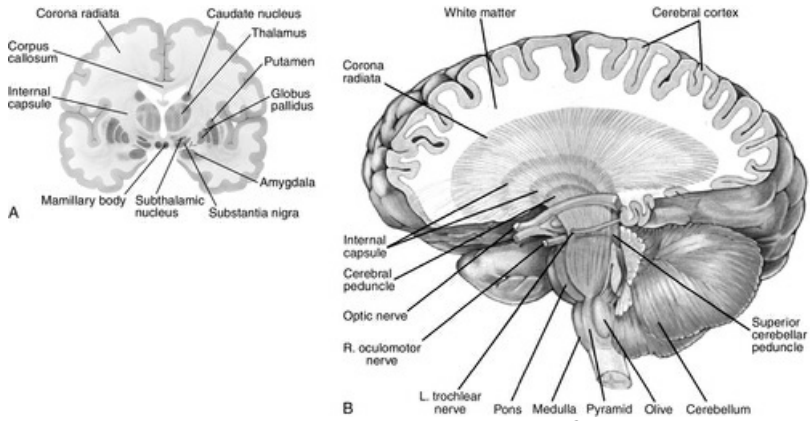


FIGURE 2-7 The cerebrum. **A**, Diencephalon and cerebral hemispheres. Coronal section. **B,** A deep dissection of the cerebrum showing the radiating nerve fibers, the corona radiata, that conduct signals in both directions between the cerebral cortex and the lower portions of the central nervous system. (**A** from Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation*, ed 4, St Louis, 2013, WB Elsevier; **B** from Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

Diencephalon

The diencephalon is situated deep within the cerebrum and is composed of the thalamus, epithalamus, and subthalamus. The diencephalon is the area where the major sensory tracts (dorsal columns and lateral spinothalamic) and the visual and auditory pathways synapse. The thalamus consists of a large collection of nuclei and synapses. In this way, the thalamus serves as a central relay station for sensory impulses traveling upward from other parts of the body and brain to the cerebrum. It receives sensory signals and channels them to appropriate regions of the cortex for interpretation. Moreover, the thalamus relays sensory information to the appropriate association areas within the cortex. Motor information received from the basal ganglia and cerebellum is transmitted to the correct motor region through the thalamus.

Hypothalamus

The hypothalamus is a group of nuclei that lie at the base of the brain, underneath the thalamus. The hypothalamus regulates homeostasis, which is the maintenance of a balanced internal environment. This structure is primarily involved in automatic functions, including the regulation of hunger, thirst, digestion, body temperature, blood pressure, sexual activity, and sleep-wake cycles. The hypothalamus is responsible for integrating the functions of both the endocrine system and the ANS through its regulation of the pituitary gland and its release of hormones.

Basal Nuclei

Another group of nuclei located at the base of the cerebrum comprise the basal ganglia. The basal ganglia form a subcortical structure made up of the caudate nucleus, putamen, globus pallidus, substantia nigra, and subthalamic nuclei. The globus pallidus and putamen form the lentiform nucleus, and the caudate and putamen are known as the neostriatum. The nuclei of the basal ganglia influence the motor planning areas of the cerebral cortex through various motor circuits. Primary responsibilities of the basal ganglia include the regulation of posture and muscle tone and the control of volitional and automatic movement. In addition to the caudate and putamen's role in motor control, the caudate nucleus is involved in cognitive functions. The most common condition that results from dysfunction within the basal ganglia is Parkinson disease. The substantia nigra, a nucleus that is part of the basal ganglia, "loses its ability to produce dopamine, a neurotransmitter necessary to normal function of basal ganglia neurons" (Fuller et al., 2009). This can lead to symptoms of Parkinson disease, which can include bradykinesia (slowness initiating movement), akinesia (difficulty in initiating movement), tremors, rigidity, and postural instability.

Limbic System

The limbic system is a group of deep brain structures in the diencephalon and cortex that includes parts of the thalamus and hypothalamus and a portion of the frontal and temporal lobes. The hypothalamus and the amygdala play a role in the control of primitive emotional reactions,

including rage and fear. The amygdala relays signals to the limbic system. The limbic system guides the emotions that regulate behavior and is involved in learning and memory. More specifically, the limbic system appears to control memory, pain, pleasure, rage, affection, sexual interest, fear, and sorrow.

Cerebellum

The *cerebellum* controls balance and complex muscular movements. It is located below the occipital lobe of the cerebrum and is posterior to the brain stem. It fills the posterior fossa of the cranium. Like the cerebrum, it also consists of two symmetric hemispheres and a midline vermis. The cerebellum is responsible for the integration, coordination, and execution of multijoint movements. The cerebellum regulates the initiation, timing, sequencing, and force generation of muscle contractions. It sequences the order of muscle firing when a group of muscles work together to perform a movement such as stepping or reaching. The cerebellum also assists with balance and posture maintenance and has been identified as a comparator of actual motor performance to that which is anticipated. The cerebellum monitors and compares the movement requested, for instance, the step, with a movement actually performed (Horak, 1991).

Brain Stem

The *brain stem* is located between the base of the cerebrum and the spinal cord and is divided into three sections (Figure 2-8). Moving cephalocaudally, the three areas are the midbrain, pons, and medulla. Each of the different areas is responsible for specific functions. The *midbrain* connects the diencephalon to the pons and acts as a relay station for tracts passing between the cerebrum and the spinal cord or cerebellum. The midbrain also houses reflex centers for visual, auditory, and tactile responses. The *pons* contains bundles of axons that travel between the cerebellum and the rest of the CNS and functions with the medulla to regulate breathing rate. It also contains reflex centers that assist with orientation of the head in response to visual and auditory stimulation. Cranial nerve nuclei can also be found within the pons, specifically, cranial nerves V through VIII, which carry motor and sensory information to and from the face. The *medulla* is an extension of the spinal cord and contains the fiber tracts that run through the spinal cord. Motor and sensory nuclei for the neck and mouth region are located within the medulla, as well as the control centers for heart rate and respiration. Reflex centers for vomiting, sneezing, and swallowing are also located within the medulla.

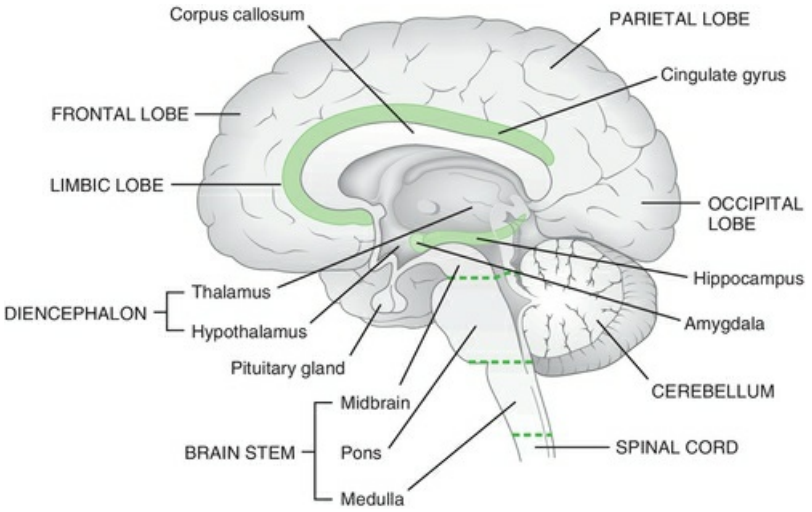


FIGURE 2-8 Schematic midsagittal view of the brain shows the relationship between the cerebral cortex, cerebellum, spinal cord, and brain stem, and the subcortical structures important to functional movement. (From Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, St Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

The *reticular formation* is also situated within the brain stem and extends vertically throughout its length. The system maintains and adjusts an individual's level of arousal, including sleep-wake cycles. In addition, the reticular formation facilitates the voluntary and autonomic motor responses

necessary for certain self-regulating, homeostatic functions and is involved in the modulation of muscle tone throughout the body.

Spinal Cord

The *spinal cord* has two primary functions: coordination of motor information and movement patterns and communication of sensory information. Subconscious reflexes, including withdrawal and stretch reflexes, are integrated within the spinal cord. Additionally, the spinal cord provides a means of communication between the brain and the peripheral nerves. The spinal cord is a direct continuation of the brain stem, specifically the medulla. The spinal cord is housed within the vertebral column and extends approximately to the level of the intervertebral disc between the first two lumbar vertebrae. The spinal cord has two enlargements—one that extends from the third cervical segment to the second thoracic segment and another that extends from the first lumbar to the third sacral segment. These enlargements accommodate the great number of neurons needed to innervate the upper and lower extremities located in these regions. At approximately the vertebral L1 level, the spinal cord becomes a cone-shaped structure called the conus medullaris. The conus medullaris is composed of sacral spinal segments. Below this level, the spinal cord becomes a mass of spinal nerve roots called the cauda equina. The cauda equina consists of the nerve roots for spinal nerves L2 through S5. Figure 2-9 depicts the spinal cord and its relation to the brain. A thin filament, the filum terminale, extends from the caudal end of the spinal cord and attaches to the coccyx. In addition to the bony protection offered by the vertebrae, the spinal cord is also covered by the same protective meningeal coverings, as in the brain.

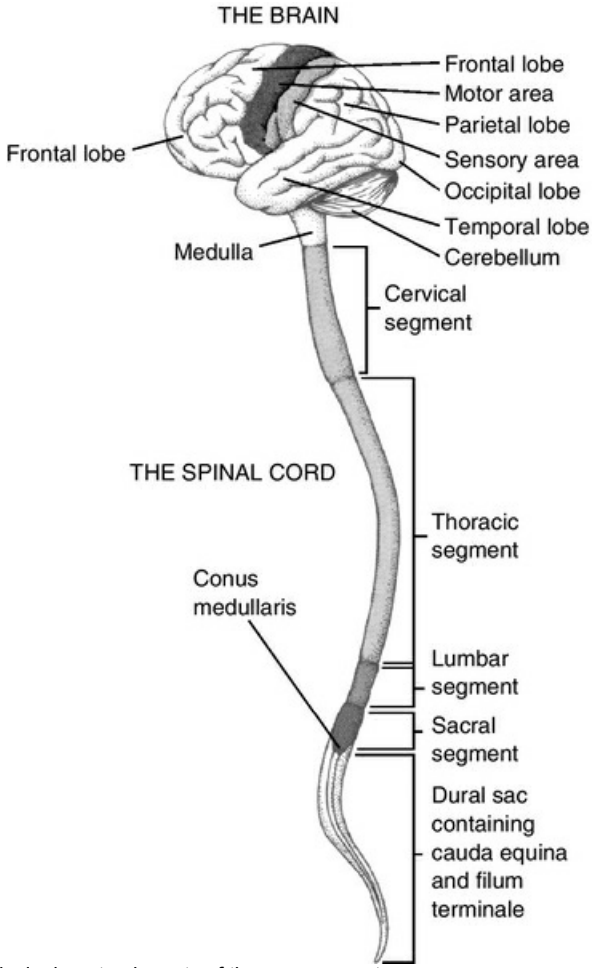


FIGURE 2-9 The principal anatomic parts of the nervous system. (From Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

Internal Anatomy

The internal anatomy of the spinal cord can be visualized in cross-sections and is viewed as two distinct areas. Figure 2-10, *A* illustrates the internal anatomy of the spinal cord. Like the brain, the spinal cord is composed of gray and white matter. The center of the spinal cord, the gray matter, is distinguished by its H-shaped or butterfly-shaped pattern. The gray matter contains cell bodies of motor and sensory neurons and synapses. The upper portion is known as the dorsal or posterior horn and is responsible for transmitting sensory stimuli. The lower portion is referred to as the anterior or ventral horn (Figure 2-10, *B*). It contains cell bodies of lower motor neurons, and its primary function is to transmit motor impulses. The lateral horn is present at the T1 to L2 levels and contains cell bodies of preganglionic sympathetic neurons. It is responsible for processing autonomic information. The periphery of the spinal cord is composed of white matter. The white matter is composed of sensory (ascending) and motor (descending) fiber tracts. A tract is a group of nerve fibers that are similar in origin, destination, and function. These fiber tracts carry impulses to and from various areas within the nervous system. In addition, these fiber tracts cross over from one side of the body to the other at various points within the spinal cord and brain. Therefore, an injury to the right side of the spinal cord may produce a loss of motor or sensory function on the contralateral side.

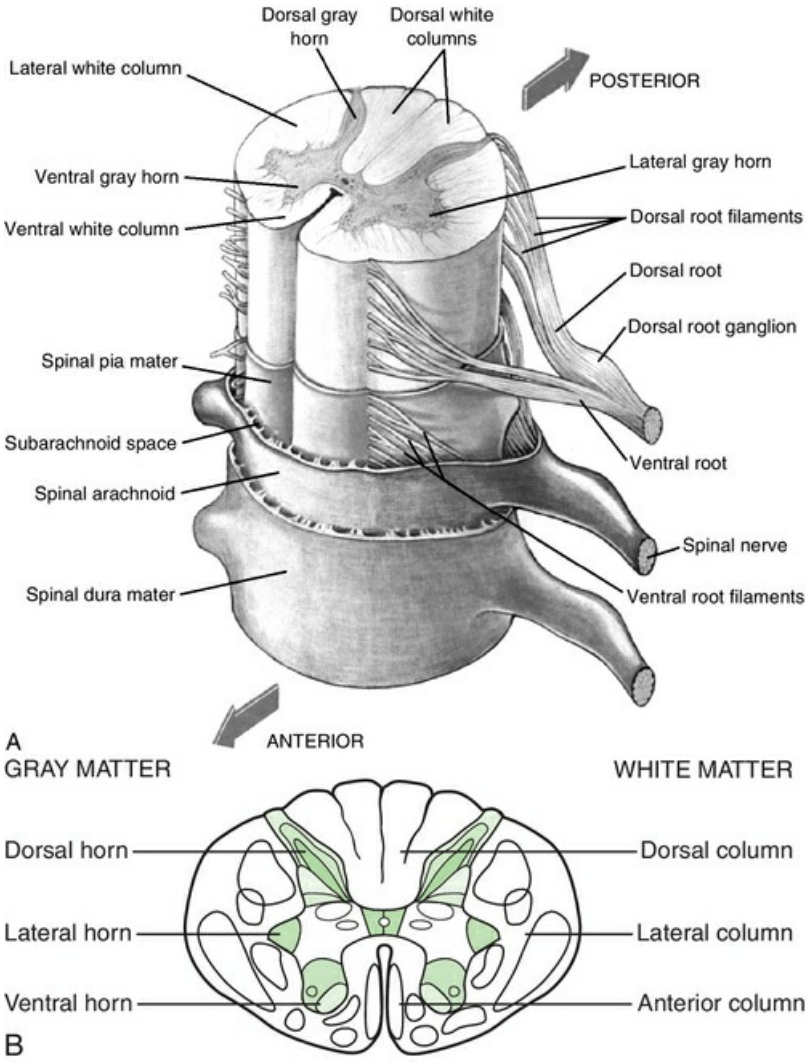


FIGURE 2-10 The spinal cord. **A,** Structures of the spinal cord and its connections with the spinal nerve by way of the dorsal and ventral spinal roots. Note also the coverings of the spinal cord, the meninges. **B,** Cross-section of the spinal cord. The central gray matter is divided into horns and a commissure. The white matter is divided into columns. (**A** from Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology,* ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

Major Afferent (Sensory) Tracts

Two primary ascending sensory tracts are present in the white matter of the spinal cord. The dorsal or posterior columns carry information about position sense (proprioception), vibration, two-point discrimination, and deep touch. Figure 2-10 shows the location of this tract. The fibers of the dorsal columns cross in the brain stem. Pain and temperature sensations are transmitted in the spinothalamic tract located anterolaterally in the spinal cord (Figure 2-11). Fibers from this tract enter the spinal cord, synapse, and cross within three segments. Sensory information must be relayed to the thalamus. Touch information has to be processed by the cerebral cortex for discrimination to occur. Light touch and pressure sensations enter the spinal cord, synapse, and are carried in the dorsal and ventral columns.

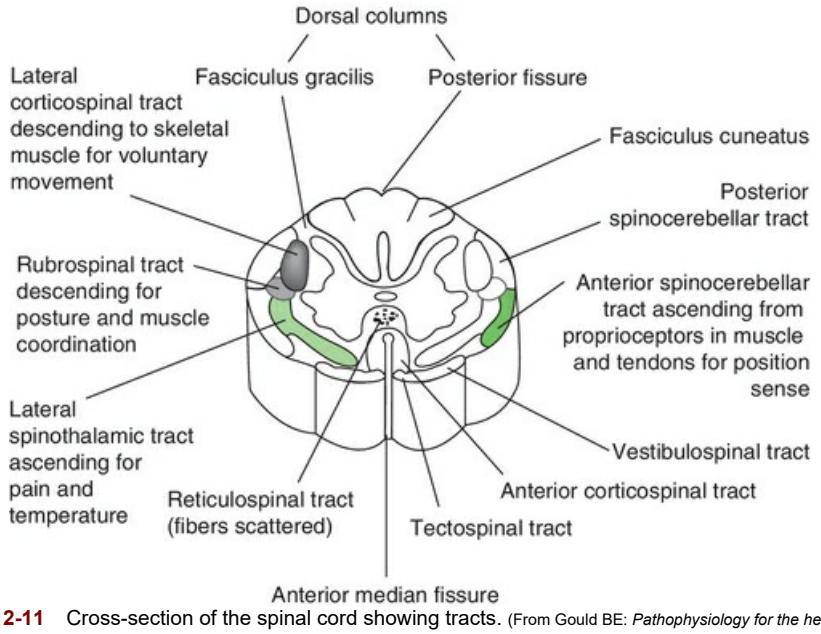


FIGURE 2-11 Cross-section of the spinal cord showing tracts. (From Gould BE: *Pathophysiology for the health-related professions*, Philadelphia, WB Saunders, 1997.)

Major Efferent (Motor) Tract

The corticospinal tract is the primary motor pathway and controls skilled movements of the extremities. This tract originates in the frontal lobe from the primary and premotor cortices, descends through the internal capsule, and continues to finally synapse on anterior horn cells in the spinal cord. This tract also crosses from one side to the other in the brain stem. A common indicator of corticospinal tract damage is the Babinski sign. To test for this sign, the clinician takes a blunt object, such as the back of a pen and runs it along the lateral border of the patient's foot (Figure 2-12). The sign is present when the great toe extends and the other toes splay. The presence of a Babinski sign indicates that damage to the corticospinal tract has occurred.

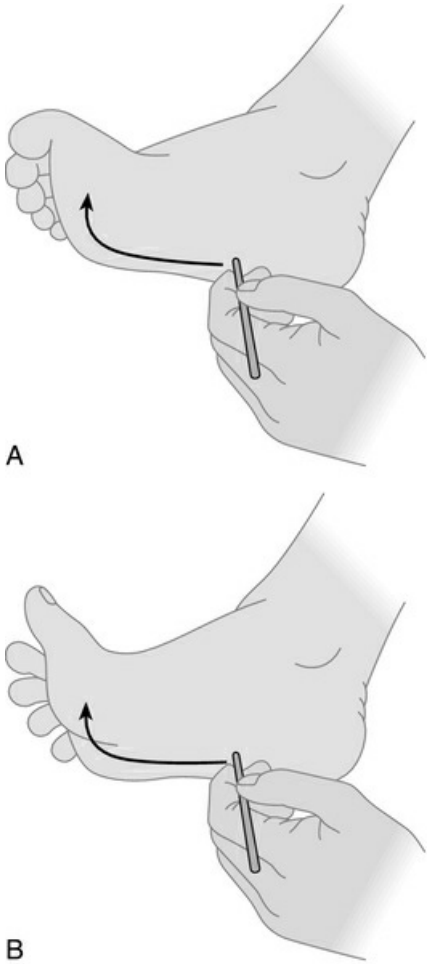


FIGURE 2-12 Babinski sign. **A,** Normal. Stroking from the heel to the ball of the foot along the lateral sole, then across the ball of the foot, normally causes the toes to flex. **B,** Developmental or pathologic. Babinski sign in response to the same stimulus. In people with corticospinal tract lesions, or in infants younger than 7 months old, the great toe extends. Although the other toes may fan out, as shown, movement of the toes other than the great toe is not required for the Babinski sign. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier, 2013.)

Other Descending Tracts

Other descending motor pathways that affect muscle tone are the rubrospinal, lateral and medial vestibulospinal, tectospinal, and medial and lateral reticulospinal tracts. The rubrospinal tract originates in the red nucleus of the midbrain and terminates in the anterior horn, where it synapses with lower motor neurons that primarily innervate the upper extremities. Fibers from this tract facilitate flexor motor neurons and inhibit extensor motor neurons. Proximal muscles are primarily affected, although the tract does exhibit some influence over more distal muscle groups. The rubrospinal tract has been said to assist in the correction of movement errors. The lateral vestibulospinal tract assists in postural adjustments through facilitation of proximal extensor muscles. Regulation of muscle tone in the neck and upper back is a function of the medial vestibulospinal tract. The medial reticulospinal tract facilitates limb extensors, whereas the lateral reticulospinal tract facilitates flexors and inhibits extensor muscle activity. The tectospinal tract provides for orientation of the head toward a sound or a moving object.

Anterior Horn Cell

An *anterior horn cell* is a large neuron located in the gray matter of the spinal cord. An anterior horn cell sends out axons through the ventral or anterior spinal root; these axons eventually become peripheral nerves and innervate muscle fibers. Thus, activation of an anterior horn cell stimulates skeletal muscle contraction. Alpha motor neurons are a type of anterior horn cell that innervate skeletal muscle. Because of axonal branching, several muscle fibers can be innervated by one

neuron. A motor unit consists of an alpha motor neuron and the muscle fibers it innervates. Gamma motor neurons are also located within the anterior horn. These motor neurons transmit impulses to the intrafusal fibers of the muscle spindle and assist with maintenance of muscle tone.

Muscle Spindle

The muscle spindle is the sensory organ found in skeletal muscle and is composed of motor and sensory endings and muscle fibers. These fibers respond to stretch and therefore provide feedback to the CNS regarding the muscle's length.

The easiest way to conceptualize how the muscle spindle functions within the nervous system is to review the stretch reflex mechanism. Stretch or deep tendon reflexes can easily be facilitated in the biceps, triceps, quadriceps, and gastrocnemius muscles. If a sensory stimulus, such as a tap, on the patellar tendon is applied to the muscle and its spindle, the input will enter through the dorsal root of the spinal cord to synapse on the anterior horn cell (alpha motor neurons). Stimulation of the anterior horn cell elicits a motor response, such as reflex contraction of the quadriceps (extension of the knee), as information is carried through the anterior root to the skeletal muscle. An important note about stretch or deep tendon reflexes is that their activation and subsequent motor response can occur without higher cortical influence. The sensory input entering the spinal cord does not have to be transmitted to the cortex for interpretation. This has clinical implications, because it means that a patient with a cervical spinal cord injury can continue to exhibit lower extremity deep tendon reflexes despite lower extremity paralysis.

PNS

The PNS consists of the nerves leading to and from the CNS, including the cranial nerves exiting the brain stem and the spinal roots exiting the spinal cord, many of which combine to form peripheral nerves. These nerves connect the CNS functionally with the rest of the body through sensory and motor impulses. Figure 2-13 provides a schematic representation of the PNS and its transition to the CNS.

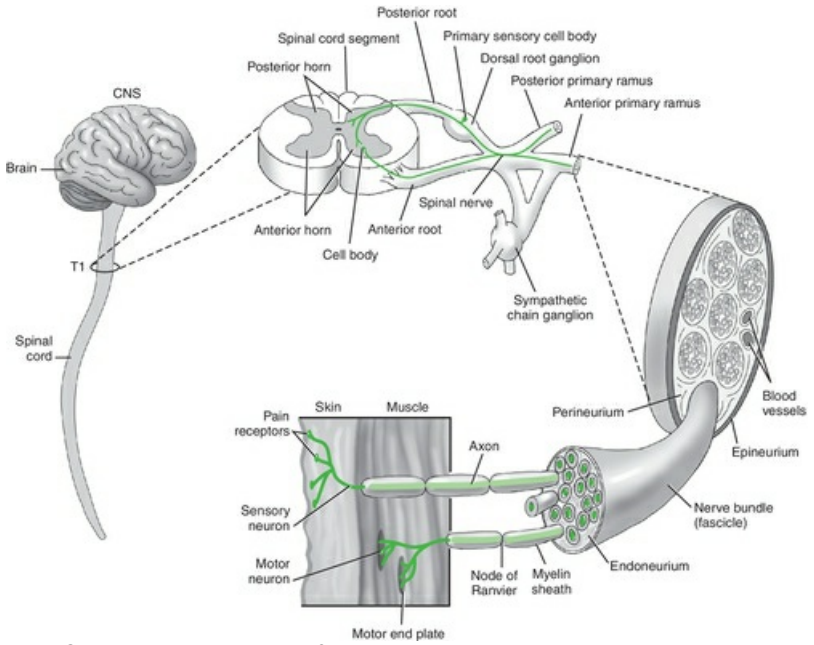


FIGURE 2-13 Schematic representation of the peripheral nervous system and the transition to the central nervous system.

The PNS is divided into two primary components: the somatic (body) nervous system and the ANS. The somatic or voluntary nervous system is concerned with reactions to external stimulation. This system is under conscious control and is responsible for skeletal muscle contraction by way of the 31 pairs of spinal nerves. By contrast, the ANS is an involuntary system that innervates glands,

smooth (visceral) muscle, and the myocardium. The primary function of the ANS is to maintain *homeostasis,* an optimal internal environment. Specific functions include the regulation of digestion, circulation, and cardiac muscle contraction.

Somatic Nervous System

Within the PNS are 12 pairs of cranial nerves, 31 pairs of spinal nerves, and the ganglia or cell bodies associated with the cranial and spinal nerves. The cranial nerves are located in the brain stem and can be sensory or motor nerves, or mixed. Primary functions of the cranial nerves include eye movement, smell, sensation perceived by the face and tongue, auditory and vestibular functions, and innervation of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. See Table 2-2 for a more detailed list of cranial nerves and their major functions.

Table 2-2
Cranial Nerves

Number	Name	Related Function	Connection to Brain
I	Olfactory	Smell	Inferior frontal lobe
II	Optic	Vision	Diencephalon
III	Oculomotor	Moves eye up, down, medially; raises upper eyelid; constricts pupil; adjusts the shape of the lens of the eye	Midbrain (anterior)
IV	Trochlear	Moves eye medially and down	Midbrain (posterior)
V	Trigeminal	Facial sensation, chewing, sensation from temporomandibular joint	Pons (lateral)
VI	Abducens	Abducts eye	Between pons and medulla
VII	Facial	Facial expression, closes eye, tears, salivation, taste	Between pons and medulla
VIII	Vestibulocochlear	Sensation of head position relative to gravity and head movement; hearing	Between pons and medulla
IX	Glossopharyngeal	Swallowing, salivation, taste	Medulla
X	Vagus	Regulates viscera, swallowing, speech, taste	Medulla
XI	Accessory	Elevates shoulders, turns head	Spinal cord and medulla
XII	Hypoglossal	Moves tongue	Medulla

(From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

The spinal nerves consist of 8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, and 5 sacral nerves and 1 coccygeal nerve. Cervical spinal nerves C1 through C7 exit above the corresponding vertebrae. Because there are only 7 cervical vertebrae, the C8 spinal nerve exits above the T1 vertebra. From that point on, each succeeding spinal nerve exits below its respective vertebra. Figure 2-14 shows the distribution and innervation of the peripheral nerves.

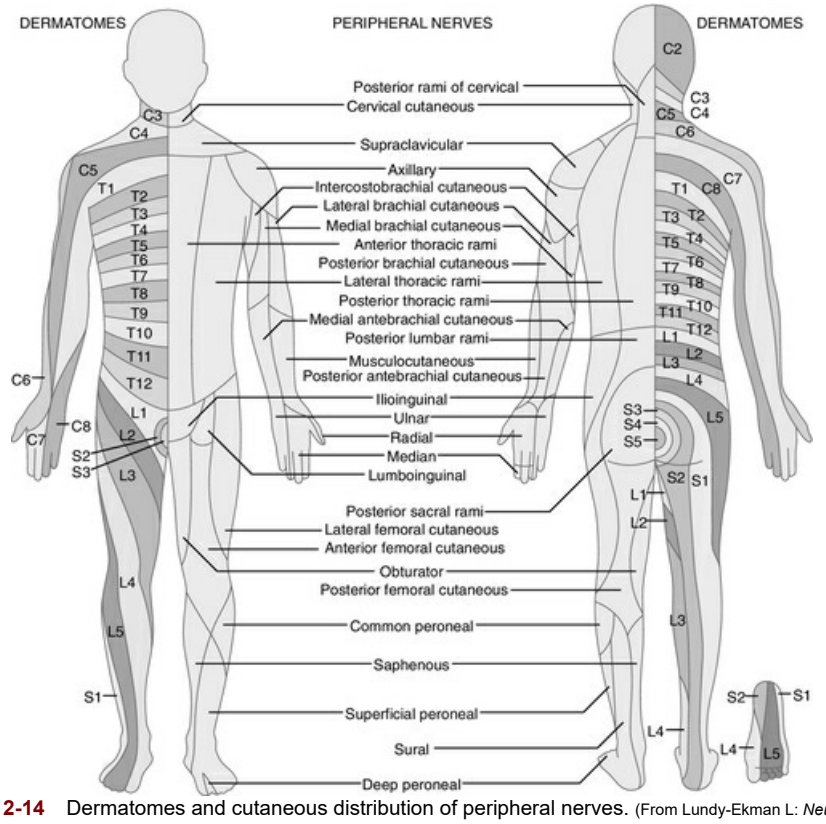


FIGURE 2-14 Dermatomes and cutaneous distribution of peripheral nerves. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2007, WB Saunders.)

Spinal nerves, consisting of sensory (posterior or dorsal root) and motor (anterior or ventral root) components, exit the intervertebral foramen. The region of skin innervated by sensory afferent fibers from an individual spinal nerve is called a *dermatome. Myotomes* are a group of muscles innervated by a spinal nerve. Once through the foramen, the spinal nerve divides into two primary rami. This division represents the beginning of the PNS. The dorsal or posterior rami innervate the paravertebral muscles, the posterior aspects of the vertebrae, and the overlying skin. The ventral or anterior primary rami innervate the intercostal muscles, the muscles and skin in the extremities, and the anterior and lateral trunk.

The 12 pairs of thoracic nerves do not join with other nerves and maintain their segmental relationship. However, the anterior primary rami of the other spinal nerves join together to form local networks known as the cervical, brachial, and lumbosacral plexuses (Guyton, 1991). The reader is given only a brief description of these nerve plexuses, because a detailed description of these structures is beyond the scope of this text.

Cervical plexus

The cervical plexus is composed of the C1 through C4 spinal nerves. These nerves primarily innervate the deep muscles of the neck, the superficial anterior neck muscles, the levator scapulae, and portions of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid. The phrenic nerve, one of the specific nerves within the cervical plexus, is formed from branches of C3 through C5. This nerve innervates the diaphragm, the primary muscle of ventilation, and is the only motor and main sensory nerve for this muscle (Guyton, 1991). Figure 2-15 identifies components of the cervical plexus.

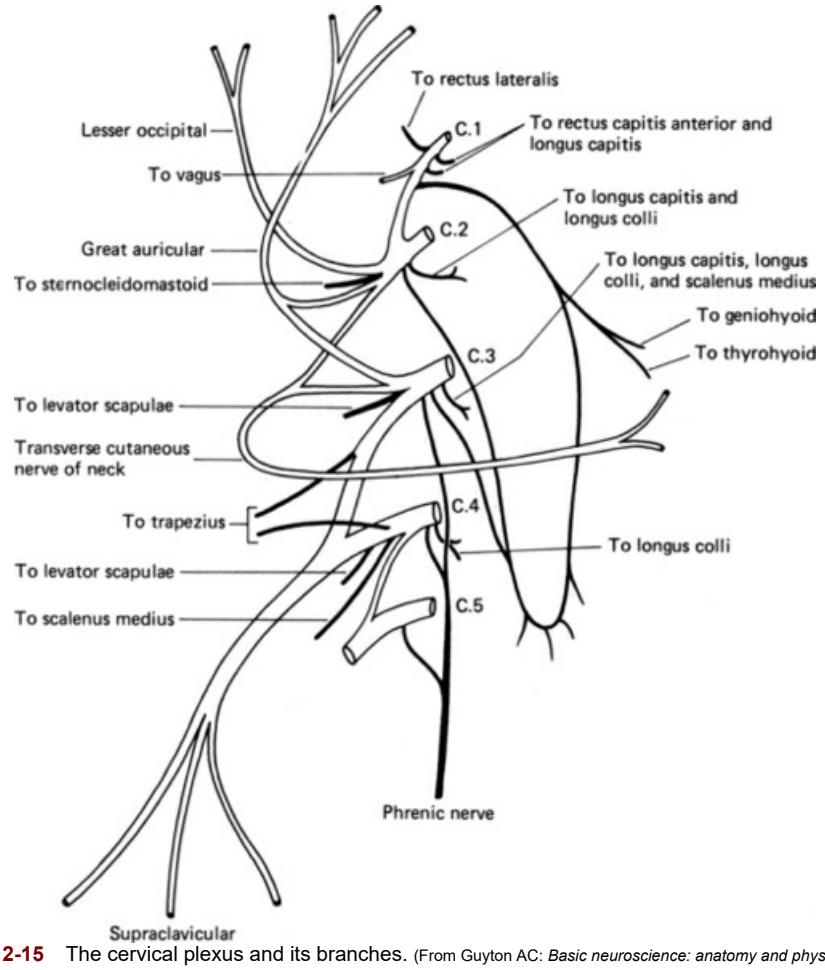


FIGURE 2-15 The cervical plexus and its branches. (From Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

Brachial plexus

The anterior primary rami of C5 through T1 form the brachial plexus. The plexus divides and comes together several times, providing muscles with motor and sensory innervation from more than one spinal nerve root level. The five primary nerves of the brachial plexus are the musculocutaneous, axillary, radial, median, and ulnar nerves. Figure 2-16 depicts the constituency of the brachial plexus. These five peripheral nerves innervate the majority of the upper extremity musculature, with the exception of the medial pectoral nerve (C8), which innervates the pectoralis muscles; the subscapular nerve (C5 and C6), which innervates the subscapularis; and the thoracodorsal nerve (C7), which supplies the latissimus dorsi muscle (Guyton, 1991).

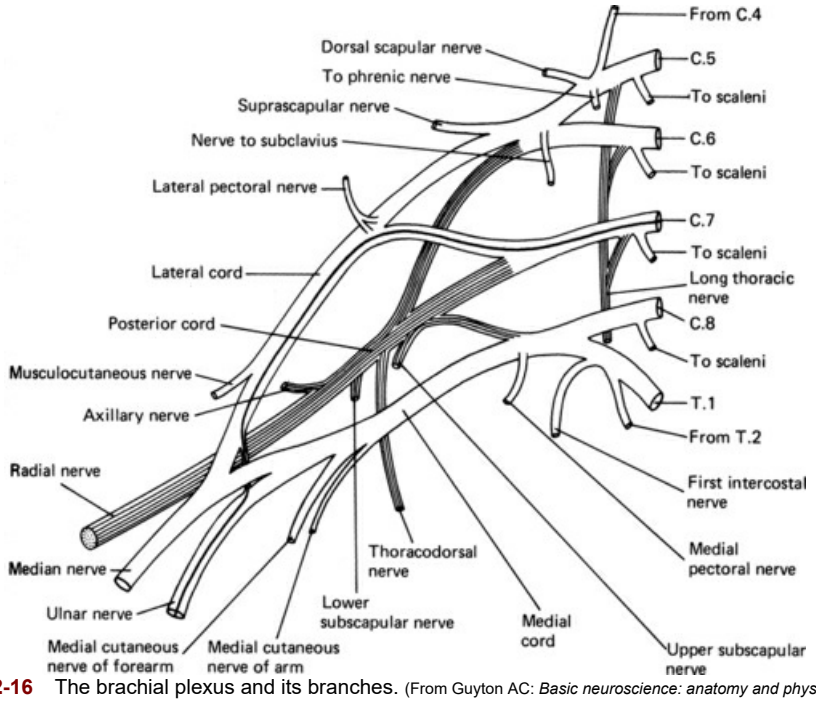


FIGURE 2-16 The brachial plexus and its branches. (From Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

The musculocutaneous nerve innervates the forearm flexors. The elbow, wrist, and finger extensors are innervated by the radial nerve. The median nerve supplies the forearm pronators and the wrist and finger flexors, and it allows thumb abduction and opposition. The ulnar nerve assists the median nerve with wrist and finger flexion, abducts and adducts the fingers, and allows for opposition of the fifth finger (Guyton, 1991).

Lumbosacral Plexus

Although some authors discuss the lumbar and sacral plexuses separately, they are discussed here as one unit, because together they innervate lower extremity musculature. The anterior primary rami of L1 through S3 form the lumbosacral plexus. This plexus innervates the muscles of the thigh, lower leg, and foot. This plexus does not undergo the same separation and reuniting as does the brachial plexus. The lumbosacral plexus has eight roots, which eventually form six primary peripheral nerves: obturator, femoral, superior gluteal, inferior gluteal, common peroneal, and tibial. The sciatic nerve, which is frequently discussed in physical therapy practice, is actually composed of the common peroneal and tibial nerves encased in a sheath. This nerve innervates the hamstrings and causes hip extension and knee flexion. The sciatic nerve separates into its components just above the knee (Guyton, 1991). The lumbosacral plexus is shown in Figures 2-17 and 2-18.

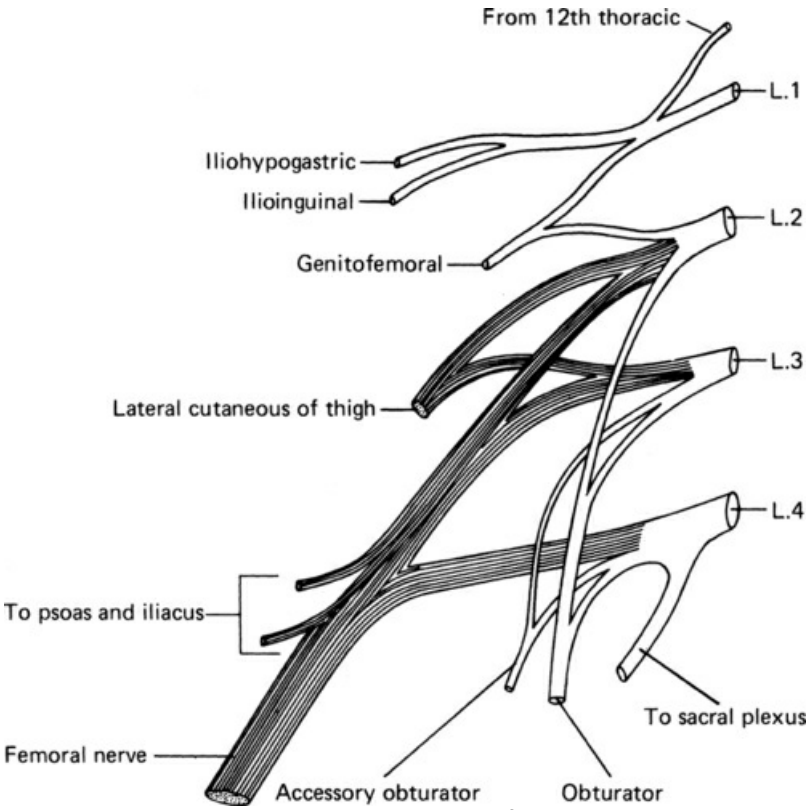


FIGURE 2-17 The lumbar plexus and its branches, especially the femoral nerve. (From Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology,* ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

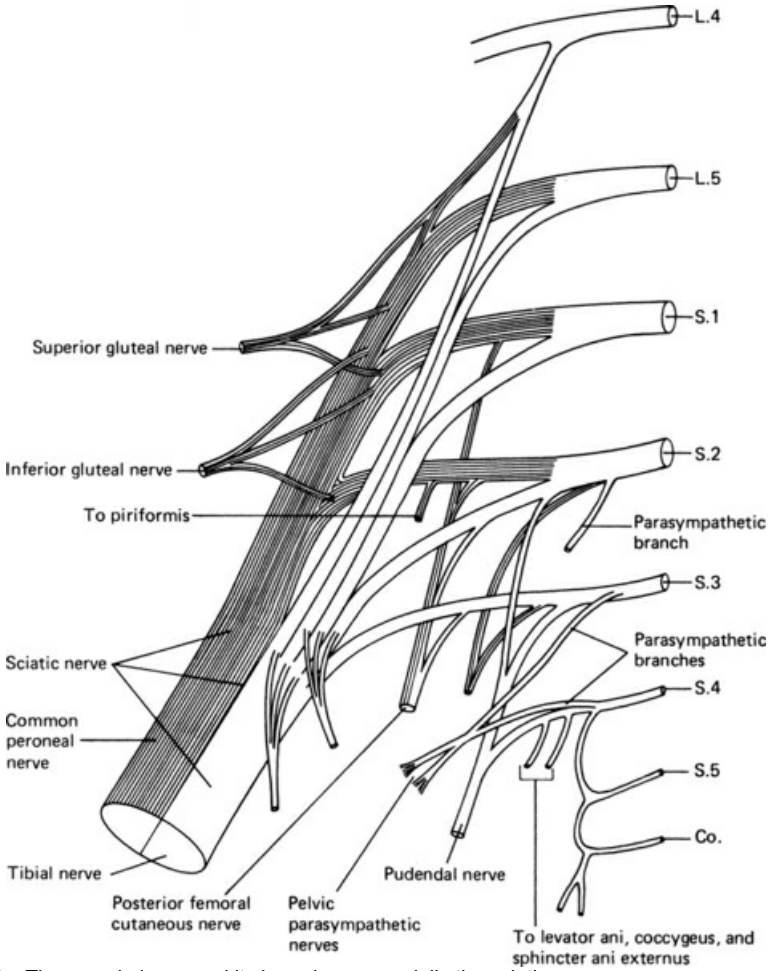
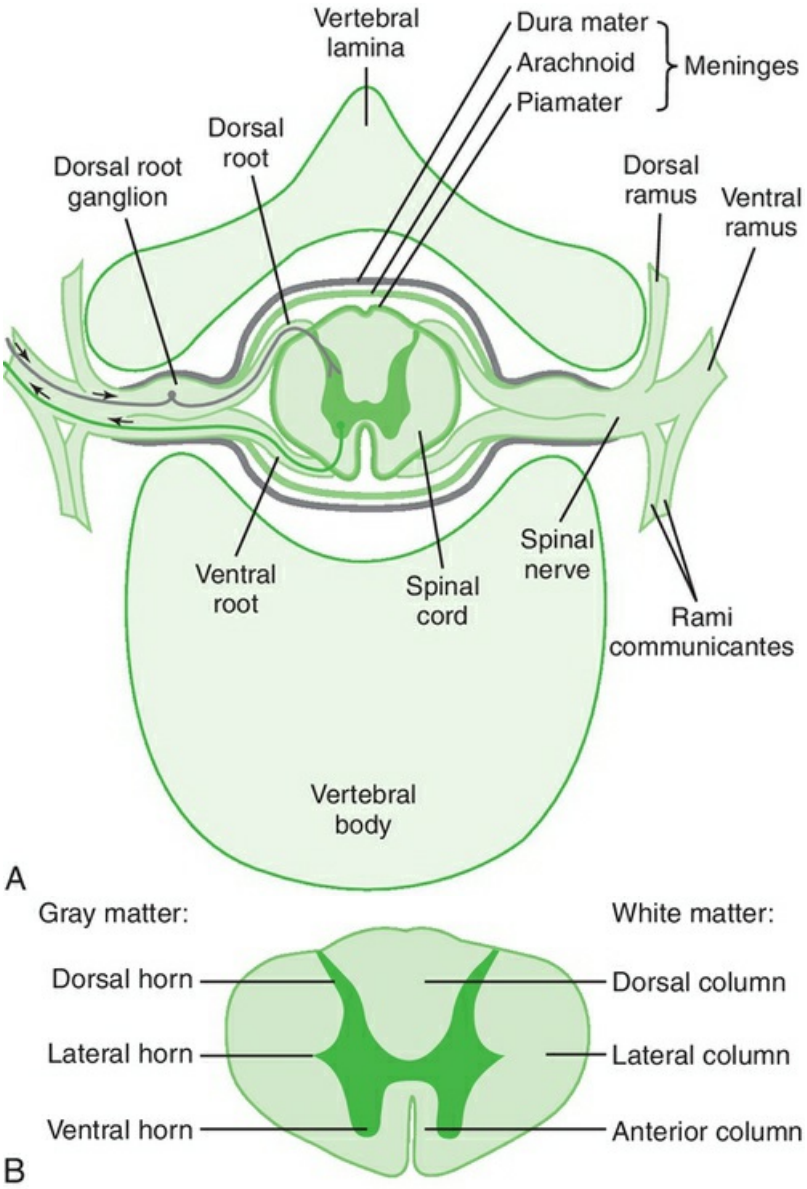


FIGURE 2-18 The sacral plexus and its branches, especially the sciatic nerve. (From Guyton AC: *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, WB Saunders.)

Peripheral Nerves

Two major types of nerve fibers are contained in peripheral nerves: motor (efferent) and sensory (afferent) fibers. Motor fibers have a large cell body with multiple branched dendrites and a long axon. The cell body and the dendrites are located within the anterior horn of the spinal cord. The axon exits the anterior horn through the white matter and is located with other similar axons in the anterior root, which is located outside the spinal cord in the intervertebral foramen. The axon then eventually becomes part of a peripheral nerve and innervates a motor end plate in a muscle. The sensory neuron, however, has a peripheral axon that innervates the receptors in the skin, muscle, or viscera. This travels in the peripheral nerve and its cell body is the dorsal root ganglion. The central axons of these cells form the dorsal roots that enter the spinal cord. An example is the Golgi tendon organ, which is innervated by a large myelinated axon (Figure 2-19). Golgi tendon organs are encapsulated nerve endings found at the musculotendinous junction. They are sensitive to tension within muscle tendons and transmit this information to the spinal cord. The axon travels through the dorsal (posterior) root of a spinal nerve and into the spinal cord through the dorsal horn. The axon may terminate at this point, or it may enter the white matter fiber tracts and ascend to a different level in the spinal cord or brain stem. Thus, a sensory neuron sends information from the periphery to the spinal cord.


Vertebral lamina
Dura mater
Arachnoid
Piamater
Meninges
Dorsal root
Dorsal root ganglion
Dorsal ramus
Ventral ramus
Ventral root
Spinal cord
Spinal nerve
Rami communicantes
Vertebral body
A
Gray matter:
White matter:
Dorsal horn
Dorsal column
Lateral horn
Lateral column
Ventral horn
Anterior column
B

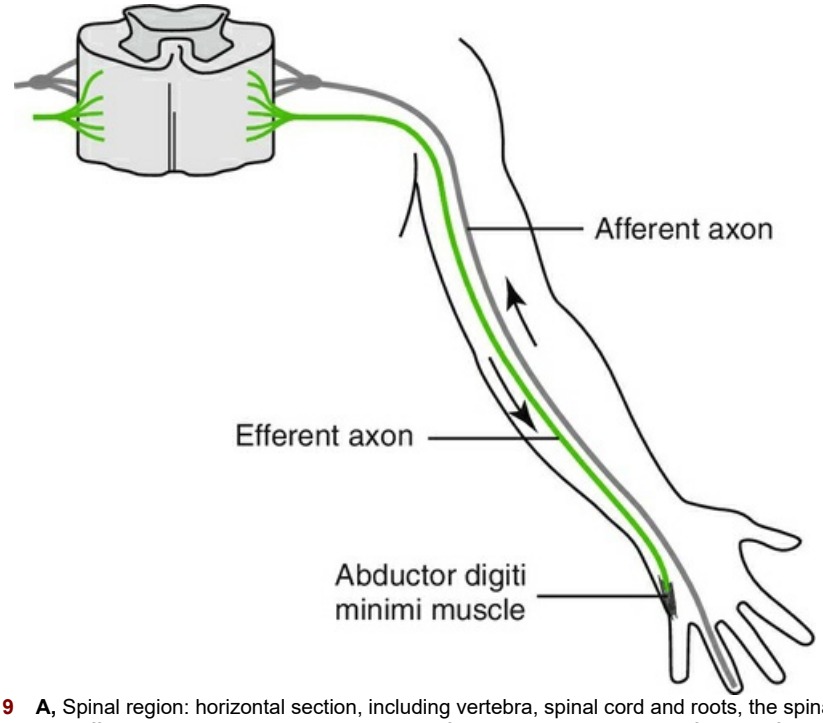


FIGURE 2-19 **A,** Spinal region: horizontal section, including vertebra, spinal cord and roots, the spinal nerve, and rami. Afferent and efferent neurons are illustrated on the left side. The spinal nerve is formed of axons from the dorsal and ventral roots. The bifurcation of the spinal nerve into dorsal and ventral rami marks the transition from the spinal to the peripheral region. **B,** Cross-section of the spinal cord. The central gray matter is divided into horns and a commissure. The white matter is divided into columns. **C,** Afferent and efferent axons in the upper limb. A single segment is illustrated. The arrows illustrate the direction of information in relation to the central nervous system. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation*, ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

Autonomic Nervous System

Functions of the ANS include the regulation of "circulation, respiration, metabolism, secretion, body temperature, and reproduction" (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Control centers for the ANS are located in the hypothalamus and the brain stem. The ANS is composed of motor neurons located within spinal nerves that innervate smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands, which are also called effectors or target organs. The ANS is divided into the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions. Both the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions innervate internal organs, use a two-neuron pathway and one-ganglion impulse conduction, and function automatically. Autoregulation is achieved by integrating information from peripheral afferents with information from receptors within the CNS. The two-neuron pathway (preganglionic and postganglionic neurons) provides the connection from the CNS to the autonomic effector organs. Cell bodies of the preganglionic neurons are located within the brain or spinal cord. The myelinated axons exit the CNS and synapse on the neurons in the peripheral ganglia. The axons of these cell bodies form the unmyelinated postganglionic axons, whereas innervate the target cell of the effector organ (Farber, 1982; Lundy-Ekman, 2013). Figure 2-20 provides a schematic representation of this organization, while Figure 2-21 shows the influence of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions on effector organs.

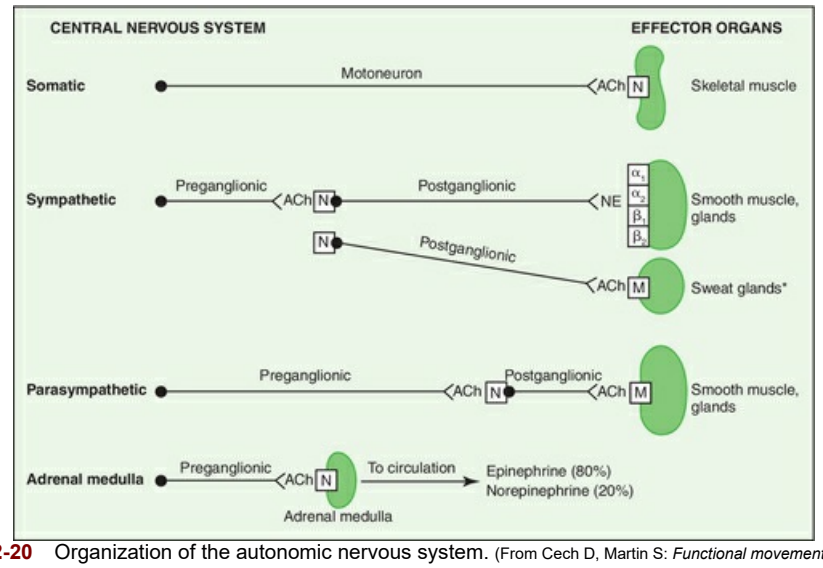


FIGURE 2-20 Organization of the autonomic nervous system. (From Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span,* ed 3, St Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

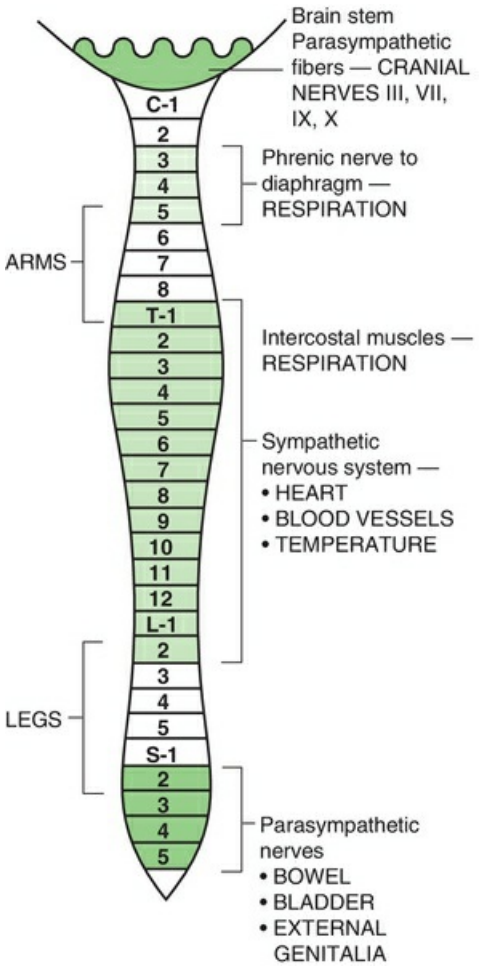


FIGURE 2-21 Functional areas of the spinal cord. (From Gould BE: *Pathophysiology for the health-related professions*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

The sympathetic fibers of the ANS arise from the thoracic and lumbar portions of the spinal cord. Axons of preganglionic neurons terminate in either the sympathetic chain or the prevertebral ganglia located in the abdomen. The sympathetic division of the ANS assists the individual in

responding to stressful situations and is often referred to as the "fight-or-flight response." Sympathetic responses help the individual to prepare to cope with the stimulus by maintaining an optimal blood supply. Activation of the sympathetic system stimulates smooth muscle in the blood vessels to contract, thereby causing vasoconstriction. Norepinephrine, also known as noradrenaline, is the major neurotransmitter responsible for this action. Consequently, heart rate and blood pressure are increased as the body prepares for a fight or to flee a dangerous situation. Blood flow to muscles is increased as it is diverted from the gastrointestinal tract.

The parasympathetic division maintains vital bodily functions or homeostasis. The parasympathetic division receives its information from the brain stem, specifically cranial nerves III (oculomotor), VII (facial), IX (glossopharyngeal), and X (vagus), and from lower sacral segments of the spinal cord. The vagus nerve is a parasympathetic preganglionic nerve. Motor fibers within the vagus nerve innervate the myocardium and the smooth muscles of the lungs and digestive tract. Activation of the vagus nerve can produce the following effects: bradycardia, decreased force of cardiac muscle contraction, bronchoconstriction, increased mucous production, increased peristalsis, and increased glandular secretions. Efferent activation of the sacral components results in emptying of the bowel and bladder and arousal of sexual organs. Acetylcholine is the chemical transmitter responsible for sending nervous system impulses to effector cells in the parasympathetic division. Acetylcholine is used for both divisions at the preganglionic synapse and dilates arterioles. Thus, activation of the parasympathetic division produces vasodilation. When an individual is calm, parasympathetic activity decreases heart rate and blood pressure and signals a return of normal gastrointestinal activity. Figures 2-22 and 2-23 show the influence of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions on effector organs (Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

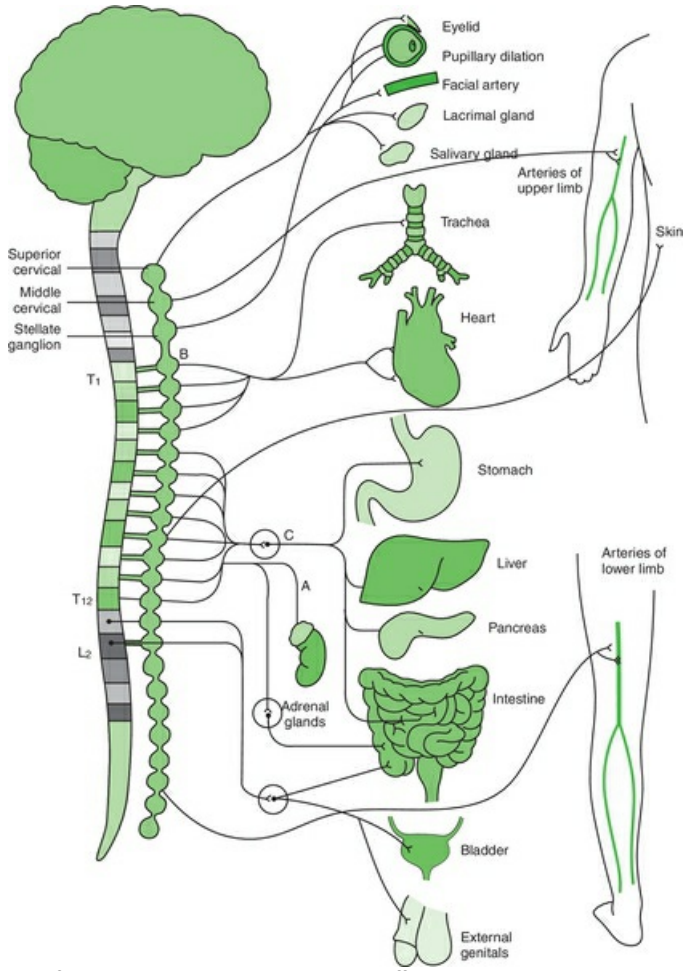


FIGURE 2-22 Efferents from the spinal cord to sympathetic effector organs. **A**, Direct, one-neuron connections to the adrenal medulla. **B**, Two-neuron pathways to the periphery and thoracic viscera, with synapses in paravertebral ganglia. **C**, Two-neuron pathways to the abdominal and pelvic organs, with synapses in outlying ganglia. Note that all sympathetic presynaptic neurons originate in the thoracic cord and the lumbar cord. (From Lundy-Ekman L:

Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation, ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

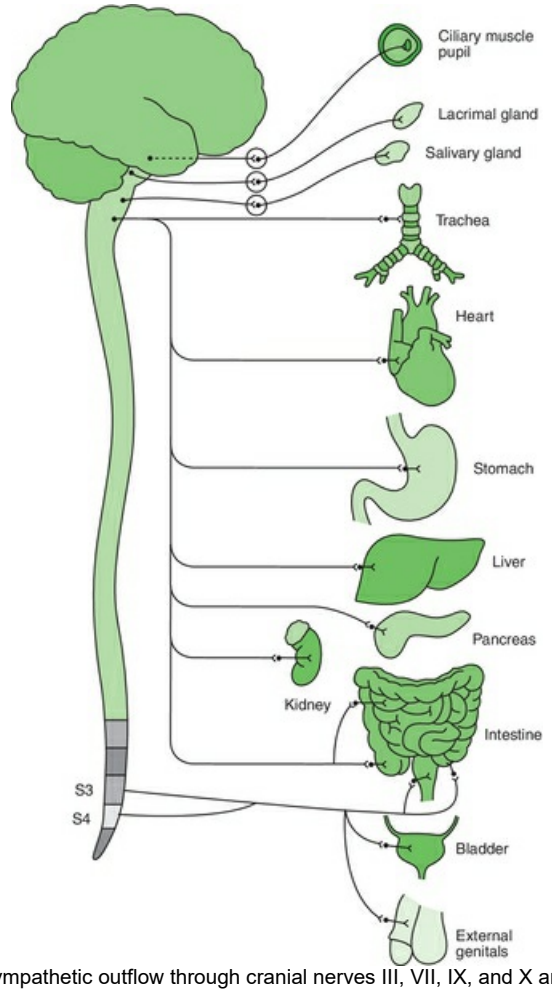


FIGURE 2-23 Parasympathetic outflow through cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X and S2–S4. Note that all parasympathetic preganglionic neurons originate in the brainstem or the sacral spinal cord. (From Lundy-Ekman, L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

Higher levels within the CNS also exert influence over the ANS. The region most closely associated with this control is the hypothalamus, which regulates functions such as digestion and controls heart and respiration rates.

Cerebral Circulation

A final area that must be reviewed when discussing the nervous system is the circulation to the brain. The cells within the brain completely depend on a continuous supply of blood for glucose and oxygen. The neurons within the brain are unable to carry out glycolysis and to store glycogen. It is therefore absolutely essential that these neurons receive a constant supply of blood. Knowledge of *cerebrovascular anatomy* is the basis for understanding the clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and management of patients who have sustained cerebrovascular accidents and traumatic brain injuries.

Anterior Circulation

All arteries to the brain arise from the aortic arch. The first major arteries ascending anteriorly and laterally within the neck are the common carotid arteries. The carotid arteries are responsible for supplying the bulk of the cerebrum with circulation. The right and left common carotid arteries bifurcate just behind the posterior angle of the jaw to become the external and internal carotids. The external carotid arteries supply the face, whereas the internal carotids enter the cranium and supply the cerebral hemispheres, including the frontal lobe, the parietal lobe, and parts of the temporal and

occipital lobes. In addition, the internal carotid artery supplies the optic nerves and the retina of the eyes. At the base of the brain, each of the internal carotids bifurcate into the right and left anterior and middle cerebral arteries. The middle cerebral artery is the largest of the cerebral arteries and is most often occluded. It is responsible for supplying the lateral surface of the brain with blood and also the deep portions of the frontal and parietal lobes. The anterior cerebral artery supplies the superior border of the frontal and parietal lobes. Both the middle cerebral artery and the anterior cerebral artery make up what is called the anterior circulation to the brain. Figures 2-24 and 2-25 depict the cerebral circulation.

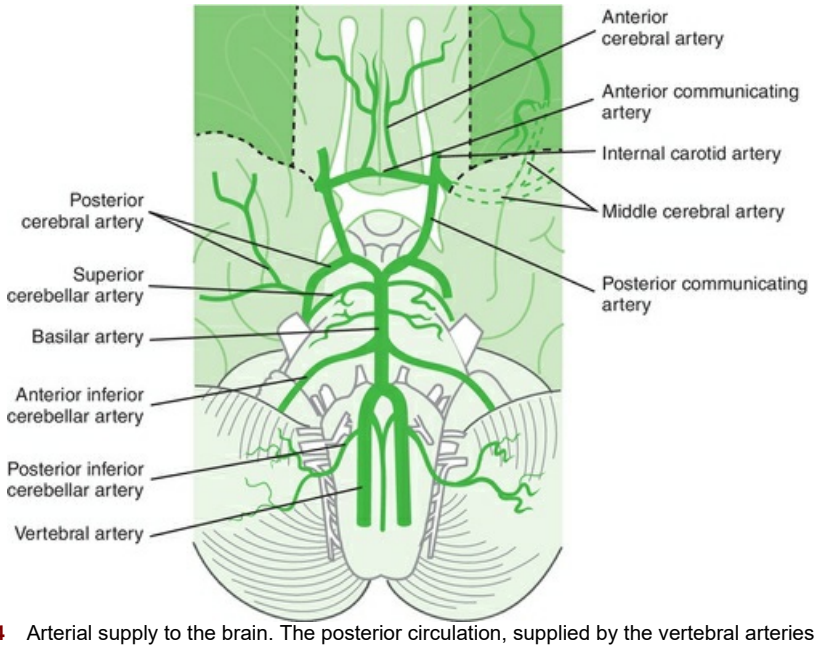


FIGURE 2-24 Arterial supply to the brain. The posterior circulation, supplied by the vertebral arteries is labeled on the left. The anterior circulation, supplied by the internal carotids, is labeled on the right. The watershed area, supplied by small anastomoses at the ends of the large cerebral arteries, is indicated by dotted lines. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

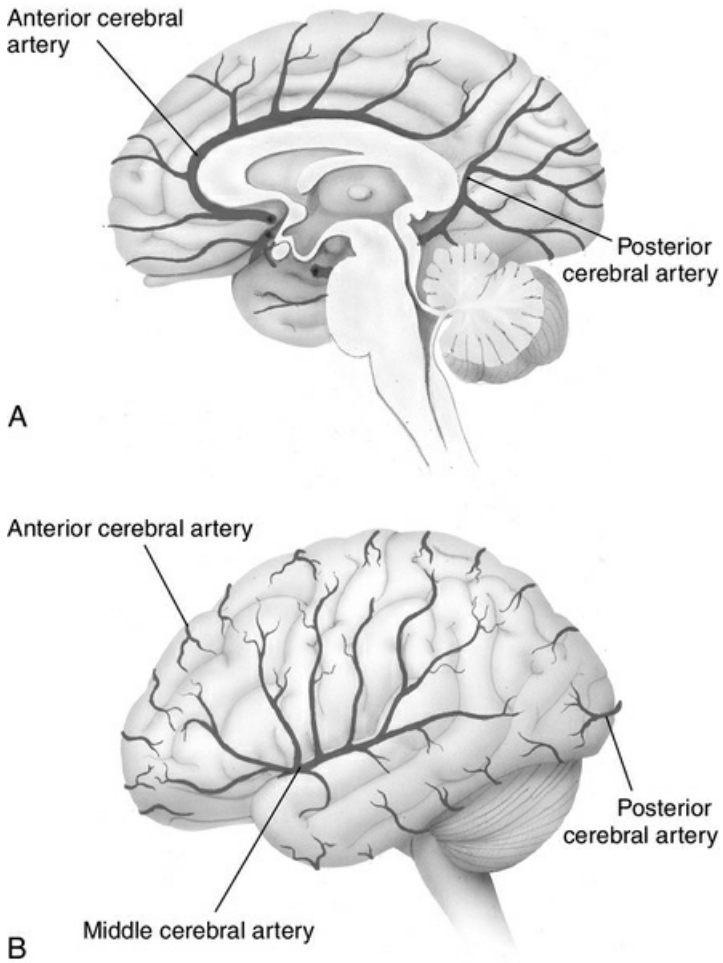


FIGURE 2-25 Arterial supply to the cerebral hemispheres. The large cerebral arteries: anterior, middle, and posterior. (From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 2, St Louis, 2002, Elsevier.)

Posterior Circulation

The posterior circulation is composed of the two vertebral arteries, which are branches of the subclavian. The vertebral arteries supply blood to the brain stem and cerebellum. The vertebral arteries leave the base of the neck and ascend posteriorly to enter the skull through the foramen magnum. The two vertebral arteries supply the medulla and upper spinal cord and fuse to form the basilar artery. The basilar artery supplies the pons, cerebellum and then divides into the right and left posterior cerebral arteries. The posterior cerebral artery connects to the carotid system via the posterior communicating artery. Both of these supply the structures of the midbrain. The posterior cerebral artery then continues to supply the occipital and temporal lobes.

The anterior and posterior communicating arteries, which are branches of the carotid, are interconnected at the base of the brain and form the circle of Willis. This connection of blood vessels provides a protective mechanism to the structures within the brain. Because of the circle of Willis, failure or occlusion of one cerebral artery does not critically decrease blood flow to that region. Consequently, the occlusion can be circumvented or bypassed to meet the nutritional and metabolic needs of cerebral tissue.

Reaction to injury

What happens when the CNS or the PNS is injured? The CNS and the PNS are prone to different types of injury, and each system reacts differently. Within the CNS, artery obstruction of sufficient duration produces cell and tissue death within minutes. Neurons that die because they are deprived of oxygen do not possess the capacity to regenerate. Neurons in the vicinity of damage are also at risk of injury secondary to the release of glutamate, an excitatory neurotransmitter. At normal levels, glutamate assists with CNS functions; however, at higher levels glutamate can be toxic to neurons and can promote neuronal death. The presence of excessive glutamate also facilitates calcium release, which ultimately produces excitotoxicity including the liberation of calcium-dependent digestive enzymes, cellular edema, cell injury, and death (Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

For many years, it was thought that brain injuries were permanent and that there was little opportunity for repair. This viewpoint is no longer considered accurate as our understanding of neural plasticity has evolved. Neuroplasticity is the brain's ability to adapt and for neurons "to alter their structure and function in response to a variety of internal and external pressures, including behavioral training" (Kleim and Jones, 2008). Neural regeneration, activation of previously inactive areas, and axonal and collateral sprouting can all lead to improved brain function. As clinicians, we must design treatment sessions that will maximize CNS recovery.

Conversely, peripheral nerve injuries often result from means other than vascular compromise. Common causes of peripheral nerve injuries include stretching, laceration, compression, traction, disease, chemical toxicity, and nutritional deficiencies. Patient findings can include paresthesia (pins and needles sensations), sensory loss, and muscle weakness. The response of a peripheral nerve to the injury is different from that in the CNS. If the cell body is destroyed, regeneration is not possible. The axon undergoes necrosis distal to the site of injury, the myelin sheath begins to pull away, and the Schwann cells phagocytize the area, producing Wallerian degeneration (Figure 2-26). If the damage to the peripheral nerve is not too significant and involves only the axon, regeneration is possible. Axonal sprouting from the proximal end of the damaged axon can occur. The axon regrows at the rate of 1.0 mm per day, depending on the size of the nerve fiber (Dvorak and Mansfield 2013). To have return of function, the axon must grow and reinnervate the appropriate muscle. Failure to do so results in degeneration of the axonal sprout. The rate of recovery from a peripheral nerve injury depends on the age of the patient and the distance between the lesion and the destination of the regenerating nerve fibers. A discussion of the physical therapy management of peripheral nerve injuries is beyond the scope of this text.

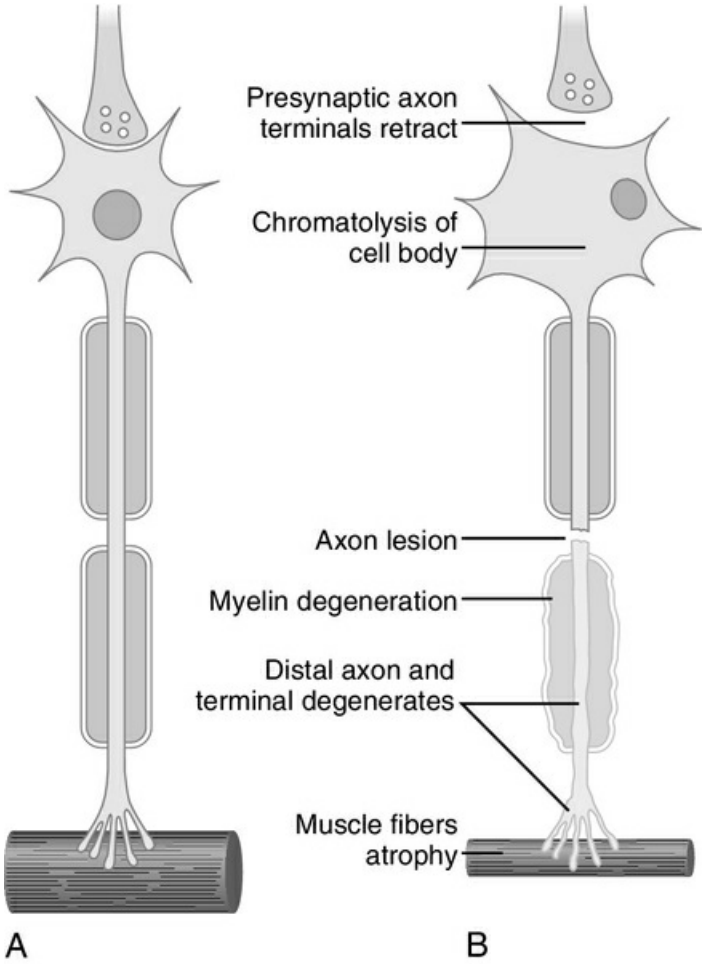


FIGURE 2-26 Wallerian degeneration. **A,** Normal synapses before an axon is severed. **B,** Degeneration following severance of an axon. Degeneration following axonal injury involves several changes: (1) the axon terminal degenerates; (2) myelin breaks down and forms debris; and (3) the cell body undergoes metabolic changes. Subsequently, (4) presynaptic terminals retract from the dying cell body, and (5) postsynaptic cells degenerate.
(From Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation,* ed 4, St Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

Injury to a motor neuron can result in variable findings. If an individual experiences damage to the corticospinal tract from its origin in the frontal lobe to its end within the spinal cord, the patient is classified as having an upper motor neuron injury. Clinical signs of an upper motor neuron injury include spasticity (velocity-dependent, increased resistance to passive stretch), hyperreflexia, the presence of a Babinski sign, and possible clonus. Clonus is a repetitive stretch reflex that is elicited by passive dorsiflexion of the ankle or passive wrist extension. If the injury is to the anterior horn cell, the motor nerve cells of the brain stem, the spinal root, or the spinal nerve, the patient is recognized as having a lower motor neuron injury. Clinical findings of this type of injury include flaccidity, marked muscle atrophy, muscle fasciculations, and hyporeflexia.

Chapter summary

An understanding of the structures and functions of the nervous system is necessary for physical therapists and physical therapist assistants. This knowledge assists practitioners in working with patients with neuromuscular dysfunction, because it allows the therapist to have a better appreciation of the patient's pathologic condition, deficits, and potential capabilities. In addition, an understanding of neuroanatomy is helpful when educating patients and their families regarding the patient's condition and possible prognosis.

Review questions

1. Describe the major components of the nervous system.

2. What is the function of the white matter?
3. What are some of the primary functions of the parietal lobe?
4. What is Broca's aphasia?
5. Discuss the primary function of the thalamus.
6. What is the primary function of the corticospinal tract?
7. What is an anterior horn cell? Where are these cells located?
8. Discuss the components of the PNS.
9. Where is the most common site of cerebral infarction?
10. What are some clinical signs of an upper motor neuron injury?

References

Dvorak L, Mansfield PJ. *Essentials of neuroanatomy for rehabilitation.* Boston: Pearson; 2013 pp 50–74, 141–143.

Farber SD. *Neurorehabilitation: a multisensory approach.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1982 pp 1–59.

FitzGerald MJT, Gruener G, Mtui E. *Clinical neuroanatomy and neuroscience.* St Louis: Elsevier; 2012 pp 78, 97–110, 299.

Fuller KS, Winkler PA, Corboy JR. Degenerative diseases of the central nervous system. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology for the physical therapist.* 3 ed. St Louis: Saunders/Elsevier; 2009:1439.

Geschwind N, Levitsky W. Human brain: Left-right asymmetries in temporal speech regions. *Science.* 1968;161:186–187.

Gilman S, Newman SW. *Manter and Gatz's essentials of clinical neuroanatomy and neurophysiology.* ed 10 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2003 pp 1–11, 61–63, 147–154, 190–203.

Guyton AC. *Basic neuroscience: anatomy and physiology.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1991 pp 1–24, 39–54, 244–245.

Horak FB. *Assumptions underlying motor control for neurologic rehabilitation.* In: Contemporary management of motor control problems: proceedings of the II step conference; Alexandria, VA: Foundation for Physical Therapy; 1991:11–27.

Kleim JA, Jones TA. Principles of experience-dependent neural plasticity: implications for rehabilitation after brain damage. *J Speech Lang Hearing Res.* 2008;51:S225–S239.

Lundy-Ekman L. *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation.* ed 4 St Louis: Elsevier; 2013 pp 35, 36, 53–65, 70–77, 153–170, 416–426.

O'Sullivan SB. Stroke. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* 4 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:659.

CHAPTER 3

Motor Control and Motor Learning

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define motor control, motor learning, and neural plasticity.
2. Understand the relationship among motor control, motor learning, and motor development.
3. Differentiate models of motor control and motor learning.
4. Understand the development of postural control and balance.
5. Discuss the role of experience and feedback in motor control and motor learning.
6. Relate motor control, motor learning, and neural plasticity principles to therapeutic intervention.

Introduction

Motor abilities and skills are acquired during the process of motor development through motor control and motor learning. Once a basic pattern of movement is established, it can be varied to suit the purpose of the task or the environmental situation in which the task takes place. Early motor development displays a fairly predictable sequence of skill acquisition through childhood. However, the ways in which these motor abilities are used for function are highly variable. Individuals rarely perform a movement exactly the same way every time. Variability must be part of any model used to explain how posture and movement are controlled.

Any movement system must be able to adapt to the changing demands of the individual mover and the environment in which the movement takes place. The individual mover must be able to learn from prior movement experiences. Different theories of motor control emphasize different developmental aspects of posture and movement. Development of postural control and balance is embedded in the development of motor control. Understanding the relationship among motor control, motor learning, and motor development provides a valuable framework to understand the treatment of individuals with neurologic dysfunction at any age.

Motor development is a product as well as a process. The products of motor development are the milestones of the developmental sequence and the kinesiologic components of movement such as head and trunk control necessary for these motor abilities. These products are discussed in Chapter 4. The process of motor development is the way in which those abilities emerge. The process and the product are affected by many factors such as time (age), maturation (genes), adaptation (physical constraints), and learning. Motor development is the result of the interaction of the innate or built-in species blueprint for posture and movement and the person's experiences with movement afforded by the environment. Sensory input is needed for the mover to learn about moving and the results of moving. This sensory input contributes to perceptual development because perception is the act of attaching meaning to sensation. Motor development is the combination of the nature of the mover and the nurture of the environment. Part of the genetic blueprint for movement is the means to control posture and movement. Motor development, motor control, and motor learning contribute to an ongoing process of change throughout the life span of every person who moves.

Motor control

Motor control, the ability to maintain and change posture and movement, is the result of a complex set of neurologic and mechanical processes. Those processes include motor, cognitive, and perceptual development. Motor control begins with the control of self-generated movements and proceeds to the control of movements in relationship to changing demands of the task and the environment. Control of self-movement largely results from the development of the neuromotor systems. As the nervous and muscular systems mature, movement emerges. The perceptual consequences of self-generated movements drive motor development (Anderson et al., 2014). Motor control allows the nervous system to direct what muscles should be used, in what order, and how quickly, to solve a movement problem. The infant's first movement problem relates to overcoming the effects of gravity. A second but related problem is how to move a larger head as compared with a smaller body to establish head control. Later, movement problems are related to controlling the interaction between stability and mobility of the head, trunk, and limbs. Control of task-specific movements, such as stringing beads or riding a tricycle, depends on cognitive and perceptual abilities. The task to be carried out by the person within the environment dictates the type of movement solution that is going to be needed.

Because the motor abilities of a person change over time, the motor solutions to a given motor problem may also change. The motivation of the individual to move may also change over time and may affect the intricacy of the movement solution. An infant encountering a set of stairs sees a toy on the top stair. She creeps up the stairs but then has to figure out how to get down. She can cry for help, bump down on her buttocks, creep down backward, or even attempt creeping down forward. A toddler faced with the same dilemma may walk up the same set of stairs one step at a time holding onto a railing, and descend in sitting holding the toy, or may be holding the toy with one hand and the railing with the other and descend the same way she came up the stairs. An older child will walk up and down without holding on, and an even older child may run up those same stairs. The relationship among the task, the individual, and the environment is depicted graphically in Figure 3-1. All three components must be considered when thinking about motor control of movement.

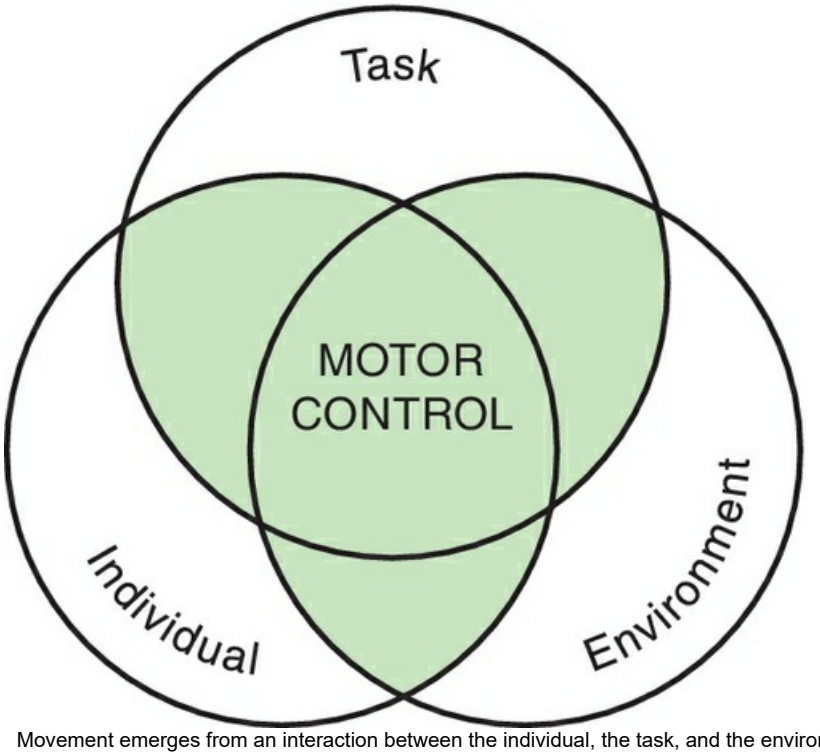


FIGURE 3-1 Movement emerges from an interaction between the individual, the task, and the environment. (From Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH: *Motor control: theory and practical applications*, ed 4, Baltimore, 2012, Williams & Wilkins.)

Motor Control Time Frame

Motor control happens not in the space of days or weeks, as is seen in motor development, but in fractions of seconds. Figure 3-2 illustrates a comparison of time frames associated with motor control, motor learning, and motor development. Motor control occurs because of physiologic processes that happen at cellular, tissue, and organ levels. Physiologic processes have to happen quickly to produce timely and efficient movement. What good does it do if you extend an outstretched arm after falling down? Extending your arm in a protective response has to be quick enough to be useful, that is, to break the fall. People with nervous system disease may exhibit the correct movement pattern, but they have impaired timing, producing the movement too slowly to be functional, or they have impaired sequencing of muscle activation, producing a muscle contraction at the wrong time. Both of these problems, impaired timing and impaired sequencing, are examples of deficits in motor control.

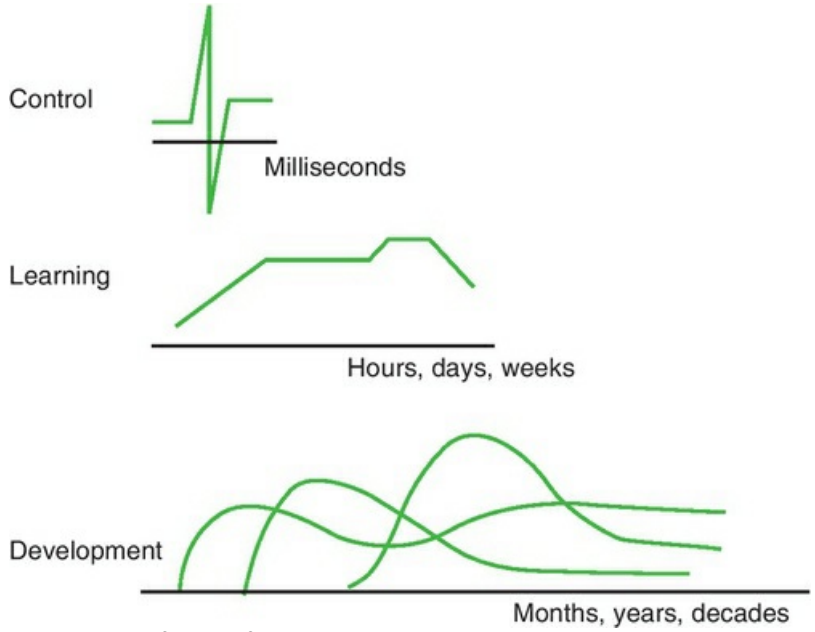


FIGURE 3-2 Time scales of interest from a motor control, motor learning, and motor development perspective.
(From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2012, Elsevier.)

Role of Sensation in Motor Control

Sensory information plays an important role in motor control. Initially, sensation cues reflexive movements in which few cognitive or perceptual abilities are needed. A sensory stimulus produces a reflexive motor response. Touching the lip of a newborn produces head turning, whereas stroking a newborn's outstretched leg produces withdrawal. Sensation is an ever-present cue for motor behavior in the seemingly reflex-dominated infant. As voluntary movement emerges during motor development, sensation provides feedback accuracy for hand placement during reaching and later for creeping. Sensation from weight bearing reinforces maintenance of developmental postures such as the prone on elbows position and the hands and knees position. Sensory information is crucial to the mover when interacting with objects and maneuvering within an environment. Figure 3-3 depicts how sensation provides the necessary feedback for the body to know whether a task such as reaching or walking was performed and how well it was accomplished. Sensory experience contributes to development of postural control and motor skill acquisition.

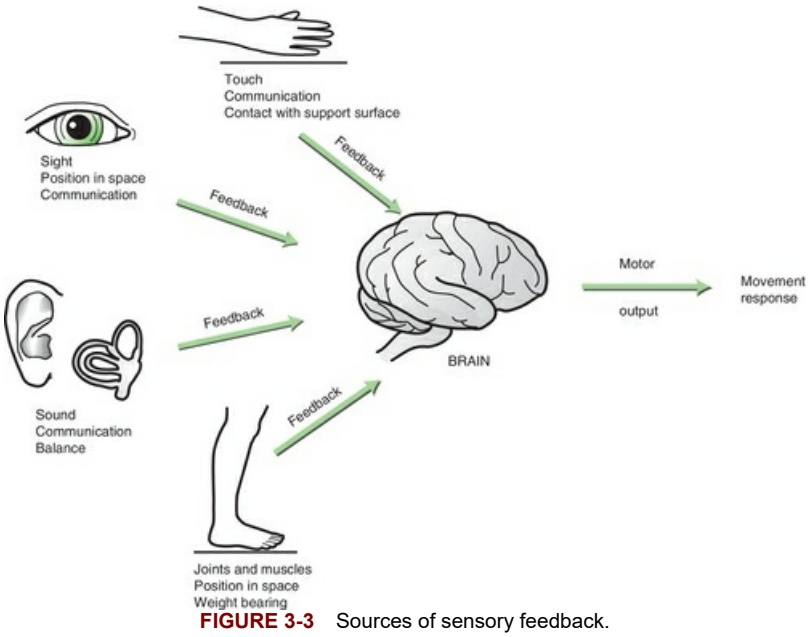


FIGURE 3-3 Sources of sensory feedback.

Role of Feedback

Feedback is a very crucial feature of motor control. *Feedback* is defined as sensory or perceptual information received as a result of movement. There is intrinsic feedback, or feedback produced by the movement. Sensory feedback can be used to detect errors in movement. Feedback and error signals are important for two reasons. First, feedback provides a means to understand the process of self-control. Reflexes are initiated and controlled by sensory stimuli from the environment surrounding the individual. Motor behavior generated from feedback is initiated as a result of an error signal produced by a process within the individual. The highest level of many motor hierarchies is a volitional, or self-control function, but there has been very little explanation of how it works.

Second, feedback also provides the fundamental process for learning new motor skills. Intrinsic feedback comes from any sensory source from inside the body such as from proprioceptors or outside the body when the person sees that the target was not hit or the ball was hit out of bounds (Schmidt and Wrisberg, 2004). Extrinsic feedback is extra or augmented sensory information given to the mover by some external source (Schmidt and Wrisberg, 2004). A therapist or coach may provide enhanced feedback of the person's motor performance. For this reason, feedback is a common element in motor control and motor-learning theories.

Theories of Motor Control

Early theories of motor control were first presented in the 1800s. Sherrington proposed a reflex model in which sequences of reflexes were chained together to produce movement. Reflexes were thought of as the building blocks of more complex movements. Other traditional theories were predicated on the hierarchical organization of the nervous system in which reflexes and reactions were assigned to different levels of the nervous system. More recent theories include the motor program and systems views. These will be briefly discussed.

Reflex and Hierarchical Theories

Many theories of motor control exist, but these two are the most traditional ones. A top-down perspective is characteristics of these theories. The cortex of the brain is seen as the highest level of control, with all subcortical structures taking orders from it. The cortex can and does direct movement. A person can generate an idea about moving in a certain way and the nervous system carries out the command. The ultimate level of motor control, voluntary movement, is achieved by maturation of the cortex.

A relationship exists between the maturation of the developing brain and the emergence of motor

behaviors seen in infancy. One of the ways in which nervous system maturation has been routinely gauged is by the assessment of reflexes. The reflex is seen as the basic unit of movement in this motor control model. Movement is acquired from the chaining together of reflexes and reactions. A reflex is the pairing of a sensory stimulus with a motor response, as shown in Figure 3-4. Some reflexes are simple and others are complex. The simplest reflexes occur at the spinal cord level. An example of a spinal cord level reflex is the flexor withdrawal. A touch or noxious stimulus applied to the bottom of the foot produces lower extremity withdrawal. These reflexes are also referred to as primitive reflexes because they occur early in the life span of the infant. Another example is the palmar grasp. Primitive reflexes are listed in Table 3-1.

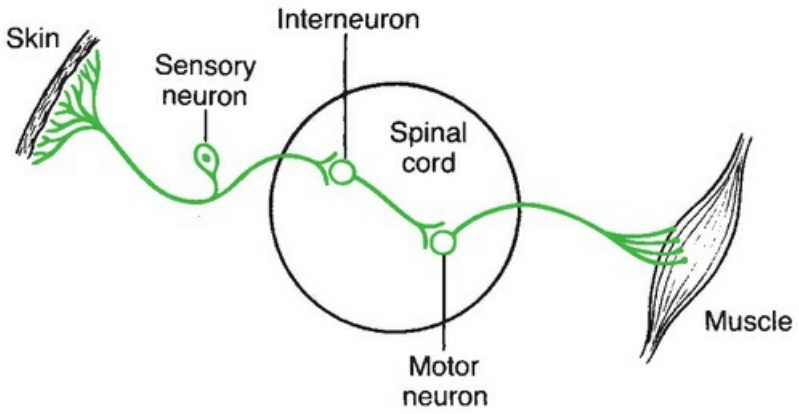


FIGURE 3-4 Three-neuron nervous system. (Redrawn from Romero-Sierra C: *Neuroanatomy: a conceptual approach*, New York, 1986, Churchill Livingstone.)

Table 3-1
Primitive Reflexes

Reflex	Age at Onset	Integration
Suck-swallow	28 weeks' gestation	2–5 months
Rooting	28 weeks' gestation	3 months
Flexor withdrawal	28 weeks' gestation	1–2 months
Crossed extension	28 weeks' gestation	1–2 months
Moro	28 weeks' gestation	4–6 months
Plantar grasp	28 weeks' gestation	9 months
Positive support	35 weeks' gestation	1–2 months
Asymmetric tonic neck	Birth	4–6 months
Palmar grasp	Birth	9 months
Symmetric tonic neck	4–6 months	8–12 months

From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2012, Elsevier, p. 54.

The next higher level of reflexes comprises the tonic reflexes, which are associated with the brain stem of the central nervous system. These reflexes produce changes in muscle tone and posture. Examples of tonic reflexes exhibited by infants are the tonic labyrinthine reflex and the asymmetric tonic neck reflex. In the latter, when the infant's head is turned to the right, the infant's right arm extends and the left arm flexes. The tonic labyrinthine reflex produces increased extensor tone when the infant is supine and increased flexor tone in the prone position. In this model, most infantile reflexes (sucking and rooting), primitive spinal cord reflexes, and tonic reflexes are integrated by 4 to 6 months. Exceptions do exist. Integration is the mechanism by which less mature responses are incorporated into voluntary movement.

Nervous system maturation is seen as the ultimate determinant of the acquisition of postural control. As the infant develops motor control, brain structures above the spinal cord begin to control posture and movement until reactive balance reactions are developed. These are the righting, protective, and equilibrium reactions.

Righting and equilibrium reactions are complex postural responses that continue to be present even in adulthood. These postural responses involve the head and trunk and provide the body with an automatic way to respond to movement of the center of gravity within and outside the body's base of support. Extremity movements in response to quick displacements of the center of gravity out of the base of support are called protective reactions. These are also considered postural

reactions and serve as a back-up system should the righting or equilibrium reaction fail to compensate for a loss of balance. According to the hierarchic model of motor control, automatic postural responses are associated with the midbrain and cortex.

The farther up one goes in the hierarchy, the more inhibition there is of lower nervous system structures and the movements they produce, that is, reflexes. Tonic reflexes inhibit spinal cord reflexes, and righting reactions inhibit tonic reflexes. Inhibition allows previously demonstrated stimulus–response patterns of movement to be integrated or modified into more volitional movements. A more complete description of these postural responses is given as part of the development of postural control from a hierarchic perspective.

Development of Motor Control

Development of motor control can be described by the relationship of mobility and stability of body postures (Sullivan et al., 1982) and by the acquisition of automatic postural responses (Cech and Martin, 2012). Initial random movements (mobility) are followed by maintenance of a posture (stability), movement within a posture (controlled mobility), and finally, movement from one posture to another posture (skill). The sequence of acquiring motor control is seen in key developmental postures in Figure 3-5. With acquisition of each new posture comes the development of control within that posture. For example, weight shifting in prone precedes rolling prone to supine; weight shifting on hands and knees precedes creeping; and cruising, or lateral weight shifting in standing precedes walking. The actual motor accomplishments of rolling, reaching, creeping, cruising, and walking are skills in which mobility is combined with stability, and the distal parts of the body—that is, the extremities—are free to move. The infant develops motor and postural control in the following order: mobility, stability, controlled mobility, and skill.

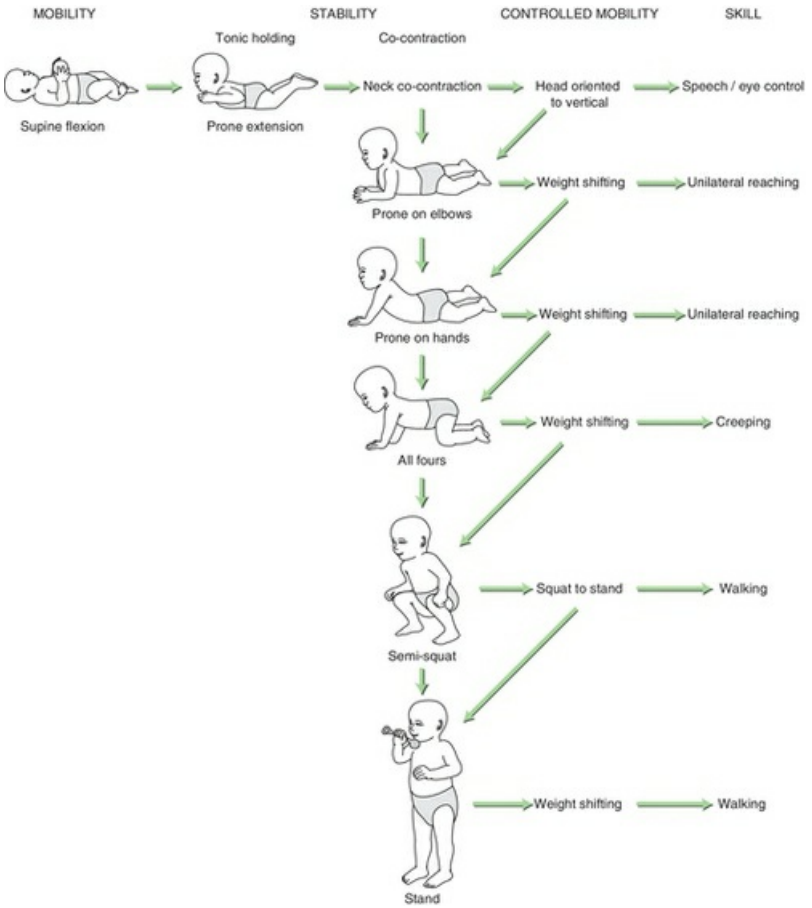


FIGURE 3-5 Key postures and sequence of development.

Stages of Motor Control

Stage One

Stage one is mobility, when movement is initiated. The infant exhibits random movements within an available range of motion for the first 3 months of development. Movements during this stage are erratic. They lack purpose and are often reflex-based. Random limb movements are made when the infant's head and trunk are supported in the supine position. Mobility is present before stability. In adults, mobility refers to the availability of range of motion to assume a posture and the presence of sufficient motor unit activity to initiate a movement.

Stage Two

Stage two is stability, the ability to maintain a steady position in a weight-bearing, antigravity posture. It is also called static postural control. Developmentally, stability is further divided into tonic holding and cocontraction. Tonic holding occurs at the end of the shortened range of movement and usually involves isometric movements of antigravity postural extensors (Stengel et al., 1984). Tonic holding is most evident when the child maintains the pivot prone position (prone extension), as seen in Figure 3-5. Postural holding of the head begins asymmetrically in prone, followed by holding the head in midline, and progresses to holding the head up past 90 degrees from the support surface. In the supine position, the head is turned to one side or the other; then it is held in midline; and finally, it is held in midline with a chin tuck while the infant is being pulled to sit at 4 months (Figure 3-6).

FIGURE 3-6 Chin tuck when pulled to sit.

Cocontraction is the simultaneous static contraction of antagonistic muscles around a joint to provide stability in a midline position or in weight bearing. Various groups of muscles, especially those used for postural fixation, allow the developing infant to hold such postures as prone extension, prone on elbows and hands, all fours, and a semi-squat. Cocontraction patterns are shown in Figure 3-5. Once the initial relationship between mobility and stability is established in prone and later in all fours and standing, a change occurs to allow mobility to be superimposed on the already established stability.

Stage Three

Controlled mobility is mobility superimposed on previously developed postural stability by weight shifting within a posture. Proximal mobility is combined with distal stability. This controlled mobility is the third stage of motor control and occurs when the limbs are weight bearing and the body moves such as in weight shifting on all fours or in standing. The trunk performs controlled mobility when it is parallel to the support surface or when the line of gravity is perpendicular to the

trunk. In prone and all-fours positions, the limbs and the trunk are performing controlled mobility when shifting weight.

The infant's first attempts at weight shifts in prone happen accidentally with little control. As the infant tries to reproduce the movement and practices various movement combinations, the movement becomes more controlled. Another example of controlled mobility is demonstrated by an infant in a prone on elbows position who sees a toy. If the infant attempts to reach for the toy with both hands, which she typically does before reaching with one hand, the infant is likely to fall on her face. If she perseveres and learns to shift weight onto one elbow, she has a better chance of obtaining the toy. Weight bearing, weight shifting, and cocontraction of muscles around the shoulder are crucial to the development of shoulder girdle stability. Proximal shoulder stability supports upper extremity function for skilled distal manipulation. If this stability is not present, distal performance may be impaired. Controlled mobility is also referred to as dynamic postural control.

Stage Four

Skill is the most mature type of movement and is usually mastered after controlled mobility within a posture. For example, after weight shifting within a posture such as in a hands-and-knees position, the infant frees the opposite arm and leg to creep reciprocally. Creeping is a skilled movement. Other skill patterns are also depicted in Figure 3-5. Skill patterns of movement occur when mobility is superimposed on stability in non–weight bearing; proximal segments stabilize while distal segments are free for movement. The trunk does skilled work when it is upright or parallel to the force of gravity. In standing, only the lower extremities are using controlled mobility when weight shifting occurs. If the swing leg moves, it performs skilled work while the stance limb performs controlled mobility. When an infant creeps or walks, the limbs that are in motion are using skill, and those in contact with the support surface are using controlled mobility. Creeping and walking are considered skilled movements. Skilled movements involve manipulation and exploration of the environment.

Development of Postural Control

Postural control develops in a cephalocaudal direction in keeping with Gesell's developmental principles, which are discussed in Chapter 4. Postural control is demonstrated by the ability to maintain the alignment of the body—specifically, the alignment of body parts relative to each other and the external environment. The infant learns to use a group of automatic postural responses to attain and maintain an upright erect posture. These postural responses are continuously used when balance is lost in an effort to regain equilibrium.

The sequence of development of postural reactions entails righting reactions, followed by protective reactions, and then equilibrium reactions. In the infant, head righting reactions develop first and are followed by the development of trunk righting reactions. Protective reactions of the extremities emerge next in an effort to safeguard balance in higher postures, such as sitting. Finally, equilibrium reactions develop in all postures beginning in prone. Traditionally, posture and movement develop together in a cephalocaudal direction, so balance is achieved in different positions relative to gravity. Head control is followed by trunk control; control of the head on the body and in space comes before sitting and standing balance.

Righting Reactions

Righting reactions are responsible for orienting the head in space and keeping the eyes and mouth horizontal. This normal alignment is maintained in an upright vertical position and when the body is tilted or rotated. Righting reactions involve head-and-trunk movements to maintain or regain orientation or alignment. Some righting reactions begin at birth, but most are evident between 4 and 6 months of age, as listed in Table 3-2. Gravity and change of head or body position provide cues for the most frequently used righting reactions. Vision cues an optical righting reaction, gravity cues the labyrinthine righting reaction, and touch of the support surface to the abdomen cues the body-on-the-head reaction. These three head righting reactions assist the infant in developing head control.

Table 3-2

Righting and Equilibrium Reactions

Reaction	Age at Onset	Integration
Head righting		
Neck (immature)	34 weeks' gestation	4–6 months
Labyrinthine	Birth–2 months	Persists
Optical	Birth–2 months	Persists
Neck (mature)	4–6 months	5 years
Trunk righting		
Body (immature)	34 weeks' gestation	4–6 months
Body (mature)	4–6 months	5 years
Landau	3–4 months	1–2 years
Protective		
Downward lower extremity	4 months	Persists
Forward upper extremity	6–7 months	Persists
Sideways upper extremity	7–8 months	Persists
Backward upper extremity	9 months	Persists
Stepping lower extremity	15–17 months	Persists
Equilibrium		
Prone	6 months	Persists
Supine	7–8 months	Persists
Sitting	7–8 months	Persists
Quadruped	9–12 months	Persists
Standing	12–24 months	Persists

Head turning can produce neck-on-body righting, in which the body follows the head movement. If either the upper or lower trunk is turned, a body-on-body righting reaction is elicited. Either neck-on-body righting or body-on-body righting can produce log rolling or segmental rolling. Log rolling is the immature righting response seen in the first 3 months of life; the mature response emerges around 4 months of age. The purpose of righting reactions is to maintain the correct orientation of the head and body in relation to the ground. Head and trunk righting reactions occur when weight is shifted within a base of support; the amount of displacement determines the degree of response. For example, in the prone position, slow weight shifting to the right produces a lateral bend or righting of the head and trunk to the left. If the displacement is too fast, a different type of response may be seen; a protective response. Slower displacements are more likely to elicit head and trunk righting. These can occur in any posture and in response to anterior, posterior, or lateral weight shifts.

Righting reactions have their maximum influence on posture and movement between 10 and 12 months of age, although they are said to continue to be present until the child is 5 years old. Righting reactions are no longer considered to be present if the child can come to standing from a supine position without using trunk rotation. The presence of trunk rotation indicates a righting of the body around the long axis. Another explanation for the change in motor behavior could be that the child of 5 years has sufficient abdominal strength to perform the sagittal plane movement of rising straight forward and attaining standing without using trunk rotation.

Protective Reactions

Protective reactions are extremity movements that occur in response to rapid displacement of the body by diagonal or horizontal forces. They have a predictable developmental sequence, which can be found in Table 3-2. By extending one or both extremities, the individual prepares for a fall or prepares to catch herself. A 4-month-old infant's lower extremities extend and abduct when the infant is held upright in vertical and quickly lowered toward the supporting surface. At 6 months, the upper extremities show forward protective extension, followed by sideways extension at 7 to 8 months and backward extension at 9 months. Protective staggering of the lower extremities is evident by 15 to 17 months (Barnes et al., 1978). Protective reactions of the extremities should not be confused with the ability of the infant to prop on extended arms, a movement that can be self-initiated by pushing up from prone or by being placed in the position by a caregiver. Because an infant must be able to bear weight on extended arms to exhibit protective extension, training an infant to prop on extended arms or to push up from prone can be useful as treatment interventions.

Equilibrium Reactions

Equilibrium reactions are the most advanced postural reactions and are the last to develop. These reactions allow the body as a whole to adapt to slow changes in the relationship of the center of mass with the base of support. By incorporating the already learned head-and-trunk righting reactions, the equilibrium reactions add extremity responses to flexion, extension, or lateral head-and-trunk movements to regain equilibrium. In lateral weight shifts, the trunk may rotate in the opposite direction of the weight shift to further attempt to maintain the body's center of mass within the base of support. The trunk rotation is evident only during lateral displacements. Equilibrium reactions can occur if the body moves relative to the support surface, as in leaning sideways, or if the support surface moves, as when one is on a tilt board. In the latter case, these movements are called tilt reactions. The three expected responses to a lateral displacement of the center of mass toward the periphery of the base of support in standing are as follows: (1) lateral head and trunk righting occurs away from the weight shift; (2) the arm and leg are opposite the direction of the weight shift abduct; and (3) trunk rotation away from the weight shift may occur. If the last response does not happen, the other two responses can provide only a brief postponement of the inevitable fall. At the point at which the center of gravity leaves the base of support, protective extension of the arms may occur, or a protective step or stagger may reestablish a stable base. Thus, the order in which the reactions are acquired developmentally is different from the order in which they are used for balance.

Equilibrium reactions also have a set developmental sequence and timetable (see Table 3-2). Because prone is a position from which to learn to move against gravity, equilibrium reactions are seen first in prone at 6 months, then supine at 7 to 8 months, sitting at 7 to 8 months, on all fours at

9 to 12 months, and standing at 12 to 21 months. The infant is always working on more than one postural level at a time. For example, the 8-month-old infant is perfecting supine equilibrium reactions while learning to control weight shifts in sitting, freeing first one hand and then both hands. Sitting equilibrium reactions mature when the child is creeping. Standing and cruising are possible as equilibrium reactions are perfected on all fours. The toddler is able to increase walking speed as equilibrium reactions mature in standing.

Motor Program Model of Motor Control

As a result of a debate over the role of sensory information in motor actions, another concept of importance to current motor control and learning theories arose (Lashley, 1951). That concept is the motor program. A motor program is a memory structure that provides instructions for the control of actions. A program is a plan that has been stored for future use. The concept of a motor program is useful because it provides a means by which the nervous system can avoid having to create each action from scratch and thus can save time when initiating actions. There has been much debate over what is contained in a motor program. Different researchers have proposed a variety of programs.

Motor program theory was developed to directly challenge the notion that all movements were generated through chaining or reflexes because even slow movements occur too fast for sensory input to influence them (Gordon, 1987). The implication is that for efficient movement to occur in a timely manner, an internal representation of movement actions must be available to the mover. "Motor programs are associated with a set of muscle commands specified at the time of action production, which do not require sensory input" (Wing et al., 1996). Schmidt (1988) expanded motor program theory to include the notion of a generalized motor program or an abstract *neural representation* of an action, distributed among different systems. Being able to mentally represent an action is part of developing motor control (Gabbard, 2009).

The term *motor program* may also refer to a specific neural circuit called a central pattern generator (CPG), which is capable of producing a motor pattern, such as walking. CPGs exist in the human spinal cord. They are called stepping pattern generators (SPGs) located in each leg that control stepping movements at the hip and the knee (Yang et al., 2005). Postural control of the head and trunk and voluntary control of the ankle is also required for walking. Sensory feedback adjusts timing and reinforces muscle activation (Knikou, 2010).

Systems Models of Motor Control

A systems model of motor control is currently used to describe the relationship of various brain and spinal centers working together to control posture and movement. In a systems model, the neural control of posture and movement is *distributed*, that is, which areas of the nervous system that control posture or movement depend on the complexity of the task to be performed. Because the nervous system has the ability to self-organize, it is feasible that several parts of the nervous system are engaged in resolving movement problems; therefore, solutions are typically unique to the context and goal of the task at hand (Thelen, 1995). The advantage of a systems model is that it can account for the flexibility and adaptability of motor behavior in a variety of environmental conditions.

A second characteristic of a systems model is that body systems other than the nervous system are involved in the control of movement. The most obvious other system to be involved is the musculoskeletal system. The body is a mechanical system. Muscles have viscoelastic properties. Physiologic maturation occurs in all body systems involved in movement production: muscular, skeletal, nervous, cardiovascular, and pulmonary. For example, if the contractile properties of muscle are not mature, certain types of movements may not be possible. If muscular strength of the legs is not sufficient, ambulation may be delayed. Muscle strength, posture, and perceptual abilities exhibit developmental trajectories, which can affect the rate of motor development by affecting the process of motor control.

Feedback is a third fundamental characteristic of the systems models of motor control. To control movements, the individual needs to know whether the movement has been successful. In a closed-loop model of motor control, sensory information is used as feedback to the nervous system to provide assistance with the next action. A person engages in closed-loop feedback when playing a video game that requires guiding a figure across the screen. This type of feedback provides self-control of movement. A loop is formed from the sensory information that is generated as part of the

movement and is fed back to the brain. This sensory information influences future motor actions. Errors that can be corrected with practice are detected, and performance can be improved. This type of feedback is shown in Figure 3-7.

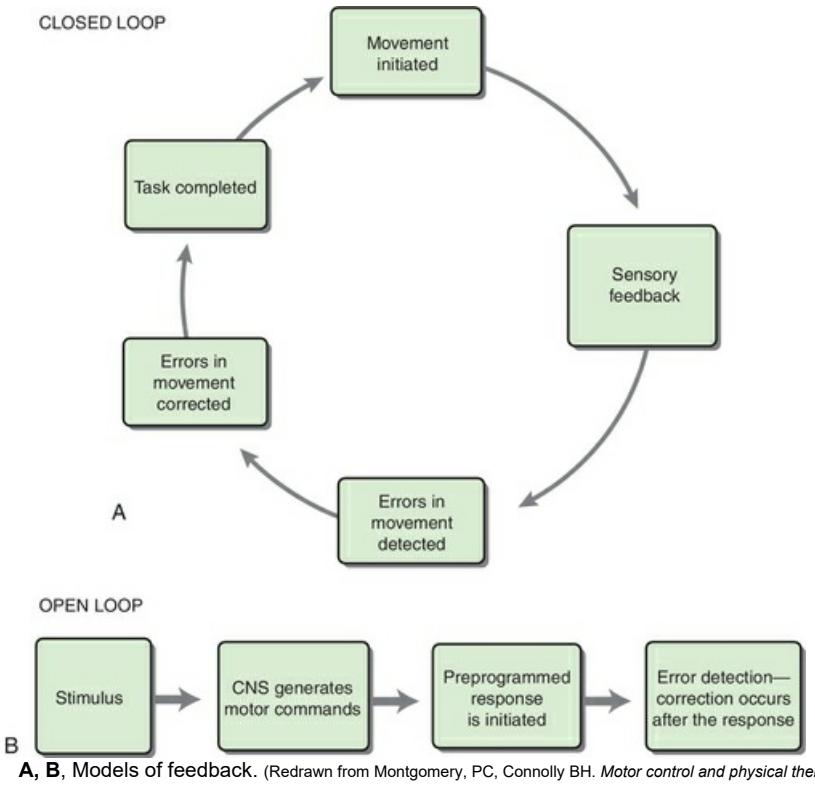


FIGURE 3-7 **A, B**, Models of feedback. (Redrawn from Montgomery, PC, Connolly BH. *Motor control and physical therapy: theoretical framework and practical application*, Hixson, 1991, Chattanooga Group,)

By contrast, in an open-loop model of motor control, movement is cued either by a central structure, such as a motor program, or by sensory information from the periphery. The movement is performed without feedback. When a baseball pitcher throws a favorite pitch, the movement is too quick to allow feedback. Errors are detected after the fact. An example of action spurred by external sensory information is what happens when a fire alarm sounds. The person hears the alarm and moves before thinking about moving. This type of feedback model is also depicted in Figure 3-7 and is thought to be the way in which fast movements are controlled. Another way to think of the difference between closed-loop and open-loop motor controls can be exemplified by someone who learns to play a piano piece. The piece is played slowly while the student is learning and receiving feedback, but once it is learned, the student can sit down and play it through quickly, from beginning to end.

Components of the Postural Control System

In the systems models, both posture and movement are considered systems that represent the interaction of other biologic and mechanical systems and movement components. The relationship between posture and movement is also called postural control. As such, posture implies a readiness to move, an ability not only to react to threats to balance but also to anticipate postural needs to support a motor plan. A motor plan or program is a plan to move, usually stored in memory. Seven components have been identified as part of a postural control system, as depicted in Figure 3-8. These are limits of stability, sensory organization, eye-head stabilization, the musculoskeletal system, motor coordination, predictive central set, and environmental adaptation. Postural control like motor control is a complex and ongoing process.

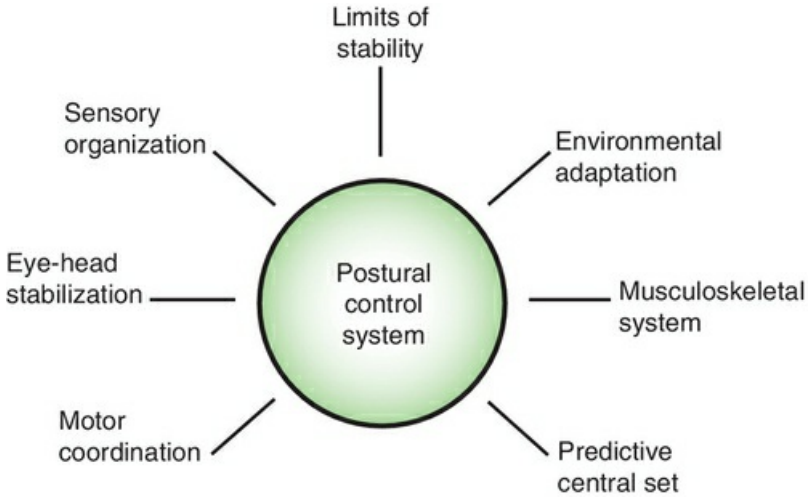


FIGURE 3-8 Components of normal postural control. (Redrawn from Duncan P, editor *Balance: proceedings of the APTA forum*, Alexandria, 1990, American Physical Therapy Association, with permission of the APTA.)

Limits of Stability

Limits of stability are the boundaries of the base of support (BOS) of any given posture. As long as the center of mass (COM) is within the base of support, the person is stable. An infant's base of support is constantly changing relative to the body's size and amount of contact the body has with the supporting surface. Supine and prone are more stable postures by virtue of having so much of the body in contact with the support surface. However, in sitting or standing, the size of the base of support depends on the position of the lower extremities and on whether the upper extremities are in contact with the supporting surface. In standing, the area in which the person can move within the limits of stability or base of support is called the cone of stability, as shown in Figure 3-9. The central nervous system perceives the body's limits of stability through various sensory cues.

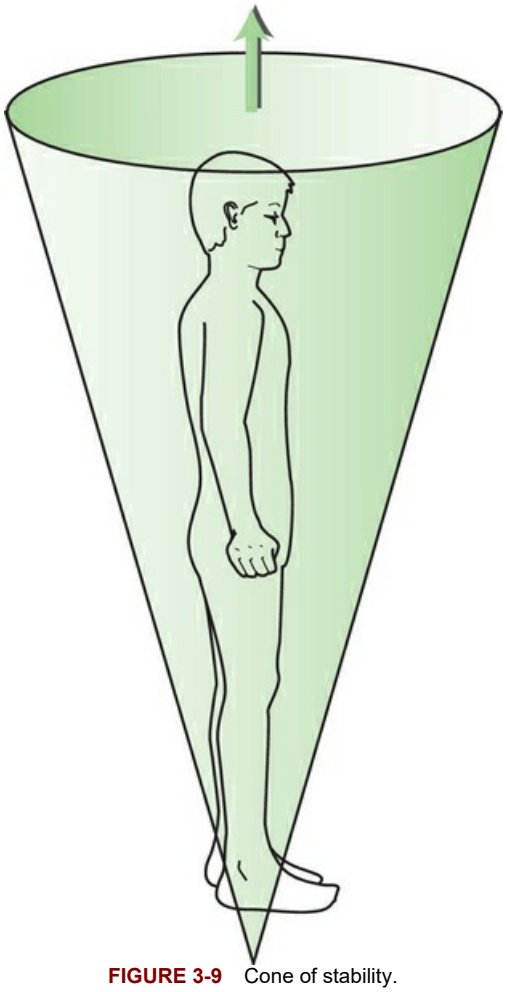


FIGURE 3-9 Cone of stability.

Keeping the body's COM within the BOS constitutes balance. During quiet stance, as the body sways, the limits of stability depend on the interaction of the position and velocity of movement of the COM. We are more likely to lose balance if the velocity of the COM is high and at the limits of the BOS. The body perceives changes in the COM in a posture by detecting amplitude of center of pressure (COP) motion. The COP is the point of application of the ground reaction force. In standing, there would be a COP under each foot. You can feel how the COP changes as you shift weight forward and back while standing.

Sensory Organization

The visual, vestibular, and somatosensory systems provide the body with information about movement and cue postural responses. Maturation of the sensory systems and their relative contribution to balance have been extensively studied with some conflicting findings. Some of these conflicts may be related to the way balance is studied, whether static or dynamic balance is assessed, and to the maturation of sensorimotor control. Regardless of these differences, sensory input appears to be needed for the development of postural control.

Vision is very important for the development of head control. Newborns are sensitive to the flow of visual information and can even make postural adjustments in response to this information (Jouen et al., 2000). Input from the visual system is mapped to neck movement initially and then to trunk movement as head and trunk control is established. The production of spatial maps of the position of various body parts appears to be linked to muscular action. The linking of posture at the neck to vision occurs before somatosensation is mapped to neck muscles (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 2012). Most people agree that vision is the dominant sensory system for the first 3 years of life and that infants rely on vision for postural control in the acquisition of walking.

Vestibular information is also mapped to neck muscles at the same time as somatosensation is mapped. Eventually, mapping of combinations of sensory input such as visual-vestibular information is done (Jouen, 1984). This bimodal mapping allows for comparisons to be made

between previous and present postures. The mapping of sensory information from each individual sense proceeds from the neck to the trunk and on to the lower extremities (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 2012). Information from vision acts as feedback when the body moves and as an anticipatory cue in a feedforward manner before movement. As the child learns to make use of somatosensory information from the lower extremities, somatosensory input emerges as the primary sensory input on which postural response decisions are made.

Somatosensation is the combined input from touch and proprioception. Adults use somatosensation as their primary source for postural response. When there is a sensory conflict, the vestibular system acts as a tiebreaker in making the postural response decision. If somatosensation says you are moving and vision says you are not, the vestibular input should be able to resolve the conflict to maintain balance. However, vestibular function relative to standing postural control does not reach adult levels even at the age of 15 according to Hirabayashi and Iwasaki (1995).

Eye-Head Stabilization

The head carries two of the most influential sensory receptors for posture and balance: the eyes and labyrinths. These two sensory systems provide ongoing sensory input about the movement of the surroundings and head, respectively. The eyes and labyrinths provide orientation of the head in space. The eyes must be able to maintain a stable visual image even when the head is moving, and the eyes have to be able to move with the head as the body moves. The labyrinths relay information about head movement to ocular nuclei and about position, allowing the mover to differentiate between *egocentric* (head relative to the body) and *exocentric* (head relative to objects in the environment) motion. Lateral flexion of the head is an egocentric motion. The movement of the head in space while walking or riding in an elevator is an example of exocentric motion.

The head stabilization in space strategy (HSSS) involves an anticipatory stabilization of the head in space before body movement. A child first displays this strategy at 3 years of age while walking on level ground (Assaiante and Amblard, 1993). By maintaining the angular position of the head with regard to the spatial environment, vestibular inputs can be better interpreted. The HSSS appears to be mature in 7-year-olds (Assaiante and Amblard, 1995). Older adults have been shown to adopt this strategy when faced with distorted or incongruent somatosensory and visual information (DiFabio and Emasithi, 1997).

Musculoskeletal System

The body is a mechanically linked structure that supports posture and provides a postural response. The viscoelastic properties of the muscles, joints, tendons, and ligaments can act as inherent constraints to posture and movement. The flexibility of body segments, such as the neck, thorax, pelvis, hip, knee, and ankle, contribute to attaining and maintaining a posture or making a postural response. Each body segment has mass and grows at a different rate. Each way in which a joint can move represents a degree of freedom. Because the body has so many individual joints and muscles with many possible ways in which to move, certain muscles work together in synergies to control the degrees of freedom.

Normal muscle tone is needed to sustain a posture and to support normal movement. *Muscle tone* has been defined as the resting tension in the muscle (Lundy-Ekman, 2013) and the stiffness in the muscle as it resists being lengthened (Basmajian and DeLuca, 1985). Muscle tone is determined by assessing the resistance felt during passive movement of a limb. Resistance is caused mainly by the viscoelastic properties of the muscle. On activating the stretch reflex, the muscle proprioceptors, the muscle spindles, and Golgi tendon organs contribute to muscle tone or stiffness. The background level of activity in antigravity muscles during stance is described as postural tone by Shumway-Cook and Woollacott (2012). Others also describe patterns of muscular tension in groups of muscles as postural tone. Together, the viscoelastic properties of muscle, the spindles, Golgi tendon organs, and descending motor tracts regulate muscle tone.

Motor Coordination

Motor coordination is the ability to coordinate muscle activation in a sequence that preserves posture. The use of muscle synergies in postural reactions and sway strategies in standing are examples of this coordination and are described in the upcoming section on neural control. Determination of the muscles to be used in a synergy is based on the task to be done and the environment in which the task takes place.

Strength and muscle tone are prerequisites for movement against gravity and motor coordination. Head-and-trunk control require sufficient strength to extend the head, neck, and trunk against gravity in prone; to flex the head, neck, and trunk against gravity in supine; and to laterally flex the head, neck, and trunk against gravity in side-lying.

Predictive Central Set

Predictive central set is that component of postural control that can best be described as postural readiness. Sensation and cognition are used as an anticipatory cue before movement as a means of establishing a state of postural readiness. This readiness or postural set must be present to support movement. Think of how difficult it is to move in the morning when waking up; the body is not posturally ready to move. Contrast this state of postural unpreparedness with an Olympic competitor who is so focused on the motor task at hand that every muscle has been put on alert, ready to act at a moment's notice. Predictive central set is critical to postural control. Mature motor control is characterized by the ability of the body, through the postural set, to anticipate what movement is to come, such as when you tense your arm muscles before picking up a heavy weight. Anticipatory preparation is an example of feedforward processing, in which sensory information is sent ahead to prepare for the movement to follow, in contrast to feedback, in which sensation from a movement is sent back to the nervous system for comparison and error detection. Many adult patients with neurologic deficits lack this anticipatory preparation, so postural preparedness is often a beginning point for treatment. Children with neurologic deficits may never have experienced using sensation in this manner.

Environmental Adaptation

Our posture and movement adapt to the environment in which the movement takes place in much the same way as we change our stance if riding on a moving bus and have nothing stable to grasp. Infants have to adapt to moving in a gravity-controlled environment after being in utero. The body's sensory systems provide input that allows the generation of a movement pattern that dynamically adapts to current conditions. In a systems model, this movement pattern is not limited to the typical postural reactions. With development of postural networks, anticipatory postural control develops and is used to preserve posture. Adaptive postural control allows changes to be made to movement performance in response to internally or externally perceived needs.

Nashner's Model of Postural Control in Standing

Nashner (1990) formulated a model for the control of standing balance over the course of some 20 years. His model describes three common sway strategies seen in quiet steady-state standing: the ankle strategy, the hip strategy, and the stepping strategy. An adult in a quiet standing position sways about the ankles. This strategy depends on having a solid surface in contact with the feet and intact visual, vestibular, and somatosensory systems. If the person sways backward, the anterior tibialis fires to bring the person forward; if the person sways forward, the gastrocnemius fires to bring the person back to midline.

A second sway strategy, called the hip strategy, is usually activated when the base of support is narrow, as when standing crosswise on a balance beam. The ankle strategy is not effective in this situation because the entire foot is not in contact with the support surface. In the hip strategy, muscles are activated in a proximal-to-distal sequence, that is, muscles around the hip are activated to maintain balance before the muscles at the ankles. The last sway strategy is that of stepping. If the speed and strength of the balance disturbance are sufficient, the individual may take a step to prevent loss of balance or a fall. This stepping response is the same as a lower extremity protective reaction. The ankle and the hip strategies are shown in Figure 3-10.

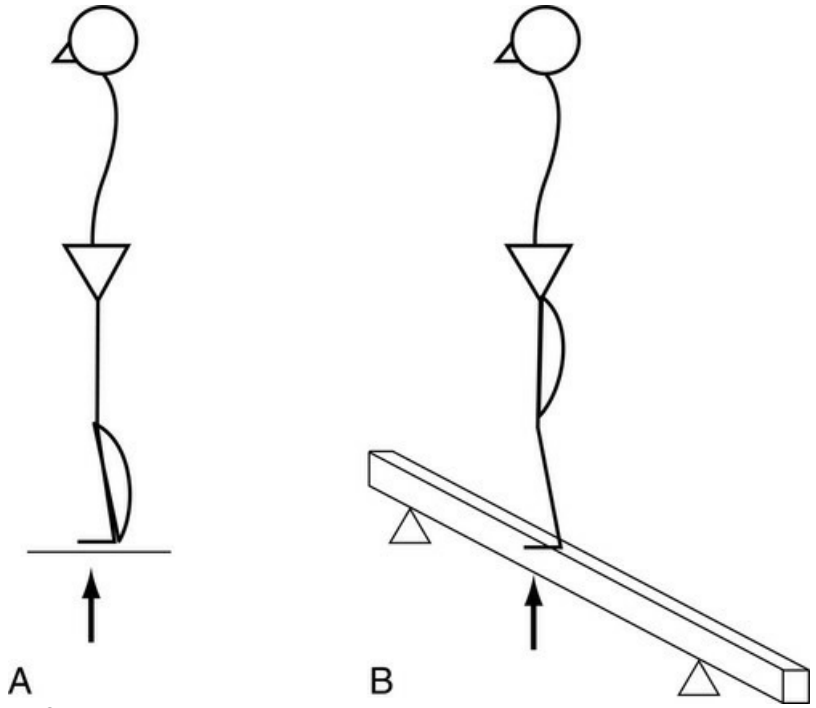


FIGURE 3-10 Sway strategies. **A**, Postural sway about the ankle in quiet standing. **B**, Postural sway about the hip in standing on a balance beam. (Modified from Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2012, Elsevier, p. 271.)

The visual, vestibular, and somatosensory systems previously discussed provide the body with information about movement and cue appropriate postural responses in standing. For the first 3 years of life, the visual system appears to be the dominant sensory system for posture and balance. Vision is used both as feedback as the body moves and as feedforward to anticipate that movement will occur. Children as young as 18 months demonstrate an ankle strategy when quiet standing balance is disturbed (Forssberg and Nashner, 1982). However, the time it takes for them to respond is longer than in adults. Results of studies of 4- to 6-year-old children's responses to disturbances of standing balance were highly variable, almost as if balance was worse in this age group when compared to younger children. Sometimes the children demonstrated an ankle strategy, and sometimes they demonstrated a hip strategy (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 1985). It was originally postulated that children did not have adult-like responses until 10 years of age.

Postural sway in standing on a moveable platform under normal vestibular and somatosensory conditions is greater for children 4 to 6 years of age than for children 7 to 10 years of age (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 1985). By 7 to 10 years of age, an adult sway strategy is demonstrated wherein the child is thought to depend primarily on somatosensory information. Vestibular information is also being used but the system is not yet mature. Interestingly, children with visual impairments are not able to minimize postural sway to the same extent as children who are not visually impaired (Portfors-Yeomans and Riach, 1995). This may be related to the child's inability to fully use either somatosensory or vestibular information during this age period.

Research supports that there is a transition period around 7 to 8 years that can be explained by the use of the HSSS (Rival et al., 2005). By 7 years of age, children are able to make effective use of HSSS that depends on dynamic vestibular cues (Assaiante and Amblard, 1995). However, the transition to adult postural responses in standing is not complete by 12 years of age. Children at 12 to 14 years of age are still not able to handle misleading visual information to make appropriate adult balance responses (Ferber-Viart et al., 2007). These researchers found that although the somatosensory inputs and scores in the 6- to 14-year-old subjects were as good as the young adults studied, their sensory organization was different. They concluded that children prefer visual input to vestibular input for determining balance responses and that vestibular information is the least effective for postural control.

Issues related to motor control

Top Down or Distributed Control

The issue of where the control of movement resides has always been at the heart of the discussion of motor control. Remember that motor control occurs in milliseconds as compared with the time it takes to learn a movement or to develop a new motor skill. The reflex hierarchical models are predicated on the cortex being the controller of movement. However, if there is no cortex, movement is still possible. The cortex can initiate movement but it is not the only neural structure able to do so. From studying pathology involving the basal ganglia, it is known that movement initiation is slowed in people with Parkinson disease. Other neural structures that can initiate or control movement include the basal ganglia, the cerebellum, and the spinal cord. The spinal cord can produce rudimentary reciprocal movement from activation of central pattern generators. The reflexive withdrawal and extension of the limbs has been modified to produce cyclical patterns of movement that help locomotion be automatic but is modifiable by higher centers of the brain. Lastly, the cerebellum is involved in movement coordination and timing of movements. The fact that more than one structure within the nervous system can affect and control movement lends credence for a distributed control of movement.

There is no one location of control in the systems view of movement; the movement emerges from the combined need of the mover, the task, and the environment. The structures, pathways, and processes needed to most efficiently produce the movement are discovered as in finding the best way to get the task done. The structures, pathways, or processes that are continually used get better at the task and become the preferred way of performing that particular task. Developmentally, only certain structures, pathways, or processes are available early in development so that movements become refined and control improves with age. Movement control improves not only because of the changes in the central nervous system (CNS), but also because of the maturation of the musculoskeletal system. Because the musculoskeletal system carries out the movement, its maturation can also affect movement outcome.

Degrees of Freedom

The mechanical definition of *degrees of freedom* is "the number of planes of motion possible at a single joint" (Kelso, 1982). The degrees of freedom of a system have been defined as all of the independent movement elements of a control system and the number of ways each element can act (Schmidt and Wrisberg, 2004). There are multiple levels of redundancy within the CNS. Bernstein (1967) suggested that a key function of the CNS was to control this redundancy by minimizing the degrees of freedom or the number of independent movement elements that are used. For example, muscles can fire in different ways to control particular movement patterns or joint motions. In addition, many different kinematic or movement patterns can be executed to accomplish one specific outcome or action. During the early stages of learning novel tasks, the body may produce very simple movements, often "linking together two or more degrees of freedom" (Gordon, 1987), limiting the amount of joint motion by holding some joints stiffly via muscle cocontraction. As an action or task is learned, we first hold our joints stiffly through muscle coactivation and then, as we learn the task, we decrease coactivation and allow the joint to move freely. This increases the degrees of freedom around the joint (Vereijken et al., 1992). This concept is further discussed later in the chapter.

Certainly, an increase in joint stiffness used to minimize degrees of freedom at the early stages of skill acquisition may not hold true for all types of tasks. In fact, different skills require different patterns of muscle activation. For example, Spencer and Thelen (1997) reported that muscle coactivity increases with the learning of a fast vertical reaching movement. They proposed that high-velocity movements actually result in the need for muscle coactivity to counteract unwanted rotational forces. However, during the execution of complex multijoint tasks, such as walking and rising from sitting to standing, muscle coactivation is clearly undesirable and may in fact negatively affect the smoothness and efficiency of the movements. The resolution of the degrees of freedom problem varies depending on the characteristics of the learner as well as on the components of the task and environment. Despite the various interpretations of Bernstein's original hypothesis (1967), the resolution of the degrees of freedom problem continues to form the underlying basis for a

systems theory of motor control.

Optimization Principles

Optimization theory suggests that movements are specified to optimize a select cost function (Cruse et al., 1990; Nelson, 1983; Wolpert et al., 1995). Cost functions are those kinematic (spatial) or dynamic (force) factors that influence movement at an expense to the system. Motor skill development or relearning is aimed at achieving select objectives while minimizing cost to the system. Reducing such cost while meeting task demands and accommodating to task constraints theoretically solves the degrees of freedom problem and enhances movement efficiency.

As children and adults struggle to achieve functional gains during development or during recovery from neural injury, they may appear to use inefficient movement strategies, at least from an outside view. In actuality, they may be expressing the most efficient movements available to them given their current resources. For example, a child with hemiplegic cerebral palsy may have the physical constraints of shoulder or wrist weakness and reduced finger fractionation (isolation). In an effort to reduce cost to the system while meeting tasks demands, she may use a "flexion synergy," in which elbow flexion is used in combination with shoulder elevation and lateral trunk flexion to reach for objects placed at shoulder height. This flexion synergy is a strategy that seems to reduce the number of movement elements yet allows for successful attainment of the target object. Although this strategy may be useful in a specific situation, it may become habitual and may not be effective in performing a wide range of tasks. Researchers have found that children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy as a result of right hemisphere damage have deficits in using proprioceptive feedback to recognize arm position (Goble et al., 2005).

Variability in postural control is seen during infancy. Variability is needed for the development of functional movement. Furthermore, being able to vary and adapt one's posture makes exploration of the surrounding environment easier and affords opportunities for perception and action. An infant who lacks postural and movement variability is at risk for movement dysfunction. Dusing and Harbourne (2010) have suggested that lack of complex postural control may be an early indicator of developmental problems. Conversely, adding complexity to posture and movement variability may provide an impetus for functional changes in motor function.

Age-Related Changes in Postural and Motor Control

Infants learn to move by moving. Postural control supports movement and provides strategies upon which to scaffold motor actions, such as reaching, grasping, crawling, and walking. Early movements are characterized by large amounts of variability. Adaptation of movement is not evident initially but develops with experience (Hadders-Algra, 2010). Variability in postural control is seen in infancy. Infants scale the postural responses of their head to the surrounding visual information (Bertenthal et al., 1997). The ability to use visual information for postural responses improves from 5 to 9 months of age.

Balance Strategies in Sitting

Infants develop directionally specific postural responses before being able to sit (Hadders-Algra, 2008). These responses appear to be innate and are guided by an internal representation of the limits of stability such as orientation of the vertical axis and relationship of COM to BOS. This is consistent with the hypothesis of a central pattern generator being the source of initial postural responses (Hirschfeld and Forssberg, 1994). This circuitry determines the spatial characteristics of muscle activation that is triggered by afferent information. During this period of time, the infant demonstrates a large number of responses. With further development, the circuitry matures, and with experience, the initial variability is reduced. The temporal and spatial features of responses are fine-tuned to match task-specific demands. Multisensory afferent input is used to shape these adaptive responses.

Most studies of the development of anticipatory postural control have been conducted in the sitting position using reaching as the task. Postural activity in the trunk was measured while an infant reached from a seated posture (Riach and Hayes, 1990). Trunk muscles were activated before muscles used for reaching. Researchers concluded that anticipatory postural control occurs before voluntary movements and is present in infants by 9 months of age (Hadders-Algra et al., 1996a).

Children appear to tolerate more imbalance as they grow up (Hay and Redon, 1999). Anticipatory control of posture increases from 3 to 8 years of age, with older children demonstrating more refined scaling of responses. In other words, children become better at matching the amount of postural preparation needed for a specific task. Less postural activation is needed when picking up a light object as compared to picking up a heavy object.

Strategies in Standing

Older adults have more spontaneous sway than younger individuals (Maki and McIlroy, 1996; Sturnieks et al., 2008). The increase in sway is thought to be a compensation for the effects of gravity. However, the older adult may use increased sway to provide ongoing sensory information to postural control mechanisms in the CNS. Altering the sensory conditions provides a challenge to both young and older adults. With eyes closed, older adults stand more asymmetrically than younger adults. Older adults have been found to use a stiffening response of cocontracting muscles around the ankles joints rather than switching to using other sensory cues when vision is eliminated in quiet standing (Benjuya et al., 2004). Increased sway in a medial lateral direction is most predictive of falls in older adults (Maki et al., 1994). Stepping response may be more of a real-life response to external perturbations even if the position of the COM does not exceed the BOS (Rogers et al., 1996; Maki and McIlroy, 1997).

The model of motor control that best explains changes in posture and movement seen across the life span depend on the age and experience of the mover, the physical demands of the task to be carried out, and the environment in which the task is to be performed. The way in which a 2-year-old child may choose to solve the movement problem of how to reach the cookie jar in the middle of the kitchen table will be different from the solution devised by a 12-year-old child. The younger the child, the more homogeneous the movement solutions are. As the infant grows, the movement solutions become more varied, and that, in itself, may reflect the self-organizing properties of the systems of the body involved in posture and movement.

Posture has a role in movement before, during, and after a movement. Posture should be thought of as preparation for movement. A person would not think of starting to learn to in-line skate from a seated position. The person would have to stand with the skates on and try to balance while standing before taking off on the skates. The person's body tries to anticipate the posture that will be needed before the movement. Therefore, with patients who have movement dysfunction, the clinician must prepare them to move before movement is initiated.

When learning in-line skating, the person continually tries to maintain an upright posture. Postural control maintains alignment while the person moves forward. If the person loses balance and falls, posture is reactive. When falling, an automatic postural response comes from the nervous system; arms are extended in protection. Stunt performers have learned to avoid injury by landing on slightly bent arms, then tucking and rolling. Through the use of prior experience and knowledge of present conditions, the end result is modified and a full-blown protective response is generated. In many instances, automatic postural responses must be unlearned to learn and perfect fundamental motor skills. Think of a broad jumper who is airborne and moving forward in a crouch position. To prevent falling backward, the jumper must keep his arms forward and counteract the natural tendency to reach back.

Motor learning

Across the life span, individuals are faced with new motor challenges and must learn to perform new motor skills. An infant must learn how to hold up her head, roll over, sit, crawl, and eventually walk. Each skill takes time to master and occurs only after the infant has practiced each skill in several different ways. The young child then masters running, climbing on furniture, walking up stairs, jumping, and playing ball. The school-age child takes these tasks further to specifically kick a soccer ball into a net, throw a ball into a basketball hoop, ride a bike, or skateboard. As teens and adults learn new sports, they refine their skills, becoming more efficient at turning while on snow skis or pitching a baseball into the strike zone with more speed. Adults also learn to efficiently perform tasks related to their occupation. These tasks vary widely from one occupation to another and may include efficient computer keyboarding, climbing up a ladder, or lifting boxes. Older adults may need to modify their motor skill performance to accommodate for changes in strength and flexibility. For example, the older adult golfer may change her stance during a swing or learn to use a heavier golf club to maximize the distance of her drive. Often, injury or illness requires an individual to relearn how to sit up, walk, put on a shirt, or get into or out of a car. The method each individual uses to learn new movements demonstrates the process of motor learning. Motor learning examines how an individual learns or modifies a motor task. As discussed in the section on motor control, the characteristics of the task, the learner, and the environment will impact on the performance and learning of the skill. With motor learning, general principles apply to individuals of any age, but variations also have been found between the motor learning methods used by children, adults, and older adults.

Definition and Time Frame

Motor learning is defined as the process that brings about a permanent change in motor performance as a result of practice or experience (Schmidt and Wrisberg, 2004). The time frame of motor learning falls between the milliseconds involved in motor control and the years involved in motor development. Hours, days, and weeks of practice are part of motor development. It takes an infant the better part of a year to overcome gravity and learn to walk. The perfection of some skills takes years; ask anyone trying to improve a batting average or a soccer kick. Even though motor development, motor control, and motor learning take place within different time frames, these time frames do not exclude one or the other processes from taking place. In fact, it is possible that because these processes do have different time bases for action, they may be mutually compatible.

Theories of motor learning

There are two theories of motor learning that have generated a great deal of study about how we control and acquire motor skills. Both theories use programs to explain how movements are controlled and learned; they are Adams' closed-loop theory of motor learning (Adams, 1971) and Schmidt's schema theory (Schmidt, 1975). The two theories differ in the amount of emphasis placed on open-loop processes that can occur without the benefit of ongoing feedback (Schmidt and Lee, 2005). Schmidt incorporated many of Adams' original ideas when formulating his schema theory in an attempt to explain the acquisition of both slow and fast movements. Intrinsic and extrinsic feedbacks, as defined earlier in this chapter, are both important factors in these two theories.

Adams' Closed-Loop Theory

The name of Adams' theory emphasized the crucial role of feedback. The concept of a closed loop of motor control is one in which sensory information is funneled back to the central nervous system for processing and control of motor behavior. The sensory feedback is used to produce accurate movements.

The basic premise of Adams' theory is that movements are performed by comparing the ongoing movement with an internal reference of correctness that is developed during practice. This internal reference is termed as *perceptual trace*, which represents the feedback one would receive if the task were performed correctly. A perceptual trace is formed as the learner repeatedly performs an action. Through ongoing comparison of the feedback with the perceptual trace, a limb may be brought into the desired position. To learn the task, it would be necessary to practice the exact skill repeatedly to strengthen the correct perceptual trace. The quality of performance is directly related to the quality of the perceptual trace. The trace is made up of a set of intrinsic feedback signals that arise from the learner. Intrinsic feedback here means the sensory information that is generated through performance; for example, the kinesthetic feel of the movement. As a new movement is learned, correct outcomes reinforce development of the most effective, correct perceptual trace, although perceptual traces that lead to incorrect outcomes are discarded. The perceptual trace becomes stronger with repetition and more accurate in representing the correct performance as a result of feedback.

With further study, limitations of the closed-loop theory of motor learning have been identified. One limitation is that the theory does not explain how movements can be explained when sensory information is not available. The theory also does not explain how individuals can often perform novel tasks successfully, without the benefit of repeated practice and perceptual trace. The ability of the brain to store individual perceptual traces for each possible movement has also been questioned, considering the memory storage capacity of the brain (Schmidt, 1975).

Schmidt's Schema Theory

Schmidt's schema theory was developed in direct response to Adams' closed-loop theory and its limitations. Schema theory is concerned with how movements that can be carried out without feedback are learned, and it relies on an open-loop control element, the motor program, to foster learning. The *motor program* for a movement reflects the general rules to successfully complete the movement. These general rules, or schema, can then be used to produce the movement in a variety of conditions or settings. For example, the general rules for walking can be applied to walking on tile, on grass, on an icy sidewalk, or going up a hill. The motor program provides the spatial and temporal information about muscle activation needed to complete the movement (Schmidt and Lee, 2005). The motor program is the schema, or abstract memory, of rules related to skilled actions.

According to schema theory, when a person produces a movement, four kinds of information are stored in short-term memory.

1. The initial conditions under which the performance took place (e.g., the position of the body, the kind of surface on which the individual carried out the action, or the shapes and weights of any objects that were used to carry out the task)
2. The parameters assigned to the motor program (e.g., the force or speed that was specified at the time of initiation of the program)

3. The outcome of the performance
4. The sensory consequences of the movement (e.g., how it felt to perform the movement, the sounds that were made as a result of the action, or the visual effect of the performance).

These four kinds of information are analyzed to gain insight into the relationships among them and to form two types of schema: the recall schema and the recognition schema.

The *recall schema* is used to select a method to complete a motor task. It is an abstract representation of the relationship among the initial conditions surrounding performance, parameters that were specified within the motor program, and the outcome of the performance. The learner, through the analysis of parameters that were specified in the motor program and the outcome, begins to understand the relationship between these two factors. For example, the learner may come to understand how far a wheelchair travels when varying amounts of force are generated to push the chair on a gravel pathway. The learner stores this schema and uses it the next time the wheelchair is moved on a gravel path.

The *recognition schema* helps assess how well a motor behavior has been performed. It represents the relationship among the initial conditions, the outcome of the performance, and the sensory consequences that are perceived by the learner. Because it is formed in a manner similar to that of the recall schema, once it is established, the recognition schema is used to produce an estimate of the sensory consequences of the action that will be used to adjust and evaluate the motor performance of a given motor task.

In motor learning, the motor behavior is assessed through use of the recognition schema. If errors are identified, they are used to refine the recall schema. Recall and recognition schemas are continually revised and updated as skilled movement is learned. Limitations of the schema theory have also been identified. One limitation is that the formation of general motor programs is not explained. Another question has arisen from inconsistent results in studies of effectiveness of variable practice on learning new motor skills, especially with adult subjects.

Stages of motor learning

It is generally possible to tell when a person is learning a new skill. The person's performance lacks the graceful, efficient movement of someone who has perfected the skill. For example, when adults learn to snow ski, they typically hold their bodies stiffly, with knees straight and arms at their side. Over time, as they become more comfortable with skiing, they will bend and straighten their knees as they turn. Finally, when watching the experienced skier, the body fluidly rotates and flexes or extends as she maneuvers down a steep slope or completes a slalom race. The stages associated with mastery of a skill have been described and clearly differentiated between the early stages of motor learning and the later stages of motor learning. Two models of motor learning stages are described below and in Table 3-3.

Table 3-3

Stages of Motor Learning

Model	Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3
Fitts' stages of motor learning	Cognitive stage Actively think about goal Think about conditions	Associative stage Refine performance Error correction	Autonomous stage Automatic performance Consistent, efficient performance
"Neo-Bernsteinian" model of motor learning	Novice stage Decreased number of degrees of freedom	Advanced stage Release of some degrees of freedom	Expert stage Uses all degrees of freedom for fluid, efficient movement
General characteristics	Stiff looking Inconsistent performance Errors Slow, nonfluid movement	More fluid movement Fewer errors Improved consistency Improved efficiency	Automatic Fluid Consistent Efficient Error correction

From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2012, Elsevier, p. 77.

In the early stages of motor learning, individuals have to think about the skill they are performing and may even "talk" their way through the skill. For example, when learning how to turn when snow skiing, the novice skier may tell herself to bend the knees upon initiating the turn, then straighten the knees through the turn, and then bend the knees again as the turn is completed. The skier might even be observed to say the words "bend, straighten, bend" or "down, up, down" as she turns. Early in the motor learning process, movements tend to be stiff and inefficient. The new learner may not always be able to successfully complete the skill or might hesitate, making the timing movements within the skill inaccurate.

In the later stages of motor learning, the individual may not need to think about the skill. For example, the skier will automatically go through the appropriate motions with the appropriate timing as she makes a turn down a steep slope. Likewise, the baseball player steps up to the plate and does not think too much about how he will hit the ball. The batter will swing at a ball that comes into the strike zone automatically. If either the experienced skier or batter makes an error, they will self-assess their performance and try to correct the error next time.

Fitts' Stages

In analyzing acquisition of new motor skills, Fitts (1964) described three stages of motor learning. The first stage is the *cognitive phase*, in which the learner has to consciously consider the goal of the task to be completed and recognize the features of the environment to which the movement must conform (Gentile, 1987). In a task such as walking across a crowded room, the surface of the floor and the location and size of the people within the room are considered regulatory features. If the floor is slippery, a person's walking pattern is different than if the floor is carpeted. Background features, such as lighting or noise, may also affect task performance. During this initial cognitive phase of learning, an individual tries a variety of strategies to achieve the movement goal. Through this trial-and-error approach, effective strategies are built upon and ineffective strategies are discarded.

At the next stage of learning, the *associative phase*, the learner has developed the general movement pattern necessary to perform the task and is ready to refine and improve the

performance of the skill. The learner makes subtle adjustments to adjust errors and to adapt the skill to varying environmental demands of the task. For example, a young baseball player may learn that he can more efficiently and consistently hit the ball if he chokes up on the bat. During this phase, the focus of the learner switches from "what to do" to "how to do the movement" (Schmidt, 1988).

In the final stage of learning, the *autonomous phase*, the skill becomes more "automatic" because the learner does not need to focus all of her attention on the motor skill. She is able to attend to other components of the task, such as scanning for subtle environmental obstacles. At this phase, the learner is better able to adapt to changes in features in the environment. The young baseball player will be relatively successful at hitting the ball even when using different bats or if a cheering crowd is present.

"Neo-Bernsteinian" Model

This model of staging motor learning considers the learner's ability to master multiple degrees of freedom as she learns a new skill (Bernstein, 1967; Vereijken, et al., 1992). Within this model, the initial stage of motor learning, the *novice stage*, is when the learner reduces the degrees of freedom that need to be controlled during the task. The learner will "fix" some joints so that motion does not take place and the degree of freedom is constrained at that joint. For example, think of the new snow skier who holds her knees stiffly extended while bending at the trunk to try to turn. The resultant movement is stiff-looking and not always effective. For example, if the slope of the hill is too steep, or if the skier tries to turn on an icy patch, the movement may not be effective. The second stage in this model, the *advanced stage*, is seen when the learner allows more joints to participate in the task, in essence releasing some of the degrees of freedom. Coordination is improved as agonist and antagonist muscles around the joint can work together to produce the movement, rather than cocontracting as they did to "fix" the joint in earlier movement attempts. The third stage of this model, the *expert stage*, is when all degrees of freedom necessary to perform a task in an efficient, coordinated manner are released. Within this stage, the learner can begin to adjust performance to improve the efficiency of the movement by adjusting the speed of the movement. Considering the skier, the expert may appreciate that by increasing the speed of descent, a turn may be easier to initiate.

Open and Closed Tasks

Movement results when an interaction exists among the mover, the task, and the environment. We have discussed the mover and the environment, but the task to be learned can be classified as either open or closed. Open skills are those done in environments that change over time, such as playing softball, walking on different uneven surfaces, and driving a car. Closed skills are skills that have set parameters and stay the same, such as walking on carpet, holding an object, or reaching for a target. These skills appear to be processed differently. Which type involves more perceptual information? Open skills require the mover to constantly update movements and to pay attention to incoming information about the softball, movement of traffic, or the support surface. Would a person have fewer motor problems with open or closed skills? Closed skills with set parameters pose fewer problems. Remember that open and closed skills are different from open-loop and closed-loop processing for motor control or motor learning.

Effects of Practice

Motor learning theorists have also studied the effects of practice on learning a motor task and whether different types of practice make initial learning easier. Practice is a key component of motor learning. Some types of practice make initial learning easier but make transferring that learning to another task more difficult. The more closely the practice environment resembles the actual environment where the task will take place, the better the transfer of learning will be. This is known as task-specific practice. Therefore, if you are going to teach a person to walk in the physical therapy gym, this learning may not transfer to walking at home, where the floor is carpeted. Many facilities use an Easy Street (a mock or mini home, work, and community environment) to help simulate actual conditions the patient may encounter at home. Of course, providing therapy in the home is an excellent opportunity for motor learning.

Massed versus Distributed Practice

The difference between massed and distributed practice schedules is related to the proportion of rest time and practice time during the session. In massed practice, greater practice time than rest time occurs in the session. The amount of rest time between practice attempts is less than the amount of time spent practicing. In distributed practice conditions, the amount of rest time is longer than the time spent practicing. Constraint-induced therapy can be considered a modified form of massed practice in which learned nonuse is overcome by shaping or reinforcing (Taub et al., 1993). Shaping incorporates the motor learning concept of part practice as a task is learned in small steps, which are individually mastered. Successive approximation of the completed task is made until the individual is able to perform the whole task. In an individual with hemiplegia, the uninvolved arm or hand is constrained, thereby necessitating use of the involved (hemiplegic) upper extremity in functional tasks.

Random versus Blocked Practice

Another consideration in structuring a practice session is the order in which tasks are practiced. *Blocked practice* occurs when the same task is repeated several times in a row. One task is practiced several times before a second task is practiced. *Random practice* occurs when a variety of tasks is practiced in a random order, with any one skill rarely practiced two times in a row. *Mixed practice* sessions may also be useful in some situations in which episodes of both random and blocked practice are incorporated into the practice session.

Constant practice occurs when an individual practices one variation of a movement skill several times in a row. An example would be repeatedly practicing standing up from a wheelchair or throwing a basketball into a hoop. *Variable practice* occurs when the learner practices several variations of a motor skill during a practice session. For example, a patient in rehabilitation may practice standing up from the wheelchair, standing up from the bed, standing up from the toilet, and standing up from the floor. A child might practice throwing a ball into a hoop, throwing a ball at a target on the wall, throwing a ball underhand, throwing a ball overhand, or throwing a ball to a partner all within the same session. Variable practice training is useful in helping the learner generalize a motor skill over a wide variety of environmental settings and conditions. Learning is thought to be enhanced by the variable practice because the strength of the general motor program rules, specific to the new task, would be increased. This mechanism is also considered as a way that an individual can attempt a novel task because the person can incorporate rules developed for previous motor tasks to solve the novel motor task.

Whole versus Part Task Training

A task can be practiced as a complete action (*whole task practice*) or broken up into its component parts (*part practice*). Continuous tasks such as walking, running, or stair climbing are more effectively learned as a whole task practice. It has been demonstrated that if walking is broken down into part practice of a component such as weight shifting forward over the foot, the learner demonstrates improvements in weight-shifting behavior but not generalize this improvement into the walking sequence (Winstein et al., 1989).

Skills, which can be broken down into discrete parts, may be most effectively taught using part practice training. For example, a patient learning how to independently transfer out of a wheelchair might be first taught how to lock the brakes on the chair, then how to scoot forward in the chair. After these parts of the task are mastered, the patient might learn to properly place his feet, lean forward over the feet, and finally stand. Similarly, when learning a dressing task, a child might first be taught to pull a shirt over her head then push in each arm. Once these components are completed, the focus might be on learning how to fasten buttons or the zipper.

Constraints to Motor Development, Motor Control, and Motor Learning

Our movements are constrained or limited by the biomechanical properties of our bones, joints, and muscles. No matter how sophisticated the neural message is or how motivated the person is, if the part of the body involved in the movement is limited in strength or range, the movement may occur

incorrectly or not at all. If the control directions are misinterpreted, the intended movement may not occur. A person is only as good a mover as the weakest part. For some, that weakest part is a specific system, such as the muscular or nervous system, and for others, it is a function of a system, such as cognition.

Development of motor control and the acquisition of motor abilities occur while both the muscular and skeletal systems are growing and the nervous system is maturing. Changes in all the body's physical systems provide a constant challenge to the development of motor control. Thelen and Fisher (1982) showed that some changes in motor behavior, such as an infant's inability to step reflexively after a certain age, probably occur because the infant's legs become too heavy to move, not because some reflex is no longer exhibited by the nervous system. We have already discussed that the difficulty an infant encounters in learning to control the head during infancy can be attributed to the head's size being proportionately too big for the body. With growth, the body catches up to the head. As a linked system, the skeleton has to be controlled by the tension in the muscles and the amount of force generated by those muscles. Learning which muscles work well together and in what order is a monumental task.

Adolescence is another time of rapidly changing body relationships. As children become adolescents, movement coordination can be disrupted because of rapid and uneven changes in body dimensions. The most coordinated 10- or 12-year-old can turn into a gawky, gangly, and uncoordinated 14- or 16-year-old. The teenager makes major adjustments in motor control during the adolescent growth spurt.

Age-Related Changes in Motor Learning

Children learn differently than adults. Children practice, practice, practice. For example, when learning to walk, an infant covers a distance equal to 29 football fields daily (Adolph et al., 2003). A typical 14-month-old takes more than 2,000 steps per hour (Adolph, 2008). These two examples lend support to using block practice to learn and retain a new skill. Infants demonstrate inherent variability in task performance.

As young children are learning new gross motor tasks, blocked practice appears to lead to better transfer and perform the skill. Del Rey and colleagues (1983) had typically developing children (approximately 8 years old) practice a timing task at different speeds in either a blocked or random order and then tested them on a transfer test with the new coordination pattern. The researchers found that blocked practice led to better performance on the transfer task than did random practice. In Frisbee throwing experiments, accuracy in throwing the Frisbee at a target was improved by blocked practice in children, although adults improved accuracy the most with random practice (Pinto-Zipp and Gentile, 1995; Jarus and Goverover, 1999). The contextual interference provided by random practice schedules does not appear to help children learn new motor skills (Perez et al., 2005).

Although most of the literature on children supports a blocked or mixed schedule for learning whole body tasks, some researchers have found that typically developing children may learn skilled or sport-specific skills if a variable practice schedule is used (Vera et al., 2008; Douvis, 2005; Granda and Montilla, 2003). This variable practice schedule combines blocked and random practice elements and allows the child to benefit from practicing the new skill with elements of contextual interference. Vera and associates (2008) found that 9-year-old children performed the skill of kicking a soccer ball best by following blocked or combined practice, but only children in a combined practice situation improved in dribbling the soccer ball. Similarly, Douvis (2005) examined the impact of variable practice on learning the tennis forehand drive in children and adolescents. Adolescents did better than children on the task, reflecting the influence of age and development, but both age groups did the best with variable practice. The variable practice sessions allowed the tennis players to use the forehand drive in a manner that more resembled the actual game of tennis, where a player may use a forehand drive, then a backhand drive.

Older adults' motor learning is affected by aging. In general older adults demonstrate deficits in sequential learning, learning new technology, and effortful bimanual coordination patterns. Some of these deficits may be related to age-related declines in force production, sensory capacity or speed of sensory processing, and issues with divided attention. The good news is that older adults can improve motor performance with practice. Older adults perform tasks they are learning more slowly and with greater errors when compared to younger adults but they do benefit equally, as compared to younger adults, from practice schedules conducive to motor learning.

Neural Plasticity

Neural plasticity is the ability of the nervous system to change. Although it has always been hypothesized that the nervous system could adapt throughout life, there is now ample evidence that the adult brain maintains the ability for reorganization or plasticity (Butefisch, 2004; Doyon and Benali, 2005; Bruel-Jungerman et al., 2007). Traditionally, it was always thought that plasticity was limited to the developing nervous system. *Critical periods* are times when neurons compete for synaptic sites. Activity-dependent changes in neural circuitry usually occur during a restricted time in development or critical period, when the organism is sensitive to the effects of experience. The concept of plasticity includes the ability of the nervous system to make structural changes in response to internal and external demands. Learning and motor behavior appear to modulate neurogenesis throughout life.

Experience is critical to development. Two types of neural plasticity have been described in the literature (Black, 1998). Unfortunately, the names given to them are confusing. One is *experience-expectant,* and the other is *experience-dependent.* In the course of typical prenatal and postnatal development, the infant is expected to be exposed to sufficient environmental stimuli at appropriate times. In fact, if the infant is not exposed to the proper quality and quantity of input, development will not proceed normally. This type of *experience-expectant* neural plasticity is exemplified in the sensory systems that are ready to function at birth but require experience with light and sound to complete maturation. Deprivation during critical time periods can result in the lack of expected development of vision and hearing.

Experience-dependent neural plasticity allows the nervous system to incorporate other types of information from environmental experiences that are relatively unpredictable and idiosyncratic. These experiences are unique to the individual and depend on the context in which development occurs, such as the physical, social, and cultural environment. Lebeer (1998) refers to this as *ecological plasticity*, whereas Johnston uses the term *activity-dependent plasticity*. Climate, social expectations, and child-rearing practices can alter movement experiences. What each child learns depends on the unique physical challenges encountered. Motor learning as part of motor development is an example of *experience-dependent* neural plasticity. Experiences of infants in different cultures may result in alterations in the acquisition of motor abilities. Similarly, not every child experiences the exact same words, but every child does learn language. *Activity-dependent* plasticity is what drives changes in synapses or neuronal circuits as a result of experience or learning.

Recovery following injury to the nervous system occurs in one of two ways. One is a result of spontaneous recovery and the other way is function induced. For a more in-depth discussion of injury-induced plasticity and recovery of function, see Shumway-Cook and Woollacott (2012). Function-induced recovery is also known as use-dependent cortical reorganization. Regardless of the terminology, change results from activity which produces cortical reorganization, just as early experience drives motor and sensory development. Experience can drive recovery of function. Kleim and Jones (2008) summarized the research to date on activity-dependent neural plasticity and recommended 10 principles for neurorehabilitation. These are listed in Table 3-4 and are congruent with the principles of motor learning involving repetition and task specificity.

Table 3-4

Principles of Experience-Dependent Plasticity

Principle	Description
Use it or lose it	Lack of activity of certain brain functions can lead to functional loss.
Use it and improve it	Training a specific brain function can lead to improvement in that function.
Specificity	The training experience must be specific to the expected change.
Repetition	Active repetition is needed to induce change.
Intensity	Training must be of a sufficient intensity to induce change.
Salience	The stimulus used to produce a response must be appropriate.
Age	Plasticity is more likely to occur in the young brain versus the older brain.
Time	Timing of intervention may help or hinder recovery.
Transference	Training on one task may positively affect another similar task.
Interference	Plasticity in response to one experience can interfere with the acquisition of other behaviors.

(Adapted from Kleim, Jones: Principles of experience-dependent neural plasticity: Implications for rehabilitation after brain damage. *J Speech Hear Res* 51:S225–S239, 2008.)

Interventions Based on Motor Control, Motor Learning, and

Neural Plasticity Principles

Evidence-based practice is the integration of clinical expertise, the best available evidence, and patient characteristics (Sackett et al., 2000). Previously, interventions have been based on neurophysiologic approaches, which focus on the impairments seen in individuals with neurologic dysfunction. More recently emphasis is placed on the activity limitations and participation restrictions encountered by those with neurologic dysfunction. The adoption of the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) by the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) necessitates a broader, more functionally based view of interventions and the impact of those interventions on the quality of life of the individual. Interventions must be relevant to the individual, whether a child or an adult. The therapist planning interventions has to make them interesting and engaging. The motor activities selected must be engaging and meaningful to the person. The therapist selects the task to be performed and the environment as well as determines the type of practice and when feedback is given. Active participation is required for motor learning.

The physical therapist's and physical therapist assistant's view of motor control and motor learning influence the choice of approach to therapy with children and adults with neuromuscular problems. Given that the prevailing view of motor control and motor learning is a systems view, all body systems must be taken into consideration when planning an intervention. Size and level of maturity of the body systems involved in movement must be considered. The age appropriateness of tasks relative to the mover's cognitive ability to understand the task should also be considered. Some interventions used in treating children with neurologic dysfunction focus only on developing reactive postural reactions. Although children need to be safe within any posture that they are placed in or attain on their own, children also need to learn adaptive postural responses. Adaptive responses are learned within the context of reaching and grasping, locomotion, and play activities. Movement experiences should be as close to reality as possible. Using a variety of movement sequences to assist the infant or child to change and maintain postures is of the utmost importance during therapy and at home. Setting up situations in which the child has to try out different moves to solve a movement problem is ideal and is often the best therapy. This activity-based approach can maximize physical function and foster social, emotional, and cognitive development.

Principles of forced use of an extremity that might be ignored have been extremely effective in adults and children with hemiplegia (Taub et al., 1993; Charles et al., 2001, Charles et al., 2006). Constraint-induced movement therapy (CIMT) involves both constraint of the noninvolved upper extremity of an individual with hemiplegia and repetitive practice of skilled activities or functional tasks. Lin (2007) found that patients with chronic stroke had improved motor control strategies during goal-directed tasks after CIMT. The Hand-Arm Bimanual Intervention (HABIT) program is an example of an effective CIMT program for children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy (Charles and Gordon, 2006; Gordon et al., 2007). A recent systematic review by Huang and colleagues (2009) found that CIMT increases upper extremity use. More research needs to be done to establish the best dosage. The mass practice in CIMT is thought to induce cortical reorganization and mapping, which increases efficiency of task performance in the hemiplegic upper extremity (Taub et al., 2004; Nudo et al., 1996). These findings reflect the influence of CIMT on activity-dependent neural plasticity.

Use of partial body weight support treadmill training (PBWTT) as a form of gait practice does not require the person to have postural control of the trunk before attempting to walk. Task-specific practice has been shown to positively affect outcomes in adults with hemiplegia, incomplete spinal cord injuries and children with Down syndrome and cerebral palsy. PBWTT has been studied extensively and has been found to be safe for patients poststroke (Moseley et al., 2005). In a recent Cochrane review, Mehrholz and associates (2014) found that PBWTT significantly increased gait velocity and walking velocity during rehabilitation. Those individuals who could walk before treadmill training were able to maintain endurance gains through the follow-up period. The authors concluded that treadmill training with or without body weight support may improve gait speed and endurance in patients after a stroke who could walk, but not in dependent walkers. Treadmill training is also used with patients who have incomplete spinal cord injuries. In this case, the lower extremities are maximally loaded for weight bearing while using a body weight support system and manual cues. Evidence shows an increase in endurance, gait speed, balance, and independence (Behrman and Harkema, 2000; Dobkin et al., 2006; Field-Fote and Roach, 2011; and Harkema et al., 2012).

Partial body-weight support treadmill training has been successfully used as an intervention for children with spinal cord injury (Behrman et al., 2014 CSM). Young children with Down syndrome who participated in treadmill training walked earlier than the control group (Ulrich et al., 2001). When comparing intensity of training, the higher intensity group walked earlier than the lower intensity group (Ulrich et al., 2008). Positive results are reported in children with cerebral palsy. In those with Gross Motor Function Classification Scale level III and IV, there was a significant increase in gait speed motor performance (Willoughly et al., 2010).

How a therapy session is designed depends on the type of motor control theory espoused. Theories guide clinicians' thinking about what may be the reason the patient has a problem moving and about what interventions may remediate the problem. Therapists who embrace a systems approach may have the patient perform a functional task in an appropriate setting, rather than just practice a component of the movement thought to be needed for that task. Rather than having the child practice weight shifting on a ball, the assistant has the child sit on a bench and shift weight to take off a shoe. Therapists who use a systems approach in treatment may be more concerned about the amount of practice and the schedule for when feedback is given than about the degree or normality of tone in the trunk or extremity used to perform the movement. Using a systems approach, an assistant would keep track of whether or not the task was accomplished (knowledge of results) as well as how well it was done (knowledge of performance). Knowledge of results is important for learning motor tasks. The goal of every therapeutic intervention, regardless of its theoretic basis, is to teach the patient how to produce functional movements in the clinic, at home, and in the community.

Interventions must be developmentally appropriate regardless of the age of the person. Although it may not be appropriate to have an 80-year-old creeping on the floor or mat table, it would be an ideal activity for an infant. All of us learn movement skills better within the context of a functional activity. Play provides a perfect functional setting for an infant and child to learn how to move. The physical therapist assistant working with an extremely young child should strive for the most typical movement possible in this age group although realizing that the amount and extent of the neurologic damage incurred will set the boundaries for what movement patterns are possible. Remember that it is also during play that a child learns valuable cause-and-effect lessons when observing how her actions result in moving herself or moving an object. Movement through the environment is an important part of learning spatial concepts.

Motor learning must always occur within the context of function. It would not be an appropriate context for learning about walking to teach a child to walk on a movable surface, for example, because this task is typically performed on a non-movable surface. The way a task is first learned is usually the way it is remembered best. When stressed or in an unsafe situation, we often revert to this way of moving. For example, on many occasions a daughter of a friend is observed to go up and down the long staircase in her parents' home, foot over foot without using a railing. When her motor skills were filmed in a studio in which the only stairs available were ones that had no back, the same child reverted to stepping up with one foot and bringing the other foot up to the same step (marking time) to ascend and descend. She perceived the stairs to be less safe and chose a less risky way to move. Infants and young children should be given every opportunity to learn to move correctly from the start. This is one of the major reasons for intervening early when an infant exhibits motor dysfunction. Motor learning requires practice and feedback. Remember what had to be done to learn to ride a bicycle without training wheels. Many times, through trial and error, you tried to get to the end of the block. After falls and scrapes, you finally mastered the task, and even though you may not have ridden a bike in a while, you still remember how. That memory of the movement is the result of motor learning.

Assessing functional movement status is a routine part of the physical therapist's examination and evaluation. Functional status may provide cues for planning interventions within the context of the functional task to be achieved. Therapeutic outcomes must be documented based on the changing functional abilities of the patient. When the physical therapist reexamines and reevaluates a patient with movement dysfunction, the physical therapist assistant can participate by gathering objective data about the number of times the person can perform an activity, what types of cues (verbal, tactile, pressure) result in better or worse performance, and whether the task can be successfully performed in more than one setting, such as the physical therapy gym or the patient's dining room. Additionally, the physical therapist assistant may comment on the consistency of the patient's motor behavior. For instance, does the infant roll consistently from prone to supine or roll only occasionally when something or someone extremely interesting is enticing the infant to engage

in the activity?

Chapter summary

Motor control is ever-present. It directs posture and movement. Without motor control, no motor development or motor learning could occur. Motor learning provides a mechanism for the body to attain new skills regardless of the age of the individual. Motor learning requires feedback in the form of sensory information about whether the movement occurred and how successful it was. Practice and experience play major roles in motor learning. Motor development is the age-related process of change in motor behavior. Motor development is also the tasks acquired and learned during the process of moving. Neural plasticity is the ability of the nervous system to adapt to experience whether during the developmental process or as part of relearning actions limited by a neurologic insult. A neurologic deficit can affect an individual's ability to engage in age-appropriate motor tasks (motor development), to learn or relearn motor skills (motor learning), or to perform the required movements with sufficient quality and efficiency to be effective (motor control). Purposeful movement requires that all three processes be used continually and contingently across the life span.

Review questions

1. Define motor control, motor learning, and neural plasticity.
2. How do sensation, perception, and sensory organization contribute to motor control and motor learning?
3. How does posture influence motor development, motor control, and motor learning?
4. How is a postural response determined when visual and somatosensory input conflict?
5. When in the life span, can "adult" sway strategies be consistently demonstrated?
6. How much attention to a task is needed in the various phases of motor learning?
7. Give an example of an open task and of a closed task.
8. Which type of feedback loop is used to learn movement? To perform a fast movement?
9. How much and what type of practice are needed for motor learning in a child? In an adult?
10. How do the principles of neuroplasticity relate to the principles of motor learning?

References

Adams JA. A closed-loop theory of motor learning. *J Motor Behav.* 1971;3:110–150.

Adolph KE. Learning to move. *Curr Dir Psychol Sci.* 2008;17:213–218.

Adolph KE, Vereijken B, Shrout PE. What changes in infant walking and why. *Child Dev.* 2003;74:475–497.

Anderson DI, Campos JJ, Rivera M, et al. The consequences of independent locomotion for brain and psychological development. In: Shephard RB, ed. *Cerebral palsy in infancy.* Churchill Livingstone; 2014:199–224.

Assaiante C, Amblard B. Ontogenesis of head stabilization in space during locomotion in children: influence of visual cues. *Exp Brain Res.* 1993;93:499–515.

Assaiante C, Amblard B. An ontogenetic model of the sensorimotor organization of balance control in humans. *Hum Move Sci.* 1995;14:13–43.

Barnes MR, Crutchfield CA, Heriza CB. *The neurophysiological basis of patient treatment, vol 2: reflexes in motor development.* Morgantown, WV: Stokesville Publishing; 1978.

Basmajian JV, DeLuca CJ. *Muscles alive: their function revealed by electromyography.* ed 5 Baltimore: William & Wilkins; 1985.

Behrman AL, Harkema SJ. Locomotor training after human spinal cord injury: a series of case studies. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80:688–700.

Behrman A, Trimble SA, Fox EJ, Howland DR: Rehabilitation and recovery in children with severe SCI. Presented at CSM Feb 6, 2014, Las Vegas.

Benjuya N, Melzer I, Kaplanski J. Aging-induced shift from reliance on sensory input to muscle cocontraction during balanced standing. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2004;59:166–171.

Bernstein N. *The coordination and regulation of movements.* Oxford, UK: Pergamon; 1967.

Bertenthal B, Rose JL, Bai DL. Perception-action coupling in the development of visual control of posture. *J Exp Psychol Hum Percept Perform.* 1997;23:1631–1643.

Black JE. How a child builds its brain: some lessons from animal studies of neural plasticity. *Prev Med.* 1998;27:168–171.

Bruel-Jungerman E, Rampon C, Laroche S. Adult hippocampal neurogenesis, synaptic plasticity and memory: facts and hypotheses. *Rev Neurosci.* 2007;18:93–114.

Butefisch C. Plasticity in the human cerebral cortex: lessons from the normal brain and from stroke. *Neuroscientist.* 2004;10:163–173.

Cech D, Martin S, eds. *Functional movement development across the life span.* ed 3 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2012.

Charles J, Gordon AM. Development of hand-arm bimanual intensive training (HABIT) for improving bimanual coordination in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2006;48:931–936.

Charles J, Lavinder G, Gordon AM. Effects of constraint-induced therapy on hand function in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2001;13:68–76.

Charles JR, Wolf SL, Schneider JA, Gordon AM. Efficacy of child-friendly form of constraint-induced movement therapy in hemiplegic cerebral palsy: a randomized control trial. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2006;48:635–642.

Cruse H, Wischmeyer M, Bruwer P, et al. On the cost functions for the control of the human arm movement. *Biol Cybern.* 1990;62:519–528.

Del Rey P, Whitehurst M, Wughalter E, et al. Contextual interference and experience in acquisition and transfer. *Percept Mot Skills.* 1983;57:241–242.

DiFabio RP, Emasithi A. Aging and the mechanisms underlying head and postural control during voluntary action. *Phys Ther.* 1997;77:458–475.

Dobkin B, Apple D, Barbeau H, et al. Weight-supported treadmill vs overground training for walking after acute incomplete SCI. *Neurology.* 2006;66:484–493.

Douvis SJ. Variable practice in learning the forehand drive in tennis. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2005;101:531–545.

Doyon J, Benali H. Reorganization and plasticity in the adult brain during learning of motor skills. *Curr Opin Neurobiol.* 2005;15:161–167.

Dusing SC, Harbourne RT. Variability in postural control during infancy: implications for

development, assessment, and intervention. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:1838–1849.
Ferber-Viart C, Ionescu E, Morlet T, Froehlich P, Dubreauil C. Balance in healthy individuals assessed with Equitest: maturation and normative data for children and young adults. *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol.* 2007;71:1041–1046.
Field-Fote EC, Roach KE. Influence of a locomotor training approach on walking speed and distance in people with chronic spinal cord injury: a randomized clinical trial. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(1):48–60.
Fitts PM. Categories of human learning. In: Melton AW, ed. *Perceptual motor skills learning.* New York: Academic Press; 1964:243–285.
Forssberg H, Nashner L. Ontogenetic development of postural control in man: adaptation to altered support and visual conditions during stance. *J Neurosci.* 1982;2:545–552.
Gabbard C. Studying action representation in children via motor imagery. *Brain Cogn.* 2009;71(3):234–239.
Gentile AM. Skill acquisition: action, movement, and neuromotor processes. In: Carr JA, Shepherd RB, Gordon J, Gentile AM, Held JM, eds. *Movement science: foundations for physical therapy in rehabilitation.* Rockville, MD: Aspen; 1987:93–154.
Goble DJ, Lewis CA, Hurvitz EA, Brown SH. Development of upper limb proprioceptive accuracy in children and adolescents. *Human Movt Sci.* 2005;24:155–170.
Gordon AM, Schneider JA, Chinnan A, Charles JR. Efficacy of a hand-arm bimanual intensive therapy (HABIT) in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy: a randomized control trial. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2007;49:830–838.
Gordon J. Assumptions underlying physical therapy intervention. In: Carr JA, Shephard RB, eds. *Movement science: foundations for physical therapy in rehabilitation.* Rockville, MD: Aspen; 1987:1–30.
Granda VJ, Montilla MM. Practice schedule and acquisition, retention, and transfer of a throwing task in 6-year-old children. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2003;96:1015–1024.
Hadders-Algra M. Development of postural control. In: Hadders-Algra M, Carlberg EB, eds. *Postural control: a key issue in developmental disorders.* London: Mac Keith Press; 2008:22–73.
Hadders-Algra M. Variation and variability: key words in human motor development. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:1823–1837.
Hadders-Algra M, Brogren E, Forssberg H. Ontogeny of postural adjustments during sitting in infancy: variation, selection and modulation. *J Physiol.* 1996;493:287–288.
Harkema SJ, Schmidt-Read M, Lorenz DJ, et al. Balance and ambulation improvements in individuals with chronic incomplete spinal cord injury sing locomotor training-based rehabilitation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012;93(9):1508–1517.
Hay L, Redon C. Feedforward versus feedback control in children and adults subjected to a postural disturbance. *Exp Brain Res.* 1999;125:153–162.
Hirabayashi S, Iwasaki Y. Developmental perspective of sensory organization on postural control. *Brain Dev.* 1995;17:111–113.
Hirschfeld H, Forssberg H. Epigenetic development of postural responses for sitting during infancy. *Exp Brain Res.* 1994;97:528–540.
Huang HH, Fetter L, Hale J, McBride A. Bound for success: a systematic review of constraint-induced movement therapy in children with cerebral palsy supports improved arm and hand use. *Phys Ther.* 2009;89:1126–1141.
Jarus T, Goverover Y. Effects of contextual interference and age on acquisition, retention, and transfer of motor skill. *Percept Mot Skills.* 1999;88:437–447.
Jouen F. Visual-vestibular interactions in infancy. *Infant Behav Dev.* 1984;7:135–145.
Jouen F, Lepecq JC, Gapenne O, Bertenthal BI. Optic flow sensitivity in neonates. *Infant Behav Dev.* 2000;23:271–284.
Kelso JAS. *Human motor behavior.* Hillsdale, NJ: Erlbaum Associates; 1982.
Kleim JA, Jones TA. Principles of experience-dependent plasticity: implications for rehabilitation after brain damage. *J Speech Lang Hear Res.* 2008;51:S225–S239.
Knikou M. Neural control of locomotion and training-induced plasticity after spinal and cerebral lesions. *Clin Neurophysiol.* 2010;121:1655–1668.
Lashley KS. The problem of serial order in behavior. In: Jeffress LA, ed. *Cerebral mechanisms in behavior.* New York: Wiley & Sons; 1951:112–136.
Lebeer J. How much brain does a mind need? Scientific, clinical, and educational implication of ecological plasticity. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1998;40:352–357.

Lin KC. Effects of modified constraint-induced movement therapy on reach-to-grasp movements and functional performance after chronic stroke: a randomized controlled study. *Clin Rehabil.* 2007;21:1075–1086.
Lundy-Ekman L. *Neuroscience: fundamentals for rehabilitation.* ed 4 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013.
Maki BE, McIllroy WE. Postural control in the older adult. *Clin Geriatr Med.* 1996;12:635–658.
Maki BE, McIlroy WE. The role of limb movements in maintaining upright stance: the "change-in-support" strategy. *Phys Ther.* 1997;77:488–507.
Maki BE, Holliday PJ, Topper AK. A prospective study of postural balance and risk of falling in an ambulatory and independent elderly population. *J Gerontol: Med Sci.* 1994;49:M72–M84.
Mehrholz J, Pohl M, Elsner B. Treadmill training and body weight support for walking after stroke. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2014;23: CD002840.
Moseley AM, Stark A, Cameron ID, Pollock A. Treadmill training and body weight support for walking after stroke. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2005;19: CD002840.
Nashner LM. Sensory, neuromuscular, and biomechanical contributions to human balance. In: Duncan P, ed. *Balance: proceedings of the APTA forum.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 1990:5–12.
Nelson WL. Physical principles for economics of skilled movements. *Biol Cybern.* 1983;46:135–147.
Nudo RJ, wise BM, SiFuentes F, et al. Neural substrates for the effects of rehabilitation training on motor recovery following ischemic infarct. *Science.* 1996;272:1791–1794.
Perez CR, Meira CM, Tani G. Does the contextual interference effect last over extended transfer trials? *Percept Mot Skills.* 2005;10:58–60.
Pinto-Zipp G, Gentile AM. Practice schedules in motor learning: children vs adults. *Soc Neurosci Abstr.* 1995;21:1620.
Portfors-Yeomans CV, Riach CL. Frequency characteristics of postural control of children with and without visual impairment. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1995;37:456–463.
Riach CL, Hayes KC. Anticipatory control in children. *J Mot Behav.* 1990;22:25–26.
Rival C, Ceyte H, Olivier I. Development changes of static standing balance in children. *Neurosci Let.* 2005;376:133–136.
Rogers MW, Hain TC, Hanke TA, Janssen I. Stimulus parameters and inertial load: effects on the incidence of protective stepping responses in healthy human subjects. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1996;77:363–368.
Sackett DL, Straus SE, Richardson WS, Rosenberg W. *Evidence-based medicine: how to practice and teach EBM.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2000.
Schmidt RA. A schema theory of discrete motor skill learning. *Psychol Rev.* 1975;82:225–260.
Schmidt R. *Motor control and learning.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 1988.
Schmidt RA, Lee TD. *Motor control and learning: a behavioral emphasis.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2005.
Schmidt RA, Wrisberg CA. *Motor learning and performance.* ed 3 Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2004.
Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott M. The growth of stability: postural control from a developmental perspective. *J Motor Behav.* 1985;17:131–147.
Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott M. *Motor control: theory and practical applications.* ed 4 Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2012.
Spencer JP, Thelen E. A multimuscle state analysis of adult motor learning. *Exp Brain Res.* 1997;128:505–516.
Stengel TJ, Attermeier SM, Bly L, et al. Evaluation of sensorimotor dysfunction. In: Campbell SK, ed. *Pediatric neurologic physical therapy.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1984:13–87.
Sturnieks DL, St George R, Lord SR. Balance disorders in the elderly. *Clin Neurophysiol.* 2008;38:467–478.
Sullivan PE, Markos PD, Minor MA. *An integrated approach to therapeutic exercise: theory and clinical application.* Reston, VA: Reston Publishing; 1982.
Taub E, Miller NE, Novack TA, et al. Technique to improve chronic motor deficit after stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1993;74:347–354.
Taub E, Ramey SL, DeLuca S, et al. Efficacy of constraint-induced movement therapy for children with cerebral palsy with asymmetric motor impairment. *Pediatrics.* 2004;113:305–312.

Thelen E. Rhythmical stereotypies in infants. *Anim Behav.* 1979;27:699–715.
Thelen E. Motor development. A new synthesis. *Am Psychol.* 1995;50:79–95.
Thelen E, Fisher DM. Newborn stepping: an explanation for a "disappearing" reflex. *Dev Psychobiol.* 1982;16:29–46.
Ulrich DA, Lloyd MC, Tiernan CW, Looper JE, Angulo-Barroso RM. Effects of intensity of treadmill training on developmental outcomes and stepping in infants with Down syndrome: a randomized trial. *Phys Ther.* 2007;88:114–122.
Ulrich DA, Ulrich BD, Angulo-Kinzler RM, Yun J. Treadmill training of infants with Down syndrome: evidence-based developmental outcomes. *Pediatrics.* 2001;108: E84.
Vera JG, Alvarex JC, Medina MM. Effects of different practice conditions on acquisition, retention, and transfer of soccer skills by 9-year-old school children. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2008;106(2):447–460.
Vereijken B, van Emmerik REA, Whiting HTA, Newell KM. Freezing degrees of freedom in skill acquisition. *J Mot Beh.* 1992;24:133–142.
Willoughly KL, Dodd KJ, Shields N, Foley S. Efficacy of partial body weight-supported treadmill training compared with overground walking practice for children with cerebral palsy: a randomized controlled trial. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91:333–339.
Wing AM, Haggard P, Flanagan J. *Hand and brain: the neurophysiology and psychology of hand movements.* New York: Academic Press; 1996.
Winstein CJ, Gardner ER, McNeal DR, et al. Standing balance training: effect on balance and locomotion in hemiparetic adults. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1989;70:755–762.
Wolpert DM, Ghahramani Z, Jordan MI. Are arm trajectories planned in kinematic or dynamic coordinate? An adaptation study. *Ex Brain Res.* 1995;103:460–470.
Yang JF, Lamont EV, Pang MY. Split-belt treadmill stepping in infants suggest autonomous pattern generators for the left and right leg in humans. *J Neurosci.* 2005;25:6869–6876.

CHAPTER 4

Motor Development

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Define the life-span concept of development.
2. Understand the relationship between cognition and motor development.
3. Discuss the two major theories of motor development.
4. Identify important motor accomplishments of the first 3 years of life.
5. Describe the acquisition and refinement of fundamental movement patterns during childhood.
6. Describe age-related changes in functional movement patterns across the life span.
7. Describe how age-related systems changes affect posture, balance, and gait in older adults.

Introduction

The Life Span Concept

Normal developmental change is typically presumed to occur in a positive direction; that is, abilities are gained with the passage of time. For the infant and child, aging means being able to do more. The older infant can sit alone, and the older child can run. With increasing age, a teenager can jump higher and throw farther than a school-age child. Developmental change can also occur in a negative direction. Speed and accuracy of movement decline after maturity. When one looks at the ages of the gold medal winners in the last Olympics, it is apparent that motor performance peaks in early adolescence and early adulthood. Older adults perform motor activities more slowly and take longer to learn new motor skills. Traditional views of motor development are based on the positive changes that lead to maturity and the negative changes that occur after maturity.

A true life span perspective of motor development includes all motor changes occurring as part of the continuous process of life. This continuous process is not a linear one but rather is a circular process. Some even describe motor development as a spiral process. Motor development does not occur in isolation of other developmental domains such as the psychological domain or the sociocultural domain. Figure 4-1 depicts the relationship of an individual's mind and body developing within the sociocultural environment. Movement develops within three domains: physical, psychological, and sociocultural.

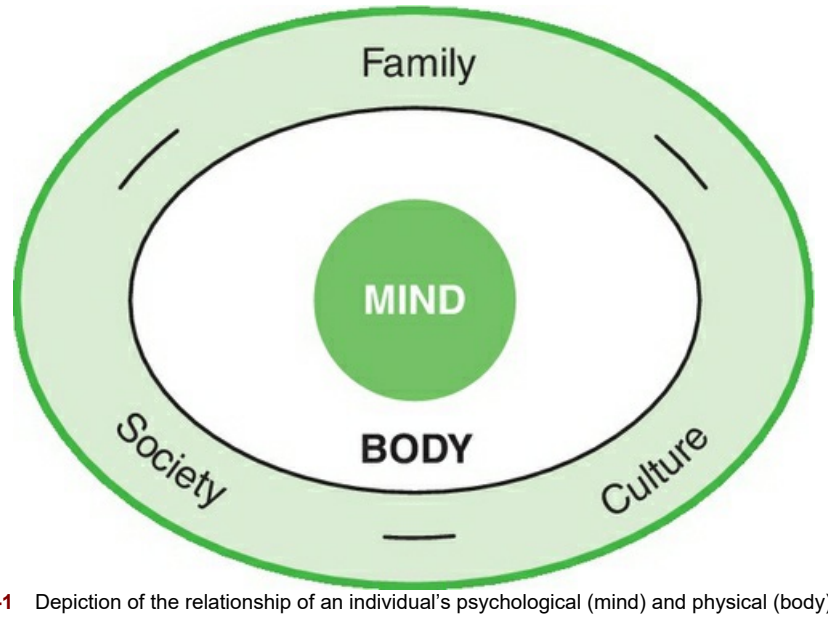


FIGURE 4-1 Depiction of the relationship of an individual's psychological (mind) and physical (body) self within the sociocultural environment. (From Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, p. 17.)

A Life Span Approach

The concept of life-span development is not new. Baltes (1987) originally identified five characteristics to use when assessing a theory for its life-span perspective. The following list reflects the original four criteria and the new fifth one used to view development from a lifelong perspective:

- Lifelong
- Multidimensional
- Plastic
- Embedded in history
- Multicausal

Recently, Baltes et al. (2006) revisited the theoretical underpinnings of life span theory. They reinforced the idea that development is NOT complete at maturity. The multidimensional quality of life span theory provides a complete framework for ontogenesis (development). Culture and the knowledge gained from all domains make a significant impact on a person's life course. Biological plasticity is accompanied by cultural competence so that there is a gain/loss dynamic that occurs during development. There are no gains without losses and no loss without gains. In essence, this is the adaptive capacity of the person. Context, the original fifth criteria has been replaced by multicausal meaning that one can arrive at the same destination by different means or by a combination of means. Life span development is not constrained to travel a single course or developmental trajectory. There is variability.

No one period of life can be understood without looking at its relationship to what came before and what lies ahead. History affects development in three ways as seen in Figure 4-2. The normative age-graded influence is seen in those developmental tasks described by Havinghurst (1972) for each period of development. Age-graded physical, psychological, and social milestones would fall into this category. Walking at 12 months and obtaining a driver's license at 16 years of age are examples of physical age-graded tasks. Understanding simple concepts such as round objects always roll and getting along with same age peers in adolescence are examples from the psychological and social domains. Moreover, normative history-graded influences come from the effect of when a person is born. Each of us is part of a birth cohort or group. Some of us are Baby Boomers and others are Millennials. All people in an age cohort share the same history of events, such as World War II, the Challenger disaster, the terrorist attack of 9/11, the Boston Marathon bombing, and the polar vortex. When you were born makes a difference in expectations and behaviors, these historical events shape the life of the cohort. The last history-related influence comes from things that happen to a person that have no norms or no expectations, such as winning the lottery, losing a parent, or having a child with a developmental disability. These are part of your own unique personal history. Life-span development provides a holistic framework in which aging is a lifelong process of growing up and growing old. Development within the biophysical, psychological, and sociocultural domains is enriched when viewed through a life-span perspective.

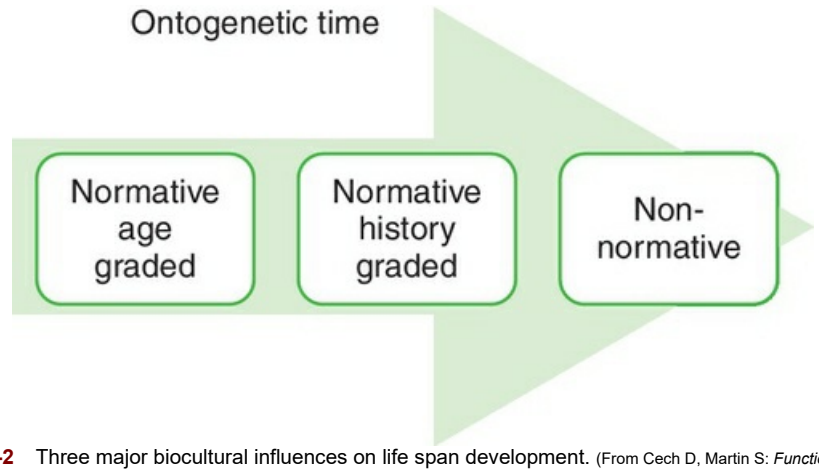


FIGURE 4-2 Three major biocultural influences on life span development. (From Cech D, Martin S: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, p. 17.)

Life-Span View of Motor Development

The concept of motor development has been broadened to encompass any change in movement abilities that occurs across the span of life, so changes in the way a person moves after childhood are included. Motor development continues to elicit change, from conception to death. Think of the classic riddle of the pharaohs: what creeps in the morning and walks on two legs in the afternoon and on three in the evening? The answer is a human in various stages, as an infant who creeps, a toddler who walks alone throughout adulthood, and an older adult who walks with a cane at the end of life.

Developmental time periods

Age is the most useful way to measure change in development because it is a universally recognized marker of biologic, psychological, and social progression. Infants become children, then adolescents, and finally adults at certain ages. Aging is a developmental phenomenon. Stages of cognitive development are associated with age, as are societal expectations regarding the ability of an individual to accept certain roles and functions. Defining these time periods gives everyone a common language when talking about motor development and allows comparison across developmental domains (physical, psychological, and social). Everyone knows that a 3-year-old child is not an adult, but when does childhood stop and adolescence begin? When does an adult become an older adult? A list of commonly defined time periods that are used throughout the text is found in Table 4-1.

Table 4-1

Developmental Time Periods (Changes to Older Adulthood)

Period	Time Span
Infancy	Birth to 2 years
Childhood	2–10 years (females)
	2–12 years (males)
Adolescence	10–18 years (females)
	12–20 years (males)
Early adulthood	18/20–40 years
Middle adulthood	40–70 years
Older adulthood	70 years to death

Infancy

Infancy is the first period of development and spans the initial 2 years of life following birth. During this time, the infant establishes trust with caregivers and learns to be autonomous. The world is full of sensory experiences that can be sampled and used to learn about actions and the infant's own movement system. The infant uses sensory information to cue movement and uses movement to explore and learn about the environment. Therefore, a home must be baby-proofed to protect an extremely curious and mobile infant or toddler.

Childhood

Childhood begins at 2 years and continues until adolescence. Childhood fosters initiative to plan and execute movement strategies and to solve daily problems. The child is extremely aware of the surrounding environment, at least one dimension at a time. During this time, she begins to use symbols, such as language, or uses objects to represent things that can be thought of but are not physically present. The blanket draped over a table becomes a fort, or pillows become chairs for a tea party. Thinking is *preoperational*, with reasoning centered on the self. Self-regulation is learned with help from parents regarding appropriate play behavior and toileting. Self-image begins to be established during this time. By 3 to 5 years of age, the preschooler has mastered many tasks such as sharing, taking turns, and repeating the plot of a story. The school-age child continues to work industriously for recognition on school projects or a special school fund-raising assignment. Now the child is able to classify objects according to certain characteristics, such as round, square, color, and texture. This furtherance of thinking abilities is called *concrete operations*. The student can experiment with which container holds more water (the tall, thin one or the short, fat one) or which string is longer. Confidence in one's abilities strengthens an already established positive self-image.

Adolescence

Adolescence covers the period right before, during, and after puberty, encompassing different age spans for boys and girls because of the time difference in the onset of puberty. Puberty and, therefore, adolescence begins at age 10 for girls and age 12 for boys. Adolescence is 8 years in length regardless of when it begins. Because of the age difference in the onset of adolescence, girls may exhibit more advanced social emotional behavior than their male counterparts. In a classroom of 13-

year-olds, many girls are completing puberty, whereas most boys are just entering it.

Adolescence is a time of change. The identity of the individual is forged, and the values by which the person will live life are embraced. Physical and social-emotional changes abound. The end result of a successful adolescence is the ability to know who one is, where one is going, and how one is going to get there. The pursuit of a career or vocation assists the teenager in moving away from the egocentrism of childhood (Erikson, 1968). Cognitively, the teenager has moved into the *formal operations stage* in which abstract problems can be solved by inductive and deductive reasoning. These cognitive abilities help one to weather the adolescent identity crisis. Practicing logical decision making during this period of life prepares the adolescent for the rigors of adulthood, in which decisions become more and more complex.

Adulthood

As a concept, adulthood is a twentieth-century phenomenon. Adulthood is the longest time period of human life and the one about which the least is known. Adulthood is achieved by 20 years of age biologically, but psychologically it may be marked by as much as a 5-year transition period from late adolescence (17 years) to early adulthood (22 years). Levinson (1986) called this period the *early adulthood transition* because it takes time for the adolescent to mature into an adult. Research supports the existence of this and other transition periods. Although most of adulthood has been considered one long period of development, some researchers, such as Levinson, identify age-related stages. *Middle adulthood* begins at 40 years, with a 5-year transition from early adulthood, and it ends with a 5-year transition into *older adulthood* (age 60).

Arnett (2000, 2004, 2007) proposed a theory of emerging adulthood. The period between adolescence and the beginning of adulthood is seen as beginning at age 18 and ending at age 25. The characteristics seen during this time are: (1) a feeling of being in-between, (2) instability, (3) identity exploration, (4) self-focus, and (5) possibility. Arnett suggests that the forging of the person's identity occurs during this time period as opposed to adolescence as espoused by Erikson. There is some data to support the prolongation of adolescence into the early college years and the delay of taking on adult roles until after graduation.

George Valliant (2002), a psychiatrist and director of the Harvard study of adult development, inserted two new stages into Erikson's (1968) original eight stages: career consolidation and keeper of the meaning. Career consolidation comes between Erikson's stages of intimacy and generativity. In career consolidation stage, a person chooses a career. It begins between 20 and 40 years of age when young adults become focused on assuming a social identity within the work world. This is an extension of the person's personal identity forged in earlier stages. Valliant (2002) identified four criteria that transform a "job" or "hobby" into a "career." They are competence, commitment, contentment, and compensation. The other stage will be discussed later in this section.

What makes a person an adult? Is there a magic age or task to be attained that indicates when a person is an adult? Legally, you are an adult at 18. However, there are many 18-year-olds who would more than likely consider themselves as emerging adults. Regardless of the socioeconomic group a person belongs to, four criteria for adulthood continue to resound in the literature (Arnett, 2007). To be an adult, one must accept responsibility for your actions, make independent decisions, be more considerate of others, and be financially independent. "Maturity requires the acceptance of responsibility and empathy for others" (Purtilo and Haddad, 2007, p. 272).

Keeper of meaning is the additional stage Vaillant (2002) interjected between Erikson's generativity and integrity stages. It comes near the end of generativity so the person is in late middle adulthood. The role of the keeper of meaning is to preserve one's culture rather than care for successive generations. The focus is on conservation as well as preservation of society's institutions. The person in this stage guides groups and preserves traditions. Think of the interest older adults often have in geneology as an example of this stage in development.

Family Systems

The concept of family is very broad with families having many different structures and life styles. Single-parent families have increased tremendously over the past decades. Regardless of structure, family function is affected by each member of the family. This can be thought of as family dynamics or in Bronfenbrenner's model as a system of interacting elements. Each parent affects the other, the child or children, and in turn, the child or children affect the parent. The family as a system is

embedded in larger social systems such as the extended family, neighborhood, and school and religious organizations. All of these systems can influence the family. Recognizing the dynamics within a family is very important when establishing a therapeutic relationship. Family-centered intervention is a life-span approach (Chiarello, 2013). Families have a life cycle in which stages and transitions have been identified. However, the reader is referred to Carter and McGoldrick (2005) for an expanded and updated discussion of family.

Older Adulthood

Gerontologists, those researchers who study aging, use age 70 as the beginning of *old age* (Atchley and Barusch, 2004). We are aging from the moment we are born. Much is known about aging. The major theory of aging is the *free radical theory*. It is also known as the *oxidative damage hypothesis*. Oxidative damage accumulates in the large molecules of our body, such as DNA, RNA, protein, carbohydrates, and lipids. The nervous and muscular systems are particularly prone to oxidative damage caused by the tissues' high metabolic rate. Age-related systems decline that can in some ways be offset by good nutrition, hydration, and exercise.

Successful aging is possible if the older adult stays engaged and active and does not disengage from the world. Rowe and Kahn (1997) identified three components of successful aging based on longitudinal studies by the MacArthur Foundation. The number one component is avoiding disease and disability; number two is having a high cognitive and physical functional capacity; and number three is active engagement with life. Unlike the activity theorist, Rowe and Kahn (1997) defined activity as something that holds societal value. The activity does not have to be remunerated for it to be considered as productive.

Influence of cognition and motivation

The three processes of motor development, motor control, and motor learning are influenced to varying degrees by a person's intellectual ability. Impairments in cognitive ability can affect an individual's ability to learn to move. A child with intellectual disability may not have the ability to learn movement skills at the same rate as a child of normal intelligence. The rate of developmental change in a child with an intellectual disability is decreased in all domains: physical, psychological, and social. Thus, acquisition of motor skills is often as delayed as the acquisition of other knowledge.

Just as cognition can affect motor development, the motor system can affect cognition. Diamond (2000), Piek et al. (2008), and Pitcher et al. (2011) linked motor development and subsequent cognitive ability. The close interrelation of the prefrontal cortex and the cerebellum parallels the protracted development of the motor system. Motor development of children between birth and 4 years predicted cognitive performance at school age (Piek et al., 2008). The two most negative outcomes of being born prematurely and having a low birth weight are impaired motor and cognitive development (Hack and Fanaroff, 2000). Grounded cognition is a concept in which cognition is embedded in the environment and the body (Barsalou, 2010). The child makes use of perceptual motor experiences to develop cognition in a learning to learn paradigm. Researchers have called for therapists to recognize object interaction, sitting, and locomotion as models for grounded cognition (Lobo et al., 2012). As a recommendation, add pretend play to the model for grounded cognition because it provides support for language development as well as motor development. Pretend play is a natural progression from object interaction to mental representation of objects not in view. See Chapter 5 for additional information regarding play.

Motivation to move comes from intellectual curiosity. Typically developing children are innately curious about the movement potential of their bodies. Infants become visually aware of their own movement. This optically produced awareness is called visual proprioception (Gibson, 1966; Gibson, 1979). Locomotion affords toddlers more exploration of the environment which supports psychological development (Anderson et al., 2014). Children move to be involved in some sports-related activities, such as tee-ball or soccer. Adolescents often define themselves by their level of performance on the playing field, so a large part of their identity is connected to their athletic prowess. Adults may routinely participate in sports-related activities as part of their leisure time. One hopes that activity is part of a commitment to fitness developed early in life.

Motor control is needed for motor learning, for the execution of motor programs, and for progression through the developmental sequence. The areas of the brain involved in idea formation can be active in triggering movement. Movement is affected by the ability of the mind to understand the rules of moving. Children around the age of 5 begin to develop the ability to imagine motion or mentally represent action (Gabbard, 2009). This is termed *motor imagery*. There is a positive association between motor abilities in children and their motor imagery (Gabbard et al., 2012). Children continue to show improvements in this ability even into adolescence (Molina et al., 2008; Choudhury et al., 2007).

Movement is also a way of exerting control over the environment. Remember the old sayings: "mind over matter" and "I think I can." Learning to control the environment begins with controlling one's own body. To interact with objects and people within the environment, the child must be oriented within space. We learn spatial relationships by first orienting to our own bodies, then using ourselves as a reference point to map our movements within the environment. Physical educators and coaches have used the ability of the athlete to know where he or she is on the playing field or the court to better anticipate the athlete's own or the ball's movement.

The role of visualizing movement as a way to improve motor performance is documented in the literature (Wang and Morgan, 1992). Sports psychologists have extensively studied cognitive behavioral strategies, including motivation, and recognize how powerful these strategies can be in improving motor performance (Meyers et al., 1996). We have all had experience with trying to learn a motor skill that we were interested in as opposed to one in which we had no interest. Think of the look on an infant's face as she attempts that first step; one little distraction and down she goes. Think also of how hard you may have to concentrate to master in-line skating; would you dare to think of other things while careening down a sidewalk for the first time? Because development takes place in more than one dimension, not just in the motor area, the following psychological

theories, with which you may already be familiar, are used to demonstrate what a life-span perspective is and is not. These psychological theories can also reflect the role movement may play in the development of intelligence, personality, and perception.

Piaget

Piaget (1952) developed a theory of intelligence based on the behavioral responses of his children. He designated the first 2 years of life the *sensorimotor stage of intelligence*. During this stage, the infant learns to understand the world by associating sensory experiences with physical actions. Piaget called these associations *schemas*. The infant develops schemas for looking, eating, and reaching, to name just a few. From 2 to 7 years is the *preoperational stage of intelligence* during which the child is able to represent the world by symbols, such as words and objects. The increased use of language is the beginning of symbolic thought. During the next stage, *concrete operations*, logical thought occurs. Between 7 and 11 years of age, children can mentally reverse information. For example, if they learned that 6 plus 4 equals 10, then 4 plus 6 would also equal 10. The last stage is that of *formal operations*, which Piaget thought began at 12 years of age. Although research has not completely supported the specific chronologic years to which Piaget attributed these stages, the stages do occur in this order. The stage of formal operations begins in adolescence, which, according to our time periods, begins at 10 years in girls and at 12 years in boys. Piaget's stages are related to developmental age in Table 4-2.

Table 4-2

Piaget's Stages of Cognitive Development

Life Span Period	Stage	Characteristics
Infancy	Sensorimotor	Pairing of sensory and motor reflexes leads to purposeful activity
Preschool	Preoperational	Unidimensional awareness of environment Begins use of symbols
School age	Concrete operational	Solves problems with real objects Classification, conservation
Pubescence	Formal operational	Solves abstract problems Induction, deduction

Data from Piaget J: *Origins of intelligence*, New York, 1952, International University Press.

Piaget studied the development of intelligence up to adolescence, when *abstract thought* becomes possible. Because abstract thought is the highest level of cognition, he did not continue to look at what happened to intelligence after maturity. Because Piaget's theory does not cover the entire life span, it does not represent a life-span approach to intellectual development. However, Piaget does offer useful information about how an infant can and should interact with the environment during the first 2 years of life. These first 2 years are critical to the development of intelligence. Regardless of the age of the child, the cognitive level must always be taken into account when one plans therapeutic intervention.

Maslow and Erikson

In contrast, Maslow (1954) and Erikson (1968) looked at the entire spectrum of development from beginning to end. Maslow identified the needs of the individual and how those needs change in relation to a person's social and psychological development. Rather than describing stages, Maslow developed a hierarchy in which each higher level depends on mastering the one before. The last level mastered is not forgotten or lost but is built on by the next. Maslow stressed that an individual must first meet basic physiological needs to survive, and then and only then can the individual meet the needs of others. The individual fulfills *physiological needs, safety needs, needs for loving and belonging, needs for esteem*, and finally *self-actualization*. Maslow's theory is visually depicted in Figure 4-3. A self-actualized person is self-assured, autonomous, and independent; is oriented to solving problems; and is not self-absorbed. Although Maslow's theory may not appear to be embedded in history, it tends to transcend any one particular time in history by being universally applicable.

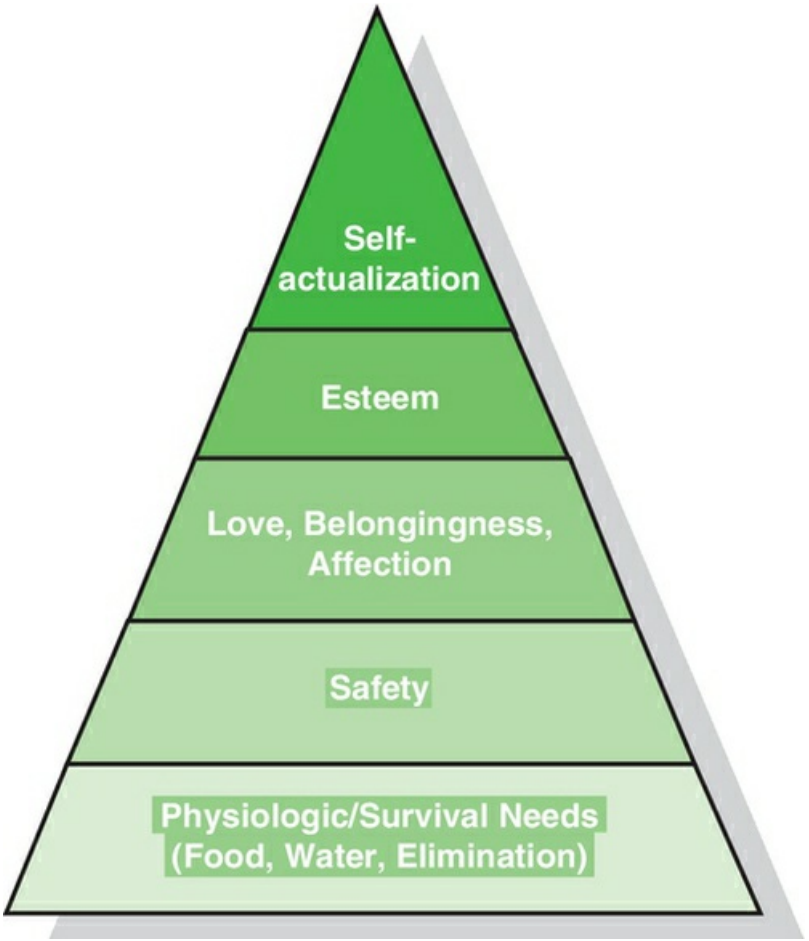


FIGURE 4-3 Maslow's hierarchy. (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

Erikson described stages that a person goes through to establish personality. These stages are linked to ages in the person's life, with each stage representing a struggle between two opposing traits. For example, the struggle in infancy is between trust and mistrust. The struggle in adolescence is ego identity. Erikson's theory as shown in Table 4-3 is an excellent example of a life-span approach to development.

Table 4-3
Erikson's Eight Stages of Development

Life Span Period	Stage	Characteristics
Infancy	Trust versus mistrust	Self-trust, attachment
Late infancy	Autonomy versus shame or doubt	Independence, self-control
Childhood (pre-school)	Initiative versus guilt	Initiation of own activity
School age	Industry versus inferiority	Working on projects for recognition
Adolescence	Identity versus role confusion	Sense of self: physically, socially, sexually
Early adulthood	Intimacy versus isolation	Relationship with significant other
Middle adulthood	Generativity versus stagnation	Guiding the next generation
Late adulthood	Ego integrity versus despair	Sense of wholeness, vitality, wisdom

Adapted from Erikson E: *IDENTITY: youth and crisis. © 1968 W.W. Norton & Company. Used by permission of W.W. Norton & Company.*

Although all three of these psychologists present important information that will be helpful to you when you work with people of different ages, it is beyond the scope of this text to go into further detail. The reader is urged to pursue more information on any of these theorists to add to an understanding of people of different ages and at different stages of psychological development. A life-span perspective can assist in an understanding of motor development by acknowledging and taking into consideration the level of intellectual development the person has attained or is likely to attain.

Theories of Motor Development

The two prevailing theories of motor development are the dynamic systems theory and the neuronal group selection theory. These theories reflect the state of our current knowledge. Thelen and Smith (1994) proposed a functional view of the process of motor development that they called a dynamical systems theory (DST). In this theory, movement emerges from the interaction of multiple body systems. DST incorporates the developmental biomechanical aspects of the mover, along with the developmental status of the mover's nervous system, the environmental context in which the movement occurs and the task to be accomplished by the movement. The acquisition of postural control and balance are driven by the requirement of the specific task demands and the demands of gravity. Movement abilities associated with the developmental sequence are the result of motor control, which organizes movements into efficient patterns. DST is both a theory of motor control and of motor development. The brain and the neuromotor systems must interact to meet the developmental demands of the mover.

Growth, maturation, and adaptation of all body systems contribute to the acquisition of movement not just the nervous system. Movement emerges from the interaction of all body systems, the task at hand, and the environment in which it takes place. To acquire motor skills, the mover has to control the number of planes of motion possible at a single joint and then multiple joints. This is the degrees of freedom problem discussed in Chapter 3. Bernstein thought that the new or novice mover minimized the number of independent movement elements used until control was developed. The new walker is a great example of controlling degrees of freedom. The upper trunk is kept in extension by placing the arms in high guard while the lower trunk is kept stable by anteriorly tilting the pelvis. The infant is left with only having to pick up each leg at a time as if stepping in place. A little forward momentum is used to propel the new walker.

Neuronal group selection (Andreatta, 2006) proposes that motor skills result from the interaction of developing body dynamics and the structure or functions of the brain. The brain's structures are changed by how the body is used (moved). The brain's growing neural networks are sculpted to match efficient movement solutions. Three requirements must be met for neuronal selection to be effective in a motor system. First, a basic repertoire of movement must be present. Second, sensory information has to be available to identify and select adaptive forms of movement, and third, there must be a way to strengthen the preferred movement responses.

The infant is genetically endowed with spontaneously generated motor behaviors. Figure 4-4 illustrates rudimentary neural networks that produce initial motor behaviors. This example involves activation of postural muscles in sitting infants. As the infant's multiple sensory systems provide perception, the strength of synaptic connections between brain circuits is varied with selection of some networks that predispose one action over another. Environmental and task demands become part of the neural ensemble for producing movements. Spatial maps are formed and mature neural networks emerge as a product of use and sensory feedback. The maps that develop via the process of neuronal selection are preferred pathways. They become preferred because they are the ones that are used more often. These pathways connect large amounts of the nervous system and provide an interconnected organization of perception, cognition, emotion, and movement (Campbell, 2000).

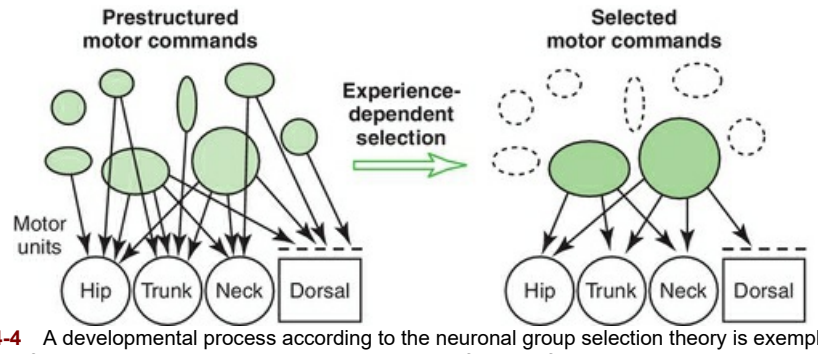


FIGURE 4-4 A developmental process according to the neuronal group selection theory is exemplified by the development of postural muscle activation patterns in sitting infants. Before independent sitting, the infant exhibits a large variation of muscle activation patterns in response to external perturbations, including a backward body sway. Various postural muscles on the ventral side of the body are contracted in different combinations, sometimes together with inhibition of the dorsal muscles. Among the large repertoire of response patterns are the patterns

later used by adults. With increasing age, the variability decreases and fewer patterns are elicited. Finally, only the complete adult muscle activation patterns remain. If balance is trained during the process, the selection is accelerated. (Redrawn from Forssberg H: Neural control of human motor development. *Curr Opin Neurobiol* 9:676–682, 1999.)

The theory of neuronal group selection supports a dynamic systems theory of motor control/motor development. According to neuronal group selection, the brain and nervous system are guided during development by a genetic blueprint and initial activity, which establishes rudimentary neuronal circuits. These early neuronal circuits are examples of self-organization. The use of certain circuits over others reinforces synaptic efficacy and strengthens those circuits. This is the selectivity that comes from exploring different ways of moving. Lastly, maps are developed that provide the organization of patterns of spontaneous movement in response to mover and task demands. The linking of these early perception-action categories is the cornerstone of development (Edelman, 1987). Other body systems, such as the skeletal, muscular, cardiovascular, and pulmonary systems develop and interact with the nervous system so that the most efficient movement pattern is chosen for the mover. According to this theory, there are no motor programs. The brain is not thought of as a computer and movement is not hardwired. This theory supports the idea that neural plasticity may be a constant feature across the life span. Neural plasticity is the ability to adapt structures in the nervous system to support desired functions. Neurons that fire together, wire together. Movement variability has always been considered a hallmark of normal movement. This integration of multiple systems allows for a variety of movement strategies to be used to perform a functional task. In other words, think of how many different ways a person can reach for an object or how many different ways it is possible for a person to move across a room.

Developmental concepts

Many concepts apply to human motor development. These are not laws of development but merely guiding thoughts about how to organize information on motor development. The concepts are related to the direction of change in the pattern of skill acquisition and concepts related to the types of movement displayed during different stages of development. The one overriding concept about which all developmentalists continue to agree is that development is *sequential* (Gesell et al., 1974). The developmental sequence is still recognized by most developmental authorities. Areas of disagreement involve the composition of the sequence. Which specific skills are always part of the sequence is debated, and whether one skill in the sequence is a prerequisite for the next skill in the sequence has been questioned.

Epigenesis

Motor development is *epigenetic*. *Epigenesis* is a theory of development that states that a human being grows and develops from a simple organism to a more complex one through progressive differentiation. An example from the plant world is the description of how a simple, round seed becomes a beautiful marigold. Motor development generally occurs in an orderly sequence, based on what has come before; not like a tower of blocks, built one on top of the other, but like a pyramid, with a foundation on which the next layer overlaps the preceding one. This pyramid allows for growth and change to occur in more than one direction at the same time (Figure 4-5). The developmental sequence is generally recognized to consist of the development of head control, rolling, sitting, creeping, and walking. The sequence of actions are known as *motor milestones*. The rate of change in acquiring each skill may vary from child to child within a family, among families, and among families of different cultures. Sequences may overlap as the child works on several levels of skills at the same time. For example, a child can be perfecting rolling while learning to balance in sitting. The lower-level skill does not need to be perfect before the child goes on to try something new. Some children even bypass a stage, such as creeping, and go on to another higher-level skill, such as walking without doing any harm developmentally.

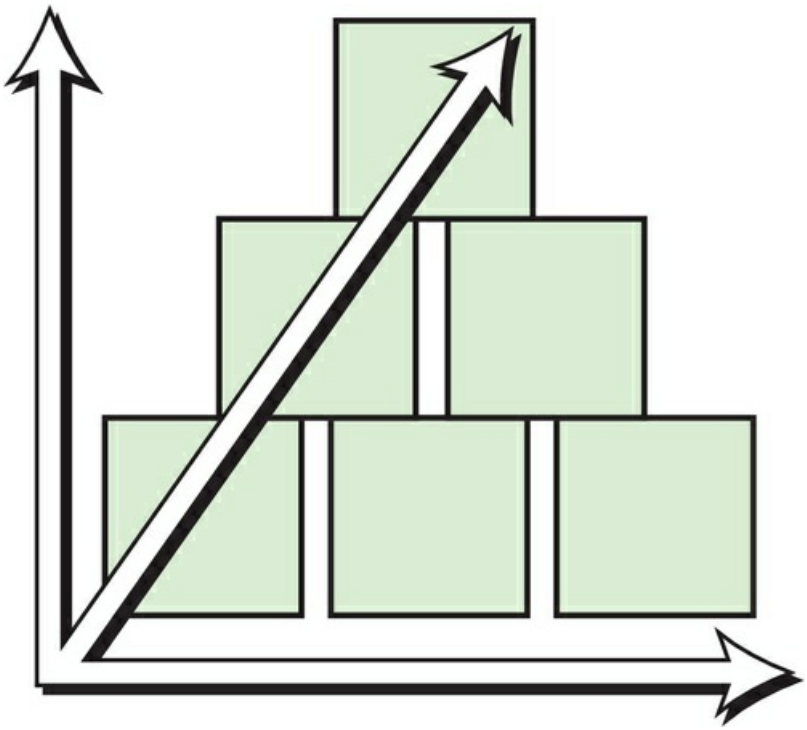


FIGURE 4-5 Epigenetic development.

Directional Concepts of Motor Development

Postural development tends to proceed from cephalic to caudal and proximal to distal.

Cephalic to Caudal

Cephalocaudal development is seen in the postnatal development of posture. Head control in infants begins with neck movements and is followed by development of trunk control. Postnatal postural development mirrors what happens in the embryo when the primitive spinal cord closes. Closure occurs first in the cervical area and then progresses in two directions at once, toward the head and the tail of the embryo (Martin, 1989). The infant develops head and neck and then trunk control. Overlap exists between the development of head-and-trunk control; think of a spiral beginning around the mouth and spreading outward in all directions encompassing more and more of the body (Figure 4-6). Development of postural control of the head and neck can be a rate-limiting factor in early motor development. If control of the head and neck is not mastered, subsequent motor development will be delayed.

FIGURE 4-6 Infant and spiral development.

Proximal to Distal

As a linked structure, the axis or midline of the body must provide a stable base for head, eye, and extremity movements to occur with any degree of control. The trunk is the stable base for head movement above and for limb movements distally. Imagine what would happen if you could not maintain an erect sitting posture without the use of your arms and you tried to use your arms to catch a ball thrown to you. You would have to use your arms for support, and if you tried to catch the ball, you would probably fall. Or imagine not being able to hold your head up. What chance

would you have of being able to follow a moving object with your eyes? Early in development, the infant works to establish midline neck control by lifting the head from the prone position, then establishes midline trunk control by extending the spine against gravity, followed by establishing proximal shoulder and pelvic girdle stability through weight bearing. In some positions, the infant uses the external environment to support the head and trunk to move the arms and legs. Reaching with the upper extremities is possible early in development but only with external trunk support, as when placed in an infant seat in which the trunk is supported. Once again, the infant first controls the midline of the neck, then the trunk, followed by the shoulders and pelvis before she controls the arms, legs, hands, and feet.

General Concepts of Development

Dissociation

A general concept is that development proceeds from *mass movements* to *specific movements* or from simple movements to complex movements. This concept can be interpreted in several different ways. *Mass* can refer to the whole body, and *specific* can refer to smaller parts of the body. For example, when an infant moves, the entire body moves; movement is not isolated to a specific body part. Infant movement is characterized by the mass movements of the trunk and limbs. The infant learns to move the body as one unit, as in log rolling, before she is able to move separate parts. The ability to separate movement in one body part from movement in another body part is called *dissociation*. Mature movements are characterized by *dissociation*, and typical motor development provides many examples. When an infant learns to turn her head in all directions without trunk movement, the head can be said to be dissociated from the trunk. Reaching with one arm from a prone on elbows position is an example of limb dissociation from the trunk. While the infant creeps on hands and knees, her limb movements are dissociated from trunk movement. Additionally, when the upper trunk rotates in one direction and the lower trunk rotates in the opposite direction during creeping (counter-rotation), the upper trunk is dissociated from the lower trunk and vice versa.

Reciprocal Interweaving

Periods of stability and instability of motor patterns have been observed by many developmentalists. Gesell et al. (1974) presented the concept of reciprocal interweaving to describe the cyclic changes they observed in the motor control of children over the course of early development. Periods of equilibrium were balanced by periods of disequilibrium. Head control, which appears to be fairly good at one age, may seem to lessen at an older age, only to recover as the infant develops further. At each stage of development, abilities emerge, merge, regress, or are replaced. During periods of disequilibrium, movement patterns regress to what was present at an earlier time, but after a while, new patterns emerge with newfound control. At other times, motor abilities learned in one context, such as control of the head in the prone position, may need to be relearned when the postural context is changed; for example, when the child is placed in sitting. Some patterns of movement appear at different periods, depending on need. The reappearance of certain patterns of movement at different times during development can also be referred to as *reciprocal interweaving*. One of the better examples of this reappearance of a pattern of movement is seen with the use of scapular adduction. Initially, this pattern of movement is used by the infant to reinforce upper trunk extension in the prone position. Later in development, the toddler uses the pattern again to maintain upper trunk extension as she begins to walk. This use in walking is described as a high-guard position of the arms. Reciprocal interweaving represents a spiral pattern of development.

Variation and Variability

Motor development can be described as occurring in two phases of variability. During the initial phase of variability, motor patterns are extremely variable as the mover explores all kinds of possible movement combinations. The sensory information generated by these movements continues to shape the nervous system's development. There is mounting evidence that self-produced sensorimotor experience plays a pivotal role in motor development (Hadders-Algra, 2010).

The second phase of variability begins when the nervous system is able to make sense of the sensory information produced by movement to be able to select the most appropriate motor response for the situation. The mechanism for the switch from primary to secondary variability is unknown. The age at which adaptive responses occur can vary, depending on the function involved. For example, sucking behavior exhibits secondary variability before term (Eishima, 1991). The mechanics of sucking are well worked out and coordinated by birth. Postural adjustments are seen in the trunk at 3 months of age (Hedburg et al., 2005). All basic motor functions are thought to reach a beginning stage of secondary variability around 18 months of age. These basic motor functions include posture and locomotion as well as reaching and grasping. Variation and variability have always been considered hallmarks of typical motor development. Children who move in stereotypical ways or appear stuck in one pattern of movement have been deemed to be at risk. Assessment of variability in postural control during infancy may hold promise for early identification of motor problems (Dusing and Harbourne, 2010).

Biomechanical Considerations in Motor Development

Physiologic Flexion to Antigravity Extension to Antigravity Flexion

The next concepts to be discussed are related to changes in the types of movement displayed during different stages of development. Some movements are easier to perform at certain times during development. Factors affecting movement include the biomechanics of the situation, muscle strength, and level of neuromuscular maturation and control. Full-term babies are born with predominant flexor muscle tone *(physiologic flexion)*. The limbs and trunk naturally assume a flexed position (Figure 4-7). If you try to straighten or uncoil any extremity, it will return to its original position easily. It is only with the influence of gravity, the infant's body weight, and probably some of the early reflexes that the infant begins to extend and lose the predisposition toward flexion. As development progresses, active movement toward extension occurs. *Antigravity extension* is easiest to achieve early on because the extensors are in lengthened position from the effect of the newborn's physiologic flexed posture. The extensors are ready to begin functioning before the shortened flexors. The infant progresses from being curled up in a fetal position, dominated by gravity, to exhibiting the ability to extend against gravity actively. *Antigravity flexion* is exhibited from the supine position and occurs later than antigravity extension.

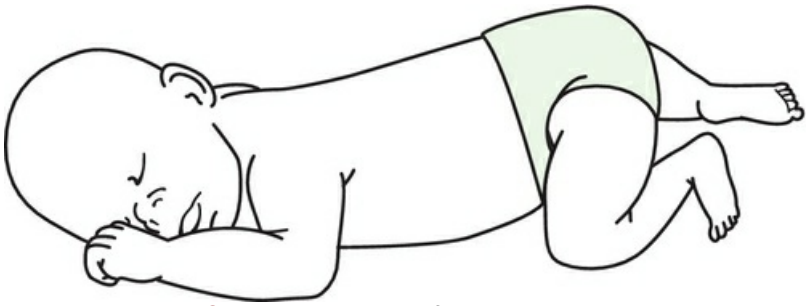


FIGURE 4-7 Physiologic flexion in a newborn.

Babies have a C-shaped spine at birth. Exposure to head lifting in prone develops the secondary cervical curve. Without exposure to the prone position in the form of tummy time, the ability of the infant to lift and turn the head is diminished. The risk of plagiocephaly or a misshapen head is increased, because in supine, the infant tends to assume an asymmetrical head posture. The neck muscles are not strong enough to maintain the head in midline. Tummy time is essential to encourage lifting and turning of the head to strengthen the neck muscles bilaterally.

Developmental processes

Motor development is a result of three processes: growth, maturation, and adaptation.

Growth

Growth is any increase in dimension or proportion. Examples of ways that growth is typically measured include size, height, weight, and head circumference. Infants' and children's growth is routinely tracked at the pediatrician's office by use of growth charts (Figure 4-8). Growth is an important parameter of change during development because some changes in motor performance can be linked to changes in body size. Typically, the taller a child grows, the farther she can throw a ball. Strength gains with age have been linked to increases in a child's height and weight (Malina et al., 2004). Failure to grow or discrepancies between two growth measures can be an early indicator of a developmental problem.

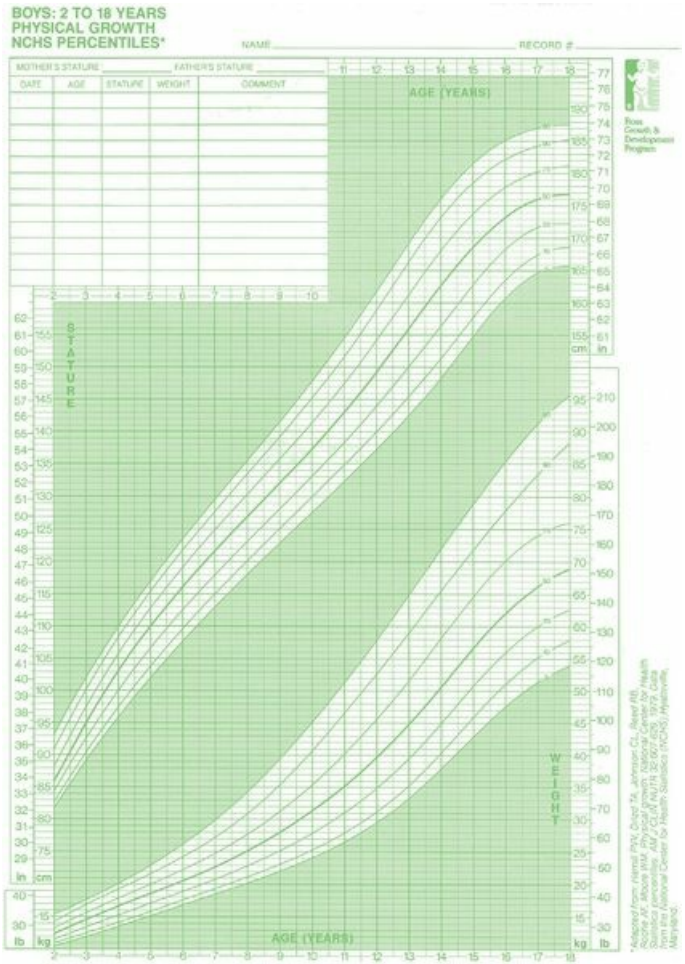


FIGURE 4-8 Growth chart. (Used with permission of Ross Products Division, Abbott Laboratories Inc., Columbus, OH 43216. From NCHS Growth Charts © 1982 Ross Products Division, Abbott Laboratories Inc.).

Maturation

Maturation is the result of physical changes that are caused by preprogrammed internal body processes. Maturational changes are those that are genetically guided, such as myelination of nerve fibers, the appearance of primary and secondary bone growth centers (ossification centers), increasing complexity of internal organs, and the appearance of secondary sexual characteristics.

Some growth changes, such as those that occur at the ends of long bones *(epiphyses)*, occur as a result of maturation; when the bone growth centers (under genetic control) are active, length increases. After these centers close, growth is stopped, and no more change in length is possible.

Adaptation

Adaptation is the process by which environmental influences guide growth and development. Adaptation occurs when physical changes are the result of external stimulation. An infant adapts to being exposed to a contagion, such as chickenpox, by developing antibodies. The skeleton is remodeled during development in response to weight bearing and muscular forces *(Wolfe's law)* exerted on it during functional activities. As muscles pull on bone, the skeleton adapts to maintain the appropriate musculotendinous relationships with the bony skeleton for efficient movement. This same adaptability can cause skeletal problems if musculotendinous forces are abnormal (unbalanced) or misaligned and may thus produce a deformity.

Motor milestones

The motor milestones and the ages at which these skills can be expected to occur can be found in Tables 4-4 and 4-5. Remember there are wide variations in time frames during which milestones are typically achieved.

Table 4-4

Infant Motor Milestones

Milestone	Age
Head control (no head lag when pulled to sit)	4 months
Roll segmentally supine to prone	6–8 months
Sit alone steadily	6–8 months
Creep reciprocally, pulls to stand	8–9 months
Cruising	10–11 months
Walk alone	12 months

Table 4-5

Reach, Grasp, and Release Milestones

Action	Age
Visual regard of objects	0–2 months
Swipes at objects	1–3 months
Visually directed reaching	3.5–4.5 months
Reaching from prone on elbow	6 months
Retains objects placed in hand	4 months
Palmar grasp	6 months
Radial-palmar grasp	7 months
Scissors grasp	8 months
Radial-digital grasp	9 months
Inferior pincer	10–12 months
Superior pincer	12 months
Three-jaw chuck	12 months
Involuntary release	1–4 months
Transfers at midline	4 months
Transfers across body	7 months
Voluntary release	7–10 months
Release a block into small container	12 months
Release pellet into small container	15 months

Head Control

An infant should exhibit good head control by 4 months of age. The infant should be able to keep the head in line with the body (ear in line with the acromion) when he or she is pulled to sit from the supine position (Figure 4-9). When the infant is held upright in a vertical position and is tilted in any direction, the head should tilt in the opposite direction. A 4-month-old infant, when placed in a prone position, should be able to lift the head up against gravity past 45 degrees (Figure 4-10). The infant acquires an additional component of antigravity head control, the ability to flex the head from supine position, at 5 months.

FIGURE 4-9 Head in line with the body when pulled to sit.

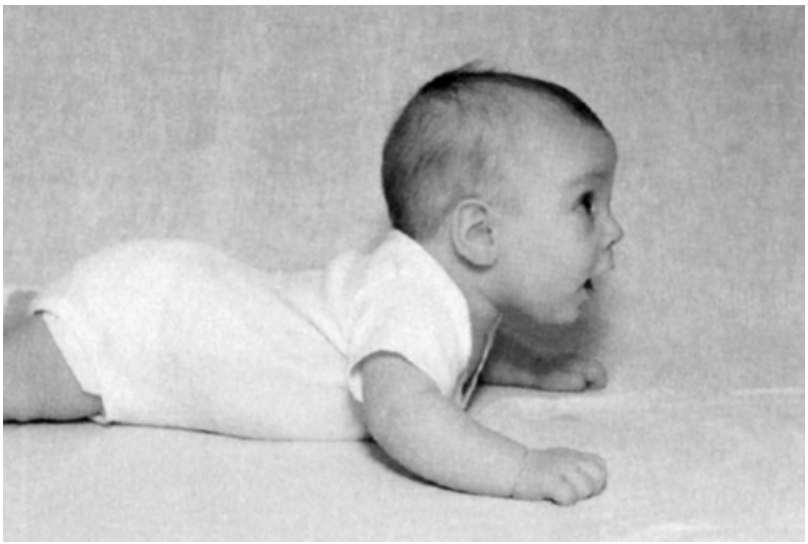


FIGURE 4-10 Head lifting in prone. A 4-month-old infant lifts and maintains head past 45 degrees in prone. (From Wong DL: *Whaley and Wong's essentials of pediatric nursing, ed 5*, St. Louis, 1997, Mosby.)

Segmental Rolling

Rolling is the next milestone. Infants log roll (at 4 to 6 months) before they are able to demonstrate segmental rotation (at 6 to 8 months). When log rolling, the head and trunk move as one unit without any trunk rotation. Segmental rolling or rolling with separate upper and lower trunk rotation should be accomplished by 6 to 8 months of age. Rolling from prone to supine precedes rolling from supine to prone, because extensor control typically precedes flexorcontrol. The prone position provides some mechanical advantage because the infant's arms are under the body and can push against the support surface. If the head, the heaviest part of the infant, moves laterally, gravity will assist in bringing it toward the support surface and will cause a change of position.

Sitting

This next milestone represents a change in functional orientation for the infant. The previous norm for achieving independent sitting was 8 months of age (Figure 4-11). However, according to the World Health Organization (WHO) (2006) the mean age at which infants around the world now sit, is 6.1 months (SD of 1.1). *Sitting independently* is defined as sitting alone when placed. The back should be straight, without any kyphosis. No hand support is needed. The infant does not have to assume a sitting position but does have to exhibit trunk rotation in the position. The ability to turn the head and trunk is important for interacting with the environment and for dynamic balance.

FIGURE 4-11 Sitting independently.

Creeping and Cruising

Babies may first crawl on their tummy, but according to WHO (2006), infants reciprocally creep on all fours at 8.5 months (SD 1.7) (see Figure 4-13). *Reciprocal* means that the opposite arm and leg move together and leave the other opposite pair of limbs to support the weight of the body. By 10 to 11 months of age, most infants are pulling up to stand and are cruising around furniture. *Cruising* is walking sideways while being supported by hands or tummy on a surface (Figure 4-12). The coffee table and couch are perfect for this activity because they are usually the correct height to provide sufficient support to the infant (Figure 4-13). Some infants skip crawling on the belly and go into creeping on hands and knees. Other infants skip both forms of prone movement and pull to stand and begin to walk.

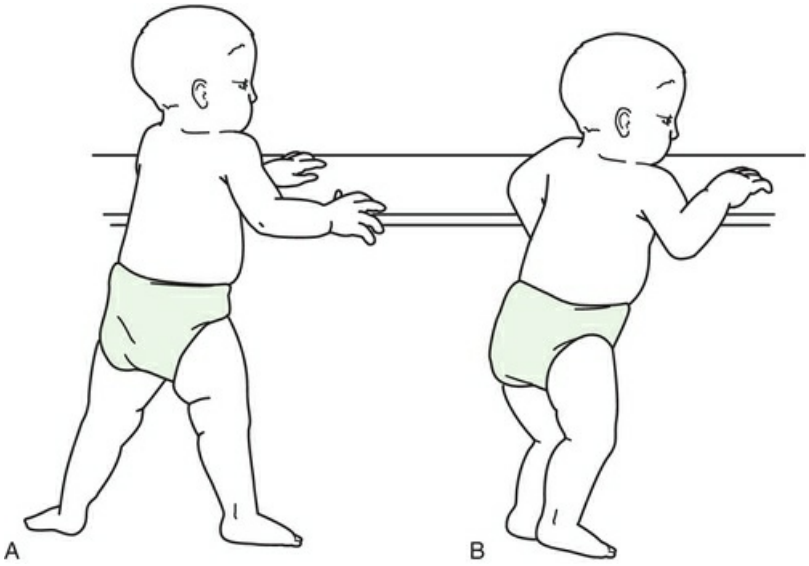


FIGURE 4-12 **A** and **B**, Cruising around furniture.

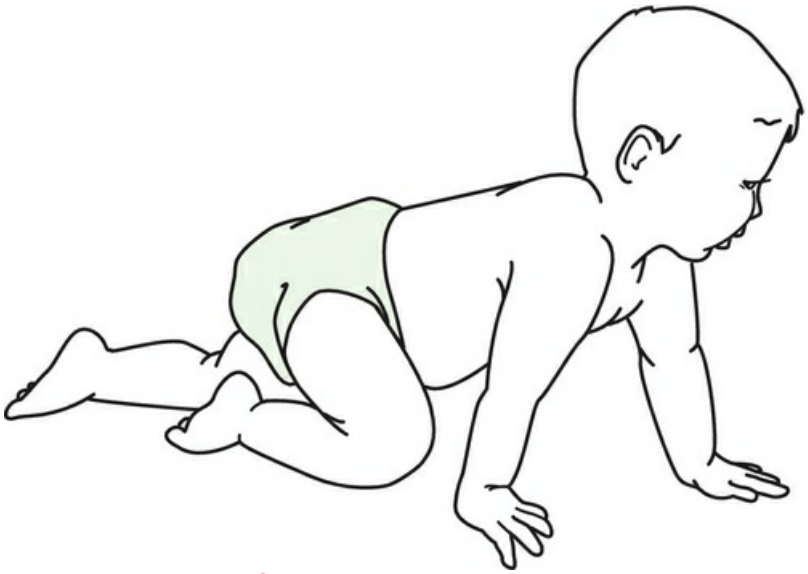


FIGURE 4-13 Reciprocal creeping.

Walking

The last major gross motor milestone is walking (Figure 4-14). The new walker assumes a wide base of support, with legs abducted and externally rotated; exhibits lumbar lordosis; and holds the arms in high guard with scapular adduction. The traditional age range for this skill has been 12 to 18 months; however, an infant as young as 7 months may demonstrate this ability. Children demonstrate great variability in achieving this milestone. The most important milestones are probably head control and sitting, because if an infant is unable to achieve control of the head and trunk, control of extremity movements will be difficult if not impossible. WHO (2006) gives an average age of 12.1 months (SD 1.8) for children to accomplish independent movement in upright. There are ethnic differences in the typical age of walking. African-American children have been found to walk earlier (10.9 months) (Capute et al., 1985), while some Caucasian children walk as late as 15.5 months (Bayley, 2005). It is acceptable for a child to be ahead of typical developmental guidelines; however, delays in achieving these milestones are cause for concern.

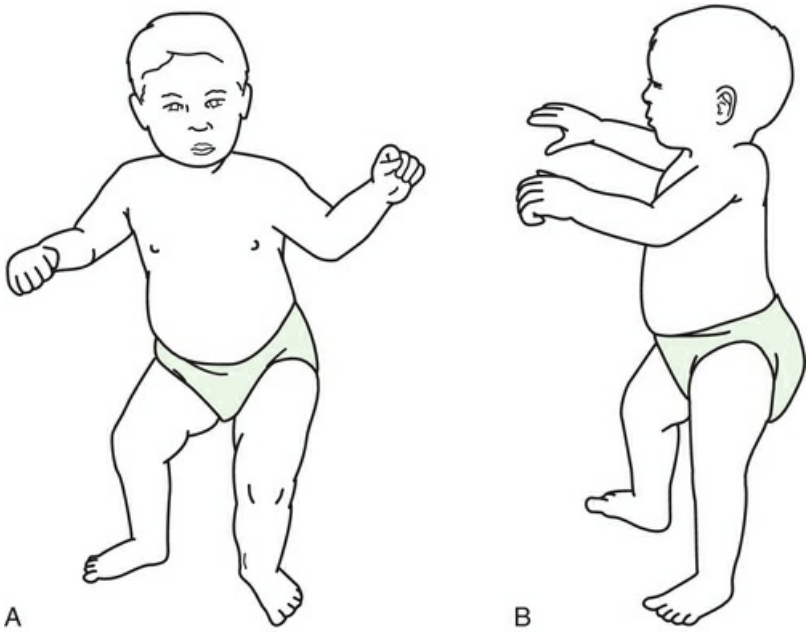


FIGURE 4-14 **A** and **B,** Early walking: wide stance, pronated feet, arms in high guard, "potbelly," and lordotic back.

Reach, Grasp, and Release

Reaching patterns influence the ability of the hand to grasp objects. Reaching patterns depend on the position of the shoulder. Take a moment to try the following reaching pattern. Elevate your scapula and internally rotate your shoulder before reaching for the pencil on your desk. Do not compensate with forearm supination, but allow your forearm to move naturally into pronation. Although it is possible for you to obtain the pencil using this reaching pattern, it would be much easier to reach with the scapula depressed and the shoulder externally rotated. Reaching is an upper arm phenomenon. The position of the shoulder can dictate which side of the hand is visible. *Prehension* is the act of grasping. To prehend or grasp an object, one must reach for it. Development of reach, grasp, and release is presented in Table 4-5.

Hand Regard

The infant first recognizes the hands at 2 months of age, when they enter the field of vision (Figure 4-15). The asymmetric tonic neck reflex, triggered by head turning, allows the arm on the face side of the infant to extend and therefore is in a perfect place to be seen or regarded. Because of the predominance of physiologic flexor tone in the newborn, the hands are initially loosely fisted. The infant can visually regard other objects, especially if presented to the peripheral vision.

FIGURE 4-15 Hand regard aided by an asymmetric tonic neck reflex.

Reflexive and Palmar Grasp

The first type of grasp seen in the infant is *reflexive*, meaning it happens in response to a stimulus, in this case, touch. In a newborn, touch to the palm of the hand once it opens, especially on the ulnar side, produces a reflexive palmar grasp. Reflexive grasp is replaced by a voluntary palmar grasp by 6 months of age. The infant is no longer compelled by the touch of an object to grasp but may grasp voluntarily. *Palmar grasp* involves just the fingers coming into the palm of the hand; the thumb does not participate.

Evolution of Voluntary Grasp

Once grasp is voluntary at 6 months, a progressive change occurs in the form of the grasp. At 7 months, the thumb begins to adduct, and this allows for a radial-palmar grasp. The radial side of the hand is used along with the thumb to pick up small objects, such as 1-inch cubes. Radial palmar grasp is replaced by radial-digital grasp as the thumbs begin to oppose (Figures 4-16 and 4-17). Objects can then be grasped by the ends of the fingers, rather than having to be brought into the palm of the hand. The next two types of grasp involve the thumb and index finger only and are called *pincer grasps*. In the inferior pincer grasp, the thumb is on the lateral side of the index finger, as if you were to pinch someone (Figure 4-18). In the superior pincer grasp, the thumb and index finger are tip to tip, as in picking up a raisin or a piece of lint (Figure 4-19). An inferior pincer grasp is seen between 9 and 12 months of age, and a superior pincer grasp is evident by 1 year. Another type of grasp that may be seen in a 1-year-old infant is called a *three-jaw chuck grasp* (Figure 4-20). The wrist is extended, and the middle and index fingers and the thumb are used to grasp blocks and containers.

FIGURE 4-16 Age 7 months: radial palmar grasp (thumb adduction begins); mouthing of objects. (From Cech D,

Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

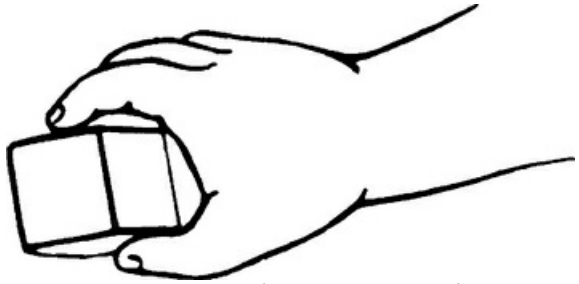


FIGURE 4-17 Age 9 months: radial digital grasp (beginning opposition). (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

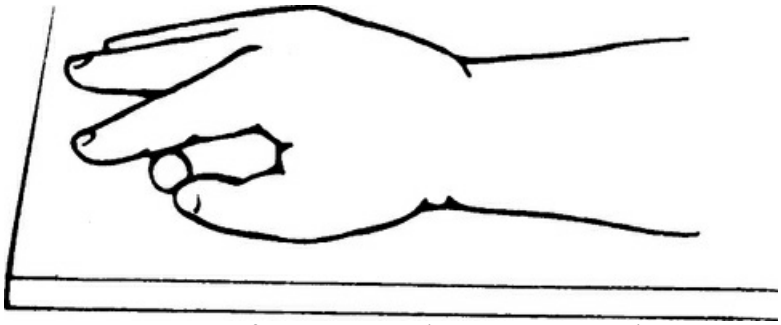


FIGURE 4-18 Age 9 to 12 months: inferior pincer grasp (isolated index pointing). (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

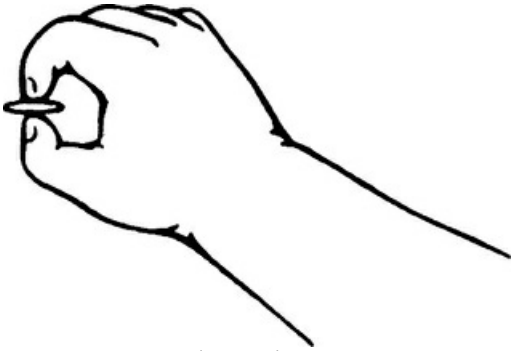


FIGURE 4-19 Age 1 year: superior pincer grasp (tip to tip). (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

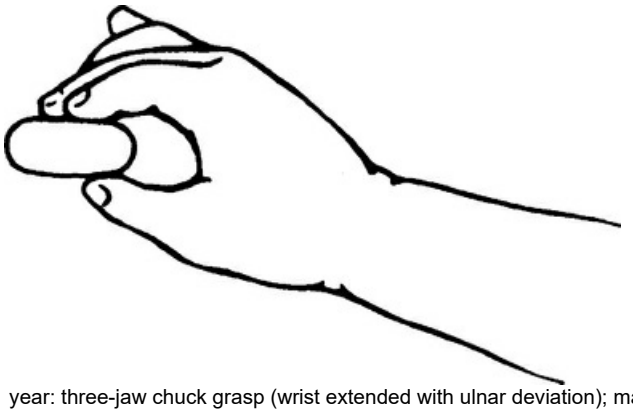


FIGURE 4-20 Age 1 year: three-jaw chuck grasp (wrist extended with ulnar deviation); maturing release. (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

Release

As voluntary control of the wrist, finger, and thumb extensors develops, the infant is able to demonstrate the ability to release a grasped object (Duff, 2012). Transferring objects from hand to hand is possible at 5 to 6 months because one hand can be stabilized by the other. True voluntary release is seen around 7 to 9 months and is usually assisted by the infant's being externally stabilized by another person's hand or by the tray of a highchair. Mature control is exhibited by the infant's release of an object into a container without any external support (12 months) or by putting a pellet into a bottle (15 months). Release continues to be refined and accuracy improved with ball throwing in childhood.

Typical motor development

The important stages of motor development in the first year of life are those associated with even months 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12 (Table 4-6). Typical motor behavior of a 4-month-old infant is characterized by head control, support on arms and hands, and midline orientation. Symmetric extension and abduction of the limbs against gravity and the ability to extend the trunk against gravity characterize the 6-month-old infant. An infant 6 to 8 months old demonstrates controlled rotation around the long axis of the trunk that allows for segmental rolling, counterrotation of the trunk in crawling, and creeping. The 6-month-old may sit alone and play with an object. This milestone is being reached earlier than previously reported. Arm support may be needed until the child shows more dynamic control of the trunk and can make postural adjustments to lifting the limbs. A 10-month-old balances in standing, and a 12-month-old walks independently. Although the even months are important because they mark the attainment of these skills, the other months are crucial because they prepare the infant for the achievement of the control necessary to attain these milestones.

Table 4-6

Important Stages of Development

Age	Stage
1–2 months	Internal body processes stabilize Basic biologic rhythms are established Spontaneous grasp and release are established
3–4 months	Forearm support develops Head control is established Midline orientation is present
4–5 months	Antigravity control of extensors and flexors begins Bottom lifting is present
6 months	Strong extension-abduction of limbs is present Complete trunk extension is present Pivots on tummy Sits alone Spontaneous trunk rotation begins
7–8 months	Trunk control develops along with sitting balance
8–10 months	Movement progression is seen in crawling, creeping, pulling to stand, and cruising
11–12 months	Independent ambulation occurs May move in and out of full squat
16–17 months	Carries or pulls an object while walking Walks sideways and backward
20–22 months	Easily squats and recovers toy
24 months	Arm swing is present during ambulation Heel strike is present during ambulation

Infant

Birth to Three Months

Newborns assume a flexed posture regardless of their position because physiologic flexor tone dominates at birth. Initially, the newborn is unable to lift the head from a prone position. The newborn's legs are flexed under the pelvis and prevent contact of the pelvis with the supporting surface. If you put yourself into that position and try to lift your head, even as an adult, you will immediately recognize that the biomechanics of the situation are against you. With your hips in the air, your weight is shifted forward, thus making it more difficult to lift your head even though you have more muscular strength and control than a newborn. Although you are strong enough to overcome this mechanical disadvantage, the infant is not. The infant must wait for gravity to help lower the pelvis to the support surface and for the neck muscles to strengthen to be able to lift the head when in the prone position. The infant will be able to lift the head first unilaterally (Figure 4-21), then bilaterally.

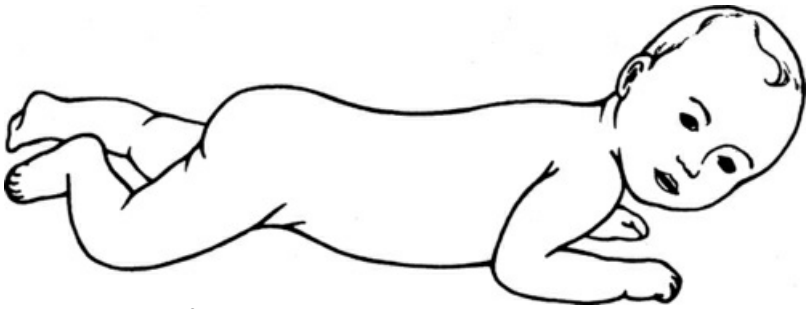


FIGURE 4-21 Unilateral head lifting in a newborn. (From Cech D, Martin S, editors: *Functional movement development across the life span*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

Over the next several months, neck and spinal extension develop and allow the infant to lift the head to one side, to lift and turn the head, and then to lift and hold the head in the midline. As the pelvis lowers to the support surface, neck and trunk extensors become stronger. Extension proceeds from the neck down the back in a cephalocaudal direction, so the infant is able to raise the head up higher and higher in the prone position. By 3 months of age, the infant can lift the head to 45 degrees from the supporting surface. Spinal extension also allows the infant to bring the arms from under the body into a position to support herself on the forearms (Figure 4-22). This position also makes it easier to extend the trunk. Weight bearing through the arms and shoulders provides greater sensory awareness to those structures and allows the infant to view the hands while in a prone position.

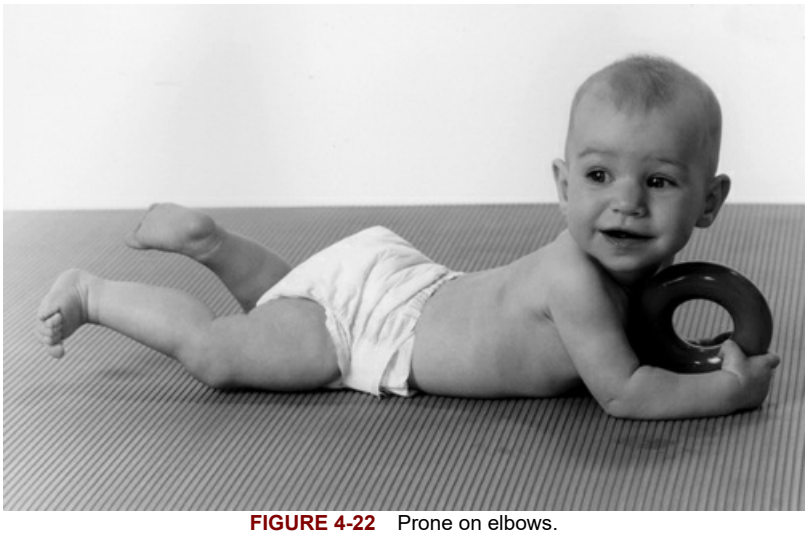


FIGURE 4-22 Prone on elbows.

When in the supine position, the infant exhibits random arm and leg movements. The limbs remain flexed, and they never extend completely. In supine, the head is kept to one side or the other because the neck muscles are not yet strong enough to maintain a midline position. If you wish to make eye contact, approach the infant from the side because asymmetry is present. An asymmetric tonic neck reflex may be seen when the baby turns the head to one side (Figure 4-23). The arm on the side to which the head is turned may extend and may allow the infant to see the hand while the other arm, closer to the skull, is flexed. This "fencing" position does not dominate the infant's posture, but it may provide the beginning of the functional connection between the eyes and the hand that is necessary for visually guided reaching. Initially, the baby's hands are normally fisted, but in the first month, they open. By 2 to 3 months, eyes and hands are sufficiently linked to allow for reaching, grasping, and shaking a rattle. As the eyes begin to track ever-widening distances, the infant will watch the hands explore the body.

FIGURE 4-23 Asymmetric tonic neck reflex in an infant.

When an infant is pulled to sit from a supine position before the age of 4 months, the head lags behind the body. Postural control of the head has not been established. The baby lacks sufficient strength in the neck muscles to overcome the force of gravity. Primitive rolling may be seen as the infant turns the head strongly to one side. The body may rotate as a unit in the same direction as the head moves. The baby can turn to the side or may turn all the way over from supine to prone or from prone to supine (Figure 4-24). This turning as a unit is the result of a primitive neck righting reflex. A complete discussion of reflexes and reactions is presented following this section. In this stage of primitive rolling, separation of upper and lower trunk segments around the long axis of the body is missing.

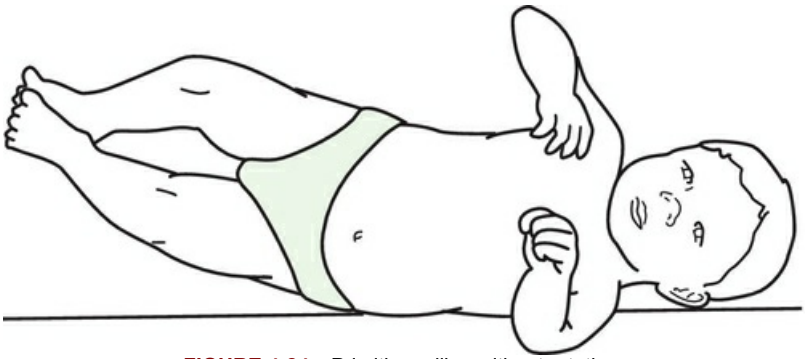


FIGURE 4-24 Primitive rolling without rotation.

Four Months

Four months is a critical time in motor development because posture and movement change from asymmetric to more symmetric. The infant is now able to lift the head in midline past 90 degrees in the prone position. When the infant is pulled to sit from a supine position, the head is in line with the body. Midline orientation of the head is present when the infant is at rest in the supine position (Figure 4-25). The infant is able to bring her hands together in the midline and to watch them. In fact, the first time the baby gets both hands to the midline and realizes that her hands, to this point only viewed wiggling in the periphery, are part of her body, a real "aha" occurs. Initially, this discovery may result in hours of midline hand play. The infant can now bring objects to the mouth

with both hands. Bimanual hand play is seen in all possible developmental positions. The hallmark motor behaviors of the 4-month-old infant are head control and midline orientation.

FIGURE 4-25 Midline head position in supine.

Head control in the 4-month-old infant is characterized by being able to lift the head past 90 degrees in the prone position, to keep the head in line with the body when the infant is pulled to sit (see Figure 4-9), to maintain the head in midline with the trunk when the infant is held upright in the vertical position and is tilted in any direction (Figure 4-26). Midline orientation refers to the infant's ability to bring the limbs to the midline of the body, as well as to maintain a symmetric posture regardless of position. When held in supported sitting, the infant attempts to assist in trunk control. The positions in which the infant can independently move are still limited to supine and prone at this age. Lower extremity movements begin to produce pelvic movements. Pelvic mobility begins in the supine position when, from a hook-lying position, the infant produces anterior pelvic tilts by pushing on her legs and increasing hip extension, as in bridging (Bly, 1983). Active hip flexion in supine produces posterior tilting. Random pushing of the lower extremities against the support surface provides further practice of pelvic mobility that will be used later in development, especially in gait.

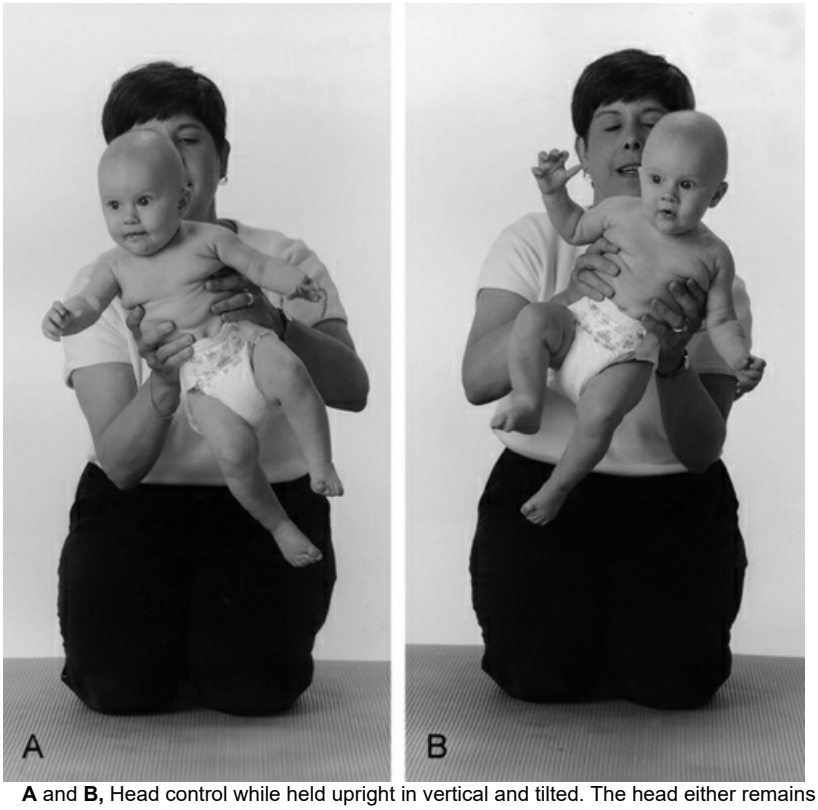


FIGURE 4-26 **A** and **B,** Head control while held upright in vertical and tilted. The head either remains in midline or tilts as a compensation.

Five Months

Even though head control as defined earlier is considered to be achieved by 4 months of age, lifting the head against gravity from a supine position (*antigravity neck flexion*) is not achieved until 5 months of age. Antigravity neck flexion may first be noted by the caregiver when putting the child down in the crib for a nap. The infant works to keep the head from falling backward as she is lowered toward the supporting surface. This is also the time when infants look as though they are trying to climb out of their car or infant seat by straining to bring the head forward. When the infant is pulled to sit from a supine position, the head now leads the movement with a chin tuck. The head is in front of the body. In fact, the infant often uses forward trunk flexion to reinforce neck flexion and to lift the legs to counterbalance the pulling force (Figure 4-27).

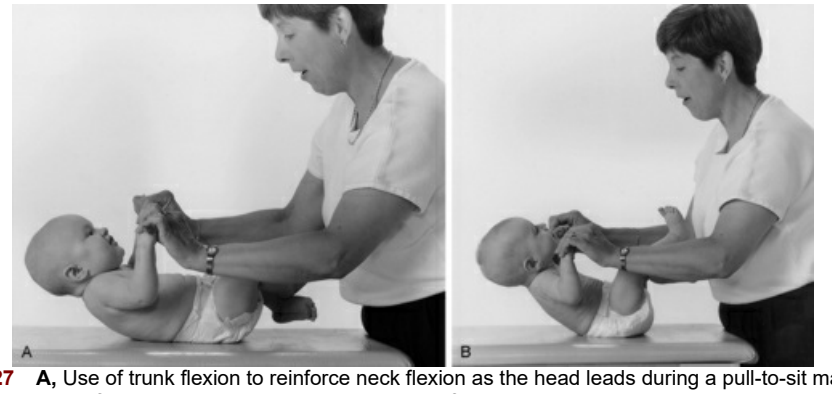


FIGURE 4-27 **A,** Use of trunk flexion to reinforce neck flexion as the head leads during a pull-to-sit maneuver. **B,** Use of leg elevation to counterbalance neck flexion during a pull-to-sit maneuver.

From a froglike position, the infant is able to lift her bottom off the support surface and to bring her feet into her visual field. This "bottom lifting" allows her to play with her feet and even to put them into her mouth for sensory awareness (Figure 4-28). This play provides lengthening for the

hamstrings and prepares the baby for long sitting. The lower abdominals also have a chance to work while the trunk is supported. Reciprocal kicking is also seen at this time.

FIGURE 4-28 Bottom lifting.

As extension develops in the prone position, the infant may occasionally demonstrate a "swimming" posture (Figure 4-29). In this position, most of the weight is on the tummy, and the arms and legs are able to be stretched out and held up off the floor or mattress. This posture is a further manifestation of extensor control against gravity. The infant plays between this swimming posture and a prone on elbows or prone on extended arms posture (Figure 4-30). The infant makes subtle weight shifts while in the prone on elbows position and may attempt reaching. Movements at this stage show *dissociation* of head and limbs.

FIGURE 4-29 "Swimming" posture, antigravity extension of the body.

FIGURE 4-30 Prone on extended arms.

A 5-month-old infant cannot sit alone but may be supported at the low back. The typically developing infant can sit in the corner of a couch or on the floor if propped on extended arms. 5-month-old infants placed in sitting demonstrate directionally appropriate activation of postural muscles in response to movement of the support surface (Hadders-Algra et al., 1996).

Six Months

A 6-month-old infant becomes mobile in the prone position by pivoting in a circle (Figure 4-31). The infant is also able to shift weight onto one extended arm and to reach forward with the other hand to grasp an object. The reaching movement is counterbalanced by a lateral weight shift of the trunk that produces lateral head and trunk bending away from the side of the weight shift (Figure 4-32). This lateral bending in response to a weight shift is called a *righting reaction*. Righting reactions of the head and trunk are more thoroughly discussed in the next section. Maximum extension of the head and trunk is possible in the prone position along with extension and abduction of the limbs away from the body. This extended posture is called the *Landau reflex* and represents total body righting against gravity. It is mature when the infant can demonstrate hip extension when held away from the support surface, supported only under the tummy. The infant appears to be flying (Figure 4-33). This final stage in the development of extension can occur only if the hips are relatively adducted. Too much hip abduction puts the gluteus maximus at a biomechanical disadvantage and makes it more difficult to execute hip extension. Excessive abduction is often seen in children with low muscle tone and increased range of motion, such as in Down syndrome. These children have difficulty performing antigravity hip extension.

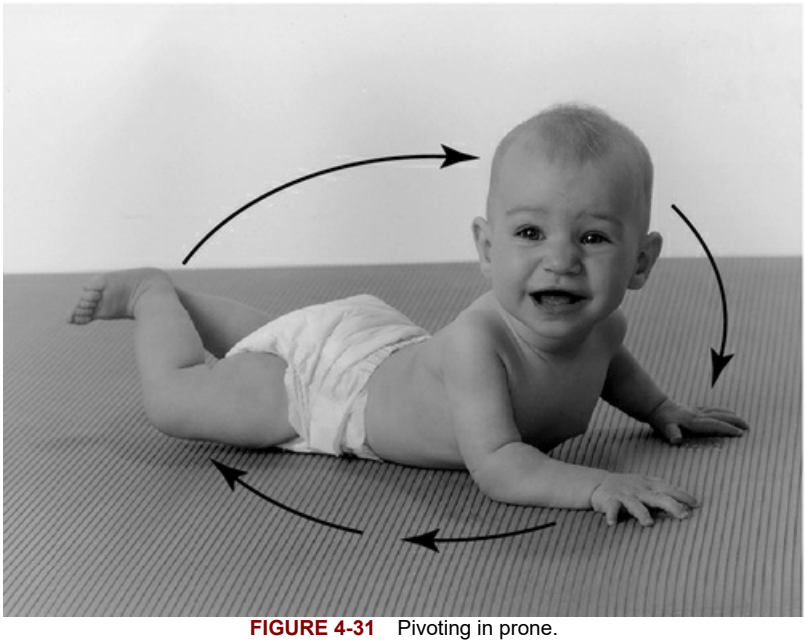


FIGURE 4-31 Pivoting in prone.

FIGURE 4-32 Lateral righting reaction.

FIGURE 4-33 **A,** Eliciting a Landau reflex. **B,** Spontaneous Landau reflex.

Segmental rolling is now present and becomes the preferred mobility pattern when rolling, first from prone to supine, which is less challenging, and then from supine to prone. Antigravity flexion control is needed to roll from supine to prone. The movement usually begins with flexion of some body part, depending on the infant and the circumstances. Regardless of the body part used, segmental rotation is essential for developing transitional control (Figure 4-34). *Transitional movements* are those that allow change of position, such as moving from prone to sitting, from the four-point position to kneeling, and from sitting to standing. Only a few movement transitions take place without segmental trunk rotation, such as moving from the four-point position to kneeling and from sitting to standing. Individuals with movement dysfunction often have problems making the transition smoothly and efficiently from one position to another. The quality of movement affects the individual's ability to perform transitional movements.

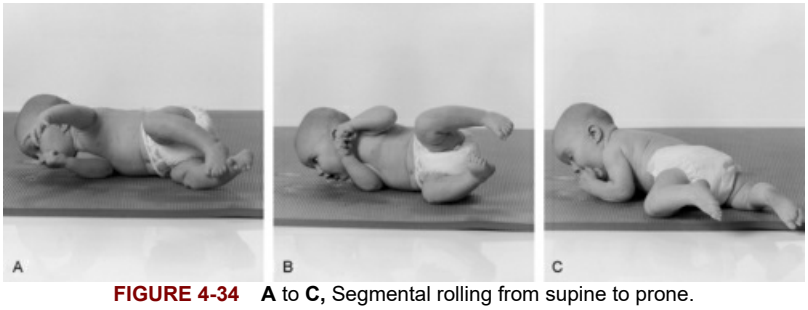


FIGURE 4-34 **A** to **C,** Segmental rolling from supine to prone.

The 6-month-old infant can sit up if placed in sitting. The typically developing infant can sit in the corner of a couch or on the floor if propped on extended arms. A 6-month-old cannot purposefully move into sitting from a prone position but may incidentally push herself backward along the floor. Coincidentally, while pushing, her abdomen may be lifted off the support surface, allowing the pelvis to move over the hips, with the end result of sitting between the feet. Sitting between the feet is called *W sitting* and should be avoided in infants with developmental movement problems, because it can make it difficult to learn to use trunk muscles for balance. The posture provides positional stability, but it does not require active use of the trunk muscles. Concern also exists about the abnormal stress this position places on growing joints. In typically developing children, there is less concern because these children move in and out of the position more easily, rather than remaining in it for long periods of time.

Having developed trunk extension in the prone position, the infant can sit with a relatively straight back with the exception of the lumbar spine (Figure 4-35). The upper and middle parts of the trunk are not rounded as in previous months, but the lumbar area may still demonstrate forward flexion. Although the infant's arms are initially needed for support, with improving trunk control, first one hand and then both hands will be freed from providing postural support to explore objects and to engage in more sophisticated play. When balance is lost during sitting, the

infant extends the arms for protection while falling forward. In successive months, this same upper extremity protective response will be seen in additional directions, such as laterally and backward.

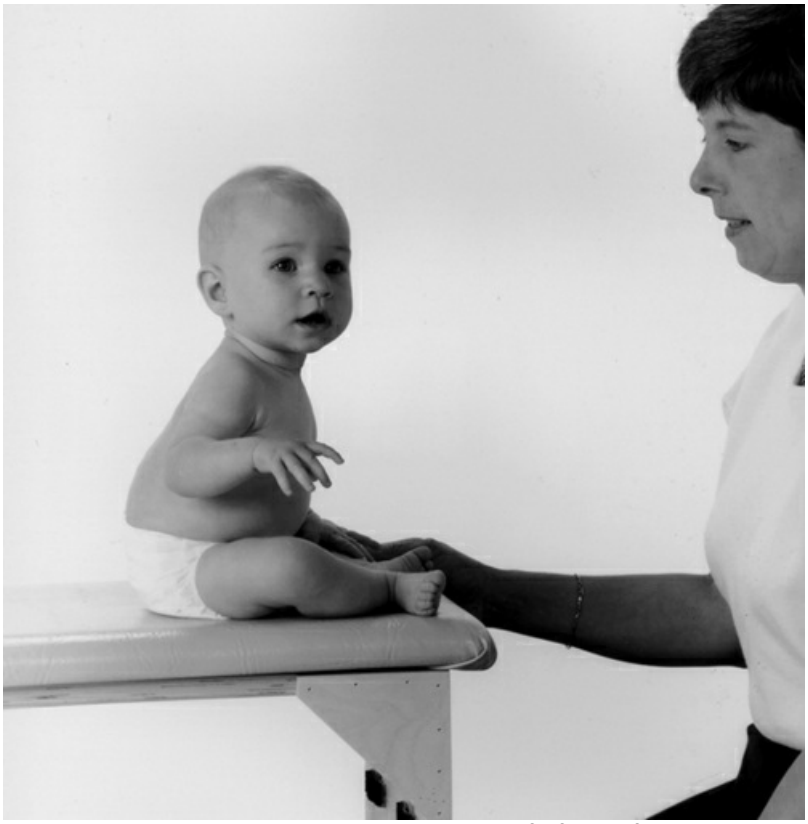


FIGURE 4-35 Early sitting with a relatively straight back except for forward flexion in the lumbar spine.

The pull-to-sit maneuver with a 6-month-old often causes the infant to pull all the way up to standing (Figure 4-36). The infant will most likely reach forward for the caregiver's hands as part of the task. A 6-month-old likes to bear weight on the feet and will bounce in this position if she is held. Back-and-forth rocking and bouncing in a position seem to be prerequisites for achieving postural control in a new posture (Thelen, 1979). Repetition of rhythmic upper extremity activities is also seen in the banging and shaking of objects during this period. Reaching becomes less dependent on visual cues as the infant uses other senses to become more aware of body relationships. The infant may hear a noise and may reach unilaterally toward the toy that made the sound (Duff, 2012).

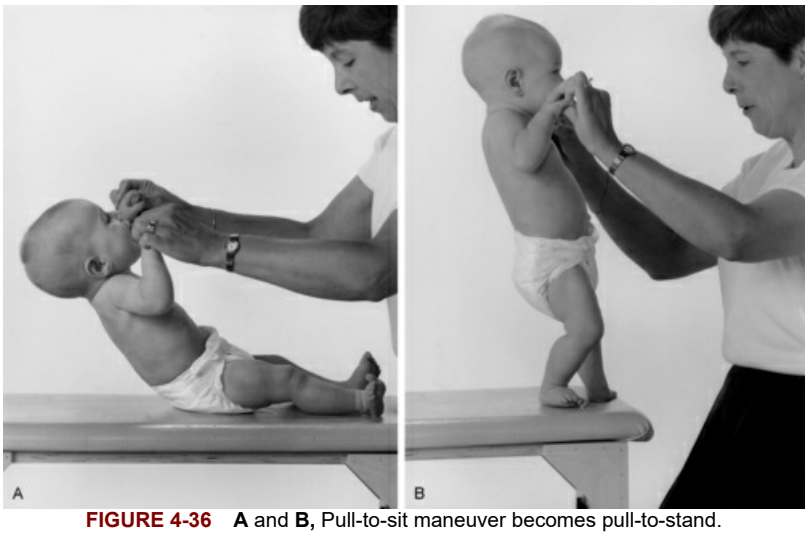


FIGURE 4-36 **A** and **B,** Pull-to-sit maneuver becomes pull-to-stand.

Although complete elbow extension is lacking, the 6-month-old's arm movements are maturing such that a mid–pronation-supination reaching pattern is seen. A position halfway between supination and pronation is considered neutral. Pronated reaching is the least mature reaching pattern and is seen early in development. Supinated reaching is the most mature pattern because it allows the hand to be visually oriented toward the thumb side, thereby increasing grasp precision (Figure 4-37). Reaching patterns originate from the shoulder because early in upper extremity development, the arm functions as a whole unit. Reaching patterns are different from grasping patterns, which involve movements of the fingers.


FIGURE 4-37 Supinated reaching.

Seven Months

Trunk control improves in sitting and allows the infant to free one or both hands for playing with objects. The infant can narrow her base of support in sitting by adducting the lower extremities as the trunk begins to be able to compensate for small losses of balance. Dynamic stability develops

from muscular work of the trunk. An active trunk supports dynamic balance and complements the positional stability derived from the configuration of the base of support. The different types of sitting postures, such as ring sitting, wide abducted sitting, and long sitting, provide the infant with different amounts of support. Figure 4-38 shows examples of sitting postures in typically developing infants with and without hand support. Lateral protective reactions begin to emerge in sitting at this time (Figure 4-39). Unilateral reach is displayed by the 7-month-old infant (Figure 4-40), as is an ability to transfer objects from hand to hand.

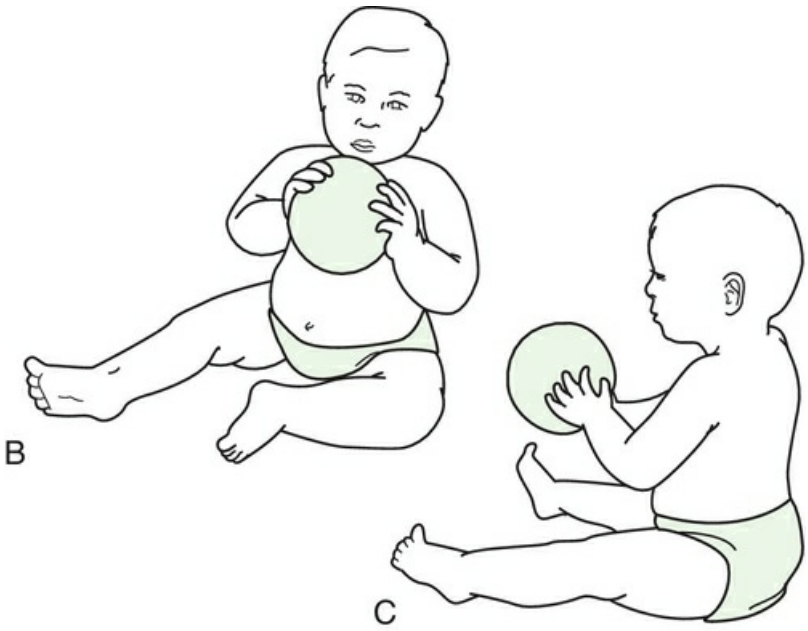


FIGURE 4-38 Sitting postures. **A,** Ring sitting propped forward on hands. **B,** Half-long sitting. **C,** Long sitting.

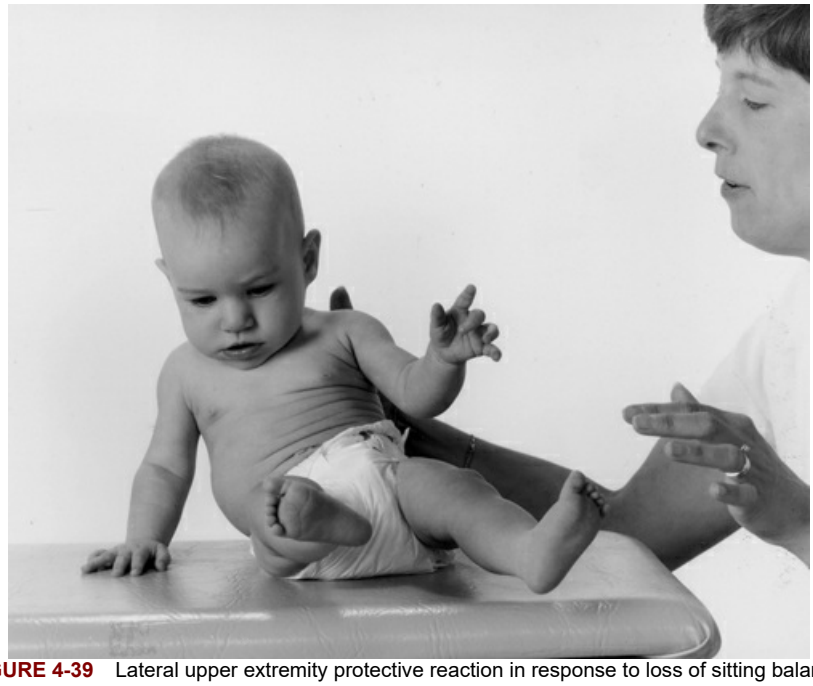


FIGURE 4-39 Lateral upper extremity protective reaction in response to loss of sitting balance.

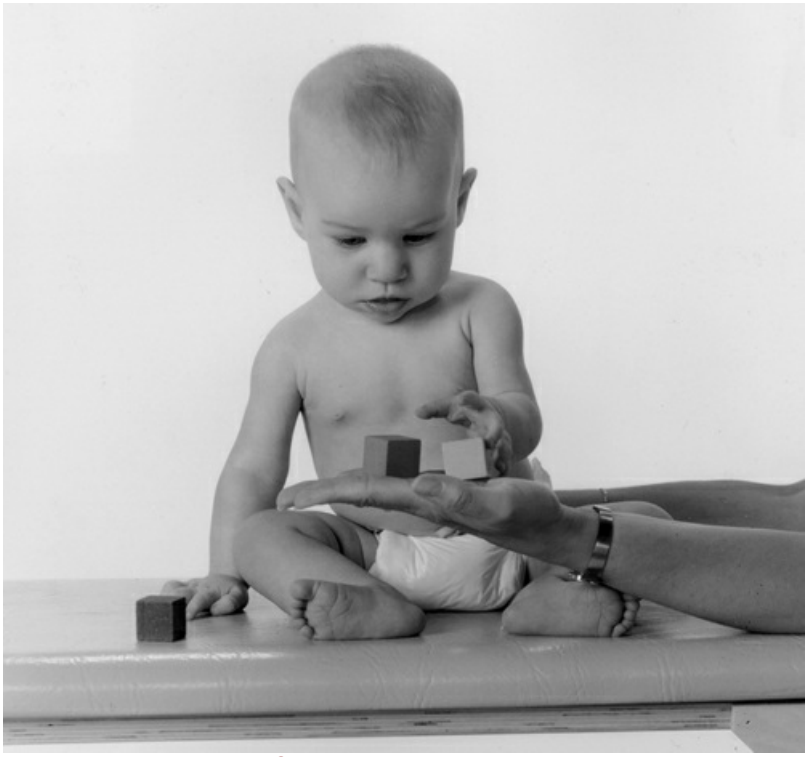


FIGURE 4-40 Unilateral reach.

Sitting is a functional and favorite position of the infant. Because the infant's back is straight, the hands are free to play with objects or extend and abduct to catch the infant if a loss of balance occurs, as happens less frequently at this age. Upper trunk rotation is demonstrated during play in sitting as the child reaches in all directions for toys (see Figure 4-38, *C*). If a toy is out of reach, the infant can prop on one arm and reach across the body to extend the reach using trunk rotation and reverse the rotation to return to upright sitting. With increased control of trunk rotation, the body moves more segmentally and less as a whole. This trend of dissociating upper trunk rotation from lower trunk movement began at 6 months with the beginning of segmental rotation. Dissociation of the arms from the trunk is seen as the arms move across the midline of the body. More external rotation is evident at the shoulder (turning the entire arm from palm down, to neutral, to palm up) and allows supinated reaching to be achieved. By 8 to 10 months, the infant's two hands are able to perform different functions such as holding a bottle in one hand while reaching for a toy with the other (Duff, 2002).

Eight Months

Now the infant can move into and out of sitting by deliberately pushing up from sidelying position. The child may bear weight on her hands and feet and may attempt to "walk" in this position *(bear walking)* after pushing herself backward while belly crawling. Some type of prewalking progression, such as belly crawling (Figure 4-41), creeping on hands and knees (see Figure 4-13), or sitting and hitching, is usually present by 8 months. Hitching in a sitting position is an alternative way for some children to move across the floor. The infant scoots on her bottom with or without hand support. We have already noted how pushing up on extended arms can be continued into pushing into sitting. Pushing can also be used for locomotion. Because pushing is easier than pulling, the first type of straight plane locomotion achieved by the infant in a prone position may be backward propulsion. Pulling is seen as strength increases in the upper back and shoulders. All this upper extremity work in a prone position is accompanied by random leg movements. These random leg movements may accidentally cause the legs to be pushed into extension with the toes flexed and may thus provide an extra boost forward. In trying to reproduce the accident, the infant begins to learn to belly crawl or creep forward.

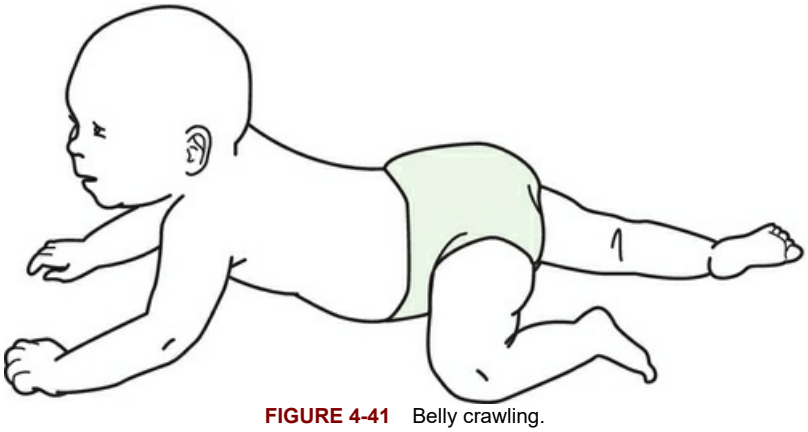


FIGURE 4-41 Belly crawling.

Nine Months

A 9-month-old is constantly changing positions, moving in and out of sitting (including side sitting) (Figure 4-42) and into the four-point position. As the infant experiments more and more with the four-point position, she rhythmically rocks back and forth and alternately puts her weight on her arms and legs. In this endeavor, the infant is aided by a new capacity for hip extension and flexion, other examples of the ability to dissociate movements of the pelvis from movements of the trunk. The hands-and-knees position, or quadruped position, is a less supported position requiring greater balance and trunk control. As trunk stability increases, simultaneous movement of an opposite arm and leg is possible while the infant maintains weight on the remaining two extremities. This form of reciprocal locomotion is called *creeping*. Creeping is often the primary means of locomotion for several months, even after the infant starts pulling to stand and cruising around furniture. Creeping provides fast and stable travel for the infant and allows for exploration of the environment. A small percentage (4.3%) of infants never creep on hands and knees according to the World Health Organization (2006).

FIGURE 4-42 Side sitting.

Reciprocal movements used in creeping require counterrotation of trunk segments; the shoulders rotate in one direction while the pelvis rotates in the opposite direction. Counterrotation is an important element of erect forward progression (walking), which comes later. Other major components needed for successful creeping are extension of the head, neck, back, and arms, and dissociation of arm and leg movements from the trunk. Extremity dissociation depends on the stability of the shoulder and pelvic girdles, respectively, and on their ability to control rotation in opposite directions. Children practice creeping about 5 hours a day and can cover the distance of two football fields (Adolph, 2003).

When playing in the quadruped position, the infant may reach out to the crib rail or furniture and may pull up to a kneeling position. Balance is maintained by holding on with the arms rather than by fully bearing the weight through the hips. The infant at this age does not have the control necessary to balance in a kneeling or half-kneeling (one foot forward) position. Even though kneeling and half-kneeling are used as transitions to pull to stand, only after learning to walk is such control possible for the toddler. Pulling to stand is a rapid movement transition with little time spent in either true knee standing or half-kneeling. Early standing consists of leaning against a support surface, such as the coffee table or couch, so the hands can be free to play. Legs tend to be abducted for a wider base of support, much like the struts of a tower. Knee position may vary between flexion and extension, and toes alternately claw the floor and flare upward in an attempt to assist balance. These foot responses are considered equilibrium reactions of the feet (Figure 4-43).

FIGURE 4-43 Equilibrium reactions of the feet. Baby learns balance in standing by delicate movements of the feet: "fanning" and "clawing." (Redrawn by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities*. New York, © 1978 Teachers College, Columbia University, p. 117. All rights reserved.)

Once the infant has achieved an upright posture at furniture, she practices weight shifting by moving from side to side. While in upright standing and before cruising begins in earnest, the infant practices dissociating arm and leg movements from the trunk by reaching out or backward with an arm while the leg is swung in the opposite direction. When side-to-side weight shift progresses to actual movement sideways, the baby is cruising. Cruising is done around furniture and between close pieces of furniture. This sideways "walking" is done with arm support and may be a means of working the hip abductors to ensure a level pelvis when forward ambulation is attempted. These maneuvers always make us think of a ballet dancer warming up at the barre before dancing. In this case, the infant is warming up, practicing counterrotation in a newly acquired posture, upright, before attempting to walk (Figure 4-44). Over the next several months, the infant will develop better pelvic-and-hip control to perfect upright standing before attempting independent ambulation.

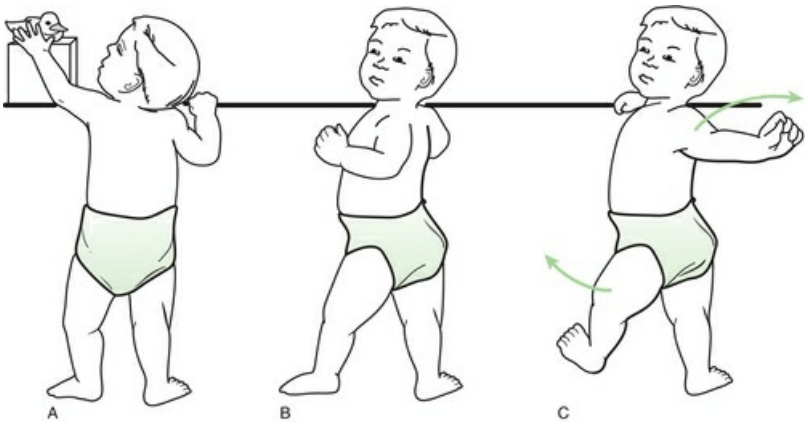


FIGURE 4-44 Cruising maneuvers. **A,** Cruising sideways, reaching out. **B,** Standing, rotating upper trunk backward. **C,** Standing, reaching out backward, elaborating with swinging movements of the same-side leg, thus producing counterrotation. (Redrawn by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities*. New York, © 1978 Teachers College, Columbia University, p. 121. All rights reserved.)

Toddler

Twelve Months

The infant becomes a toddler at 1 year. Most infants attempt forward locomotion by this age. The caregiver has probably already been holding the infant's hands and encouraging walking, if not placing the infant in a walker. Use of walkers continues to raise safety issues from pediatricians. The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recently reaffirmed their policy statement on injuries associated with walker use (AAP, 2012). Also, too early use of walkers does not allow the infant to sufficiently develop upper body and trunk strength needed for the progression of skills seen in the prone position. Typical first attempts at walking are lateral weight shifts from one widely abducted leg to the other (Figure 4-45). Arms are held in *high guard* (arms held high with the scapula adducted, shoulders in external rotation and abducted, elbows flexed, and wrist and fingers extended). This position results in strong extension of the upper back that makes up for the lack of hip extension. As an upright trunk is more easily maintained against gravity, the arms are lowered to *midguard* (hands at waist level, shoulders still externally rotated), to *low guard* (shoulders more neutral, elbows extended), and finally to no guard.

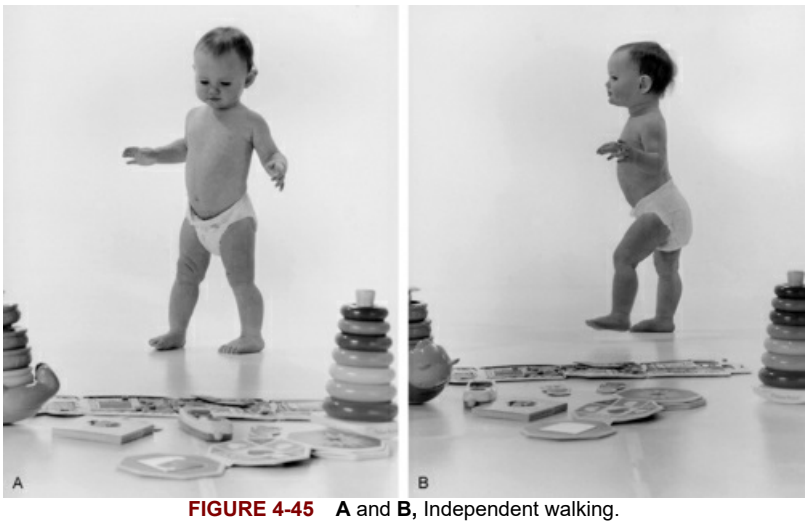


FIGURE 4-45 **A** and **B,** Independent walking.

The beginning walker keeps her hips and knees slightly flexed to bring the center of mass closer to the ground. Weight shifts are from side to side as the toddler moves forward by total lower

extremity flexion, with the hip joints remaining externally rotated during the gait cycle. Ankle movements are minimal, with the foot pronated as the whole foot contacts the ground. Toddlers take many small steps and walk slowly. The instability of their gait is seen in the short amount of time they spend in single-limb stance (Martin, 1989). As trunk stability improves, the legs come farther under the pelvis. As the hips and knees become more extended, the feet develop the plantar flexion needed for the push-off phase of the gait cycle.

Sixteen to Eighteen Months

By 16 to 17 months, the toddler is so much at ease with walking that a toy can be carried or pulled at the same time. With help, the toddler goes up and down the stairs, one step at a time. Without help, the toddler creeps up the stairs and may creep or scoot down on her buttocks. Most children will be able to walk sideways and backward at this age if they started walking at 12 months or earlier. The typically developing toddler comes to stand from a supine position by rolling to prone, pushing up on hands and knees or hands and feet, assuming a squat, and rising to standing (Figure 4-46).

FIGURE 4-46 Progression of rising to standing from supine. **A,** Supine. **B,** Rolling. **C,** Four-point position. **D,** Plantigrade. **E,** Squat. **F,** Semi-squat. **G,** Standing.

Most toddlers exhibit a reciprocal arm swing and heel strike by 18 months of age, with other adult gait characteristics manifested later. They walk well and demonstrate a "running-like" walk. Although the toddler may still occasionally fall or trip over objects in her path because eye-foot coordination is not completely developed, the decline in falls appears to be the result of improved balance reactions in standing and the ability to monitor trunk and lower extremity movements kinesthetically and visually. The first signs of jumping appear as a stepping off "jump" from a low object, such as the bottom step of a set of stairs. Children are ready for this first step-down jump after being able to walk down a step while they hold the hand of an adult (Wickstrom, 1983). Momentary balance on one foot is also possible.

Two Years

The 2-year-old's gait becomes faster, arms swing reciprocally, steps are bigger, and time spent in single-limb stance increases. Many additional motor skills emerge during this year. A 2-year-old can go up and down stairs one step at a time, jump off a step with a two-foot take-off, kick a large ball, and throw a small one. Stair climbing and kicking indicate improved stability during shifting of body weight from one leg to the other. Stepping over low objects is also part of the child's movement capabilities within the environment. True running, characterized by a "flight" phase when both feet are off the ground, emerges at the same time. Quickly starting to run and stopping from a run are still difficult, and directional changes by making a turn require a large area. As the child first attempts to jump off the ground, one foot leaves the ground, followed by the other foot, as if the child were stepping in air.

Fundamental Movement Patterns (Three to Six Years)

Three Years

Fundamental motor patterns such as hopping, galloping, and skipping develop from 3 to 6 years of age. Wickstrom (1983) also includes running, jumping, throwing, catching, and striking in this category. Other reciprocal actions mastered by age 3 are pedaling a tricycle and climbing a jungle gym or ladder. Locomotion can be started and stopped based on the demands from the environment or from a task such as playing dodge ball on a crowded playground. A 3-year-old child can make sharp turns while running and can balance on toes and heels in standing. Standing with one foot in front of the other, known as tandem standing, is possible, as is standing on one foot for at least 3 seconds. A reciprocal gait is now used to ascend stairs with the child placing one foot on each step in alternating fashion but marking time (one step at a time) when descending.

Jumping begins with a step-down jump at 18 months and progresses to jumping up off the floor with two feet at the same time at age 2. Jumps can start with a one-foot or two-foot take-off. The two-foot take-off and land is more mature. Jumps can involve running then jumping as in a running broad jump or jumping from standing still, as in a standing broad jump. Jumping has many forms and is part of play or game activities. Jumping ability increases with age.

Hopping on one foot is a special type of jump requiring balance on one foot and the ability to push off the loaded foot. It does not require a maximum effort. "Repeated vertical jumps from 2 feet can be done before true hopping can occur" (Wickstrom, 1983) (see Figure 4-47). Neither type of jump is seen at an early age. Hopping one or two times on the preferred foot may also be accomplished by 3½ years when there is the ability to stand on one foot and balance long enough to push off on the loaded foot. A 4-year-old child should be able to hop on one foot four to six times. Improved hopping ability is seen when the child learns to use the nonstance leg to help propel the body forward. Before that time, all the work is done by pushing off with the support foot. A similar pattern is seen in arm use; at first, the arms are inactive; later, they are used opposite the action of the moving leg. Gender differences for hopping are documented in the literature, with girls performing better than boys (Wickstrom, 1983). This may be related to the fact that girls appear to have better balance than boys in childhood.

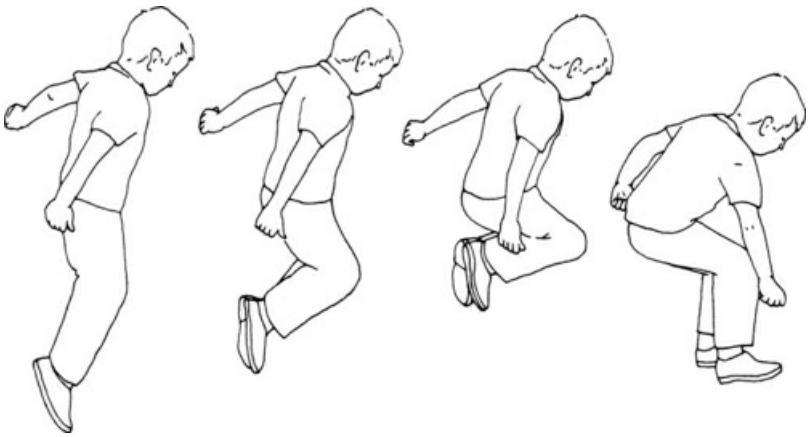


FIGURE 4-47 Vertical jump. Immature form in the vertical jump showing "winging" arm action, incomplete extension, quick flexion of the legs, and slight forward jump. (From Wickstrom RL: *Fundamental motor patterns*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1983, Lea & Febiger.)

Four Years

Rhythmic relaxed galloping is possible for a 4-year-old child. Galloping consists of a walk on the lead leg followed by a running step on the rear leg. Galloping is an asymmetrical gait. A good way to visualize galloping is to think of a child riding a stick horse. Toddlers have been documented to gallop as early as 20 months after learning to walk (Whitall, 1989), but the movement is stiff with arms held in high guard as in beginning walking. A 4-year-old has better static and dynamic balance as evidenced by the ability to stand on either foot for a longer period of time (4 to 6 seconds) than a 3-year-old. Now she can descend stairs with alternating feet.

Four-year-olds can catch a small ball with outstretched arms if it is thrown to them, and they can throw a ball overhand from some distance. Throwing begins with an accidental letting go of an object at about 18 months of age. From 2 to 4 years of age, throwing is extremely variable, with underhand and overhand throwing observed. Gender differences are seen. A child of 2½ years can throw a large or small ball 5 feet (Figure 4-48 and Table 4-7) (Wellman, 1967). The ball is not thrown more than 10 feet until the child is more than 4 years of age. The distance a child is able to propel an object has been related to a child's height, as seen in Figure 4-49 (Cratty, 1979). Development of more mature throwing is related to using the force of the body and combination of leg and shoulder movements to improve performance.

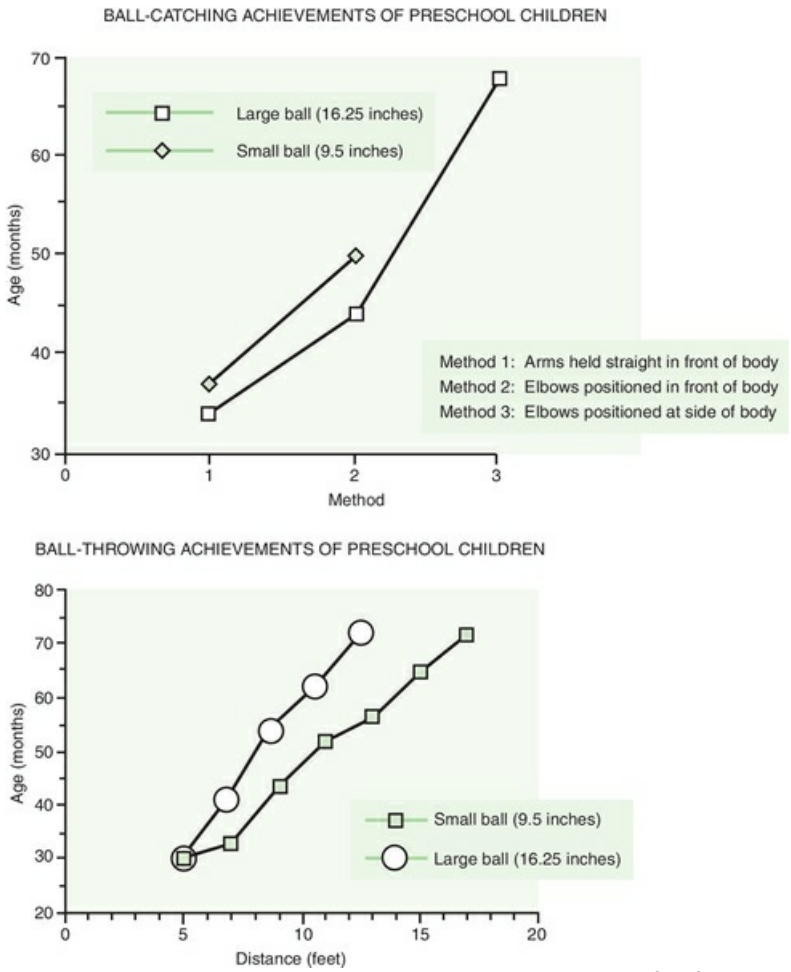


FIGURE 4-48 Wellman graphs. **A,** Ball-catching skill is attained at a certain level of performance with the large ball before the same level of skill is achieved with the small ball. **B,** At 30 months, a small or large ball can be thrown 5 feet. It will take 10 more months for the child to be able to throw the large ball the same distance as the small ball. (Redrawn from Espanschade AS, Eckert HM: *Motor development*, Columbus, OH, 1967, Charles E. Merrill.)

Table 4-7

Ball-Throwing Achievements of Preschool Children

	Motor Age in Months	
Distance of Throw (feet)	Small Ball (9½ inch)	Large Ball (16¼ inch)
4–5	30	30
6–7	33	43
8–9	44	43
10–11	52	63
12–13	57	Above 72
14–15	65	
16–17	Above 72	

From Wellman BL: Motor achievements of preschool children. *Child Educ* 13:311–316, 1937. Reprinted by permission of the Association for Childhood Education International, 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC.

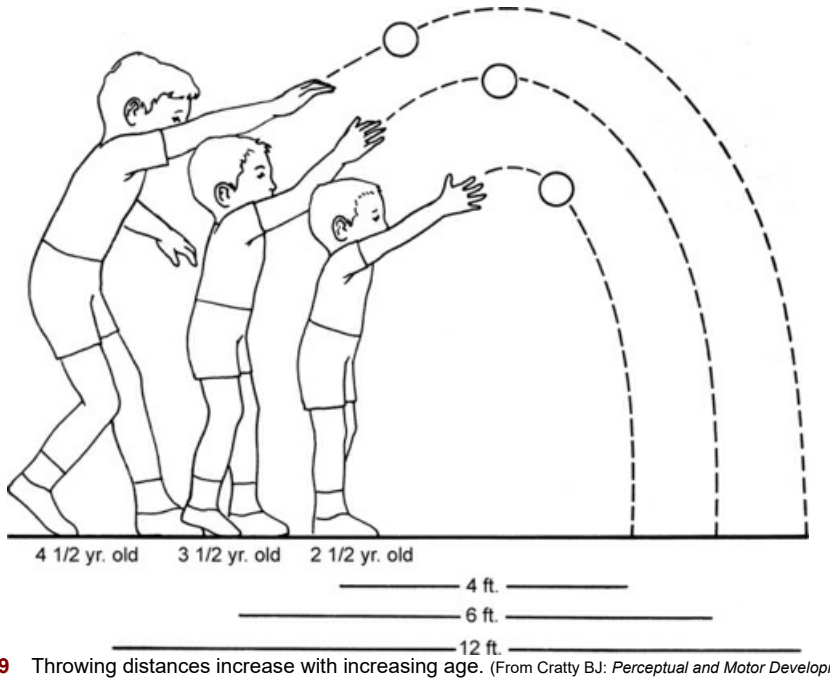


FIGURE 4-49 Throwing distances increase with increasing age. (From Cratty BJ: *Perceptual and Motor Development in Infants and Children*, ed 2. © 1979 Prentice Hall. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.)

"Although throwing and catching have a close functional relationship, throwing is learned a lot more quickly than catching" (Wickstrom, 1977). Catching ability depends on many variables, the

least of which is ball size, speed, arm position of the catcher, skill of the thrower, and age-related sensory and perceptual factors. Some of these perceptual factors involve the use of visual cues, depth perception, eye-hand coordination, and the amount of experience the catcher has had with playing with balls. Closing the eyes when an object is thrown toward one is a fear response common in children (Wickstrom, 1977) and has to be overcome to learn to catch or strike an object.

Precatching requires the child to interact with a rolling ball. Such interaction typically occurs while the child sits with legs outstretched and tries to trap the ball with legs or hands. Children learn about time and spatial relationships of moving objects first from a seated position and later in standing when chasing after a rolling or bouncing ball. The child tries to stop, intercept, and otherwise control her movements and to anticipate the movement of the object in space. Next, the child attempts to "catch" an object moving through the air. Before reaching age 3, most children must have their arms prepositioned to have any chance of catching a ball thrown to them. Most of the time, the thrower, who is an adult, bounces the ball to the child, so the burden is on the thrower to calculate where the ball must bounce to land in the child's outstretched arms. Figures 4-50 and 4-51 show two immature catchers, one 33 months old and the other 48 months old. As catching matures, the hands are used more, with less dependence on the arms and body. The 4-year-old still has maturing to do in perfecting the skill of catching.

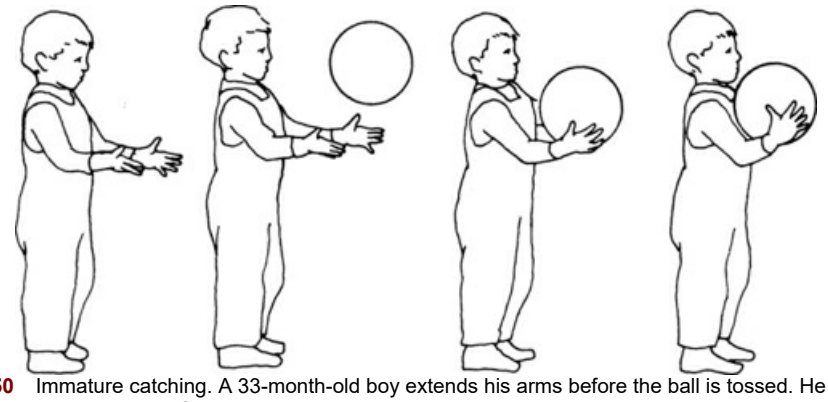


FIGURE 4-50 Immature catching. A 33-month-old boy extends his arms before the ball is tossed. He waits for the ball without moving, responds after the ball has touched his hands, and then gently traps the ball against his chest. It is essentially a robot-like performance. (From Wickstrom RL: *Fundamental motor patterns*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1983, Lea & Febiger.)

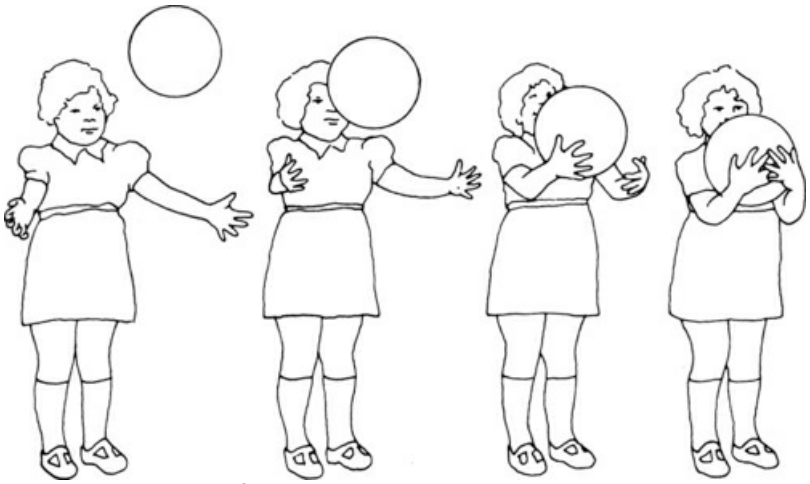


FIGURE 4-51 A 4-year-old girl waits for the ball with arms straight and hands spread. Her initial response to the ball is a clapping motion. When one hands contacts the ball, she grasps at it and gains control by clutching it against her chest. (From Wickstrom RL: *Fundamental motor patterns*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1983, Lea & Febiger.)

Striking is the act of swinging and hitting an object. Developmentally, the earliest form of striking is for the child to use arm extension to hit something with her hand. When a child holds an

implement, such as a stick or a bat, she continues to use this form of movement, which results in striking down the object. 2- to 4-year-olds demonstrate this immature striking behavior. Common patterns of striking are overhand, sidearm, and underhand. Without any special help, the child will progress slowly to striking more horizontally. Mature form of striking is usually not demonstrated until at least 6 years of age (Malina et al., 2004). As the child progresses from striking down to a more horizontal striking (sidearm), more and more trunk rotation is seen as the child's swing matures (Roberton and Halverson, 1977). A mature pattern of striking consists of taking a step, turning away, and then swinging (step-turn-swing) (Wickstrom, 1983).

Kicking is a special type of striking and one in which the arms play no direct role. Children most frequently kick a ball in spontaneous play and in organized games. A 2-year-old is able to kick a ball on the ground. A child of 5 years is expected to kick a ball rolled toward her 12 feet in the air, and a child of 6 years is expected to run and kick a rolling ball up to 4 feet (Folio and Fewell, 2000). Gesell (1940) expected a 5-year-old to kick a soccer ball up to 8 to 11½ feet and a 6-year-old to be able to kick a ball up to 10 to 18 feet. Measuring performance in kicking is difficult before the age of 4 years. Annual improvements begin to be seen at the age of 5 years (Gesell, 1940). Kicking requires good static balance on the stance foot and counterbalancing the force of the kick with arm positioning.

Five Years

At 5 years of age, a child can stand on either foot for 8 to 10 seconds, walk forward on a balance beam, hop 8 to 10 times on one foot, make a 2- to 3-foot standing broad jump, and skip on alternating feet. Skipping requires bilateral coordination. At this age, the child can change directions and stop quickly while running. She can ride a bike, roller-skate, and hit a target with a ball from 5 feet away.

Six Years

A 6-year-old child is well-coordinated and can stand on one foot for more than 10 seconds, with eyes open or eyes closed. This ability is important to note because it indicates that vision can be ignored and balance can be maintained. A 6-year-old can throw and catch a small ball from 10 feet away. A first grader can walk on a balance beam on the floor, forward, backwards, and sideways without stepping off. She continues to enjoy and use alternate forms of locomotion, such as riding a bicycle or roller-skating. Patterns of movement learned in game-playing form the basis for later sports skills. Throughout the process of changing motor activities and skills, the nervous, muscular, and skeletal systems are maturing, and the body is growing in height and weight. Power develops slowly in children because strength and speed within a specific movement pattern are required (Bernhardt-Bainbridge, 2006).

Fundamental motor skills demonstrate changes in form over time. Between 6 and 10 years of age, a child masters the adult forms of running, throwing, and catching. Figure 4-52 depicts when 60% of children were able to demonstrate a certain developmental level for the listed fundamental motor skills. Stage 1 is an immature form of the movement, and stage 4 or 5 represents the mature form of the same movement. A marked gender difference is apparent in overhand throwing. It is not uncommon to see young children demonstrate a mature pattern of movement at one age and a less mature pattern at a later age. Regression of patterns is possible when the child is attempting to combine skills. For example, a child who can throw overhand while standing may revert to underhand throwing when running. Alterations between mature and immature movement is in line with Gesell's concept of reciprocal interweaving. Individual variation in motor development is considerable during childhood. Even though 60% of children have achieved the fundamental motor skills as listed in Figure 4-52, 40% of the children have not achieved them by the ages given.

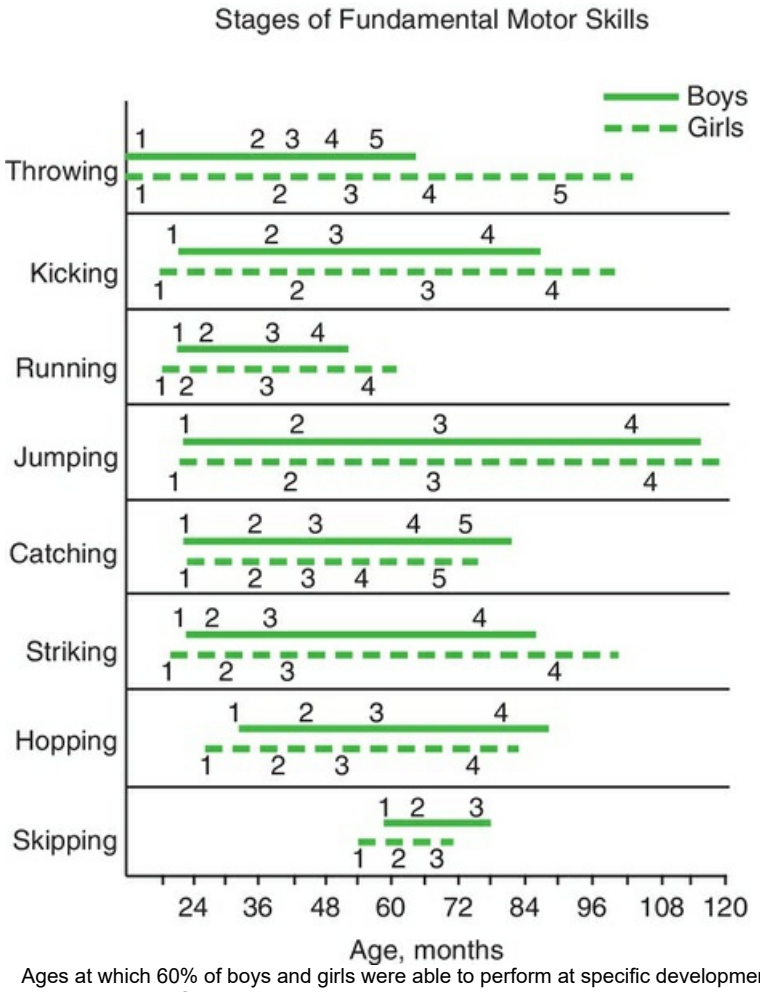


FIGURE 4-52 Ages at which 60% of boys and girls were able to perform at specific developmental levels for several fundamental motor skills. Stage 1 is immature; stage 4 or 5 is mature. (Reprinted by permission from Seefledt V, Haubenstricker J: Patterns, phases, or stages: An analytical model for the study of developmental movement. In Kelso JAS, Clark JE, editors: *The development of movement control and coordination*, 1982, p. 314.)

Gait

The majority of children begin walking at the end of the first year of life but it takes years for the child to exhibit mature gait characteristics. Factors associated with the achievement of upright gait are sufficient extensor muscle strength, dynamic balance, and postural control of the head within the limits of stability of the base of support. A new walker's movement is judged by how long she has been walking, not by the age at the onset of the skill. After about 5 months of walking practice, the infant is able to exhibit an inverted pendulum mechanism that makes walking more efficient (Ivanenko et al., 2007). With practice, the duration of single limb support increases and the period of double limb support declines. Arm swing and heel strike are present by 2 years of age (Sutherland et al., 1988). Out-toeing has been reduced and pelvic rotation and a double knee–lock pattern are present. This pattern refers to the two periods of knee extension in gait, one just before heel strike and another as the body moves over the foot during stance phase. In between, at the moment of heel strike, the knee is flexed to help absorb the impact of the body's weight. Cadence decreases as stride length increases.

Gait velocity almost doubles between 1 and 7 years, and the pelvic span to ankle spread span ratio increases. The latter gait lab measurement indicates that the base of support narrows over time. Rapid changes in temporal and spatial gait parameters occur during the first 4 years of life with slower changes continuing until 7 years when gait is considered mature by motion standards (Stout, 2001). Experience and practice play a significant role in gait development.

Age-Related Differences in Movement Patterns beyond Childhood

Many developmentalists have chosen to look only at the earliest ages of life when motor abilities and skills are being acquired. The belief that mature motor behavior is achieved by childhood led researchers to overlook the possibility that movement could change as a result of factors other than nervous system maturation. Although the nervous system is generally thought to be mature by the age of 10 years, changes in movement patterns do occur in adolescence and adulthood.

Research shows a developmental order of movement patterns across childhood and adolescence with trends toward increasing symmetry with increasing age (Sabourin, 1989; VanSant, 1988a). VanSant (1988b) identified three common ways in which adults came to stand. These are shown in Figure 4-53. The most common pattern was to use upper extremity reach, symmetrical push, forward head, neck and trunk flexion, and a symmetrical squat (see Figure 4-53, *A*). The second most common way was identical to the first pattern up to an asymmetrical squat (see Figure 4-53, *B*). The next most common way involved an asymmetrical push and reach, followed by a half-kneel (see Figure 4-53, *C*). In a separate study of adults in their 20s through 40s, there was a trend toward increasing asymmetry with age (Ford-Smith and VanSant, 1993). Adults in their 40s were more likely to demonstrate the asymmetric patterns of movement seen in young children (VanSant, 1991). The asymmetry of movement in the older adult may reflect less trunk rotation resulting from stiffening of joints or lessening of muscle strength, factors that make it more difficult to come straight forward to sitting from a supine position.

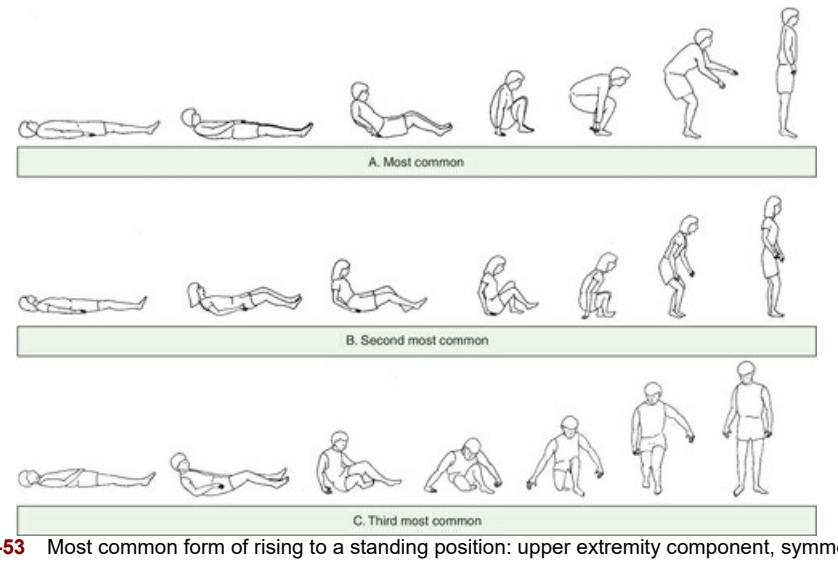


FIGURE 4-53 Most common form of rising to a standing position: upper extremity component, symmetric push; axial component, symmetric; lower extremity component, symmetric squat. (Reprinted from VanSant AF: Rising from a supine position to erect stance: Description of adult movement and a developmental hypothesis. *Phys Ther* 68:185–192, 1988. With permission of the APTA.)

Thomas and colleagues (1998) studied movement from a supine position to standing in older adults using VanSant's descriptive approach. In a group of community-dwelling elders with a mean age of 74.6 years, the 70- and 80-year-old adults were more likely to use asymmetrical patterns of movement in the upper extremity and trunk regions, whereas those younger than 70 showed more symmetrical patterns in the same body regions. Furthermore, researchers found a shorter time to rise was related to a younger age, greater knee extension strength, and greater hip and ankle range of motion (flexion and dorsiflexion, respectively). However, older adults who maintain their strength and flexibility rise to standing faster and more symmetrically than do those who are less strong and flexible.

Although the structures of the body are mature at the end of puberty, changes in movement patterns continue throughout a person's entire life. Mature movement patterns have always been associated with efficiency and symmetry. Early in motor development, patterns of movement appear to be more homogenous and follow a fairly prescribed developmental sequence. As a person matures, movement patterns become more symmetric. With aging, movement patterns become more asymmetric. Because an older adult may exhibit different ways of moving from supine to standing than a younger person, treatment interventions should be taught that match the

individual's usual patterns of movement.

Posture, balance, and gait changes with aging

Posture

The ability to maintain an erect aligned posture declines with advanced age. Figure 4-54 shows the difference in posture anticipated with typical aging. The secondary curves developed in infancy begin to be modified. The cervical curve decreases. The lumbar curve usually flattens. Being sedentary can accentuate age-related postural changes. The older adult who sits all day may be at greater risk for a flattened low back. The thoracic spine becomes more kyphotic. Aging alters the properties and relative amount of connective tissue in the interior of the intervertebral disc (Zhao et al., 2007). The discs lose water, and initially, flexible connective tissue stiffens, causing older adults to lose spinal flexibility. The strength of the muscles declines with age and could contribute to a decline in the maintenance of postural alignment in the older adult.

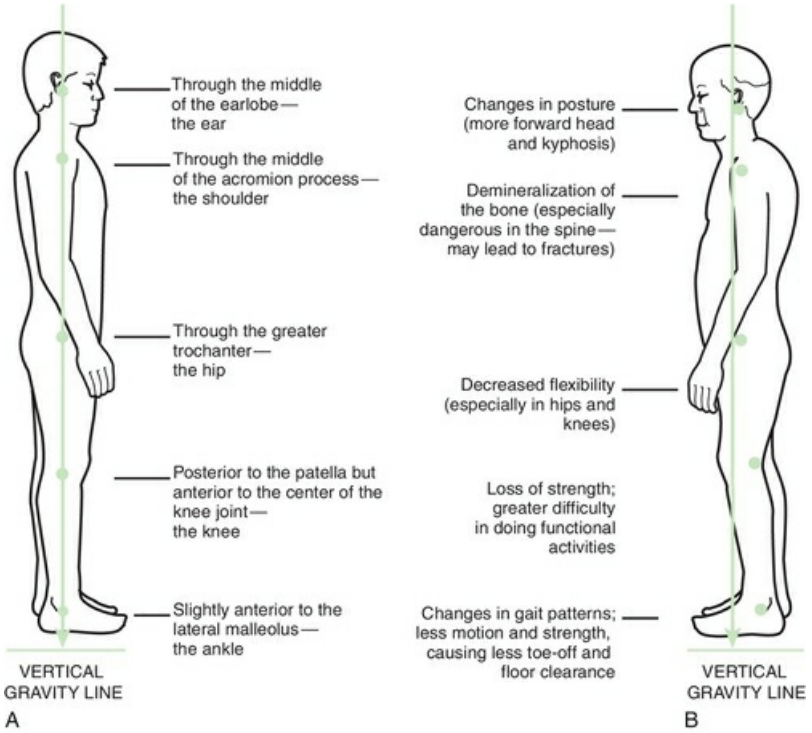


FIGURE 4-54 Comparison of standing posture: changes associated with age. **A,** Younger person. **B,** Older person. (Modified from Lewis C, editor *Aging: the health care challenge*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1990, FA Davis.)

Balance

Older adults can have major problems with balance and falling. However, whether a person's ability to balance while standing and walking always declines with age is still undecided. Sensory information from the three sensory systems (visual, vestibular, and somatosensory) responsible for posture and balance undergo age-related changes. These changes can impair the older adult's ability to respond quickly to changes within the internal and external environments. A decline in structural integrity of these sensory receptors decreases the quality of the information relayed. The actual number of receptors also decreases. Awareness of vibration is lessened in the elderly and has been related to an increase in postural sway during quiet stance. The visual system is less able to pick up contours and depth cues because of a decline in contrast sensitivity. Age-related declines in visual acuity, depth perception, peripheral vision, and ability to adapt to changes in lighted or dark environments can significantly affect an older person's ability to detect threats to balance. Removal of visual information during balance testing in the elderly has been shown to increase postural sway (Lord et al., 1991). Scovil et al. (2008) found that stored visuospatial information from the

environment is needed for planning and executing a stepping reaction.

The sway that typically occurs during quiet standing is increased in older adults compared to younger adults (Maki and McIlroy, 1996; Sturnieks et al., 2008). Larger sway in older adults has been correlated with lower extremity strength and changes in sensory function but no cause-and-effect relationship has been elucidated. Older individuals rely on vision more than somatosensation and respond to loss of visual input by standing more asymmetrically or swaying even more.

Gait in the Older Adult

Numerous changes in gait can be expected to occur in an older population. Generally, the older adult is more cautious while walking. Cadence and velocity are decreased, as is stride length. Stride width increases to provide a wider base of support for better balance. Increasing the base of support and taking shorter steps means that an older adult spends more time in double limb support than a young adult. Walking velocity slows as stride length decreases, and double-support time increases. Double-support time reflects how much time is spent with both feet on the ground. Step initiation is delayed with a prolongation of the time it takes to transfer weight to the forward foot. Older adults shift more weight toward the support limb than younger adults which represents a conservative strategy. Older adults have problems coordinating postural responses to leg movements (Hanke and Martin, 2012).

Age-related changes in gait can create difficulties in other aspects of functional movement, such as stepping over objects and going up and down stairs. Chen et al. (1991) found that healthy older adults had more difficulty than healthy young adults in stepping over obstacles of increasing heights. In a recent systematic review, Galna et al. (2009) found that older adults adopt a conservative obstacle-crossing strategy, which involved greater hip flexion during swing phase for both the lead and trail limbs. When constrained by performing crossing an obstacle under timed conditions, the older adults were at greater risk for contacting the objects. Harley et al. (2009) found that under dual task conditions, increased cognitive demands lead to compromised safety and more variability in foot placement when stepping over obstacles. Stair climbing requires a period of single-limb stance while the swing leg is lifted up to the next step. Given the changes in gait with age already described, it is no surprise that older adults go up and down stairs more slowly. Challenging gait conditions have been used to predict a 1-year decline in gait speed in older adults who had normal gait speeds at initial testing (Brach et al., 2011).

Implications for Treatment

Age-related losses of range of motion, strength, and balance can be compounded in the older adult by a lack of habitual physical activity and can be intensified in the presence of neurologic deficits resulting from a stroke, spinal cord injury, or traumatic brain injury. The good news is that the decline in muscular strength and endurance can be partially reversed with an appropriate amount of resistive and endurance exercise. Precautions must always be considered in light of other preexisting disorders that would require modification of therapeutic intervention. The physical therapist is responsible for accurately documenting the patient's present level of abilities, recognizing mitigating circumstances, and planning appropriate therapeutic interventions. The therapist should instruct the physical therapist assistant in how the patient's exercise response should be monitored during treatment. If this information is not provided, the physical therapist assistant should request the information before treatment is initiated.

When the patient with a neurologic insult also has pulmonary or cardiac conditions, the physical therapist assistant should monitor the patient's vital signs during exercise. Decline in cardiopulmonary reserve capacity resulting from age can be compounded by a loss of fitness and loss of conditioning. A person who is in the hospital may be extremely deconditioned or become deconditioned. As the patient is being mobilized and acclimated to the upright position in preparation for discharge, the decline in physiologic reserve can affect the patient's ability to perform normal activities of daily living. Walking can require up to 40% of the oxygen taken in by an individual. Therefore, an older person may need to slow down the speed of walking depending on how much oxygen taken in is available. Measurements of heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory rate are important, providing the supervising therapist with information about the patient's response to exercise. More specific monitoring of oxygen saturation, rate of perceived exertion, level of dyspnea (shortness of breath), or angina may be indicated by the supervising

physical therapist, but further discussion of these methods is beyond the scope of this text. The complexity and acuity of the patient's condition may warrant limiting the involvement of the physical therapist assistant.

Chapter summary

Age and age-related changes in the structure and function of different body systems can significantly alter the functional movement expectations for any given individual. Functional tasks are defined by the age of the individual. An infant's function is to overcome gravity and learn to move into the upright position. The toddler explores the world in the upright position and adds fundamental movement patterns of running, hopping, and skipping during childhood. Manipulation of objects is continually refined from finger feeding cereal to learning to write. Self-care skills are mastered by the time a child enters school. Sport skills build on the fundamental movement patterns and are important in childhood and adolescence. Work and leisure skills become important during late adolescence and adulthood. Every period of the life span has different functional movement expectations. The movement expectations are driven by the mover, the task, and the social and physical environments.

Review questions

1. What are the characteristics that identify a developmental theory as being life span in approach?
2. What theorist described a pyramid of needs that the individual strives to fulfill?
3. What is an example of a directional concept of development?
4. What three processes guide motor development?
5. When does a child typically achieve gross- and fine-motor milestones?
6. What are the typical postures and movements of a 4-month-old and a 6-month-old?
7. What motor abilities constitute fundamental motor patterns?
8. Why do motor patterns continue to change throughout the life span?
9. What role does decreased activity play in an older adult's posture?
10. What gait changes can have an impact on functional abilities in older adults?

References

Adolph K: Advances in research on infant motor development. Paper presented at APTA Combined Sections Meeting 2003, Tampa, FL.

American Academy of Pediatrics. Committee on injury and poison prevention: injuries associated with infant walkers. *Pediatrics.* 2012;129:e561.

Anderson DI, Campos JJ, Rivera M, et al. The consequences of independent locomotion for brain and psychological development. In: Shepherd RB, ed. *Cerebral palsy in infancy.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 2014:199–224.

Andreatta R. *Lecture on dynamic and selectionist principles in perception-action.* Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky; October 2006.

Arnett JJ. Emerging adulthood: a theory of development from the late teens through the twenties. *Am Psychol.* 2000;55:469–480.

Arnett JJ. *Emerging adulthood: the winding road from the late teens through the twenties.* New York: Oxford University Press; 2004.

Arnett JJ. Suffering, selfish, slackers? Myths and reality about emerging adults. *J Youth Adol.* 2007;36:23–29.

Atchley RC, Barusch. *Social forces and aging.* ed 10 Belmont, CA: Wadsworth; 2004.

Baltes PB. Theoretical propositions of life-span developmental psychology: on the dynamics between growth and decline. *Dev Psychol.* 1987;23:611–626.

Baltes PB, Lindenburger U, Staudinger UM. Life span theory in developmental psychology. In: Damon W, Lerner RM, eds. *Handbook of child psychology.* ed 6 New York: Wiley & Sons; 2006:569–664.

Barsalou LW. Grounded cognition: past, present, and future. *Top Cog Sci.* 2010;2:716–724.

Bayley N. *Bayley scales of infant and toddler development.* ed 3 San Antonio, TX: Pearson; 2005.

Bernhardt-Bainbridge D. Sports injuries in children. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 3 St. Louis: Saunders; 2006:517–556.

Bly L. *Components of normal movement during the first year of life and abnormal development.* Chicago: Neurodevelopmental Treatment Association; 1983.

Brach JS, Perera S, VanSwearingen JM, Hiles ES, Wert DM, Studenski SA. Challenging gait conditions predict 1-year decline in gait speed in older adults with apparently normal gait. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91:1857–1864.

Campbell SK. Revolution in progress: a conceptual framework for examination and intervention. Part II. *Neurol Rep.* 2000;24:42–46.

Capute AJ, Shapiro B.k., Palmer FB, et al. Normal gross motor development: the influences of race, sex, and socio-economic status. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1985;27:635–643.

Carter B, McGoldrick M. *Expanded family life cycle: individual, family, and social perspectives.* ed 3 Boston: Allyn and Bacon; 2005.

Chen HC, Ashton-Miller JA, Alexander NB, et al. Stepping over obstacles: gait patterns of healthy young and old adults. *J Gerontol.* 1991;46:M196–M203.

Chiarello LA. Family-centered care. In: Effgen SK, ed. *Meeting the physical therapy needs of children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2013:153–180.

Choudhury S, Charman T, Bird V, Blakemore S. Development of action representation during adolescence. *Neuropsychologia.* 2007;45:255–262.

Cratty BJ. *Perceptual and motor development in infants and children.* ed 2 Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall; 1979.

Diamond A. Close interrelation of motor development and cognitive development and of the cerebellum and the prefrontal cortex. *Child Dev.* 2000;71:44–56.

Duff SV. Prehension. In: Cech D, Martin S, eds. *Functional movement development across the life span.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2002:313–353.

Duff SV. Prehension. In: Cech D, Martin S, eds. *Functional movement development across the life span.* ed 3 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2012:309–334.

Dusing SC, Harbourne RT. Variability in postural control during infancy: implications for development, assessment, and intervention. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:1838–1849.

Edelman GM. *Neural darwinism.* New York: Basic Books; 1987.

Eishima K. The analysis of sucking behaviour in newborn infants. *Early Hum Dev.*

1991;27:163–173.
Erikson EH. *Identity, youth, and crisis.* New York: W.W. Norton; 1968.
Folio M, Fewell R. *Peabody developmental motor scales.* ed 2 Austin, TX: Pro-Ed; 2000.
Ford-Smith CD, VanSant AF. Age differences in movement patterns used to rise from a bed in the third through fifth decades of age. *Phys Ther.* 1993;73:300–307.
Gabbard C. Studying action representation in children via motor imagery. *Brain Cog.* 2009;71:234–239.
Gabbard C, Cacola P, Bobbio T. The ability to mentally represent action is associated with low motor ability in children: a preliminary investigation. *Child Care Health Dev.* 2012;38:390–393.
Galna B, Peters A, Murphy AT, Morris ME. Obstacle crossing deficits in older adults: a systematic review. *Gait Posture.* 2009;30:270–275.
Gesell A. *The first five years of life.* New York: Harper & Brothers; 1940.
Gesell A, Ames LB, et al. *Infant and child in the culture of today.* rev New York: Harper & Row; 1974.
Gibson JJ. *The senses as perceptual systems.* Boston: Houghton-Mifflin; 1966.
Gibson EJ. *The ecological approach to visual perception.* Boston: Houghton-Mifflin; 1979.
Hack M, Faneroff AA. Outcomes of children of extremely low birthweight and gestational age in the 1990s. *Semin Neonatal.* 2000;5:89–106.
Hadders-Algra M. Variation and variability: key words in human motor development. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:1823–1837.
Hadders-Algra M, Brogren E, Forssberg H. Ontogeny of postural adjustments during sitting in infancy: variation, selection, and modulation. *J Physiol.* 1996;493:273–288.
Hanke T, Martin S. Posture and balance. In: Cech D, Martin S, eds. *Functional movement across the life span.* ed 3 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2012:263–287.
Harley C, Wilkie RM, Wann JP. Stepping over obstacles: attention demands and aging. *Gait Posture.* 2009;29:428–432.
Havinghurst RJ. *Developmental tasks and education.* ed 3 New York: David McKay; 1972.
Hedburg A, Carlberg EB, Forssberg H, Hadders-Algra M. Development of postural adjustments in sitting position during the first half year of life. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2005;47:312–320.
Ivanenko YP, Dominici N, Lacquaniti F. Development of independent walking in toddlers. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev.* 2007;35:67–73.
Levinson DJ. A conception of adult development. *Am Psychol.* 1986;41:3–13.
Lobo MA, Galloway JC. Enhanced handling and positioning in early infancy advances development throughout the first year. *Child Dev.* 2012;83:1290–1302.
Lobo MA, Harbourne RT, Dusing SC, McCoy SW. Grounding early intervention: physical therapy cannot be about motor skills anymore. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93:94–103.
Lord SR, Clark RD, Webster IW. Visual acuity and contrast sensitivity in relation to falls in an elderly population. *Age Ageing.* 1991;20:175–181.
Maki BE, McIlroy WE. Postural control in the older adult. *Clin Geriatr Med.* 1996;12:635–658.
Malina RM, Bouchard C, Bar-Or O. *Growth, maturation, and physical activity.* ed 2 Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics Books; 2004.
Martin T. Normal development of movement and function: neonate, infant, and toddler. In: Scully RM, Barnes MR, eds. *Physical therapy.* Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1989:63–82.
Maslow A. *Motivation and personality.* New York: Harper & Row; 1954.
Meyers AW, Whelan JP, Murphy SM. Cognitive behavioral strategies in athletic performance enhancement. *Prog Behav Modif.* 1996;30:137–164.
Molina M, Tijus C, Jouen F. The emergence of motor imagery in children. *J Exp Child Psych.* 2008;99:196–209.
Piaget J. *Origins of intelligence.* New York: International University Press; 1952.
Piek JP, Dawson L, Smith LM, Gasson N. The role of early and fine and gross motor development on later motor and cognitive ability. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2008;27:668–681.
Pitcher JB, Schneider LA, Drysdale JL, et al. Motor system development of the preterm and low birthweight infant. *Clin Perinatol.* 2011;38:605–625.
Purtilo R, Haddad AM. *Health professional and patient interaction.* ed 7 St. Louis: Saunders; 2007.
Roberton M, Halverson L. The developing child: his changing movement. In: Logsdon BJ, ed. *Physical education for children: a focus on the teaching process.* Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger;

1977.
Rowe JW, Kahn RL. Successful aging. *Gerontologist.* 1997;37:433–440.
Sabourin P. *Rising from supine to standing: a study of adolescents.* unpublished masters' thesis Virginia Commonwealth University; 1989.
Scovil CY, Zettel JL, Maki BDE. Stepping to recover balance in complex environments: is online visual control of the foot motion necessary or sufficient? *Neurosci Lett.* 2008;445:108–112.
Stout JL. Gait: development and analysis. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2001:88–116.
Sturnieks DL, St George R, Lord SR. Balance disorders in the elderly. *Clin Neurophysiol.* 2008;38:467–478.
Sutherland DH, Olshen RA, Biden EN, Wyatt MP. *The development of mature walking.* London: MacKeith Press; 1988.
Thelen E. Rhythmical stereotypies in infants. *Anim Behav.* 1979;27:699–715.
Thelen E, Smith LB. *A dynamic systems approach to the development of cognition and action.* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press; 1994.
Thomas RL, Williams AK, Lundy-Ekman L. Supine to stand in elderly persons: relationship to age, activity level, strength, and range of motion. *Issues Aging.* 1998;21:9–18.
Vallaint GE. *Aging well.* New York: Little Brown; 2002.
VanSant AF. Age differences in movement patterns used by children to rise from a supine position to erect stance. *Phys Ther.* 1988a;68:1130–1138.
VanSant AF. Rising from a supine position to erect stance: description of adult movement and a developmental hypothesis. *Phys Ther.* 1988b;68:185–192.
VanSant AF. Life-span motor development. In: Lister MJ, ed. *Contemporary management of motor control problems: proceedings of the II step conference.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 1991:77–84.
Wang Y, Morgan WP. The effect of imagery perspectives on the psychophysiological responses to imagined exercise. *Behav Brain Res.* 1992;52:1667–1674.
Wellman BL. Motor achievements of preschool children. Child Educ 13:311–316, 1937. In: Espanschade AS, Eckert HM, eds. *Motor development.* Columbus, OH: Charles E. Merrill; 1967.
Whitall J. A developmental study of the inter-limb coordination in running and galloping. *J Motor Behav.* 1989;21:409–428.
Wickstrom RL. *Fundamental movement patterns.* ed 2 Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1977.
Wickstrom RL. *Fundamental movement patterns.* ed 3 Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger; 1983.
World Health Organization (WHO). Motor development study: windows of achievement for six gross motor milestones. *Acta Paediatr Suppl.* 2006;450:86–95.
Zhao CQ, Wang LM, Jiang LS, et al. The cell biology of the intervertebral disc aging and degeneration. *Ageing Res Rev.* 2007;6(3):247–261.

SECTION 2

Children

CHAPTER 5

Positioning and Handling to Foster Motor Function

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Understand the importance of using positioning and handling as interventions when treating children with neurologic deficits.
2. Describe the use of positioning and handling as interventions to improve function in children with neurologic deficits.
3. List handling tips that can be used when treating children with neurologic deficits.
4. Describe transitional movements used in treating children with neurologic deficits.
5. List the goals for use of adaptive equipment with children who have neurologic deficits.
6. Describe how play can be used therapeutically with children who have neurologic deficits.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to detail some of the most frequent positioning and handling used as interventions when working with children who have neurologic dysfunction. Basic interventions such as positioning are used for many reasons: (1) to meet general patient goals such as improving head or trunk control; (2) to accommodate a lack of muscular support; (3) to provide proper postural alignment; and (4) to manage muscle tone and extensibility. Handling techniques can be used to improve the child's performance of functional tasks such as sitting, walking, and reaching by promoting postural alignment prior to and during movement. Other specific sensory interventions such as tapping a muscle belly, tactile cuing, or pressure are tailored to specific impairments the child may have. Impairments include such things as difficulty in recruiting a muscle contraction for movement initiation, lack of pelvic control for midline positioning, or inability to control certain body segments during changes of position. The ultimate goal of any type of therapeutic intervention is functional movement. Positioning and handling can also be used to foster age appropriate play in children with neurologic deficits.

Children with neurologic deficits

Children with neurologic deficits may exhibit delays in motor development and impairments in muscle tone, sensation, range of motion, strength, and coordination. These children are at risk for musculoskeletal deformities and contractures and often have or are prone to develop activity limitations in performing functional activities. Activity limitations in transfers, locomotion, manipulation, and participation restrictions in self-care and play may result from impairments. A list of body function/structure impairments, activity limitations, and participation restrictions commonly identified by a physical therapy evaluation is given in Table 5-1. Some or all of these impairments may be evident in any child with neurologic deficits. The activity limitations may be related to the impairments documented by the physical therapist during an initial examination and evaluation such as deficits in strength, range of motion, and coordination. A lack of postural responses, balance, and motor milestone acquisition can be expected, given the specific pathologic features of the neurologic disorder.

Table 5-1

Common Impairments and Functional Limitations in Children with Neurologic Deficits

Body/Structure Impairments	Activity/Participation Limitations
Impaired strength	
Impaired muscle tone	Dependent in transfers
Impaired range of motion	Dependent in mobility
Impaired sensation	Dependent in activities of daily living
Impaired balance and coordination	Dependent in play
Impaired postural responses	

Children with motor disabilities, such as seen in children with myelomeningocele, Down syndrome, and cerebral palsy, demonstrate delays in play (Martin, 2014; Pfeifer et al., 2011). Children with disabilities play less well, often demonstrating lower levels of age-expected play (Jennings et al., 1988). Children with autism lack the ability to pretend and do not demonstrate pretend play (Charman and Baron-Cohen, 1997; Jarrold, 2003). In fact, the lack of pretend play in a young child is part of the diagnostic process for autism (Rutherford et al., 2007). Specific developmental disorders are presented in more depth in Chapters 6, 7, and 8.

General physical therapy goals

The guiding goal of therapeutic intervention in working with children with neurologic deficit is to improve function. The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant team must strive to provide interventions designed to make the child as independent as possible. Specific movement goals vary, depending on the type of neurologic deficit. Children with low tone and joint hypermobility need to be stabilized, whereas children with increased tone and limited joint range need mobility. Joint and muscle extensibility may be limited. Children must be able to move from one position to another with control. Movement from one position to another is called *transitional movement*. Important movement transitions to be mastered include moving from supine position to prone; moving from supine or prone position to a sitting position; and moving from sitting position to standing position. Additional transitional movements usually acquired during normal development are moving from prone position to four-point position, followed by moving to kneeling, half-kneeling, and finally standing.

Movement is needed to engage in play and self-care, including self-feeding. Certain positions (such as sitting) are more amenable to engaging the child in play, although playing in side-lying or prone may be possible if the child has sufficient head control and ability to bear weight on one upper extremity while reaching with the other arm. Play should not only be used as a medium for therapy but a goal in and of itself. Children with neurologic deficits often need assistance to interact with the caregiver and to explore the environment. Lobo et al. (2013) state that promoting early perceptual-motor behaviors facilitate global development. Play is certainly an early perceptual-motor behavior and play is fun, one of the hallmarks of participation in the life of a child (Rosenbaum and Gorter, 2011).

Children who exhibit excessive and extraneous movement, such as children with athetoid or ataxic cerebral palsy, need practice in maintaining stable postures against gravity because their natural tendency is to be moving all the time. Children with fluctuating muscle tone find it difficult to stabilize or maintain a posture and often cannot perform small weight shifts from the midline without falling. The ability to shift weight within a posture is the beginning of movement control. With controlled weight shifting comes the ability to change positions safely. Regardless of the type of movement experience needed, all children with neuromuscular difficulties need to be able to function in as many postures as possible. Some postures are more functional than others, and may provide therapeutic benefits and afford possibilities for participation.

Function related to posture

Posture provides a base for movement and function. Impairment of postural control, either in attaining or in maintaining a posture, can produce functional limitations. If an infant cannot maintain postural control in sitting without hand support, then the ability to play with toys is limited. Think of posture as a pyramid, with supine and prone positions at the base, followed by sitting, and erect standing at the apex (Figure 5-1). As the child gains control, the base of support becomes smaller. Children with inadequate balance or postural control often widen their base of support to compensate for a lack of stability. A child with decreased postural muscle activity may be able to sit without arm support to play if the legs are straight and widely abducted (abducted long sitting). When the base of support is narrowed by bringing the legs together (long sitting), the child wobbles and may even fall over. The sitting posture, not the child's trunk musculature, was providing the stability.

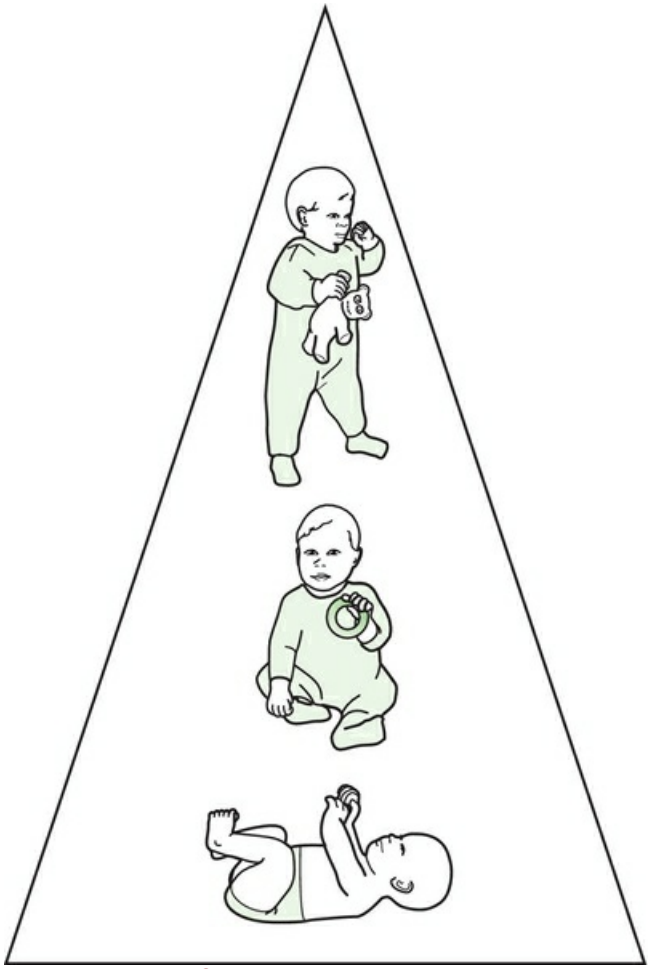


FIGURE 5-1 Posture pyramid.

Supine and Prone

Supine and prone are the lowest postural levels in which a child can function. The supine position is defined as being flat on the back on the support surface. Motor function at this level can involve rolling, reaching with upper extremities, looking, or propelling the body by pushing off flexed lower extremities. The prone position includes lying flat on the tummy with the head turned to one side or lifted, prone on elbows, or prone on extended arms. Mobility in the prone position is possible by means of rolling or crawling on the tummy. Many children push themselves backward

when they are prone before they are able to pull themselves forward. Children with weak or uncoordinated lower extremities commonly perform a "commando crawl" using only their arms to pull themselves along the surface. This is also called drag crawling if the lower extremities do not assist in producing the movement but are dragged along by the pull of the arms.

Sitting

Sitting, the next highest posture, affords the child the opportunity to move the extremities while the head and trunk are in a more upright position. In sitting, the child is appropriately oriented to the world, eyes oriented vertically and mouth horizontally. Typically developing children are sitting around 6 months of age. The muscles of the neck and trunk are in the same orientation with gravity, and it is actually easier to maintain head-and-trunk alignment in this position as compared to being in prone or supine, where the force of gravity must be constantly overcome. Sitting upright affords the child the chance to learn to be mobile in a wheelchair or to use the upper extremities for feeding, self-care, and play. Functional use of the upper extremities requires trunk control, whether that comes from postural muscle control or from a seating system. Alternative mobility patterns available to a child who is seated include scooting or hitching along the floor on the buttocks, with or without hand support.

Quadruped

Quadruped, as a developmental posture, allows creeping to emerge sometime between independent sitting and erect standing. In typically developing children, quadruped, or the four-point position as it may be called, provides quick mobility in a modified prone position before the child has mastered moving in an upright position. Quadruped is considered a dependent and flexed posture; therefore, it has been omitted from the pyramid posture. The child is dependent because the child's head is not always correctly oriented to the world, and with only a few exceptions, the limbs are flexed. It can be difficult for a child to learn to creep reciprocally, so this posture is often omitted as a therapeutic goal. A small number of infants never creep before walking (World Health Organization, 2006).

The quadruped position can provide excellent opportunities for the child to bear weight through the shoulders and hips and thereby promote proximal stability at these joints. Such weight-bearing opportunities are essential to preparing for the proximal joint control needed for making the transition from one posture to another. Although the quadruped position does make unique contributions to the development of trunk control, because the trunk must work maximally against gravity, other activities can be used to work the trunk muscles without requiring the upper extremities to be fully weight bearing and the hips and knees flexed. Deviating from the developmental sequence may be necessary in therapy because of a child's inability to function in quadruped or because of an increased potential for the child to develop contractures from overusing this posture.

Standing

The last and highest level of function is upright standing, in which ambulation may be possible. Most typically developing infants attain an upright standing position by pulling up on furniture at around 9 months of age. Supported standing programs have routinely been used in pediatric physical therapy practice. There is evidence that supported standing can increase bone mineral density and range of motion, decrease spasticity, and improve hip stability (Paleg et al., 2013). For children not able to attain or maintain upright on their own, a supported standing program can be beneficial and a first step toward active participation in the environment.

By 12 months, most children are walking independently. Ambulation significantly increases the ability of the toddler to explore their surroundings. Ask the parent of an infant who has just begun to walk how much more challenging it is to keep up with and safeguard the child's explorations. Attainment of the ability to walk is one of our most frequent therapeutic goals. Being able to move around within our society in an upright standing position is a huge sign that one is "normal." For some parents who are dealing with the realization that their child is not exhibiting typical motor skills, the goal of walking may represent an even bigger achievement, or the final thing the child cannot do. We have worked with parents who have stated that they would rather have their child

walk than talk. The most frequently asked questions you will hear when working with very young children are “Will my child walk?” and “When will my child walk?” These are difficult questions. The ambulation potential of children with specific neurologic deficit is addressed in Chapters 6, 7, and 8. The assistant should consult with the supervising therapist before answering inquiries related to patient prognosis.

Physical therapy intervention

Developmental intervention consists of positioning and handling, including guided movements and planned environmental experiences that allow the infant and young child to enjoy the feeling of typical movement. These movement experiences must occur within the framework of the infant's or child's role within the family, the home, and later, the school. An infant's social role is to interact with caregivers and the environment to learn about herself and the world. Piaget called the first 2 years of life the sensorimotor period for that reason. Intelligence (cognition) begins with associations the infant makes between the self and the people and objects within the environment. These associations are formed by and through movement of the body and objects within the environment.

Our intent is to enable the physical therapist and physical therapist assistant to see multiple uses of certain interventions in the context of an understanding of the overall nature of developmental intervention. Initially, when you work with an infant with neuromuscular problems, the child may have a diagnosis of being only "at risk" for developmental delay. The family may not have been given a specific developmental diagnosis. The therapist and physician may have discussed only the child's tight or loose muscles and problems with head control. One of the most important ways to help family members of an "at risk" child is to show them ways to position and handle (hold and move) the child to make it easier for the child and family to interact. Certain positions may support the infant's head better, thus enabling feeding, eye movement, and looking at the caregiver. Other positions may make diapering easier. Flexing the infant's head, trunk, and limbs while she is being carried is usually indicated because this handling method approximates the typical posture of a young infant and provides a feeling of security for both the child and the caregiver.

Research on the variability of postural control in infants and the effect of enhanced handling and positioning reinforces the need to teach the caregiver how to provide meaningful sensorimotor experiences early. Lobo and Galloway (2012) documented advances in development from a 3-week program of enhanced handling and positioning taught to caregivers. These experiences consisted of encouraging pushing up in prone, positioning in supported sitting, and standing to promote head control. The caregiver was asked to engage the infant in face-to-face interaction without objects for 15 minutes every day. Short- and long-term advancements were reported. These finding support the use of small and varied movements to build prospective postural control. Infants need to try multiple strategies of moving to develop postural control (Dusing and Harbourne, 2010).

Daily Routines

Many handling and positioning techniques can be incorporated into the routine daily care of the child. Picking a child up and putting her down can be used to provide new movement experiences that the child may not be able to initiate on her own. Optimal positioning for bathing, eating, and playing is in an upright sitting position, provided the child has sufficient head control. As the infant develops head control (4 months) and trunk control, a more upright position can be fostered. If the child is unable to sit with slight support at 6 months, the appropriate developmental time, it may be necessary to use an assistive device, such as a feeder seat or a corner chair, to provide head or trunk support to allow the child to experience a more upright orientation to the world.

An upright orientation is also important in developing the child's interest and engaging her socially. Think of how you would automatically position a baby to interact. More than likely, you would pick him or her up and bring the baby's face toward you. An older child may need only minimal assistance to maintain sitting to perform activities of daily living, as in sitting on a bench to dress or sitting in a chair with arms to feed herself or to color in a book. Some children require only the support at the low back to encourage and maintain an upright trunk, as seen in Figure 5-2. Being able to sit at the table with the family includes the child in everyday occurrences, such as eating breakfast or reviewing homework. Upright positioning with or without assistive devices provides the appropriate orientation to interact socially while the child plays or performs activities of daily living (Figure 5-3).

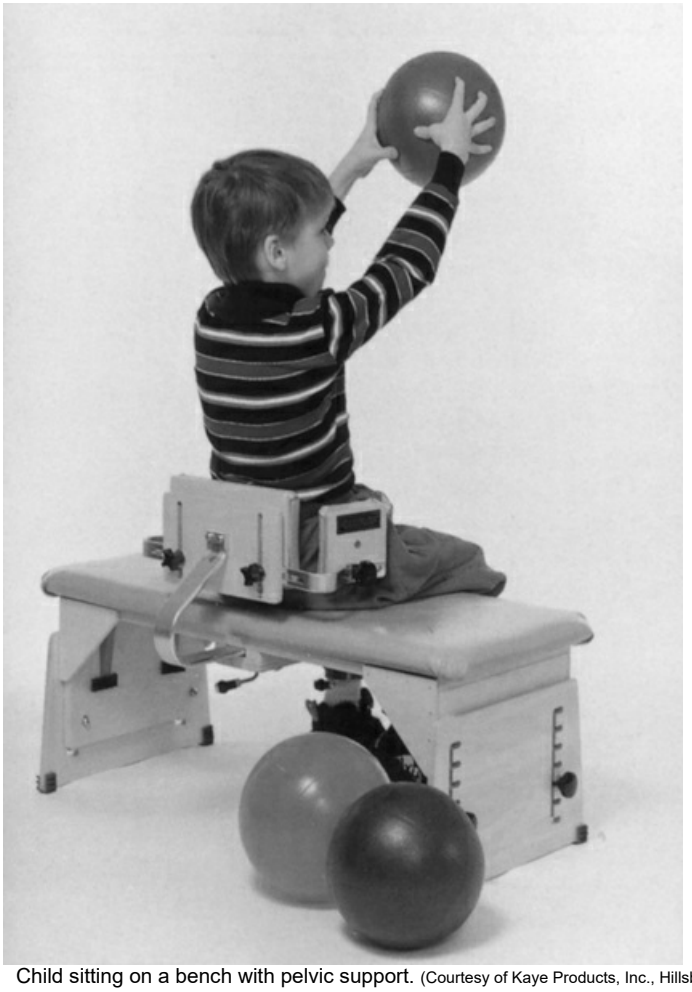


FIGURE 5-2 Child sitting on a bench with pelvic support. (Courtesy of Kaye Products, Inc., Hillsborough, NC.)

FIGURE 5-3 Upright positioning fosters social interaction. (Courtesy Rifton Equipment, Rifton, NY.)

Home Program

Positioning and handling should be part of every home program. When positioning and handling are seen as part of the daily routine, parents are more likely to do these activities with the child. By recognizing all the demands placed on parents' time, you need to make realistic requests of them. Remember, a parent's time is limited. Stretching can be incorporated into bath time or diaper changes. In addition, by suggesting a variety of therapeutic play positions that can be incorporated into the daily routine of the child, you may make it unnecessary for the caregiver to have to spend as much time stretching specific muscles. Pictures are wonderful reminders. Providing a snapshot of how you want the child to sit can provide a gentle reminder to all family members, especially those who are unable to attend a therapy session. If the child is supposed to use a certain adaptive device, such as a corner chair sometime during the day, help the caregiver to determine the best time and place to use the device. Good planning ensures carryover.

Positioning and handling interventions

Positioning for Function

One of the fundamental skills a physical therapist assistant learns is how to position a patient. The principles of positioning include alignment, comfort, and support. Additional considerations include prevention of deformity and readiness to move. When positioning the patient's body or body part, the alignment of the body part or the body as a whole must be considered. In the majority of cases, the alignment of a body part is considered along with the reason for the positioning. For example, the position of the upper extremity in relation to the upper trunk is normally at the side; however, when the patient cannot move the arm, it may be better positioned away from the body to prevent tightness of muscles around the shoulder. The patient's comfort is also important to consider because, as we have all experienced, no matter how "good" the position is for us, if it is uncomfortable, we will change to another position. Underlying the rules governing how to position a person in proper body alignment is the need to prevent any potential deformity, such as tight heel cords, hip dislocation, or spinal curvature.

Positioning for support may also be thought of as positioning for stability. Children and adults often assume certain positions or postures because they feel safe. For example, the person who has hemiplegic involvement usually orients or shifts weight over the noninvolved side of the body because of better sensory awareness, muscular control, and balance. Although this positioning may be stable, it can lead to potential muscle shortening on the involved side that can impair functional movement. Other examples of postures that provide positional stability include W sitting, wide abducted sitting, and propped sitting on extended arms (Figure 5-4). All these positions have a wide base of support that provides inherent stability. W sitting is not desirable because the child does not have to use trunk muscles for postural support; the stability of the trunk comes from the position. Asymmetric sitting or sitting with weight shifted more to one side may cause the trunk to develop muscle imbalance. Common examples of asymmetry are seen in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy who, even in symmetric sitting postures such as short or long sitting, do so with their weight shifted away from the involved side.

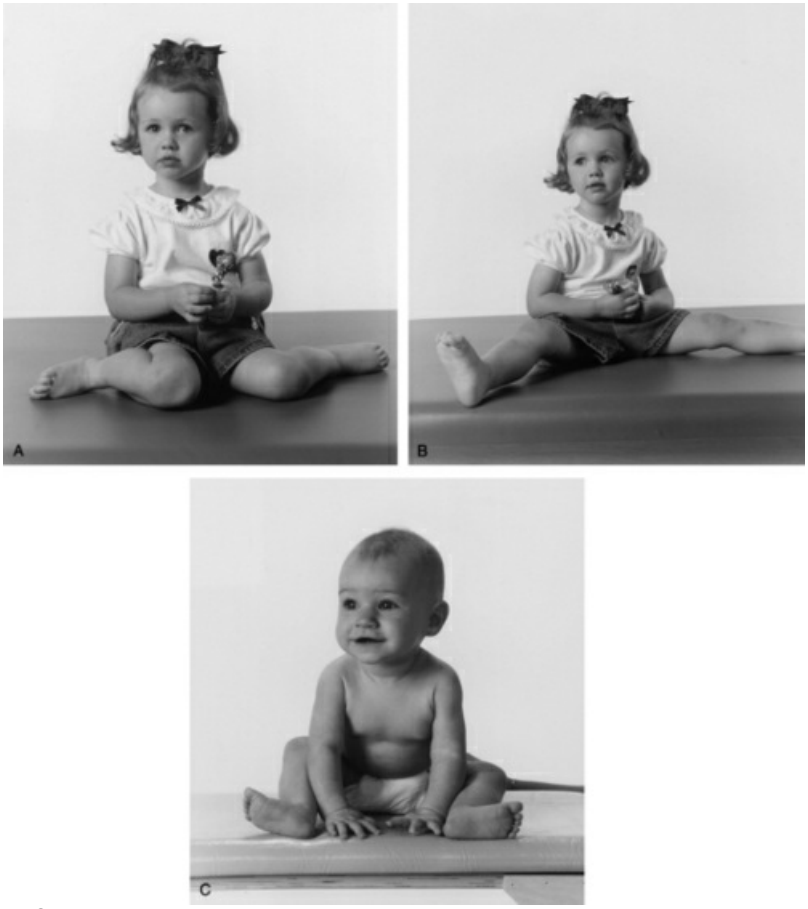


FIGURE 5-4 Sitting postures. **A,** W sitting, which is to be avoided. **B,** Wide abducted long sitting. **C,** Propped sitting with legs abducted.

In working with individuals with neurologic deficit, the clinician often must determine safe and stable postures that can be used for activities of daily living. The child who uses W sitting because the position leaves the hands free to play needs to be given an alternative sitting position that affords the same opportunities for play. Alternatives to W sitting may include some type of adaptive seating, such as a corner chair or a floor sitter (Figure 5-5). A simple solution may be to have the child sit on a chair at a table to play, rather than sitting on the floor.

FIGURE 5-5 Corner chair with head support. (Courtesy Kaye Products, Inc., Hillsborough, NC.)

The last consideration for positioning is the idea that a position provides a posture from which movement occurs. This concept may be unfamiliar to those who are used to working with adults. Adults have greater motivation to move because of prior experience. Children, on the other hand, may not have experienced movement and may even be afraid to move because they cannot do so with control. Safety is of paramount importance in the application of this concept. A child should be able to be safe in a posture, that is, be able to maintain the posture and demonstrate a protective response if she falls out of the posture. Often, a child can maintain sitting only if she is propped on one or both upper extremities. If the child cannot maintain a posture even when propped, some type of assistance is required to ensure safety while she is in the position. The assistance can be in the form of a device or a person. Proper alignment of the trunk must always be provided to prevent unwanted spinal curvatures, which can hamper independent sitting and respiratory function.

Any position in which you place a child should allow the child the opportunity to shift weight within the posture for pressure relief. The next movement possibility that should be provided the child is to move from the initial posture to another posture. Many patients, regardless of age and for many reasons, have difficulty in making the transition from one position to another. We often forget this principle of positioning because we are more concerned about the child's safety within a posture than about how the position may affect mobility. When we work with children, we must take into account both mobility and stability to select therapeutic positions that encourage static and dynamic balance. *Dynamic postures* are ones in which controlled mobility can be exhibited, that is, shifting weight so the center of gravity stays within the base of support. In typical development, the child rocks or shifts weight in a hands-and-knees position for long periods before making the transition to creeping. The ability to shift weight with control within a posture indicates preparation and readiness to move out of that posture into another posture. Dynamic balance is also exhibited when the child moves from the four-point position to a side-sitting position. The center of gravity moves diagonally over one hip and down until a new base of support is created by sitting.

The type of activity the child is expected to perform in a particular posture must also be considered when a position is chosen. For example, how an infant or child is positioned for feeding

by a caregiver may vary considerably from the position used for self-feeding or for playing on the floor. A child's position must be changed often during the day, so teaching the parent or caregiver only one position rarely suffices. For example, modifications of sitting positions may be required for bathing, feeding, dressing, playing, and toileting, depending on the degree of assistance the child requires with each of these activities. Other positions may be employed to accomplish therapeutic goals related to head control, trunk control, or extremity usage.

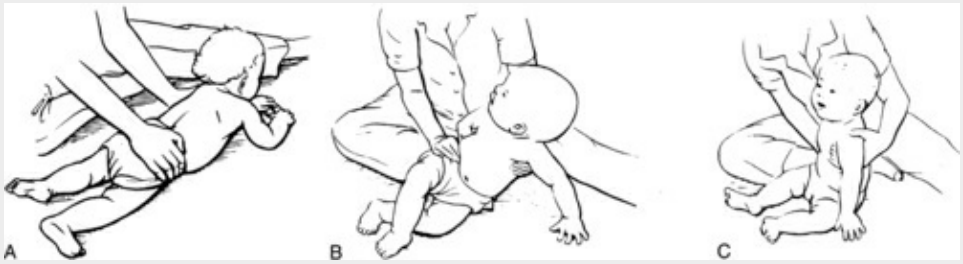
The job or occupation of infants and children is merely to play. Although play may appear to be a simple task, it is a constant therapeutic challenge to help parents identify ways to allow their child to participate fully in the world. More broadly, a child's job is interacting with people and objects within the environment and learning how things work. Usually, one of a child's first tasks is to learn the rules of moving, a difficult task when the child has a developmental disability. A child should be encouraged to participate in playful learning. Rosenbaum and Gorter (2011) incorporated "F-words" into the already existing concepts from the ICF model of childhood disability. Function has already been identified as pivotal to a child's participation in life. The other words, suggested by Rosenbaum and Gorter (2011), are family, fitness, fun, and future. These concepts will be highlighted throughout the remainder of the chapter.

Handling at Home

Parents and caregivers should be taught the easiest ways to move the child from one position to another. For example, Intervention 5-1 shows how to assist an infant with head control to move from prone into a sitting position for dressing or feeding. Most children benefit from being picked up while they are in a flexed position and then placed or assisted into sitting. Caregivers are taught how to encourage the infant or child to assist as much as possible during any movement. If the child has head control but decreased trunk control, turning the child to the side and helping her to push up on an elbow or extended arm will result in sitting (Intervention 5-2). Movement transitions are a major part of a home program. For example, the caregiver can incorporate practicing coming to sit from a supine or prone position and alternate which side of the body the child rolls toward during the maneuver. In this manner, transitions can be become part of the child's daily routine, not an extra burden on the caregiver. Trunk rotation from a seated position should also be used when returning the child to a prone or supine position because this requires head control (Intervention 5-3).

Intervention 5-1

Prone to Sitting



Moving a child with head control from prone into sitting.
A. Place one hand under the arm next to you and the other hand on the child's opposite hip.
B. Initiate rotation of the hip, and assist as needed under the shoulder. Allow the child to push up if she is able to.
C. Perform the activity slowly to allow the child to help and support the trunk if necessary in sitting.

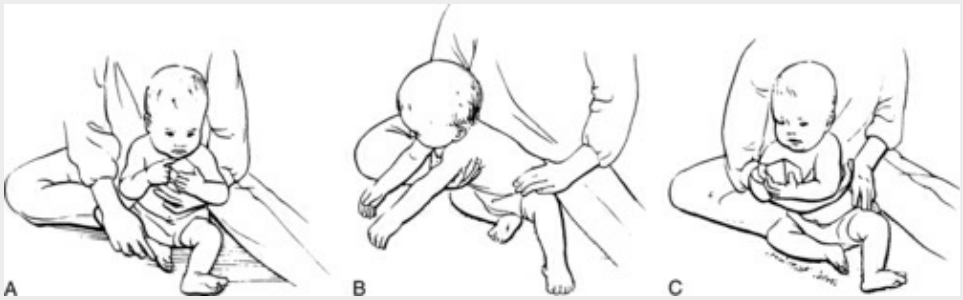
Intervention 5-2

Supine to Side-lying to Sitting

Movement sequence of coming to sit from supine using side-lying as a transition.
A. Promotion of appropriate head lifting in side-lying by providing downward pressure on the shoulder.
B. The movement continues as the child pushes up on an extended arm.
C. The child pushes up to an elbow.

Intervention 5-3

Sitting to Prone



Moving a child with head control from sitting to prone.
A. With the child sitting, bend the knee of the side toward which the child will rotate.
B. Initiate the movement by rotating the child's upper trunk.
C. Complete the rotation by guiding the hip to follow until the child is prone.

If the child does not have head control, it is still appropriate to try to promote trunk rotation to side-lying. Before picking the child up from side-lying, the caregiver provides support under the child's shoulders and head with one hand and under the knees with the other hand.

Holding and Carrying Positions

Intervention 5-4 depicts carrying positions with varying amounts of support, depending on whether the child has head or trunk control, hypertonia, or hypotonia. Intervention 5-4, *A* shows an infant cradled for support of the head, trunk, and pelvis. A child with increased lower extremity tone should not be picked up under the arms, as shown in Intervention 5-4, *B*. The legs stiffen into extension and may even cross or "scissor." This way of picking up an infant should also be avoided in the presence of low tone because the child's shoulder girdle stability may not be sufficient for the caregiver to hold the infant safely. Intervention 5-4, *C* and *E* demonstrates correct ways to hold a child with increased tone. The child's lower extremities are flexed, with the trunk and legs supported. Trunk rotation is encouraged. By having the child straddle the caregiver's hip, as in Intervention 5-4, *E*, the child's hip adductors are stretched, and the upper trunk, which is rotated outward, is dissociated from the lower trunk. The caregiver must remember to carry the child on opposite hips during the day, to avoid promoting asymmetric trunk rotation. The child with low tone needs to be gathered close to you to be given a sense of stability (see Intervention 5-4, *D*). Many infants and children with developmental delay find prone an uncomfortable position but may tolerate being carried in the prone position because of the contact with the caregiver and the movement stimulation (see Intervention 5-4, *F*).

Intervention 5-4

Carrying Positions

A. Place the child in a curled-up position with shoulders forward and hips flexed. Place your arm behind the child's head, not behind the neck.
B. INCORRECT: Avoid lifting the child under her arms without supporting the legs. The child with hypertonicity may "scissor" (cross) the legs. The child with hypotonicity may slip through your hands.
C. CORRECT: Bend the child's legs before picking her up. Give sufficient support to the trunk and legs while allowing trunk rotation.
D. Hold the child with low tone close, to provide a feeling of stability.
E. Have the child straddle your hips to separate tight legs. Be sure the child's trunk is rotated forward and both her arms are free.
F. Prone position.

Holding an infant in the prone position over the caregiver's lap can provide vestibular system input to reinforce midline orientation or lifting of the head. Infants with head control and some trunk control can be held on the caregiver's lap while they straddle the caregiver's knee, to abduct their tight lower extremities.

Handling Techniques for Movement

Because children with disabilities do have similar problems, grouping possible treatment interventions together is easier based on the position and goal of the intervention, such as positioning in prone to encourage head control. The intervention should be matched to the child's problem, and one should always keep in mind the overall functional goal. Depending on the severity of neurologic involvement of the child, lower-level developmental milestones may be the highest goal possible. For example, in a child with severe spastic quadriplegic cerebral palsy, therapeutic goals may consist of the development of head control and the prevention of contractures, whereas in a child with quadriplegia and moderate involvement, independent sitting and wheelchair mobility may be the goals of intervention.

Use of Manual Contacts

When you are promoting a child's head or trunk control using manual contact at the shoulder girdle, placing your hands under the child's axillae while facing her can serve in mobilizing the scapulae and lifting the extremities away from the body. Your fingers should be spread out in such a way to control both the scapulae and the upper arms. By controlling the scapulae in this way, you can promote movement of the child's head, trunk, arms, and legs but prevent the arms from pulling down and back, as may be the child's typical movement pattern. If you do not need to control the child's upper extremities, your hands can be placed over the child's shoulders to cover the clavicles, the scapulae, and the heads of the humeri. This second strategy can also promote alignment and therefore can increase stability and can be especially useful in the treatment of a child with too much movement, as in athetoid cerebral palsy. Varying amounts of pressure can be given through the shoulders and can be combined with movement in different directions to provide a stabilizing influence.

Wherever your hands are on the child, the child is not in control; you are, so the child must be given practice controlling the body parts used to guide movement. For example, if you are using the child's shoulders to guide movement, the child needs to learn to control movement at the shoulder. As the child exhibits more proximal control, your manual contacts can be moved more distally to the elbow or hand. Stability can be facilitated by positioning the limbs in a weight-bearing or loaded position. If the child lacks sufficient control, pediatric air or fabric splints can be used to control the limb position, thus enabling the child to bear weight on an extended knee or to keep the weight-bearing elbow straight while reaching with the other arm (Figure 5-6).

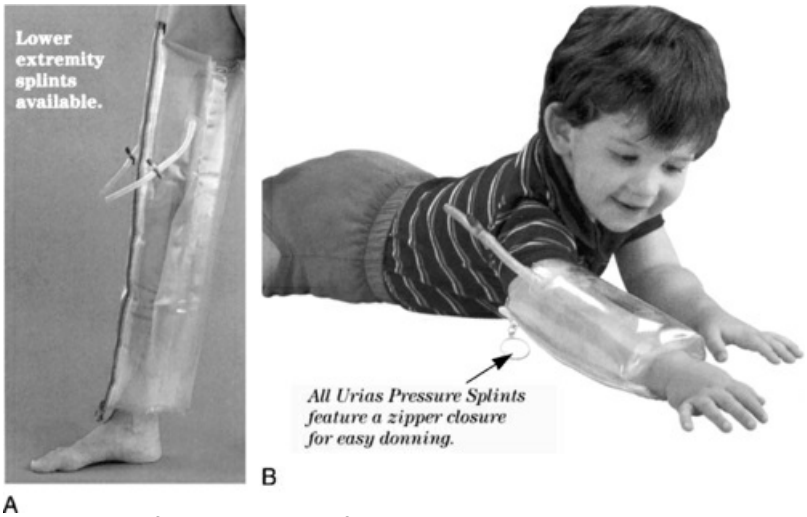


FIGURE 5-6 **A** and **B**, Use of pediatric air splints for knee control in standing and elbow control in prone reaching.
(Courtesy Arden Medical, Ltd.)

Handling Tips

The following should be considered when you physically handle a child with neurologic deficit.

1. Allow the child to do as much of the movement as possible. You will need to pace yourself and will probably have to go more slowly than you may think. For example, when bringing a child into a sitting position from supine, roll the child slowly to one side and give the child time to push up onto her hand, even if she can only do this part of the way, such as up to an elbow. In addition, try to entice the child to roll to the side before attempting to have her come to sit. Using a toy to encourage reaching to roll can also be used. The effects of gravity can be reduced by using an elevated surface, such as a wedge, under the head and upper trunk to make it easier to move into side-lying before coming to sit.
2. When carrying a child, encourage as much head and trunk control as the child can demonstrate. Carry the child in such a way that head and trunk muscles are used to maintain the head and trunk upright against gravity while you are moving. This allows the child to look around and see where you are going.
3. When trying to move the limbs of a child with spasticity, do not pull against the tightness. Do move slowly and rhythmically, starting proximally at the child's shoulders and pelvis. The position of the proximal joints can influence the position of the entire extremity. Changing the position of the proximal joint may also reduce spasticity throughout the extremity.
4. Many children with severe involvement and those with athetosis show an increased sensitivity to touch, sound, and light. These children startle easily and may withdraw from contact to their hands, feet, and mouth. Encourage the child to keep her head in the midline of the body and the hands in sight. Weight bearing on hands and feet is an important activity for these children.
5. Children with low postural tone should be handled more vigorously, but they tire more easily and require more frequent rest periods. Avoid placing children in a supine position to play because they need to work against gravity in the prone position to develop their extensor muscles. Their extensors are so weak that the extremities assume a "frog" position of abduction when these children are supine. Strengthening of abdominal muscles can be done with the child in a semireclined supine position. Encourage arm use and visual learning. By engaging visual tracking, the child may learn to use the eyes to encourage head and trunk movement. Infant seats are appropriate for the young child with low tone who needs head support, but an adapted corner chair is better for the older child.
6. When encouraging movements from proximal joints, remember that wherever your hands are, the child will not be in control. If you control the shoulders, the child has to control the head and trunk, that is, above and below where you are handling. Keep this in mind anytime you are guiding movement. If you want the child to control a body part or joint, you should not be holding on to that area.
7. Ultimately, the goal is for the child to initiate and guide her own movements. Handling should be decreased as the child gains more control. If the child exhibits movement of satisfactory quality only while you are guiding the movement but is not able to assist in making the same movements on her own, you must question whether motor learning is actually taking place. The child must actively participate in movement to learn to move. For movement to have meaning, it must have a goal such as object exploration or locomotion.

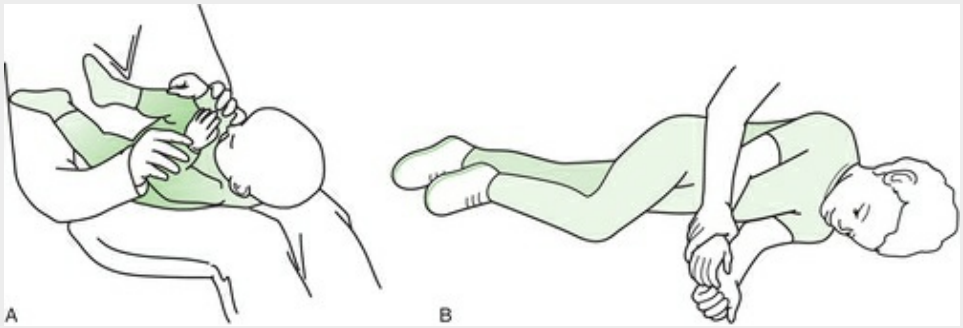
Use of Sensory Input to Promote Positioning and Handling

Touch

An infant begins to define the edges of her own body by touch. Touch is also the first way in which an infant finds food and experiences self-calming when upset. Infant massage is a way to help parents feel comfortable about touching their infant. The infant can be guided to touch the body as a prelude to self-calming (Intervention 5-5). Positioning the infant in side-lying often makes it easier for her to touch her body and to see her hands and feet (an important factor). Awareness of the body's midline is an essential perceptual ability. If asymmetry in movement or sensation exists, then every effort must be made to equalize the child's awareness of both sides of the body when the child is being moved or positioned. Additional tactile input can be given to that side of the body in the form of touch or weight bearing. The presence of asymmetry in sensation and movement can contribute to arm and leg length differences. Shortening of trunk muscles can occur because of lack of equal weight bearing through the pelvis in sitting or as compensation for unilateral muscular paralysis. Trunk muscle imbalance can also lead to scoliosis.

Intervention 5-5

Teaching Self-Calming



Using touch to self-calm in supported supine and side-lying positions.
A. The infant can be guided to touch the body as a prelude to self-calming.
B. Positioning the child in side-lying often makes it easier for him to touch his body and to see her hands and feet—important points of reference.

Touch and movement play important roles in developing body and movement awareness and balance. Children with hypersensitivity to touch may need to be desensitized. Usually, gentle but firm pressure is better tolerated than light touch when a child is overly sensitive. Light touch produces withdrawal of an extremity or turning away of the face in children who exhibit tactile defensiveness (Lane, 2002). Most typically developing children like soft textures before rough ones, but children who appear to misperceive tactile input may actually tolerate coarse textures, such as terry cloth, better than soft textures.

General guidelines for use of tactile stimulation with children with tactile defensiveness have been outlined by Koomar and Bundy (2002). These include the following: (1) having the child administer the stimulation; (2) using firm pressure but realizing that light touch can be used if the child is indeed perceiving light touch as deep pressure; (3) applying touch to the arms and legs before the face; (4) applying the stimulation in the direction of hair growth; (5) providing a quiet, enclosed area for the stimulation to take place; (6) substituting proprioception for tactile stimulation or combining deep pressure with proprioception. Textured mitts, paintbrushes, sponges, and vibrators provide different types of tactile stimulation. Theoretically, deep touch or pressure to the extremities has a central inhibitory effect that is more general, even though this touch is applied to a specific body part (Ayres, 1972). The expected outcome is that the child will have an increased tolerance to touch, be able to concentrate better, and exhibit better organized behavior. If handling the child is to be an effective part of intervention, the infant or child must be able to tolerate touch.

A child who is defensive about touch to the face usually also has increased sensitivity to touch inside the mouth. Such children may have difficulty in eating textured foods. Oral motor therapy is a specialized area of practice that requires additional education. A physical, occupational, or speech therapist may be trained to provide this type of care. The physical therapist assistant may be taught specific interventions by the therapist, which are applicable to a particular child in a specific setting. However, these interventions are beyond the scope of this book and are only referred to in general terms.

Vestibular System

The three semicircular canals of the vestibular system are fluid-filled. Each set of canals responds to movement in different planes. Cartwheels, somersaults, and spinning produce movement in different canals. Linear movement (movement in line with the body orientation) can improve head lifting when the child is in prone or supine position. Swinging a child in a hammock in a prone or supine position produces such linear movement and encourages head lifting (Figure 5-7). Movement stimulation often works to alert a child affected by lethargy or one with low muscle tone because the vestibular system has a strong influence on postural tone and balance. The vestibular

system causes a response when the flow of fluid in the semicircular canals changes direction. However, constant movement results in the child's habituation or becoming used to the movement and does not produce a response. Rapid, quick movement, as in sitting on a movable surface, can alert the child. Fast, jerky movement facilitates an increase in tone if the child's resting tone is low. Slow, rhythmic movement decreases high tone.

FIGURE 5-7 Child in a hammock.

Approximation

Application of compression through joints in weight bearing is *approximation*. Rocking on hands and knees and bouncing on a ball in sitting are examples of activities that provide approximation. Additional compression can be given manually through the body parts into the weight-bearing surface. Joints may also be approximated by manually applying constant pressure through the long axis of aligned body parts. Intermittent compression can also be used. Both constant pressure and intermittent pressure provide proprioceptive cues to alert postural muscles to support the body, as in sitting and bouncing on a trampoline. The speed of the compressive force and the give of the support surface provide differing amounts of joint approximation. The direction of movement can be varied while the child is rocking on hands and knees. Compression through the length of the spine is achieved from just sitting, as a result of gravity, but this compression can be increased by bouncing. Axial compression or pressure through the head and neck must be used cautiously in children with Down syndrome because of the 15% incidence of atlantoaxial instability in this population (Tassone and Duey-Holtz, 2008). External compression can also be given through the shoulders into the spine while the child is sitting, or through the shoulders or hips when the child is in a four-point position (Intervention 5-6). The child's body parts must always be aligned prior to receiving manual compression, with compression graded to the tolerance of the child. Less compression is better in most instances. Use of approximation is illustrated in the following example involving a young girl with athetoid cerebral palsy. When the clinician placed a hand lightly but firmly on the girl's head as she was attempting to maintain a standing position, the child was more stable within the posture. She was then asked to assume various ballet positions with her feet, to help her learn to adjust to different-sized bases of support and still maintain her balance. During the next treatment session, the girl initiated the stabilization by placing the therapist's hand on her head. Gradually, external stabilization from the therapist's hand was able to be withdrawn.

Intervention 5-6

Compression of Proximal Joints

A. Manual approximation through the shoulders in sitting.
B. Manual approximation through the shoulders in the four-point position.

Intermittent or sustained pressure can also be used to prepare a limb or the trunk to accept weight prior to loading the limb as in gait or laterally shifting weight onto the trunk. Prior to weight bearing on a limb, such as in propped sitting, the arm can be prepared to accept the weight by applying pressure from the heel of the hand into the shoulder with the elbow straight but not locked (Intervention 5-7). This is best done with the arm in about 45 degrees of external rotation. Think of the typical position of the arm when it is extended as if to catch yourself. The technique of using sustained pressure for the trunk is done by applying firm pressure along the side of the trunk on which the weight will be shifted (Intervention 5-8). The pressure is applied along one side of the trunk from the middle of the trunk out toward the hip and shoulder prior to assisting the child to turn onto that side. This intervention can be used as preparation for rolling or coming to sit through side-lying. A modification of this intervention is used prior to or as you initiate a lateral weight shift to assist trunk elongation.

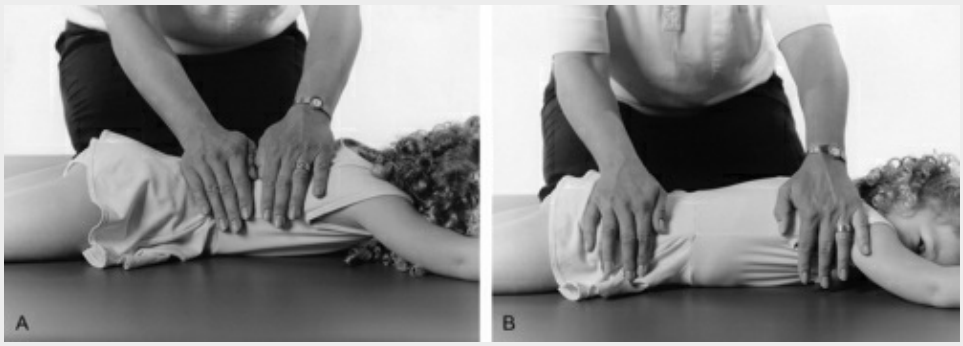
Intervention 5-7

Preparation for Upper Extremity Weight Bearing

Application of pressure through the heel of the hand to approximate the joints of the upper extremity.

Intervention 5-8

Preparation for Weight Acceptance



Firm stroking of the trunk in preparation for weight acceptance.
A. Beginning hand position.
B. Ending hand position.

Vision

Visual images entice a child to explore the environment. Vision also provides important information for the development of head control and balance. Visual fixation is the ability to look with both eyes for a sustained time. To encourage looking, find out whether the child prefers faces or objects. In infants, begin with black and white objects or a stylized picture of a face and then add colors such as red and yellow to try to attract the child's attention. You will have the best success if you approach the infant from the periphery because the child's head will most likely be turned to

the side. Next, encourage tracking of objects to the midline and then past the midline. Before infants can maintain the head in the midline, they can track from the periphery toward the midline, then through ever-widening arcs. Directional tracking ability then progresses horizontally, vertically, diagonally, and rotationally (clockwise and counterclockwise).

If the child has difficulty using both eyes together or if the eyes cross or turn out, alert the supervising physical therapist, who may suggest that the child see an optometrist or an ophthalmologist. Children who have eye problems corrected early in life may find it easier to develop head control and the ability to reach for objects. Children with permanent visual impairments must rely on auditory signals within the environment to entice them to move. Just as you would use a toy to help a child track visually, use a rattle or other noisemaker to encourage head turning, reaching, and rolling toward the sound. The child has to be able to localize or determine where the sound is coming from before these types of activities are appropriate. Children with visual impairments generally achieve motor milestones later than typically developing children.

Hearing

Although hearing does not specifically play a role in the development of posture and movement, if the acoustic nerve responsible for hearing is damaged, then the vestibular nerve that accompanies it may also be impaired. Impairment of the vestibular nerve or any part of the vestibular system may cause balance deficits because information from head movement is not translated into cues for postural responses. In addition, the close coordination of eye and head movements may be compromised. When working with preschoolers with hearing impairment, clinicians have often found that these children have balance problems. Studies have shown that both static and dynamic balance are impaired in this population and produce motor deficits (de Sousa et al., 2012; Livingstone and McPhillips, 2011). Auditory cues can be used to encourage movement and, in the visually impaired, may provide an alternative way to direct or guide movement.

Preparation for movement

Postural Readiness

Postural readiness is the usual preparation for movement. It is defined as the ability of the muscles to exhibit sufficient resting tone to support movement. Sufficient resting tone is evident by the child's ability to sustain appropriate postural alignment of the body before, during, and after performing a movement task. In children with neurologic deficit, some positions can be advantageous for movement, whereas others may promote abnormally strong tonic reflexes (Table 5-2). A child in the supine position may be dominated by the effect of the tonic labyrinthine reflex, which causes increased extensor tone, and thus decreases the possibility that the child will be able to roll to prone or come to sit easily. If the tone is too high or too low, or if the body is not appropriately aligned, movement will be more difficult, less efficient, and less likely to be successful.

Table 5-2

Advantages and Disadvantages of Different Positions

Position	Advantages	Disadvantages
Supine	Can begin early weight bearing through the lower extremities when the knees are bent and feet are flat on the support surface. Positioning of the head and upper trunk in forward flexion can decrease the effect of the STLR. Can facilitate use of the upper extremity in play or object exploration. Lower extremities can be positioned in flexion over a roll, ball, or bolster.	Effect of STLR can be strong and not easily overcome. Supine can be disorienting because it is associated with sleeping. The level of arousal is lowest in this position, so it may be more difficult to engage the child in meaningful activity.
Side-lying	Excellent for dampening the effect of most tonic reflexes because of the neutral position of the head; achieving protraction of the shoulder and pelvis; separating the upper and lower trunk; achieving trunk elongation on the down side; separating the right and left sides of the body; and promoting trunk stability by dissociating the upper and lower trunk. Excellent position to promote functional movements, such as rolling and coming to sit or as a transition from sitting to supine or prone.	It may be more difficult to maintain the position without external support or a special device, such as a side lyer. Shortening of the upper trunk muscles may occur if the child is always positioned on the same side.
Prone	Promotes weight bearing through the upper extremities (prone on elbows or extended arms); stretches the hip and knee flexors and facilitates the development of active extension of the neck and upper trunk. In young or very developmentally disabled children, it may facilitate development of head control and may promote eye-hand relationships. With the addition of a movable surface, upper extremity protective reactions may be elicited.	Flexor posturing may increase because of the influence of the PTLR. Breathing may be more difficult for some children secondary to inhibition of the diaphragm, although ventilation may be better. Prone is not recommended for young children as a sleeping posture because of its relationship with an increased incidence of sudden infant death syndrome.
Sitting	Promotes active head and trunk control; can provide weight bearing through the upper and lower extremities; frees the arms for play; and may help normalize visual and vestibular input as well as aid in feeding. The extended trunk is dissociated from flexed lower extremities. Excellent position to facilitate head and trunk righting reactions, trunk equilibrium reactions, and upper extremity protective extension. One or both upper extremities can be dissociated from the trunk. Side sitting promotes trunk elongation and rotation.	Sitting is a flexed posture. A child may be unable to maintain trunk extension because of a lack of strength or too much flexor tone. Optimal seating at 90-90-90 may be difficult to achieve and may require external support. Some floor-sitting postures, such as cross-sitting and W sitting, promote muscle tightness and may predispose to lower extremity contractures.
Quadruped	Weight bearing through all four extremities with the trunk working against gravity. Provides an excellent opportunity for dissociation and reciprocal movements of the extremities and as a transition to side sitting if trunk rotation is possible.	The flexed posture is difficult to maintain because of the influence of the STNR, which can encourage bunny hopping as a form of locomotion. When trunk rotation is lacking, children often end up W sitting.
Kneeling	Kneeling is a dissociated posture; the trunk and hips are extended while the knees are flexed. Provides a stretch to the hip flexors. Hip and pelvic control can be developed in this position, which can be a transition posture to and from side sitting or to half-kneeling and standing.	Kneeling can be difficult to control, and children often demonstrate an inability to extend at the hips completely because of the influence of the STNR.
Standing	Provides weight bearing through the lower extremities and a stretch to the hip and knee flexors and ankle plantar flexors; can promote active head and trunk control and may normalize visual input.	A significant amount of external support may be required; may not be a long-term option for the child.

Adapted from Lemkuhl LD, Krawczyk L: Physical therapy management of the minimally-responsive patient following traumatic brain injury: coma stimulation. *Neurol Rep* 17:10–17, 1993.

PTLR, Prone tonic labyrinthine reflex; *STLR*, supine tonic labyrinthine reflex; *STNR*, symmetric tonic neck reflex.

Postural Alignment

Alignment of the trunk is required prior to trying to elicit movement. When you slump in your chair before trying to come to stand, your posture is not prepared to support efficient movement. When the pelvis is either too anteriorly or too posteriorly tilted, the trunk is not positioned to respond with appropriate righting reactions to any weight shift. Recognizing that the patient is lying or sitting asymmetrically should cue repositioning in appropriate alignment. To promote weight bearing on the hands or feet, one must pay attention to how limbs are positioned. Excessive rotation of a limb may provide mechanical locking into a posture, rather than afford the child's muscles an opportunity to maintain the position. Examples of excessive rotation can be seen in the elbows of a child with low tone who attempts to maintain a hands-and-knees position or whose knees are hyperextended in standing. Advantages and disadvantages of different positions are discussed in Chapter 6 as they relate to the effects of exaggerated tonic reflexes, which are most often evident in children with cerebral palsy.

Manual Contacts

Manual contacts at proximal joints are used to guide movement or to reinforce a posture. The

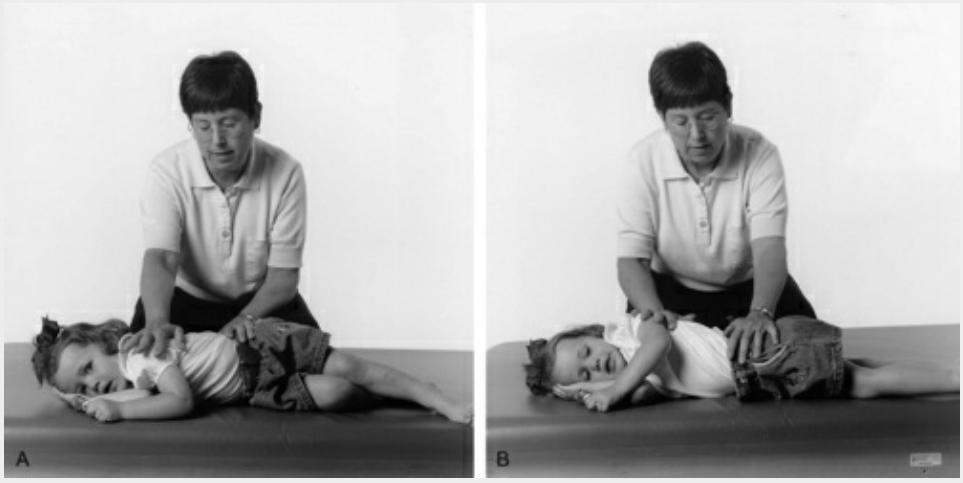
shoulders and hips are most commonly used either separately or together to guide movement from one posture to another. Choosing manual contacts is part of movement preparation. The more proximal the manual contacts, the more you control the child's movements. Moving contacts more distally to the elbow or knee or to the hands and feet requires that the child take more control. A description of the use of these manual contacts is given in the section of this chapter on positioning and handling.

Rotation

Slow, rhythmic movement of the trunk and extremities is often helpful in decreasing muscle stiffness (Intervention 5-9). Some children are unable to attempt any change in position without this preparation. When using slow, rhythmic movements, one should begin at proximal joints. For example, if tightness in the upper extremities is evident, then slow, alternating pressure can be applied to the anterior chest wall, followed by manual protraction of the scapula and depression of the shoulder, which is usually elevated. The child's extremity is slowly and rhythmically externally rotated as the arm is abducted away from the body and elevated. The abduction and elevation of the arm allow for some trunk lengthening, which can be helpful prior to rolling or shifting weight in sitting or standing. Always starting at proximal joints provides a better chance for success. Various hand grasps can be used when moving the upper extremity. A handshake grasp is commonly used, as is grasping the thumb and thenar eminence (Figure 5-8). Extending the carpometacarpal joint of the thumb also decreases tone in the extremity. Be careful to avoid pressure in the palm of the hand if the child still has a palmar grasp reflex. Do not attempt to free a thumb that is trapped in a closed hand without first trying to alter the position of the entire upper extremity.

Intervention 5-9

Trunk Rotation



Slow, rhythmic rotation of the trunk in side-lying to decrease muscle tone and to improve respiration.

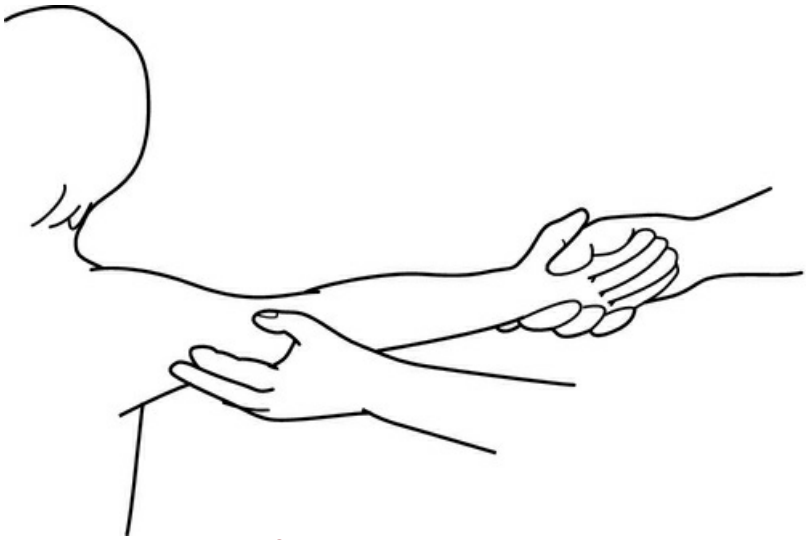


FIGURE 5-8 Handshake grasp.

When a child has increased tone in the lower extremity muscles, begin with alternating pressure on the pelvis (anterior superior iliac spine), first on one side and then the other (Intervention 5-10). As you continue to rock the child's pelvis slowly and gently, externally rotate the hip at the proximal thigh. As the tone decreases, lift the child's legs into flexion as bending the hips and knees can significantly reduce the bias toward extension. With the child's knees bent, continue slow, rhythmic rotation of one or both legs and place the legs into hook lying. Pressure can be given from the knees into the hips and into the feet to reinforce this flexed position. The more the hips and knees are flexed, the less extension is possible, so in cases of extreme increased tone, the knees can be brought to the chest with continued slow rotation of the bent knees across the trunk. By positioning the child's head and upper body into more flexion in the supine position, you may also flex the child's lower extremities more easily. A wedge, bolster, or pillows can be used to support the child's upper body in the supine position. The caregiver should avoid positioning the child supine without ensuring that the child has a flexed head and upper body, because the legs may be too stiff in extension as a result of the supine tonic labyrinthine reflex. Lower trunk rotation initiated with one or both of the child's lower extremities can also be used as a preparatory activity prior to changing position, such as rolling from supine to prone (Intervention 5-11). If the child's hips and knees are too severely flexed and adducted, gently rocking the child's pelvis by moving the legs into abduction by means of some outward pressure on the inside of the knees and downward pressure from the knees into the hips may allow you to slowly extend and abduct the child's legs (Intervention 5-12). When generalized increased tone exists, as in a child with quadriplegic cerebral palsy, slow rocking while the child is prone over a ball may sufficiently reduce tone to allow initiation of movement transitions, such as rolling to the side or head lifting in prone (Intervention 5-13).

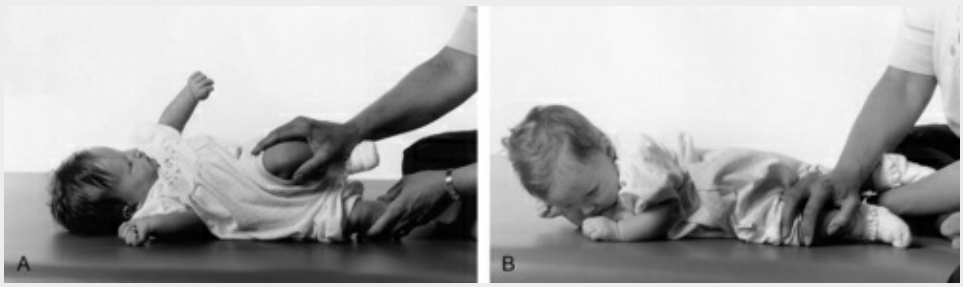
Intervention 5-10

Alternating Pelvic Pressure

Alternating pressure with manual contact on the pelvis can be used to decrease muscle tone and to facilitate pelvic and lower extremity motion.

Intervention 5-11

Lower Trunk Rotation and Rolling from Supine to Prone



Lower trunk rotation initiated by flexing one leg over the other and facilitating rolling from supine to prone.

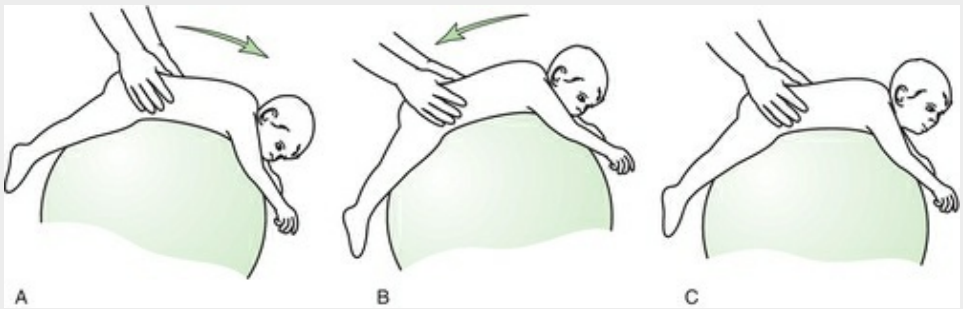
Intervention 5-12

Lower Trunk Rotation and Pelvic Rocking

Lower trunk rotation and pelvic rocking to aid in abducting the lower extremities in the presence of increased adductor muscle tone.

Intervention 5-13

Use of the Ball for Tone Reduction and Head Lifting



A, B. Slow rocking on a ball can promote a reduction in muscle tone.
C. Head lifting.

Interventions to foster head and trunk control

The following positioning and handling interventions can be applied to children with a variety of disorders. They are arranged developmentally, because children need to acquire some degree of head control before they are able to control the trunk in an upright posture. Both head and trunk control are necessary components for sitting and standing.

Head Control

Several different ways of encouraging head control through positioning in prone, in supine, and while being held upright in supported sitting are presented here. The interventions can be used to promote development of head control in children who do not exhibit appropriate control. Many interventions can be used during therapy or as part of a home program. The decision about which interventions to use should be based on a thorough examination by the physical therapist and the therapeutic goals outlined in the child's plan of care.

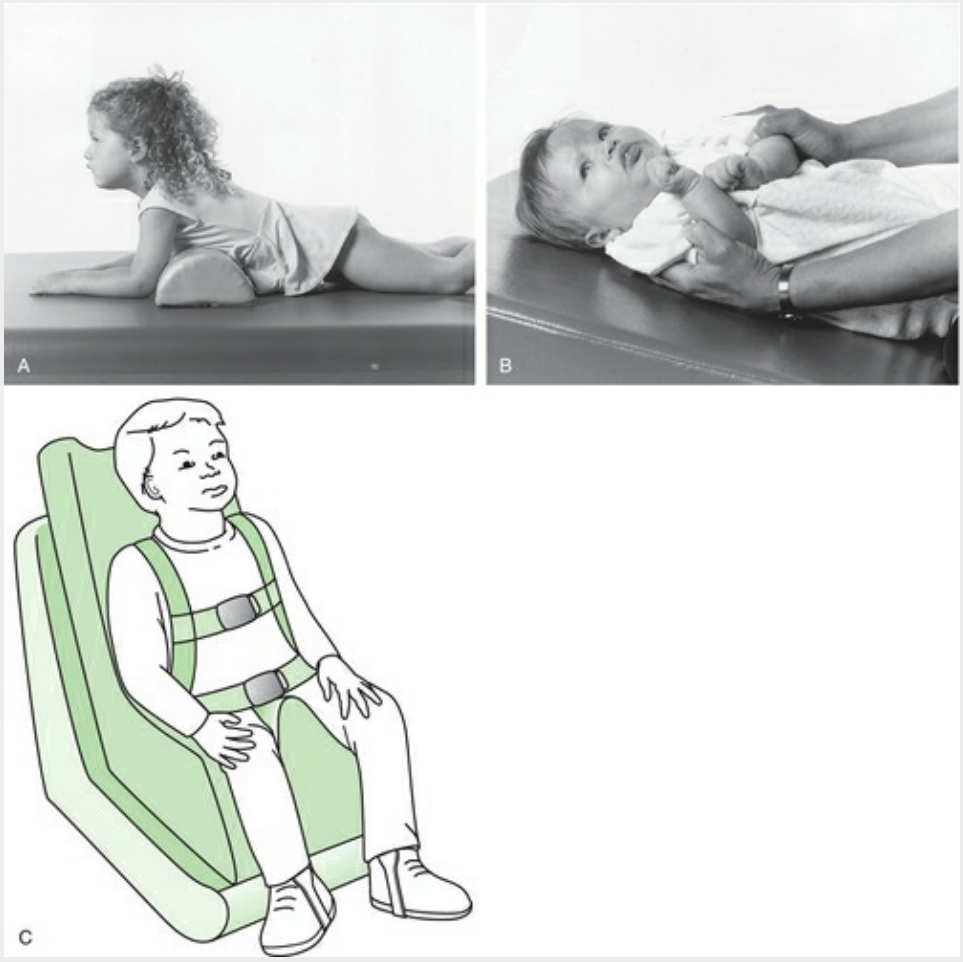
Positioning to Encourage Head Control

Prone over a Bolster, Wedge, or Half-Roll

Prone is usually the first position in which the newborn experiences head lifting; therefore, it is one of the first positions used to encourage development of head control. When an infant is placed over a small roll or bolster, the child's chest is lifted off the support surface, and this maneuver takes some weight off the head. In this position, the infant's forearms can be positioned in front of the roll, to add further biomechanical advantage to lifting the head. The child's elbows should be positioned under the shoulders to provide weight-bearing input for a support response from the shoulder girdle muscles. A visual and auditory stimulus, such as a mirror, brightly colored toy, or noisemaker, can be used to encourage the child to lift the head. Lifting is followed by holding the head up for a few seconds first in any position, then in the midline. A wedge may also be used to support the infant's entire body and to keep the arms forward. The advantage of a half-roll is that because the roll does not move, the child is less likely to "roll" off it. It may be easier to obtain forearm support when the child is positioned over a half-roll or a wedge of the same height as the length of the child's upper arm (Intervention 5-14, *A*).

Intervention 5-14

Positions to Encourage Head Control



A. Positioning the child prone over a half-roll encourages head lifting and weight bearing on the elbows and forearms.
B. Positioning the child supine on a wedge in preparation for anterior head lifting.
C. A feeder seat/floor sitter that allows for different degrees of inclination.

Supine on a Wedge or Half-Roll

Antigravity flexion of the neck is necessary for balanced control of the head. Although most children exhibit this ability at around 5 months of age, children with disabilities may find development of antigravity flexion more of a challenge than cervical extension, especially children with underlying extensor tone. Preparatory positioning in a supine position on a wedge or half-roll puts the child in a less difficult position against gravity to attempt head lifting (Intervention 5-14, *B*). The child should be encouraged to keep the head in the midline while he is positioned in supine. A midline position can be encouraged by using a rolled towel arch or by providing a visual focus. Toys or objects can be attached to a rod or frame, as in a mobile, and placed in front of the child to encourage reaching with the arms. If a child cannot demonstrate any forward head movement, increasing the degree of incline so the child is closer to upright than to supine may be beneficial. This can also be accomplished by using an infant seat or a feeder seat with a Velcro base that allows for different degrees of inclination (Intervention 5-14, *C*).

Interventions to Encourage Head Control

Modified Pull-to-Sit Maneuver

The beginning position is supine. The hardest part of the range for the child's head to move through in the pull-to-sit maneuver is the initial part in which the force of gravity is directly perpendicular to the head (Figure 5-9). The infant or child has to have enough strength to initiate the movement. Children with disabilities may have extreme head lag during the pull-to-sit transition. Therefore,

the maneuver is modified to make it easier for the child to succeed. The assistant provides support at the child's shoulders and rotates the child toward herself and begins to move the child toward sitting on a diagonal (Intervention 5-15). The assistant may need to wait for the child to bring the head and upper body forward into sitting. The child may be able to help with only the last part of the maneuver as the vertical position is approached. If the child tries to reinforce the movement with shoulder elevation, the assistant's index fingers can depress the child's shoulders and thus can avoid this substitution. Improvement in head control can be measured by the child's ability to maintain the head in midline in various postures, by exhibiting neck-righting reactions or by assisting in the maneuver earlier during the range. As the child's head control improves, less trunk rotation is used to encourage the neck muscles to work against gravity as much as possible. More distal contacts such as the elbows and finally the hands can be used to initiate the pull-to-sit maneuver (see Intervention 5-2). These distal manual contacts are not recommended if the child has too much joint laxity.

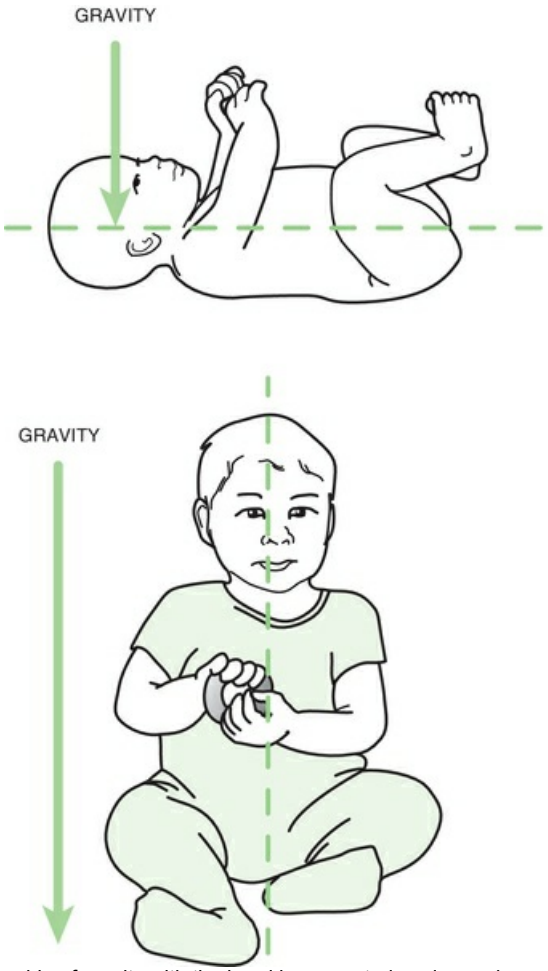
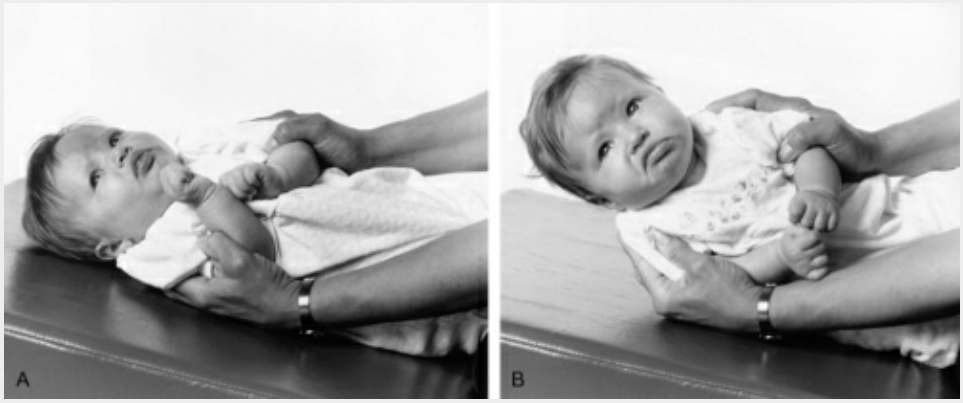


FIGURE 5-9 Relationship of gravity with the head in supported supine and supported sitting positions.

Intervention 5-15

Modified Pull-to-Sit Maneuver



A. Position the child on an inclined surface supine in preparation for anterior head lifting.
B. Provide support at the child's shoulder, rotate the child toward yourself, and begin to move the child toward sitting on a diagonal.

Upright in Supported Sitting

In the child's relation to gravity, support in the upright sitting position (Box 5-1) is probably an easier position in which to maintain head control, because the orientation of the head is in line with the force of gravity. The head position and the force of gravity are parallel (see Figure 5-9), whereas when a child is in supine or prone position, the force of gravity is perpendicular to the position of the head at the beginning of head lifting. This relationship makes it more difficult to lift the head from either supine or prone position than to maintain the head when either held upright in vertical or held upright in supported sitting. This is why a newborn has total head lag as one tries to pull the baby to sit, but once the infant is sitting, the head appears to sit more stably on the shoulders. A child who is in supine or prone position uses only neck flexors or extensors to lift the head. In the upright position, a balance of flexors and extensors is needed to maintain the head position. The only difference between being held upright in the vertical position and being held upright in supported sitting is that the trunk is supported in the latter position and thus provides some proprioceptive input by approximation of the spine and pelvis. Manual contacts under or around the shoulders are used to support the head (Figure 5-10). Establishing eye contact with the child also assists head stability because it provides a stable visual input to orient the child to the upright position. To encourage head control further, the child can be placed in supported sitting in an infant seat or a feeder seat as a static position, but care should be taken to ensure the infant's safety in such a seat. Never leave a child unattended in an infant seat or other seating device without a seat belt and/or shoulder harness to keep the child from falling forward, and never place such a device on a table unless the child is constantly supervised.

Box 5-1

Progression of Supported Sitting

1. Sitting in the corner of a sofa.
2. Sitting in a corner chair or a beanbag.
3. Side sitting with one arm propped over a bolster or half-roll.
4. Sitting with arms forward and supported on an object, such as a pillow or a ball.
5. Sitting in a high chair.

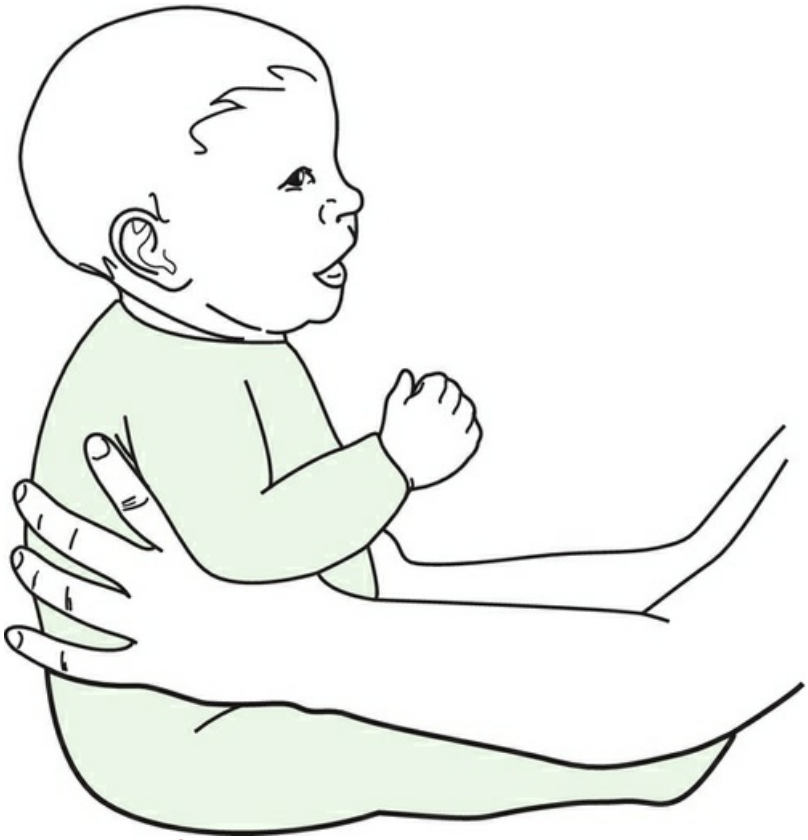


FIGURE 5-10 Early head control in supported sitting.

Weight Shifting from Supported Upright Sitting

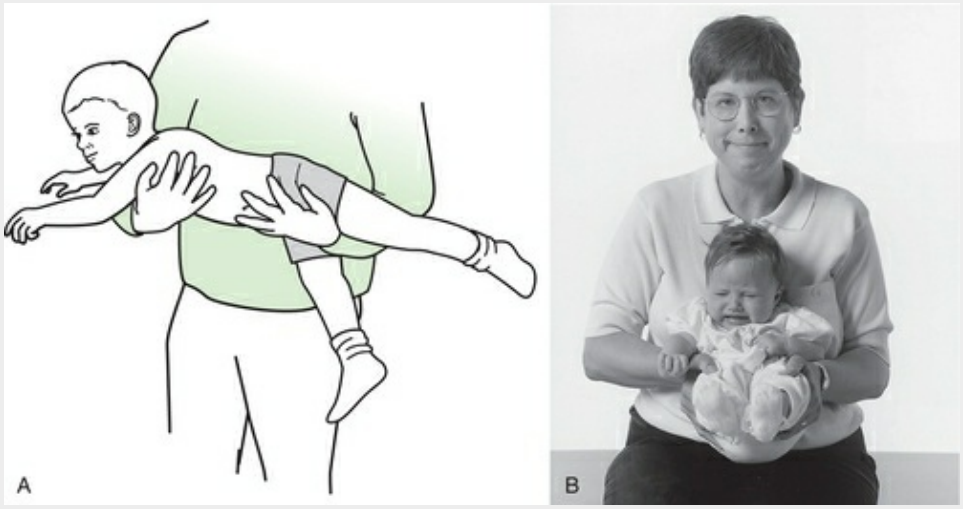
The beginning position is with the child seated on the lap of the assistant or caregiver and supported under the arms or around the shoulders. Support should be firm to provide some upper trunk stability without causing any discomfort to the child. Because the child's head is inherently stable in this position, small weight shifts from the midline challenge the infant to maintain the head in the midline. If possible, just visually engaging the child may be enough to assist the child in maintaining head position or righting the head as weight is shifted. As the child becomes able to accept challenges, larger displacements may be given.

Carrying in Prone

The child's beginning position is prone. Because prone is the position from which head lifting is the easiest, when a child is in the prone position with support along the midline of the trunk, this positioning may encourage head lifting, as shown in Intervention 5-4, *F*. The movement produced by the person who is carrying the child may also stimulate head lifting because of the vestibular system's effect on postural muscles. Another prone position for carrying can be used in the case of a child with flexor spasticity (Intervention 5-16, *A*). One of the caregiver's forearms is placed under the child's shoulders to keep the arms forward, while the other forearm is placed between the child's thighs to keep one hip straight. Some lower trunk rotation is achieved as the pelvis is turned from the weight of the dangling leg.

Intervention 5-16

Carrying Positions to Encourage Head Control



A. In the case of a child with flexor spasticity, the caregiver can place one forearm under the child's shoulders to keep his arms forward and place the other forearm between his thigh, while keeping one hip straight.
B. When the child is carried in the upright position, the back of the child's head is supported against the caregiver's chest.

Carrying in Upright

The beginning position is upright. To encourage use of the neck muscles in the development of head control, the child can be carried while in an upright position. The back of the child's head and trunk can be supported against the caregiver's chest (Intervention 5-16, *B*). The child can be carried, facing forward, in a snuggler or a backpack. For those children with slightly less head control, the caregiver can support around the back of the child's shoulders and head in the crook of an elevated elbow, as shown in Intervention 5-4, *A*. An older child needs to be in a more upright posture than is pictured, with the head supported.

Prone in a Hammock or on a Suspended Platform Swing

The beginning position is prone. Movement stimulation using a hammock or a suspended swing can give vestibular input to facilitate head control when the child is in a prone position. When using a mesh hammock, you should place pillows in the hammock and put the child on top of the pillows. The child's head should be supported when the child is not able to lift it from the midline (see Figure 5-7). As head control improves, support can gradually be withdrawn from the head. When vestibular stimulation is used, the change in direction of movement is detected, not the continuous rhythm, so be sure to vary the amount and intensity of the stimulation. Always watch for signs of overstimulation, such as flushing of the face, sweating, nausea, or vomiting. Vestibular stimulation may be used with children who are prone to seizures. However, you must be careful to avoid visual stimulation if the child's seizures are brought on by visual input. The child can be blindfolded or wear a baseball cap pulled down over the eyes to avoid visual stimulation.

Trunk Control

Positioning for Independent Sitting

As stated previously, sitting is the position of function for the upper extremities, because self-care activities, such as feeding, dressing, and bathing, require use of upper extremity, as does playing with objects. Positioning for independent sitting may be more crucial to the child's overall level of function than standing, especially if the child's ambulation potential is questionable. Independent sitting can be attained in many ways. Propped sitting can be independent, but it will not be functional unless one or both hands can be freed to perform meaningful activities. Progression of sitting based on degree of difficulty is found in Box 5-2.

Box 5-2

Progression of Sitting Postures Based on Degree of Difficulty

1. Sitting propped forward on both arms.
2. Sitting propped forward on one arm.
3. Sitting propped laterally on both arms.
4. Sitting propped laterally on one arm.
5. Sitting without hand support.
6. Side sitting with hand support.
7. Side sitting with no hand support.

Sitting Propped Forward on Both Arms

The beginning position is sitting, with the child bearing weight on extended arms. Various sitting postures can be used, such as abducted long sitting, ring sitting, or tailor sitting. The child must be able to sustain some weight on the arms. Preparatory activities can include forward protective extension or pushing up from prone on elbows. Gentle approximation through the shoulders into the hands can reinforce the posture. Weight bearing encourages a supporting response from the muscles of the shoulder girdle and the upper extremities to maintain the position.

Sitting Propped Forward on One Arm

The beginning position is sitting, as described in the previous paragraph. When bilateral propping is possible, weight shifting in the position can encourage unloading one extremity for reaching or pointing and can allow for propping on one arm.

Sitting Propped Laterally on One Arm

If the child cannot support all her weight on one arm laterally, then part of the child's weight can be borne by a bolster placed between the child's side and the supporting arm (Figure 5-11). Greater weight acceptance can be practiced by having the child reach with the other hand in the direction of the supporting hand. When the location of the object to be reached is varied, weight is shifted and the child may even attempt to change sitting postures.

FIGURE 5-11 Sitting propped laterally on one arm over a bolster.

Sitting without Hand Support

Progressing from support on one hand to no hand support can be encouraged by having the child shift weight away from the propped hand and then have her attempt to reach with the propped hand. A progression of propping on objects and eventually on the child's body can be used to center the weight over the sitting base. Engaging the child in clapping hands or batting a balloon may also afford opportunities to free the propping hand. Short sitting with the feet supported can also be used as a way to progress from sitting with hand support to using one hand to using no hands for support.

Side Sitting Propped on One Arm

Side sitting is a more difficult sitting posture in which to play because trunk rotation is required to maintain the posture to have both hands free for play. Some children are able to attain and maintain the posture only if they prop on one arm, a position that allows only one hand free for play and so negates any bimanual or two-handed activities. Again, the use of a bolster can make it easier to maintain the propped side-sitting posture. Asymmetric side sitting can be used to promote weight bearing on a hip on which the child may avoid bearing weight, as in hemiplegia. The lower extremities are asymmetrically positioned. The lower leg is externally rotated and abducted while the upper leg is internally rotated and adducted.

Side Sitting with No Hand Support

Achievement of independent side sitting can be encouraged in much the same way as described in the previous paragraph.

Movement Transitions that Encourage Trunk Rotation and Trunk Control

Once a child is relatively stable within a posture, the child needs to begin work on developing dynamic control. One of the first things to work on is shifting weight within postures in all directions, especially those directions used in making the transition or moving from one posture to another. The following are general descriptions of movement transitions commonly used in functional activities. These transitions can be used during therapy and can also be an important part of any home program.

Rolling from Supine to Prone Using the Lower Extremity

The beginning position is supine. Intervention 5-17 shows this transition. Using your right hand, grasp the child's right lower leg above the ankle and gently bring the child's knee toward the chest. Continue to move the child's leg over the body to initiate a rolling motion until the child is side-lying or prone. Alternate the side toward which you turn the child. Initially, infants roll as a log or as one complete unit. As they mature, they rotate or roll segmentally. If the lower extremity is used as the initiation point of the movement, the pelvis and lower trunk will rotate before the upper trunk and shoulders. As the child does more of the movement, you will need to do less and less until, eventually, the child can be enticed to roll using a sound or visual cue or by reaching with an arm.

Intervention 5-17

Rolling from Supine to Prone

Movement sequence of rolling supine to prone.
A. With the right hand, grasp the child's left lower leg above the ankle and gently bring her knee toward the chest.
B and C. Continue to move the child's leg over the body to initiate a rolling motion until the child is in the side-lying or prone position.

Coming to Sit from Supine

The beginning position is supine. Position yourself to one side of the child. Reach across the child's body and grasp the hand farthest away from you. Bring the child's arm across the body so the child has turned to the side and is pushing up with the other arm. Stabilize the child's lower extremities so the rotation occurs in the trunk and is separate from leg rotation.

Coming to Sit from Prone

The beginning position is prone. Elongate the side toward which you are going to roll the child. Facilitate the roll to side-lying and proceed as follows in coming to sit from side-lying as described in the next paragraph.

Coming to Sit from Side-Lying

The beginning position is with the child lying on one side, facing away from you with the head to the right. The child's lower extremities should be flexed. If lower extremity separation is desirable, the child's lower leg should be flexed and the top leg allowed to remain straight. Apply gentle pressure on the uppermost part of the child's shoulder in a downward and lateral direction. The child's head should right laterally, and the child should prop on the downside elbow. If the child experiences difficulty in moving to propping on one elbow, use one hand to assist the downward arm into the correct position. Your upper hand can now move to the child's top hip to direct the weight shift diagonally back over the flexed hip while your lower hand assists the child to push up on the downward arm. Part of this movement progression is shown in Intervention 5-2.

The child's movements can be halted anywhere during the progression to improve control within a specific range or to encourage a particular component of the movement. The child ends up sitting with or without hand support, or the support arm can be placed over a bolster or half-roll if more support is needed to maintain the end position. The child's sitting position can range from long abducted sitting, propping forward on one or both extended arms, to half-ring sitting with or without propping. These positions can be maintained without propping if the child is able to maintain them.

Sitting to Prone

This transition is used to return to the floor after playing in sitting. It can be viewed as the reverse of coming to sit from side-lying. In other words, the child laterally shifts weight to one side, first onto an extended arm and then to an elbow. Finally, the child turns over the arm and into the prone position. Some children with Down syndrome widely abduct their legs to lower themselves to prone. They lean forward onto outstretched arms as they continue to swing their legs farther out and behind their bodies. Children with hemiplegic involvement tend to move or to make the transition from sitting to prone position by moving over the noninvolved side of the body. They need to be encouraged to shift weight toward and move over the involved side and to put as much weight as possible on the involved upper extremity. Children with bilateral involvement need to practice moving to both sides.

Prone to Four-Point

The beginning position is prone. The easiest way to facilitate movement from prone to four-point is to use a combination of cues at the shoulders then the hips, as shown in Intervention 5-18. First, reach over the upper back of the child and lift gently. The child's arms should be flexed beside the upper body at the beginning of the movement. By lifting the shoulders, the child may bring the forearms under the body in a prone on elbows or puppy position. Continue to lift until the child is able to push up on extended arms. Weight bearing on extended arms is a prerequisite for assuming a hands-and-knees position. If the child requires assistance to maintain arms extended, a caregiver can support the child at the elbows, or pediatric air splints can be used. Next, lift the hips up and bring them back toward the feet, just far enough to achieve a four-point position. If the child needs extra support under the abdomen, a bolster, a small stool, or pillows can be used to help sustain the posture. Remember, four-point may just be a transitional position used by the child to go into kneeling or sitting. Not all developmentally normal children learn to creep on hands and knees. Depending on the predominant type of muscle tone, creeping may be too difficult to achieve for some children who demonstrate mostly flexor tone in the prone position. Children with developmental delays and minimal abnormal postural tone can be taught to creep.

Intervention 5-18

Promoting Progression from Prone to Kneeling

Facilitating the progression of movement from prone to prone on elbows to quadruped position using the shoulders and hips as key points of control.

A. Before beginning, the child's arms should be flexed beside the upper body. Reach over the upper back of the child and lift her shoulders gently.

B. As her shoulders are lifted, the child may bring her forearms under the body in a prone on elbows or puppy position. Continue to lift until the child is able to push up on extended arms.

C, D. Next, lift the child's hips up and bring them back toward her feet, just far enough to achieve a four-point position.

E. Promoting movement from quadruped to kneeling using the shoulders. The child extends her head before her hips. Use of the hips as a key point may allow for more complete extension of the hips before the head is extended.

Four-Point to Side Sitting

The beginning position is four-point. Once the child can maintain a hands-and-knees position, start work on moving to side sitting to either side. This transition works on control of trunk lowering while the child is in a rotated position. Dissociation of lower trunk movements from upper trunk

movements can also be practiced. A prerequisite is for the child to be able to control or tolerate diagonal weight shifts without falling. So many times, children can shift weight anteriorly and posteriorly, but not diagonally. If diagonal weight shifting is not possible, the child will often end up sitting on the heels or between the feet. The latter position can have a significant effect on the development of lower extremity bones and joints. The degree to which the child performs side sitting can be determined by whether the child is directed to go all the way from four-point to side sitting on the support surface, or by whether the movement is shortened to end with the child side sitting on pillows or a low stool. If movement to one side is more difficult, movement toward the other side should be practiced first.

Four-Point to Kneeling

The beginning position is four-point. Kneeling is accomplished from a four-point position by a backward weight shift followed by hip extension with the rest of the child's body extending over the hips (see Intervention 5-18, *E*). Some children with cerebral palsy try to initiate this movement by using head extension. The extension should begin at the hips and should progress cephalad (toward the head). A child can be assisted in achieving an upright or tall-kneeling position by placement of extended arms on benches of increasing height to aid in shifting weight toward the hips. In this way, the child can practice hip extension in smaller ranges before having to move through the entire range.

Kneeling to Side Sitting

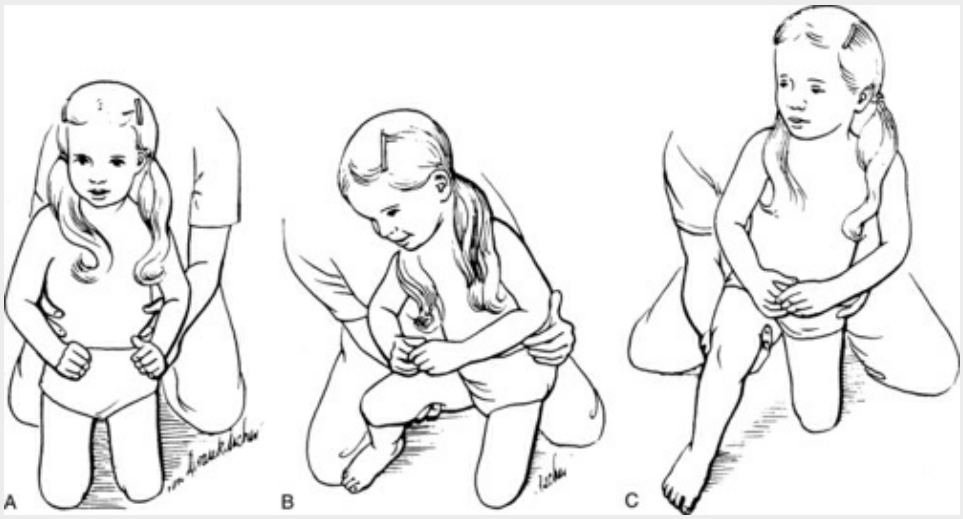
The beginning position is kneeling. Kneeling is an extended position because the child's back must be kept erect with the hips extended. Kneeling is also a dissociated posture because while the hips are extended, the knees are flexed and the ankles are passively plantar flexed to extend the base of support and to provide a longer lever arm. Lowering from kneeling requires eccentric control of the quadriceps. If this lowering occurs downward in a straight plane, the child will end up sitting on his feet. If the trunk rotates, the lowering can proceed to allow the child to achieve a side-sitting position.

Kneeling to Half-Kneeling

The beginning position is kneeling. The transition to half-kneeling is one of the most difficult to accomplish. Typically developing children often use upper limb support to attain this position. To move from kneeling to half-kneeling, the child must unweight one lower extremity. This is usually done by performing a lateral weight shift. The trunk on the side of the weight shift should lengthen or elongate while the opposite side of the trunk shortens in a righting reaction. The trunk must rotate away from the side of the body toward which the weight is shifted to assist the unweighted lower extremity's movement (Intervention 5-19). The unweighted leg is brought forward, and the foot is placed on the support surface. The resulting position is a dissociated one in which the forward leg is flexed at all joints, while the loaded limb is flexed at the knee and is extended at the hip and ankle (plantar flexed).

Intervention 5-19

Kneeling to Half-Kneeling



A. Kneel behind the child and place your hands on the child's hips.
B. Shift the child's weight laterally, but do not let the child fall to the opposite side, as is depicted. The child's trunk should elongate on the weight-bearing side, and with some trunk rotation, the child may be able to bring the opposite leg forward.
C. If the child is unable to bring the opposite leg forward, assist as depicted.

Coming to Stand

The beginning position is sitting. Coming to stand is probably one of the most functional movement transitions. Clinicians spend a great deal of time working with people of all ages on this movement transition. Children initially have to roll over to prone, move into a hands-and-knees position, creep over to a person or object, and pull up to stand through half-kneeling. The next progression in the developmental sequence adds moving into a squat from hands-and-knees and pulling the rest of the way up on someone or something. Finally, the 18-month-old can usually come to stand from a squat without assistance (Figure 5-12). As the abdominal muscles become stronger, the child in supine turns partially to the side, pushes with one arm to sitting, then goes to a squat and on up to standing. The most mature pattern is to come straight up from supine, to sitting with no trunk rotation, to assuming a squat, and then coming to stand. From prone, the most mature progression is to push up to four-point, to kneeling and half-kneeling, and then to standing. Independent half-kneeling is a difficult position because of the configuration of the base of support and the number of body parts that are dissociated from each other.

FIGURE 5-12 **A** to **C,** Coming to stand from a squat requires good lower extremity strength and balance.

Adaptive equipment for positioning and mobility

Decisions regarding adaptive equipment for positioning and mobility should be made based on input from the team working with the infant or child. Adaptive equipment can include bolsters, wedges, walkers, and wheeled mobility devices. The decision about what equipment to use, however, is ultimately up to the parents. Barriers to the use of adaptive equipment may include, but are not limited to, architectural, financial, cosmetic, and behavioral constraints. Sometimes, children do not like the equipment the therapist thinks is most therapeutic. Any piece of equipment should be used on a trial basis before being purchased. Regarding wheelchair selection, a team approach is advocated. Members of the assistive technology team may include the physical therapist, the occupational therapist, the speech therapist, the classroom teacher, the rehabilitation engineer, and the vendor of durable medical equipment. The child and family are also part of the team because they are the ones who will use the equipment. The physical therapist assistant may assist the physical therapist in gathering information regarding the need for a wheelchair or piece of adaptive equipment, as well as providing feedback on how well the child is able to use the device. For more information on assistive technology, refer to O'Shea and Bonfiglio (2012) or Jones and Puddefoot (2014).

The 90-90-90 rule for sitting alignment should be observed. In other words, the feet, knees, and hips should be flexed to approximately 90 degrees. This degree of flexion allows weight to be taken on the back of the thighs, as well as the ischial tuberosities of the pelvis. If the person cannot maintain the normal spinal curves while in sitting, thought should be given to providing lumbar support. The depth of the seat should be sufficient to support no more than ⅞ of the thigh (Wilson, 2001). Supporting more than ⅞ of the thigh leads to excessive pressure on the structures behind the knee, whereas less support may require the child to compensate by developing a kyphosis. Other potential problems, such as neck extension, scapular retraction, and lordosis of the lumbar spine, can occur if the child is not able to keep the trunk extended for long periods of time. In such cases, the child may feel as though he is falling forward. Lateral trunk supports are indicated to control asymmetries in the trunk that may lead to scoliosis.

Goals for Adaptive Equipment

Goals for adaptive equipment are listed in Box 5-3. Many of these goals reflect what is expected from positioning because adaptive equipment is used to reinforce appropriate positions. For example, positioning should give a child a postural base by providing postural alignment needed for normal movement. Changing the alignment of the trunk can have a positive effect on the child's ability to reach. Supported sitting may counteract the deforming forces of gravity, especially in a child with poor trunk control who cannot maintain an erect trunk posture. Simply supporting the child's feet takes much of the strain off trying to keep weight on the pelvis in a chair that is too high. When at all possible, the child's sitting posture with adaptive equipment should approximate that of a developmentally normal child's by maintaining all spinal curves.

Box 5-3

Anticipated Goals for Use of Adaptive Equipment

- Gain or reinforce typical movement.
- Achieve proper postural alignment.
- Prevent contractures and deformities.
- Increase opportunities for social and educational interactions.
- Provide mobility and encourage exploration.
- Increase independence in activities of daily living and self-help skills.
- Assist in improving physiologic functions.
- Increase comfort.

(Data from Wilson J: Selection and use of adaptive equipment. In Connolly BH, Montgomery PC, editors: Therapeutic Exercise in Developmental Disabilities, ed 2. Thorofare, NJ, 2001, Slack, pp. 167–182.)

What follows is a general discussion of considerations for positioning in supine and prone,

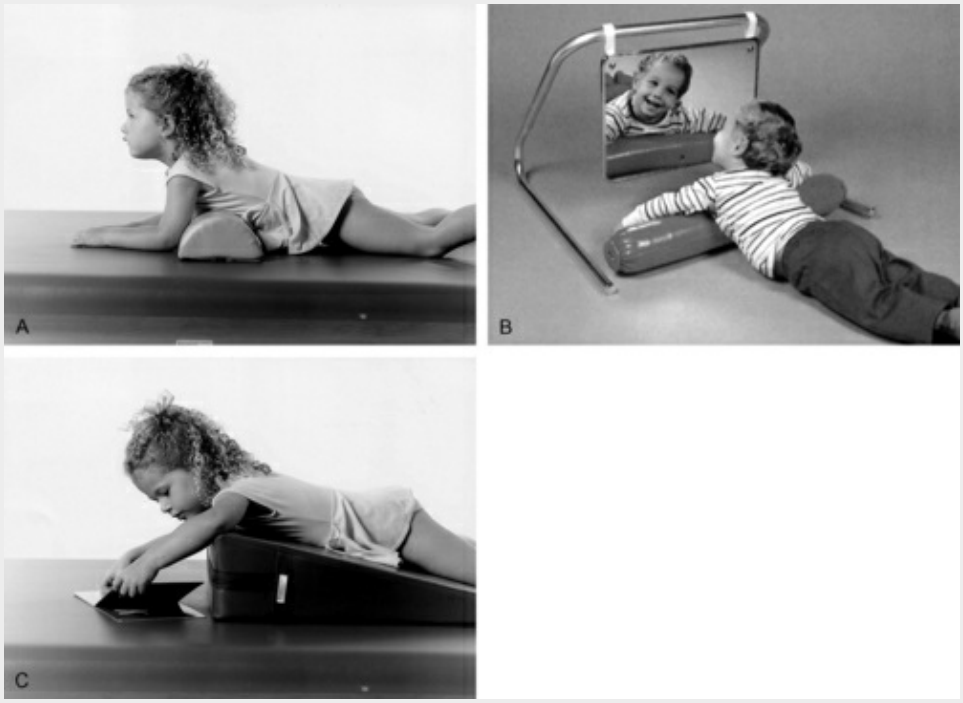
sitting, side-lying, and standing.

Supine and Prone Posture Positioning

Positioning the child prone over a half-roll, bolster, or wedge is often used to encourage head lifting, as well as weight bearing on forearms, elbows, and even extended arms. These positions are seen in Intervention 5-20. Supine positioning can be used to encourage symmetry of the child's head position and reaching forward in space. Wedges and half-rolls can be used to support the child's head and upper trunk in more flexion. Rolls can be placed under the knees, also to encourage flexion.

Intervention 5-20

Encouraging Head Lifting and Upper Extremity Weight Bearing Using Prone Supports



A. Positioning the child prone over a half-roll encourages head lifting and weight bearing on elbows and forearms.
B. Positioning the child prone over a bolster encourages head lifting and shoulder control.
C. Positioning the child prone over a wedge promotes upper extremity weight bearing and function.

(**B,** Courtesy Kaye Products, Hillsborough, NC.)

Sitting Posture Positioning

Many sitting postures are available for the typically developing child who moves and changes position easily. However, the child with a disability may have fewer positions from which to choose, depending on the amount of joint range, muscle extensibility, and head and trunk control required in each position. Children normally experiment with many different sitting postures, although some of these positions are more difficult to attain and maintain. Sitting on the floor with the legs extended is called long sitting. Long sitting requires adequate hamstring length (Figure 5-13, *A*) and is often difficult for children with cerebral palsy, who tend to sit on the sacrum with the

pelvis posteriorly tilted (Figure 5-14). During ring sitting on the floor, the soles of the feet are touching, the knees are abducted, and the hips are externally rotated such that the legs form a ring. Ring sitting is a comfortable sitting alternative because it provides a wider base of support; however, the hamstrings can and do shorten if this sitting posture is used exclusively (see Figure 5-13, *B*). Tailor sitting, or cross-legged floor sitting, also takes some strain off the hamstrings and allows some children to sit on their ischial tuberosities for the first time (see Figure 5-13, *C*). Again, the hamstrings will shorten if this sitting posture is the only one used by the child. The use of tailor sitting must be carefully evaluated in the presence of increased lower extremity muscle tone, especially in the hamstring and gastrocnemius-soleus muscles. In addition, in many of these sitting positions, the child's feet are passively allowed to plantar flex and invert, thereby encouraging tightening of the heel cords. If independent sitting is not possible, then adaptive seating should be considered.

FIGURE 5-13 Sitting postures. **A,** Long sitting. **B,** Ring sitting. **C,** Tailor sitting.

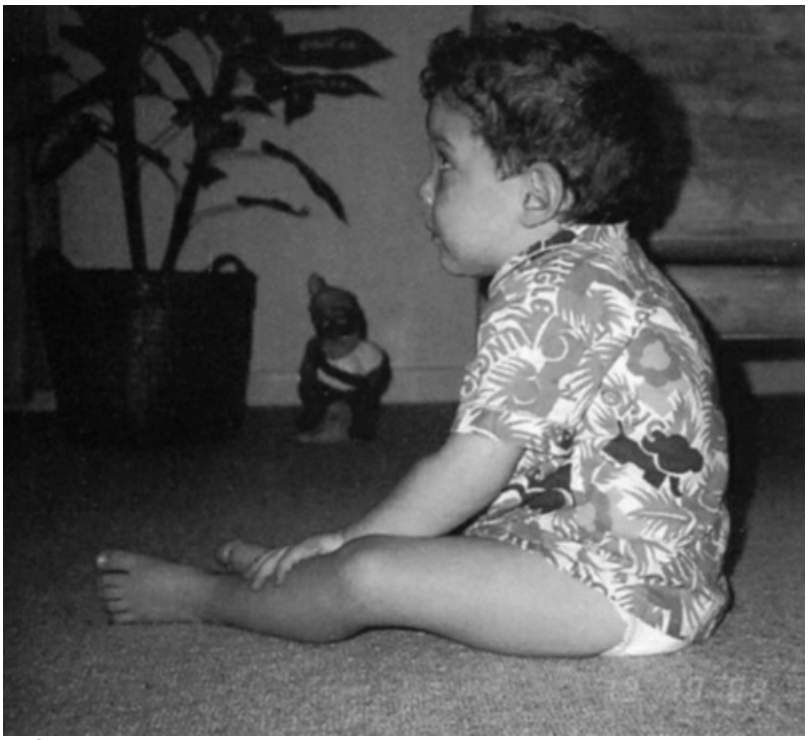


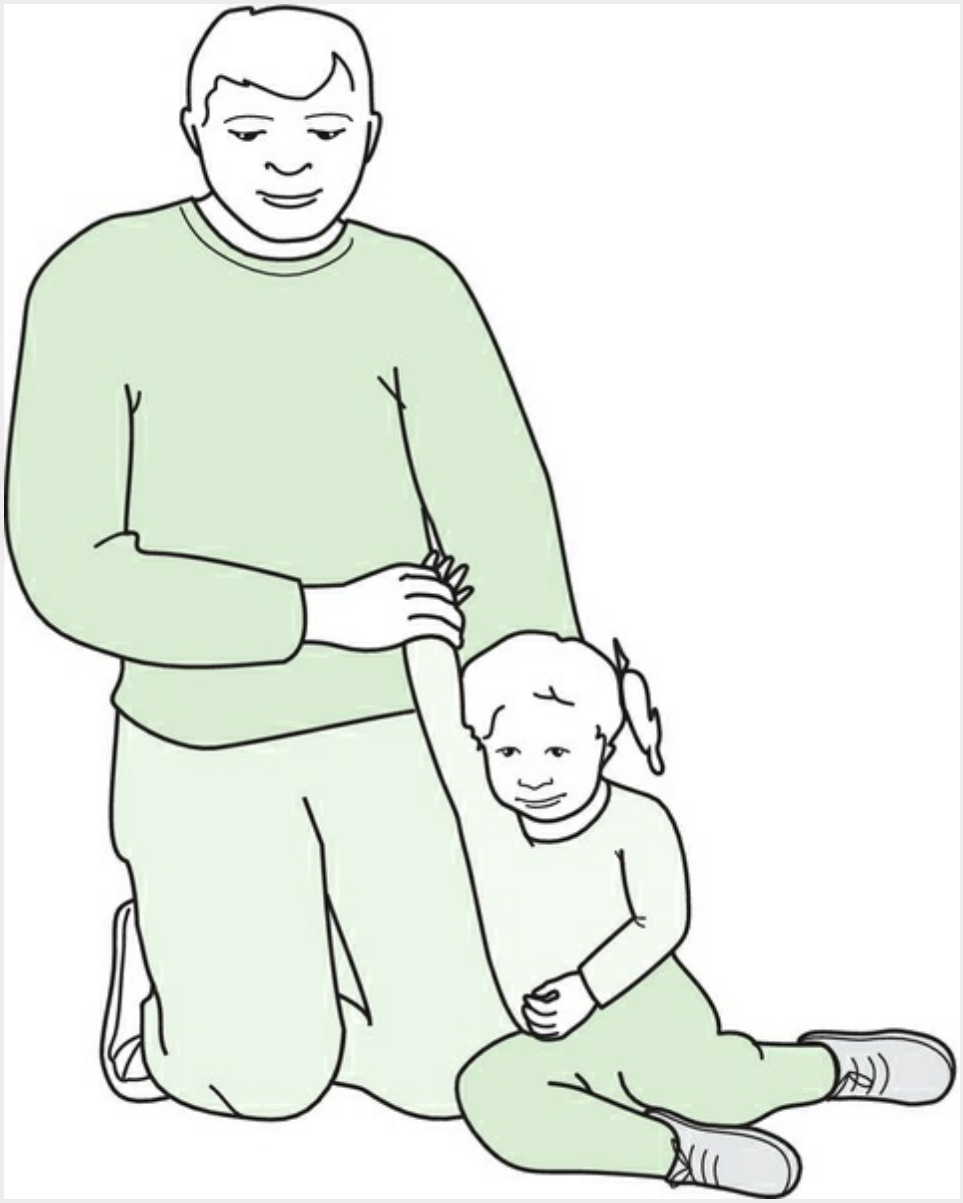
FIGURE 5-14 Sacral sitting. (From Burns YR, MacDonald J: *Physiotherapy and the growing child*, London, WB Saunders Company Ltd., 1996.)

The most difficult position to move into and out of appears to be side sitting. Side sitting is a rotated posture and requires internal rotation of one lower extremity and external rotation of the other lower extremity (Figure 5-15, *A*). Because of the flexed lower extremities, the lower trunk is rotated in one direction—a maneuver necessitating that the upper trunk be rotated in the opposite direction. A child may have to prop on one arm to maintain side sitting if trunk rotation is insufficient (Figure 5-15, *B*). Some children can side sit to one side but not to the other because of lower extremity range-of-motion limitations. In side sitting, the trunk on the weight-bearing side lengthens to keep the center of gravity within the base of support. Children with hemiplegia may not be able to side sit on the involved side because of an inability to elongate or rotate the trunk. They may be able to side sit only if they are propped on the involved arm, a maneuver that is often impossible. Because weight bearing on the involved side is a general goal with any person with hemiplegia, side sitting is a good position to work toward with these children (Intervention 5-21). Actively working into side sitting from a four-point or tall-kneeling position can be therapeutically beneficial because so many movement transitions involve controlled trunk rotation. Advantages of using the four-point position to practice this transition are that some of the weight is taken by the arms and less control is demanded of the lower extremities. As trunk control improves, you can assist the child in moving from tall kneeling on the knees to heel sitting and finally from tall kneeling to side sitting to either side. From tall kneeling, the base of support is still larger than in standing, and the arms can be used for support, if needed.

FIGURE 5-15 Side sitting. **A,** Without propping. **B,** With propping on one arm for support.

Intervention 5-21

Encouraging Weight Bearing on the Hemiplegic Hip



Place the child in side sitting on the hemiplegic side. Elevation of the hemiplegic arm promotes trunk and external rotation elongation.

Children with disabilities often have one preferred way to sit, and that sitting position can be detrimental to lower extremity development and the acquisition of trunk control. For example, W sitting puts the hips into extreme internal rotation and anteriorly tilts the pelvis, thereby causing the spine to be extended (see Figure 5-4, *A*). In this position, the tibias are subjected to torsional factors that, if sustained, can produce permanent structural changes. Children with low postural tone may accidentally discover this position by pushing themselves back between their knees. Once these children "discover" that they no longer need to use their hands for support, it becomes difficult to prevent them from using this posture. Children with increased tone in the hip adductor group also use this position frequently because they lack sufficient trunk rotation to move into side sitting from prone. Behavior modification has been typically used to attempt to change a child's habit of W sitting. Some children respond to verbal requests of "sit pretty," but often the parent is worn out from constantly trying to have the child correct the posture. As with most habits, if the child can be prevented from ever discovering W sitting, that is optimal. Otherwise, substitute another sitting alternative for the potentially deforming position. For example, if the only way the child can independently sit on the floor is by W sitting, place the child in a corner chair or other positioning device that requires a different lower extremity position.

Adaptive Seating

Many positions can be used to facilitate movement, but the best position for activities of daily living is upright sitting. How that posture is maintained may necessitate caregiver assistance or adaptive equipment for positioning. In sitting, the child can more easily view the world and can become more interested in interacting with people and objects within the environment. Ideally, the position should allow the child as much independence as possible while maintaining safety. Adaptive seating may be required to meet both these criteria. Some examples of seating devices are shown in Figure 5-16. The easier it is to use a piece of adaptive equipment, the more likely the caregiver will be to use it with the child.

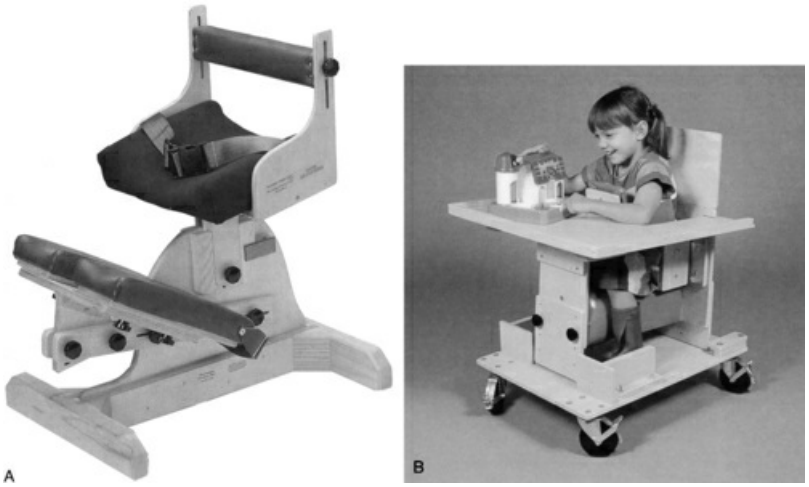


FIGURE 5-16 Adaptive seating devices. **A,** Posture chair. **B,** Bolster chair. **A,** (Courtesy TherAdapt Products, Inc., Bensenville IL. **B,** Courtesy Kaye Products, Inc., Hillsborough, NC.)

Children without good head control often do not have sufficient trunk control for sitting. Stabilizing the trunk alone may improve the child's ability to maintain the head in midline. Additionally, the child's arms can be brought forward and supported on a lap tray. If the child has poor head control, then some means to support the head will have to be incorporated into the seating device (see Figure 5-5). When sitting a child with poor head and trunk control, the child's back must be protected from the forces of gravity, which accentuate a forward-flexed spine. Although children need to be exposed to gravity while they are in an upright sitting position to develop trunk control, postural deviation can quickly occur if muscular control is not sufficient.

Children with low tone often demonstrate flared ribs (Figure 5-17) as a result of an absence of sufficient trunk muscle development to anchor the rib cage for breath support. Children with trunk muscle paralysis secondary to myelodysplasia may require an orthotic device to support the trunk during sitting. Although the orthosis can assist in preventing the development of scoliosis, it may not totally prevent its development because of the inherent muscle imbalance. The orthosis may or may not be initially attached to lower extremity bracing.

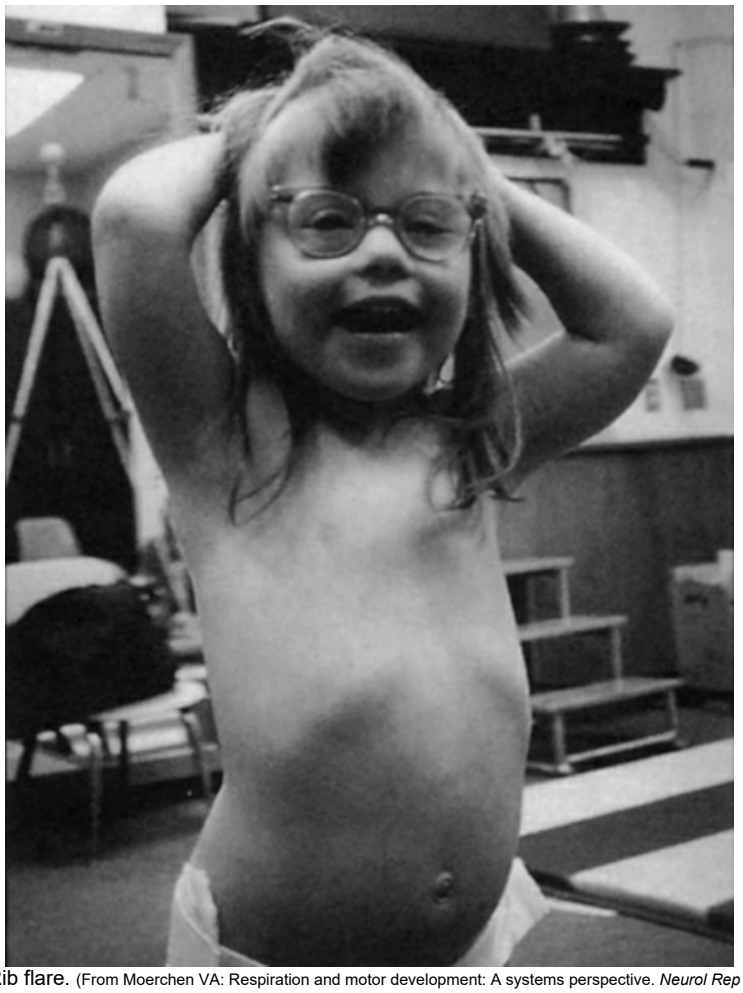


FIGURE 5-17 Rib flare. (From Moerchen VA: Respiration and motor development: A systems perspective. *Neurol Rep* 18:9, 1994. Reprinted from the Neurology Report with the permission of the Neurology Section, APTA.)

Adaptive seating is widely used for children with disabilities despite the fact that there is limited research supporting its effectiveness. In the most recent systematic review of effectiveness of adaptive seating for children with cerebral palsy, the authors concluded there was limited high quality research available (Chung et al., 2008). Despite that finding, some positive effects on participation, play, and family life have been documented (Rigby et al., 2009; Ryan et al., 2009). A bolster chair is depicted in Figure 5-15, *B*. Sitting on a chair with an anteriorly inclined seat, such as seen in Figure 5-15, *A*, was found to improve trunk extension (Miedaner, 1990; Sochaniwskyz et al., 1991). Others (Dilger and Ling, 1986) found that sitting a child with cerebral palsy on a posteriorly inclined wedge decreased her kyphosis (Intervention 5-22). The evidence is not conclusive for whether seat bases should be anteriorly or posteriorly inclined (Chung et al., 2008). Seating requirements must be individually assessed, depending on the therapeutic goals. A child may benefit from several different types of seating, depending on the positioning requirements of the task being performed.

Intervention 5-22

Facilitating Trunk Extension

Sitting on a posteriorly inclined wedge may facilitate trunk extension.

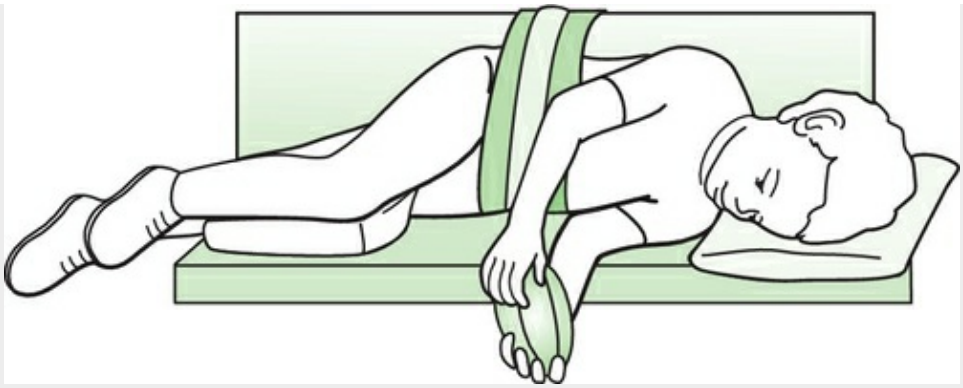
Adjustable-height benches are excellent therapeutic tools because they can easily grow with the child throughout the preschool years. They can be used in assisting children with making the transition from sitting to standing, as well as in providing a stable sitting base for dressing and playing. The height of the bench is important to consider, relative to the amount of trunk control demanded from the child. Depending on the child's need for pelvic support, a bench allows the child to use trunk muscles to maintain an upright trunk posture during play or to practice head and trunk postural responses when weight shifts occur during dressing or playing. Additional pelvic support can be added to some therapeutic benches, as seen in Figure 5-2. The bench can be used to pull up on and to encourage cruising.

Side-Lying Position

Side-lying is frequently used to orient a child's body around the midline, particularly in cases of severe involvement or when the child's posture is asymmetric when the child is placed either prone or supine. In a child with less severe involvement, side-lying can be used to assist the child to develop control of flexors and extensors on the same side of the body. Side-lying is often a good sleeping posture because the caregiver can alternate the side the child sleeps on every night. For sleeping, a long body pillow can be placed along the child's back to maintain side-lying, with one end of the pillow brought between the legs to separate them and the other end under the neck or head to maintain midline orientation. Lower extremities should be flexed if the child tends to be in a more extended posture. For classroom use, a commercial side lyer or a rolled-up blanket (Intervention 5-23) may be used to promote hand regard, midline play, or orientation.

Intervention 5-23

Using a Side-Lyer



Use of a side lyer ensures that a child experiences a side-lying position and may promote hand regard, midline play, or orientation. Positioning in side lying is excellent for dampening the effects of most tonic reflexes.

Positioning in Standing

Positioning in standing is often indicated for its positive physiologic benefits, including growth of the long bones of the lower extremities. Standing can also encourage alerting behavior, peer interaction, and upper extremity usage for play and self-care. The upper extremities can be weight bearing or free to move because they are no longer needed to support the child's posture. The upright orientation can afford the child perceptual opportunities. Many devices can be used to promote an upright standing posture, including prone and supine standers, vertical standers, standing frames, and standing boxes. Standing programs can have beneficial effects on bone mineral density, hip development, range of motion and spasticity (Paleg et al., 2014).

A standing device is indicated for children who are nonambulatory, minimally ambulatory, or who are not active in standing, as long as there are no contraindications. For hip health, standing should be introduced to children between 9 and 10 months of age. A posture management program should include a passive component using a prone/supine or vertical standing device and a dynamic component in which the stander moves, vibrates, changes from sit to stand, or is propelled by the user (Paleg et al., 2013) (Figure 5-18).

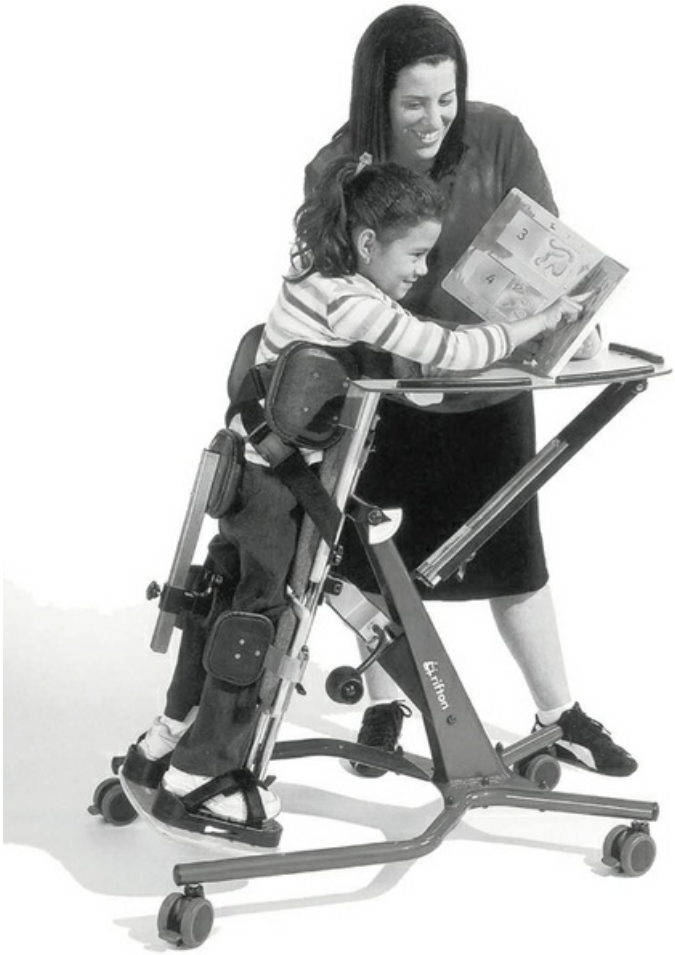


FIGURE 5-18 Prone stander with table attachment. (Courtesy Rifton Equipment, Rifton, NY.)

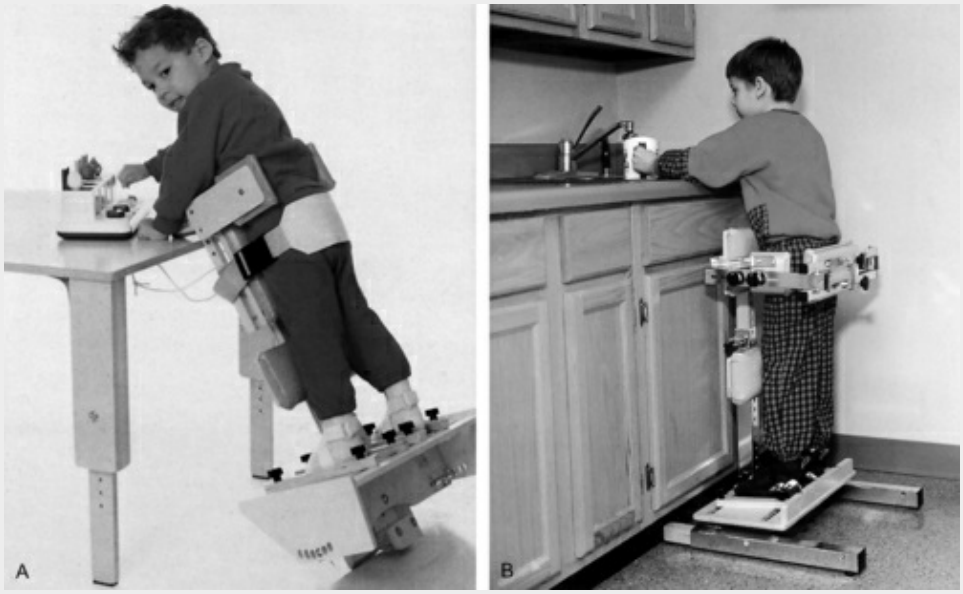
Prone standers support the anterior chest, hips, and anterior surface of the lower extremities. The angle of the stander determines how much weight is borne by the lower extremities and feet. When the angle is slightly less than 90 degrees, weight is optimal through the lower extremities and feet (Aubert, 2008). If the child exhibits neck hyperextension or a high-guard position of the arms when in the prone stander, its continued use needs to be reevaluated by the supervising physical therapist. Use of a prone stander is indicated if the goal is physiologic weight bearing or hands-free standing.

Supine standers are an alternative to prone standers for some children. A supine stander is similar to a tilt table, so the degree of tilt determines the amount of weight borne by the lower extremities and feet. For children who exhibit too much extension in response to placement in a prone stander, a supine stander may be a good alternative. However, postural compensations develop in some children with the use of a supine stander. These compensations include kyphosis from trying to overcome the posterior tilt of the body. Asymmetric neck postures or a Moro response may be accentuated, because the supine stander perpetuates supine positioning. Use of a supine stander in these situations may be contraindicated.

Vertical standers support the child's lower extremities in hip and knee extension and allow for complete weight bearing. The child's hands are free for upper extremity tasks, such as writing at a blackboard (Intervention 5-24). The child controls the trunk. The need to function within different environments must be considered when one chooses adaptive equipment for standing. In a classroom, the use of a stander is often an alternative to sitting, and because the device is adjustable, more than one child may be able to benefit from its use. Continual monitoring of a child's response to any type of stander should be part of the physical therapist's periodic reexamination of the child. The physical therapist assistant should note changes in posture and abilities of any child using any piece of adaptive equipment.

Intervention 5-24

Vertical Standers



Vertical standers support the child's lower extremities in hip and knee extension and allow for varying amounts of weight bearing depending on the degree of inclination. The child's hands are free for upper extremity tasks, such as writing at a blackboard, playing with toys (**A**), or working in the kitchen (**B**).

(Courtesy Kaye Products, Hillsborough, NC.)

Dosage for standing programs has recently been presented by Paleg et al. (2013, 2014) and are in Table 5-3.

Table 5-3

Recommended Optimal Dosages for Pediatric Supported Standing Programs

Outcome	Dosage	Level of Evidence
Bone mineral density	60–90 minutes/day	Levels 2–4
Hip biomechanics	60 minutes/day in 30°-60° of total bilateral hip abduction	Levels 2–5
Range of motion	45–60 minutes/day	Level 2
Spasticity	30–45 minutes/day	Level 2

Source: Paleg, Smith and Glickman, 2014.

Positioning in upright standing is important for mobility, specifically ambulation. Orthotic support devices and walkers are routinely used with young children with myelodysplasia. Ambulation aids can also be important to children with cerebral palsy who do not initially have the balance to walk independently. Two different types of walkers are most frequently used in children with motor deficit. The standard walker is used in front of the child, and the reverse posture control walker is used behind the child. These walkers can have two wheels in the front. The traditional walker is then called a rollator. Difficulties with the standard walker include a forward trunk lean. The child's line of gravity ends up being anterior to the feet, with the hips in flexion. When the child pushes a reverse walker forward, the bar of the walker contacts the child's gluteal muscles and gives a cue to extend the hips. Because the walker is behind the child, the walker cannot move too far ahead of the child. The reverse walker can have two or four wheels. In studies conducted in children with cerebral palsy, use of the reverse walker (Figure 5-19) resulted in positive changes in gait and upright posture (Levangie et al., 1989). Each child needs to be evaluated on an individual basis by the physical therapist to determine the appropriate assistive device for ambulation. The device should provide stability, safety, and an energy-efficient gait pattern.

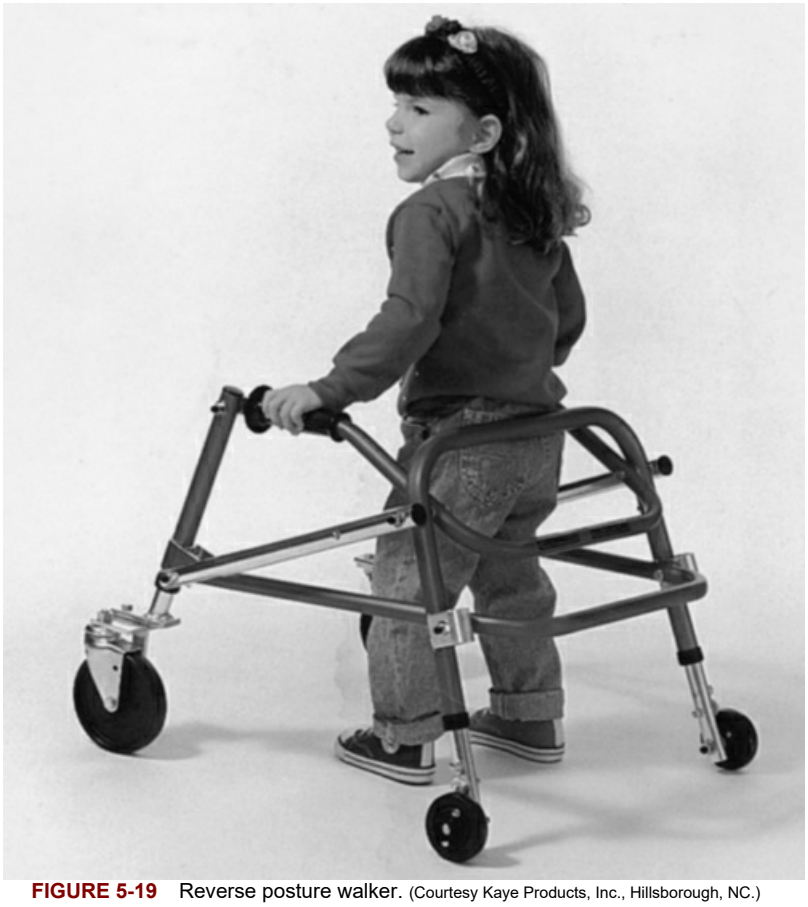


FIGURE 5-19 Reverse posture walker. (Courtesy Kaye Products, Inc., Hillsborough, NC.)

Functional movement in the context of the child's world

Any movement that is guided by the clinician should have functional meaning. This meaning could be derived as part of a sequence of movement, as a transition from one posture to another, or as part of achieving a task such as touching a toy or exploring an object. Play is a child's occupation and the way in which the child most frequently learns the rules of moving. Physical therapy incorporates play as a means to achieve therapeutic goals. Structuring the environment in which the treatment session occurs and planning which toys you want the child to play with are all part of therapy. Setting up a situation that challenges the child to move in new ways is motivating to most children. Some suggestions from Linder (2008) and Ratliffe (1998) for toys and strategies to use with children of different ages can be found in Table 5-4.

Table 5-4

Appropriate Toys and Intervention Strategies for Working with Children

Age	Toys	Intervention Strategies
Infants	Rattles, plastic keys Stuffed animals Mobiles Busy box Blocks Mirror Push toys, ride-on toys Plastic cups, dishes	Smiling, cooing, tickling while face to face Present interesting toys Play peek-a-boo; play "So big!" Dangle toys that make noise when contacted Push, poke, pull, turn Encourage reaching, changing positions by moving toys; demonstrate banging objects together, progress to knocking down Tummy time Demonstrate making things "go" Pretend to drink and eat; take turns
Toddlers	Stackable or nesting toys, blocks Farm set, toy animals Grocery cart, pretend food Dolls Dump truck Water toys Pop-up toys Push toys, ride-on toys Books	Demonstrate stacking; use different size containers to put things in Set up enticing environments and stories Pretend to pour and feed the baby doll Encourage the child to include the doll in multistep routines like going to bed Pretend to fill and empty a dump truck Include in bath time Making things "go" Demonstrate making things "go" Read and describe, turn pages
Preschoolers	Balls, plastic bats, blocks Pillows, blankets, cardboard boxes Obstacle course Play dough, clay Sand box Books Puzzles, peg board, string beads Building toys, such as blocks Dress-up clothes, costumes Musical toys, instruments Playground equipment	Gross motor play, rough housing Build a fort, play house Seek and find objects, spatial concepts of over, under, around, and through Manipulate shapes Encourage digging, pouring, finding buried objects Encourage the child to tell the story Encourage and assist as needed Construct real or imaginary things Create scenarios for child or encourage the child to create scripts and then follow her lead Incorporate music and dance into play with instruments and costumes Kickball or "duck, duck, goose"
School-age	Playground equipment Bicycles Balls, nets, bats, goals Dolls and action figures Beads to string Blocks Magic sets Board games Roller skates, ice skates Building sets Computer games	Imaginative games (pirates, ballet dancers, gymnastics) Ride around neighborhood, go on a treasure hunt Encourage peer play and sports Develop scripts as a basis for play Start with large and move to smaller beads Copy design Create illusions Give child sense of success Physical play, endurance Constructive play Use adaptive switches if needed

From Linder T: Transdisciplinary play-based intervention, ed 2. Baltimore, 2008, Brooks; Ratliffe KT: Clinical pediatrics physical therapy: a guide for the physical therapy team. St Louis, 1998, CV Mosby, pp. 65–66.

Play can and should be a therapy goal for any young child with a motor deficit. Play fosters language and cognition in young children in addition to providing motivation to move. Parents need to be coached to play with their child in a meaningful way. Play encourages self-generated sensorimotor experiences that will support a child's development in all domains. A developmental hierarchy of play is found in Table 5-5. Play gets more complex with age. Initially, play is sensorimotor in nature, a term Piaget used to describe the first stage of intellectual development.

The child explores the sensory and motor aspects of his or her world while establishing a social bond with the caregivers. At the end of the first year, sensorimotor play evolves into functional play. The infant begins to understand the functional use of objects. The child plays functionally with realistic toys; for example, combing her hair or drinking from a cup. This is the beginning of pretend play although some categorize it as functional play with pretense. As the child gets older, objects are used to represent other objects not present, for example, a banana is used as a telephone or a stick becomes a magic wand. Pretend play is one of the most important forms of play, because in order to demonstrate pretend play, the child has to have a mental representation of the object in mind.

Table 5-5

Play Development

Age	Type of Play	Purpose/Child Actions
0–6 months 6–12 months	Sensorimotor play: social and exploratory play Sensorimotor play→functional play	Establish attachment with caregivers Explore the world Learn cause and effect
12–24 months 18–24 months	Functional/relational play Pretend play emerges	Learn functional use of objects and to orient play toward peers Play functionally with realistic toys Pretend one object can symbolically represent another object
2–5 years	Pretend play Constructive play Physical play	Pretend dolls and animals are real Develop scripts as a basis for play Draw and do puzzles Engage in rough and tumble play, jumping, chasing, swinging, sliding
6–10 years	Games with rules	Problem solving, think abstractly Negotiate rules Play with friends

Pretend play becomes more and more imaginative during preschool years and can be described as sociodramatic play. Children who demonstrate pretend play are considered socially competent (Howes and Matheson, 1992). Increasing the complexity of play in children with neurologic deficits should be a goal in any physical therapy plan of care. Additionally, two other forms of play are seen during the preschool years—constructive and physical play. Constructive play involves drawing, doing puzzles, and constructing things out of blocks, cardboard boxes, or any other material at hand. Physical play is very important during this time as physical play develops fundamental motor skills that are prerequisites for games and sports. The last stage of play is games with rules. Physical play is to be encouraged to provide a foundation for a lifetime of fitness as well as fun. Linder identified six principles for supporting appropriate complexity of play that can be used with children at all levels (Box 5-4).

Box 5-4

Principles to Support Play Complexity

1. Provide opportunities for many kinds of play
   - Take into consideration cultural differences regarding floor play or messy play.
   - Example: Locate areas of the home (inside or outside) that would support the child's play.
   - Example: Demonstrate how to play with common everyday objects.
2. Increase the play level
   - The parent or caregiver can demonstrate a higher level of play by modeling.
   - Plan play dates with a child who plays at a higher level of play, the child will provide the modeling.
   - Example: Change the child's activity of putting blocks into a cup to pretending to pour something from the cup or drinking from the cup. The parent could pretend to take a bite of the block as if it were a piece of cake.
3. Add materials
   - Add a new object once a child is repeating actions in order to expand the child's routine.
   - Example: Give a cloth to a child playing with a doll to entice the child to cover the doll with the cloth, or to use the cloth as a burp cloth.
4. Add language
   - Add sounds, words, and/or rhythms to the play to enrich the context and encourage attention.
   - Describing what is happening increases the child's vocabulary.
   - Example: The child is moving a toy bus across the floor and the parent makes appropriate sounds or asks what sounds the bus would make. Sing the wheels on the bus.
5. Add actions

– Add an action once a child repeats an action in order to expand the child's routine.
– Example: The child pretends to put on a hat; expand that action to then pretending to go for a walk in the park or ask what would the child need to put on or take with her if it were raining?

6. Add ideas
– Present novel ideas to the child that build on what the child is already thinking.
– Example: Suggest making a card for the teacher and providing the child with paper, markers, and/or glitters to combine on her own.
– Example: Provide the child with various hats or a dress up box that might trigger scenarios like being a fireman, postman, cowboy, or a chef.

(Modified from Linder T: Transdisciplinary Play-Based Intervention, ed 2. Baltimore, 2008 Brooks.)

Chapter summary

Children with neurologic impairments, regardless of the cause of the deficits, need to move and play. Part of any parent's role is to foster the child's movement exploration of the world. To be a good explorer, the child has to come in contact with objects and people of the world. By teaching the family how to assist the child to move and play, the clinician can encourage full participation in life. By supporting areas of the child's body that the child cannot support, functional movement of other body parts, such as eyes, hands, and feet, can be engaged in object exploration. The adage that if the individual cannot get to the world, the world should be brought to the individual, is true. The greatest challenge for physical therapists and physical therapist assistants who work with children with neurologic deficits may be to determine how to bring the world to a child with limited head or trunk control or limited mobility. Therapists need to foster function, family, fun, friends, and fitness as measures of participation in life (Rosenbaum and Gorter, 2011). There is never just one answer but rather there are many possibilities to the problems presented by these children. The typical developmental sequence has always been a good source of ideas for positioning and handling. Additional ideas can come from the child's play interests and curiosity and the imagination of the therapist and the family.

Review questions

1. What two activities should always be part of any therapeutic intervention?
2. What are the purposes of positioning?
3. What sensory inputs help to develop body and movement awareness?
4. Identify two of the most important handling tips.
5. How can play complexity be expanded in therapy?
6. Give three reasons to use adaptive equipment.
7. What are the two most functional postures (positions to move from)?
8. What are the disadvantages of using a quadruped position?
9. Why is side sitting a difficult posture?
10. Why is standing such an important activity?

Case studies

Reviewing Positioning and Handling Care: Josh, Angie, and Kelly

For each of the case studies listed here, identify appropriate ways to pick up, carry, feed, or dress the child. Identify any adaptive equipment that could assist in positioning the child for a functional activity. Give an example of how the parent could play with the child.

Case 1

Josh is a 6-month-old with little head control who has been diagnosed as a floppy infant. He does not like the prone position. However, when he is prone, he is able to lift his head and turn it from

side to side, but he does not bear weight on his elbows. He eats slowly and well but tires easily.

Case 2

Angie is a 9-month-old who exhibits good head control and fair trunk control. She has low tone in her trunk and increased tone in her lower extremities (hamstrings, adductors, and gastrocnemius-soleus complex). When her mother picks her up under the arms, Angie crosses her legs and points her toes. When Angie is in her walker, she pushes herself backward. Her mother reports that Angie slides out of her high chair, which makes it difficult for her to finger feed.

Case 3

Kelly is a 3-year-old who has difficulty in maintaining any posture against gravity. Head control and trunk control are inconsistent. She can bear weight on her arms if they are placed for her. She can sit on the floor for a short time when she is placed in tailor sitting. When startled, she throws her arms up in the air (Moro reflex) and falls. She wants to help get herself dressed and undressed.

Possible suggestions

Case 1

Picking up/Carrying: Use maximum head and trunk support, facilitate rolling to the side, and gather him in a flexed position before picking him up. You could carry him prone to increase tolerance for the position and for the movement experience.

Feeding: Use an infant seat.

Positioning for Functional Activity: Position him prone over a half-roll with toys at eye level.

Positioning for Play: Position him on your tummy while you are lying on the floor, make eye contact and noises to encourage head lifting and pushing up on arms. Engage child in vocal play and mouth games (tickling and making bubbles). The caregiver should be face to face on the floor while encouraging and assisting in pushing up in prone as seen in Figure 5-20.

FIGURE 5-20 Caregiver encouraging the infant to push up from prone.

Case 2

Picking up/Carrying: From sitting, pick her up, ensuring lower extremity flexion and separation if possible. Carry her astride your hip, with her trunk and arms rotated away from you.

Feeding: Attach a seatbelt to the high chair. Support her feet so the knees are higher than the hips. Towel rolls can be used to keep the knees abducted. A small towel roll can be used at the low back to encourage a neutral pelvis.

Mobility: Consult with the supervising therapist about the use of a walker for this child.

Positioning for Functional Activity: Sit her astride a bolster to play at a table. A bolster chair with a tray can also be used. A bolster or the caregiver's leg can be used to work on undressing and dressing. Reaching down for clothing and returning to upright sitting can work the trunk muscles.

Positioning for Play: Sit her on a bench and put objects such as blocks on a low table in front of her. Practice coming to stand with her feet sufficiently under her to keep her heels on the ground. Help her come to stand and play with the toys or objects on the low table. She could also sit astride

a bolster and come to stand to play. Getting on and off the bolster would be fun, as well as picking the objects to reach for. Consider partially hiding objects under a cloth to have the child retrieve a hidden object.

Introduce toys that can be pushed or pulled while in a standing position. Pretend to have tea parties with the use of plastic plates and cups.

Case 3

Picking up/Carrying: Assist her to move into sitting using upper extremity weight bearing for stability. Pick her up in a flexed posture and place her in a corner seat on casters to transport or in a stroller.

Dressing: Position her in ring sitting on the floor, with the caregiver ring sitting around her for stability. Stabilize one of her upper extremities and guide her free arm to assist with dressing. Another option could include sitting on a low dressing bench with her back against the wall and being manually guided to assist with dressing.

Positioning for Functional Activity: Use a corner floor sitter to give a maximum base of support. She could sit in a chair with arms, her feet supported, the table at chest height, and one arm holding on to the edge of the table while the other arm manipulates toys or objects.

Positioning for Play: Seated in a chair with arms and feet on the floor, she can push a large, weighted ball to the parent. Play in tall kneeling with one arm extended for support on a bench while placing puzzle pieces. Engage her in a story related to the theme of the puzzle. Ask her to dramatize an event in her life. Incorporate songs and books into activities requiring static holding and controlling movement transitions.

References

Aubert EK. Adaptive equipment and environmental aids for children with disabilities. In: Tecklin JS, ed. *Pediatric physical therapy.* ed 4 Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 2008:389–414.

Ayres AJ. *Sensory integration and learning disorders.* Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services; 1972.

Charman T, Baron-Cohen S. Brief report: prompted pretend play in autism. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 1997;27:325–332.

Chung J, Evans J, Lee C, et al. Effectiveness of adaptive seating on sitting posture and postural control in children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2008;20:303–317.

de Sousa AM, de Franca Barros J, de Sousa Neto BM. Postural control in children with typical development and children with profound hearing loss. *Int J Gen Med.* 2012;5:433–439.

Dilger NJ, Ling W. The influence of inclined wedge sitting on infantile postural kyphosis. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1986;28:23.

Dusing SC, Harbourne RT. Variability in postural control during infancy: implications for development, assessment, and intervention. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:1838–1849.

Howes C, Matheson CC. Sequences in the development of competent play with peers: social and social pretend play. *Dev Psychol.* 1992;28:961–974.

Jarrold C. A review of research into pretend play in autism. *Autism.* 2003;7:379–390.

Jennings KD, Connors RE, Stegman CE. Does a physical handicap alter the development of mastery motivation during the preschool years? *J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry.* 1988;27:312–317.

Jones M, Puddefoot T. Assistive technology: positioning and mobility. In: Effgen SK, ed. *Meeting the physical therapy needs of children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:599–619.

Koomar JA, Bundy CA. Creating direct intervention from theory. In: Bundy AC, Lane SJ, Murray EA, eds. *Sensory integration: theory and practice.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002:261–308.

Lane SJ. Sensory modulation. In: Bundy AC, Lane SJ, Murray EA, eds. *Sensory integration: theory and practice.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002:101–122.

Levangie P, Chimera M, Johnston M, et al. Effects of posture control walker versus standard rolling walker on gait characteristics of children with spastic cerebral palsy. *Phys Occup Ther Pediatr.* 1989;9:1–18.

Linder T. *Transdisciplinary play-based intervention.* ed 2 Baltimore: Brooks; 2008.

Livingstone N, McPhillips M. Motor skill deficits in children with partial hearing. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2011;53(9):836–842.

Lobo MA, Galloway JC. Enhanced handling and positioning in early infancy advances development throughout the first year. *Child Dev.* 2012;83:1290–1302.

Lobo MA, Harbourne RT, Dusing SC, McCoy SW. Grounding early intervention: physical therapy cannot just be about motor skills anymore. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93:94–103.

Martin SC. *Pretend play in children with motor disabilities (unpublished doctoral dissertation).* Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky; 2014.

Miedaner JA. The effects of sitting positions on trunk extension for children with motor impairment. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 1990;2:11–14.

O'Shea RK, Bonfiglio BS. Assistive technology. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 St Louis: Saunders; 2012.

Paleg G, Smith B, Glickman L. Systematic review and evidence-based clinical recommendations for dosing of pediatric-supported standing programs. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2013;25:232–247.

Paleg G, Smith B, Glickman L: Evidence-based clinical recommendations for dosing of pediatric supported standing programs. Presented at the APTA Combined Sections Meeting, Feb 4, 2014, Las Vegas, NV.

Pfeifer LI, Pacciulio AM, dos Santos CA, dos Santos JL, Stagnitti KE. Pretend play of children with cerebral palsy. *Am J Occup Ther.* 2011;31:390–402.

Ratliffe KT. *Clinical pediatric physical therapy.* St Louis: CV Mosby; 1998.

Rigby PJ, Ryan SE, Campbell KA. Effect of adaptive seating devices on the activity performance of children with cerebral palsy. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90:1389–1395.

Rosenbaum P, Gorter JW. The 'F-words' in childhood disability: I swear this is how we should think!. *Child Care Health Dev.* 2011;38(4):457–463.
Rutherford MD, Young GS, Hepburn S, Rogers SJ. A longitudinalstudy of pretend play in autism. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 2007;1024–1039.
Ryan SE, Campbell KA, Rigby PJ, et al. The impact of adaptive seating devices on the lives of young children with cerebral palsy and their families. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90:27–33.
Sochaniwskyz A, Koheil R, Bablich K, et al. Dynamic monitoring of sitting posture for children with spastic cerebral palsy. *Clin Biomech.* 1991;6:161–167.
Tassone JC, Duey-Holtz A. Spine concerns in the Special Olympian with Down syndrome. *Sports Med Arthrosc.* 2008;16(1):55–60.
Wilson JM. Selection and use of adaptive equipment. In: Connolly BH, Montgomery PC, eds. *Therapeutic exercise in developmental disabilities.* ed 2 Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2001:167–182.
World Health Organization. Motor development study: windows of achievement for six gross motor milestones. *Acta Paediatr Suppl.* 2006;450:86–95.

CHAPTER 6

Cerebral Palsy

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe the incidence, etiology, and classification of cerebral palsy (CP).
2. Describe the clinical manifestations and associated deficits seen in children with CP throughout the life span.
3. Discuss the physical therapy management of children with CP throughout the life span.
4. Discuss the medical and surgical management of children with CP.
5. Describe the role of the physical therapist assistant in the treatment of children with CP.
6. Discuss the importance of activity and participation throughout the life span of a child with CP.

Introduction

Cerebral palsy (CP) is a group of disorders of posture and movement that occur secondary to damage to the developing fetal or infant brain. The damage is static and may be called a *static encephalopathy* because it represents a problem with brain structure or function. Once an area of the brain is damaged, the damage does not spread to other areas of the brain, as occurs in a progressive neurologic disorder, such as brain tumor or spinal muscle atrophy. However, because the brain is connected to many different areas of the nervous system, the lack of function of the originally damaged areas may interfere with the ability of these other areas to function properly. Despite the static nature of the brain damage in CP, the clinical manifestations of the disorder may appear to change as the child grows older. Although movement demands increase with age, the child's motor abilities may not be able to change quickly enough to meet these demands. In addition to the motor deficits, impairments in communication, cognition, sensation, perception, and behavior may be evident.

CP is characterized by decreased function, activity limitations, delayed motor development, and impaired muscle tone and movement patterns. How the damage to the central nervous system manifests depends on the developmental age of the child at the time of the brain injury and on the severity and extent of that injury. In CP, the brain is damaged early in the developmental process, and this injury results in disruption of voluntary movement. When damage occurs before birth or during the birth process, it is considered *congenital cerebral palsy*. Up to 80% of the cases of CP are due to prenatal factors (Longo and Hankins, 2009). The earlier in prenatal development that a system of the body is damaged, the more likely it is that the damage will be severe. The infant's nervous system is extremely vulnerable during the first trimester of intrauterine development. Brain damage early in gestation is more likely to produce moderate to severe motor involvement of the entire body (quadriplegia), whereas damage later in gestation may result in primarily lower extremity motor involvement (diplegia). If the brain is damaged after birth, the CP is considered to be *acquired*. Acquired cases of CP account for approximately 20% of the cases (Longo and Hankins, 2009).

Incidence

The reported incidence of CP in the general population is about 2.1 cases per 1000 live births (Oskoui et al., 2013). The prevalence of CP in the United States, or the number of individuals within a population who have the disorder, has remained relatively the same since 1996 and is reported to range from 3.1 to 3.6 per 1000 children (Christensen et al., 2014). In fact, with increased survival rates in extremely low birth weight and very preterm infants, there has been an increased prevalence of cerebral palsy (Vincer et al., 2006; Wilson-Costello et al., 2005). Smaller preterm infants are more likely to demonstrate moderately severe CP, because the risk of CP is greater with increasing prematurity and lower birth weights (Hintz et al., 2011).

Etiology

CP can have multiple causes, some of which can be linked to a specific time period. Not all causes of CP are well understood. Typical causes of CP and the relationship of these causes with prenatal, perinatal, or postnatal occurrences are listed in Table 6-1. Any condition that produces anoxia, hemorrhage, or damage to the brain can result in cerebral palsy, but it is not usually one event but many that cause the end result. Vulnerability to cerebral palsy changes relative to gestational age and the subtype of cerebral palsy (Nelson, 2008). Prematurity and intrauterine growth restriction are consistently identified as risk factors for cerebral palsy.

Table 6-1

Risk Factors Associated with Cerebral Palsy

Prenatal Factors	Perinatal Factors	Postnatal Factors
Maternal infections ▪ Rubella ▪ Herpes simplex ▪ Toxoplasmosis ▪ Cytomegalovirus Placental abnormalities	Prematurity Obstetric complications ▪ Birth trauma ▪ Twins or multiple births Low birth weight	Neonatal infection Intraventricular hemorrhage
Rh incompatibility		
Maternal diabetes		
Toxemia		
Brain maldevelopment		

Modified from Glanzman A: Cerebral palsy. In Goodman C, Fuller KS, editors: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist*, ed 3. Philadelphia, 2009, WB Saunders, p. 1518.

Prenatal Causes

When the cause of CP is known, it is most often related to problems experienced during intrauterine development. A fetus exposed to maternal infections, such as rubella, herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus, or toxoplasmosis, early in gestation can incur damage to the motor centers of the fetus's brain. If the placenta, which provides nutrition and oxygen from the mother, does not remain attached to the uterine wall throughout the pregnancy, the fetus can be deprived of oxygen and other vital nutrients. The placenta can become inflamed or develop thrombi, either of which can impair fetal growth. The reader is referred to Nelson (2008) for a review of causative factors in cerebral palsy.

Forty-four percent of children with spastic CP were found to have growth disturbances at birth (Blair and Stanley, 1992). A recent study associated CP with both high and low birth length and head circumference as well as with low birth weight and ponderal index (Dahlseng et al., 2014). The ponderal index is the ratio of height to the cube root of weight; it is an indicator of body mass or chubbiness in infants.

Rh factor is found in the red blood cells of 85% of the population. When blood is typed for transfusion or crossmatching, both ABO classification and Rh status are determined. Rh incompatibility occurs when a mother who is Rh-negative delivers a baby who is Rh-positive. The mother becomes sensitive to the baby's blood and begins to make antibodies if she is not given the drug RhoGAM (Rh immune globulin). The development of maternal antibodies predisposes subsequent Rh-positive babies to *kernicterus*, a syndrome characterized by CP, high-frequency

hearing loss, visual problems, and discoloration of the teeth. When the antibody injection of RhoGAM is given after the mother's first delivery, the development of kernicterus in subsequent infants can be prevented.

Additional maternal problems that can place an infant at risk for neurologic injury include diabetes and toxemia during pregnancy. In diabetes, the mother's metabolic deficits can cause stunted growth of the fetus and delayed tissue maturation. Toxemia of pregnancy causes the mother's blood pressure to become so high that the baby is in danger of not receiving sufficient blood flow and, therefore, oxygen.

Maldevelopment of the brain and other organ systems is commonly seen in children with CP (Himmelmann and Uvebrant, 2011). Genetic disorders and exposure to teratogens can produce brain malformations. A *teratogen* is any agent or condition that causes a defect in the fetus; these include radiation, drugs, infections, and chronic illness. Antibiotic use and genitourinary infections have been associated with an increased risk of CP (Miller et al., 2013). The greater the exposure to a teratogen, the more significant the malformation. Central nervous system malformations can contribute to brain hemorrhages and anoxic lesions (Horstmann and Bleck, 2007).

Perinatal Causes

An infant may experience asphyxiation resulting from *anoxia* (a lack of oxygen) during labor and delivery. Prolonged or difficult labor because of a *breech presentation* (bottom first) or the presence of a prolapsed umbilical cord also contributes to *asphyxia*. The brain may be compressed, or blood vessels in the brain may rupture during the birth process. Although asphyxia has generally been accepted as a significant cause of CP, only a small percentage of cases of CP are due to asphyxia around the time of birth (Nelson, 2008). Fortunately, these conditions are not common.

Perinatal ischemic stroke is now recognized as a major cause of cerebral palsy with the advent of imaging. Hemiplegic cerebral palsy is the most common type in term-born infants. Stroke can occur before birth as well as around the time of birth. Risk factors can be related to disorders of the mother, infant, and placenta. Inflammation and infection can trigger thrombosis, which can lead to cerebral infarct.

In very preterm infants, there is a risk of developing periventricular leukomalacia (PVL), a necrosis of the white matter in the arterial watershed areas around the ventricles. The fibers of the corticospinal tract to the lower extremities are particularly vulnerable. Decreased blood flow to this area (Figure 6-1) may result in spastic diplegic cerebral palsy. The incidence of PVL is inversely related to gestational age. Preterm infants between 23 and 32 weeks of gestation are at particular risk for this problem due to autoregulation of blood flow of the central nervous system (CNS) (Glanzman, 2009).

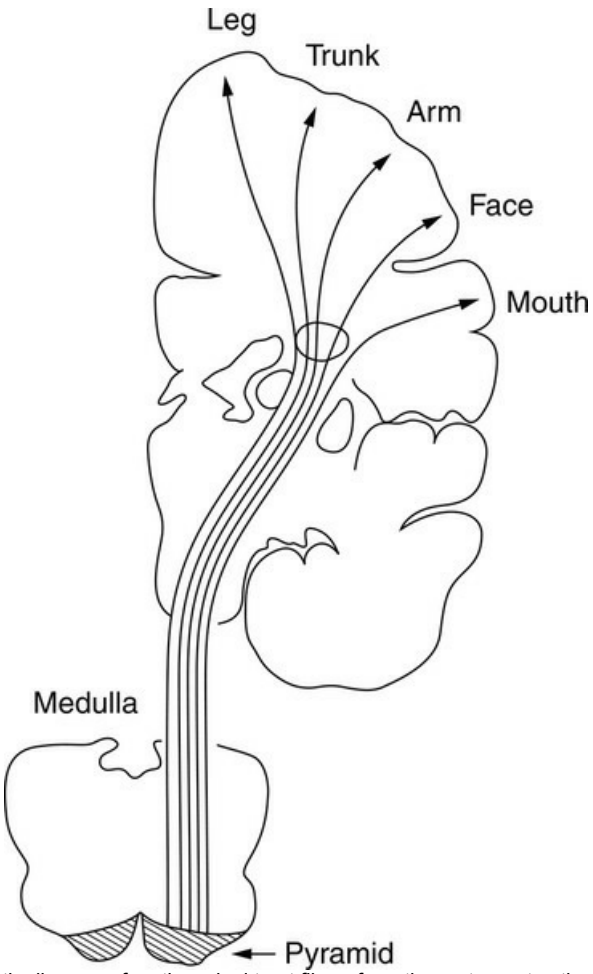


FIGURE 6-1 Schematic diagram of corticospinal tract fibers from the motor cortex through the periventricular region into the pyramid of the medulla. The fibers from the lower extremities are most vulnerable to periventricular leukomalacia, which may result in spastic diplegic cerebral palsy. (Modified from Volpe JJ: Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy: Neuropathology and pathogenesis. In Vope JJ: *Neurology of the neonate*, Philadelphia, 1995, WB Saunders.)

The two biggest risk factors for CP continue to be prematurity and low birth weight. One-fourth of children with cerebral palsy were born prematurely and weighed less than 1500 g (3.3 lbs), while about half of children with cerebral palsy were born premature and weighed less than 2500 g (5.5 lbs). A gestational age less than 37 weeks and small size for gestational age are compounding risk factors for neurologic deficits. However, a birth weight of less than 1500 g, regardless of gestational age, is also a strong risk factor for CP. Thus, any full-term infant weighing less than 1500 g may be at risk for CP. Although CP is more likely to be associated with premature birth, 25% to 40% of cases have no known cause (Russman and Gage, 1989). Neuroimaging is very helpful as 70% to 90% of children with CP will demonstrate significant diagnostic findings (Accardo et al., 2004; Ancel et al., 2006).

Postnatal Causes

An infant or toddler may acquire brain damage secondary to cerebral hemorrhage, trauma, infection, or anoxia. These conditions can be related to motor vehicle accidents, child abuse in the form of shaken baby syndrome, near-drowning, or lead exposure. Meningitis and encephalitis (inflammatory disorders of the brain) account for 60% of cases of acquired CP (Horstmann and Bleck, 2007).

Classification

The designation "cerebral palsy" does not convey much specific information about the type or severity of movement dysfunction a child exhibits. CP can be classified at least three different ways: (1) by distribution of involvement; (2) by type of abnormal muscle tone and movement; and (3) by severity which is best described according to the Gross Motor Function Classification System (GMFCS) (Palisano et al., 2008) rather than using the terms *mild, moderate,* or *severe*.

Distribution of Involvement

The term *plegia* is used along with a prefix to designate whether four limbs, two limbs, one limb, or half the body is affected by paralysis or weakness. Children with *quadriplegic* CP have involvement of the entire body, with the upper extremities usually more severely affected than the lower extremities (Figure 6-2, *A*). These children have difficulty in developing head and trunk control, and they may or may not be able to ambulate. If they do learn to walk, it may not be until middle childhood. Children with *quadriplegia* and *diplegia* have bilateral brain damage. Children with *diplegia* have primarily lower extremity involvement, although the trunk is almost always affected to some degree (Figure 6-2, *B*). Some definitions of diplegia state that all four limbs are involved, with the lower extremities more severely involved than the upper ones. *Diplegia* is often related to premature birth, especially if the child is born at around 32 weeks of gestation or 2 months premature. For this reason, *spastic diplegia* has been labeled the CP of prematurity.

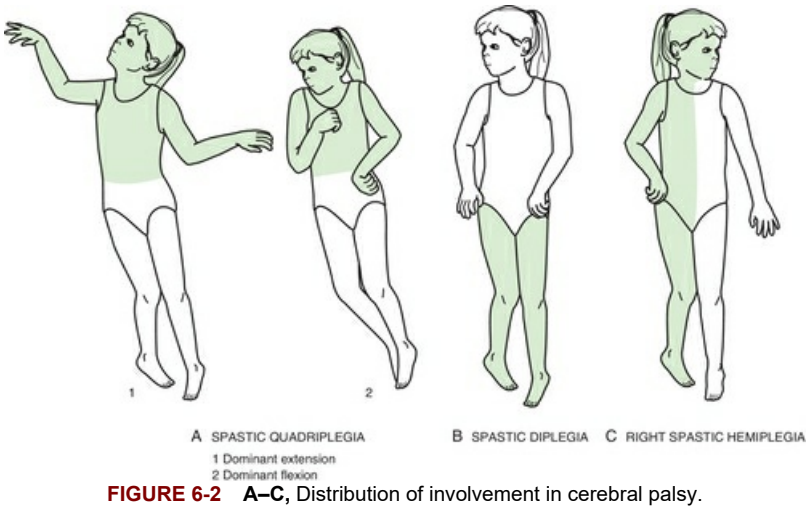


FIGURE 6-2 **A–C,** Distribution of involvement in cerebral palsy.

Children with *hemiplegic* CP have one side of the body involved, as is seen in adults after a stroke (Figure 6-2, *C*). Children with hemiplegia have incurred unilateral brain damage. Although these designations seem to focus on the number of limbs or the side of the body involved, the limbs are connected to the trunk. The trunk is always affected to some degree when a child has CP. The trunk is primarily affected by abnormal tone in hemiplegia and quadriplegia, or it is secondarily affected, as in diplegia, when the trunk compensates for lack of controlled movement in the involved lower limbs.

Abnormal Muscle Tone and Movement

CP is routinely classified by the type and severity of abnormal muscle tone exhibited by the child. Tone abnormalities run the gamut from almost no tone to high tone. Children with the *atonic* type of CP present as floppy infants (Figure 6-3). In reality, the postural tone is hypotonic or below normal. Uncertainty exists regarding the ultimate impairment of tone when an infant presents with hypotonia because tone can change over time as the infant attempts to move against gravity. The tone may remain low, may increase to normal, may increase beyond normal to hypertonia, or may

fluctuate from high to low to normal. Continual low tone in an infant impedes the development of head and trunk control, and it interferes with the development of mature breathing patterns. Tonal fluctuations are characteristically seen in the child with a dyskinetic or *athetoid* type of CP. Although abnormal tone is easily recognized, the relationship between abnormal tone and abnormalities in movement is less than clear.

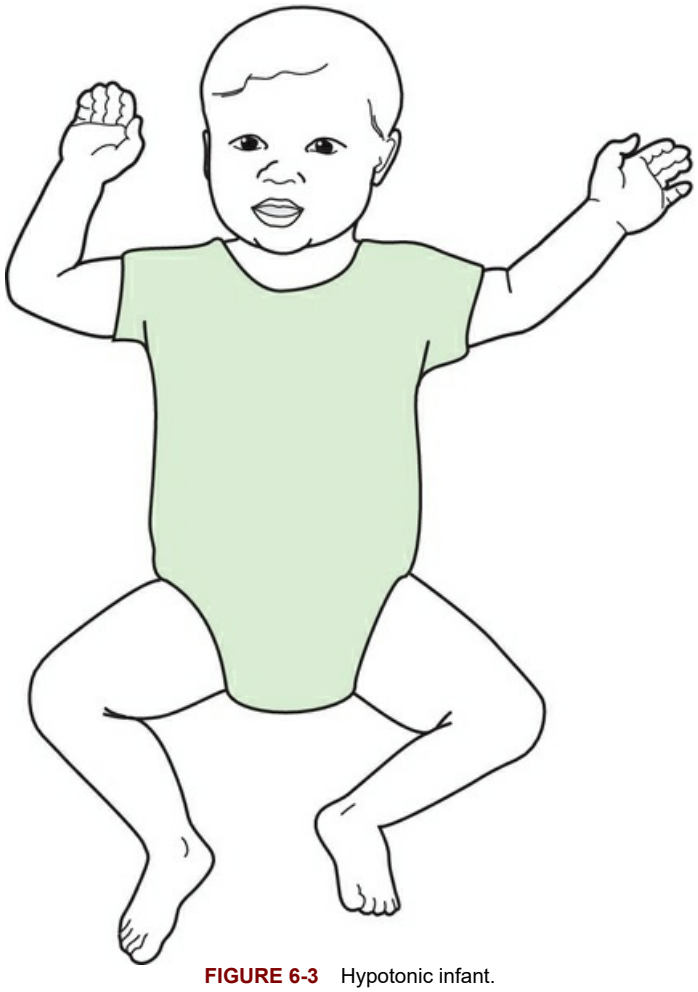


FIGURE 6-3 Hypotonic infant.

The abnormal tone manifested in children with CP may be the nervous system's response to the initial brain damage, rather than a direct result of the damage. The nervous system may be trying to compensate for a lack of feedback from the involved parts of the body. The distribution of abnormal muscle tone may change when the child's body position changes relative to gravity. A child whose posture is characterized by an extended trunk and limbs when supine may be totally flexed (head and trunk) when sitting because the child's relationship with gravity has changed (Figure 6-4). Tonal differences may be apparent even within different parts of the body. A child with spastic diplegia may exhibit some hypertonic muscles in the lower extremities and may display hypotonic trunk muscles. The pattern of tone may be consistent in all body positions, or it may change with each new relationship with gravity. The degree or amount of abnormal tone is judged relative to the degree of resistance encountered with passive movement. Rudimentary assessments can be made based on the ability of the child to initiate movement against gravity. In general, the greater the resistance to passive movement, the greater the difficulty is seen in the child's attempts to move.

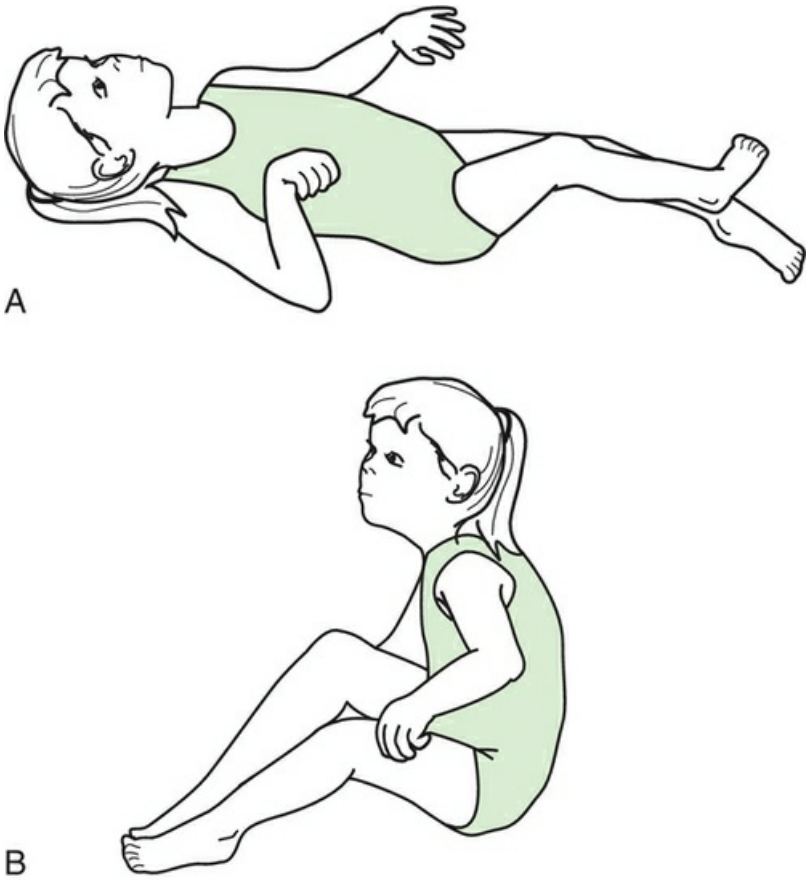


FIGURE 6-4 **A,** Child in extension in the supine position. **B,** The same child demonstrating a flexed sitting posture.

Spasticity

By far the most common type of abnormal tone seen in children with CP is *spasticity*. Spasticity is a velocity-dependent increase in muscle tone. *Hypertonus* is increased resistance to passive motion that may not be affected by the speed of movement. Clinically, these two terms are often used interchangeably. Classification and differentiation of the amount of tone above normal are subjective and are represented by a continuum from mild to moderate to severe. The mild and moderate designations usually describe a person who has the ability to move actively through at least part of the available range of motion. Severe hypertonus and spasticity indicate extreme difficulty in moving, with an inability to complete the full range of motion. In the latter instance, the child may have difficulty even initiating movement without use of some type of inhibitory technique. Prolonged increased tone predisposes the individual to contractures and deformities because, in most situations, an antagonist muscle cannot adequately oppose the pull of a spastic muscle.

Hypertonus tends to be found in antigravity muscles, specifically the flexors in the upper extremity and the flexors and extensors in the lower extremity. The most severely involved muscles in the upper extremity tend to be the scapular retractors and the elbow, forearm, wrist, and finger flexors. The same lower extremity muscles that are involved in children with diplegia are seen in quadriplegia and hemiplegia: hip flexors and adductors; knee flexors, especially medial hamstrings; and ankle plantar flexors. The degree of involvement among these muscles may vary, and additional muscles may also be affected. Trunk musculature may exhibit increased tone as well. Increased trunk tone may impair breath control for speech by hampering the normal excursion of the diaphragm and chest wall during inspiration and expiration.

As stated earlier, spasticity may not be present initially at birth, but it can gradually replace low muscle tone as the child attempts to move against gravity. Spasticity in CP is of cerebral origin; that is, it results from damage to the central nervous system by a precipitating event, such as an intraventricular hemorrhage. *Spastic paralysis* results from a classic upper motor neuron lesion. The

muscles affected depend on the type of CP—quadriplegia, diplegia, or hemiplegia. Figure 6-2 depicts typical involvement in these types of spastic CP.

Transient Dystonia

This condition is a temporary one seen in as many as 60% of all preterm infants who have a low birth weight and even in some term infants. While the characteristics seen during the first year life may be transient, they have been linked to behavior deficits later in life in some studies. The characteristics are troubling to a physical therapist because it is often impossible to distinguish these from clinical signs of early cerebral palsy. The characteristics include: increased tone in neck extensor muscles, hypotonia, irritability, and lethargy during the neonatal period; increased tone in extremity muscles, low tone in the trunk muscles, shoulder retraction, and scapular adduction with a persistent asymmetric tonic neck reflex (ATNR) and persistent + support reflex at age 4 months; and immature postural reactions with minimal trunk rotation, continued trunk hypotonia, and extremity hypertonicity at 6 to 8 months.

Rigidity

Rigidity is an uncommon type of tone seen in children with CP. It indicates severe damage to deeper areas of the brain, rather than to the cortex. Muscle tone is increased to the point that postures are held rigidly, and movement in any direction is impeded.

Dyskinesia

Dyskinesia means disordered movement. *Athetosis,* the most common dyskinetic syndrome, is characterized by disordered movement of the extremities, especially within their respective midranges. Movements in the midrange are especially difficult because of the lack of postural stability on which to superimpose movement. As the limb moves farther away from the body, motor control diminishes. Involuntary movements result from attempts by the child to control posture and movement. These involuntary movements can be observed in the child's entire extremity, distally in the hands and feet, or proximally in the mouth and face. The child with athetosis must depend on external support to improve movement accuracy and efficiency. Difficulty in feeding and in speech can be expected if the oral muscles are involved. Speech usually develops, but the child may not be easily understood. *Athetoid* CP is characterized by decreased static and dynamic postural stability. Children with dyskinesia lack the postural stability necessary to allow purposeful movements to be controlled for the completion of functional tasks (Figure 6-5). Muscle tone often fluctuates from low to high to normal to high such that the child has difficulty in maintaining postural alignment in all but the most firmly supported positions and exhibits slow, repetitive involuntary movements.

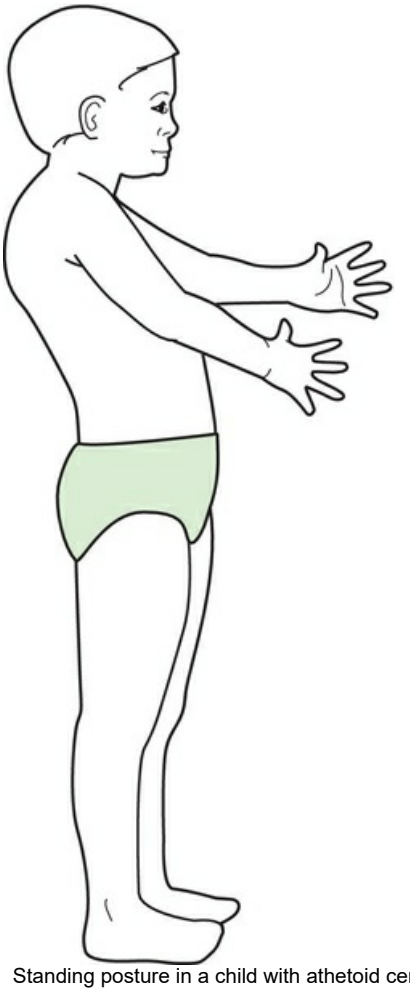


FIGURE 6-5 Standing posture in a child with athetoid cerebral palsy.

Ataxia

Ataxia is classically defined as a loss of coordination resulting from damage to the cerebellum. Children with ataxic CP exhibit loss of coordination and low postural tone. They usually demonstrate a diplegic distribution, with the trunk and lower extremities most severely affected. This pattern of low tone makes it difficult for the child to maintain midline stability of the head and trunk in any posture. Ataxic movements are jerky and irregular. Children with ataxic CP ultimately achieve upright standing, but to maintain this position, they must stand with a wide base of support as a compensation for a lack of static postural control (Figure 6-6). Postural reactions are slow to develop in all postures, with the most significant balance impairment demonstrated during gait.

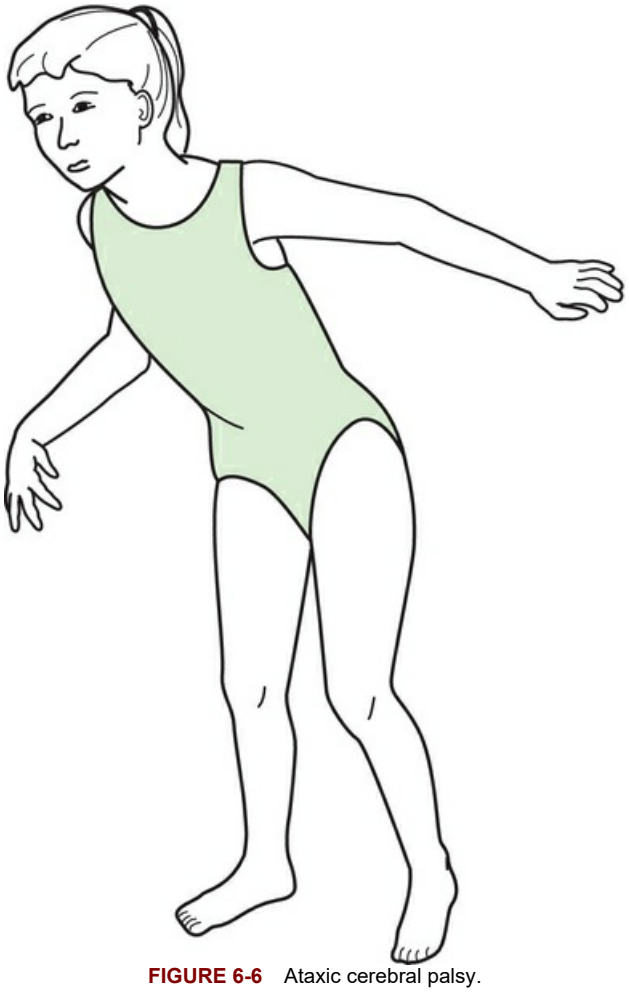


FIGURE 6-6 Ataxic cerebral palsy.

Children with ataxia walk with large lateral displacements of the trunk in an effort to maintain balance. Their gait is often described as "staggering" because of these wide displacements, which are a natural consequence of the lack of stability and poor timing of postural corrections. Together, these impairments may seem to spell imminent disaster for balance, but these children are able, with practice, to adjust to the wide displacements in their center of gravity and to walk without falling. Wide displacements and slow balance reactions are counteracted by the wide base of support. Arm movements are typically used as a compensatory strategy to counteract excessive truncal weight shifts. The biggest challenge for the clinician is to allow the child to ambulate independently using what looks like a precarious gait. Proper safety precautions should always be taken, and some children may need to wear a helmet for personal safety. Assistive devices do not appear to be helpful during ambulation unless they can be adequately weighted, and even then, these devices may be more of a deterrent than a help.

Functional classification

In keeping with the World Health Organization's International Classification of Functioning Disability and Health (ICF) the best way to classify a disorder like CP is to look at the impact on function. The GMFCS (Palisano et al., 2008) is the preferred way to classify mobility in children with CP. The Manual Ability Classifications System (MACS) (Eliasson et al., 2006) is the preferred way to classify how children with CP use their hands when engaged in activities of daily living. There is also the Communication Function Classification System (CFCS) (Hidecker et al., 2011) for children with CP. Interprofessional communication will be enhanced by utilizing these tools which provide standardized terminology and stratification of levels of function. Use of the classification systems should also enhance communication among parents and professionals when discussing a child's level of function and long-term outcomes. Use of all three classification systems can provide a functional profile of the child (Effgen et al., 2014). See Table 6-2 for a general description of the five levels of each of the classification systems. Only the GMFCS will be discussed in more detail here.

Table 6-2

Classification Systems for Cerebral Palsy

Mobility	Gross Motor Classification System (GMFCS)
	Level I: Walks without limitations
	Level II: Walks with limitations
	Level III: Walks using a hand-held mobility device
	Level IV: Self-mobility with limitations, may use power mobility
	Level V: Transported in a manual wheelchair
Hand use	Manual Ability Classification System (MACS)
	Level I: Handles objects easily and successfully
	Level II: Handles most objects but with somewhat reduced quality or speed of achievement
	Level III: Handles objects with difficulty, needs help to prepare or modify activities
	Level IV: Handles a limited selection of easily managed objects in adapted situations
	Level V: Does not handle objects and has severely limited ability to perform simple actions
Communication	Communication Function Classification System (CFCS)
	Level I: Effective sender and receiver with unfamiliar and familiar partners
	Level II: Effective but slower-paced sender or receiver with unfamiliar and familiar partners
	Level III: Effective sender and receiver with familiar partners
	Level IV: Sometimes effective sender or receiver with familiar partners
	Level V: Seldom effective sender and receiver even with familiar partners

Sources: Data from Eliasson et al., 2006; Hidecker et al., 2011; Palisano et al., 2008.

The GMFCS (Palisano et al., 2008) is a five-level scale that determines a motor level for a child with a motor disability. Level I is walks without limitations; Level II is walks with limitations; Level III is walks using a hand-held mobility device; Level IV is limited self-mobility, may use power mobility; and Level V represents the most serious limitation, being transported in a manual wheelchair. More detailed descriptions of these levels, based on age bands, are used for children before their 2nd birthday, between the 2nd and 4th birthdays, between the 4th and 6th birthdays, between 6th and 12th birthdays, and between the 12th and 18th birthdays. The GMFCS is based on usual performance, what the child does rather than what she is known to be able to do at her best, which is capability. The older age bands reflect the potential impact of the environment on function and the personal preference of the child/youth in regard to mobility. A summary of the expectations for the older age bands can be found in Figure 6-7. A description of all levels can be found on the CanChild website: www.canchild.ca.

GMFCS E & R descriptors and illustrations for children between their 6th and 12th birthdays

GMFCS Level I

Children walk at home, school, outdoors and in the community. They can climb stairs without the use of a railing. Children perform gross motor skills such as running and jumping, but speed, balance and coordination are limited.

GMFCS Level II

Children walk in most settings and climb stairs holding on to a railing. They may experience difficulty walking long distances and balancing on uneven terrain, inclines, in crowded areas or confined spaces. Children may walk with physical assistance, a hand-held mobility device, or use wheeled mobility over long distances. Children have only minimal ability to perform gross motor skills such as running and jumping.

GMFCS Level III

Children walk using a hand-held mobility device in most settings. They may climb stairs holding on to a railing with supervision or assistance. Children use wheeled mobility when traveling long distances and may self-propel for shorter distances.

GMFCS Level IV

Children use methods of mobility that require physical assistance or powered mobility in most settings. They may walk for short distances at home with physical assistance or use powered mobility or a body support walker when positioned. At school, outdoors and in the community children are transported in a manual wheelchair or use powered mobility.

GMFCS Level V

Children are transported in a manual wheelchair in all settings. Children are limited in their ability to maintain antigravity head and trunk postures and control leg and arm movements.

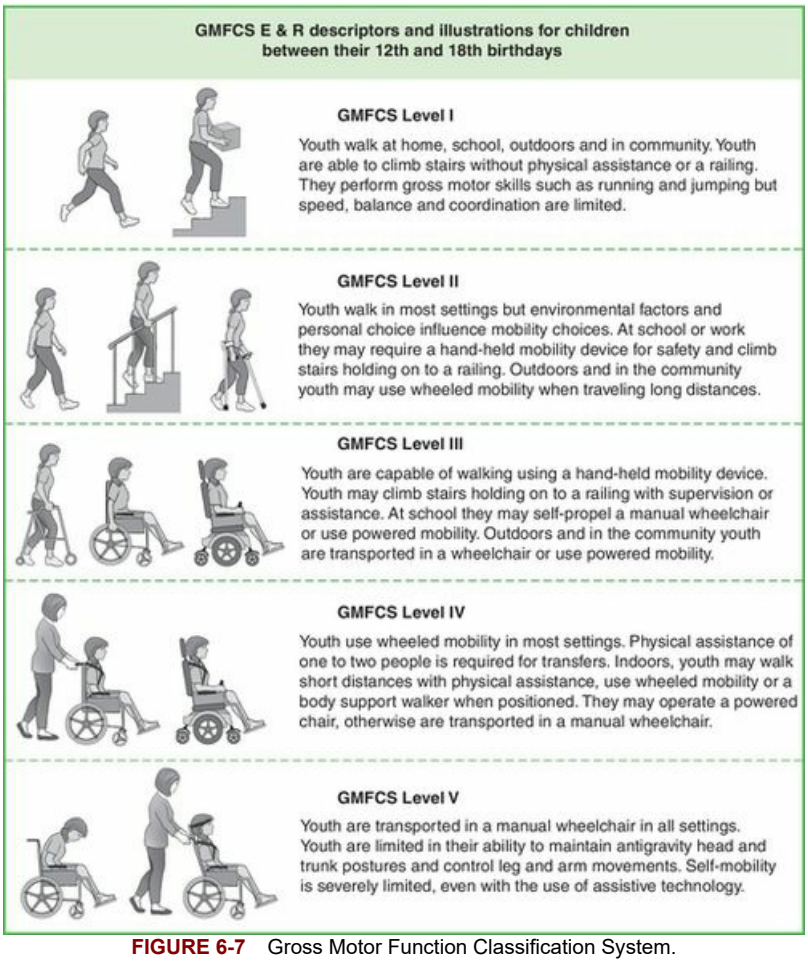


FIGURE 6-7 Gross Motor Function Classification System.

Diagnosis

Many children are not formally diagnosed as having CP until after 6 months of age. In children with a severely damaged nervous system, as in the case of quadriplegic involvement, early diagnosis may not be difficult. However, children with hemiplegia or diplegia with mild involvement may not be identified as having a problem until they have difficulty in pulling to stand at around 9 months of age. Lack of early detection may deprive these children of beneficial early intervention. Hypotonia in infancy may be a precursor to athetosis and may be observed as the child works to move against gravity (Senesac, 2013). Many years of research have been devoted to developing sensitive assessment tools that will allow pediatricians and pediatric physical therapists to identify infants with CP as early as 4 to 6 months of age. Observation of a child's movements in certain antigravity postures may be more revealing than testing reflexes or assessing developmental milestones (Pathways Awareness Foundation, 1992).

Pathophysiology

Spastic diplegia, quadriplegia, and hemiplegia can be caused by varying degrees of intraventricular hemorrhage (Table 6-3). Depending on which fibers of the corticospinal tract are involved and whether the damage is bilateral or unilateral, the resultant neurologic deficit manifests as quadriplegia, diplegia, or hemiplegia. *Spastic quadriplegia* is most often associated with Grade III intraventricular hemorrhage in premature infants. What used to be classified as a Grade IV hemorrhage is now called periventricular hemorrhagic infarction (PHI). Preterm infants with low birth weights and PHI are at a substantially higher risk for neurologic problems. Premature infants born at 32 weeks of gestation are especially vulnerable to white matter damage around the ventricles from hypoxia and ischemia. PVL is the most common cause of *spastic diplegia*, because the fibers of the corticospinal tract that go to the lower extremities are most exposed. *Spastic hemiplegia*, the most common type of CP, can result from unilateral brain damage secondary to PHI in the preterm infant. In the term infant, a more likely cause is cerebral malformations, such as an arteriovenous malformation, intracerebral hemorrhage, or cerebral infarct (Fenichel, 2009). *Athetosis* involves damage to the basal ganglia and has been associated with erythroblastosis fetalis, anoxia, and respiratory distress. *Erythroblastosis*, a destruction of red blood cells, occurs in the newborn when Rh incompatibility of maternal-fetal blood groups exists. *Ataxia* is related to damage to the cerebellum.

Table 6-3

Pathophysiology of Cerebral Palsy

Cause	Deficit
Periventricular leukomalacia	Spastic diplegia
Intrauterine disease	Spastic quadriplegia
Hypoxic-ischemic injury	Spastic quadriplegia
Periventricular hemorrhage (preterm infants)	Spastic hemiplegia
Cerebral malformations, cerebral infarcts, intracerebral hemorrhage (term infants)	Spastic hemiplegia
Selective neuronal necrosis of the cerebellum	Ataxia
Status marmoratus (hypermyelination in basal ganglia)	Athetosis

From Fenichel GM: *Clinical pediatric neurology: a signs and symptoms approach,* ed 6. Philadelphia, 2009, Saunders; Goodman CG, Fuller KS: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist,* ed 3. Philadelphia, 2009, Saunders; Umphred DA, editor: *Neurological rehabilitation*, ed 6. St Louis, 2013, Mosby.

Associated deficits

The deficits associated with CP are presented in the order in which they may become apparent in the infant with CP (Box 6-1). Early signs of motor dysfunction in an infant often present as problems with feeding and breathing.

Box 6-1

Deficits Associated with Cerebral Palsy

Feeding and speech impairments
Breathing inefficiency
Visual impairments
Hearing impairments
Intellectual disability
Seizures

Feeding and Speech Impairments

Poor suck-swallow reflexes and uncoordinated sucking and breathing may be evidence of CNS dysfunction in a newborn. Persistence of infantile oral reflexes, such as rooting or suck-swallow, or exaggerations of normally occurring reflexes, such as a tonic bite or tongue thrust, can indicate abnormal oral motor development. A hyperactive or hypoactive response to touch around and in the mouth is also possible. Hypersensitivity may be seen in the child with spastic hemiplegia or quadriplegia, whereas hyposensitivity may be evident in the child with low-tone CP.

Feeding is considered a precursor to speech, so the child who has feeding problems may well have difficulty in producing intelligible sounds. Lip closure around the nipple is needed to prevent loss of liquids during sucking. Lip closure is also needed in speech to produce "p," "b," and "m" sounds. If the infant cannot bring the lips together because of tonal problems, feeding and sound production will be hindered. The tongue moves in various ways within the mouth during sucking and swallowing and later in chewing; these patterns change with oral motor development. These changes in tongue movements are crucial not only for taking in food and swallowing, but also for the production of various sounds requiring specific tongue placement within the oral cavity.

Breathing Inefficiency

Breathing inefficiency may compound feeding and speech problems. Typically developing infants are belly breathers and only over time do they develop the ability to use the rib cage effectively to increase the volume of inspired air. Gravity promotes developmental changes in the configuration of the rib cage that place the diaphragm in a more advantageous position for efficient inspiration. This developmental change is hampered in children who are delayed in experiencing being in an upright posture because of lack of attainment of age-appropriate motor abilities, such as head and trunk control. Lack of development in the upright posture can result in structural deformities of the ribs, such as rib flaring, and functional limitations, such as poor breath control and shorter breath length that is inadequate for sound production. Abnormally increased tone in the trunk musculature may allow only short bursts of air to be expelled and produce staccato speech. Low muscle tone can predispose children to rib flaring because of lack of abdominal muscle development. Intellectual disability, hearing impairment, or central language processing impairment may further impede the ability of the child with CP to develop effective oral communication skills.

Intellectual Disability

Children with CP have many other problems associated with damage to the nervous system that also relate to and affect normal development. The most common of these are vision and hearing impairments, feeding and speech difficulties, seizures, and intellectual disability. The classification of intellectual disability is given in Chapter 8, and thus not found in this chapter. Although no

direct correlation exists between the severity of motor involvement and the degree of intellectual disability, the percentage of children with CP with intellectual disability has been estimated at between 25% and 45% (Fenichel, 2009; Yin Foo et al., 2013). Intelligence tests require a verbal or motor response, either of which may be impaired in these children. Mean cognitive scores in children with cerebral palsy are related to gestational age and birth weight (Accardo, 2008). The risk for intellectual disability increases 1.4-fold when an infant is born between 32 and 36 weeks and 7-fold if born before 32 weeks of gestation. It is further suggested that children of normal intelligence who have CP may be at risk of having learning disabilities or other cognitive or neurobehavioral impairments. In general, children with spastic hemiplegia or diplegia, athetosis, or ataxia are more likely to have normal or higher than normal intelligence, whereas children with more severe types of CP, such as spastic quadriplegia, rigidity, or a mixed type, are more likely to exhibit intellectual disability (Hoon and Tolley, 2013). However, as with any generalizations, exceptions always exist. Yin Foo et al. (2013) proposed using a clinical reasoning tool to select appropriate IQ assessments for children with CP. It is extremely important to not make judgments about a child's intellectual status based solely on the severity of the motor involvement.

Seizures

The site of brain damage in CP may become the focal point of abnormal electrical activity, which can cause seizures. Epilepsy is a disease characterized by recurrent seizures. Approximately 40% of children with CP experience seizures that must be managed by medication (Nordmark et al., 2001). A smaller percentage may have a single seizure episode related to high fever or increased intracranial pressure. Children with CP or intellectual disability are more likely to develop seizures than are typically developing children. Seizures are classified as generalized, focal, or unclassified and are listed in Table 6-4. *Generalized seizures* are named for the type of motor activity the person exhibits. *Focal seizures* used to be called partial seizures, which were simple or complex, depending on whether the child experiences a loss of consciousness. Focal seizures can have either sensory or motor manifestations or both. *Unclassified seizures* do not fit in any other category. Epilepsy syndromes have common signs and symptoms, EEG features, characteristics, and the same genetic origin or pathogenesis.

Table 6-4

Classification of Seizures

International Classification of Seizures	Manifestation of Seizures
Generalized seizures	Seizures that are generalized to the entire body; always involve a loss of consciousness
Tonic-clonic seizure	Begin with a tonic contraction (stiffening) of the body, then change to clonic movements (jerking) of the body
Tonic seizure	Stiffening of the entire body
Clonic seizure	Myoclonic jerks start and stop abruptly
Atonic seizure	Sudden lack of muscle tone
Absence seizure	Nonconvulsive seizure with a loss of consciousness; blinking, staring, or minor movements lasting a few seconds
Myoclonic seizure	Irregular, involuntary contraction of a muscle or group of muscles
Focal seizures	Seizures not generalized to the entire body; a variety of sensory or motor symptoms may accompany this type of seizure; the distinction between partial seizures has been eliminated (Berg et al., 2010)
Syndromes	See Berg et al., 2010
Unclassified seizure	Seizures that do not fit into the above categories

Adapted from Ratliffe KT: *Clinical pediatric physical therapy*, St Louis, 1998, Mosby, p. 410; and Berg et al., 2010.

Children with CP and mild intellectual disability tend to exhibit focal seizures as do children in all spastic CP types (Carlsson et al., 2003). Children with CP caused by CNS infections, CNS malformations, and gray-matter damage are more likely to demonstrate seizures than children whose CP is caused by white-matter damage or an unknown event (Carlsson et al., 2003). The age of onset of the seizure activity appears to be related to the type of cerebral palsy. Children with quadriplegia demonstrate an earlier onset than those with hemiplegia. Early onset of seizures in hemiplegia has significant impact on cognition. Fifty percent of children with hemiplegic CP have epilepsy (Fenichel, 2009). When working with children, the clinician should question parents and caregivers about the children's history of seizure activity. The physical therapist assistant should always document any seizure activity observed in a child, including time of occurrence, duration, loss of consciousness, motor and sensory manifestations, and status of the child after the seizure.

Visual Impairments

Vision is extremely important for the development of balance during the first 3 years of life

(Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 2012). Any visual difficulty may exacerbate the inherent neuromotor problems that typically accompany a diagnosis of CP. Eye muscle control can be negatively affected by abnormal tone and can lead to either turning in *(esotropia)* or turning out *(exotropia)* of one or both eyes. *Strabismus* is the general term for an abnormal ocular condition in which the eyes are crossed. In *paralytic strabismus*, the eye muscles are impaired. Strabismus is present in many children with CP (Batshaw et al., 2013), with the highest incidence in children with quadriplegia and diplegia (Styer-Acevedo, 1999).

Nystagmus is most often seen in children with ataxia. In nystagmus, the eyes move back and forth rapidly in a horizontal, vertical, or rotary direction. Normally, nystagmus is produced in response to vestibular stimulation and indicates the close relationship between head movement and vision. The presence of nystagmus may complicate the task of balancing the head or trunk. Some children compensate for nystagmus by tilting their heads into extension, a move that can be mistaken for neck retraction and abnormal extensor tone. The posteriorly tilted head position gives the child the most stable visual input. Although neck retraction is generally to be avoided, if it is a compensation for nystagmus, the extended neck posture may not be avoidable. Visual deficits are common in children with hemiplegic CP (Ashwal et al., 2004). These deficits may include *homonymous hemianopia*, or loss of vision in half the visual field. Every child with hemiplegia should have a detailed assessment of vision.

Children with visual impairments may have more difficulty in developing head and trunk control and in exploring their immediate surroundings. Visual function should be assessed in any infant or child who is exhibiting difficulty in developing head control or in reaching for objects. Clinically, the child may not follow a familiar face or turn to examine a new face. If you suspect that a child has a visual problem, report your suspicions to the supervising physical therapist.

Hearing, Speech, and Language Impairments

Almost one-third of children with CP have hearing, speech, and language problems. As already mentioned, some speech problems can be secondary to poor motor control of oral muscles or respiratory impairment. Language difficulties in the form of expressive or receptive aphasia can result when the initial damage that caused the CP also affects the brain areas responsible for understanding speech or producing language. For most of the right-handed population, speech centers are located in the dominant left hemisphere. Clinically, the child may not turn toward sound or be able to localize a familiar voice. Hearing loss may be present in any type of CP, but it occurs in a higher percentage of children with quadriplegia. These children should be evaluated by an audiologist to ascertain whether amplification is warranted.

Physical therapy examination

The physical therapist conducts a thorough examination and evaluation of the child with CP that includes a history, observation, and administration of specific standardized tests of development. Test selection is based on the reason for the evaluation: screening, information gathering, treatment planning, eligibility determination, or outcomes measurement. A discussion of developmental assessment is beyond the scope of this text; refer to Effgen (2013) for information on specific developmental assessment tools. However, the most commonly used measure of gross motor function in children with CP is the Gross Motor Function Measure (GMFM) (Russell et al., 2002). The physical therapist assistant needs to have an understanding of the purpose of the examination and awareness of the tools commonly administered and of the process used within a particular treatment setting. For example, an arena assessment may be used when evaluating a young child or a play-based assessment, while a one-on-one evaluation may be used in the school system.

The physical therapist assistant should be familiar with the information reported by the physical therapist in the child's examination: social and medical history; range of motion; muscle tone, strength, and bulk; reflexes and postural reactions; mobility skills; transfers; activities of daily living (ADLs), recreation, play, and leisure; and adaptive equipment. The assistant needs to be aware of the basis on which the physical therapist makes decisions about the child's plan of care. The physical therapist's responsibility is to make sure that the goals of therapy and the strategies to be used to implement the treatment plan are thoroughly understood by the physical therapist assistant.

Neuromuscular Impairments, Activity Limitations, and Participation Restrictions

The physical therapy examination should identify the neuromuscular impairments and the present or anticipated functional limitations of the child with CP. Many physical impairments, such as too much or too little range of motion or muscle extensibility, are related to the type of tone exhibited, its distribution, and its severity. Impairments in muscle activation and motor control can affect the ability to perform daily activities. Activity limitations such as sitting, standing up, or use of the extremities result from these impairments. Activity limitations lead to restrictions in participation. In the spastic type of CP, the impairments are often related to lack of range, movement, muscle stiffness, and increased muscle tone. Children with athetoid or ataxic CP may have some of the same functional limitations, but their impairments are related to too much mobility and too little stability. The impairments and activity limitations of the child with hypotonic CP are similar to those of children with Down syndrome; therefore, refer to Chapter 8 for a discussion of intervention strategies.

The Child with Spastic Cerebral Palsy

The child with spasticity often moves slowly and with difficulty. When movement is produced, it occurs in predictable, *stereotypical* patterns that occur the same way every time with little variability. The child with spasticity can have activity limitations in head and trunk control, performance of movement transitions, ambulation, use of the extremities for balance and reaching, and ADLs (Table 6-5).

Table 6-5

Impairments, Activity Limitations, Participation Restrictions, and Focus of Treatment in Children with Spasticity

Body Structure/Function	Activity Limitation	Participation Restriction	Focus of Treatment
Muscle tone/extensibility	Delayed gross and fine motor skills	Social engagement	Educate family about CP
Selective motor control ▪ Motor recruitment ▪ Cocontraction	Delayed oral motor skills	Play	Increase parents' handling skills
Muscle strength	Sitting/standing/walking	Self-care	Change positions against gravity
Postural control	Delayed postural		Activate postural muscles Practice movement transitions
Sensory processing	Dressing/playing		Optimize sensorimotor experiences Increase play complexity
Pain			Sit to stand/walking Strength training

Head Control

The child with spasticity can have difficulty in developing head control because of increased tone, persistent primitive reflexes, exaggerated tonic reflexes, or absent or impaired sensory input. Because the child often has difficulty in generating enough muscle force to maintain a posture or to move, substitutions and compensatory movements are common. For example, an infant who cannot control the head when held upright or supported in sitting may elevate the shoulders to provide some neck stability.

Trunk Control

Lack of trunk rotation and a predominance of extensor or flexor tone can impair the child's ability to roll. Inadequate trunk control prevents independent sitting. In a child with predominantly lower extremity problems, the lack of extensibility at the hips may prevent the attainment of an aligned sitting position. The child compensates by rounding the upper back to allow for sitting (see Figure 6-4, *B*). Trunk rotation can be absent or impaired secondary to a lack of balanced development of the trunk extensors and flexors. Without this balance, controlled lateral flexion is not possible, nor is rotation. Absent trunk rotation makes transitional movements (moving from one posture to another) extremely difficult. The child with spasticity may discover that it is possible to achieve a sitting position by pushing the body backward over passively flexed and adducted legs, to end up in a W-sitting position (Figure 6-8). This posture should be avoided because its use can impede further development of trunk control and lower extremity dissociation.

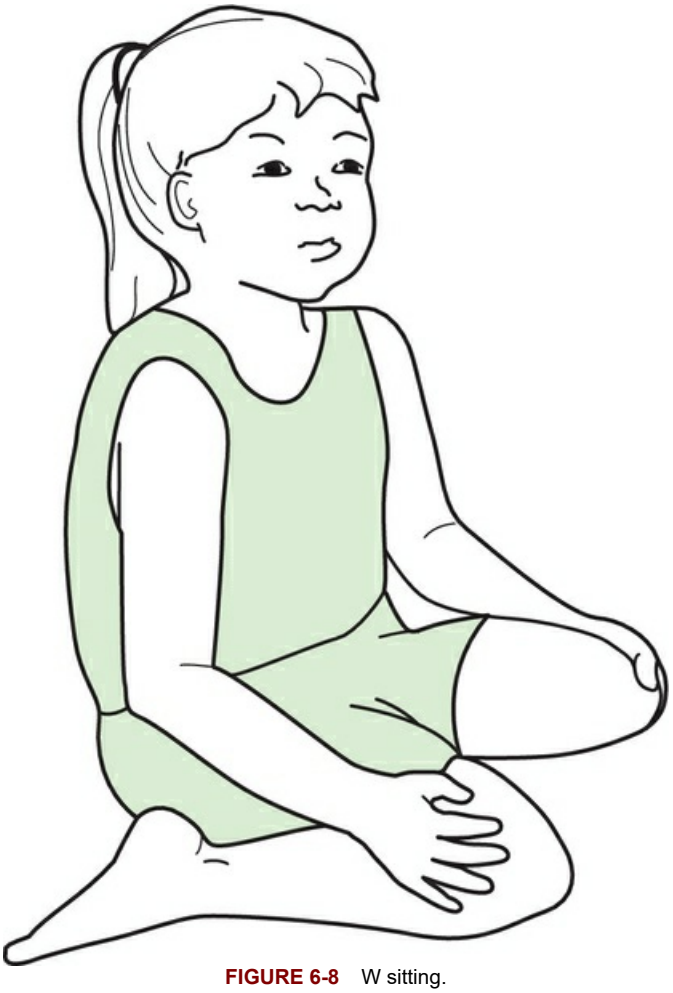


FIGURE 6-8 W sitting.

Influence of Tonic Reflexes

Tonic reflexes are often obligatory in children with spastic CP. When a reflex is obligatory, it dominates the child's posture. Obligatory tonic reflexes produce increased tone and postures that can interfere with adaptive movement. When they occur during the course of typical development, they do not interfere with the infant's ability to move. The retention of these reflexes and their exaggerated expression appear to impair the acquisition of postural responses such as head and neck righting reactions and use of the extremities for protective extension. The retention of these tonic reflexes occurs because of the lack of normal development of motor control associated with CP. Tonic reflexes consist of the tonic labyrinthine reflex (TLR), the asymmetric tonic neck reflex (ATNR), and the symmetric tonic neck reflex (STNR), all of which are depicted in Figure 6-8.

The TLR affects tone relative to the head's relationship with gravity. When the child is supine, the TLR causes an increase in extensor tone, whereas when the child is prone, it causes an increase in flexor tone (Figure 6-9, *A, B*). Typically, the reflex is present at birth and then is integrated by 6 months. It is thought to afford some unfolding of the flexed infant to counter the predominance of physiologic flexor tone at birth. If this reflex persists, it can impair the infant's ability to develop antigravity motion (to flex against gravity in supine and to extend against gravity in prone). An exaggerated TLR affects the entire body and can prevent the child from reaching with the arms in the supine position or from pushing with the arms in the prone position to assist in coming to sit. The TLR can affect the child's posture in sitting because the reflex is stimulated by the head's relationship with gravity. If the child loses head control posteriorly during sitting, the labyrinths sense the body as being supine, and the extensor tone produced may cause the child to fall backward and to slide out of the chair. Children who slump into flexion when the head is flexed may be demonstrating the influence of a prone TLR.

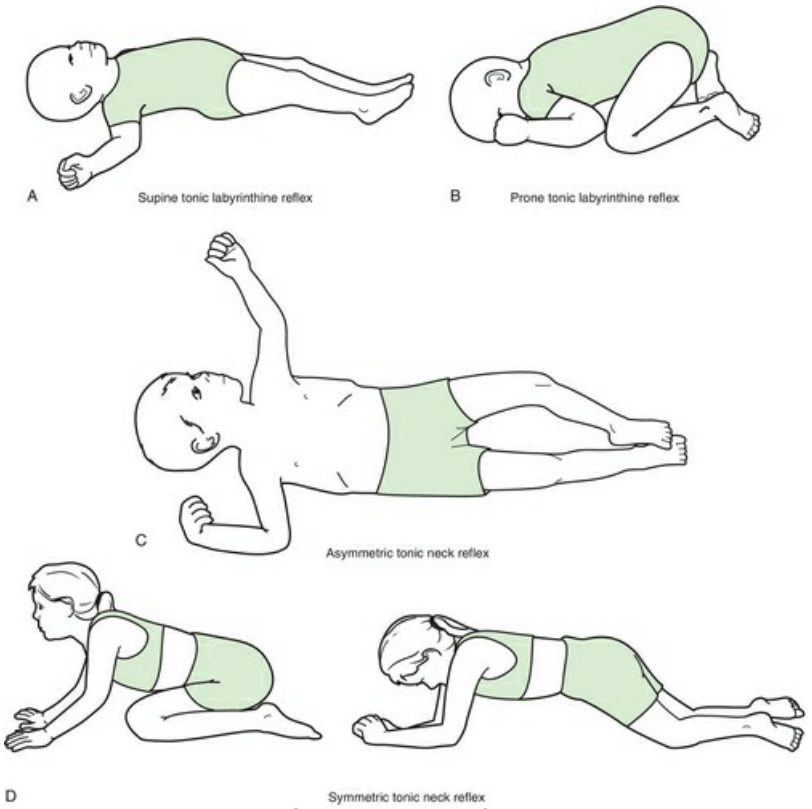


FIGURE 6-9 Tonic reflexes.

The ATNR causes associated upper extremity extension on the face side and flexion of the upper extremity on the skull side (see Figure 6-8, *C*). For example, turning the head to the right causes the right arm to extend and the left arm to bend. This reflex is usually apparent only in the upper extremities in a typically developing child; however, in the child with CP, the lower extremities may also be affected by the reflex. The ATNR is typically present from birth to 4 to 6 months. If this reflex persists and is obligatory, the child will be prevented from rolling or bringing the extended arm to her mouth. The asymmetry can affect the trunk and can predispose the child to scoliosis. In extreme cases, the dominant ATNR can produce hip dislocation on the flexed side.

The STNR causes the arms and legs to flex or extend, depending on the head position (see Figure 6-9, *D*). If the child's head is flexed, the arms flex and the legs extend; if the head is extended, vice versa. This reflex has the potential to assist the typically developing infant in attaining a four-point or hands-and-knees position. However, its persistence prevents reciprocal creeping and allows the child only to "bunny hop" as a means of mobility in the four-point position. When the STNR is obligatory, the arms and legs imitate or contradict the head movement. The child either sits back on the heels or thrusts forward. Maintaining a four-point position is difficult, as are any dissociated movements of the extremities needed for creeping. The exaggeration of tonic reflexes and the way in which they may interfere with functional movement by producing impairments are found in Table 6-6.

Table 6-6
Influence of Tonic Reflexes on Functional Movement

Tonic Reflex	Impairment	Functional Movement Limitation
TLR in supine	Contractures Abnormal vestibular input Limited visual field	Rolling from supine to prone Reaching in supine Coming to sit Sitting
TLR in prone	Contractures Abnormal vestibular input Limited visual field	Rolling from prone to supine Coming to sit Sitting
ATNR	Contractures Hip dislocation Trunk asymmetry Scoliosis	Segmental rolling Reaching Bringing hand to mouth Sitting
STNR	Contractures Lack of upper and lower extremity dissociation Lack of trunk rotation	Creeping Kneeling Walking

ATNR, Asymmetrical tonic neck reflex; *STNR*, symmetrical tonic neck reflex; *TLR*, tonic labyrinthine reflex.

Movement Transitions

The child with spasticity often lacks the ability to control or to respond appropriately to shifts in the center of gravity that should typically result in righting, equilibrium, or protective reactions. These children are fearful and often do not feel safe because they have such precarious static and dynamic balance. In addition, the child's awareness of poor postural stability may lead to an expectation of falling based on prior experience. The inability to generate sufficient muscle activity in postural muscles for static balance is further compounded by the difficulty in anticipating postural changes in response to body movement; these features make performance of movement transitions, such as prone to sitting or the reverse, sitting to prone, more difficult.

Mobility and Ambulation

Impaired lower extremity separation hinders reciprocal leg movements for creeping and walking; therefore, some children learn to move forward across the floor on their hands and knees by using a "bunny hopping" pattern that pulls both legs together. Other ways that the child with spasticity may attempt to move is by "commando crawling," forcefully pulling the arms under the chest and simultaneously dragging stiff legs along the floor. The additional effort by the arms increases lower extremity muscle tone in extensor muscle groups and may also interfere when the child tries to pull to stand and to cruise around furniture. The child may attain a standing position only on tiptoes and with legs crossed (Figure 6-10). Cruising may not be possible because of a lack of lower extremity separation in a lateral direction. Walking is also limited by an absence of separation in the sagittal plane. Adequate trunk control may be lacking to provide a stable base for the stance leg, and inadequate force production may prevent controlled movement of the swing leg. Because of absent trunk rotation, arm movements are often used to initiate weight shifts in the lower extremities or to substitute for a lack of lower extremity movement. The arms may remain in a high-guard position to reinforce weak trunk muscles by sustaining an extended posture and thus delay the onset of arm swing.

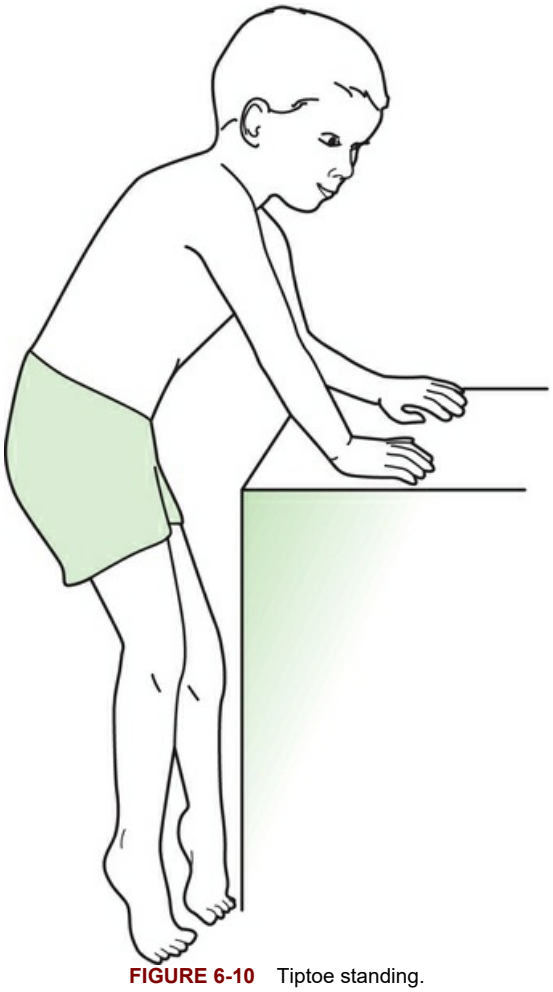


FIGURE 6-10 Tiptoe standing.

Extremity Usage

Reaching in any position may be limited by an inability to bear weight on an extremity or to shift weight onto an extremity and produce the appropriate balance response. Weight bearing on the upper extremities is necessary for propped sitting and for protective extension when other balance responses fail. Lower extremity weight bearing is crucial to independent ambulation.

The child with spasticity is at risk of contractures and deformities secondary to muscle and joint stiffness and to muscle imbalances from increased tone. Spasticity may be present only in extremity muscles, whereas the trunk may demonstrate low muscle tone. In an effort to overcome gravity, the child may try to use the abdominal muscles to attain sitting from a supine position. Excessive exertion can increase overall tone and can result in lower extremity extension and possible scissoring (hip adduction) of the legs through associated reactions.

The Child with Athetosis or Ataxia

The most severe impairments and activity limitations in children with athetosis or ataxia are related to the lack of postural stability. These are listed in Table 6-7. The inability to maintain a posture is evident in the lack of consistent head and trunk control. The child exhibits large, uncompensated movements around the long axis of the body or extremities. In contrast to children with spasticity who lack movement, children with athetosis or ataxia lack postural stability. Because of this instability, the child with athetosis or ataxia may use abnormal movements, such as an asymmetric tonic neck posture, to provide additional stability for functional movements, such as using a pointer or pushing a joystick. Overuse of this posture can predispose the child with CP to scoliosis or hip subluxation.

Table 6-7

Impairments, Activity Limitations, Participation Restrictions, and Focus of Treatment in Children with Athetosis

Body Structure/Function	Activity Limitation	Participation Restriction	Focus of Treatment
Muscle tone	Delayed gross and fine motor skills	Self-feeding	Educate parents
Selective motor control • Lack of stability • Lack of cocontraction • Poor coordination	Delayed oral motor skills Slow gait	Increased time to carry out activities of daily living and other tasks	Focus parents' handling on stability
Slow postural responses	Postural instability Balance		Increase midline holding in postures
Lack of graded movement		Decreased play Decreased leisure	Weight bearing through arms for safer movement transitions Control and direct movement with resistance; resist reciprocal movements

Physical therapy intervention

Children with CP demonstrate impairments, functional limitations, and movement dysfunction throughout their lifetime. Four stages of care are used to describe the continuum of physical therapy management of the child with CP from infancy to adulthood. Physical therapy goals and treatment are presented within the framework of these four stages: early intervention, preschool, school age and adolescence, and adulthood.

Because the brain damage occurs in a developing motor system, the primary emphasis of physical therapy intervention is to foster motor development and to learn functional motor skills. When a child learns to move for the first time, the infant's own movements provide sensory feedback for the learning process to occur. If the feedback is incorrect or is incorrectly perceived, the movement may be learned incorrectly. Children with CP tend to develop stereotypical patterns of movement because they have difficulty in controlling movement against gravity. These stereotypical patterns interfere with developing functional motor skills. Inaccurate motor learning appears to occur in CP. The child (1) moves incorrectly; (2) learns to move incorrectly; and (3) continues to move incorrectly, thereby setting up a cycle for more and more abnormal movement. By assisting the child to experience more functional and normal movement, the clinician promotes functional movement and allows the child more independence within his or her environment.

The acquisition of motor milestones and of subsequent skills has to be viewed as the promotion of the child's highest possible independent level of function. Although the developmental sequence can act as a guide for formulating treatment goals and as a source of treatment activities, it should not be adhered to exclusively. Just because one skill comes before another in the typical developmental sequence, it does not mean that it is a prerequisite for the next skill. A good example of this concept is demonstrated by looking at the skill of creeping. Creeping is not a necessary prerequisite for walking. In fact, learning to creep may be more difficult for the child because creeping requires weight shifting and coordination of all four extremities. Little is to be gained by blindly following the developmental sequence. In fact, doing so may make it more difficult for the child to progress to upright standing.

The physical therapist is responsible for formulating and directing the plan of care. The physical therapist assistant implements interventions designed to assist the child to achieve the goals as outlined in the plan of care. Therapeutic interventions may include positioning, developmental activities, and practicing postural control within cognitively and socially appropriate functional tasks. The physical therapist assistant can foster motor development through play and use play to expand the child's ability to self-generate perceptual motor experiences. The physical therapist assistant can model positive social interactions for the caregiver and provide family education.

General Treatment Ideas

Child with Spasticity

Treatment for the child with spasticity focuses on mobility in all possible postures and transitions between these postures. The tendency to develop contractures needs to be counteracted by range of motion, positioning, and development of active movement. Areas that are prone to tightness may include shoulder adductors and elbow, wrist, and finger flexors in children with quadriplegic involvement, whereas hip flexors and adductors, knee flexors, and ankle plantar flexors are more likely to be involved in children with diplegic involvement. Children with quadriplegia can show lower extremity tightness as well. These same joints may be involved unilaterally in hemiplegia. Useful techniques to inhibit spasticity include weight bearing; weight shifting; slow, rhythmic rocking; and rhythmic rotation of the trunk and body segments. Active trunk rotation, dissociation of body segments, and isolated joint movements should be included in the treatment activities and home program. Appropriate handling can increase the likelihood that the child will receive more accurate sensory feedback for motor learning.

Advantages and Disadvantages of Different Positions

The influence of tonic reflexes on functional movement is presented in the earlier section of this chapter. The advantages of using different positions in treatment are now discussed. Both advantages and disadvantages can be found in the previous chapter in Table 5-2. The reader is also

referred to Chapter 5 for descriptions of facilitating movement transitions between positions.

Supine

Early weight bearing can be performed when the child is supine, with the knees bent and the feet flat on the support surface. To counteract the total extension influence of the TLR, the child's body can be flexed by placing the upper trunk on a wedge and the legs over a bolster. Flexion of the head and upper trunk can decrease the effect of the supine TLR. Dangling or presenting objects at the child's eye level can facilitate the use of the arms for play or object exploration.

Side Lying

This position is best to dampen the effect of most of the tonic reflexes because of the neutral position of the head. Be careful not to allow lateral flexion with too thick a support under the head. It is also relatively easy to achieve protraction of the shoulders and pelvis, as well as trunk rotation, in preparation for rolling and coming to sit. The side the child is lying on is weight bearing and should be elongated. This maneuver can be done passively before the child is placed into the side-lying position (see Intervention 5-8), or it may occur as a result of a lateral weight shift as the child's position is changed.

Prone

The prone position promotes weight bearing through the upper extremities, as well as providing some stretch to the hip and knee flexors. Head and trunk control can be facilitated by the development of active extension as well as promoting eye-head relationships. Movement while the child is prone, prone on elbows or prone on extended arms, can promote upper extremity loading and weight shift.

Sitting

Almost no better functional position exists than sitting. Weight bearing can be accomplished through the extremities while active head and trunk control is promoted. An extended trunk is dissociated from flexed lower extremities. Righting and equilibrium reactions can be facilitated from this position. ADLs such as feeding, dressing, bathing, and movement transitions can all be encouraged while the child is sitting.

Quadruped

The main advantage of the four-point or quadruped position is that the extremities are all weight bearing, and the trunk must work directly against gravity. The position provides a great opportunity for dissociated movements of limbs from the trunk and the upper trunk from the lower trunk.

Kneeling

As a dissociated posture, kneeling affords the child the opportunity to practice keeping the trunk and hips extended while flexed at the knees. The hip flexors can be stretched, and balance responses can be practiced without having to control all lower extremity joints. Playing in kneeling is developmentally appropriate, and with support, the child can also practice moving into half-kneeling.

Standing

The advantages of standing are obvious from a musculoskeletal standpoint. Weight bearing through the lower extremities is of great importance for long bone growth. Weight bearing can produce a prolonged stretch on heel cords and knee flexors while promoting active head and trunk control. Upright standing also provides appropriate visual input for social interaction with peers.

Child with Athetosis or Ataxia

Treatment for the child with athetosis focuses on stability in weight bearing and the use of developmental postures that provide trunk or extremity support. Useful techniques include approximation, weight bearing, and moving within small ranges of motion with resistance as tolerated. The assistant can use sensory cues that provide the child with information about joint and postural alignment, such as mirrors, weight vests, and heavier toys that provide some resistance but

do not inhibit movement. Grading movement within the midrange, where instability is typically the greatest, is the most difficult for the child. Activities that may be beneficial include playing "statues," holding ballet positions, and holding any other fixed posture, such as stork standing. Use of hand support in sitting, kneeling, and standing can improve the child's stability. Visually fixing on a target may also be helpful. As the child grows older, the assistant should help the child to develop safe movement strategies during customary ADLs. If possible, the child should be actively involved in discovering ways to overcome his or her own particular obstacles.

Valued Life Outcomes

Giangreco et al. (2011) identified five life outcomes that should be highly valued for all children, even those with severe disabilities:

1. Being safe and healthy both physically and emotionally
2. Having a safe, stable home in which to live now and in the future
3. Having meaningful personal relationships
4. Having control and choice based on age and culture
5. Engaging in meaningful activities in a variety of places within a community

These outcomes can be used to guide goal setting for children with disabilities across the life span. Giangreco et al. (2011) continue to support linking educational curriculum to individually determined life outcomes. They provide a guide to education planning which is collaborative and family-centered for young children and life outcome based for the school-aged child. School-based interventions must be focused on education needs of the child (Effgen, 2013). Perhaps by having a vision of what life should be like for these children, we can be more future-oriented in planning and giving support to these children and their families. This approach is certainly in keeping with the ICF focus on activities and participation of children with disabilities. We must always remember that children with disabilities grow up to be adults with disabilities.

First Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention: Early Intervention (Birth to 3 Years)

Theoretically, early therapy can have a positive impact on nervous system development and recovery from injury. The ability of the nervous system to be flexible in its response to injury and development is termed *plasticity*. Infants at risk for neurologic problems may be candidates for early physical therapy intervention to take advantage of the nervous system's plasticity.

The decision to initiate physical therapy intervention and at what level (frequency and duration) is based on the infant's neuromotor performance during the physical therapy examination and the family's concerns. Several assessment tools designed by physical therapists are used in the clinic to try to identify infants with CP as early as possible. Pediatric physical therapists need to update their knowledge of such tools continually. As previously stated, a discussion of these tools is beyond the scope of this text because physical therapist assistants do not evaluate children's motor status. However, a familiarity with tools used by physical therapists can be gained by reading the text by Effgen (2013) or Campbell et al. (2012). Typical problems often identified during a physical therapy examination at this time include lack of head control, inability to track visually, dislike of the prone position, fussiness, asymmetric postures secondary to exaggerated tonic reflexes, tonal abnormalities, and feeding or breathing difficulty.

Early intervention usually spans the first 3 years of life. During this time, typically developing infants are establishing trust in their caregivers and are learning how to move about safely within their environments. Parents develop a sense of competence through taking care of their infant and guiding them in safe exploration of the world. Having a child with a disability is stressful for a family. By educating the family about the child's disability and by teaching the family ways to position, carry, feed, and dress the child, the therapist and the therapist assistant practice family-centered intervention. The therapy team must recognize the needs of the family in relation to the child, rather than focusing on the child's needs alone. Federal funding to states provides for the screening and intervention from birth to 3 years of age of children who have or are at risk for having disabilities and their families.

Periodic assessment by a pediatric physical therapist who comes into the home may be sufficient to monitor an infant's development and to provide parent education. Hospitals that provide intensive care for newborns often have follow-up clinics in which children are examined at regular

intervals. Instruction in home management, including specific handling and positioning techniques, is done by the therapist assigned to that clinic. Infants can be seen for ongoing early intervention services in the home. Physical therapy provides activity-based interventions that are embedded into daily routines and meet the goals of the family as outlined in an individualized family service plan (IFSP). At 3 years of age, the child may likely transition into an early childhood program in a public school to continue to receive services.

Role of the Family

The family is an important component in the early management of the infant with CP. Family-centered care is best practiced in pediatric physical therapy (Chiarello, 2013). Bamm and Rosenbaum (2008) reviewed the genesis, development, and implementation of family-centered care, which was introduced more than 40 years ago. The most frequently delineated concepts of family-centered care in child health literature are:

1. Recognizing the family as a constant in the child's life and the primary source of strength and support for the child.
2. Acknowledging the diversity and uniqueness of children and families.
3. Acknowledging that parents bring expertise.
4. Recognizing that family-centered care fosters competency.
5. Encouraging collaboration and partnership between families and health-care providers.
6. Facilitating family-to-family support and networking (McKean et al., 2005).

Families and professionals prioritize important issues differently. Families identify communication, availability, and accessibility as the most important issues in contrast to professionals who identify education, information, and counseling as most important. Bamm and Rosenbaum (2008) identified the four barriers and supports to implementing family-centered care. They are attitudinal, conceptual, financial, and political factors which can be viewed negatively or positively in affecting the implementation of family-centered care. Regardless of these factors, family-centered care is the preferred service delivery philosophy for physical therapy in any setting and can be utilized across the life span (Chiarello, 2013).

Role of the Physical Therapist Assistant

The physical therapist assistant's role in providing ongoing therapy to infants is determined by the supervising physical therapist. The neonatal intensive care unit is not an appropriate practice setting for a physical therapist assistant or an inexperienced physical therapist because of the acuity and instability of very ill infants. Specific competencies must be met to practice safely within this specialized environment, and meeting these competencies usually requires additional coursework and supervised work experience. These competencies have been identified and are available from the Section on Pediatrics of the American Physical Therapy Association.

The role of the physical therapist assistant in working with the child with CP is as a member of the health-care team. The makeup of the team varies depending on the age of the child. During infancy, the team may be small and may consist only of the infant, parents, physician, and therapist. By the time the child is 3 years old, the rehabilitation team may have enlarged to include additional physicians involved in the child's medical management and other professionals such as an audiologist, an occupational therapist, a speech pathologist, a teacher, and a teacher's aide. The physical therapist assistant is expected to bring certain skills to the team and to the child, including knowledge of positioning and handling techniques, use of adaptive equipment, management of impaired tone, and developmental activities that foster motor abilities and movement transitions within a functional context. Because the physical therapist assistant may be providing services to the child in the home or at school, the assistant may be the first to observe additional problems or be told of a parental concern. These concerns should be communicated to the supervising therapist in a timely manner.

1. General goals of physical therapy in early intervention are to:
2. Promote infant-parent interaction.
3. Encourage development of functional skills and play.
4. Promote sensorimotor development.
5. Establish head and trunk control.
6. Attain and maintain upright orientation.

Handling and Positioning

Handling and positioning in the supine or "en face" (face-to-face) posture should promote orientation of the head in the midline and symmetry of the extremities. A flexed position is preferred so the shoulders are forward and the hands can easily come to the midline. Reaching is encouraged by making sure that objects are within the infant's grasp. The infant can be encouraged to initiate reaching when in the supine position by being presented with visually interesting toys. Positioning with the infant prone is also important because this is the position from which the infant first moves into extension. Active head lifting when in prone can be encouraged by using toys that are brightly colored or make noise. Some infants do not like being in prone, and the caregiver has to be encouraged to continue to put the infant in this position for longer periods. Carrying the infant in prone can increase the child's tolerance for the position. The infant should not sleep in prone, however, because of the increased incidence of sudden infant death syndrome in infants who sleep in this position (American Academy of Pediatrics, 1992). Carrying positions should accentuate the strengths of the infant and should avoid as much abnormal posturing as possible. The infant should be allowed to control as much of her body as possible for as long as possible before external support is given. Figure 6-11 shows a way to hold the child to increase tolerance to prone and to provide gentle movement; refer to Chapter 5 for other carrying positions. Additionally, Figure 6-11 depicts a way to engage a child in moving and playing.

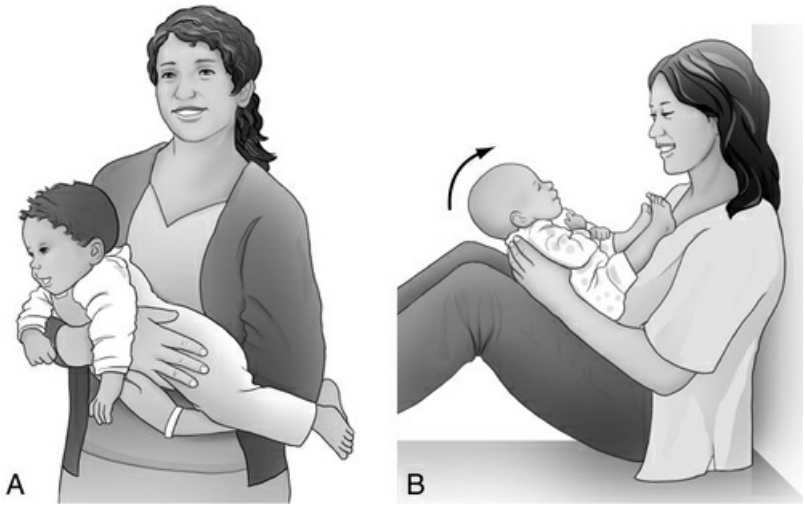


FIGURE 6-11 Holding, moving, and playing as a way to control the head and body against gravity. (Redrawn from Shepherd RB: *Cerebral palsy in infancy*, Elsevier, 2014, p. 247.)

Most handling and positioning techniques represent use of the developmental sequence in the management of the child with CP popularized by the Bobaths. Although their neurodevelopmental approach is used in this population, research evidence of its effectiveness over other, more activity-based approaches is minimal. As the reader is aware, neurologic development occurs at the same time at which the child's musculoskeletal and cognitive systems are maturing. Motor learning must take place if any permanent change in motor behavior is to occur. Affording the infant opportunities to self-generate sensorimotor experiences is an excellent way to promote motor exploration and social play. Remember that movement variability is the hallmark of an adaptable neuromuscular system.

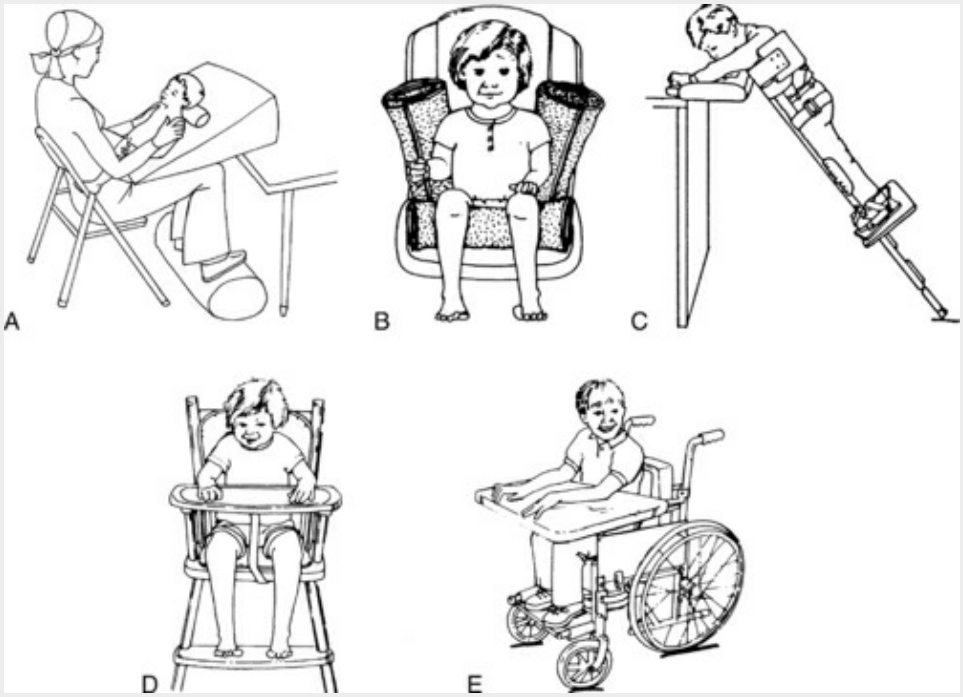
Feeding and Respiration

A flexed posture facilitates feeding and social interaction between the child and the caregiver. The more upright the child is, the easier it is to promote a flexed posture of the head and neck. Although it is not appropriate for a physical therapist assistant to provide oral motor therapy for an infant with severe feeding difficulties, the physical therapist assistant could assist in positioning the infant during a therapist-directed feeding session. One example of a position for feeding is shown in Intervention 6-1, *A*. The face-to-face position can be used for a child who needs trunk support. Be careful that the roll does not slip behind the child's neck and encourage extension. Other examples

of proper body positioning for improved oral motor and respiratory functioning during mealtime are depicted in Intervention 6-1, *B*. Deeper respirations can also be encouraged prior to feeding or at other times by applying slight pressure to the child's thorax and abdominal area prior to inspiration. This maneuver can be done when the child is in the side-lying position, as shown in Intervention 6-2, or with bilateral hand placements when the child is supine. The tilt of the wedge makes it easier for the child to use the diaphragm for deeper inspiration, as well as expanding the chest wall.

Intervention 6-1

Positioning for Feeding

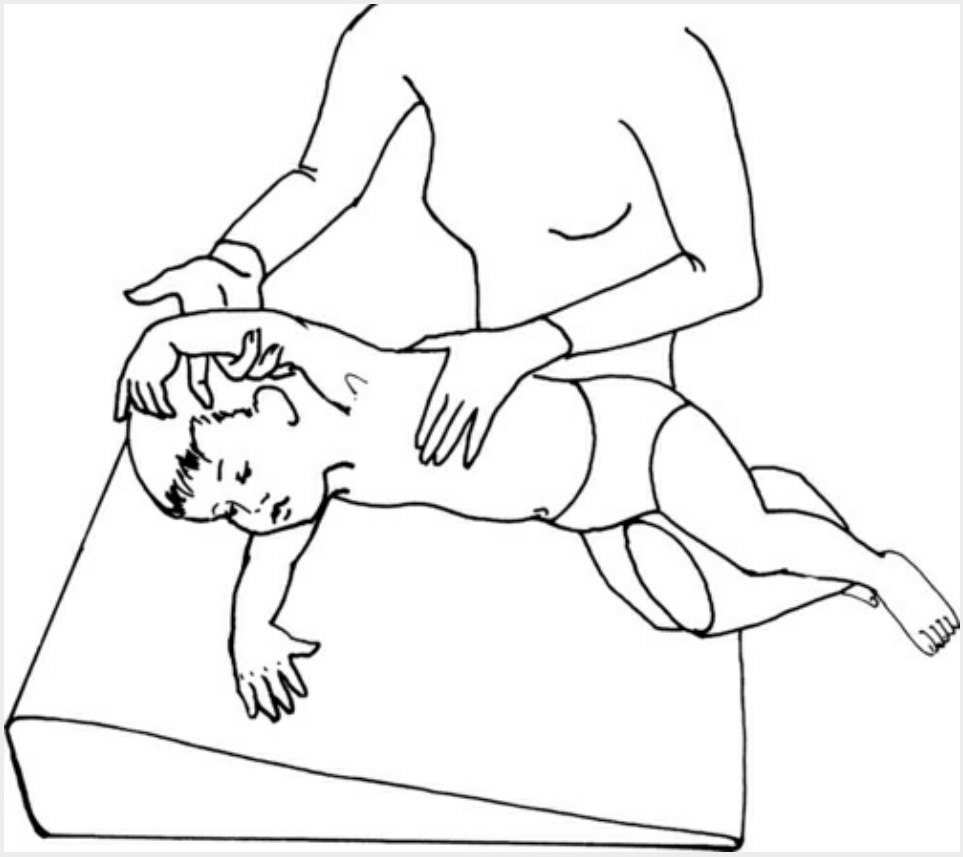


A. The face-to-face position can be used for a child who needs trunk support. Be careful that the roll does not slip behind the child's neck, and encourage extension.
B. A young child is positioned for feeding in a car seat with adaptations using towel rolls.
C. A young child positioned on a prone stander is standing for mealtime.
D. A child is positioned in a high chair with adaptations for greater hip stability and symmetry during feeding.
E. A child is positioned in his wheelchair with an adapted seat insert, a tray, and hip stabilizing straps for mealtime.

(**A,** Reprinted by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities*, New York, 1978, Teachers College Press, p. 201. ©1978 Teachers College, Columbia University. All rights reserved; **B** to **E,** From Connolly BH, Montgomery PC: *Therapeutic exercise in developmental disabilities*, ed 2. Thorofare, NJ, 2001, Slack.)

Intervention 6-2

Facilitating Deeper Inspiration



In side lying, slight pressure is applied to the lateral thorax to facilitate deeper inspiration.

(Reprinted by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities,* New York, 1978, Teachers College Press, p. 199. © 1978 Teachers College, Columbia University. All rights reserved.)

Therapeutic Exercise

Gentle range-of-motion exercises may be indicated if the infant has difficulty reaching to the midline, has difficulty separating the lower extremities for diapering, or has tight heel cords. Infants do not have complete range of motion in the lower extremities normally, so the hips should never be forced into what would be considered full range of adduction or extension for an adult. Parents can be taught to incorporate range of motion into the daily routines of diapering, bathing, and dressing. The reader is referred to the instruction sheets by Jaeger (1987) as a good source of home program examples to use for maintenance of range of motion.

Motor Skill Acquisition

The skills needed for age-appropriate play vary. Babies look around and reach first from the supine position and then from the prone position, before they start moving through the environment. Adequate time playing on the floor is needed to encourage movement of the body against gravity. Gravity must be conquered to attain upright sitting and standing postures. Body movement during play is crucial to body awareness. Movement within the environment is necessary for spatial orientation to the external world. Although floor time is important and is critical for learning to move against gravity, time spent in supine and prone positions must be balanced with the benefits of being in an upright orientation. All children need to be held upright, on the parent's lap, and over the shoulder to experience as many different postures as are feasible. Refer to Chapter 5 for specific techniques that may be used to encourage head and trunk control, upper extremity usage, and transitional movements.

Constraint-Induced Movement Therapy (CIMT)

Young children with cerebral palsy from 18 months to 3 years who have unilateral upper extremity

involvement are good candidates for CIMT. A short arm cast is applied to the noninvolved arm to prevent the child with hemiplegia from using the unaffected extremity which forces use of the affected arm. Children from ages 3 to 6 may also be treated in the clinic or at home with this intervention, although as the child transitions to school, it may be harder to ensure the child's cooperation. CIMT is the most researched intervention used for children with hemiplegic CP (Case-Smith, 2014; Charles et al., 2006; DeLuca et al., 2003, 2012). A full description of the intervention is beyond the scope of this text. Physical therapy and occupational therapy are typically part of the protocols with the focus on intensive repetition for motor learning. Results have been very positive, with improvements in arm function (DeLuca et al., 2003; Eliasson et al., 2005) and gait (Coker et al., 2010).

Functional Postures

The two most functional positions for a person are sitting and standing, because upright orientation can be achieved with either position. Some children with CP cannot become functional in standing because of the severity of their motor involvement, but almost every child has the potential to be upright in sitting. Function in sitting can be augmented by appropriate seating devices, inserts, and supports. For example, the child with spastic diplegia, as in Figure 6-12, has difficulty sitting on the floor and playing because of hamstring stiffness, which prevents her from flexing her hips. By having the child sit on a stool with feet on the floor, as in Figure 6-12, *B*, the child exhibits better arm use in play and a more upright sitting posture. In Figure 6-12, *C*, having the child sit on a low stool allows her to practice moving her body away from the midline to reach for a toy. This movement was blocked while sitting on the floor by her wide abducted sitting posture.

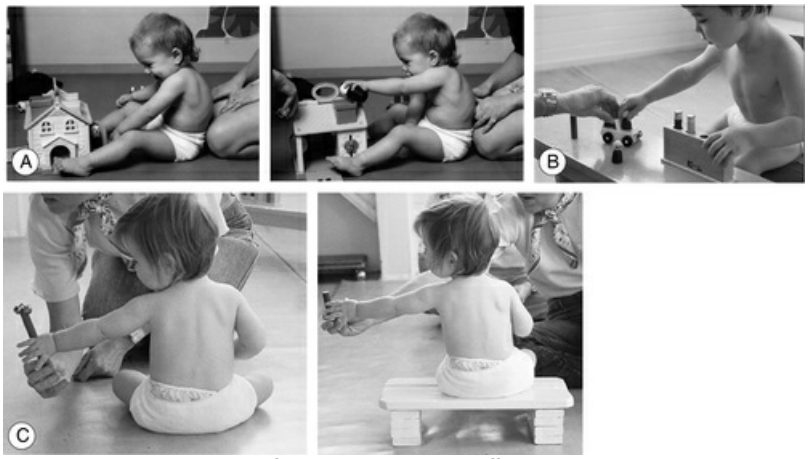


FIGURE 6-12 Function in sitting. **A,** An infant with diplegia has difficulty playing because tight hamstrings prevent adequate hip flexion for sitting squarely on the floor. **B,** A child is able to play while sitting on a stool with feet on the floor. **C,** A wide abducted floor sitting posture prevents lateral movement away from the midline, limiting her reach. Sitting on a stool with her feet on the floor enables her to balance as she shifts her body laterally. (From Shepherd RB: *Cerebral palsy in infancy*, Elsevier, 2014, p. 249.)

When motor control is insufficient to allow independent standing, a standing program can be implemented. Upright standing can be achieved by using a supine or prone stander, along with orthoses for distal control. Standers provide lower extremity weight bearing while they support the child's trunk. The child is free to work on head control in a prone stander and to bear weight on the upper extremities or engage in play. In a supine stander, the child's head is supported while the hands are free for reaching and manipulation. The trunk and legs should be in correct anatomic alignment. Standing programs were typically begun when the child is around 12 to 16 months of age. Stuberg (1992) recommended standing for at least 60 minutes, four or five times per week, as a general guideline. It is now recommended that supported standing begin early at 9 to 10 months (Paleg et al., 2013). The goals are to improve bone density and hip development and to manage contractures. Paleg et al. (2013) recommend 60 to 90 minutes per day for 5 days to positively affect bone mineral density. For hip health, 60 minutes a day with the lower extremities in 30 to 60 degrees of bilateral hip abduction while in a supported stander is recommended. Forty-five to sixty minutes is recommended to affect range of motion of the lower extremity and to affect spasticity.

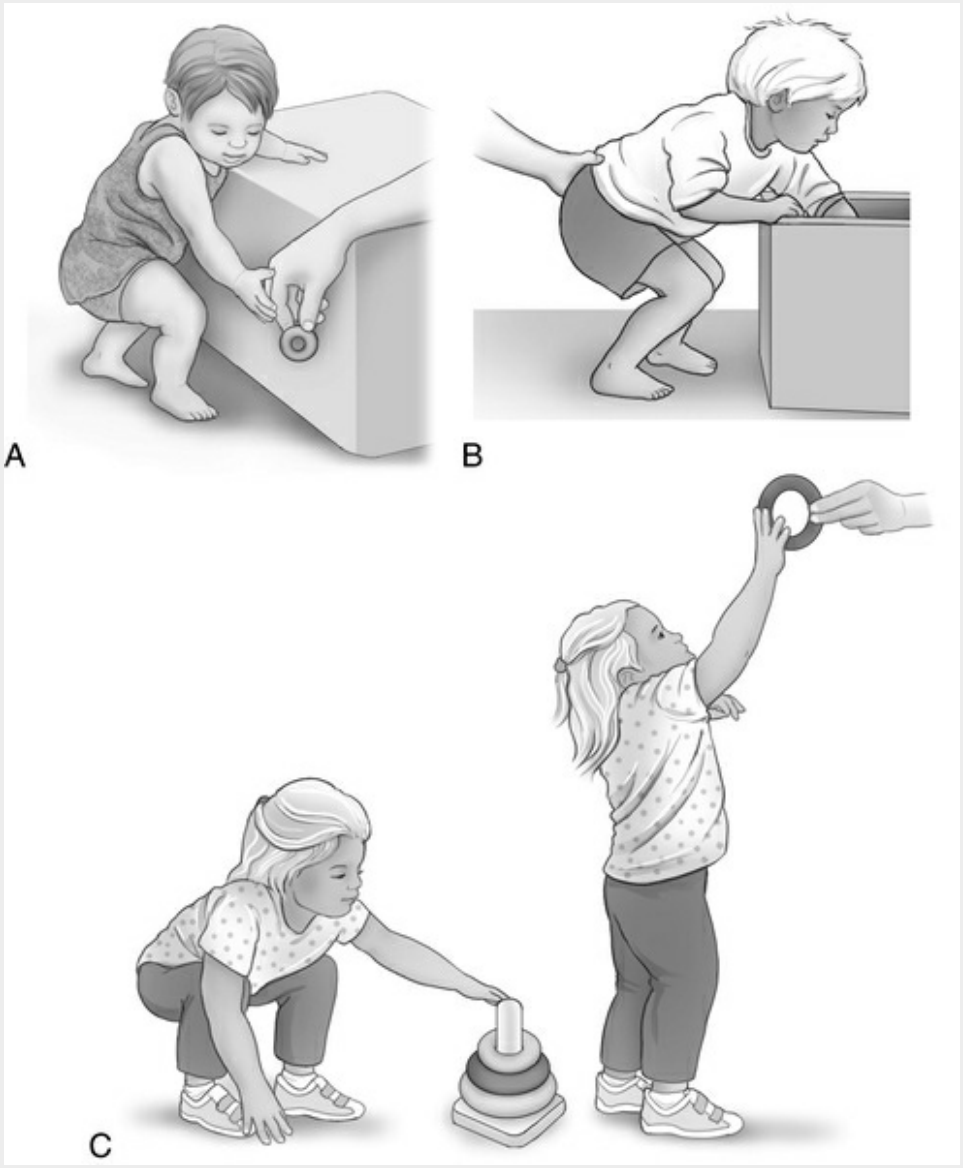
Independent Mobility

Mobility can be achieved in many ways. Rolling is a form of independent mobility but may not be practical, except in certain surroundings. Sitting and hitching (bottom scooting with or without extremity assistance) are other means of mobility and may be appropriate for a younger child. Creeping on hands and knees can be functional, but upright ambulation is still seen as the most acceptable way for a child to get around because it provides the customary and expected orientation to the world. The use of body-weight support devices has increased as part of gait training of children with CP.

Some early interventions that may be useful for the infant with CP have been suggested by Shepherd (2014). She stresses ways that a typical infant uses her legs during infancy such as when kicking, moving the body up and down on fixed feet as in a squat or crouch, moving from sit to stand to sit, and stepping up and down and walking. Intervention 6-3is crouching to standing or squatting and crouching. Intervention 6-4 is moving from sit to stand and stand to sit. Weight bearing through the feet from an early age can assist in keeping the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles lengthened since they tend to stiffen over time and develop a contracture that might require surgery. Intervention 6-5 is stepping up and down. These interventions can be continued throughout this stage of physical therapy management.

Intervention 6-3

Squatting and Crouching



Exercises and games to train lower limb control. Children are squatting to pick up toys or to take a toy out of the box.

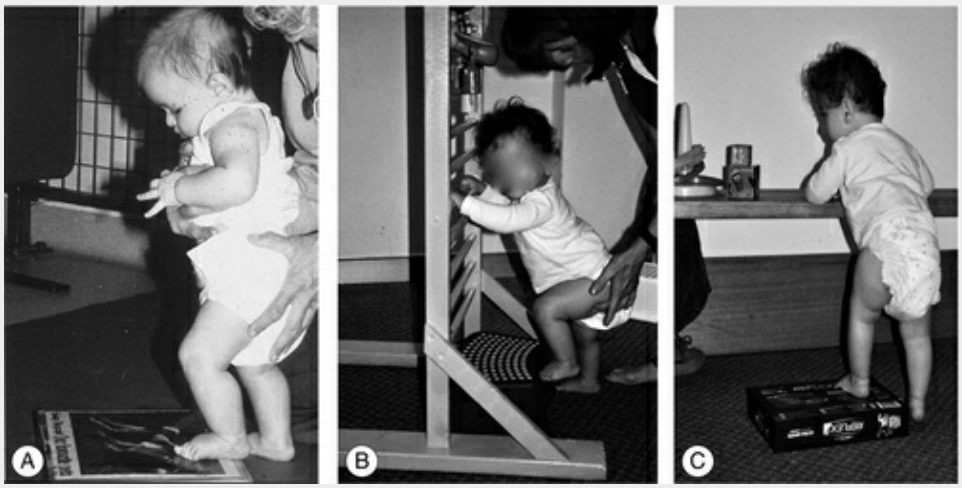
Intervention 6-4

Sitting to Stand and Stand to Sit

Sit-stand-sit exercise. **A,** The therapist steadies the infant as he does not yet have the ability to balance throughout the action. **B,** The therapist moves the infant's knee (and body mass) forward to show him what he must do. **C,** This little boy needs assistance to initiate knee flexion for sitting.

Intervention 6-5

Stepping up and Down



A and **B**, With manual contacts at the pelvis, encourage the infant to place a foot on a small flat

object and bring weight forward, repeat with the other leg. Child may support herself on rails or a table while stepping. Gradually increase the height of the object to increase activation of the leg muscles. Assist the infant in stepping forward and up but do not take all of the infant's weight. **C,** Practice stepping sideways as in cruising. Place an object to either side and encourage stepping up laterally.

(From Shepherd RB: *Physiotherapy in Paediatrics,* ed 3, Oxford, 1995, Butterworth-Heinemann.)

Ambulation Predictors

A prediction of ambulation potential can be made on the basis of the type and distribution of disordered movements, as well as by achievement of motor milestones (Table 6-8). The less of the body is involved, the greater the potential for ambulation. Children with spastic quadriplegia show the largest variability in their potential to walk. Children who display independent sitting or the ability to scoot along the floor on the buttocks by the age of 2 years have a good chance of ambulating (Watt et al., 1989).

Table 6-8

Predictors of Ambulation for Cerebral Palsy

Predictor	Ambulation Potential
By diagnosis:	
Monoplegia	100%
Hemiplegia	100%*
Ataxia	100%
Diplegia	60%*–90%
Spastic quadriplegia	0–70%
By motor function:	
Sits independent by 2 years	Good†
Sits independent by 3–4 years	50% community ambulation
Presence of primitive reactions beyond 2 years	Poor
Absence of postural reactions beyond 2 years	Poor
Independently crawled symmetrically or reciprocally by 2½–3 years	100%

Source: Glanzman A: Cerebral palsy. In Goodman C, Fuller KS, editors: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist,* St. Louis, Saunders, 2015, p. 1524.

* From Pallas Alonso CR, de la Cruz B, Lopez MC, et al: Cerebral palsy and age of sitting and walking in very low birth weight infants. *An Esp Pediatr* 53:48–52, 2000.

† From da Paz Junior, Burnett SM, Braga LW: Walking prognosis in cerebral palsy: A 22-year retrospective analysis. *Dev Med Child Neurol* 36:130–134, 1994.

A child with CP may achieve independent ambulation with or without an assistive device. Children with spastic hemiplegia are more likely to ambulate at the high end of the normal range, which is 18 months. Some researchers report a range of up to 21 months (Horstmann and Bleck, 2007). Typical ages for ambulation have been reported in children with spastic diplegia, with most walking at 24 to 36 months. Those that do not walk until 48 months require some types of assistive device, such as crutches, canes, or a walker. Other investigators have reported that if ambulation is possible for a child with any level of involvement, it usually takes place by the time the child is age 8 (Glanzman, 2009).

Most children do not require extra encouragement to attempt ambulation, but they do need assistance and practice in bearing weight equally on their lower extremities, in initiating reciprocal limb movement, and in balancing. Postural reactions involving the trunk are usually delayed, as are extremity protective responses. Impairments in transitional movements from sitting to standing can impede independence. In children with hemiplegic CP, movements initiated with the involved side of the body may be avoided, with all the work of standing and walking actually accomplished by the uninvolved side.

Body Weight–Supported Treadmill Training (BWSTT)

Use of BSWTT has become an acceptable rehabilitation strategy for improving the walking performance of children with CP. A harness can be used to support an infant as she learns to walk, to keep the child safe for walking practice, as seen in Figure 6-13, or while engaged in another activity. Data on using a harness apparatus to partially support a child's body weight while training ambulation on a treadmill has shown that children at GMFCS levels III and IV significantly increased gross motor performance and walking speed (Willoughby et al., 2009). Early task-specific practice is beneficial for acquiring the ability to ambulate. Richards et al. (1997) studied the use of

such a system in four children with CP and concluded that it would be possible to train children as young as 19 months of age. In a study of older children, there were positive changes in motor test scores and in the ability to transfer of some children (Schindl et al., 2000). A twelve-week program performed two days a week resulted in improved walking performance in children with CP (Kurz et al., 2011). The changes in stepping kinematics were strongly correlated with changes in step length, walking speed, and GMFM score. Additional studies have shown that BWSTT improves gait in children with CP (Cherng et al., 2007; Dodd and Foley, 2007; Mattern-Baxter et al., 2009).

FIGURE 6-13 Body-Weight Support Treadmill Use. (Treadmill with harness, with permission from LiteGait, Mobility Research, Tempe, AZ; From Shepherd RB: *Cerebral palsy in infancy*, Elsevier, 2014, p. 7.)

The research is equivocal when comparing the effect of treadmill training and overground walking. Willoughby et al. (2010) found no difference between the two groups in walking speed or in walking in the school environment. However, Grecco et al. (2013) found that their treadmill-training group demonstrated greater improvement than the overground-walking group. The difference was significant after treatment and on follow-up. It should be noted that in the study of Willoughby et al. partial weight support was used while on the treadmill and the participants were GMFCS levels III or IV, whereas in the study of Grecco et al. the treadmill was used without partial weight support and the participants were GMFCS levels I to III. Use of a treadmill with or without partial body weight support needs to continue to be researched to develop appropriate protocols for children at different GMFCS levels.

Power Mobility

Mobility within the environment is too important for the development of spatial concepts to be delayed until the child can move independently. Power mobility should be considered a viable option even for a young child. As young as 17 to 20 months, some children with disabilities have

learned to maneuver a motorized wheelchair (Butler, 1986, 1991). Just because a child is taught to use power mobility does not preclude working concurrently on independent ambulation. This point needs to be stressed to the family. Early use of power mobility has been shown to have positive effects on young children who are unable to move independently (Guerette et al., 2013). Refer to the first international consensus on power mobility recently published by Livingstone and Paleg (2014). Clinical practice suggestions are made for using power mobility in children with different abilities, needs, and ages. Children with CP who are not mobile but have the cognitive skills of a 12-month-old should be evaluated for power mobility. The mismatch of motor and cognition has the potential to produce negative developmental outcomes (Anderson et al., 2014). Other mobility alternatives include devices such as prone scooters, adapted tricycles, battery-powered riding toys, and manual wheelchairs. The independence of moving on one's own teaches young children that they can control the environment around them, rather than being controlled.

Second Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention: Preschool Period

The major emphasis during the preschool period is to promote mobility and functional independence in the child with CP. Depending on the distribution and degree of involvement, the child with CP may or may not have achieved an upright orientation to gravity in sitting or standing during the first 3 years of life. By the preschool period, most children's social sphere has broadened to include day-care attendants, babysitters, preschool personnel, and playmates, so mobility is not merely important for self-control and object interaction; it is a social necessity. All aspects of the child's being—mental, motor, and social-emotional—are developing concurrently during the preschool period in an effort to achieve functional independence.

Physical therapy goals during the preschool period are:

1. Establish a means of independent mobility
2. Promote functional movement
3. Improve performance of ADLs such as grooming and dressing
4. Promote social interaction with peers

The physical therapist assistant is more likely to work with a preschool-age child than with a child in an infant intervention program. Within a preschool setting, the physical therapist assistant implements certain aspects of the treatment plan formulated by the physical therapist. Activities may include promoting postural reactions to improve head and trunk control, teaching transitions such as moving from sitting to standing, stretching to maintain adequate muscle length for function, strengthening and endurance exercises for promoting function and health, and practice of self-care skills as part of the child's daily home or classroom schedule.

Independent Mobility

If the child with CP did not achieve upright orientation and mobility in some fashion during the early intervention period, now is the time to make a concerted effort to assist the child to do so. For children who are ambulatory with or without assistive devices and orthoses, it may be a period of monitoring and reexamining the continued need for either the assistive or orthotic device. Some children who may not have previously required any type of assistance may benefit from one now because of their changing musculoskeletal status, body weight, seizure status, or safety concerns. Their previous degree of motor control may have been sufficient for a small body, but with growth, control may be lost. Any time the physical therapist assistant observes that a child is having difficulty with a task previously performed without problems, the supervising therapist should be alerted. Although the physical therapist performs periodic reexaminations, the physical therapist assistant working with the child should request a reexamination any time negative changes in the child's motor performance occur. Positive changes should, of course, be thoroughly documented and reported because these, too, may necessitate updating the plan of care.

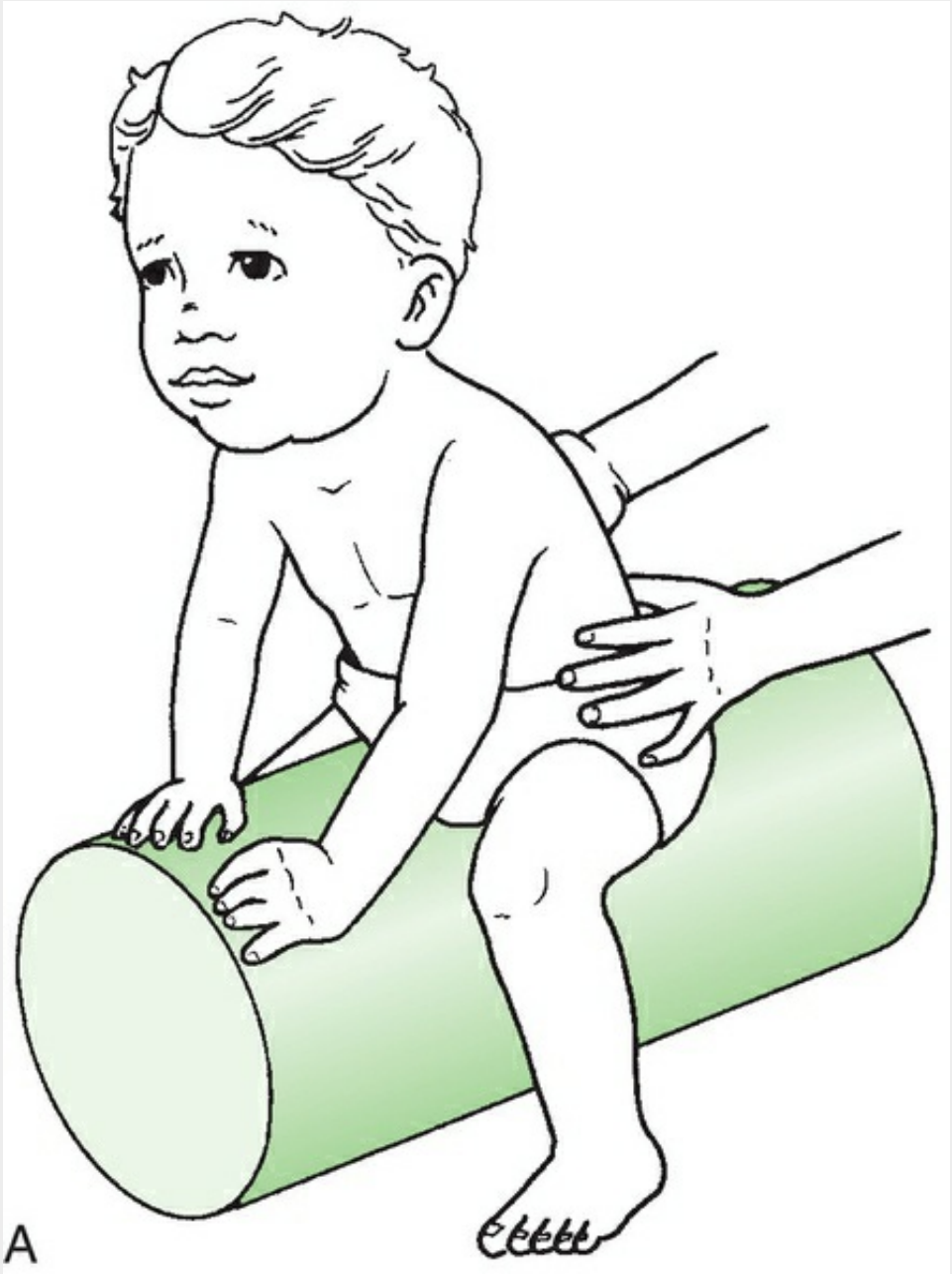
Gait

Ambulation may be possible in children with spastic quadriplegia if motor involvement is not too severe. The attainment of the task takes longer, and gait may never be functional because the child requires assistance and supervision for part or all of the components of the activity. Therefore, ambulation may be considered only therapeutic, that is, another form of exercise done during therapy.

Specific gait difficulties seen in children with spastic diplegia include lack of lower extremity dissociation, decreased single-limb and increased double-limb support time, and limited postural reactions during weight shifting. Children with spastic diplegia have problems dissociating one leg from the other and dissociating leg movements from the trunk. They often fix (stabilize) with the hip adductors to substitute for the lack of trunk stability in upright necessary for initiation of lower limb motion. Practicing coming to stand over a bolster can provide a deterrent to lower extremity adduction while the child works on muscular strengthening and weight bearing (Intervention 6-6, *A*). If the child cannot support all the body's weight in standing or during a sit-to-stand transition, have part of the child's body weight on extended arms while the child practices coming to stand, standing, or shifting weight in standing (Intervention 6-6, *B*).

Intervention 6-6

Coming to Stand over a Bolster



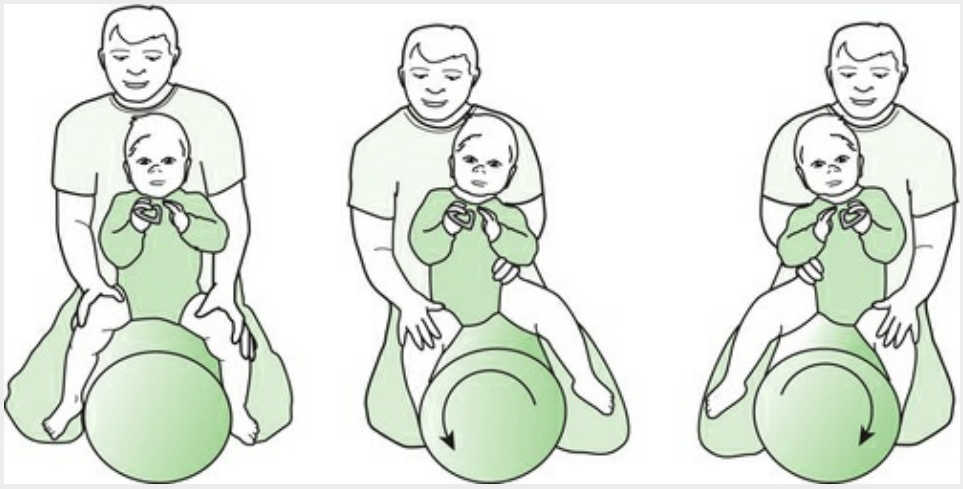
A. Practicing coming to stand over a bolster can provide a deterrent to lower extremity adduction and can work on lower extremity strengthening and weight bearing.
B. If the child cannot support all the body's weight in standing or during a sit-to-stand transition, part of the child's body weight can be borne on extended arms while the child practices coming to stand, standing, or weight shifting in standing.

(**A,** From Campbell SK, editor: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. St. Louis, 2012, WB Saunders.; **B,** Reprinted by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities,* New York, 1978, Teachers College Press, p. 163. © 1978 Teachers College, Columbia University. All rights reserved.)

Practicing lateral trunk postural reactions may automatically result in lower extremity separation as the lower extremity opposite the weight shift is automatically abducted (Intervention 6-7). The addition of trunk rotation to the lateral righting may even produce external rotation of the opposite leg. Pushing a toy and shifting weight in step-stance are also useful activities to practice lower extremity separation. As the child decreases the time in double-limb support by taking a step of appropriate length, she can progress to stepping over an object or to stepping up and down off a step. Single-limb balance can be challenged by using a floor ladder or taller steps. Having the child hold on to vertical poles decreases the amount of support and facilitates upper trunk extension (Figure 6-14). The walkable LiteGait could be used to transition someone from treadmill walking to overground walking (Figure 6-15). Many children can benefit from using a type of assistive device, such as a rolling reverse walker, during gait training (Figure 6-16). Orthoses may also be needed to enhance ambulation.

Intervention 6-7

Balance Reaction on a Bolster



Practicing lateral trunk postural reactions may automatically result in lower extremity separation as the lower extremity opposite the weight shift is automatically abducted.

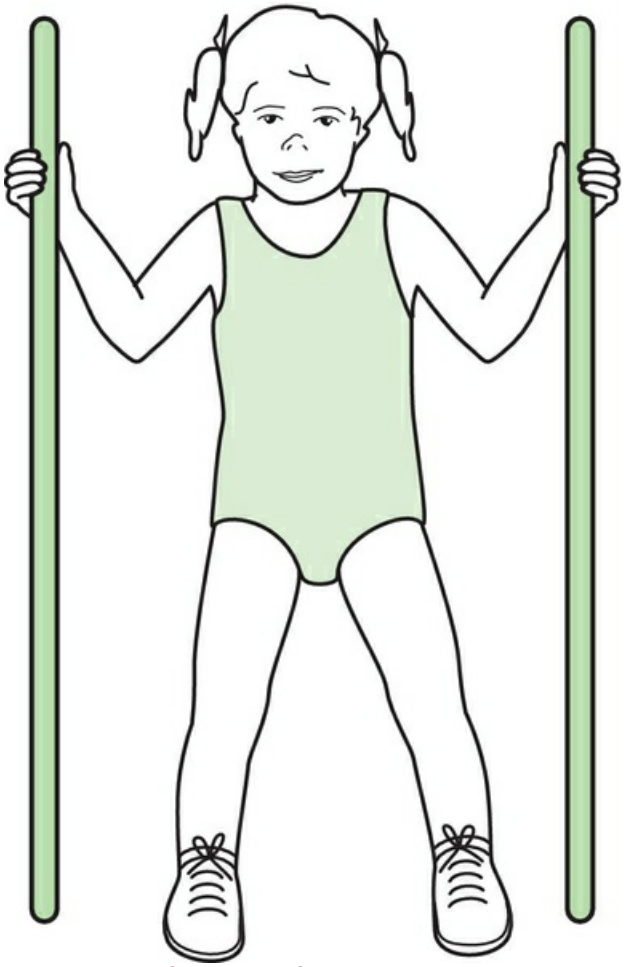


FIGURE 6-14 Standing with poles.

FIGURE 6-15 Walkable LiteGait (With permission from LiteGait, Mobility Research, Tempe, AZ; From Shepherd RB: *Cerebral palsy in infancy,* Elsevier, 2014, p. 7.)

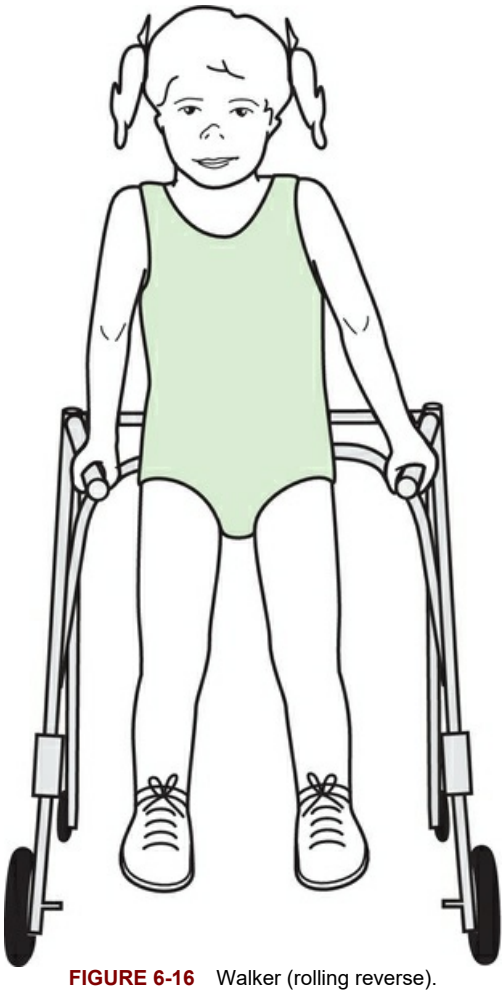


FIGURE 6-16 Walker (rolling reverse).

Orthoses

The most frequently used orthosis in children with CP who are ambulatory is a type of ankle-foot orthosis (AFO). The standard AFO is a single piece of molded polypropylene. The orthosis extends 10 to 15 mm distal to the head of the fibula. The orthosis should not pinch the child behind the knee at any time. All AFOs and foot orthoses (FOs) should support the foot and should maintain the subtalar joint in a neutral position. Hinged AFOs have been shown to allow a more normal and efficient gait pattern (Middleton et al., 1988). In a review by Morris (2002), prevention of plantar flexion was found to improve gait efficiency. Ground reaction AFOs have been recommended by some clinicians to decrease the knee flexion seen in the crouch gait of children with spastic CP (Figure 6-17). Other clinicians state that this type of orthotic device does not work well if the crouch results from high tone in a child with spastic diplegia (Ratliffe, 1998). Knutson and Clark (1991) found that foot orthoses could be helpful in controlling pronation in children who do not need ankle stabilization. Dynamic AFOs have a custom-contoured soleplate that provides forefoot and hindfoot alignment. There is substantial evidence that use of AFOs in children with CP at GMFCS levels I to III controls the ankle and foot during both phases of gait improves gait efficiency (Morris et al., 2011).

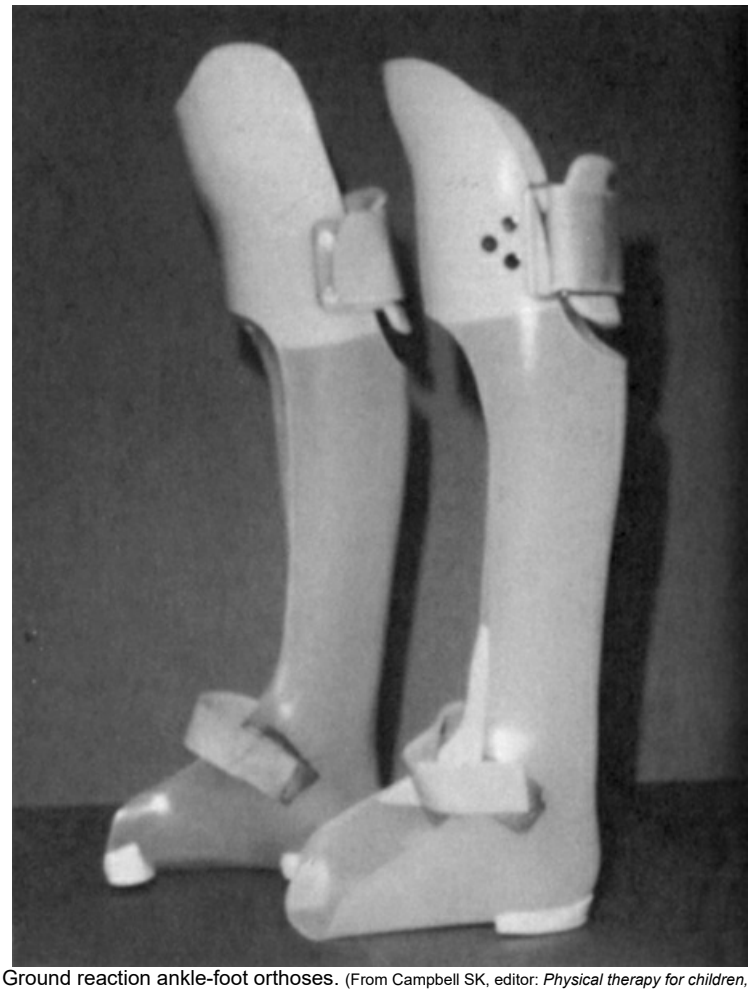


FIGURE 6-17 Ground reaction ankle-foot orthoses. (From Campbell SK, editor: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. St. Louis, 2012, WB Saunders.)

An AFO may be indicated, following surgery or casting to maintain musculotendinous length gains. The orthosis may be worn during both the day and at night. Proper precautions should always be taken to inspect the skin regularly for any signs of skin breakdown or excessive pressure. The physical therapist should establish a wearing schedule for the child. Areas of redness lasting more than 20 minutes after brace removal should be reported to the supervising physical therapist.

A child with unstable ankles who needs medial lateral stability may benefit from a supramalleolar orthosis (SMO). This orthotic device allows the child to move freely into dorsiflexion and plantar flexion while restricting mediolateral movement. An SMO or an FO may be indicated for a child with mild hypertonia or foot pronation (Knutson and Clark, 1991; Buccieri, 2003; George and Elchert, 2007). In the child with hypotonia or athetoid CP, the SMO or FO may provide sufficient stability within a tennis shoe to allow ambulation. General guidelines for orthotic use can be found in Table 6-9.

Table 6-9
General Foot and Ankle Splinting Guidelines

Splints	Status	Application
Solid AFO neutral to + 3° DF	Nonambulators, beginning standers	1. Less than 3° of DF 2. Genu recurvatum associated with decreased ankle DF or weakness 3. Need for medial-lateral stability 4. Nighttime/positional stretching
AFO with 90° posterior stop and free DF (hinged AFO)	Clients with some, but limited, functional mobility	Application of 1–4 above, but need more passive DF during movement, such as ambulation, squatting, steps, and sit to stand
Floor reaction AFO (set DF depending on weight line in standing)	Crouch gait Full passive knee extension in standing	For clients with decreased ability to maintain knee extension during ambulation
SMO	Standers/ambulators with pronation at the ankles	1. Need medial-lateral ankle stability 2. Would like opportunity to use active plantar flexion 3. Decreased DF not a problem during gait

From Glanzman A: Cerebral palsy. In Goodman CC, Fuller K, editors: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist*, ed 3. St. Louis, Saunders, 2015, p. 1529.

AFO, Ankle-foot orthosis; *DF*, dorsiflexion; *SMO*, supramalleolar orthosis.

Assistive Devices

Some assistive devices should be avoided in this population. For example, walkers that do not require the child to control the head and trunk as much as possible are passive and may be of little long-term benefit. When the use of a walker results in increased lower extremity extension and toe walking, a more appropriate means of encouraging ambulation should be sought. Exercise saucers can be as dangerous as walkers. Jumpers should be avoided in children with increased lower extremity muscle tone.

If a child has not achieved independent functional ambulation before the age of 3 years, some alternative type of mobility should be considered at this time. An adapted tricycle, a manual wheelchair, a mobile stander, a battery-powered scooter, and a power wheelchair are all viable options. Power options are being explored earlier and earlier for children. Use of power mobility does not necessarily mean that the child does not have the potential to be an overground walker.

Power Mobility

Children with more severe involvement, as in quadriplegia, do not have sufficient head or trunk control, let alone adequate upper extremity function, to ambulate independently even with an assistive device. For them, some form of power mobility, such as a wheelchair or other motorized device, may be a solution. For others, a more controlling apparatus such as a gait trainer may provide enough trunk support to allow training of the reciprocal lower extremity movements to propel the device (Figure 6-18). M.O.V.E. (Mobility Opportunity Via Education, 1300 17th Street, City Centre, Bakersfield, CA 93301-4533) is a program developed by a special education teacher to foster independent mobility in children who experience difficulty with standing and walking, especially severely physically disabled children. Early work with equipment has been expanded to include a curriculum and an international organization that promotes mobility for all children. Much of the equipment is available at Rifton Equipment (P.O. Box 901, Rifton, NY 12471-1901).

FIGURE 6-18 Rifton gait trainer. (Courtesy Rifton Equipment, Rifton, NY.)

For children already using power mobility, studies have shown that the most consistent use of the wheelchair is at school. When parents and caregivers of children who use power mobility were interviewed, two overriding issues were of greatest concern—accessibility and independence.

Although the wheelchair was viewed as a way to foster independence in an otherwise dependent child, most caregivers stated that they had some difficulty with accessibility, either in the home or in other local environments. To increase the benefit derived from a power wheelchair, the environment it is to be used in must be accessible, the needs of the caregiver must be considered, and the child must be adequately trained to develop skill in driving the wheelchair (Berry et al., 1996). Livingstone and Paleg (2014) note that power mobility is appropriate even for children who never become competent drivers.

Medical Management

This section presents the medical and surgical management of children with CP, because during this period of life, they are most likely to require either form of intervention for spasticity or musculoskeletal deficits.

Medications

The most common oral medications used to manage spasticity include the benzodiazepines, diazepam (Valium), clonazepam, (Klonopin), alpha$_2$ agonists, tizanidine (Zanaflex), baclofen (Lioresal), and dantrolene (Dantrium) (Accardo, 2008; Tilton, 2009). The mechanism of action and potential adverse effects are found in Table 6-10. Sedation, fatigue, and generalized weakness are common side effects which can negatively impact the child's function. Increased drooling has been reported to interfere with feeding and speech (Erkin et al., 2010; Batshaw et al, 2013). Usefulness of oral medications can be limited due to their various side effects. The use of a pump to deliver baclofen directly to the spinal cord has been promoted because it takes less medication to achieve a greater effect. The youngest age at which a child would be considered for this approach is 3 years. It takes up to 6 months to see functional gains. The procedure is expensive, and the benefits are being studied. Because implantation of the pump is a neurosurgical procedure, further discussion is found under that heading.

Table 6-10

Oral Medications for Spasticity

Medication	Mechanism of Action	Side Effects
Benzodiazepine (Valium), (Klonopin)	Inhibits release of excitatory neurotransmitters	Sedation, ataxia, physical dependence, impaired memory
Alpha-2 adrenergic agonist (Zanaflex)	Decreased release of excitatory neurotransmitters	Sedation, hypotension, nausea, vomiting, hepatitis
Dantrolene (Dantrium)	Inhibits release of calcium at sarcoplasmic reticulum	Weakness, nauseas, vomiting, hepatitis
Baclofen	Inhibits release of excitatory neurotransmitters in the spinal cord	Sedation, ataxia, weakness, hypotension

Adapted from Theroux MC, DiCindio S: Major surgical procedures in children with cerebral palsy. *Anesthesiology Clin* 32:63–81, 2014.

Botulinum Toxin

Traditionally, spasticity has also been treated in the adult population with injections of chemical agents, such as alcohol or phenol, to block nerve transmission to a spastic muscle. Although this procedure is not routinely done in children with spasticity because of pain and discomfort, a new alternative is being used. Botulinum bacterium produces a powerful toxin that can inhibit a spastic muscle. If a small amount is injected into a spastic muscle group, weakness and decline of spasticity can be achieved for up to 3 to 6 months. These effects can make it easier to position a child, to fit an orthosis, to improve function, or to provide information about the appropriateness of muscle lengthening. More than one muscle group can be injected. The lack of discomfort and ease of administration are definite advantages over motor point blocks using alcohol or phenol (Gormley, 2001).

Surgical Management

Orthopedic surgery is an often-inevitable occurrence in the life of a child with CP. Indications for surgery may be to (1) decrease pain; (2) correct or prevent deformity; and (3) improve function. The decision to undergo an operation should be a mutual one among the physician, the family, the child, and the medical and educational teams. Children with CP have dynamic problems, and surgical treatment may provide only static solutions, so all areas of the child's function should be

considered. The therapist should modify the child's treatment plan according to the type of surgical procedure, postoperative casting, and the expected length of time of immobilization. A plan should be developed to address the child's seating and mobility needs and to instruct everyone how to move and position the child safely at home and school.

Surgical procedures to lengthen soft tissues are most commonly performed in children with CP and include tendon lengthening and release of spastic muscle groups. Surgical procedures to lengthen tight adductors or hamstrings may be recommended for the child to continue the best postural alignment or to maintain ambulatory status. In a *tenotomy*, the tendon is completely severed. A *partial tendon release* can include severing part of the tendon or muscle fibers or moving the attachment of the tendon. A *neurectomy* involves severing the nerve to a spastic muscle and thereby producing denervation. The child is usually placed in a spica cast or bilateral long leg casts for 6 to 8 weeks to immobilize the area.

A 3-week period of casting has been found to be useful in lengthening the triceps surae (Tardieu et al., 1982, 1988). A child with tight heel cords who has not responded to traditional stretching or to plaster casting may require surgical treatment to achieve a flat (plantigrade) foot. Surgical lengthening of the heel cord is done to improve walking (Figure 6-19). The results of surgical treatment are more ankle dorsiflexion range and weaker plantar flexors. Davids et al. (2011) found increased ankle dosiflexion during swing phase in children with CP after surgical lengthening of the heel cord. Overlengthening can occur, resulting in a calcaneal gait or too much dorsiflexion during stance. This condition may predispose the child to a crouched posture and the development of hamstring and hip flexion contractures (Horstmann and Bleck, 2007). Rattey et al. (1993) reported that children who underwent heel-cord lengthening at 6 years of age or older did not have a recurrence of tightness. Davids et al. (2011) further stated that surgical lengthening should only be considered for the correction of fixed muscle contractures that did not respond to nonoperative treatments, such as manual stretching, serial casting, and strength training (Damiano et al., 1995a, b; Damiano et al., 1999).

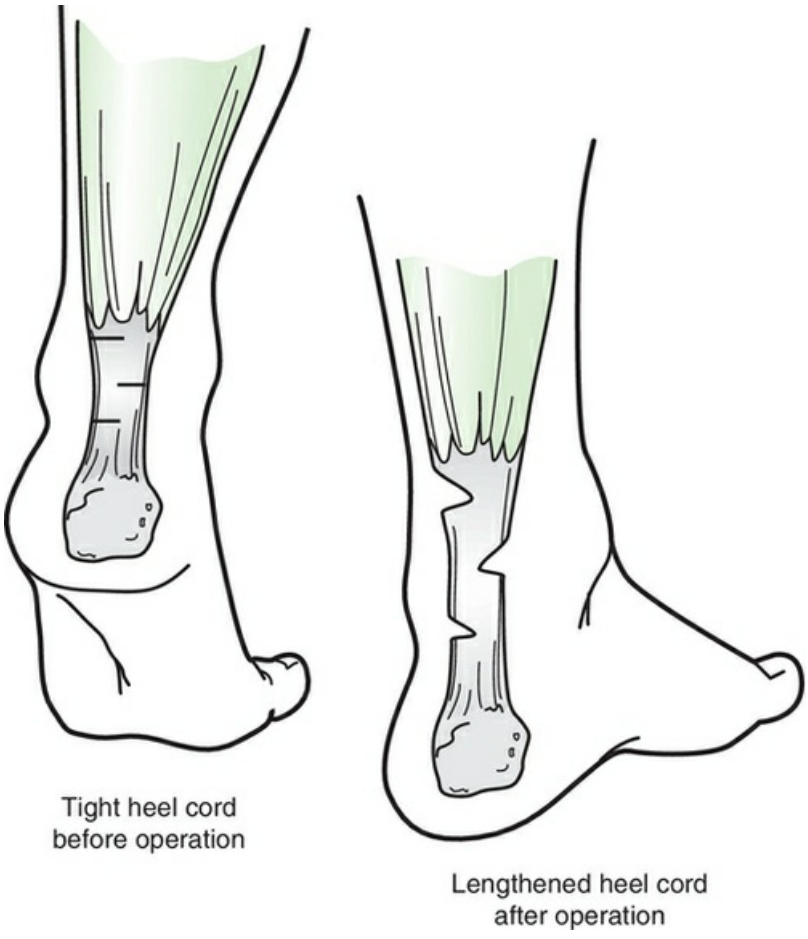


FIGURE 6-19 Heel cord lengthening.

Single-event multilevel surgery (SEML) has become the norm for children with CP. SEML is defined as "two or more soft-tissue or bony surgical procedures at two or more anatomical levels during one operative procedure, requiring only one hospital admission and one period of rehabilitation" (McGinley et al., 2012 p. 117). More complex orthopedic surgical procedures may be indicated in the presence of hip subluxation or dislocation. The hip may subluxate secondary to muscle imbalances from an obligatory ATNR. The skull side leg is pulled into flexion and adduction. Conservative treatment typically includes appropriate positioning to decrease the influence of the ATNR, passive stretching of tight muscle groups, and an abduction splint at night (Styer-Acevedo, 2008). If the hip becomes dislocated and produces pain and asymmetry, surgical treatment is indicated. The problem can be dealt with surgically in many ways, depending on its severity and acuity. The most minimal level of intervention involves soft tissue releases of the adductors, iliopsoas muscles, or proximal hamstrings. The next level requires an osteotomy of the femur in which the angle of the femur is changed by severing the bone, derotating the femur, and providing internal fixation. By changing the angle, the head of the femur is put back into the acetabulum. Sometimes, the acetabulum has to be reshaped in addition to the osteotomy. A hip replacement or arthrodesis could even be an option. Bony surgical procedures are much more complex and require more lengthy immobilization and rehabilitation.

Gait analysis in a gait laboratory can provide a clearer picture on which to base surgical decisions than visual assessment of gait. Quantifiable information about gait deviations in a child with CP is gained by observing the child walk from all angles and collecting data on muscle output and limb range of motion during the gait cycle. Video analysis and surface electromyography provide additional invaluable information for the orthopedic surgeon. This information can be augmented by temporary nerve blocks or botulinum-toxin injections to ascertain the effects of possible surgical interventions. A recent study by Marconi et al. (2014) assessed the effect of SEMLs on gait parameters in children with CP. Participants were between the ages of 9 and 16 years with GMFCS levels between I to III. The energy cost of walking was significantly reduced and thought to be due to a reduction in energy cost of muscular work used to maintain the posture rather than to an improvement in mechanical efficiency. According to the systematic review of McGinley et al. (2012), there is a trend toward positive outcomes in gait as a result of SEMLs.

Neurosurgery

Selective posterior or dorsal rhizotomy (SDR) has become an accepted treatment for spasticity in certain children with CP. Peacock et al. (1987) began advocating the use of this procedure in which dorsal roots in the spinal cord are identified by electromyographic response (Figure 6-20). Dorsal roots are selectively cut to decrease synaptic, afferent activity within the spinal cord which decreases spasticity. Through careful selection, touch and proprioception remain intact. Ideal candidates for this procedure are children with spastic diplegia or hemiplegia with moderate motor control and an IQ of 70 or above (Cole et al., 2007; Gormley, 2001). Following rhizotomy, a child requires intense physical therapy for several months postoperatively to maximize strength, range of motion, and functional skills (Gormley, 2001). Physical therapy can be decreased to 1 to 2 times a week within a year. Once the spasticity is gone, weakness and incoordination are prevalent. Any orthopedic surgical procedures that are still needed should not be performed until after this period of rehabilitation. If the child is to undergo neurosurgery, it should be completed 6 to 12 months before any orthopedic surgery (Styer-Acevedo, 1999). Cole et al. (2007) excluded any child who had had any multilevel surgery. Hurvitz et al. (2010) surveyed adults who had an SDR as children. The majority reported an improved quality of life with only 10% reporting a decrease.

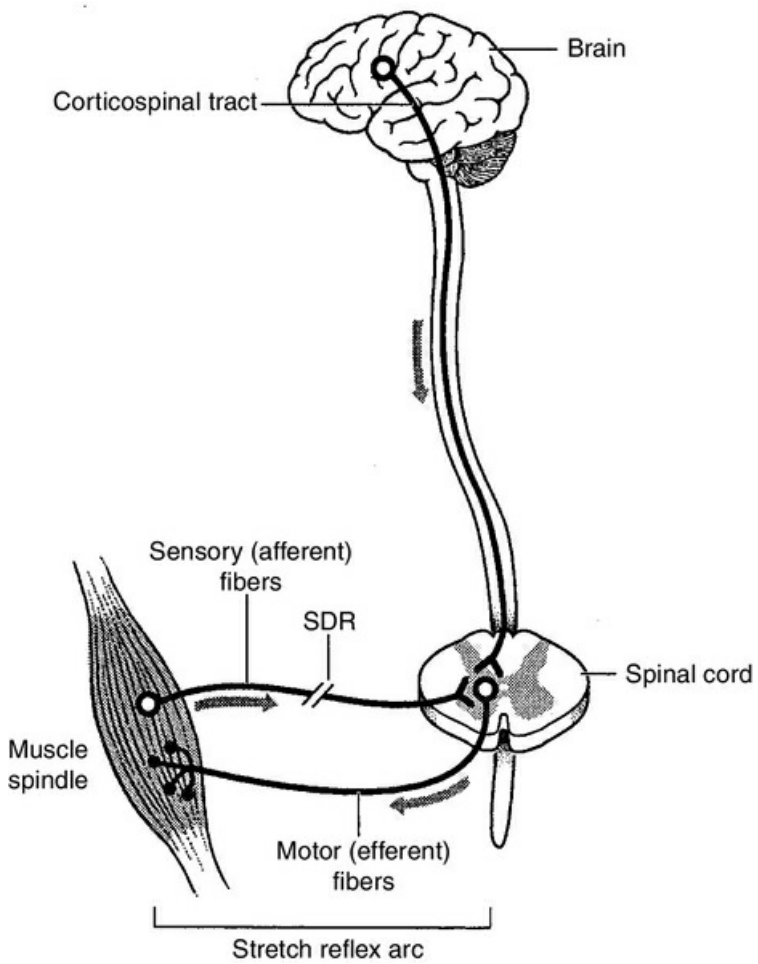


FIGURE 6-20 Selective dorsal rhizotomy (SDR). (From Batshaw ML: *Children with developmental disabilities,* ed 4. Baltimore, 1997, Paul H. Brookes.)

Implantation of a baclofen pump is a neurosurgical procedure. The pump, which is the size of a hockey puck, is placed beneath the skin of the abdomen, and a catheter is threaded below the skin around to the back, where it is inserted through the lumbar spine into the intrathecal space. This placement allows the direct delivery of the medication into the spinal fluid. The medication is stored inside the disk and can be refilled by injection through the skin. It is continuously given, with the dosage adjustable and controlled by a computer (Figure 6-21). According to Brochard et al. (2009), the greatest advantage is the adjustable dosages, with a resulting real decrease in spasticity and the reversibility of the procedure unlike the permanence of SDR. Lower amounts of medication can be given, because the drug is delivered to the site of action, with fewer systemic complications. Intrathecal Baclofen (ITB) therapy is used mostly with children with quadriplegia. Brochard et al. (2009) studied the effects of ITB therapy on gait of children with CP and found that spasticity was decreased and gait capacity measured by the Gillette Functional Assessment Questionnaire significantly increased.

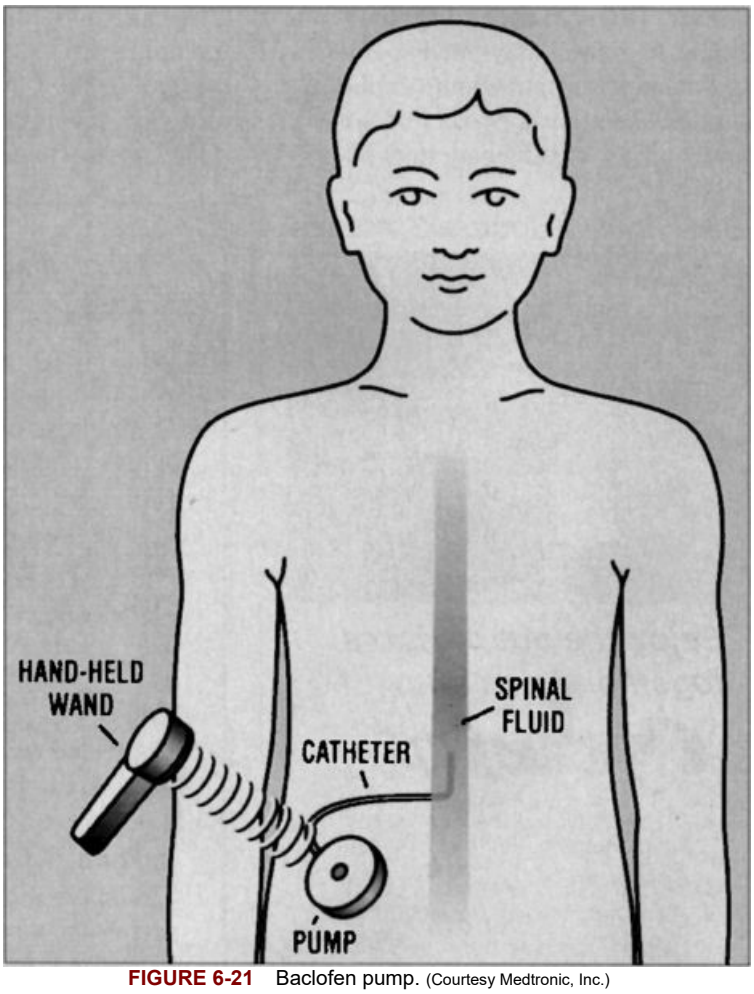


FIGURE 6-21 Baclofen pump. (Courtesy Medtronic, Inc.)

Functional Movement

Strength and endurance are incorporated into functional movements against gravity and can be repeated continuously over the course of a typical day. Kicking balls, carrying objects of varying weights, reaching overhead for dressing or undressing, pulling pants down and up for toileting, and climbing or walking up and down stairs and ramps can be used to promote strength, endurance, and coordination. Endurance can be promoted by having a child who can ambulate use a treadmill (Figure 6-22) or dance or play tag during recess. Preschool is a great time to foster an appreciation of physical activity that will become a lifetime habit.

FIGURE 6-22 Treadmill.

Use of positioning can provide a prolonged static stretch. Manual stretching of the muscles most likely to develop contractures should be incorporated into the child's functional tasks. Positions used while dressing, eating, and sleeping should be reviewed periodically by a member of the therapy team with the child's parents. Stretching may need to be part of a therapy program in addition to part of the home program conducted by the parents. The evidence suggests that 6 hours of elongation is needed to produce a change in muscle length (Tardieu et al., 1988). The most important positions for a preschooler are standing, lying, and sitting on a chair or on the floor to play. Teachers should be made aware of the importance of varying the child's position during the day. If a preschooler cannot stand independently, a standing program should be incorporated into the child's daily routine in the classroom and at home. Such a standing program may well be carried over from a program started when the child was younger. Standing devices are pictured in Chapter 5.

Activities of Daily Living and Peer Interaction

While the child is in preschool, the ability to perform ADLs may not seem to be an important issue; however, if it takes a child with CP twice as long to toilet than her classmates, what she misses is the social interaction during snack time and when on the playground. Social-emotional development depends on interactions among peers, such as sharing secrets, pretend play, and learning game playing. Making these opportunities available to the child with CP may be one of the most important things we can do in physical therapy because these interactions help form the child's self-image and social competence. Immobility and slow motor performance can create social isolation. Always take the child's level of cognitive ability into consideration when selecting a game or activity to incorporate into therapy. If therapy takes place in an outpatient setting, the clinician should plan an activity that will keep the child's interest and will also accomplish predetermined movement goals. When therapy is incorporated into the classroom, the activity to be carried out by

the child may have already been selected by the teacher and will need to address an educational need. The assistant may need to be creative by using an alternative position to assist the child to improve performance within the context of a classroom activity. Some classroom periods such as free play or story time may be more easily adapted for therapeutic intervention. Physical therapy services provided in the school setting must be educationally relevant and address goals on the student's individual education plan.

Young children with CP and limited mobility have a lower frequency of participation in home, school, and community activities (Chiarello et al., 2012). The lower frequency of participation was explained by the child's physical ability and adaptive behavior; the latter being the biggest determinant. This finding is in keeping with other researches supporting the importance of person-environment interaction as being crucial for children's participation (Majnemer et al., 2008; Palisano et al., 2011). A list of activities that young children with CP participate in can be found in Table 6-11. Chiarello et al. (2014) confirmed that age and gross motor ability contributed to the frequency and enjoyment of participation by children with CP from age 18 to 60 months.

Table 6-11

Activities Participated in by the Highest and Lowest Percentage of Young Children with CP

Activity	Sample of Activities	Percentage
Play activities	Playing with toys	95
	Watching TV or a video	94
Skill development	Listening to stories	99
	Drawing and coloring	91
	Reading or looking at books	91
	Taking swimming lessons	11
	Participating in community organizations	11
	Learning to dance	9
	Doing gymnastics	7
	Taking music lessons	0
Active physical recreation	Doing team sports	1
Social activities	Listening to music	91

Adapted from Chiarello et al: Understanding participation of preschool-age children with cerebral palsy. *J Early Intervention* 34(1):3–19, 2012.

Function in sitting can be augmented by the use of assistive technology such as communication devices and environmental controls. The child can use eye, head, or hand pointing to communicate or to activate other electronic devices. Children with neuromotor dysfunction should also achieve upright orientation to facilitate social interaction. McEwen (1992) studied interactions between students with disabilities and teachers and found that when students with disabilities were in a more upright position, such as sitting on a chair rather than on the floor, the level of interaction increased.

Third Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention: School Age and Adolescence

During the next two major periods of development, the focus of physical therapy intervention is to safeguard all previous gains. This may be easier said than done because the school-age child may be understandably and appropriately more interested in the school environment and in friends than in physical therapy. Rosenbaum and Gorter (2011) address the need for professionals working with children with CP to recognize the five F's—function, family, fun, fitness, and friends. School-age children need to experience play, have fun, get fit, have friends, engage in family routines, and plan for the future. By focusing on activities that the school-age child wants to engage in and modifying the task or the environment to allow the child to actively participate, function and fitness can be promoted.

Self-Responsibility and Motivation

The school-age child should also be taking some degree of responsibility for the therapy program. An exercise record in the form of a calendar may be a way to motivate the younger child to perform exercises on a routine basis. A walking program may be used to work on increasing endurance and cardiovascular fitness. Finding an activity that motivates the student to improve performance may be as simple as timing an obstacle course, increasing the time spent on a treadmill, or improving the number of repetitions. Everyone loves a contest. Find out what important motor task the student wants to accomplish. Can the child carry a tray in the cafeteria (Figure 6-23)? Does she want to be

able to dribble a basketball or pedal a bicycle? Be sure it is something the child wants to do.

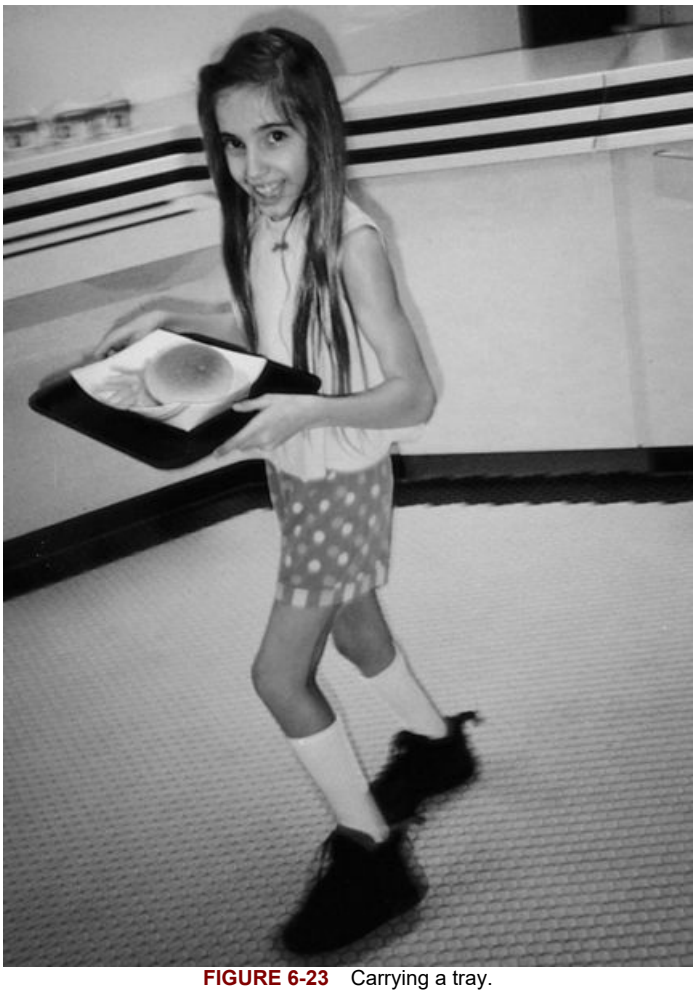


FIGURE 6-23 Carrying a tray.

Adolescents are notorious for ignoring adults' directions, so lack of interest in therapy can be especially trying during this period. However, adolescence can work in favor of compliance with physical therapy goals if the student becomes so concerned about appearances that he or she is willing to work harder to modify a gait deviation or to decrease a potential contracture. Some teenagers may find it more difficult to ambulate the longer distances required in middle school, or they may find that they do not have the physical stamina to carry books and make multiple trips to and from their lockers and still have energy to focus attention in the classroom. Poor endurance in performing routine self-care and personal hygiene functions can cause difficulty as the teen demands more privacy and seeks personal independence while still requiring physical assistance. By being creative, the therapist can help the teen locate recreational opportunities within the community and tailor goals to meet the individual's needs.

Circuit training (Blundell et al., 2003) used with young children with CP found improvements in gait velocity and strength that were maintained after the training ceased. A circuit-training program in the Netherlands (Gorter et al., 2009) demonstrated improved aerobic endurance in children (GMFCS level I or II) 8 to 13 years of age after 9 weeks of twice-a-week training, with every session lasting 30 minutes. An interactive video home-based intervention (Bilde et al., 2011) resulted in positive changes in children in sit to stand and step ups in the frontal and sagittal planes as well as endurance. No change in balance, tested using the Romberg, was seen, but visual perceptual abilities significantly increased. The children (GMFCS level I or II) were 6 to 13 years of age and trained about 30 minutes a day with a novel system delivered via the internet. In the first published study using the Wii gaming system, Deutsch et al. (2008) reported that using this system was feasible with an 11-year-old with spastic diplegia at GMFCS level III. Positive changes were

documented in postural control, functional mobility, and visual-perceptual processing. The program was carried out in a summer school setting.

Physiologic Changes

Other great potential hazards to continued independent motor performance are the physical and physiologic changes brought on by adolescence. Greater growth of the lower extremities in relation to the trunk and upper body can produce a less stable gait. Growth spurts in which muscle length does not keep up with changes in bone length can cause problems with static balance and dynamic balance.

During periods of rapid growth, bone length may outstrip the ability to elongate of the attached muscles, with resulting potential contracture formation. The development of such contractures may contribute to a loss of independent mobility or to a loss in movement efficiency. In other words, the student may have to work harder to move. Some teens may fall with increasing frequency. Others may limit distances walked in an effort to preserve function or to save energy for school-related tasks and learning. Any change in functional ambulation ability should be reported to the supervising physical therapist so the therapist can evaluate the need for a change in the student's treatment plan. The student may benefit from a change in either assistive device or orthosis. In some instances, the loss of functional upright ambulation is a real possibility, and a wheelchair evaluation may be warranted.

Another difficulty that can arise during this period is related to body mass changes secondary to the adolescent's growth. Increasing body weight compared with a disproportionately smaller muscle mass in the adolescent with CP can represent a serious threat to continued functional independence.

Physical therapy goals during the school years and through adolescence are to:

1. Continue independent mobility.
2. Develop independent ADL and instrumental ADL skills.
3. Foster fitness and development of a positive self-image.
4. Foster community integration.
5. Develop a vocational plan.
6. Foster social interaction with peers.

Independence

Strength

Studies have shown that adolescents with CP can increase strength when they are engaged in a program of isokinetic resistance exercises (MacPhail, 1995). Strengthening has been shown to improve gait and motor skills in adolescents and school-age children with CP (Van den Berg-Emons et al., 1998; Dodd et al., 2002). The programs vary in the frequency of the interventions and overall duration. Gains were shown after a short program (4 weeks) consisting of twice-a-week circuit training in 4- to 8-year-olds (Blundell et al., 2003). Dodd et al. (2003) conducted a randomized clinical trial that showed that 6 weeks of training increased knee extensor and ankle plantar flexor strength. Even better, the results were maintained for 3 months. They suggested that the strength gains were reflected in stair climbing as well as running, jumping, and walking. The use of traditional electrical stimulation or functional electric stimulation (FES) has also been reported in the literature with positive results (Carmick, 1995, 1997; van der Linden, 2008). While therapeutic electrical stimulation has been promoted to improve muscle mass in children with CP, a study by Sommerfelt et al. (2001) concluded that it had no significant effect on gait or motor function in children with spastic diplegic CP. van der Linden (2008) found an increase in dorsiflexion that significantly affected gait kinematics. Strengthening should be a component of a physical therapy program for children with CP. Children with CP are known to have poor muscle endurance as well as poor strength (Damiano, 2003).

Fitness

Students with physical disabilities, such as CP, are often unable to participate fully in physical education. If the physical education teacher is knowledgeable about adapting routines for students with disabilities, the student may experience some cardiovascular benefits. The neuromuscular deficits affect the ability of a student with CP to perform exercises. Students with CP have higher

energy costs for routine activities. Studies done in Canada and Scandinavia have shown improvements in walking speed and other motor skills when students were involved in exercise programs (Bar-Or, 1990). Dresen et al. (1985) showed a reduction in the oxygen cost of submaximal activities after a 10-week training program. More recently, Provost et al. (2007) reported that a statistically significant improvement in walking speed and energy consumption was found in children with CP after an intensive treadmill training using partial body-weight support. These were children already ambulatory as compared with many previous studies done with children who were not ambulatory (Bodkin et al., 2003; Richards et al., 1997). Damiano (2003) recommended that FES-cycling machines be used to promote muscular endurance in children and adolescents with CP. Kurz et al. (2012) reported that a twice-a-week program of BWSTT improved stepping in children with CP but did not improve endurance based on results of a 6-minute walk test. Fitness in all students with disabilities needs to be fostered as part of physical therapy to improve overall health and quality of life.

Availability of recreation and leisure activities that are appropriate and accessible are easier to come by than in the past. It is no less important for the individual with a disability to remain physically active and to achieve some degree of health-related fitness than it is for a person without disabilities. In fact, it may be more important for the person with CP to work on aerobic fitness as a way to prevent a decline in ambulation in adulthood. Recreational and leisure activities, sports-related or not, should be part of every adolescent's free time. Swim programs at the YMCA, local fitness club, or elsewhere provide wonderful opportunities to socialize, develop and improve cardiovascular fitness, control weight, and maintain joint and muscle integrity. Recent attention has been given to encouraging children and adolescents with CP to participate in aquatic and martial arts programs to improve movement, balance, and self-esteem. Wheelchair athletics are a good option for school-age children or adolescents in places with junior wheelchair sports programs.

Community Integration

Accessibility is an important issue in transportation and in providing students with disabilities easy entrance to and exit from community buildings. Accessibility is often a challenge to a teenager who may not be able to drive because of CP. Every effort should be made to support the teenager's ability to drive a motor vehicle, because the freedom this type of mobility provides is important for social interaction and vocational pursuits.

Fourth Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention: Adulthood

Physical therapy goals during adulthood are to foster:
1. Independence in mobility and ADLs
2. Healthy lifestyle
3. Community participation
4. Independent living
5. A vocation

Even though five separate goals are identified for this stage of rehabilitation, they are all part of the role in life of an adult. Society expects adults to live on their own and to participate within the community where they live and work. This can be the ultimate challenge to a person with CP or any lifelong disability. Living facilities that offer varied levels of assisted living are available in some communities. Adults with CP may live on their own, in group homes, in institutions, or in nursing homes. Some continue to live at home with aging parents or with older siblings. Employment figures from the National Longitudinal Transition Study (Wagner et al., 2006) found that only 40% of young adults with childhood onset disabilities were employed 2 years out of high school, 20% less than same-age peers without disabilities. Despite the focus on transition services for the adolescent with CP, employment has not been a major goal for the adult with CP. Factors that determine the ability of an adult with CP to live and work independently are cognitive status, degree of functional limitations, and adequacy of social and financial support. Family and educators play a significant role in providing the child and adolescent with CP with expectation to participate in work. Clinicians must help the adolescent with CP to transition to adulthood by being aware of and working with vocational rehabilitation services (Huang et al., 2013). Specific services provided by vocational rehabilitation institutes predicted employment outcomes as: (1) use of rehabilitation assistive technology; (2) on-the-job support; (3) job placement assistance; (4) on-the-

job training; and (5) support services for basic living. Early prior planning between therapist and vocational counselor can provide a foundation for later employment (Vogtle, 2013.)

Future Directions

Two studies have used functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) to document changes in the brain related to treadmill training. Kurz et al. (2012) used magnetoencephalography (MEG) to study if BWSTT would alter the neuromagnetic activity in the sensorimotor cortices that represent the foot in children with CP. They found that the neuromagnetic responses representing the foot were weakened after 6 weeks of BSWTT. Theirs was only the second study to look at how exercise altered the activation of the sensorimotor cortices. Phillips et al. (2007) demonstrated a change in ankle dorsiflexion after intensive treadmill training. Sensorimotor experiences have been theorized to drive motor behavior through reorganization of the brain (Anderson et al., 2014). Activity-focused interventions have the potential to produce changes in children with CP that go beyond preventing musculoskeletal impairments and maximizing physical function. Activity can affect neural structures and pathways (Damiano, 2006).

Chapter summary

The child with CP presents the physical therapist and the physical therapist assistant with a lifetime of opportunities to assist in attaining meaningful functional goals. These goals revolve around the child's achievement of some type of mobility and mastery of the environment, including the ability to manipulate objects, to communicate, and to demonstrate as much independence as possible in physical, cognitive, and social functions. The needs of the child with CP and her family change in relation to the child's maturation and reflect the family's priorities at any given time. Physical therapy may be one of many therapies the child receives. Physical therapists and physical therapist assistants are part of the team working to provide the best possible care for the child within the context of the family, school, and community. Regardless of the stage of physical therapy management, families need to be empowered to be an integral part of informed decision-making. Goals need to be meaningful and based on what the child needs to learn to do in order to participate meaningfully in life. Activities that promote fitness must be part of physical therapy interventions for adolescents and adults with CP. The long-term goal must always be to optimize movement, promote the parent–infant and parent–child relationship, and expand sensorimotor and perceptual experiences to support cognition and plan to fully engage in all aspects of adult life. Every child with CP deserves an optimal quality of life.

Review questions

1. Why may the clinical manifestations of CP appear to worsen with age even though the pathologic features are static?

2. Name the two greatest risk factors for CP.

3. What is the most common type of abnormal tone seen in children with CP?

4. How may abnormal tonic reflexes interfere with acquisition of movement in a child with CP?

5. Compare and contrast the focus of physical therapy intervention in a child with spastic CP and in a child with athetoid CP.

6. What is the role of the physical therapist assistant when working with a preschool-age child with CP?

7. What type of orthosis is most commonly used by children with CP who ambulate?

8. At what age should a child with CP begin to take some responsibility for the therapy program?

9. What medications are used to manage spasticity in children with CP?

10. What are the expected life outcomes that should be used as a guide for goal setting with children with disabilities?

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation: JC

History

Chart Review

JC is a 6-year-old girl with moderate spastic diplegic CP (GMFCS Level III). She was born at 28 weeks of gestation, required mechanical ventilation, and sustained a left intraventricular hemorrhage. She received physical therapy as part of an infant intervention program. She sat at 18 months of age. At 3 years of age, she made the transition into a school-based preschool program. She had two surgical procedures for heel cord tendon transfers and adductor releases of the hips. She is now making the transition into a regular first grade. JC has a younger sister. Both parents work. Her father brings her to weekly outpatient therapy. JC goes to day care or to her grandparents' home after school.

Subjective

JC's parents are concerned about her independence in the school setting.

Objective

Systems Review

Communication/Cognition: JC communicates easily and appropriately. Her intelligence is within the normal range.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: Normal values for age.

Integumentary: Intact

Musculoskeletal: AROM and strength intact in the upper extremities but impaired in the trunk and lower extremities.

Neuromuscular: Coordination within functional limits in the upper extremity, but impaired in the lower extremities.

Tests and Measures

Anthropometrics: Height 46 inches, Weight 45 lbs, BMI 15 (20–24 is normal).

Motor Function: JC can roll to either direction and can achieve sitting by pushing up from side lying. She can get into a quadruped position from prone and can pull herself into kneeling. She attains standing by moving into half-kneeling with upper extremity support. She can come to stand from sitting in a straight chair without hand support but adducts her knees to stabilize her legs.

Neurodevelopmental Status: Peabody Developmental Motor Scales (PDMS) Developmental Motor Quotient (DMQ) = 69, with an age equivalent of 12 months. Fine-motor development is average for her age (PDMS DMQ = 90).

	Active		Passive	
Range of Motion	**R**	**L**	**R**	**L**
Hips				
Flexion	0°–100°	0°–90°	0°–105°	0°–120°
Adduction	0°–15°	0°–12°	0°–5°	0°–12°
Abduction	0°–30°	0°–40°	0°–30°	0°–40°
Internal rotation	0°–25°	0°–78°	0°–83°	0°–84°
External rotation	0°–26°	0°–30°	0°–26°	0°–40°
Knees				
Flexion	0°–80°	0°–80°	0°–120°	0°–120°
Extension	−15°	−15°	Neutral	Neutral
Ankle				
Dorsiflexion	Neutral	Neutral	0°–20°	0°–20°
Plantar flexion	0°–8°	0°–40°	0°–30°	0°–40°
Inversion	0°–5°	0°–12°	0°–5°	0°–20°
Eversion	0°–30°	0°–30°	0°–50°	0°–40°

Reflex Integrity: Patellar 3 +, Achilles 3 +, Babinski present bilaterally. Moderately increased tone is present in the hamstrings, adductors, and plantar flexors bilaterally.

Posture: JC demonstrates a functional scoliosis with the convexity to the right. The right shoulder and pelvis are elevated. JC lacks complete thoracic extension in standing. The pelvis is rotated to the left in standing. Leg length is 23.5 inches bilaterally, measured from ASIS to medial malleolus.

Muscle Performance: Upper extremity strength appears to be WFL because JC can move her arms against gravity and take moderate resistance. Lower extremity strength is difficult to determine in the presence of increased tone but is generally less than fair with the left side appearing to be stronger than the right.

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance: JC ambulates independently 15 feet using a reverse-facing

walker while wearing solid polypropylene AFOs. She can take five steps independently without a device before requiring external support for balance. She goes up and down stairs, alternating feet using a handrail. She can maneuver her walker up and down a ramp and a curb with stand by assist. JC requires stand-by assistance to move about with her walker in the classroom and when getting up and down from her desk. Incomplete trunk righting is present with any displacement in sitting. No trunk rotation present with lateral displacements in sitting. Upper extremity protective reactions are present in all directions in sitting. JC stands alone for 3 to 4 minutes every trial. She exhibits no protective stepping when she loses her balance in standing.

Sensory Integrity: Intact.

Self-care: JC is independent in eating and in toileting with grab bars. She requires moderate assistance with dressing secondary to balance.

Play: JC enjoys reading Junie B. Jones books and playing with dolls.

Assessment/evaluation

JC is a 6-year-old girl with moderately severe spastic diplegic CP. She is independently ambulatory with a reverse-facing walker and AFOs for short distances on level ground. She is at GMFCS level III. She attends a regular first grade class. She is seen for outpatient physical therapy once a week for 45 minutes.

Problem List

1. Dependent in ambulation without an assistive device
2. Impaired strength and endurance to perform age-appropriate motor activities
3. Impaired dynamic sitting and standing balance
4. Dependent in dressing

Diagnosis

JC exhibits impaired motor function associated with nonprogressive disorders of the CNS—congenital origin, which is guide pattern 5C. This pattern includes CP.

Prognosis

JC will improve her functional independence and functional skills in the school setting. Her rehabilitation potential for the following goals is good.

Short-Term Goals (actions to be achieved by midyear review)

1. JC will ambulate independently within her classroom.
2. JC will perform weight shifts in standing while throwing and catching a ball.
3. JC will walk on a treadmill with arm support for 10 consecutive minutes.
4. JC will ambulate 25 feet without an assistive device three times a day.
5. JC will don and doff AFOs, shoes, and socks, independently.

Long-Term Goals (end of first grade)

1. JC will ambulate independently without an assistive device on level surfaces.
2. JC will be able to go up and down a set of three stairs, step over step, without holding on to a railing.
3. JC will walk continuously for 20 minutes without resting.
4. JC will dress herself for school in 15 minutes.

Plan

Coordination, Communication, and Documentation

The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant will be in frequent communication with JC's family and teacher regarding her physical therapy program. Outcomes of interventions will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/Client Instruction

JC and her parents will be given suggestions to assist her in becoming more independent at home, such as getting clothes out the night before and getting up early enough to complete the dressing tasks before leaving for school. JC and her family will be instructed in a home exercise program consisting of stretching and strengthening. A reminder calendar will assist her in remembering to perform her exercises four times a week.

Procedural Interventions

Increase dynamic trunk postural reactions by using a movable surface to shift her weight and to facilitate responses in all directions.

1. Practice coming to stand while sitting astride a bolster. One end of the bolster can be placed on a

stool of varying height to decrease the distance needed for her to move from sitting to standing. Begin with allowing her to use hand support and then gradually withdraw it.
2. Practice stepping over low objects, first with upper extremity support followed by gradual withdrawal of support; next practice stepping up and down one step without the railing while giving manual support at the hips.
3. Walk at a slow speed on a treadmill using hand support for 5 minutes. Gradually increase the time. Once she can tolerate 15 minutes, begin to increase speed.
4. Time her ability to maneuver an obstacle course involving walking, stepping over objects, moving around objects, going up and down stairs, and throwing a ball and beanbags. Monitor and track her personal best time. Vary the complexity of the tasks involved, according to how efficient she is at completing them.

Follow-up

JC is now 12 years old. Secondary to rapid growth, especially in her lower extremities and extensive hip and knee flexion contractures, she is once again ambulating with a reverse-facing wheeled walker. She is able to stand independently for 5 seconds and to take 13 steps before falling or requiring external support. She has been evaluated for surgical releases, but the gait studies indicate significant lower extremity weakness and increased cocontraction of these muscles during gait. The orthopedist believes that she would not have sufficient strength to ambulate following surgery. Physical therapy goals are to increase hip and knee range of motion, gluteus maximus, quadriceps, and ankle musculature strength and to regain the ability to ambulate independently without an assistive device. What treatment interventions could be used to attain these functional goals?

Questions to think about

■ What interventions could be part of JC's home exercise program?
■ How can fitness be incorporated into her physical therapy program?

References

Accardo PJ, editor: *Capute & Accardo's neurodevelopmental disabilities in infancy and childhood,* vol 1, ed 3, Baltimore, 2008, Paul H. Brookes.

Accardo J, Kammann H, Hoon AH. Neuroimaging in cerebral palsy. *J Pediatrics.* 2004;145:S19–S27.

American Academy of Pediatrics AAP Task Force on Infant Positioning and SIDS. Positioning and SIDS. *Pediatrics.* 1992;90:264.

Ancel PV, Livinec F, Larroque B, et al. Cerebral palsy among very preterm children in relation to gestational age and neonatal ultrasound abnormalities: the EPIPAGE cohort study. *Pediatrics.* 2006;117(3):828–835.

Anderson DI, Campos JJ, Rivera M, et al. The consequences of independent locomotion for brain and psychological development. In: Shepherd RB, ed. *Cerebral palsy in infancy.* London: Churchill Livingstone; 2014.

Ashwal S, Russman BS, Blasco PA, et al. Practice parameter. Diagnostic assessment of the child with cerebral palsy: report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. *Neurology.* 2004;62(6):851–863.

Bamm EL, Rosenbaum P. Family-centered theory: origins, development, barriers, and supports to implementation in rehabilitation medicine. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89:1618–1624.

Bar-Or O. Disease-specific benefits of training in the child with a chronic disease: what is the evidence? *Pediatr Exerc Sci.* 1990;2:384–394.

Batshaw ML, Roizen NJ, Lotrecchiano GR. *Children with disabilities.* ed 7 Baltimore, MD: Paul H Brooks; 2013.

Berg AT, Berkovic SF, Brodie MJ, et al. Revised terminology and concepts for organization of seizures and epilepsies: report of the ILAE Commission on Classification and Terminology, 2005–2009. *Epilepsia.* 2010;51(4):676–685.

Berry ET, McLaurin SE, Sparling JW. Parent/caregiver perspectives on the use of power wheelchairs. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 1996;8:146–150.

Bilde PE, Kliim-Due M, Rasmussen B, et al. Individualized, home-based interactive training of cerebral palsy children delivered through the internet. *BMC Neurol.* 2011;11:32.

Blair E, Stanley F. Intrauterine growth and spastic cerebral palsy. II: the association with morphology at birth. *Early Hum Dev.* 1992;28:91–203.

Blundell SW, Shepherd RB, Dean CM, et al. Functional strength training in cerebral palsy: a pilot study of group circuit training class for children aged 4–8 years. *Clin Rehabil.* 2003;17(1):48–57.

Bodkin AW, Baxter RS, Heriza CB. Treadmill training for an infant born preterm with a grade III intraventricular hemorrhage. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83:1107–1118.

Brochard S, Remy-Neris O, Filipetti P, Bussel B. Intrathecal baclofen infusion for ambulant children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Neurol.* 2009;40:265–270.

Buccieri KM. Use of orthoses and early intervention physical therapy to minimize hyperpronation and promote functional skills in a child with gross motor delays: a case report. *Phys Occup Ther Pediatr.* 2003;23(1):5–20.

Butler C. Effects of powered mobility on self-initiated behaviors of very young children with locomotor disability. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1986;28:325–332.

Butler C. Augmentative mobility: why do it? *Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am.* 1991;2:801–815.

Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 St Louis: Saunders; 2012.

Carlsson M, Hagberg G, Olsson I. Clinical and aetiological aspects of epilepsy in children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2003;43:371–376.

Carmick J. Managing equinus in children with cerebral palsy: electrical stimulation to strengthen the triceps surae muscle. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1995;37:965–975.

Carmick J. The use of neuromuscular electrical stimulation and a dorsal wrist splint to improve the hand function of a child with spastic hemiparesis. *Phys Ther.* 1997;77:661–671.

Case-Smith J. *Using evidence-based clinical guidelines to improve your practice.* In: PREPaRE

conference; Lexington, KY: University of Kentucky; March, 22, 2014.
Charles JR, Wolf SL, Schneider JA, Gordon AM. Efficacy of a child-friendly form of constraint-induced movement therapy in hemiplegic cerebral palsy: a randomized control trial. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2006;48:635–642.
Cherng RF, Liu CF, Lau TW, Hong RB. Effect of treadmill training with body weight support on gait and gross motor function in children with spastic cerebral palsy. *Am J Phys Med Rehab.* 2007;86:548–555.
Chiarello LA. Family-centered care. In: Effgen SK, ed. *Meeting the physical therapy needs of children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2013.
Chiarello LA, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, et al. Understanding participation of preschool-age children with cerebral palsy. *J Early Inter.* 2012;34(1):3–19.
Chiarello LA, Palisano RJ, McCoy SW, et al. Child engagement in daily life: a measure of participation for young children with cerebral palsy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2014;36:1804–1816.
Christensen D, Van Naarden Braun K, Doernberg NS, et al. Prevalence of cerebral palsy, cooccurring autism spectrum disorders, and motor functioning: Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network USA, 2008. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2014;56(1):59–65.
Coker P, Karakostas T, Dodds C, Hsiang S. Gait characteristics of children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy before and after modified constraint-induced movement therapy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(5):402–408.
Cole GF, Farmer SE, Roberts A, Stewart C, Patrick JH. Selective dorsal rhizotomy for children with cerebral palsy: the Oswestry experience. *Arch Dis Child.* 2007;92:781–785.
Dahlseng ML, Andersen GL, Irgens LM, Skranes J, Vik T. Risk of cerebral palsy in term-born singletons according to growth status at birth. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2014;56:53–58.
Damiano DL. Strength, endurance, and fitness in cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol Suppl.* 2003;94:8–10.
Damiano DL. Activity, activity, activity: rethinking our physical therapy approach to cerebral palsy. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86:1534–1540.
Damiano DL, Kelly LE, Vaughn CL. Effects of quadriceps femoris muscle strengthening on crouch gait in children with spastic diplegia. *Phys Ther.* 1995a;75:658–671.
Damiano DL, Vaughan CL, Abel MF. Muscle response to heavy resistance exercise in children with spastic cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1995b;37:731–739.
Damiano DL, Abel MF, Pannunzio M, Romano JP. Interrelationships of strength and gait before and after hamstrings lengthening. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1999;19:352–358.
Davids JR, Rogozinski BM, Hardin JW, Davis RB. Ankle dorsiflexor function after plantar flexor surgery in children with cerebral palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2011;93(e138):1–7.
DeLuca SC, Echols K, Ramey SL, Taub E. Pediatric constraint-induced movement therapy for a young child with cerebral palsy: two episodes of care. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83:1003–1013.
DeLuca SC, Case-Smith J, Stevenson R, Ramey SL. Constraint-induced movement therapy (CIMT) for young children with cerebral palsy: effects of therapeutic dosage. *J Pediatr Rehabil Med.* 2012;5(2):133–142.
Deutsch JE, Borbely M, Filler J, Huhn K, Guarrera-Bowlby P. Use of a low-cost commercially available gaming console (Wii) for rehabilitation of an adolescent with cerebral palsy. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88:1196–1207.
Dodd KJ, Foley S. Partial body-weight–supported treadmill training can improve walking in children with cerebral palsy: a clinical controlled trial. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2007;49:101–105.
Dodd KJ, Taylor NF, Damiano DL. Systematic review of strengthening for individuals with cerebral palsy. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83:207–209.
Dodd KJ, Taylor NF, Graham HK. A randomized clinical trial of strength training in young people with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2003;45:652–657.
Dresen MH, de Groot G, Mesa Menor JR, et al. Aerobic energy expenditure of handicapped children after training. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1985;66:302–306.
Effgen SK. *Meeting the physical therapy needs of children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2013.
Effgen SK, Myers C, Kleinert J. *Use of classification systems to facilitate interprofessional communication.* In: 5th annual PREPaRE conference; Lexington, KY: University of Kentucky; March 22, 2014.
Eliasson AC, Krumlinde-Sundholm L, Shaw K, Wang C. Effects of constraint-induced movement therapy in young children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy: an adapted model.

Dev Med Child Neurol. 2005;47:266–275.
Eliasson AC, Krumlinde-Sundholm L, Rosblad B, et al. The Manual Ability Classification System (MACS) for children with cerebral palsy: scale development and evidence of validity and reliability. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2006;48:549–554.
Erkin G, Culha C, Ozel S, Kirbiyik EG. Feeding and gastrointestinal problems in children with cerebral palsy. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2010;33(3):218–224.
Fenichel GM. *Clinical pediatric neurology: a signs and symptoms approach.* ed 6 St Louis: Saunders; 2009.
George DA, Elchert L. The influence of foot orthoses on the function of a child with developmental delay. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2007;19(4):332–336.
Giangreco MF, Cloninger CJ, Iverson VS. *Choosing options and accommodations for children (COACH): a guide to educational planning for students with disabilities.* ed 3 Baltimore, MD: Paul H. Brookes; 2011.
Glanzman A. Cerebral palsy. In: Goodman C, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2009:1517–1531.
Gormley ME. Treatment of neuromuscular and musculoskeletal problems in cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Rehabil.* 2001;4(1):5–16.
Gorter H, Holty L, Rameckers E, Elvers H, Oostendorp R. Changes in endurance and walking ability through functional physical training in children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2009;21:31–37.
Grecco L, de Freita T, Satie J, et al. Treadmill training following orthopedic surgery in lower limbs of children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2013;25:187–192.
Guerette P, Furumasu J, Tefft D. The positive effects of early powered mobility on children's psychosocial and play skills. *Assist Technol.* 2013;25:39–48.
Hidecker M, Paneth N, Rosenbaum P, et al. Developing and validating the Communication Function Classification System (CFCS) for individuals with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2011;53(8):704–710.
Himmelmann K, Uvebrant P. Function and neuroimaging in cerebral palsy: a population-based study. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2011;53(6):516–521.
Hintz SR, Kendrick DE, Wilson-Costello DE, et al. Early-childhood neurodevelopmental outcomes are not improving for infants born at < 25 weeks' gestational age. *Pediatrics.* 2011;127(1):62–70.
Hoon AH, Tolley F. Cerebral palsy. In: Batshaw ML, Roizen NJ, Lotrecchiano GR, eds. *Children with disabilities.* ed 7 Baltimore, MD: Paul H. Brookes; 2013:423–450.
Horstmann HM, Bleck EE. *Orthopaedic management in cerebral palsy.* ed 2 London: Mac Keith Press; 2007.
Huang IC, Holzbauer JJ, Lee EJ, et al. Vocational rehabilitation services and employment outcomes for adults with cerebral palsy in the United States. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2013;55:1000–1008.
Hurvitz EA, Fox MA, Haapala HJ, et al. Adults with cerebral palsy who had a rhizotomy as a child: long-term follow-up. *PM & R.* 2010;2(9S):S3.
Jaeger L. *Home program instruction sheets for infants and young children.* 1987 Available from Therapy Skill Builders, 3830 East Bellevue, PO Box 42050, Tuscon, AZ 85733.
Knutson LM, Clark DE. Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther.* 1991;71:947–960.
Kurz MJ, Stuberg W, DeJong SL. Body weight–supported treadmill training improves the regularity of the stepping kinematics in children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Neuro Rehabil.* 2011;14(2):87–93.
Kurz MJ, Wilson TW, Corr B, Volkma KG. Neuromagnetic activity of the somatosensory cortices associated with body weight–supported treadmill training in children with cerebral palsy. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2012;36(4):166–172.
Livingstone R, Paleg G. Practice considerations for the introduction and use of power mobility for children. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2014;56:210–222.
Longo M, Hankins GDV. Defining cerebral palsy: pathogenesis, pathophysiology, and new intervention. *Minerva Ginecol.* 2009;61:421–429.
MacPhail H. The effect of isokinetic strength training on functional mobility and walking efficiency in adolescents with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1995;37:763–776.
Majnemer A, Shevell M, Law M, et al. Participation and enjoyment of leisure activities in

school-aged children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2008;50:751–758.
Marconi V, Hachez H, Renders A, Docquier PL, Detrembleur C. Mechanical work and energy consumption in children with cerebral palsy after single-event multilevel surgery. *Gait Posture.* 2014;40:633–639.
Mattern-Baxter K, Bellamy S, Mansoor JK. Effects of intensive locomotor treadmill training on young children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2009;21:308–318.
McEwen IR. Assistive positioning as a control parameter of social-communicative interactions between students with profound multiple disabilities and classroom staff. *Phys Ther.* 1992;72:534–647.
McGinley JL, Dobson F, Ganeshalingham R, et al. Single-event multilevel surgery for children with cerebral palsy: a systematic review. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2012;54(2):117–128.
McKean GL, Thurston WE, Scott CM. Bridging the divide between families and health professionals' perspectives on family-centered care. *Health Expect.* 2005;8:74–85.
Middleton EA, Hurley GR, McIlwain JS. The role of rigid and hinged polypropylene ankle-foot orthoses in the management of cerebral palsy: a case study. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1988;12:129–135.
Miller JE, Pedersen LH, Streja E, et al. Maternal infections during pregnancy and cerebral palsy: a population-based cohort study. *Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol.* 2013;27(6):542–552.
Morris C. A review of the efficacy of lower limb orthoses used for cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2002;44:205–211.
Morris C, Bowers R, Ross K, Steven P, Phillips D. Orthotic management of cerebral palsy: recommendations from a consensus conference. *Neuro Rehabil.* 2011;28:37–46.
Nelson KB. Causative factors in cerebral palsy. *Clin Obstet Gynecol.* 2008;51:749–762.
Nordmark E, Hagglund G, Lagergren J. Cerebral palsy in southern Sweden, II: gross motor function and disabilities. *Acta Paediatr.* 2001;90(11):1277–1282.
Oskoui M, Coutinho F, Dykeman J, Jette N, Pringsheim T. An update on the prevalence of cerebral palsy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2013;55(6):509–519.
Paleg G, Smith B, Blickman L. Systematic review and evidence-based clinical recommendations for dosing of pediatric-supported standing programs. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2013;25(3):232–247.
Palisano RJ, Rosenbaum P, Bartlett D, Livingston MH. Content validity of the expanded and revised Gross Motor Function Classification System. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2008;50:744–750.
Palisano RJ, Chiarello LA, Orlin M, et al. Determinants of intensity of participation in leisure and recreational activities by children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2011;53:142–149.
Pathways Awareness Foundation. *Early infant assessment redefined.* (Video presentation) Chicago: Pathways Awareness Foundation; 1992 (Video available from Pathways Awareness Foundation, 123 North Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606.).
Peacock WJ, Arens LF, Berman B. Cerebral palsy spasticity: selective dorsal rhizotomy. *Pediatr Neurosci.* 1987;13:61–66.
Phillips JP, Sullivan KF, Burtner PA, et al. Ankle dorsiflexion fMRI in children with cerebral palsy undergoing intensive body-weight-supported treadmill training: a pilot study. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2007;49:39–44.
Provost B, Dieruf K, Burtner PA, et al. Endurance and gait in children with cerebral palsy after intensive body weight–supported treadmill training. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2007;19:2–10.
Ratliffe KT. *Clinical pediatric physical therapy.* St Louis: Mosby; 1998.
Rattey TE, Leahey L, Hyndman J, et al. Recurrence after Achilles tendon lengthening in cerebral palsy. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1993;134:184 147.
Richards CL, Malouin F, Dumas F, et al. Early and intensive treadmill locomotor training for young children with cerebral palsy: a feasibility study. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 1997;9:158–165.
Rosenbaum P, Gorter JW. The 'F-word' in childhood disability: I swear this is how we should think!. *Child Care Health Dev.* 2011;38(4):457–463.
Russell D, Rosenbaum P, Avery LM. *Gross motor function measure (GMFM-66 & GMFM-88) user's manual.* London: Mac Keith Press; 2002.
Russman BS, Gage JR. Cerebral palsy. *Curr Probl Pediatr.* 1989;19:65–111.
Schindl MR, Forstner C, Kern H, Hesse S. Treadmill training with partial body weight support in nonambulatory patients with cerebral palsy. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81:301–306.

Senesac CR. Management of clinical problems of children with cerebral palsy. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurologic rehabilitation.* ed 6 St Louis: Mosby; 2013:317–343.
Shepherd RB, ed. *Cerebral palsy in infancy.* London: Churchill Livingstone; 2014.
Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Development of postural control. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor control: theory and practical applications.* ed 4 Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012:195–222.
Sommerfelt K, Markestad T, Berg K, Saetesdal I. Therapeutic electrical stimulation in cerebral palsy: a randomized, controlled, crossover trial. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2001;43(9):609–613.
Stuberg WA. Considerations related to weight-bearing programs in children with developmental disabilities. *Phys Ther.* 1992;72:35–40.
Styer-Acevedo J. Physical therapy for the child with cerebral palsy. In: Tecklin JS, ed. *Pediatric physical therapy.* ed 3 Philadelphia: JB Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1999:107–162.
Styer-Acevedo J. The infant and child with cerebral palsy. In: Tecklin JS, ed. *Pediatric physical therapy.* ed 4 Philadelphia: JB Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008:179–230.
Tardieu G, Tardieu C, Colbeau-Justin P, et al. Muscle hypoextensibility in children with cerebral palsy. II: therapeutic implications. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1982;63:103–107.
Tardieu C, Lespargot A, Tabary C, Bret MD. For how long must the soleus muscle be stretched each day to prevent contracture? *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1988;30:3–10.
Tilton A. Management of spasticity in children with cerebral palsy. *Semin Pediatr Neurol.* 2009;16:82–89.
Van den Berg-Emons RJ, Van Baak MA, Speth L, Saris WH. Physical training of school children with spastic cerebral palsy effects on daily activity, fat mass, and fitness. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 1998;21(2):174–194.
van der Linden ML, Hazlewood ME, Hillman SF, Robb JE. Functional electrical stimulation to the dorsiflexors and quadriceps in children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2008;21:23–29.
Vincer MJ, Allen AC, Joseph KS, et al. Increasing prevalence of cerebral palsy among very preterm infants: a population-based study. *Pediatrics.* 2006;118(6):e1621–e1626.
Vogtle LK. Employment outcomes for adults with cerebral palsy: an issue that needs to be addressed. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2013;55:973.
Wagner M, Newman L, Cameto R, et al: An overview of finding from Wave 2 of the National Longitudinal Transition Study-2 (NLTS2). National Center for Special Education Research, Menlo Park, CA, 2006, SRI International.
Watt JM, Roberston CM, Grace MG. Early prognosis for ambulation of neonatal intensive care survivors with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1989;31:766–773.
Willoughby KL, Dodd KJ, Shields N. A systematic review of the effectiveness of treadmill training for children with cerebral palsy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(24):1971–1979.
Willoughby KL, Dodd KJ, Shields N, Foley S. Efficacy of partial body weight–supported treadmill training compared with overground walking practice for children with cerebral palsy: a randomized clinical trial. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91:333–339.
Wilson-Costello DE, Friedman H, Minich N, Fanaroff AA, Hack M. Improved survival rates with increased neurodevelopmental disability for extremely low birth weight infants in the 1990s. *Pediatrics.* 2005;115(4):997–1003.
Yin Foo R, Guppy M, Johnston LM. Intelligence assessments for children with cerebral palsy: a systematic review. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2013;55(10):911–918.

CHAPTER 7

Myelomeningocele

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe the incidence, prevalence, etiology, and clinical manifestations of myelomeningocele.
2. Describe common complications seen in children with myelomeningocele.
3. Discuss the medical and surgical management of children with myelomeningocele.
4. Articulate the role of the physical therapist assistant in the treatment of children with myelomeningocele.
5. Describe appropriate interventions for children with myelomeningocele.
6. Recognize the importance of functional training throughout the life span of a child with myelomeningocele.

Introduction

Myelomeningocele (MMC) is a complex congenital anomaly. Although it primarily affects the nervous system, it secondarily involves the musculoskeletal and urologic systems. MMC is a specific form of myelodysplasia that is the result of faulty embryologic development of the spinal cord, especially the lower segments. The caudal end of the neural tube or primitive spinal cord fails to close before the 28th day of gestation (Figure 7-1, *A*). Definitions of basic myelodysplastic defects can be found in Table 7-1. Accompanying the spinal cord dysplasia (abnormal tissue growth) is a bony defect known as spina bifida, which occurs when the posterior vertebral arches fail to close in the midline to form a spinous process (Figure 7-1, *C* to *E*). The normal spine at birth is seen in Figure 7-1, *B*. The term *spina bifida* is often used to mean both the bony defect and the various forms of myelodysplasia. When the bifid spine occurs in isolation, with no involvement of the spinal cord or meninges, it is called *spina bifida occulta* (see Figure 7-1, *C*). Usually, no neurologic impairment occurs in persons with spina bifida occulta. The area of skin over the defect may be marked by a dimple or tuft of hair and can go unnoticed. In *spina bifida cystica*, patients have a visible cyst protruding from the opening caused by the bony defect. The cyst may be covered with skin or meninges. This condition is also called *spina bifida aperta*, meaning open or visible. If the cyst contains only cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and meninges, it is referred to as a *meningocele* because the "cele" (cyst) is covered by the meninges (see Figure 7-1, *D*). When the malformed spinal cord is present within the cyst, the lesion is referred to as a *myelomeningocele* (see Figure 7-1, *E*). In MMC, the cyst may be covered with only meninges or with skin. Motor paralysis and sensory loss are present below the level of the MMC. The most common location for MMC is in the lumbar region.

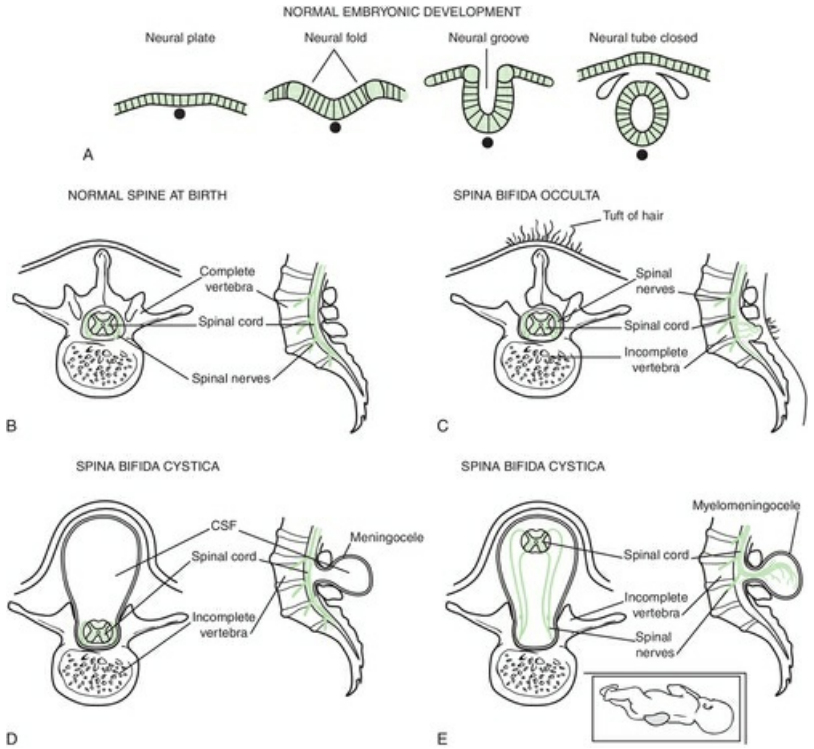


FIGURE 7-1 Types of spina bifida. **A,** Normal formation of the neural tube during the first month of gestation. **B,** Complete closure with normal development in cross-section on the left and in longitudinal section on the right. **C,** Incomplete vertebral closure with no cyst, marked by a tuft of hair. **D,** Incomplete vertebral closure with a cyst of meninges and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)—meningocele. **E,** Incomplete vertebral closure with a cyst containing a malformed spinal cord—myelomeningocele.

Table 7-1

Basic Definitions of Myelodysplastic Defects

Defect	Definition
Spina bifida occulta	Vertebral defect in which posterior elements of the vertebral arch fail to close; no sac; vertebral defect usually not associated with an abnormality of the spinal cord
Spina bifida cystica	Vertebral defect with a protruding cyst of meninges or spinal cord and meninges
Meningocele	Cyst containing cerebrospinal fluid and meninges and usually covered with epithelium; clinical symptoms variable
Myelomeningocele	Cyst containing cerebrospinal fluid, meninges, spinal cord, and possibly nerve roots; cord incompletely formed or malformed; most common in the lumbar area; the higher the lesion, the more deficits present

Adapted from Ryan KD, Ploski C, Emans JB: Myelodysplasia: The musculoskeletal problem: Habilitation from infancy to adulthood. *Phys Ther* 71:935–946, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.

Incidence

The incidence of MMC has declined over the last decade due to better nutrition and increased screening. MMC is the most common neural tube defect (NTD). About 1500 babies are born annually in the United States with MMC. Incidence appears to be stable at 3.4 per 10,000 live births (Boulet et al., 2008). If a sibling has already been born with MMC, the risk of recurrence in the family is 2% to 3%. Worldwide incidence of all NTDs occurs at a rate of 0.17 to 6.39 per 1000 live births (Bowman et al., 2009a). These figures include defects of closure of the neural tube at the cephalic end, as well as in the thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions. One province in China has reported a very high prevalence of NTDs (Li et al., 2006). Prevalence is the number of people with a disorder in a population.

The lack of closure cephalically results in *anencephaly*, or failure of the brain to develop beyond the brain stem. These infants rarely survive for any length of time after birth. An *encephalocele* results when the brain tissue protrudes from the skull. It usually occurs in the occipital and results in visual impairment. Prevalence of NTDs is highest in Hispanic people (4.17 per 10,000), followed by non-Hispanic whites (3.22 per 10,000) and finally non-Hispanic blacks (2.64 per 10,000) (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2010).

Etiology

Many factors have been implicated in spina bifida and MMC, but no definitive cause has been identified (Fenichel, 2009). More than likely, the cause is a combination of environmental and genetic factors. Following mandatory fortification of food with folic acid, there has been a 31% decrease in prevalence of MMC in the U.S. (Boulet et al., 2008). It is recommended that a woman with a history of having had a child with an NTD takes 4 mg of folic acid a day at least a month before conception and throughout the first trimester (Fenichel, 2009). Additional factors that may play a role in MMC are exposure to alcohol (Main and Mennuti, 1986), certain seizure or acne medications (Ornoy, 2006), and being obese (Shaw et al., 2003). Some genetic disorders, such as trisomy 13 and trisomy 18, have been associated with MMC (Luthy et al., 1991), and a few genes have been identified that may play a role in MMC (Copp and Greene, 2010).

Prenatal diagnosis

A neural tube defect can be diagnosed prenatally by testing for levels of alpha-fetoprotein. If levels of the protein are too high, it may mean that the fetus has an open NTD. This suspicion can be confirmed by high-resolution ultrasonography to visualize the vertebral defect. When an open NTD is detected, the infant should be delivered by cesarean section before labor begins in order to decrease the risk of central nervous system infection and to minimize trauma to the spinal cord during the delivery process. This practice has decreased the trauma (Hinderer et al., 2012). Testing for levels of acetylcholinesterase from amniotic fluid is more accurate than testing alpha-fetoprotein because it can detect a closed NTD. Chromosome analysis of cells in the amniotic fluid can confirm if there is an associated chromosome error and provide more information to parents who are considering terminating the pregnancy. Because of improved medical care, the prevalence of MMC in the population has increased even though the likelihood of having an infant with MMC has declined.

Fetal surgery to repair the defect in MMC has been performed in selected centers since 2003 (Walsh and Adzick, 2003; Tulipan, 2003). The goal of the intrauterine surgery is to decrease the need for placing a shunt for hydrocephalus, which typically develops after closure of the MMC, and to improve lower extremity function. In the recent randomized control trial of prenatal versus postnatal repair, fetal surgery was performed before 26 weeks of gestation (Adzick et al., 2011). The Management of Myelomeningocele Study (MOMS) compared the efficacy and safety between the standard postnatal repair and prenatal repair. The study was halted because the efficacy of the prenatal repair was proven. The need for shunt surgery was reduced, and improved motor outcomes were demonstrated at 30 months in the group who had prenatal surgical repair. Despite the associated maternal and fetal risks, the outcomes support prenatal repair.

Clinical features

Neurologic Defects and Impairments

The infant with MMC presents with motor and sensory impairments as a result of the spinal cord malformation. The extent of the impairment is directly related to the level of the cyst and the level of the spinal cord defect. Unlike in complete spinal cord injuries, which have a relatively straightforward relationship between the level of bony vertebra involvement and the underlying cord involvement, no clear relationship is present in infants with MMC. Some bony defects may involve more than one vertebral level. The spinal cord may be partially formed or malformed, or part of the spinal cord may be intact at one of the involved levels and may have innervated muscles below the MMC. If the nerve roots are damaged or the cord is dysplastic, the infant will have a flaccid type of motor paralysis with lack of sensation, the classic lower motor neuron presentation. However, if part of the spinal cord below the MMC is intact and has innervated muscles, the potential exists for a spastic type of motor paralysis. In some cases, the child may actually demonstrate an area of flaccidity at the level of the MMC, with spasticity present below the flaccid muscles. Either type of motor paralysis presents inherent difficulty in managing range of motion and in using orthoses for ambulation.

Functional Movement Related to Level

In general, the higher the level of the lesion, the greater the degree of muscular impairment and the less likely the child will ambulate functionally. A child with thoracic involvement at T12 has some control of the pelvis because of the innervation of the quadratus and complete innervation of the abdominal muscles. The gluteus maximus would not be active because it is innervated by L5 to S1. A high lumbar level lesion (L1 to L2) affects the lower extremities, but hip flexors and hip adductors are innervated. A midlumbar level lesion at L3 means that the child can flex at the hips and can extend the knees but has no ankle or toe movement. In a low lumbar level of paralysis at L4 or L5, the child adds the ability to flex the knees and dorsiflex the ankles, but only weakly extend the hips. Children with sacral level paralysis at S1 have weak plantar flexion for push-off and good hip abduction. To be classified as having an S2 or S3 level lesion, the child's plantar flexors must have a muscle grade of at least 3/5 and the gluteal muscles a grade of 4/5 on a manual muscle test scale (Hinderer et al., 2012). The lesion is considered "no loss" when the child has normal function of bowel and bladder and normal strength in the lower extremity muscles.

Musculoskeletal Impairments

Muscle paralysis results in an impairment of voluntary movement of the trunk and lower extremities. Children with the classic lower motor neuron presentation of flaccid paralysis have no lower extremity motion, and the legs are drawn into a frog-leg position by gravity. Because of the lack of voluntary movement, the lower extremities assume a position of comfort—hip abduction, external rotation, knee flexion, and ankle plantar flexion. Table 7-2 provides a list of typical deformities caused by muscle imbalances seen with a given level of lesion. Rather than memorizing the table, one would be better served to review the appropriate anatomy and kinesiology and determine in what direction the limbs would be pulled if only certain muscles were innervated. For example, if there was innervation of only the anterior tibialis (L4 motor level) with no opposing pull from the gastrocnemius or posterior tibialis, in what position would the foot be held? It would be pulled into dorsiflexion and inversion, resulting in a calcaneovarus foot posture. In this situation, what muscle is most likely to become shortened? This may be one of the few instances in which the anterior tibialis needs to be stretched to maintain its resting length.

Table 7-2

Function Related to Level of Lesion

Level of Lesion	Muscle Function	Potential Deformity
Thoracic	Trunk weakness T7–T9 upper abdominals T9–T12 lower abdominals T12 has weak quadratus lumborum	Positional deformities of hips, knees, and ankles secondary to frog-leg posture

High lumbar (L1–L2)	Unopposed hip flexors and some adductors	Hip flexion, adduction Hip dislocation Lumbar lordosis Knee flexion and plantar flexion
Midlumbar (L3)	Strong hip flexors, adductors Weak hip rotators Antigravity knee extension	Hip dislocation, subluxation Genu recurvatum
Low lumbar (L4)	Strong quadriceps, medial knee flexors against gravity, ankle dorsiflexion and inversion	Equinovarus, calcaneovarus, or calcaneocavus foot
Low lumbar (L5)	Weak hip extension, abduction Good knee flexion against gravity Weak plantar flexion with eversion	Equinovarus, calcaneovalgus, or calcaneocavus foot
Sacral (S1)	Good hip abductors, weak plantar flexors	–
Sacral (S2–S3)	Good hip extensors and ankle plantar flexors	–

The child with MMC may also have congenital lower limb deformities, in addition to being at risk of acquiring additional deformities because of muscle imbalances. These deformities may include hip dislocation, hip dysplasia and subluxation, genu varus, and genu valgus. Congenital foot deformities associated with MMC are talipes equinovarus or congenital clubfoot, pes equinus or flatfoot, and convex pes valgus or rocker-bottom foot, with a vertical talus. These are depicted in Figure 7-2. Clubfoot is the most common foot deformity seen in children with MMC who have an L4 or L5 motor level (Tappit-Emas, 2008). The physical therapist may perform taping and gentle manipulation during the early management of this foot problem. The physical therapist assistant may or may not be involved with providing gentle corrective range of motion. Because of pressure problems over the bony prominences, splinting is recommended instead of serial casting. Surgical correction of the foot deformity is probably indicated in all but the mildest cases (Tappit-Emas, 2008).

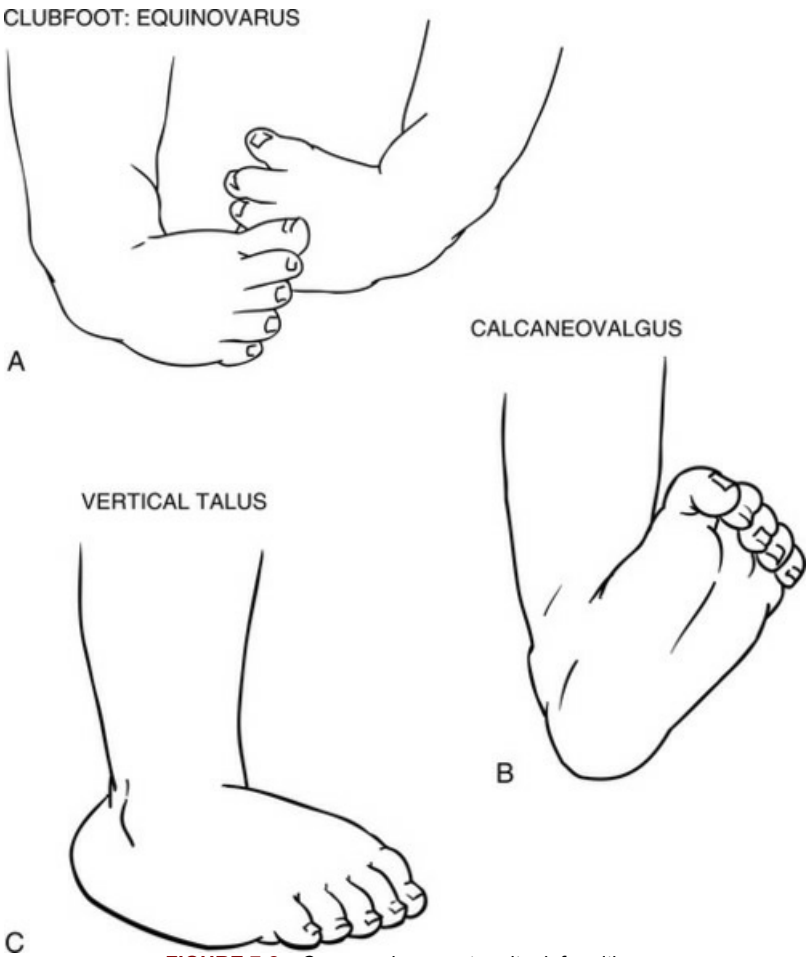


FIGURE 7-2 Common lower extremity deformities.

Most children with MMC begin to ambulate between 1 and 2 years of age. A plantigrade foot, one that can be flat and in contact with the ground, is essential to ensure ambulation. In addition, the foot needs to be able to exhibit 10 degrees of dorsiflexion for toe clearance. This does not, however,

have to be active range.

If the child has a spastic type of motor paralysis, limb movements may result from muscle spasms, but such movements are not under the child's voluntary control. Various limb positions may result, depending on which muscles are spastic. The deforming forces will be stronger if spasticity is present. For example, in a child with an L1 or L2 motor level, the hip flexors and adductors may pull so strongly because of increased tone that the hip is dislocated. Muscle imbalances due to the level of innervation may be intensified by increased tone.

Osteoporosis

As in adults with spinal cord injury, the loss of the ability to produce a muscle contraction is devastating for voluntary movement, but it also has ramifications for the ongoing development and function of the skeletal system. The skeletal system, including the long bones and axial skeleton, depends on muscle pull and weight bearing to maintain structural integrity and to help balance normal bone loss with new bone production. Children, like adults with spinal cord injury, are at risk of developing *osteoporosis* (Hinderer et al., 2012). Osteoporosis predisposes a bone to fracture; therefore, children with MMC are at greater risk of developing fractures secondary to loss of muscle strength and inactivity (Dosa et al., 2007). Researchers have found that children who are household or community ambulators have higher bone mineral density than children who walk only therapeutically (Rosenstein et al., 1987). The reader is referred to Chapter 12 for the definition of the various levels of ambulation. Walking ability is a significant determinant of bone density in children with MMC (Ausili et al., 2008). A recent review found that the risk of low bone mineral density and fractures was related to higher neurologic levels, inactivity, previous spontaneous fracture, not walking, and contractures (Marrieos et al., 2012). With aging, there is a risk for developing Charcot joints (Nagarkatti et al., 2000). A Charcot joint is a joint deformity caused by a condition involving the spinal cord. The joint is painful and unstable.

Neuropathic Fractures

Twenty percent of children with MMC are likely to experience a neuropathic fracture (Lock and Aronson, 1989). *Neuropathic fractures* relate to the underlying neurologic disorder. Paralyzed muscles cannot generate forces through long bones, so that essentially no weight bearing takes place, with resulting osteoporosis. Osteoporosis makes it easier for the bone to fracture. Low bone density for age is strongly related to risk for fractures (Szalay and Cheema, 2011). Possible causes of neuropathic fractures in this population include overly aggressive therapeutic exercise and lack of stabilization during transfers (Garber, 1991). Prolonged immobilization following surgery can also predispose the child to pathologic fractures. Proper nutrition is always important but even more so if the child is taking seizure medications that disrupt the metabolism of vitamin D and calcium.

The following clinical example illustrates another possible situation involving a neuropathic fracture. Once, when placing the lower extremities of a child with MMC into his braces, a clinician felt warmth along the child's tibial crest. The child was biracial, so no redness was apparent, but a definite separation was noted along the tibia. The child was in no pain or distress. His mother later recounted that it had been particularly difficult to put his braces on the day before. A radiograph confirmed the therapist's clinical suspicion that the child had a fracture. The limb was put in a cast until the fracture healed. While the child was in his cast, therapy continued, with an emphasis on upper extremity strengthening and trunk balance. Presence of a cast protecting a fracture is usually not an indication to curtail activity in children with MMC. In fact, it may spark creativity on the part of the rehabilitation team to come up with ways to combat postural insecurity and loss of antigravity muscle strength while the child's limb is immobilized.

Spinal Deformities

Children with MMC can have congenital or acquired *scoliosis. Congenital scoliosis* is usually related to vertebral anomalies, such as a hemivertebra, that are present in addition to the bifid spine. This type of scoliosis is inflexible. *Acquired scoliosis* results from muscle imbalances in the trunk, producing a flexible scoliosis. A rapid onset of scoliosis can also occur secondary to a tethered spinal cord or to a condition called hydromyelia. These conditions are explained later in the text. The physical therapist assistant must be observant of any postural changes in treating a child with

MMC. Acquired scoliosis should be managed by some type of orthosis until spinal fixation with instrumentation is appropriate. Children with MMC go through puberty at a younger age than typically developing children, and this allows for earlier spinal surgery with little loss of the child's mature trunk height.

Other spinal deformities, such as *kyphosis* and *lordosis*, may also be seen in these children. The kyphosis may be in the thoracic area or may encompass the entire spine, as seen in a baby. The lordosis in the lumbar area may be exaggerated or reversed. Spinal deformities of all kinds are more likely to be present in children with higher-level lesions.

Spinal alignment and potential for deformity must always be considered when one uses developmentally appropriate positions, such as sitting and standing. If the child cannot maintain trunk alignment muscularly, then some type of orthosis may be indicated. The child's sitting posture should be documented during therapy, and sitting positions to be used at home should be identified. Spinal deformities may not always be preventable, but attention must be paid to the effect of gravity on a malleable spine when it is in vulnerable developmental postures.

Arnold-Chiari Malformation

In addition to the spinal cord defect in MMC, most children with this neuromuscular problem have an *Arnold-Chiari type II malformation*. The Arnold-Chiari malformation involves the cerebellum, the medulla, and the cervical part of the spinal cord (Figure 7-3). Because the cerebellum is not fully developed, the hindbrain is downwardly displaced through the foramen magnum. The flow of CSF is obstructed, thus causing fluid to build up within the ventricles of the brain. The abnormal accumulation of CSF results in hydrocephalus, as shown in Figure 7-3. A child with spina bifida, MMC, and an Arnold-Chiari type II malformation has a greater than 90% chance of developing hydrocephalus. The Arnold-Chiari type II malformation may also affect cranial nerve and brain stem function because of the pressure exerted on these areas by the accumulation of CSF within the ventricular system. Clinically, this involvement may be manifested by swallowing difficulties.

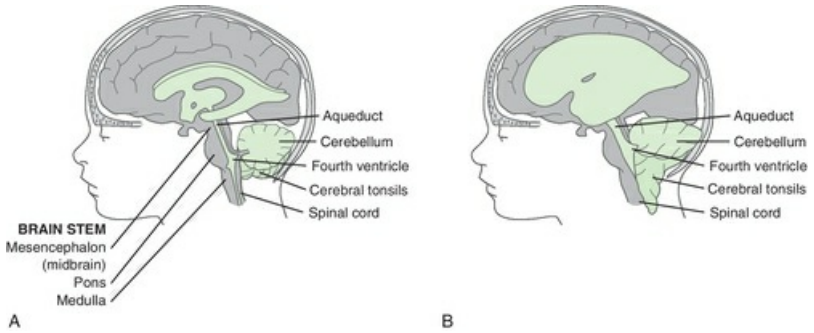


FIGURE 7-3 **A,** Normal brain with patent cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) circulation. **B,** Arnold-Chiari type II malformation with enlarged ventricles, a condition that predisposes a child with myelomeningocele to hydrocephalus. The brain stem, the fourth ventricle, part of the cerebellum, and the cerebral tonsils are displaced downward through the foramen magnum, and this leads to blockage of CSF flow. Additionally, pressure on the brain stem housing the cranial nerves may result in nerve palsies. (From Goodman CC, Boissonnault WG, Fuller KS: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist,* St. Louis, 2015, WB Saunders.)

Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus can occur in children with MMC with or without the Arnold-Chiari malformation. Hydrocephalus is treated neurosurgically with the placement of a ventriculoperitoneal shunt, which drains excess CSF into the peritoneal cavity (Figure 7-4). You will be able to palpate the shunt tubing along the child's neck as it goes under the clavicle and down the chest wall. All shunt systems have a one-way valve that allows fluid to flow out of the ventricles but prevents backflow. The child's movements are generally not restricted unless such restriction is specified by the physician. However, the child should avoid spending prolonged periods of time in a head-down position, such as hanging upside down, because this may disrupt the valve function or may interfere with the flow of the fluid (Williamson, 1987). Knowledge of signs of shunt malfunction is

important when working with children with MMC. "Approximately 40% of new shunts fail within a year, and 80% fail within 10 years" (Sandler, 2010, p. 890).

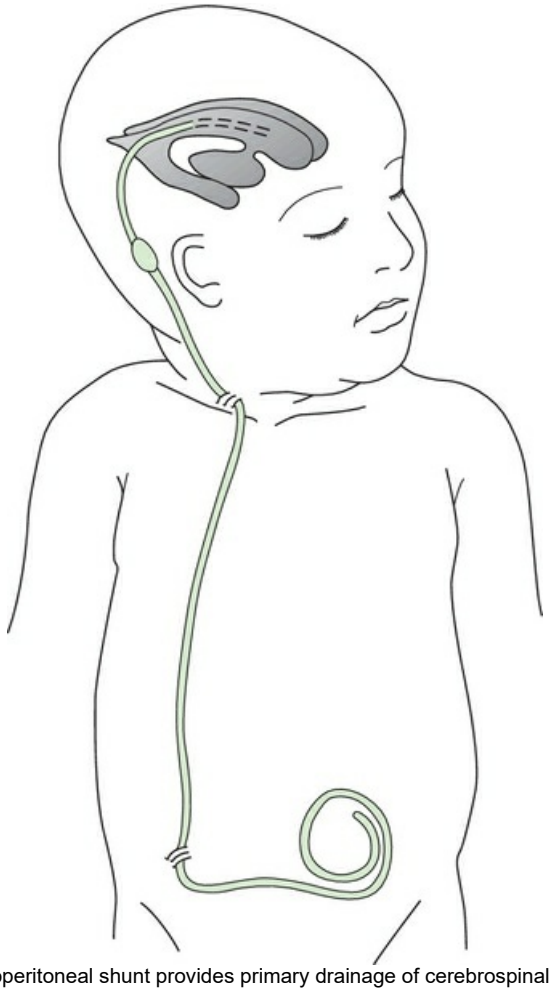


FIGURE 7-4 A ventriculoperitoneal shunt provides primary drainage of cerebrospinal fluid from the ventricles to an extracranial compartment, usually either the heart or the abdominal or peritoneal cavity, as shown here. Extra tubing is left in the extracranial site to uncoil as the child grows. A unidirectional valve designed to open at a predetermined intraventricular pressure and to close when the pressure falls below that level prevents backflow of fluid. (From Goodman CC, Boissonnault WG, Fuller KS: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist,* St. Louis, 2015, WB Saunders.)

Shunts can become blocked or infected, so the clinician must be aware of signs that could indicate shunt malfunction. These signs are listed in Table 7-3. Ninety-five percent of children with shunts will have at least one shunt revision (Bowman et al., 2001). Many of the signs and symptoms, such as irritability, seizures, vomiting, and lethargy, are seen regardless of the age of the child. Other signs are unique to the age of the child. Infants may display bulging of the fontanels secondary to increased intracranial pressure. The sunset sign of the eyes refers to the finding that the iris is only partially visible because of the infant's downward gaze. Older children may exhibit personality or memory changes. Shunt malfunction can occur years after implantation even without symptoms (Tomlinson and Sugarman, 1995).

Table 7-3

Signs and Symptoms of Shunt Malfunction

Sign or Symptom	Infants	Toddlers	School-Age Children
Bulging fontanel	X		
Sunset sign of eyes	X		
Excessive rate of growth of head circumference	X		
Thinning of skin over scalp	X		
Irritability	X	X	X
Seizures	X	X	X
Vomiting	X	X	X
Lethargy	X	X	X
Headaches	X	X	
Edema, redness along shunt tract	X	X	X
Personality changes			X
Memory changes			X

Central Nervous System Deterioration

In addition to being vigilant about watching for signs of shunt malfunction as the child grows, the clinician must investigate any change in motor and sensory status or functional abilities because it may indicate neurologic deterioration. Common causes of such deterioration are hydromyelia and a tethered spinal cord. All areas of the child's function, such as mobility, activities of daily living (ADLs), and school performance, can be affected by either of these two conditions.

Hydromyelia

Hydromyelia is characterized by an accumulation of CSF in the central canal of the spinal cord. The condition can cause rapidly progressing scoliosis, upper extremity weakness, and increased tone (Long and Toscano, 2001). Other investigators have reported sensory changes (Ryan et al., 1991) and ascending motor loss in the lower extremities (Krosschell and Pesavento, 2013). The incidence of hydromyelia in children with MMC ranges from 20% to 80% (Byrd et al., 1991). Any time a child presents with rapidly progressing scoliosis, alert your supervising therapist, who will inform the child's physician so that the cause of the symptoms can be investigated and treated quickly. Scoliosis in this disorder is often an indication of a progressing neurologic problem.

Tethered Spinal Cord

The relationship of the spinal cord to the vertebral column normally changes with age. At birth, the end of the spinal cord is at the level of L3, rising to L1 in adulthood as a result of skeletal growth. Because of scarring from the surgical repair of the back lesion, adhesions can form and can anchor the spinal cord at the lesion site. The spinal cord is then tethered and is not free to move upward within the vertebral canal as the child grows. Progressive neurologic dysfunction, such as a decline in motor and sensory function, pain, or loss of previous bowel and bladder control, may occur. Other signs may include rapidly progressive scoliosis, increased tone in the lower extremities, and changes in gait pattern. Clinical signs are most commonly seen between the ages of 6 and 12 (Sandler, 2010). Prompt surgical correction can usually prevent any permanent neurologic damage and relieve pain (Schoenmakers et al., 2003; Bowman et al., 2009b). Any deterioration in

neuromuscular or urologic performance from the child's baseline or the rapid onset of scoliosis should immediately be reported to the supervising physical therapist.

Sensory Impairment

Sensory impairment from MMC is not as straightforward in children as it is in adults with a spinal cord injury. The sensory losses exhibited by children are less likely to correspond to the motor level of paralysis. Do not presume that because one part of a dermatome is intact, the entire dermatome is intact to sensation. "Skip" areas that have no sensation may be present within an innervated dermatome (Hinderer et al., 2012). Often, the therapist has tested for only light touch or pinprick, because the child with MMC is usually unable to differentiate between the two sensations. If the therapist has tested for vibration, intact areas of sensation may be present below those perceived as insensate for either light touch or pinprick (Hinderer and Hinderer, 1990).

The functional implications of loss of sensation are enormous. An increased potential exists for damaging the skin and underlying tissue secondary to extremes of temperature and normal pressure. A child with MMC loses the ability to feel that he has too much pressure on the buttocks from sitting too long. This loss of sensation can lead to the development of pressure ulcers. The consequences of loss of time from school and play and of independent function because of a pressure ulcer can be immeasurable. The plan of care must include teaching skin safety and inspection as well as pressure-relief techniques. These techniques are essential to good primary prevention of complications. The use of seat cushions and other joint protective devices is advised. Insensitive skin needs to be protected as the child learns to move around and explore the environment. The family needs to be made aware of the importance of making regular skin inspection part of the daily routine. As the child grows and shoes and braces are introduced, skin integrity must be a high priority when one initiates a wearing schedule for any orthotic devices.

Bowel and Bladder Dysfunction

Most children with MMC have some degree of bowel and bladder dysfunction. The sacral levels of the spinal cord, S2 to S4, innervate the bladder and are responsible for voiding and defecation reflexes. With loss of motor and sensory functions, the child has no sensation of bladder fullness or of wetness. The reflex emptying and the inhibition of voiding can be problematic. If tone in the bladder wall is increased, the bladder cannot store the typical amount of urine and empties reflexively. Special attention must be paid to the treatment of urinary dysfunction because mismanagement can result in kidney damage. By the age of 3 or 4 years, most children begin to work on gaining urinary continence by using clean intermittent catheterization (CIC). By 6 years, the child should be independent in self-intermittent catheterization (SIC). Functional prerequisites for this skill include sitting balance with no hand support and the ability to do a toilet transfer. These functional activities should be incorporated into early and middle stages of physical therapy management.

Latex Allergy

It has been estimated that up to 50% of children with MMC are allergic to latex (Cremer et al., 2002; Sandler, 2010). This may be because the infant with MMC is exposed repeatedly to latex products. Exposure to latex can produce an anaphylactic reaction that can be life-threatening (Dormans et al., 1995), with the risk increasing as the child gets older (Mazon et al., 2000). All contact with latex products should be avoided from the beginning, including catheters, surgical gloves, and Theraband. Any surgery should be performed in a latex-free environment. Toys that contain latex, such as rubber balls and balloons, should be avoided. With the concentrated effort to avoid all latex, children born more recently have lower rates of latex sensitivity (Blumchen et al., 2010).

Physical therapy intervention

Three stages of care are used to describe the continuum of physical therapy management of the child with myelodysplasia. Although similarities exist between adults with spinal cord injuries and children with congenital neurologic spinal deficits, inherent differences are also present. The biggest difference is that the anomaly occurs during development of the body and its systems. Therefore, one of the major foci of a physical therapy plan of care should be to minimize the impact and ongoing development of bony deformation, postural changes, and abnormal tone. Optimizing development encompasses not only motor development but cognitive and social-emotional development as well. Other therapeutic considerations are the same as for an adult who has sustained a spinal cord injury, such as strengthening the upper extremities, developing sitting and standing balance, fostering locomotion, promoting self-care, encouraging safety and personal hygiene, and teaching a range of self-performed motion and pressure relief.

First Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention

This stage includes the acute care the infant receives after birth and up to the time of ambulation. Initially, after the birth of a child with MMC, parents deal with multiple medical practitioners, each with his or her own contribution to the health of the infant. The neurosurgeon performs the surgery to remove and close the MMC within 24 hours of the infant's birth to minimize the risk of infection. The placement of a shunt to relieve the hydrocephalus may be performed at the same time or may occur within the first week of life. The orthopedist assesses the status of the infant's joints and muscles. The urologist assesses the child's renal status and monitors bowel and bladder function. Depending on the amount of skin coverage available to close the defect, a plastic surgeon may also be involved. Once the back lesion is repaired and a shunt is placed, the infant is medically stabilized in preparation for discharge home. Communication among all members of the team working with the parents and infant is crucial. Information about the infant's present level of function must be shared among all personnel who evaluate and treat the infant.

The physical therapist establishes motor and sensory levels of function; evaluates muscle tone, degree of head and trunk control, and range-of-motion limitations; and checks for the presence of any musculoskeletal deformities. General physical therapy goals during this first stage of care include the following:

1. Prevent secondary complications (contractures, deformities, skin breakdown).
2. Promote age-appropriate sensorimotor development.
3. Prepare the child for ambulation.
4. Educate the family about appropriate strategies to manage the child's condition.

If the physical therapist assistant is involved at this stage of the infant's care, a caring and positive attitude is of utmost importance to foster healthy, appropriate interactions between the parents and the infant. The most important thing to teach the parents is how to interact with their infant. Parents have many things to learn before the infant is discharged from the acute care facility: positioning, sensory precautions, range of motion, and therapeutic handling. Parents need to be comfortable in using handling techniques to promote normal sensorimotor development, especially head and trunk control. Giving parents a sense of competence in their ability to care for their infant is everyone's job and ensures carryover of instructions to the home setting.

Prevention of Deformities: Postoperative Positioning

Positioning after the surgical repair of the back lesion should avoid pressure on the repaired area until it is healed. Therefore, the infant initially is limited to prone and side-lying positions. You can show the child's parents how to place the infant prone on their laps and gently rock to soothe and stimulate head lifting. Holding the infant high on the shoulder, with support under the arms, fosters head control and may be the easiest position for the infant with MMC to maintain a stable head. Handling and carrying strategies may be recommended by the physical therapist and practiced by the assistant before being demonstrated to the parents. Parents are naturally anxious when handling an infant with a disability. Use gentle encouragement, and do not hesitate to correct any errors in hand placement. The infant's head should be supported when the infant is picked up and put down. As the child's head control improves, support can gradually be withdrawn. As the

back heals, the infant can experience brief periods of supine and supported upright sitting without any interference with wound healing. When the shunt has been inserted, you should always follow any positioning precautions according to the physician's orders.

Prone Positioning

Prone positioning is important to prevent development of potentially deforming hip and knee flexion contractures. Prone is also a position from which the infant can begin to develop head control. Depending on the child's level of motor paralysis and the presence of hypotonia in the neck and trunk, the infant may have more difficulty in learning to lift the head off the support surface in prone than in a supported upright position. Movement in the prone position, as when the infant is placed over the caregiver's lap or when the infant is carried while prone, will also stimulate head control by encouraging lifting the head into extension. Intervention 7-1 demonstrates a way to position an infant in lying prone with lateral supports to maintain proper alignment. Encouraging the infant to use the upper extremities for propping on elbows and for pushing up to extended arms provides a good beginning for upper extremity strengthening.

Intervention 7-1

Prone Lying with Support

Infant in prone lying position with lateral supports to maintain proper trunk and lower extremity alignment.

(From Williamson GG: *Children with spina bifida: early intervention and preschool programming,* Baltimore, 1987, Paul H. Brookes.)

Effects of Gravity

When the infant is in the supine position, the paralyzed lower extremities will tend to assume positions of comfort, such as hip abduction and external rotation, because of the effect of gravity. In children with partial innervation of the lower extremities, hip flexion and adduction can produce hip flexion contractures and can lead to hip dislocation because of the lack of muscle pull from hip extensors or abductors. Certain postures should be avoided, as listed in Box 7-1. *Genu recurvatum* is seen when the quadriceps muscles are not opposed by equally strong hamstring pull to balance the knee-extension posture. When only anterior tibialis function is present, a calcaneovarus foot results. Some of these foot deformities are depicted in Figure 7-2.

Box 7-1

Positions to be Avoided in Children with

Myelomeningocele

Frog-leg position in prone or supine
W sitting
Ring sitting
Heel sitting
Cross-legged sitting

(From Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB: Myelodysplasia. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders, pp. 703–755.)

Orthoses for Lower Extremity Positioning

Orthoses may be needed early to prevent deformities, or the caregiver may simply need to position the child with towel rolls or small pillows to help maintain a neutral hip, knee, and ankle position. An example of a simple lower extremity splint is seen in Figure 7-5. Early on, it is detrimental to adduct the hips completely because the hip joints are incompletely formed and may sublux or dislocate if they are adducted beyond neutral. Maintaining a neutral alignment of the foot is critical for later plantigrade weight bearing. Children with higher-level lesions may benefit initially from a total body splint, to be worn while they are sleeping (Figure 7-6). Many clinicians recommend night splints for this reason. Any orthosis should be introduced gradually because of lack of skin sensation, and the skin should be monitored closely for breakdown.

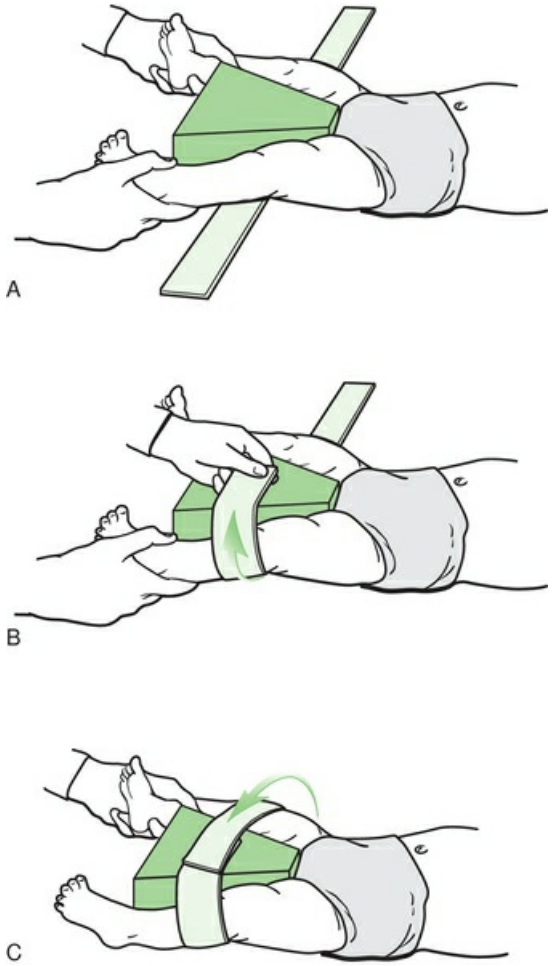


FIGURE 7-5 Simple abduction splint. **A,** A pad is placed between the child's legs with a strap underneath. **B,** The straps are wrapped around the legs and attached with Velcro, **C,** bringing the legs into neutral hip rotation.

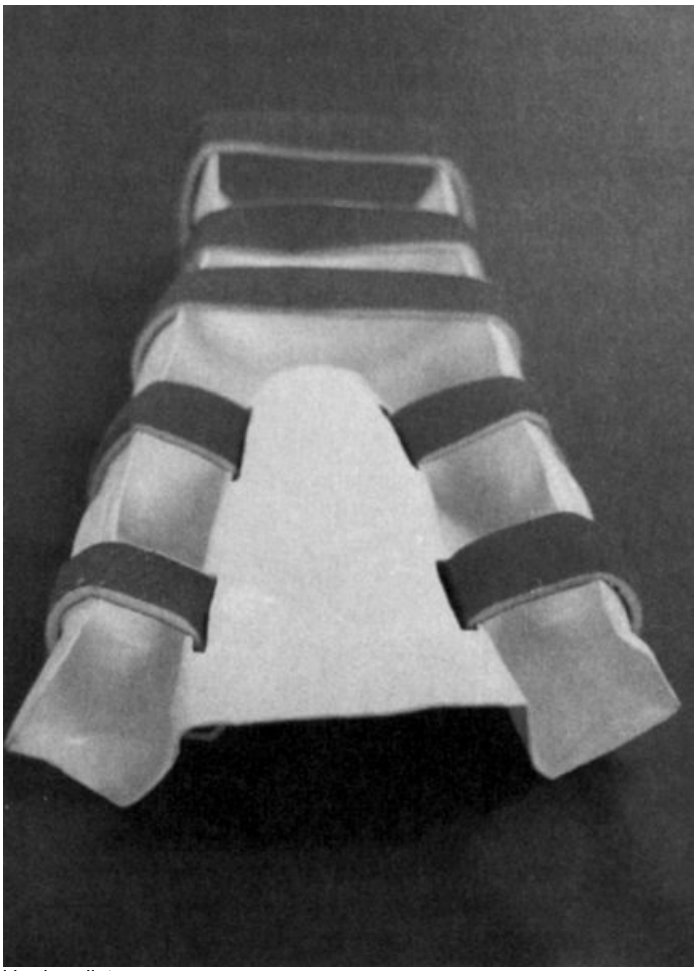


FIGURE 7-6 Total body splint. (From Schneider JW, Pesavento MJ: Spina bifida: A congenital spinal cord injury. In Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, editors: *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation,* ed 6. St Louis, 2013, CV Mosby.)

Prevention of Skin Breakdown

Lack of awareness of pressure may cause the infant to remain in one position too long, especially once sitting is attained. However, the supine position may pose more danger of skin breakdown over the ischial tuberosities, the sacrum, and the calcaneus. Side lying can be a dangerous position because of the excess pressure on the trochanters. Because of the lack of sensation and decreased awareness of excessive pressure from being in one position for too long, the skin of children with MMC must be closely monitored for redness. Infants need to have their position changed often. Check for red areas, especially over bony prominences and after the infant wears any orthosis. If redness persists longer than 20 minutes, the orthosis should be adjusted (Tappit-Emas, 2008).

Sensory Precautions

Parents often find it difficult to realize that the infant lacks the ability to feel below the level of the injury. Encouraging parents to play with the infant and to tickle different areas of the child's body will help them understand where the baby has feeling. It is not appropriate to demonstrate the infant's lack of sensitivity by stroking the skin with a pin, even though the therapist may use this technique during formal sensory testing. Socks or booties are a good idea for protecting the feet from being nibbled as the infant finds his toes at around 6 months. Teach the parents to keep the infant's lower extremities covered to protect the skin when the infant is crawling or creeping. Close inspection of the floor or carpet for small objects that could cause an accidental injury is a necessity. Protecting the skin with clothing also helps with temperature regulation, which is impaired. Skin that is anesthetic does not sweat and cannot conserve heat or give off heat and therefore must be protected. Parents must always be instructed to test bath water before placing the infant into the tub because a burn could easily result. Proper shoe fit is imperative to prevent pressure areas and

abrasions. Children with MMC may continue to have a chubby baby foot, so extra room may be needed in shoes.

Prevention of Contractures: Range of Motion

Passive range of motion should be done two to three times a day in an infant with MMC. To decrease the number of exercises in the home program, exercises for certain joints, such as the hip and knee, can be combined. For example, hip and knee flexion on one side can be combined with hip and knee extension on the other side while the infant is supine. Hip abduction can be done bilaterally, as can internal and external rotation. Performing these movements when the infant is prone provides a nice stretch to the hip flexors.

Range of motion of the foot and ankle should be done individually. Always be sure that the subtalar joint is in a neutral position when doing ankle dorsiflexion range, so that the movement occurs at the correct joint. If the foot is allowed to go into varus or valgus positioning when stretching a tight heel cord, the motion caused by your stretching will take place in the midfoot, rather than the hindfoot. You may be causing a rocker-bottom foot by allowing the motion to occur at the wrong place. Be sure that your supervising physical therapist demonstrates the correct technique to stretch a heel cord while maintaining subtalar neutral.

Range-of-motion exercises should be done gently, with your hands placed close to the child's joints, to provide a short lever arm. Hold the motion briefly at the end of the available range. Even in the presence of contractures, aggressive stretching is not indicated. Serial casting may be needed as an adjunct to therapy if persistent passive range-of-motion exercise does not improve the range of motion. Always keep your supervising therapist apprised of any problems in this area. Range-of-motion exercises are easy to forget when the infant becomes more active, but these simple exercises are an important part of the infant's program. Once able, the child should be responsible for doing her own daily range of motion.

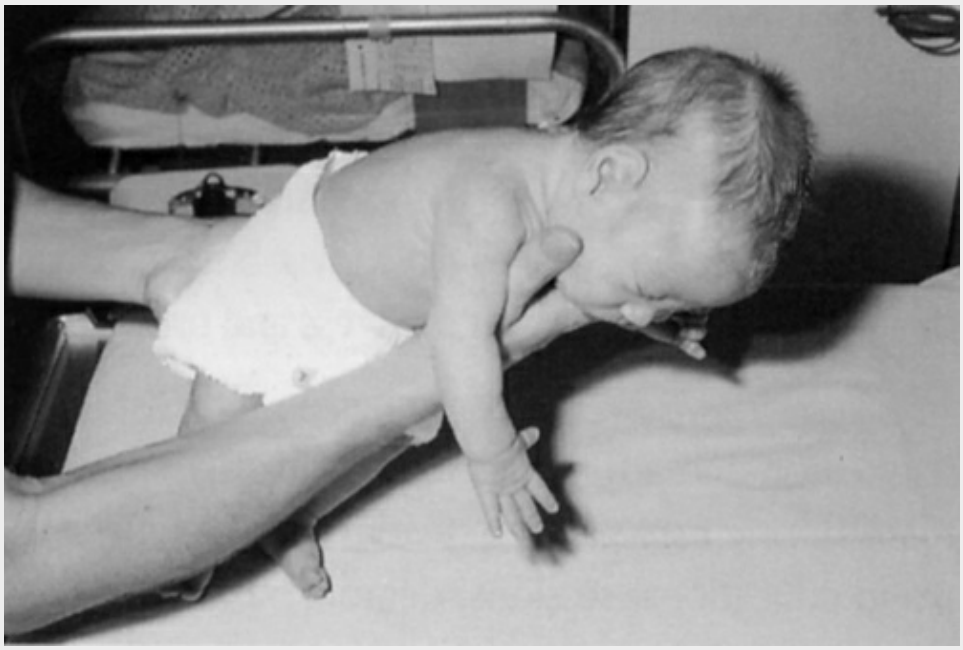
Promotion of Age-Appropriate Sensorimotor Development

Therapeutic Handling: Development of Head Control

Any of the techniques outlined in Chapter 5 to encourage head control can be used in a child with MMC. Some early cautions include being sure that the skin over the back defect is well healed and that care is taken to prevent shearing forces on the lower extremities or the trunk when the infant is positioned for head lifting. Additionally, the caregiver should provide extra support if the child's head is larger than normal, secondary to hydrocephalus. The infant can be carried at the caregiver's shoulder to encourage head lifting as the body sways, just as you would with any newborn. The caregiver can also support the infant in the prone position during carrying or gentle rocking on the lap to promote head control using vestibular input. Extra support can be given to the infant's head at the jaw or forehead when the child is in the prone position (Intervention 7-2).

Intervention 7-2

Prone Carrying



Prone carrying with extra support for jaw or forehead.

(From Burns YR, MacDonald J: *Physiotherapy and the growing child,* London, 1996, WB Saunders.)

Although head control in infants usually develops first in the prone position, it may be more difficult for an infant with myelodysplasia to lift the head from this position because of hydrocephalus and hypotonic neck and trunk muscles. Extra support from a bolster or a small half-roll under the chest provides assistance in distributing some of the weight farther down the trunk as well as help in bringing the upper extremities under the body to assume a prone-on-elbows position (Figure 7-7). Additional support can be provided under the child's forehead, if needed, to give the infant a chance to experience this position. Rolling from supine to side lying with the head supported on a half-roll also gives the child practice in keeping the head in line with the body during rotation around the long axis of the body. Head control in the supine position is needed to balance the development of axial extension with axial flexion. Positioning the child in a supported supine position on a wedge can encourage a chin tuck or forward head lift into flexion. Every time the infant is picked up, the caregiver should encourage active head and trunk movements on the part of the child. Carrying should also be seen as a therapeutic activity to promote postural control, rather than as a passive action performed by the caregiver. The clinician or caregiver should watch for signs that could indicate medical complications while interacting with and handling a child with MMC and a shunt. Signs of shunt obstruction may include the setting-sun sign and increased muscle tone in the upper or lower extremities.

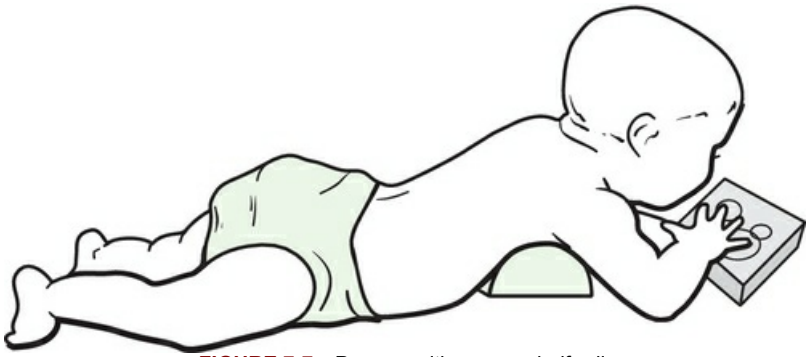


FIGURE 7-7 Prone position over a half-roll.

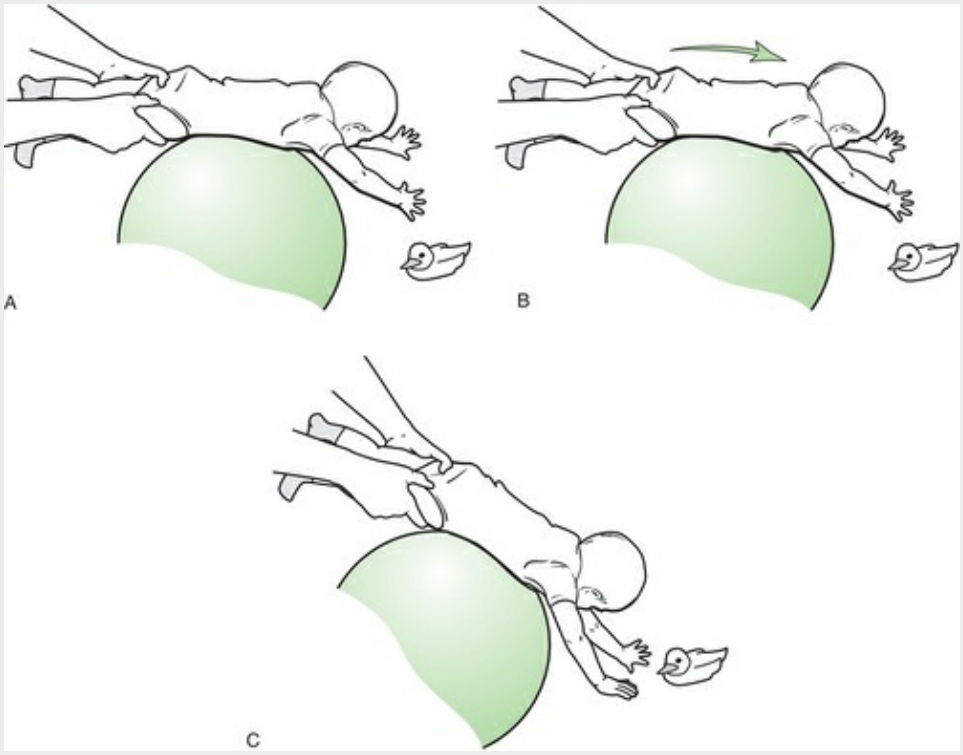
Therapeutic Handling: Developing Righting and Equilibrium Reactions

If the infant uses too much shoulder elevation as a substitute for head control, developing righting reactions of the head and trunk becomes more difficult. Try to modify the position to make it easier for the infant to use neck muscles for stability, rather than the elevated shoulder position. In addition, give more support proximally at the child's trunk to provide a stable base on which the head can work. The infant may use an elevated position of the shoulders when in propped sitting, with the arms internally rotated and the scapula protracted. Although this posture may be positionally stable, it does not allow the infant to move within or from the posture with any degree of control, thus making it difficult to reach or to shift weight in sitting.

As the infant with MMC develops head control in prone, supine, and side-lying positions, righting reactions should be seen in the trunk. Head and trunk righting can be encouraged in prone by slightly shifting the infant's weight onto one side of the body and seeing whether the other side shortens. Righting of the trunk occurs only as far down the body as the muscles are innervated. The clinician should note any asymmetry in the trunk, because this will need to be taken into account for planning upright activities that could predispose the child to scoliosis. As the infant is able to lift the head off the supporting surface, trunk extension develops down the back. The extension of the infant's back and the arms should be encouraged by enticing the child to reach forward from a prone position with one or both arms. As the infant becomes stronger, and depending on how much of the trunk is innervated, less and less anterior trunk support can be given while still encouraging lifting and reaching with the arms and upper trunk. (The goal is to have the child "fly," as in the Landau reflex.) By placing the infant on a small ball or over a small bolster and shifting weight forward, you may elicit head and trunk lifting (Intervention 7-3, *A*), reaching with arms (Intervention 7-3, *B*), or propping on one extended arm and reaching with the other (Intervention 7-3, *C*). If the infant is moved quickly, protective extension of the upper extremities may be elicited. For the infant with a lower level lesion and hip innervation, hip extension should be encouraged when the child is in the prone position.

Intervention 7-3

Ball Exercises



A. Prone positioning on a ball with the child's weight shifted forward for head lifting.
B. Reaching with both arms over a ball.
C. Reaching with one arm while propping on the other over a ball.

Trunk rotation must be encouraged to support the child's transition from one posture to another, such as in rolling from supine to prone and back and in coming to sit from side lying. Trunk rotation in sitting encourages the development of equilibrium reactions that bring the center of gravity back within the base of support. Equilibrium reactions are trunk reactions that occur in developmental postures. In prone and supine, trunk incurvation and limb abduction result from a lateral weight shift. Again, the trunk responds only to the degree to which it is innervated, so one should encourage rotation in all directions. Trunk rotation is also used in protective reactions of the upper extremities when balance is lost.

Handling: Developing Trunk Control in Sitting

Acclimation to upright sitting is begun as close as possible to the developmentally appropriate time (6 to 8 months). Ideally, the infant should have sufficient head control and sufficient ability to bear weight on extended arms. Propped sitting is a typical way to begin developing independence in sitting. Good postural alignment of the back should be maintained when the child is placed in a sitting position. A floor sitter, a type of adaptive equipment, can be used to support the child's back if kyphosis is present. Some floor sitters have extensions that provide head support if head control is inconsistent. Floor sitters with head support allow even the child with poor head control to be placed in a sitting position on the floor to play. In children with good head control, sitting balance can be trained by varying the child's base of support and the amount of hand support. Often, a bench or tray placed in front of the child can provide extra support and security as confidence is gained while the child plays in a new position. Certain sitting positions should be avoided because of their potentially deforming forces. These positions are listed in Box 7-1.

Once propped sitting is achieved, hand support is gradually but methodically decreased. Reaching for objects while supporting with one hand can begin in the midline, and then the range can be widened as balance improves. Weight shifting at the pelvis in sitting can be used to elicit head and trunk righting reactions and upper-extremity protective reactions. Trunk rotation with extension is needed to foster the ability to protect in a backward direction. Later, the child can work on transferring objects at the midline with no hand support, an ultimate test of balance. Always remember to protect the child's back and skin during weight bearing in sitting. Skin inspection should be done after sitting for short periods of time. If the child cannot maintain an upright trunk muscularly, an orthosis may be indicated for alignment in sitting and for prevention of scoliosis.

Preparation for Ambulation: Acclimation to Upright and Weight Bearing

Acclimation to upright and weight bearing begins with fostering development of head and trunk control and includes sensory input to the lower extremities despite the lack of sensation. Brief periods of weight bearing on properly aligned lower extremities should be encouraged throughout the day. These periods occur in supported standing and should be done often. Providing a symmetric position for the infant is important for increasing awareness of body position and sensory input. Handling should promote symmetry, equal weight bearing, and equal sensory input. Weight bearing in the upright position provides a perfect opportunity to engage the child in cognitively appropriate play. The physical therapist assistant can serve as a vocal model for speech by making sounds, talking, and describing objects and actions in the child's environment. By interacting with the child, you are also modeling appropriate behavior for the caregiver.

Upper Extremity Strengthening

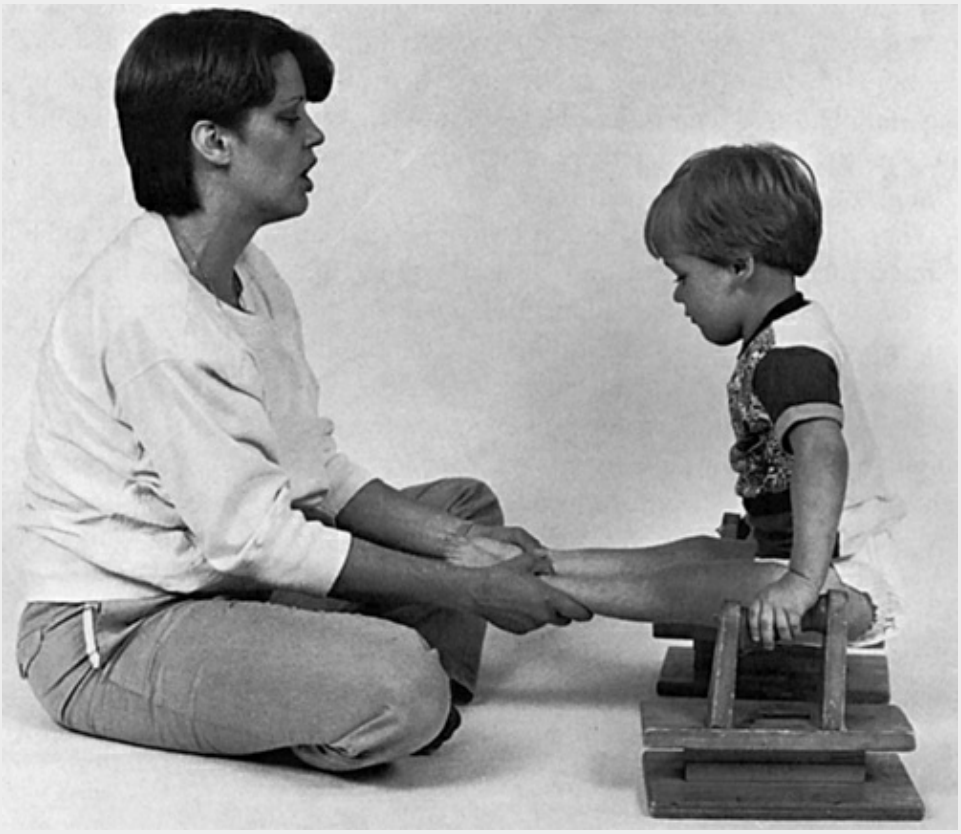
During early development, pulling and pushing with the upper extremities are excellent ways to foster increasing upper extremity strength. The progression of pushing from prone on elbows to prone on extended arms and onto hands and knees can provide many opportunities for the child to use the arms in a weight-bearing form of work. Providing the infant with your hands and requesting her to pull to sit can be done before she turns and pushes up to sit. Pulling on various resistances of latex-free Theraband can be a fun way to incorporate upper extremity strengthening into the child's treatment plan. Other objects can be used for pulling, such as a dowel rod or cane. Pushing on the floor on a scooter board can provide excellent resistance training.

Mat Mobility

Moving around in supine and prone positions is important for exploring the environment and self-care activities, but mat mobility includes movement in upright sitting. Mat mobility needs to be encouraged once trunk balance begins in supported sitting. The child can be encouraged to pull herself up to sitting by using another person, a rope tied to the end of the bed, or an overhead trapeze. Children can and should use pushup blocks or other devices to increase the strength in their upper extremities (Intervention 7-4). They need to have strong triceps, latissimus dorsi, and shoulder depressors to transfer independently. Moving around on the mat or floor is good preparation for moving around in upright standing or doing push-ups in a wheelchair. Connecting arm motion with mobility early gives the child a foundation for coordinating other, more advanced transfer and self-care movements.

Intervention 7-4

Strengthening Upper Extremities with Push-up Blocks



Push-ups on wooden blocks to strengthen scapular muscles. Push-ups prepare for transfers and pressure relief.

(From Williamson GG: *Children with spina bifida: early intervention and preschool programming,* Baltimore, 1987, Paul H. Brookes.)

Standing Frames

Use of a standing frame for weight bearing can begin when the child has sufficient head control and exhibits interest in attaining an upright standing position. Normally, infants begin to pull to stand at around 9 months of age. By 1 year, all children with a motor level of L3 or above should be fitted with a standing frame or parapodium to encourage early weight bearing. The Toronto A-frame is the preambulation orthosis of choice for most children with MMC (Figure 7-8). A standing frame is usually less expensive than a parapodium and is easier to apply (Ryan et al., 1991). The tubular

frame supports the trunk, hips, and knees and leaves the hands-free. Some children with L4 or lower lesions may be fitted with some type of hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis (HKAFO) to begin standing in preparation for walking. The orthotic device pictured in Figure 7-9 has a thoracic support. Having the child stand four or five times a day for 20 to 30 minutes seems to be manageable for most parents (Tappit-Emas, 2008). A more detailed explanation of standing frames is presented later in this chapter.

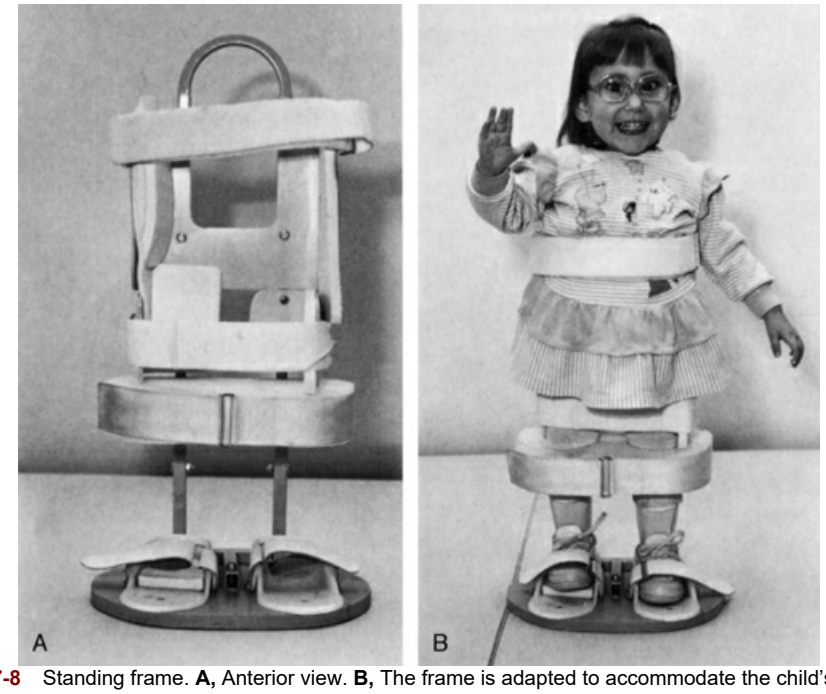


FIGURE 7-8 Standing frame. **A,** Anterior view. **B,** The frame is adapted to accommodate the child's leg-length discrepancy and tendency to lean to the right. (From Ryan KD, Ploski C, Emans JB: Myelodysplasia: The musculoskeletal problem: Habilitation from infancy to adulthood. *Phys Ther* 71:935–946, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.)

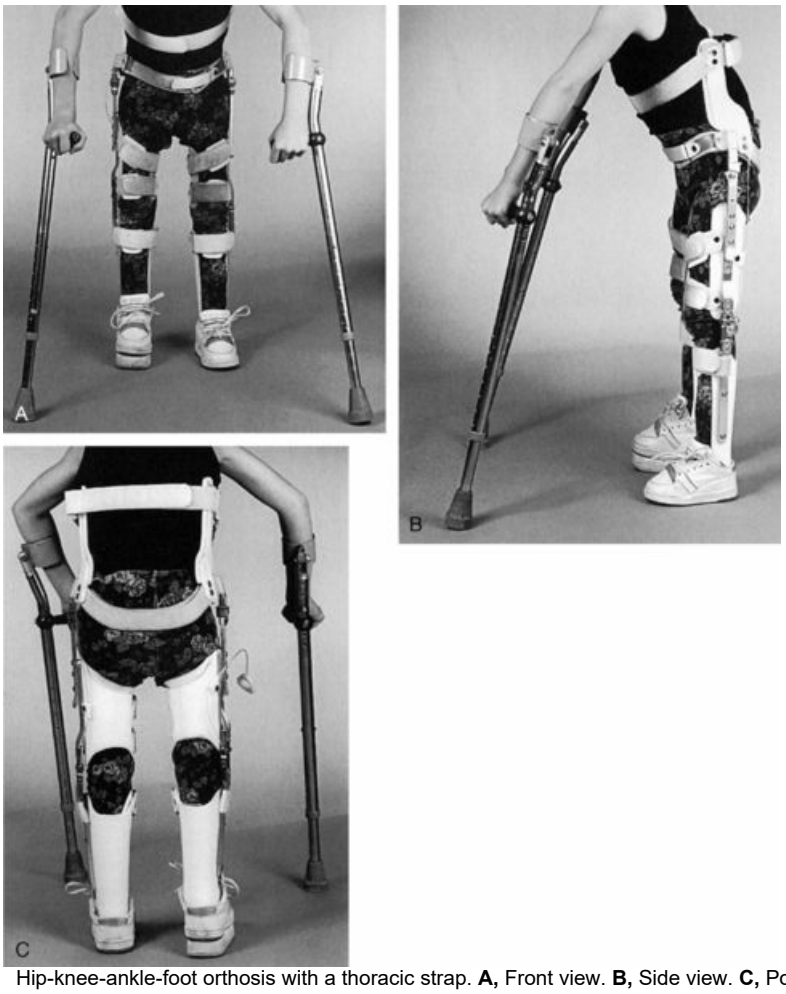


FIGURE 7-9 Hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis with a thoracic strap. **A,** Front view. **B,** Side view. **C,** Posterior view.
(From Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME: *Orthotics in functional rehabilitation of the lower limb,* Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

Family Education

The family must be taught sensory precautions, signs of shunt malfunction, range of motion, handling, and positioning. Most of these activities are not particularly difficult. However, the difficulty comes in trying not to overwhelm the parents with all the things that need to be done. Parents of children with a physical disability need to be empowered to be parents and advocates for their child. Parents are not surrogate therapists and should not be made to think they should be. Literature that may be helpful is available from the Spina Bifida Association of America. As much as possible, many of the precautions, range-of-motion exercises, and developmental activities should become part of the family's everyday routine. Range-of-motion exercises and developmental activities can be shared between the spouses, and a schedule of standing time can be outlined. Siblings are often the best partners in encouraging developmentally appropriate play.

Second Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention

The ambulatory phase begins when the infant becomes a toddler and continues into the school years. The general physical therapy goals for this second stage include the following:
1. Ambulation and independent mobility.
2. Continued improvements in flexibility, strength, and endurance.
3. Independence in pressure relief, self-care, and ADLs.
4. Promotion of ongoing cognitive and social-emotional development.
5. Identification of perceptual problems that may interfere with learning.
6. Collaboration with family, school, and health-care providers for total management.

Box 7-2 lists vital components of a physical therapy program.

Box 7-2

Vital Components of a Physical Therapy Program

Proper positioning in sitting and sleeping
Stretching
Strengthening
Pressure relief and joint protection
Mobility for short and long distances
Transfers and activities of daily living
Skin inspection
Self-care
Play
Recreation and physical fitness

(Modified from Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB: Myelodysplasia. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, pp. 703–755.)

Orthotic Management

The health-care provider's philosophy of orthosis use may determine who receives what type of orthosis and when. Some clinicians do not think that children with high levels of paralysis, such as those with thoracic or high lumbar (L1 or L2) lesions, should be prescribed orthoses because studies show that by adolescence these individuals are mobile in a wheelchair and have discarded walking as a primary means of mobility. Others think that all children, regardless of the level of lesion, have the right to experience upright ambulation even though they may discard this type of mobility later.

Orthotic Selection

The physical therapist, in conjunction with the orthopedist and the orthotist, is involved with the family in making orthotic decisions for the child with MMC. Many factors have to be considered when choosing an orthosis for a child who is beginning to stand and ambulate, including level of lesion, age, central nervous system status, body proportions, contractures, upper limb function, and cognition. Financial considerations also play a role in determining the initial type of orthosis. Any time prior approval is needed, the process must begin in sufficient time so as not to interfere with the child's developmental progress. Even though it is not your responsibility to make orthotic decisions as a physical therapist assistant, you do need to be aware of what goes into this decision making.

Level of Lesion

The level of motor function demonstrated by the toddler does not always correspond to the level of the lesion because of individual differences in nerve root innervation. A thorough examination needs to be completed by the physical therapist prior to making orthotic recommendations. A chart of possible orthoses to be considered according to the child's motor level is found in Table 7-4. Age recommendations for each device vary considerably among different sources and are often linked to the philosophy of orthotic management espoused by a particular facility or clinic. Contractures can prevent a child from being fitted with orthoses. The child cannot have any significant amount of hip or knee flexion contractures and must have a plantigrade foot—that is, the ankle must be able to achieve a neutral position or 90 degrees—to be able to wear an orthotic device for standing and ambulation. Standers may be used to counteract hip flexor tightness seen in children with MMC. Addition of a 15-degree wedge to increase passive stretch of the gastrocnemius muscles can be used in conjunction with a stander (Paleg et al., 2014).

Table 7-4

Predicted Ambulation of Children with Spina Bifida

Motor Level	Orthosis/Assistive Device	Long-term Prognosis/Community Mobility
Thoracic	May use THKAFO or HKAFO for supported standing when young	W/C
L1–L2	May use KAFO, RGO with walker or crutches for short distances in house when young	W/C
L3	May use KAFO with walker or crutches for short distances in house and community	W/C
L4	Uses AFO and crutches in community	Community, W/C for long distances
L5	May or may not use AFO, FO in community, crutches for long distances	Community, W/C for sports
Sacral	May or may not use FO in community	Community

Sources: Data from Ratliffe, 1998; Drnach, 2008; Krosschell and Pesavento, 2013.

AFO, Ankle-foot orthosis; *FO,* foot orthosis; *HKAFO,* hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *KAFO,* knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *RGO,* reciprocating gait orthosis; *THKAFO,* trunk-hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *W/C,* wheelchair.

Age

The type of orthosis used by a child with MMC may vary according to age. A child younger than 1 year of age can be fitted with a night splint to maintain the lower extremities in proper alignment. By 1 year, all children should be fitted with a standing frame or parapodium to encourage early weight bearing. Most children exhibit a desire to pull to stand at around 9 months of age, and the therapist and the assistant should anticipate this desire and should be ready with an orthosis to take advantage of the child's readiness to stand. When a child with MMC exhibits a developmental delay, the child should be placed in a standing device when her developmental age reaches 9 months. If, however, the child does not attain a developmental age of 9 months by 20 to 24 months of chronologic age, standing should be begun for physiologic benefits. A parapodium is the orthosis of choice in this situation (Figure 7-10).

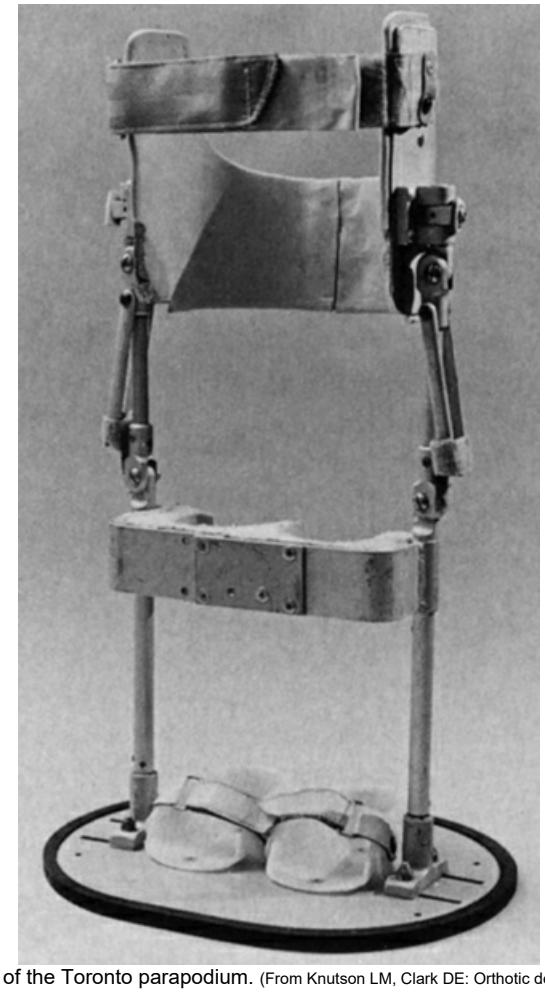


FIGURE 7-10 Front view of the Toronto parapodium. (From Knutson LM, Clark DE: Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther* 71:947–960, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.)

The level of MMC is correlated with the child's age to determine the appropriate type of orthotic device. A child with a thoracic or high lumbar (L1, 2) motor level requires an HKAFO with thoracic support (see Figure 7-9). Often, the child begins gait training in a parapodium and progresses to a reciprocating gait orthosis (RGO) (Figure 7-11). Household ambulation may be possible but at a very high energy cost. Children with a high motor level should be engaged in activities to prepare them for wheelchair propulsion, such as transfers and increasing upper body strength. A child with a midlumbar (L3 or L4) motor level may begin with a parapodium and may make the transition to

standard knee-ankle-foot orthoses (KAFOs) or ankle-foot-orthoses (AFOs) (Figures 7-12 and 7-13, *A*), depending on quadriceps strength. A child with a low motor level, such as L4 to L5 or S2, may begin standing without any device. When learning to ambulate, children with low lumbar motor levels benefit from AFOs or supramalleolar molded orthoses (SMOs) to support the foot and ankle (Figure 7-13, *A* and *B*). A child with an L5 motor level has hip extension and ankle eversion and may need only lightweight AFOs to ambulate. Although the child with an S2 motor level may begin to walk without any orthosis, she may later be fitted with a foot orthosis (Figure 7-13, *C*).

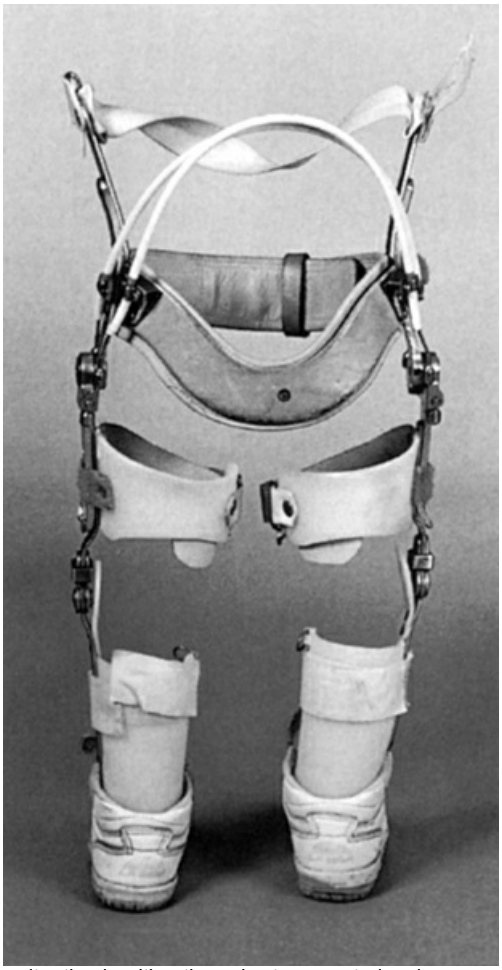


FIGURE 7-11 Reciprocating gait orthosis with a thoracic strap, posterior view. (From Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME: *Orthotics in functional rehabilitation of the lower limb*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

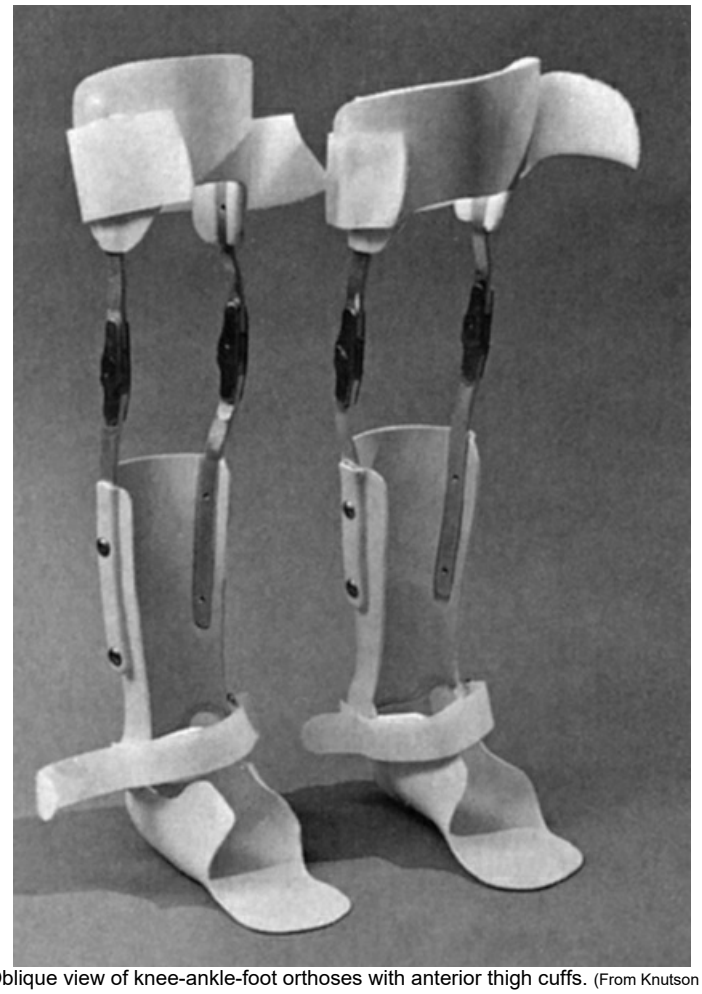


FIGURE 7-12 Oblique view of knee-ankle-foot orthoses with anterior thigh cuffs. (From Knutson LM, Clark DE: Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther* 71:947–960, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.)

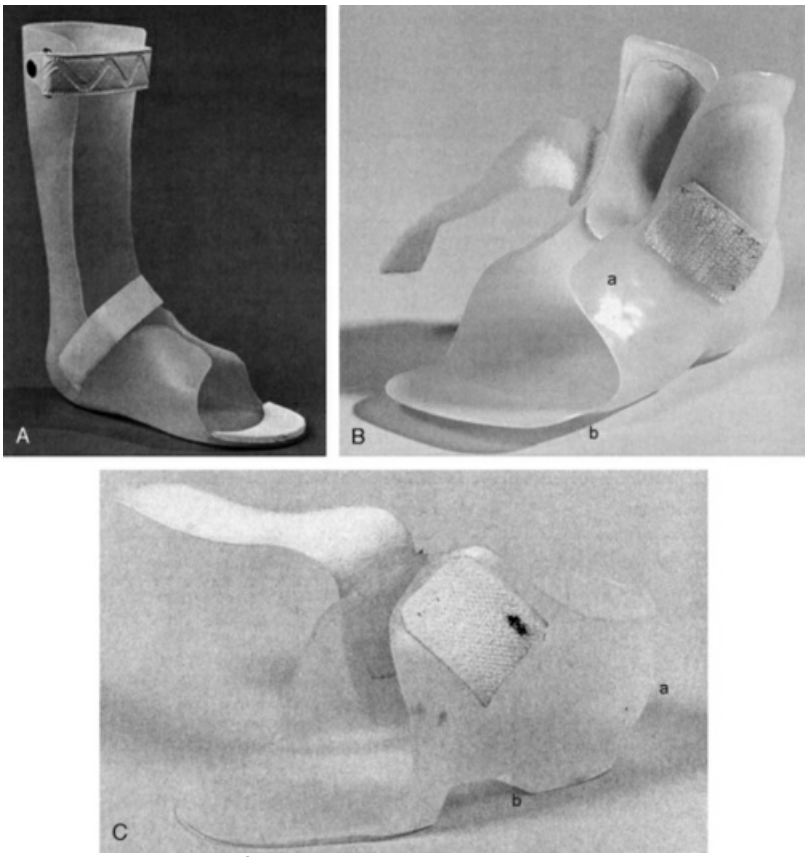


FIGURE 7-13 **A,** Fixed molded ankle-foot orthosis with an ankle strap to restrain the heel. Extrinsic toe elevation to unload the metatarsal heads is optional. **B,** Supramalleolar orthosis extending proximally to the malleoli. Well-molded medial and lateral walls that wrap over the dorsum of the foot (*a*) help to control the midtarsal joint and to keep the heel seated. Dorsal flaps also disperse pressure and may reduce sensitivity of the foot. Intrinsic toe elevation (*b*) can prevent stimulating the plantar grasp reflex. **C,** Foot orthosis designed to oppose pronation by molding the heel cup to grasp the calcaneus firmly (*a*) and wedging, or posting, the heel medially (*b*). (From Knutson LM, Clark DE: Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther* 71:947–960, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.)

Types of Orthoses

Parapodiums, RGOs, and swivel walkers are all specially designed HKAFOs. They encompass and control the child's hips, knees, ankles, and feet. A traditional HKAFO consists of a pelvic band, external hip joints, and bilateral long-leg braces (KAFOs). Additional trunk components may be attached to an HKAFO if the child has minimal trunk control or needs to control a spinal deformity. The more extensive the orthosis, the less likely the child will be to continue to ambulate as she grows older. The amount of energy expended to ambulate with a cumbersome orthosis is high. Although the child is young, she may be highly motivated to move around in the upright position. As time progresses, it may become more important to keep up with a peer group, and she may prefer an alternative, faster, and less cumbersome means of mobility.

Parapodium

The parapodium (see Figure 7-10) is a commonly used first orthotic device for standing and ambulating. Its wide base provides support for standing and allows the child to acclimate to upright while leaving the arms free for play. The child's knees and hips can be unlocked for sitting at a table or on a bench, a feature that allows the child to participate in typical preschool activities such as snack and circle time. The Toronto parapodium has one lock for the hip and knee, whereas the Rochester parapodium has separate locks for each joint.

Reciprocating Gait Orthosis

An RGO is the orthosis of choice for progressing a child who begins ambulating with a parapodium. The RGO is more energy efficient than a traditional HKAFO, because it employs a

cable system to cause hip extension reciprocally on the stance side when hip flexion is initiated on the swing side. At least weak hip flexors are needed to operate the cable system in the standard RGO, according to Hinderer et al. (2012). If an isocentric RGO is used, a lateral and backward weight shift causes the unweighted leg to swing forward (Tappit-Emas, 2008). RGOs are used with individuals with L1 to L3 levels and in some facilities for individuals with thoracic lesions. This type of gait pattern requires no active movement of the lower extremities. The RGO requires use of an assistive device, reverse walker, rolling walker, Lofstrand crutches, or canes. The energy cost must be considered individually and recognition that community ambulation for children with thoracic to L3 levels is accomplished using a wheelchair.

Swivel Walker

This device is similar to a parapodium, except that the base and footplate assembly allow a swivel motion. An Orthotic Research and Locomotor Assessment Unit (ORLAU) swivel walker is pictured in Figure 7-14. It is prescribed for children with a high level of MMC who require trunk support. By shifting weight from side to side, the child can ambulate without crutches. If arm swing is added, the child can increase the speed of forward progression, and with crutches, the child may be able to learn a swing-to or swing-through gait pattern. Sitting is not possible because this type of orthosis has no locks at the hips and knees. Some adults with MMC continue to use this device into adulthood.

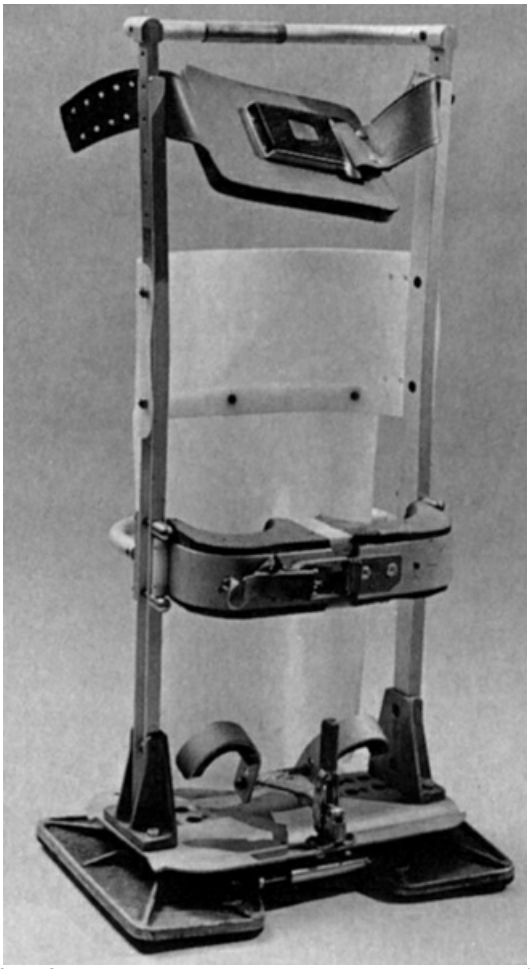


FIGURE 7-14 Front view of the Orthotic Research and Locomotor Assessment Unit (ORLAU) swivel walker. (From Knutson LM, Clark DE: Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther* 71:947–960, 1991. With permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.)

Donning and Doffing of Orthoses

Ambulating with orthoses and assistive devices requires assistance to don the braces. Teaching donning and doffing of orthoses can be accomplished when the child is supine or sitting. The child may be able to roll into the orthosis by going from prone to supine. Sitting is preferable for independent donning of the orthosis if the child can boost into the brace. Next, the child places each foot into the shoe with the knees of the orthosis unlocked, laces or closes the foot piece, locks the knees, and fastens the thigh cuffs or waist belt, if the device has one. Cotton knee-high socks or tights should be worn under the orthosis to absorb perspiration and to decrease any skin irritation. It takes a great deal of practice on the part of the child to become independent in donning the orthosis.

Wearing Time of Orthoses

Caregivers should monitor the wearing time of orthoses, including the gradual increase in time, with periodic checks for any areas of potential skin breakdown. The child can begin wearing the orthosis for 1 or 2 hours for the first few days and can increase wearing time from there. A chart is helpful so that everyone (teacher, aide, family) knows the length of time the child is wearing the orthosis and who is responsible for checking skin integrity. Check for red marks after the child wears the orthosis and note how long it takes for these marks to disappear. If they do not resolve after 20 to 30 minutes, contact the orthotist about making an adjustment. The orthosis should not be worn again until it is checked by the orthotist.

Upper Limb Function

Two thirds of children with MMC exhibit impaired upper limb function that can be linked to cerebellar dysmorphology (Dennis et al., 2009). The difficulties in coordination appear to be related to the timing and smooth control of the movements of the upper extremities. These children do not perform well on tests that are timed and exhibit delayed or mixed hand dominance (Dennis et al., 2009). Children with MMC have hand weakness (Effgen and Brown, 1992), poor hand function (Grimm, 1976), and impaired kinesthetic awareness (Hwang et al., 2002). Difficulties with fine-motor tasks and those related to eye–hand coordination are documented in the literature. Some authors relate the perceptual difficulties to the upper limb dyscoordination rather than to a true perceptual deficit (Hinderer et al., 2012). Motor planning and timing deficits are documented (Peny-Dahlstrand et al., 2009; Jewell et al., 2010). The low muscle tone often exhibited in the neck and trunk of these children could also add to their coordination problems. The child with MMC must have sufficient upper extremity control to be able to use an assistive device, such as a walker, and the ability to learn the sequence of using a walker for independent gait. Practicing fine-motor activities has been found to help with the problem and carries over to functional tasks (Fay et al., 1986). Occupational therapists are also involved in the treatment of these children.

Cognition

The child must also be able to understand the task to be performed to master upright ambulation with an orthosis and assistive device. Cognitive function in a child with MMC can vary with the degree of nervous system involvement and hydrocephalus. Results from intelligence testing place them in the low normal range but below the population mean (Tappit-Emas, 2008), which is an IQ of greater than 70 (Barf et al., 2004). The remaining 25% are in the mild intellectual disability category, with an IQ of between 55 and 70. Children with MMC are at risk for a myriad of developmental disabilities including what is often called nonverbal learning disability. They can demonstrate better reading than math and often demonstrate impairments in executive function, which includes problem solving, staying on task, and sequencing actions. Some of the poor performance by children with MMC may be related to their attention difficulties, slow speed of motor response, and memory deficits secondary to cerebellar dysgenesis.

Vision and Visual Perception

Twenty percent of children with MMC have strabismus, which may require surgical correction (Verhoef et al., 2004). Infants with MMC delay in orienting to faces (Landry et al., 2003) and, when they are older, have difficulty orienting to external stimuli and once engaged cannot easily break their focus (Dennis et al., 2005). In visual perceptual tasks, the child with MMC finds it more difficult if the task is action-based rather than object-based. They may have a more developed

"what" neural pathway than a "where" neural pathway. Spatial perception usually depends on moving through an environment, something that may be delayed in the child with MMC. Jansen-Osmann et al. (2008) found that children with MMC had difficulty constructing a situation model of space, which may relate to deficits in figure-ground perception.

Cocktail Party Speech

You may encounter a child who seems verbally much more intelligent than she really is when formally tested. "Cocktail party speech" can be indicative of "cocktail party personality," a behavioral manifestation associated with cognitive dysfunction. The therapist assistant must be cautious not to mistake verbose speech for more advanced cognitive ability in a child with MMC. These children are often more severely impaired than one would first think based on their verbal conversation. When they are closely questioned about a topic such as performing daily tasks within their environment, they are unable to furnish details, solve problems, or generalize the task to new situations.

Principles of Gait Training

Regardless of the timing and type of orthosis that is used, general principles of treatment can be discussed for this second or middle stage of care. Gait training begins with learning to perform and control weight shifts in standing. If the toddler has had only limited experience in upright standing, a standing program may be initiated simultaneously with practicing weight shifting. If the toddler is already acclimated to standing and has a standing frame, one can challenge the child's balance while the child is in the frame. The therapist assistant moves the child in the frame and causes the child to respond with head and trunk reactions (Intervention 7-5). This maneuver can be a good beginning for any standing session. Parents should be taught how to challenge the child's balance similarly at home. The child should not be left unattended in the frame because she may topple over from too much self-initiated body movement. By being placed at a surface of appropriate height, the child can engage in fine-motor activities such as building block towers, sorting objects, lacing cards, or practicing puzzles.

Intervention 7-5

Weight Shifting in Standing

Weight shifting the child while in a standing frame can promote head and trunk righting reactions. These movements prepare the child for later weight shifting during ambulation.

(From Burns YR, MacDonald J: *Physiotherapy and the growing child*, London, 1996, WB Saunders.)

Children with moderate to severe central nervous system deficits and delayed head and upper extremity development may continue to use the standing frames until age 3 or 4 or until they no longer fit into them (Tappit-Emas, 2008). In this case, an ORLAU swivel walker is used as the ambulation orthosis, with progression to an RGO with thoracic support and a rollator walker.

The physical therapist assistant can play an important role during this second stage of physical therapy management by teaching the child with MMC to ambulate with the new orthosis, usually a parapodium. The child is first taught to shift weight laterally onto one side of the base of the parapodium and to allow the unweighted portion of the base to pivot forward. This maneuver is called a *swivel gait pattern*. Children can be taught this maneuver in appropriately high parallel bars or with a walker. However, use of the parallel bars may encourage the child to pull rather than push and may make it more difficult to progress to using a walker. The therapist assistant may also be seated on a rolling stool in front of the child and may hold the child's hands to encourage the weight-shifting sequence.

Once the child has mastered ambulation with the new orthosis, consideration can be given to changing the type of assistive device. The child's gait pattern in a parapodium is progressed from a swivel pattern to a swing-to pattern, which requires a walker. Tappit-Emas (2008) recommends using a rollator walker as the initial assistive device for gait training a child with MMC. This type of walker provides a wide base of stability and two wheels; therefore, the child can advance the walker without picking it up. "The child with an L4 or L5 motor level is often able to begin ambulation after one or two sessions of gait training with a rollator walker" (Tappit-Emas, 2008). A child should be independent with one type of orthosis and assistive device before moving on to a different orthosis or different device. After success with a swing-to gait pattern using a walker, the

child can be progressed to using the same pattern with Lofstrand crutches.

Once the child has mastered the gait progression with a parapodium and a walker, plans can be made for progression to a more energy-efficient orthosis or a less restrictive assistive device, but not at the same time. A swing-through gait pattern is the most efficient, but it requires using forearm or Lofstrand crutches. The earliest a child may be able to understand and succeed in using Lofstrand crutches is 3 years of age. Tappit-Emas (2008) recommends waiting until the child is 4 or 5 years of age because the use of Lofstrand crutches is complicated. She thinks that the additional time allows the child to be confident in and have perfected additional skills in the upright position. Lofstrand crutches provide much greater maneuverability than a walker, so whenever possible, the child should be progressed from a walker to forearm crutches.

Orthotic choices following the use of a parapodium include an HKAFO/RGO or a KAFO. The main advantage of the RGO is energy efficiency. A child with only hip flexors can walk faster and has less fatigue using an RGO than using either conventional KAFOs or a parapodium. A walker may still be the assistive device of choice to provide the child with sufficient support during forward locomotion. Transition to an RGO is not recommended before the child is 30 to 36 months of developmental age, according to Knutson and Clark (1991). If the child has some innervated knee musculature, such as a child with an L3 motor level, ambulation with KAFOs protects the knees. A long-term goal may be walking with the knees unlocked, and if quadriceps strength increases sufficiently, the KAFOs could be cut down to AFOs. If the child is able to move each lower extremity separately, a four-point or two-point gait pattern can be taught. Gait instruction progresses from level ground to uneven ground to elevated surfaces, such as curbs, ramps, and stairs.

Level of Ambulation

Three levels of ambulation have been identified (Hoffer et al., 1973). These are therapeutic, household, and community. The names of the levels are descriptive of the type and location in which the ambulation takes place and are defined in Chapter 12.

The functional ambulatory level for a child with MMC is linked to the motor level. Table 7-4 relates the level of lesion to the child's long-term ambulation potential. Early on a child with thoracic-level involvement can be a therapeutic ambulator. However, children with high thoracic involvement (above T10) rarely ambulate by the time they are teenagers; they prefer to be independently mobile in a wheelchair to be able to keep up with their peers. Children with upper lumbar innervation (L1 or L2) can usually ambulate within the household or classroom but long-term prognosis is community ambulation in a wheelchair. At L3 level, the strength of the quadriceps determines the level of functional ambulation in this group. Early on ambulation is household and short distances in the community but again, wheelchair independence is the long-term prognosis. Children with L4 or below levels of innervation are community ambulators and should be able to maintain this level of independence throughout adulthood. Those at L4, L5, and sacral levels may also use a wheelchair for long distances or for sports participation.

Ambulation is a major goal during early childhood, and most children with MMC are successful. Nevertheless, many children need a wheelchair to explore and have total access to their environments. Studies have shown that early introduction of wheeled mobility does not interfere with the acquisition of upright ambulation. In fact, wheelchair use may boost the child's self-confidence. It enables the child to exert control over her environment by independently moving to acquire an object or to seek out attention rather than passively waiting for an object to be brought by another person. Movement through the spatial environment is crucial for the development of perceptual cognitive development. Mobility is crucial to the child with MMC who may have difficulty with visual spatial cues, and several options should be made available, depending on the child's developmental status. Box 7-3 shows a list of mobility options.

Box 7-3

Mobility Options for Children with Myelomeningocele

Caster cart
Prone scooter
Walker
Mobile vertical stander

Manual wheelchair
Electric wheelchair
Adapted tricycle
Cyclone

Wheelchair training for the toddler or preschooler should consist of preparatory and actual training activities, as listed in Boxes 7-4 and 7-5. The child should have sufficient sitting balance to use her arms to propel the chair or to operate an electric switch. Arm strength is necessary to propel a manual chair and to execute lateral transfers with or without a sliding board. Training begins on level surfaces within the home and classroom. Safety is always a number one priority; therefore, the child should wear a seat belt while in the wheelchair.

Box 7-4

Preparatory Activities for Wheelchair Mobility

Sitting balance
Arm strength
Ability to transfer
Wheelchair propulsion or operating an electric switch or joystick

Box 7-5

Wheelchair Training for Toddlers and Preschoolers

Ability to transfer
Mobility on level surfaces
Exploration of home and classroom
Safety

(From Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB: Myelodysplasia. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders, pp. 702–755.)

Strength, Flexibility, and Endurance

All functional activities in which a child participates require strong upper extremities. Traditional strengthening activities can be modified for the shorter stature of the child, and the amount of weight used can be adjusted to decrease the strain on growing bones. Weights, pulleys, latex-free tubing, and push-up blocks can be incorporated into games of "tug of war" and mat races. Trunk control and strength can be improved by use of righting and equilibrium reactions in developmentally appropriate positions. Refer to the descriptions earlier in this chapter.

Monitoring joint range of motion for possible contractures is exceedingly important at all stages of care. Be careful with repetitive movements because this population is prone to injury from excessive joint stress and overuse. Begin early on to think of joint conservation when the child is performing routine motions for transfers and ADLs. Learning to move the lower extremities by attaching strips of latex-free bands to them can be an early functional activity that fosters learning of self-performed range of motion.

Independence in Pressure Relief

Pressure relief and mobility must also be monitored whether the child is wearing an orthosis or not. When the child has the orthosis on, can she still do a push-up for pressure relief? Does the seating device or wheelchair currently used allow enough room for the child to sit without undue pressure from the additional width of the orthosis, or does it take up too much room in the wheelchair? How many different ways does the child know to relieve pressure? The more ways that are available to the child, the more likely the task is to be accomplished. The obvious way is to do push-ups, but if the child is in a regular chair at school, the chair may not have arms. If the child sits in a wheelchair at the desk, the chair must be locked before the child attempts a push-up. Forward leans can also be performed from a seated position. Alternative positioning in kneeling, standing, or lying prone can be used during rest and play periods. Be creative!

Independence in Self-Care and Activities of Daily Living

Skin care must be a high priority for the child with MMC, especially as the amount of sitting increases during the school day. Skin inspection should be done twice a day with a handheld mirror. Clothing should be nonrestrictive and sufficiently thick to protect the skin from sharp objects and wheelchair parts and orthoses. An appropriate seat cushion must be used to distribute pressure while the child sits in the wheelchair. Pressure-reducing seat cushions do not, however, decrease the need for performing pressure-relief activities.

Children with MMC do not accomplish self-care activities at the same age as typically developing children (Okamoto et al., 1984; Sousa et al., 1983; Tsai et al., 2002) and are not independent in their daily performance (Peny-Dahlstrand et al., 2009). Children with MMC were found to be "unable to perform self-chosen and well-known everyday activities in an effortless, efficient, safe, and independent manner" (Peny-Dahlstrand et al., 2009, p. 1677). Daily self-care includes dressing and undressing, feeding, bathing, and bowel and bladder care. Interpretation of the data further suggests that the delays may be the result of lower performance expectations. Parents often do not perceive their children as competent compared to typically developing children and may therefore expect less from them. Parents must be encouraged to expect independence from the child with MMC. Peny-Dahlstrand et al. (2009) suggested that children with MMC need help to learn how to do tasks and encouragement to persevere in order to complete the task.

By the time the child goes to preschool, she will be aware that her toileting abilities are different from those of her peers of the same age (Williamson, 1987). Bowel and bladder care is usually overseen by the school nurse where available, but everyone working with a child with MMC needs to be aware of the importance of these skills. Consistency of routine, privacy, and safety must always be part of any bowel and bladder program for a young child. Helping the child to maintain a positive self-image while teaching responsible toileting behavior can be especially tricky. The child should be given responsibility for as much of her own care as possible. Even if the child is still in diapers, she should also wash her hands at the sink after a diaper change. Williamson (1987) suggests these ways to assist the child to begin to participate:

1. Indicate the need for a diaper change.
2. Assist in pulling the pants down and in removing any orthotic devices, if necessary.
3. Unfasten the soiled diaper.
4. Refasten the clean diaper.
5. Assist in donning the orthosis if necessary and in pulling up the pants.
6. Wash hands.

Williamson (1987) provides many excellent suggestions for fostering self-care skills in the preschooler with MMC. The reader is refer to the text by this author for more information. ADL skills include the ability to transfer. We tend to think of transferring from mat to wheelchair and back as the ultimate transfer goal, but for the child to be as independent as possible, he should also be able to perform all transfers related to ADLs, such as to and from a bed, a dressing bench or a regular chair, a chair and a toilet, a chair and the floor, and the tub or shower.

Promotion of Cognitive and Social-Emotional Growth

Preschoolers are inquisitive individuals who need mobility to explore their environment. They should be encouraged to explore the space around them by physically moving through it, not just visually observing what goes on around them. Scooter boards can be used to help the child move her body weight with the arms while receiving vestibular input. The use of adapted tricycles that are propelled by arm cranking allows movement through space and they could be used on the playground rather than a wheelchair. Difficulty with mobility may interfere with self-initiated exploration and may foster dependence instead of independence. Other barriers to peer interaction or factors that may limit peer interaction are listed in Box 7-6.

Box 7-6

Limitations to Peer Interaction

Mobility
Activities of daily living, especially transfers
Additional equipment
Independence in bowel and bladder care

Having a child with MMC can be stressful for the family (Holmbeck and Devine, 2010; Vermaes et al., 2008). Caregivers describe children with MMC as being less adaptable, more negative when initially responding to new or novel stimuli, more distractible, and less able to persist when completing a task compared to same-age peers without MMC (Vachha and Adams, 2005). Parents report that their children with MMC are less competent physically and cognitively than typically developing children (Landry et al., 1993). Clinicians can provide guidance to parents to interpret the child's signals and provide appropriate responses.

Many children with MMC experience healthy emotional development (Williamson, 1987) and exhibit high levels of resilience (Holmbeck and Devine, 2010). The task of infancy, according to Erikson, is to develop trust that basic needs will be met. Parents, primary caregivers, and health-care providers need to ensure that these emotional needs are met. If the infant perceives the world as hostile, she may develop coping mechanisms such as withdrawal or perseveration. If the child is encouraged to explore the environment and is guided to overcome the physical barriers encountered, she will perceive the world realistically as full of a series of challenges to be mastered, rather than as full of unsurmountable obstacles. In the case of children with MMC, the motor skills that they have the most difficulty with are those that involve motor planning and adaptation. Parents need to foster autonomy in daily life in their children with MMC.

Identification of Perceptual Problems

School-age children with MMC are motivated to learn and to perform academically to the same extent as any other children. During this time, perceptual problems may become apparent. Children with MMC have impaired visual analysis and synthesis (Vinck et al., 2006; Vinck et al., 2010). Visual perception in a child with MMC should be evaluated separately from her visuomotor abilities, to determine whether she truly has a perceptual deficit (Hinderer et al., 2012). For example, a child's difficulty with copying shapes, a motor skill, may be more closely related to her lack of motor control of the upper extremity than to an inaccurate visual perception of the shape to be copied. Perception and cognition are connected to movement. Development of visual spatial perception and spatial cognition can occur because children with MMC have impaired movement. For example, children with MMC have been found to have problems with figure-ground (find the hidden shapes) and route finding as in a maze (Dennis et al., 2002; Jansen-Osmann et al., 2008).

Collaboration for Total Management

The management of the child with MMC in preschool and subsequently in the primary grades involves everyone who comes in contact with that child. From the bus driver to the teacher to the classroom aide, everyone has to know what the child is capable of doing, in which areas she needs assistance, and what must be done for her. Medical and educational goals should overlap to support the development of the most functionally independent child possible, a child whose psychosocial development is on the same level as that of her able-bodied peers and who is ready to handle the tasks and issues of adolescence and adulthood.

Third Stage of Physical Therapy Intervention

The third stage of management involves the transition from school age to adolescence and into adulthood. General physical therapy goals during this last stage are as follows:

1. Reevaluation of ambulation potential
2. Mobility for home, school, and community distances
3. Continued improvements in flexibility, strength, and endurance
4. Independence in ADLs
5. Physical fitness and participation in recreational activities

Reevaluation of Ambulation Potential

The potential for continued ambulation needs to be reevaluated by the physical therapist during the student's school years and, in particular, as she approaches adolescence. Children with MMC go through puberty earlier than their peers who are able-bodied. Surgical procedures that depend on

skeletal maturity may be scheduled at this time. The long-term functional level of mobility of these students can be determined as their physical maturity is peaking. The assistant working with the student can provide valuable data regarding the length of time that upright ambulation is used as the primary means of mobility. Any student in whom ambulation becomes unsafe or whose ambulation skills become limited functionally should discontinue ambulation except with supervision. Physical therapy goals during this time are to maintain the adolescent's present level of function if possible, to prevent secondary complications, to promote independence, to remediate any perceptual-motor problems, to provide any needed adaptive devices, and to promote self-esteem and social-sexual adjustment (Krosschell and Pesavento, 2013).

Developmental changes that may contribute to the loss of mobility in adolescents with MMC are as follows:

1. Changes in length of long bones, such that skeletal growth outstrips muscular growth
2. Changes in body composition that alter the biomechanics of movement
3. Progression of neurologic deficit
4. Immobilization resulting from treatment of secondary problems, such as skin breakdown or orthopedic surgery
5. Progression of spinal deformity
6. Joint pain or ligamentous laxity

Physical therapy during this stage focuses on making a smooth transition to primary wheeled mobility if that transition is needed to save energy for more academic, athletic, or social activities. Individuals with thoracic, high lumbar (L1 or L2), and midlumbar (L3 or L4) lesions require a wheelchair for long-term functional mobility. They may have already been using a wheelchair during transport to and from school or for school field trips. School-age children can lose function because of spinal-cord tethering, so they should be monitored closely during rapid periods of growth for any signs of change in neurologic status. An adolescent with a midlumbar lesion can ambulate independently within a house or a classroom but needs aids to be functional within the community. Long-distance mobility is much more energy-efficient if the individual uses a wheelchair. Individuals with lower-level lesions (L5 and below) should be able to remain ambulatory for life, unless too great an increase in body weight occurs, thereby making wheelchair use a necessity. Hinderer et al. (1988) found a potential decline in mobility resulting from progressive neurologic loss in adolescents even with lower-level lesions, so any adolescent with MMC should be monitored for potential progression of neurologic deficit (Rowe and Jadhav, 2008). Weight gain can severely impair the teen's ability to ambulate. Youths with MMC engage in unhealthy behaviors that persist into their late 20s (Soe et al., 2012). Unhealthy behaviors included less healthy diets, sedentary activities, and less exercise compared to national estimates. Symptoms of depression were related to drinking alcohol.

Wheelchair Mobility

When an adolescent with MMC makes the transition to continuous use of a wheelchair, you should not dwell on the loss of upright ambulation as something devastating but focus on the positive gains provided by wheeled mobility. Most of the time, if the transition is presented as a natural and normal occurrence, it is more easily accepted by the individual. The wheelchair should be presented as just another type of "assistive" device, thereby decreasing any negative connotation for the adolescent. The mitigating factor is always the energy cost. The student with MMC may be able to ambulate within the classroom but may need a wheelchair to move efficiently between classes and keep up with her friends. "Mobility limitations are magnified once a child begins school because of the increased community mobility distances and skills required" (Hinderer et al., 2000). This requirement becomes a significant problem once a child is in school because the travel distances increase and the skills needed to maneuver within new environments become more complicated. A wheelchair may be a necessity by middle school or whenever the student begins to change classes, has to retrieve books from a locker, and needs to go to the next class in a short time. For the student with all but the lowest motor levels, wheeled mobility is a must to maintain efficient function. Johnson et al. (2007) found that 57% to 65% of young adults with MMC use lightweight wheelchairs, both manual and power-assisted.

Environmental Accessibility

All environments in which a person with MMC functions should be accessible—home, school, and

community. The Americans with Disabilities Act was an effort to make all public buildings, programs, and services accessible to the general public. Under this Act, reasonable accommodations have to be made to allow an individual with a disability to access public education and facilities. Public transportation, libraries, and grocery stores, for example, should be accessible to everyone. Assistive technology can play a significant role in improving access and independence for the youth with MMC. Timers, cell phones, and computer access can be used to support personal-care routines as well as organization skills (Johnson et al., 2007).

Driver Education

Driver education is as important to a person with MMC as it is to any 16-year-old teenager, and may be even more so. Some states have programs that evaluate the ability of an individual with a disability to drive, after which recommendations to use appropriate devices, such as hand controls and type of vehicle, will be given. A review of car transfers should be part of therapy for adolescents along with other activities that prepare them for independent living and a job. The ability to move the wheelchair in and out of the car is also vital to independent function.

Flexibility, Strength, and Endurance

Prevention of contractures must be aggressively pursued during the rapid growth of adolescence because skeletal growth can cause significant shortening of muscles. Stretching should be done at home on a regular basis and at school if the student has problem areas. Areas that should be targeted are the low back extensors, the hip flexors, the hamstrings, and the shoulder girdle. Proper positioning for sitting and sleeping should be reviewed, with the routine use of the prone position crucial to keep hip and knee flexors loose and to relieve pressure on the buttocks. More decubitus ulcers are seen in adolescents with MMC because of increased body weight, less strict adherence to pressure-relief procedures, and development of adult patterns of sweating around the buttocks.

Strengthening exercises and activities can be incorporated into physical education free time. A workout can be planned for the student that can be carried out both at home and at a local gym. Endurance activities such as wind sprints in the wheelchair, swimming, wheelchair track, basketball, and tennis are all appropriate ways to work on muscular and cardiovascular endurance while the student is socializing. If wheelchair sports are available, this is an excellent way to combine strengthening and endurance activities for fun and fitness. Check with your local parks and recreation department for information on wheelchair sports available in your area.

Hygiene

Adult patterns of sweating, incontinence of bowel and bladder, and the onset of menses can all contribute to a potential hygiene problem for an adolescent with MMC. A good bowel and bladder program is essential to avoid incontinence, odor, and skin irritation, which can contribute to low self-esteem. Adolescents are extremely body conscious, and the additional stress of dealing with bowel and bladder dysfunction, along with menstruation for girls, may be particularly burdensome. Scheduled toileting and bathing and meticulous self-care, including being able to wipe properly and to handle pads and tampons, can provide adequate maintenance of personal hygiene.

Socialization

Adolescents are particularly conscious about their body image, so they may be motivated to maintain a normal weight and to provide extra attention to their bowel and bladder programs. Sexuality is also a big concern for adolescents. Functional limitations based on levels of innervation are discussed in Chapter 12. Abstinence, safe sex, use of birth control to prevent pregnancy, and knowledge of the dangers of sexually transmitted diseases must all be topics of discussion with the teenager with MMC. This is no different from discussing with the teenager without MMC. The clinician must always provide information that is as accurate as possible to a young adult.

Social isolation can have a negative effect on emotional and social development in this population (Holmbeck et al., 2003). Socialization requires access to all social situations at school and in the community. Peer interaction during adolescence can be limited by the same things identified as potential limitations on interaction early in life, as listed in Box 7-6. Additional challenges to the adolescent with MMC can occur if issues of adolescence such as personal identity, sexuality, and

peer relations, and concern for loss of biped ambulation are not resolved. Adult development is hindered by having to work through these issues during early adulthood (Friedrich and Shaffer, 1986; Shaffer and Friedrich, 1986).

Independent Living

Basic ADLs (BADLs) are those activities required for personal care such as ambulating, feeding, bathing, dressing, grooming, maintaining continence, and toileting (Cech and Martin, 2012). Instrumental ADLs (IADLs) are those skills that require the use of equipment such as the stove, washing machine, or vacuum cleaner, and they relate to managing within the home and community. Being able to shop for food or clothes and being able to prepare a meal are examples of IADLs. Mastery of both BADL and IADL skills is needed to be able to live on one's own. Functional limitations that may affect both BADLs and IADLs may become apparent when the person with MMC has difficulty in lifting and carrying objects. Vocational counseling and planning should begin during high school or even possibly in middle school. The student should be encouraged to live on her own if possible after high school as part of a college experience or during vocational training.

"Launching" of a young adult with MMC has been reported in the literature. Launching is the last transition in the family life cycle in which "the late adolescent is launched into the outside world to begin to develop an autonomous life" (Friedrich and Shaffer, 1986). Challenges during this time include discussion regarding guardianship if ongoing care is needed, placement plans, and a redefinition of the roles of the parents and the young adult with MMC. Employment of only 25% of adults with MMC was reported by Hunt (1990), and few persons described in this report were married or had children. Buran et al. (2004) describe adolescents with MMC as having hopeful and positive attitudes toward their disability. However, they found the adolescents were not engaging in sufficient decision making and self-management to prepare themselves for adult roles. This lack of preparation might be the reason many individuals with MMC are underemployed and not living independently as young adults (Buran et al., 2004). Each period of the life span brings different challenges for the family with a child with MMC. Box 7-7 is a review of the responsibilities and challenges in the care of a child with MMC across the life span. In light of the recent research, more emphasis may need to be placed on decision making during adolescence.

Box 7-7

Responsibilities and Challenges in the Care of a Child with Myelomeningocele over the Life Span

Infancy (birth to 2 years)
Initial crisis: grieving; intensive medical services including surgery; hospitalizations that may interfere with bonding process
Subsequent crisis: procurement of therapy services; delay in locomotion and bowel or bladder training

Preschool (3–5 years)
Ongoing medical monitoring; prolonged dependency of the child requiring additional physical care
Recurrent hospitalizations for CSF shunt revisions and orthopedic procedures

School age (6–12 years)
School programming; ongoing appraisal of the child's development
Establishment of family roles: dealing with discrepancies in sibling's abilities; parental tasks
Potential for limited peer involvement
Recurrent hospitalizations for CSF shunt revisions and orthopedic procedures

Adolescence (13–20 years)
Accepting "permanence" of disability
Personal identity
Child's increased size affecting care
More need for adaptive equipment
Issues of sexuality and peer relations
Issues concerning potential loss of biped ambulatory skills
Recurrent hospitalizations for CSF shunt revision and orthopedic procedures

Launching (21 years and beyond)

Discussion of guardianship issues relating to ongoing care of the young adult
Placement plans for the young adult
Parents redefine roles regarding young adult and themselves

From Friedrich W, Shaffer J: Family adjustments and contributions. In Shurtleff DB, editor: *Myelodysplasias and exstrophies: significance, prevention, and treatment,* Orlando, FL, 1986, Grune & Stratton, pp. 399–410.

Quality of Life

Locomotion and, hence, ambulation potential impact the quality of life of an individual with MMC. Rendeli et al. (2002) found that children with MMC had significantly different cognitive outcomes based on their ambulatory status. Those that walked with or without assistive devices had higher performance IQ than those who did not ambulate. There was no difference between the two groups on total IQ. It has been suggested that self-produced locomotion facilitates development of spatial cognition. Others have found that independent ambulatory status was the most important factor in determining health-related quality of life (HRQOL) (Schoenmakers et al., 2005; Danielsson et al., 2008). HRQOL is a broad multidimensional concept that usually includes self-reported measures of physical and mental health (NBDPN, 2012). Children with MMC were found to have a lower HRQOL than other children with a chronic illness (Oddson et al., 2006). Seventy-two percent of youths and young adults with MMC had decreased participation in structured activities and required assistive technology to assist their mobility (Johnson et al., 2007). The presence of spasticity in the muscles around the hip and knee, quadriceps muscle weakness, level of lesion, and severity of neurologic symptoms affected ambulatory ability and functional ability, which in turn decreased HRQOL (Danielsson et al., 2008). Flanagan et al. (2011) found that the parentally perceived HRQOL of children with MMC differed based on the motor level of the child. Children with motor levels at L2 and above had decreased HRQOL scores compared to children with motor levels at L3 to L5. They used the Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory (Peds QL) and the Pediatric Outcomes Data Collection Instrument Version 2.0 (PODCI) as measures of HRQOL. Categories in which there were score differences included sports and physical function, transfers and basic mobility, health, and global function.

In contrast, Kelley et al. (2011) found that participation in children with MMC did not differ based on motor level, ambulation status, or bowel and bladder problems. They divided their subjects into age groups, 2 to 5 years, 6 to 12 years, and 13 to 18 years. There were differences between groups in participation scores for skill-based activities (physical and recreational activities), with younger children participating more in skill-based and physical activities and the middle age group participating more in recreational activities than the older group. Bowel and bladder problems were found to limit the participation of the children of 6 to 12 years old in social and physical activities. Kelley et al. (2011) used different measures for participation than Flannagan et al. It also appears that a higher percentage of children in the study of Kelley et al were at a L3 motor level, which according to the study of Flannagan et al have a higher HRQOL. Regardless, physical function does affect the quality of life of individuals with MMC. Clinicians need to be more focused on breaking down community barriers to participation and promoting optimal mobility and health so that children with MMC transition into independent adults.

Chapter summary

The management of the person with MMC is complex and requires multiple levels of intervention and constant monitoring. Early on, intensive periods of intervention are needed to establish the best outcome and to provide the infant and child with MMC the best developmental start possible. Physical therapy intervention focuses primarily on the attainment of motor milestones of head and trunk control within the boundaries of the neurologic insult. While the achievement of independent ambulation may be expected of most people with MMC during their childhood years, this expectation needs to be tempered based on the child's motor level and long-term potential for functional ambulation. Fostering cognitive and social–emotional maturity should occur simultaneously. Children with MMC can develop social abilities despite a reduced level of self-care or impaired motor function. The physical therapist monitors the student's motor progress throughout the school years and intervenes during transitions to a new setting. Each new setting may demand increased or different functional skills. Monitoring the student in school also includes looking for any evidence of deterioration of neurologic or musculoskeletal status that may prevent

optimum function in school or access to the community. Examples of appropriate intervention times are occasions when the student needs assistance in making the transition to another level of function, such as using a wheelchair for primary mobility and evaluating a work site for wheelchair access. The physical therapist assistant may provide therapy to the individual with MMC that is aimed at fostering functional motor abilities or teaching functional skills related to use of orthoses or assistive devices, transfers, and ADLs. The physical therapist assistant can provide valuable data to the therapist during annual examinations as well as ongoing information regarding function to manage the needs of the person with MMC from birth through adulthood most efficiently.

Review questions

1. What type of paralysis can be expected in a child with MMC?
2. What complications are seen in a child with MMC that may be related to skeletal growth?
3. What are the signs of shunt malfunction in a child with MMC?
4. What position is important to use in preventing the development of hip and knee flexion contractures in a child with MMC?
5. What precautions should be taken by parents to protect skin integrity in a child with MMC?
6. What determines the type of orthosis used by a child with MMC?
7. What is the relationship of motor level to level of ambulation in a child with MMC?
8. When is the functional level of mobility determined for an individual with MMC?
9. What developmental changes may contribute to a loss of mobility in the adolescent with MMC?
10. When is the most important time to intervene therapeutically with an individual with MMC?

Case Studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation: PL

History

Chart Review

PL is a talkative, good-natured, 3-year-old boy. He is in the care of his grandmother during the day because both of his parents work. He is the younger of two children. PL presents with a low lumbar (L2) MMC with flaccid paralysis. Medical history includes premature birth at 32 weeks of gestation, bilateral hip dislocation, bilateral clubfeet (surgically repaired at 1 year of age), scoliosis, multiple hemivertebrae, and shunted (ventriculoperitoneal [VP]) hydrocephalus (at birth).

Subjective

Mother reports that PL's previous physical therapy consisted of passive and active range of motion for the lower extremities and learning to walk with a walker and braces. She expresses concern about his continued mobility now that he is going to preschool.

Objective

Systems Review

Communication/Cognition: PL communicates in 5- to 6-word sentences. Paul has an IQ of 90.
Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: Normal values for age.
Integumentary: Healed 7-cm scar on the lower back, no areas of redness below L2.
Musculoskeletal: AROM and strength within functional limits in the upper extremities. AROM limitations present in the lower extremities, secondary to neuromuscular weakness.
Neuromuscular: Upper extremities grossly coordinated, lower extremity paralysis.

Tests and Measures

Anthropometric: Height 36 inches, weight 35 lbs, BMI 19 (20 to 24 is normal).
Circulation: Skin warm to touch below L2, pedal pulses present bilaterally, strong radial pulse.

Integumentary: No ulcers or edema present. Shunt palpable behind right ear.

Motor Function: PL's motor upper extremity skills are coordinated. He can build an 8-cube tower. He sits independently and moves in and out of sitting and standing independently. He is unable to transfer into and out of the tub independently.

Neurodevelopmental Status: Peabody Developmental Motor Scales (PDMS) Developmental Motor Quotient (DMQ) = 69. Age equivalent = 12 months. Fine motor development is average for his age (PDMS DMQ = 90).

Reflex integrity: Patellar 1 +, Achilles 0 bilaterally. No abnormal tone is noted in the upper extremities; tone is decreased in the trunk, flaccid in the lower extremities.

Range of Motion: Active motion is within functional limits (WFL) for the upper extremities and for hip flexion and adduction. Active knee extension is complete in side lying. Passive motion is WFL for remaining joints of the lower extremities.

Muscle Performance: As tested using functional muscle testing. If the child could move the limb against gravity and take any resistance the muscle was graded 3 +. If the limb could only move through full range in the gravity-eliminated position, the muscle was graded a 2.

	Right	Left
Abdominals	Partial symmetrical curl up	
Hips		
Iliopsoas	3 +	3 +
Gluteus maximus	0	0
Adductors	3	3
Abductors	0	0
Knees		
Quadriceps	2	2
Hamstrings	0	0
Ankles and feet	0	0

Sensory Integrity: Pinprick intact to L2, absent below.

Posture: PL exhibits a mild right thoracic–left lumbar scoliosis.

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance: PL sits independently and stands with a forward facing walker and bilateral HKAFOs. PL can demonstrate a reciprocal gait pattern for approximately 10 feet when he ambulates with a walker and HKAFOs but prefers a swing-to pattern. Using a swing-to pattern, he can ambulate 25 feet before wanting to rest. He creeps reciprocally but prefers to drag-crawl. PL can creep up stairs with assistance and comes down head first on his stomach. Head and trunk righting is present in sitting, with upper extremity protective extension present in all directions to either side. PL exhibits minimal trunk rotation when balance is disturbed laterally in sitting.

Self-care: PL assists with dressing and undressing and is independent in his sitting balance while performing bathing and dressing activities. He feeds himself but is dependent in bowel and bladder care (wears a diaper).

Play/Preschool: PL exhibits cooperative play and functional play but is delayed in pretend play. He presently attends morning preschool 3 days a week and will be attending every day within 1 month.

Assessment/evaluation

PL is a 3-year-old boy with a repaired L2 MMC with a VP shunt, and he is currently ambulating with a forward-facing walker and HKAFOs. He is making the transition to a preschool program. He is seen one time a week for 30 minutes of physical therapy.

Problem List

1. Unable to ambulate with Lofstrand crutches
2. Decreased strength and endurance
3. Dependent in self-care and transfers
4. Lacking knowledge of pressure relief

Diagnosis: PL exhibits impaired motor function and sensory integrity associated with nonprogressive disorders of the central nervous system—congenital in origin, which is guide pattern 5C.

Prognosis: PL will improve his level of functional independence and functional skills in the preschool setting. He has excellent potential to achieve the following goals within the school year.

Short-Term Objectives (actions to be accomplished by midyear review)

1. PL will propel a prone scooter up and down the hall of the preschool for 15 consecutive minutes.
2. PL will perform 20 consecutive chin-ups during free play on the playground daily.
3. PL will kick a soccer ball 5 to 10 feet, 4 or 5 attempts during free play daily.
4. PL will wash and dry hands after toileting.
5. PL will be independent in pressure relief.

Long-Term Functional Goals (end of the first year in preschool)

1. PL will ambulate to and from the gym and the lunch room using a reciprocal gait pattern and Lofstrand crutches daily.
2. PL will exhibit pretend play by verbally engaging in story time 3 times a week.
3. PL will assist in managing clothing during toileting and clean intermittent catheterization.

Plan

Coordination, Communication, and Documentation

The therapist and physical therapist assistant will communicate with PL's mother and teacher on a regular basis. Outcomes of interventions will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/Client Instruction

PL and his family will be instructed in a home exercise program including upper extremity and trunk strengthening exercises, practicing trunk righting and equilibrium reactions in sitting and standing, dressing, transfers, improving standing time, and ambulation using the preferred pattern.

Procedural Interventions

1. Mat activities that incorporate prone push-ups, wheelbarrow walking, movement transitions from prone to long sitting, and back to prone, sitting push-ups with push-up blocks, and pressure relief techniques.
2. Using a movable surface such as a ball, promote lateral equilibrium reactions to encourage active trunk rotation.
3. Resistive exercises for upper and lower extremities using latex-free Theraband or cuff weights.
4. Resisted creeping to improve lower extremity reciprocation and trunk control.
5. Increased distances walked using a reciprocal gait pattern by 5 feet every 2 weeks, first with a walker, progressing to Lofstrand crutches.
6. Increased standing time and ability to shift weight while using Lofstrand crutches.
7. Transfer training.

Questions to think about

- What additional interventions could be used to accomplish these goals?
  - Are these goals educationally relevant?
- Which activities should be part of the home exercise program?
- How can fitness be incorporated into PL's physical therapy program?
- Identify interventions that may be needed as PL makes the transition to school.

References

Adzick NS, Thom EA, Spong CY, et al. A randomized trial of prenatal versus postnatal repair of myeloeningocele. *N Engl J Med.* 2011;364:993–1004.

Ausili E, Focarelli B, Tabacco F, et al. Bone mineral density and body composition in a myelomeningocele children population: effects of walking ability and sport activity. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci.* 2008;12(6):349–354.

Barf HA, Verhoef M, Post MW, et al. Educational career and predictors of type of education in young adults with spina bifida. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2004;27(1):45–52.

Blumchen K, Bayer P, Buck D, et al. Effects of latex avoidance on latex sensitization, atopy, and allergic diseases in patients with spina bifida. *Allergy.* 2010;65(12):1585–1593.

Boulet SL, Yang Q, Mai C, et alNational Birth Defects Prevention Network. Trends in the postfortification prevalence of spina bifida and anencephaly in the United States. *Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol.* 2008;82(7):527–532.

Bowman RM, McLone DG, Grant JA, et al. Spina bifida outcome: a 25-year prospective. *Pediatr Neurosurg.* 2001;34(3):114–120.

Bowman RM, Boshnjaku V, McLone DG. The changing incidence of myelomeningocele and its impact on pediatric neurosurgery: a review from the Children's Memorial Hospital. *Childs Nerv Syst.* 2009a;25:801–806.

Bowman RM, Mohan A, Ito J, et al. Tethered cord release: a long-term study in 114 patients. *J Neurosurg Pediatr.* 2009b;3:181–187.

Bruner JP, Tulipan N, Paschall RL, et al. Fetal surgery for myelomeningocele and the incidence of shunt dependent hydrocephalus. *JAMA.* 1999;282(19):1819–1825.

Buran CF, Sawin KJ, Brei TJ, Fastenau PS. Adolescents with myelomenincocele: activities, beliefs, expectations, and perceptions. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2004;46:244–252.

Byrd SE, Darling CF, McLone DG, et al. Developmental disorders of the pediatric spine. *Radiol Clin North Am.* 1991;29:711–752.

Cech D, Martin S. *Functional movement across the life span.* ed 3 St Louis: Elsevier; 2012.

Copp AF, Greene ND. Genetics and development of neural tube defects. *J Pathol.* 2010;220:217–230.

Cremer R, Kleine-Diepenbruck U, Hering F, Holschneider AM. Reduction of latex sensitization in spina bifida patients by a primary prophylaxis programme (five-year experience). *Eur J Pediatr Surg.* 2002;12(Suppl 1):S19–S21.

Danielsson AJ, Bartonek A, Levey E, et al. Associations between orthopaedic findings, ambulation, and health-related quality of life in children with myelomeningocele. *J Child Orthop.* 2008;2:45–54.

Dennis M, Fletcher JM, Rogers T, et al. Object-based and action-based visual perception in children with spina bifida and hydrocephalus. *J Int Neuropscyhol Soc.* 2002;8:95–106.

Dennis M, Edelstein K, Copeland K, et al. Covert orienting to exogenous and endogenous cues children with spina bifida. *Neuropsychologia.* 2005;43:976–987.

Dennis M, Salman S, Jewell D, et al. Upper limb motor function in young adults with spina bifida and hydrocephalus. *Childs Nerv Syst.* 2009;25:1447–1453.

Dormans JP, Templeton J, Schreiner MS, et al. Intraoperative latex anaphylaxis in children: early detection, treatment, and prevention. *Contemp Orthop.* 1995;30:342–347.

Dosa NP, Eckric M, Katz DA, et al. Incidence, prevalence, and characteristics of fractures in children, adolescents, and adults with spina bifida. *J Spinal Cord Med.* 2007;30(Suppl 1):S5–S9.

Drnach M. *The clinical practice of pediatric physical therapy.* Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.

Effgen SK, Brown DA. Long-term stability of hand-held dynamometric measurements in children who have myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther.* 1992;72:458–465.

Erikson EH. *Identity, youth, and crisis.* New York: WW Norton; 1968.

Fay G, Shurtleff DB, Shurtleff H, Wolf L. Approaches to facilitate independent self-care and academic success. In: Shurtleff DB, ed. *Myelodysplasias and exstrophies: significance, prevention, and treatment.* Orlando, FL: Grune & Stratton; 1986:373–398.

Fenichel GM. *Clinical pediatric neurology: a signs and symptoms approach.* 6 ed. St Louis:

Saunders; 2009.
Flanagan A, Gorzkowski M, Altiok H, Hassani S, Ahn KW. Activity level, functional health, and quality of life of children with myelomeningocele as perceived by parents. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2011;469:1230–1235.
Friedrich W, Shaffer J. Family adjustments and contributions. In: Shurtleff DB, ed. *Myelodysplasias and exstrophies: significance, prevention, and treatment.* Orlando, FL: Grune & Stratton; 1986:399–410.
Garber JB. Myelodysplasia. In: Campbell SK, ed. *Pediatric neurologic physical therapy.* ed 2 New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1991:169–212.
Grief L, Stalmasek V. Tethered cord syndrome: a pediatric case study. *J Neurosci Nurs.* 1989;21:86–91.
Grimm RA. Hand function and tactile perception in a sample of children with myelomeningocele. *Am J Occup Ther.* 1976;30:234–240.
Hinderer SR, Hinderer KA. Sensory examination of individuals with myelodysplasia (abstract). *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1990;71:769–770.
Hinderer SR, Hinderer KA, Dunne K, et al. Medical and functional status of adults with spina bifida (abstract). *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1988;30(Suppl 57):28.
Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB. Myelodysplasia. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Vander Linden DW, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2000:621–670.
Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB. Myelodysplasia. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 3 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:703–755.
Hoffer MM, Feiwell E, Perry R, et al. Functional ambulation in patients with myelomeningocele. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1973;55:137–148.
Holmbeck GM, Devine KA. Psychosocial and family functioning in spina bifida. *Dev Disabil Res Rev.* 2010;16:40–46.
Holmbeck GN, Westhoven VC, Philips WS, et al. A multimethod, multi-informant, and multidimensional perspective on psychosocial adjustment in preadolescents with spina bifida. *J Consult Clin Psychol.* 2003;71:782–795.
Hunt GM. Open spina bifida: outcome for a complete cohort treated unselectively and followed into adulthood. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1990;32:108–118.
Hwang R, Kentish M, Burns Y. Hand positioning sense in children with spina bifida myelomeningocele. *Aus J Physiother.* 2002;48:17–22.
Jansen-Osmann P, Wiedenbauer G, Heil M. Spatial cognition and motor development: a study of children with spina bifida. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2008;106(2):436–446.
Jewell D, Fletcher JM, Mahy CEV, et al. Upper limb cerebellar motor function in children with spina bifida. *Childs Nerv Syst.* 2010;26:67–73.
Johnson KL, Dudgeon B, Kuehn C, Walker W. Assistive technology use among adolescents and young adults with spina bifida. *Am J Public Health.* 2007;97:330–336.
Kelley EH, Altiok H, Gorzkowski JA, Abrams JR, Vogel LC. How does participation of youth with spina bifida vary by age? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2011;469:1236–1245.
Knutson LM, Clark DE. Orthotic devices for ambulation in children with cerebral palsy and myelomeningocele. *Phys Ther.* 1991;71:947–960.
Krosschell KJ, Pesavento MJ. Spina bifida: a congenital spinal cord injury. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St Louis: Elsevier; 2013:419–458.
Landry SH, Robinson SS, Copeland D, Garner PW. Goal-directed behavior and perception of self-competence in children with spina bifida. *J Pediatr Psychol.* 1993;18:389–396.
Landry SH, Lomax-Bream L, Barnes M. The importance of early motor and visual functioning for later cognitive skills in preschoolers with and without spina bifida. *J Int Neuropsychol Soc.* 2003;9:175.
Li ZW, Ren AG, Zhang L, et al. Extremely high prevalence of neural tube defects in a 4-county area in Shanxi Province, China. *Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol.* 2006;76(4):237–240.
Lock TR, Aronson DD. Fractures in patients who have myelomeningocele. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1989;71:1153–1157.
Long T, Toscano K. *Handbook of pediatric physical therapy.* ed 2 Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 2001.
Luthy DA, Wardinsky T, Shurtleff DB, et al. Cesarean section before the onset of labor and

subsequent motor function in infants with myelomeningocele diagnosed antenatally. *N Engl J Med.* 1991;324:662–666.
Main DM, Mennuti MT. Neural tube defects: issues in prenatal diagnosis and counseling. *Obstet Gynecol.* 1986;67:1–16.
Marrieos H, Loff C, Calado E. Osteoporosis in paediatric patients with spina bifida. *J Spin Cord Med.* 2012;35(1):9–21.
Mazon A, Nieto A, Linana JJ, et al. Latex sensitization in children with spina bifida: follow-up comparative study after two years. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 2000;84:207–210.
Nagarkatti DG, Banta JV, Thomson JD. Charcot arthropathy in spina bifida. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2000;20(1):82–87.
National Birth Defects Prevention Network (NBDPN, 2012). www.nbdpn.org/docs/NTfact sheet07-12.
Noetzel MJ. Myelomeningocele: current concepts of management. *Clin Perinatol.* 1989;16:311–329.
Oddson BE, Clancey CA, McGrath PJ. The role of pain in reduced quality of life and depressive symptomatology in children with spina bifida. *Clin J Pain.* 2006;22:784–789.
Okamoto GA, Sousa J, Telzrow RW, et al. Toileting skills in children with myelomeningocele: rates of learning. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1984;65:182–185.
Ornoy A. Neuroteratogens in man: an overview with special emphasis on the teratogenicity of antiepileptic drugs in pregnancy. *Reprod Toxicol.* 2006;22(2):214–226.
Paleg G, Glickman LB, Smith BA. Evidence-based clinical recommendations for dosing of pediatric supported standing programs. In: *Presented at combined sections meeting of the American Physical Therapy Association.* Las Vegas: Nevada; Feb. 4, 2014.
Peny-Dahlstrand M, Ahlander AC, Krumlinde-Sunholm L, Gosman-Hedstrom G. Quality of performance of everyday activities in children with spina bifida: a population-based study. *Acta Paediatr.* 2009;98:1674–1679.
Rendeli C, Salvaggio E, Cannizzaro GS, et al. Does locomotion improve the cognitive profile of children with myelomeningocele? *Child Nerv Sys.* 2002;18:231–234.
Rosenstein BD, Greene WB, Herrington RT, et al. Bone density in myelomeningocele: the effects of ambulatory status and other factors. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1987;29:486–494.
Rowe DE, Jadhav AL. Care of the adolescent with spina bifida. *Pediatr Clin North Am.* 2008;55:1359–1374.
Ryan KD, Ploski C, Emans JB. Myelodysplasia—the musculoskeletal problem: habilitation from infancy to adulthood. *Phys Ther.* 1991;71:935–946.
Salvaggio E, Mauti G, Ranieri P, et al. Ability in walking is a predictor of bone mineral density and body composition in prepubertal children with myelomeningocele. In: Matsumoto S, Sato H, eds. *Spina bifida.* New York: Springer Verlag; 1999:298–301.
Sandler AD. Children with spina bifida: key clinical issues. *Pediatr Clin North Am.* 2010;57:879–892.
Schoenmakers MA, Gooskens RH, Gulmans VA, et al. Long-term outcome of neurosurgical untethering on neurosegmental motor and ambulation levels. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2003;45:551–555.
Schoenmakers MA, Uiterwaal CS, Gulmans VA, Gooskens RH, Helders PJ. Determinants of functional independence and quality of life in children with spina bifida. *Clin Rehabil.* 2005;19:677–685.
Shaffer J, Friedrich W. Young adult psychosocial adjustment. In: Shurtleff DB, ed. *Myelodysplasias and exstrophies: significance, prevention, and treatment.* Orlando, FL: Grune & Stratton; 1986:421–430.
Shaw GM, Quach T, Nelson V, et al. Neural tube defects associated with maternal periconceptional dietary intake of simple sugars and glycemic index. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2003;78:972–978.
Soe MM, Swanson ME, Bolen SJ, et al. Health risk behaviors among young adults with spina bifida. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2012;54:1057–1064.
Sousa JC, Telzrow RW, Holm RA, et al. Developmental guidelines for children with myelodysplasia. *Phys Ther.* 1983;63:21–29.
Szalay EA, Cheema A. Children with spina bifida are at risk for low bone density. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2011;469:1253–1257.
Tappit-Emas E. Spina bifida. In: Tecklin JS, ed. *Pediatric physical therapy.* ed 4 Philadelphia: JB

Lippincott; 2008:231–279.
Tomlinson P, Sugarman ID. Complications with shunts in adults with spina bifida. *BMJ.* 1995;311(7000):286–287.
Tsai PY, Yang TF, Chan RC, Huang PH, Wong TT. Functional investigation in children with spina bifida, measured by the Pediatric Evaluation of Disability Inventory (PEDI). *Child Nerv Sys.* 2002;18:48–53.
Tulipan N. Intrauterine myelomeningocele repair. *Clin Perinatol.* 2003;30(3):521–530.
Vachha B, Adams R: Pediatrics 115:e58-e63. Epub Dec 3, 2004. www.pediatrics.org/cgi/doi/10.1542/peds.2004-0797
Verhoef M, Barf HA, Post MW, et al. Secondary impairment in young adults with spina bifida. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2004;46(6):420–427.
Vermaes IPR, Janssens J.M.A.M., Mullaart RA, Vinck A, Gerris JRM. Parent's personality and parenting stress in families of children with spina bifida. *Child Care Health Dev.* 2008;34(5):665–674.
Vinck A, Maassen B, Mullaart RA, Rottevell J. Arnold-Chiari-II malformation and cognitive functioning in spina bifida. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatr.* 2006;77(9):1083–1086.
Vinck A, Nijhuis-van der Sanden M, Roeleveld N, et al. Motor profile and cognitive function in children with spina bifida. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol.* 2010;14:86–92.
Walsh DS, Adzick NS. Foetal surgery for spina bifida. *Semin Neonatal.* 2003;8(3):197–205.
Williamson GG. *Children with spina bifida: early intervention and preschool programming.* Baltimore: Paul H Brookes; 1987.

CHAPTER 8

Genetic Disorders

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe different modes of genetic transmission.
2. Compare and contrast the incidence, etiology, and clinical manifestations of specific genetic disorders.
3. Explain the medical and surgical management of children with genetic disorders.
4. Articulate the role of the physical therapist assistant in the management of children with genetic disorders.
5. Describe appropriate physical therapy interventions used with children with genetic disorders.
6. Discuss the importance of functional activity training through the life span of a child with a genetic disorder.

Introduction

More than 6000 genetic disorders have been identified to date. Some are evident at birth, whereas others present later in life. Most genetic disorders have their onset in childhood. The physical therapist assistant working in a children's hospital, outpatient rehabilitation center, or school system may be involved in providing physical therapy for these children. Some of the genetic disorders discussed in this chapter include Down syndrome (DS), fragile X syndrome (FXS), Rett syndrome, cystic fibrosis (CF), Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), osteogenesis imperfecta (OI), and autism spectrum disorder (ASD). After a general discussion of the types of genetic transmission, the pathophysiology and clinical features of these conditions are outlined, followed by a brief discussion of the physical therapy management. A case study of a child with DS is presented at the end of the chapter to illustrate the physical therapy management of children with low muscle tone. A second case study of a child with DMD is presented to illustrate the physical therapy management of a child with a progressive genetic disorder.

Genetic disorders in children are often thought to involve primarily only one body system—muscular, skeletal, respiratory, or nervous—and to affect other systems secondarily. However, genetic disorders typically affect more than one body system, especially when those systems are embryonically linked, such as the nervous and integumentary systems, both of which are derived from the same primitive tissue. For example, individuals with neurofibromatosis have skin defects in the form of café-au-lait spots in addition to nervous system tumors. Genetic disorders that primarily affect one system, such as the muscular dystrophies, eventually have an impact on or stress other body systems, such as the cardiac and pulmonary systems. Because the nervous system is most frequently involved in genetic disorders, similar clinical features are displayed by a large number of affected children.

In addition to the cluster of clinical symptoms that constitute many genetic syndromes, children with genetic disorders often present with what is termed a *behavioral phenotype*. The term has been around quite a while in medical genetics but may not be familiar to the physical therapist assistant; "… a behavioral phenotype is a profile of behavior, cognition, or personality that represents a component of the overall pattern seen in many or most individuals with a particular condition or syndrome" (Baty et al., 2011). Just as facial features may be different in children with DS or FXS, there may be behavioral and cognitive differences related to the different genetic syndromes. These are just beginning to be detailed in the literature.

Genetic transmission

Genes carry the blueprint for how body systems are put together, how the body changes during growth and development, and how the body operates on a daily basis. The color of your eyes and hair is genetically determined. One hair color, such as brown, is more dominant than another color, such as blond. A trait that is passed on as *dominant* is expressed, whereas a *recessive* trait may be expressed only under certain circumstances. All cells of the body carry genetic material in chromosomes. The chromosomes in the body cells are called *autosomes*. Because each of us has 22 pairs of autosomes, every cell in the body has 44 chromosomes, and two *sex chromosomes*. Reproductive cells contain 23 chromosomes—22 autosomes and either an X or a Y chromosome. After fertilization of the egg by the sperm, the genetic material is combined during *meiosis*, thus determining the sex of the child by the pairing of the sex chromosomes. Two X chromosomes make a female, whereas one X and one Y make a male. Each gene inherited by a child has a paternal and a maternal contribution. Alleles are alternative forms of a gene, such as H or h. If someone carries identical alleles of a gene, HH or hh, the person is homozygous. If the person carries different alleles of a gene, Hh or hH, the person is heterozygous.

Categories

The two major categories of genetic disorders are *chromosomal abnormalities* and *specific gene defects*. Chromosomal abnormalities occur by one of three mechanisms: nondisjunction, deletion, and translocation. When cells divide unequally, the result is called a *nondisjunction*. Nondisjunction can cause DS. When part or all of a chromosome is lost, it is called a *deletion*. When part of one chromosome becomes detached and reattaches to a completely different chromosome, it is called a *translocation*. Chromosome abnormalities include the following: *trisomies*, in which three of a particular chromosome are present instead of the usual two; *sex chromosome abnormalities*, in which there is an absence or addition of one sex chromosome; and *partial deletions*. The most widely recognized trisomy is DS, or trisomy 21. Turner syndrome and Klinefelter syndrome are examples of sex chromosome errors, but they are not discussed in this chapter. Partial deletion syndromes that are discussed include cri-du-chat syndrome and Prader-Willi syndrome (PWS).

A specific gene defect is inherited in three different ways: (1) as an autosomal dominant trait; (2) as an autosomal recessive trait; or (3) as a sex-linked trait. *Autosomal dominant inheritance* requires that one parent be affected by the gene or that a spontaneous mutation of the gene occurs. In the latter case, neither parent has the disorder, but the gene spontaneously mutates or changes in the child. When one parent has an autosomal dominant disorder, each child born has a 1 in 2 chance of having the same disorder. Examples of autosomal dominant disorders include OI, which affects the skeletal system and produces brittle bones, and neurofibromatosis, which affects the skin and nervous system.

Autosomal recessive inheritance occurs when either parent is a carrier for the disorder. A *carrier* is a person who has the gene but in whom it is not expressed. The condition is not apparent in the person. The carrier may pass the gene on without having the disorder or knowing that he or she is a carrier. In this situation, the carrier parent is said to be *heterozygous* for the abnormal gene, and each child has a 1 in 4 chance of being a carrier. The heterozygous parent is carrying a gene with alleles that are dissimilar for a particular trait. If both parents are carriers, each is heterozygous for the abnormal gene, and each child will have a 1 in 4 chance of having the disorder and an increased chance that the child will be homozygous for the disorder. *Homozygous* means that the person is carrying a gene with identical alleles for a given trait. Examples of autosomal recessive disorders that are discussed in this chapter are CF, phenylketonuria, and three types of spinal muscular atrophy (SMA).

Sex-linked inheritance means that the abnormal gene is carried on the X chromosome. Just as autosomes can have dominant and recessive expressions, so can sex chromosomes. In X-linked recessive inheritance, females with only one abnormal allele are carriers for the disorder, but they usually do not exhibit any symptoms because they have one normal X chromosome. Each child born to a carrier mother has a 1 in 2 chance of becoming a carrier, and each son has a 1 in 2 chance of having the disorder. The most common examples of X-linked recessive disorders are DMD and hemophilia, a disorder of blood coagulation. FXS is the most common X-linked disorder that causes intellectual disability in males. Rett syndrome is also X-linked and seen predominately in females. A discussion of genetically transmitted disorders follows—first chromosome abnormalities and then specific gene defects.

Down syndrome

DS is the leading chromosomal cause of intellectual disability and the most frequently reported birth defect (CDC, 2006; Gardiner et al., 2010). Increasing maternal and paternal age is a risk factor. DS occurs in 1 in every 700 live births and is caused by a genetic imbalance resulting in the presence of an extra 21st chromosome or trisomy 21 in all or most of the body's cells. Ninety-five percent of DS cases result from a failure of chromosome 21 to split completely during formation of the egg or sperm (nondisjunction). A *gamete* is a mature male or female germ cell (sperm or egg). When the abnormal gamete joins a normal one, the result is three copies of chromosome 21. Fewer than 5% of children have a third chromosome 21 attached to another chromosome. This type of DS is caused by a translocation. The least common type of DS is a mosaic type in which some of the body's cells have three copies of chromosome 21 and others have a normal complement of chromosomes. The severity of the syndrome is related to the proportion of normal to abnormal cells.

Clinical Features

Characteristic features of the child with DS include hypotonicity, joint hypermobility, upwardly slanting epicanthal folds, and a flat nasal bridge and facial profile (Figure 8-1). The child has a small oral cavity that sometimes causes the tongue to seem to protrude. Developmental findings include delayed development and impaired motor control. Feeding problems may be evident at birth and may require intervention. Fifty percent of children with DS also have congenital heart defects of the wall between the atrias or the ventricles (Vis et al., 2009), which can be corrected by cardiac surgery. Musculoskeletal manifestations may include pes planus (flatfoot), thoracolumbar scoliosis, and patellar dislocation as well as possible atlantoaxial instability (AAI). The incidence of AAI ranges from 10% to 15% (Mik et al., 2008). Beginning at the age of 2 years, a child's cervical spine can and should be radiographed to determine whether AAI is present. If instability is present, the family should be educated for possible symptoms, which are listed in Box 8-1. The child's activity should be modified to avoid stress or strain on the neck such as that which may occur when diving, doing gymnastics, and playing any contact sport. Most cases are asymptomatic (Glanzman, 2014).

FIGURE 8-1 Profile of a child with Down syndrome.

Box 8-1

Symptoms of Atlantoaxial Instability

Hyperreflexia
Clonus
Babinski sign
Torticollis
Increased loss of strength
Sensory changes
Loss of bowel or bladder control
Decrease in motor skills

(Source: Glanzman A: Genetic and developmental disorders. In Goodman CC, Fuller KS, editors: *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist*, ed 2. Philadelphia, 2003, WB Saunders, pp. 1161–1210.)

After over a decade of support for screening for AAI in children with DS, the American Academy of Pediatrics' Committee on Sports Medicine and Fitness withdrew support of this practice in 1995. Others still recommend the practice and support family and community awareness of the potential problems with AAI in children with DS (Cassidy and Allanson, 2001; Glanzman, 2014; Pueschel, 1998). As physical therapists and physical therapist assistants working with families of children with DS, we have a responsibility to provide such education and advocate for screening.

Major sensory systems, such as hearing and vision, may be impaired in children with DS. Visual impairments may include nearsightedness (myopia), cataracts, crossing of the eyes (esotropia), nystagmus, and astigmatism. Mild to moderate hearing loss is not uncommon. Either a sensorineural loss, in which the eighth cranial nerve is damaged, or a conductive loss, resulting

from too much fluid in the middle ear, may cause delayed language development. These problems must be identified early in life and treated aggressively so as to not hinder the child's ability to interact with caregivers and the environment and to develop appropriate language skills.

Intelligence

As stated earlier, DS is the major cause of intellectual disability in children. Intelligence quotients (IQs) within this population range from 25 to 50, with the majority falling in the mild to moderate range of intellectual disability (Ratliffe, 1998). To be diagnosed with an intellectual disability, a child's IQ has to be 70 to 75 or below. The American Association on Intellectual Developmental Disabilities has been trying to move away from defining intellectual disability based only on IQ scores. Their definition of intellectual disability means the person is limited in intelligence and in adaptive skills. Adaptive skills can include but not be limited to communication, self-care, and ability to engage in social roles.

If effective early intervention programs can be designed and used in the preschool years, the subsequent educational progress of a child with DS may be altered significantly. An "educable" person is defined as one who is capable of learning such basic skills as reading and arithmetic and is quite capable of self-care and independent living (those with mild intellectual disability are generally considered educable). Although trainable (moderate intellectual disability) persons are very limited in educational attainments, they can benefit from simple training for self-care and vocational tasks (Bellenir, 2004).

Development

Motor development is slow, and without intervention the rate of acquisition of skills declines. Difficulty in learning motor skills has always been linked to the lack of postural tone and, to some extent, to hypermobile joints. Ligamentous laxity with resulting joint hypermobility is thought to be due to a collagen defect. The hypotonia is related not only to structural changes in the cerebellum but also to changes in other central nervous system structures and processes. These changes are indicative of missing or delayed neuromaturation in DS. As a result of the low tone and joint laxity, it is difficult for the child with DS to attain head and trunk control. Weight bearing on the limbs is typically accomplished by locking extremity joints such as the elbows and knees. These children often substitute positional stability for muscular stability, as in W sitting, to provide trunk stability in sitting, rather than dynamically firing trunk muscles in response to weight shifting in a position. Children with DS often avoid activating trunk muscles for rotation and prefer to advance from prone to sitting over widely abducted legs (Figure 8-2). Table 8-1 compares the age at which motor tasks may be accomplished by children with DS and typically developing children. Infant intervention has been shown to have a positive impact on developing motor skills and overall function in these children (Connolly et al., 1993; Hines and Bennett, 1996; Ulrich et al., 2001; Ulrich et al., 2008).

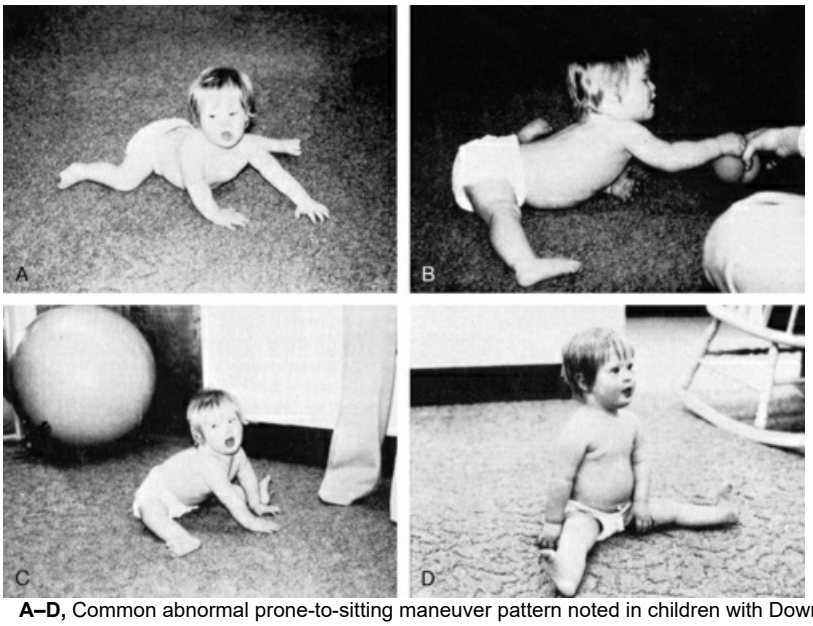


FIGURE 8-2 **A–D,** Common abnormal prone-to-sitting maneuver pattern noted in children with Down syndrome. (Reprinted from Lydic JS, Steele C: Assessment of the quality of sitting and gait patterns in children with Down syndrome. *Phys Ther* 59:1489–1494, 1979. With permission of the APTA.)

Table 8-1

Predicted Probability (%) of Children with DS Achieving Milestones Based on Logistic Regression

	Age (months)								
Skill	**6**	**12**	**18**	**24**	**30**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**
Roll	51	64	74	83	89	93	97	99	100
Sit	8	78	99	100	100	100	100	100	100
Crawl	10	19	34	53	71	84	96	99	100
Stand	4	14	40	73	91	98	100	100	100
Walk	1	4	14	40	74	92	99	100	100
Run	1	2	3	5	8	12	25	45	67
Steps	0	0	1	1	3	5	18	46	77

From Palisano RJ, Walter SD, Russell DJ, et al: Gross motor function of children with Down syndrome: Creation of motor growth curves. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 82:494–500, 2001.

Individuals with DS can live in group communities that foster independence and self-reliance. Some individuals with DS have been employed in small and medium-sized offices as clerical

workers or in hotels and restaurants. Batshaw et al. (2013) credit the introduction of supported employment in the 1980s with providing the potential for adults with DS to obtain and to hold a job. In supported employment, the individual has a job coach. Crucial to the individual's job success is the early development and maintenance of a positive self-image and a healthy self-esteem, along with the ability to work apart from the family and to participate in personal recreational activities.

Fitness is decreased in individuals with DS. Dichter et al. (1993) found that a group of children with DS had reduced pulmonary function and fitness compared with age-matched controls without disabilities. Other researchers have found children with DS to be less active, and 25% of them become overweight (Pueschel, 1990; Sharav and Bowman, 1992). Lack of cardiorespiratory endurance and weak abdominal muscles have been linked to the reductions in fitness (Shields et al., 2009). Because of increased longevity, fitness in every person with a disability needs to be explored as another potential area of physical therapy intervention. Barriers to exercise for people with DS have been identified as lack of a support person and appropriate levels of interaction (Heller et al., 2002; Menear, 2007). When physical therapy students mentored adolescents with DS to exercise, the student's attitudes toward working with a person with disabilities improved considerably.

Life expectancy for individuals with DS has increased to 60 years (Bittles et al., 2006). The increase has occurred despite the higher incidence of other serious diseases in this population. Children with DS have a 15% to 20% higher chance of acquiring leukemia during their first 3 years of life. Again, the cure rate is high. The last major health risk faced by these individuals is Alzheimer disease. Every person with DS who lives past 40 years develops pathologic signs of Alzheimer disease, such as amyloid plaques and neurofibrillary tangles. Individuals with DS produce more of the β-amyloid that makes up the plaques because the gene that produces the protein is located on the 21st chromosome (Head and Lott, 2004). Adults with DS over 50 years old are more likely to regress in adaptive behavior than are adults with intellectual disability without DS (Zigman et al., 1996). This could be explained by the inability of the adult with DS to counteract oxidative stress from abundance of free radicals in the brain (Pagano and Castello, 2012). Three-fourths of adults who live past 65 years of age have signs of dementia (Lott and Dierssen, 2010).

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of a child with DS typically identifies the following impairments to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Delayed psychomotor development
2. Hypotonia
3. Hyperextensible joints and ligamentous laxity
4. Impaired respiratory function
5. Impaired exercise tolerance

Early physical therapy is important for the child with DS. A case study of a child with DS is presented at the end of the chapter to illustrate general intervention strategies with a child with low muscle tone, because the impairments demonstrated by these children are similar. These interventions could be used with any child who displays low muscle tone or muscle weakness secondary to genetic disorders such as cri-du-chat syndrome, PWS, and SMA.

Body-Weight Support Treadmill Training

Children with DS walk independently between 18 months and 3 years (Palisano et al., 2001). Research has shown that infants with DS who participant in body-weight support treadmill training walk early than typically developing children with DS. Early ambulation in this population is beneficial as it supports development in other areas such as language and cognition. Ulrich et al. (2001) were the first to show that using treadmill training accelerated the developmental outcome of independent ambulation in children with DS. As little as 8 minutes five times a week produced change. When a higher intensity was compared with a lower intensity, the children in the higher intensity group walked 3 months earlier than the children in the lower intensity group (Ulrich et al., 2008).

Orthoses

Children with DS have low tone and joint hypermobility. Instability in the lower extremity may not

allow the child to experience a stable base while in standing or when attempting to walk. Martin (2004) studied use of supramalleolar orthoses (SMOs) in children with DS to determine the effect of their use on independent ambulation. Children showed significant improvement in standing and walking, running, and jumping on the Gross Motor Function Measure, both at the initial fitting and after wearing the orthoses for 7 weeks. Balance improved at the end of the 7-week period.

Looper and Ulrich (2010) found that too early use of SMOs while the child engaged in treadmill training actually deterred onset of walking. However, in order to use an orthosis with the children, the treadmill training did not begin until the child pulled to standing, a milestone that is delayed in children with DS. More recently, Looper et al. (2012) compared the effect of two types of orthoses on the gait of children with DS. They compared a foot orthosis (FO) and an SMO. The results were not clearly in favor of one orthosis over another. There were strong correlations found between the use of each orthosis and specific gait parameters.

Body-weight support treadmill training appears to have a positive effect on achievement of early ambulation; however, use of an orthosis during treadmill training may not be indicated. After achievement of independent ambulation, an orthosis may be needed to address gait deviations, such as foot angle, walking speed, amount of pronation during stance phase (Selby-Silverstein et al., 2001). As pointed out by Nervik and Roberts (2012), the best practice continues to be individualized recommendations for use of orthoses and trials of different orthoses in order to make the best decision.

CRI-DU-Chat syndrome

When part of the short arm of chromosome 5 is deleted, the result is the cat-cry syndrome, or cri-du-chat syndrome. The chromosome abnormality primarily affects the nervous system and results in intellectual disability. The incidence is 1 in 20,000 to 1 in 50,000 live births (Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man [OMIM], 2014). One percent of institutionalized individuals with intellectual disability may have this disorder (Carlin, 1995). Characteristic clinical features include a catlike cry, microcephaly, widely spaced eyes, and profound intellectual disability. The cry is usually present only in infancy and is the result of laryngeal malformation, which lessens as the child grows. Although usually born at term, these children exhibit the result of intrauterine growth retardation by being small for their gestational age. *Microcephaly* is diagnosed when the head circumference is less than the third percentile. Together, these features constitute the cri-du-chat syndrome, but any or all of the signs can be noted in many other congenital genetic disorders.

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with cri-du-chat syndrome typically identifies the following impairments or potential problems to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Delayed psychomotor development
2. Hypotonia
3. Delayed development of postural reactions
4. Hyperextensible joints
5. Contractures and skeletal deformities
6. Impaired respiratory function

Musculoskeletal problems that may be associated with cri-du-chat syndrome include clubfeet, hip dislocation, joint hypermobility, and scoliosis. Muscle tone is low—a feature that may predispose the child to problems related to musculoskeletal alignment. In addition, motor delays also result from a lack of the cognitive ability needed to learn motor skills. Postural control is difficult to develop because of the low tone and nervous system immaturity. Physically, the child's movements are laborious and inconsistent. Gravity is a true enemy to the child with low tone. Congenital heart disease is also common, and severe respiratory problems can be present (Bellamy and Shen, 2013). Life expectancy has improved to almost normal with better medical care (Chen, 2013).

Prader-willi syndrome and angelman syndrome

PWS is the other example of a syndrome caused by a partial deletion of a chromosome; in this case, a microdeletion of a part of the long arm of chromosome 15. The incidence of this syndrome originally described by Prader et al. in 1956 is thought to be about 1 in 10,000 to 1 in 30,000 (Batshaw et al., 2013). The disorder is more common than cri-du-chat syndrome. In fact, it is one of the most common microdeletions seen in genetic clinics (Dykens et al., 2011). Diagnosis is usually made based on the child's behavior and physical features and confirmed by genetic testing. Features include obesity, underdeveloped gonads, short stature, hypotonia, and mild to moderate intellectual disability. These children become obsessed with food at around the age of 2 years and exhibit *hyperphagia* (excessive eating). Before this age they have difficulty in feeding secondary to low muscle tone, gain weight slowly, and may be diagnosed as failure to thrive. Children with PWS are very delayed in attainment of motor milestones during the first 2 years of life and often do not sit until 12 months and do not walk until 24 months (Dykens et al., 2011). Obesity can lead to respiratory compromise with impaired breathing and cyanosis. PWS is the most common genetic form of obesity. Maladaptive behavior is part of the behavioral phenotype of this genetic condition and includes temper tantrums, obsessive compulsive disorder, self-harm, and lability.

If a child inherits the deletion from the father, the child will have PWS, but if the child inherits the deletion from the mother, the child will have Angelman syndrome. This variability of expression depending on the sex of the parent is called *genomic imprinting*. This phenomenon is a result of differential activation of genes on the same chromosome. Angelman syndrome (AS) is characterized by significantly delayed development, intellectual disability, ataxia, severe speech problems, and progressive microcephaly. Delays are not apparent until around 6 to 12 months of age. There may be problems with sucking and swallowing, drooling, or tongue thrusting in 20% to 80% of children (Bellamy and Shen, 2013). They have a happy affect and display hand-flapping movements.

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with PWS typically identifies the following impairments or potential problems to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Impaired feeding (before age 2)
2. Hypotonia
3. Delayed psychomotor development
4. Obesity (after age 2)
5. Impaired respiratory function

Intervention must match the needs of the child based on age. The infant may need oral motor therapy to improve the ability to feed. Positioning for support and alignment is necessary for feeding and carrying. Techniques for fostering head and trunk control should be taught to the caregivers. As the child's appetite increases, weight control becomes crucial. The aim of a preschool program is to provide interventions to establish and improve gross-motor abilities. Food control must be understood by everyone working with the child with PWS. Attention in the school years is focused on training good eating habits while improving tolerance for aerobic activity. This is continued throughout adolescence, when behavioral control appears to be the most successful means for controlling weight gain.

"Interventions should be directed toward increasing muscle strength, aerobic endurance, postural control, movement efficiency, function, and respiration to manage obesity and minimize cardiovascular risk factors and osteoporosis" (Lewis, 2000). Suggested activities for strength training at various ages can be found in Table 8-2. These activities would be appropriate for most children with weakness. Aquatic exercise is also an ideal beginning aerobic activity for the child with severe obesity (Lewis, 2000). Additional aerobic activities for different age groups are found in Table 8-3. They, too, have general applicability to most children with developmental deficits. Box 8-2 details outcome measures that could be used to document changes in strength and aerobic conditioning in the PWS population. Some of these measures may be applicable with children with other developmental diagnoses, while others may be difficult due to lack of motor control.

Table 8-2

Activities for Strength Training

Activities to Strengthen					
Monitor	**Ages**	**Upper Limbs**	**Lower Limbs**	**Trunk**	**Muscles of Respiration**
Blood pressure Breath holding Stabilization	Younger children	Wheelbarrow walks Push/pull a wagon Vertical drawing Lifting objects Scooter board	Squats Vertical jumping Stair climbing Walking on toes Ball kicking Walking sideways	Sit-ups Bridges Trunk rotations Stand up from supine Swing a weighted bat	Blowing bubbles Straw sucking Blowing balloons Cotton ball hockey Singing Chair pushups
Blood pressure Breath holding Stabilization	Older children/younger adolescents	Elastic bands, hand weights, games, music, dance	Elastic bands, ankle weights, games, music, dance Broad jumping	Swiss ball Incline sit-ups Foam rollers	Swimming laps Running sprints
Blood pressure Breath holding Stabilization	Older adolescents/young adults	Strength training: bicep curls, triceps, latissimus pulls	Strength training: hamstring curls, quadriceps, extensions, squats, toe raises	Strength training: abdominal crunches, obliques	Swimming laps Running laps Running for endurance

Modified from Lewis CL: Prader-Willi syndrome: A review for pediatric physical therapists. *Pediatr Phys Ther* 12:87–95, 2000; Young HJ: The effects of home fitness programs in preschoolers with disabilities. Chapel Hill, NC, Program in Human Movement Science with Division of Physical Therapy. University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1996:50. Thesis.

Table 8-3
Activities for Aerobic Conditioning

Ages	Activities
Younger children	Bunny hopping Running long jump Running up and down steps or incline Running up and down hills Riding a tricycle Sitting on a scooter board and propelling with the feet
Older children/younger adolescents	Bike riding Stationary bike riding Brisk walking Water aerobics Roller skating Roller-blading Ice skating Cross-country skiing Downhill skiing
Older adolescents/younger adults	Same as above, plus: Dancing Low-impact step aerobics Jazzercise Aerobic circuit training

From Lewis CL: Prader-Willi syndrome: A review for pediatric physical therapists. *Pediatr Phys Ther* 12:87–95, 2000, p. 92.

Box 8-2

Clinical Outcome Measures

Measures of Strength Training

- Grip dynamometer: before and after training (average of five trials)
- Myometer of target muscles: before and after training (average of five trials)
- One or six repetition maximum (1 RM, 6 RM)*: before and after training (average over three different days)†
- Standing long jump distance: before and after training (average of five trials)†

Measures of Aerobic Conditioning

- Heart rate: measure the radial pulse or use a heart rate monitor; establish baseline over a 5-day period
- Improved cardiovascular function documented by decreased resting heart rate; decreased heart rate during steady state (2 minutes into the activity); time it takes for heart rate to return to preactivity level

- Timed performance of activities such as 50-foot sprint, seven sit-ups, stair climbing
- Two- or 6-minute walk/run/lap swim time: maximum distance covered divided by time
- Determine energy expenditure index (EEI)‡ of gait: working HR minus resting HR divided by speed

(From Lewis CL: Prader-Willi syndrome: A review for pediatric physical therapists. *Pediatr Phys Ther* 12:87–95, 2000, p. 92.)

* 1 RM is the maximum amount of weight that can be lifted one time; 6 RM is the maximum amount of weight that can be lifted six times.

† From 1985 School Population Fitness Survey. Washington, DC, 1985, President's Council on Physical Fitness and Sports.

‡ Rose J, Gamble J, Lee J, et al: The energy expenditure index: A method to quantitate and compare walking energy expenditure for children and adolescents. *J Pediatr Orthop* 11:571–578, 1991.

Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita

One-third of arthrogryposis multiplex congenita (AMC) cases have a genetic cause. The gene that causes the neuropathic form is found on chromosome 5 (Tanamy et al., 2001). Another form, distal AMC, is inherited as an autosomal dominant trait with the defective gene being traced to chromosome 9 (Bamshad et al., 1994). AMC is a nonprogressive neuromuscular syndrome that the physical therapist assistant may encounter in practice. AMC results in multiple joint contractures and usually requires surgical intervention to correct misaligned joints. AMC is also known as multiple congenital contractures. The incidence of the disorder is 1 in 3000 to 6000 live births according to Hall (2007). A 1 in 4300 prevalence has been reported in Canada (Lowry et al., 2010). Pathogenesis has been related to the muscular, nervous, or joint abnormalities associated with intrauterine movement restriction, but despite identification of multiple causes, the exact cause is still unknown.

Pathophysiology and Natural History

As early as 1990, Tachdjian postulated that the basic mechanism for the multiple joint contractures seen in AMC was a lack of fetal movement. That hypothesis has been accepted in that AMC can result from any condition that limits fetal movement (Glanzman, 2014). Myopathic and neuropathic causes have been linked to multiple nonprogressive joint contractures. If muscles around a fetal joint do not provide enough stimulation (muscle pull), the result is joint stiffness. If the anterior horn cell does not function properly, muscle movement is lessened, and contractures and soft tissue fibrosis occur. Muscle imbalances in utero can lead to abnormal joint positions. The first trimester of pregnancy has been identified as the most likely time for the primary insult to occur to produce AMC. Although the contractures themselves are not progressive, the extent of functional disability they produce is significant, as seen in Figure 8-3. Limitation in mobility and in activities of daily living (ADLs) can make the child dependent on family members.

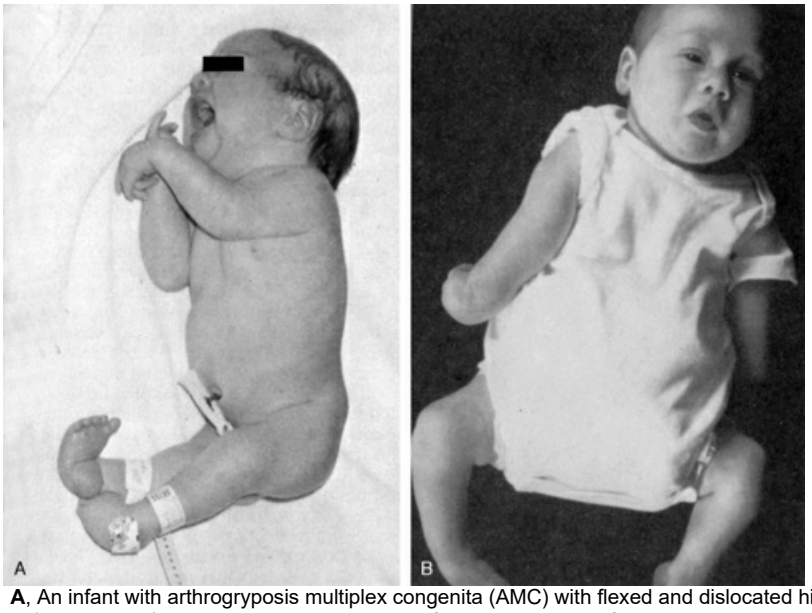


FIGURE 8-3 **A**, An infant with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita (AMC) with flexed and dislocated hips, extended knees, clubfeet (equinovarus), internally rotated shoulders, flexed elbows, and flexed and ulnarly deviated wrists. **B**, An infant with AMC with abducted and externally rotated hips, flexed knees, clubfeet, internally rotated shoulders, extended elbows, and flexed and ulnarly deviated wrists. (From Donohoe M: Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.)

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with AMC typically identifies the

following impairments to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:
1. Impaired range of motion
2. Impaired functional mobility
3. Limitations in ADLs, including donning and doffing orthoses

Early physical therapy intervention focuses on assisting the infant to attain head and trunk control. Depending on the extent of limb involvement, the child may have difficulty in using the arms for support when initially learning to sit or catch himself or herself when losing balance. Most of these children become ambulatory, but they may need some assistance in finding ways to go up and down the stairs. An adapted tricycle can provide an alternative means of mobility before walking is mastered (Figure 8-4). Functional movement and maintenance of range of motion are the two major physical therapy goals for a child with this physical disability. No cognitive deficit is present; therefore, the child with AMC should be able to attend regular preschool and school. Table 8-4 gives an overview of the management of the child with AMC across the life span.

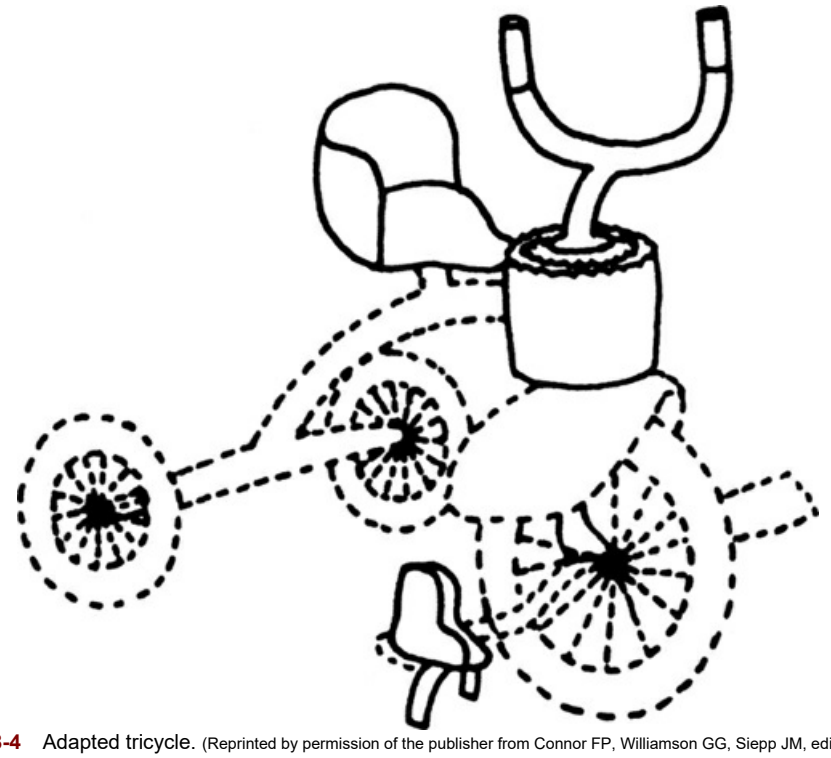


FIGURE 8-4 Adapted tricycle. (Reprinted by permission of the publisher from Connor FP, Williamson GG, Siepp JM, editors: *Program guide for infants and toddlers with neuromotor and other developmental disabilities*, p. 361. [New York, Teachers College Press, © 1978 Teachers College, Columbia University. All rights reserved.])

Table 8-4

Management of Arthrogryposis Multiplex Congenita, or Multiple Congenital Contractures

Time Period	Goals	Strategies	Medical/Surgical	Home Program
Infancy	Maximize strength Increase ROM Enhance sensory and motor development	Teach rolling Floor scooting Strengthening Stretching Positioning	Clubfoot surgery by age 2 years Splints adjusted every 4-6 weeks	Stretching 3-5 times a day Standing 2 hours a day Positioning
Preschool	Decrease disability Enhance ambulation Maximize ADLs Establish peer relationships	Solve ADL challenges Gait training Stretching, positioning Promote self-esteem	Stroller for community Articulating AFOs Splints	Stretching twice a day Positioning Play groups, sleepovers, sports
School-age and adolescent	Strengthen peer relationships Independent mobility Preserve ROM	Adaptive physical education Environmental adaptations, stretching Compensatory for ADLs	Manual wheelchair for community Power mobility Surgery	Sports, social activities Self-directed stretching and prone positioning Personal hygiene
Adulthood	Independent in ADLs with/without assistive devices Ambulation/mobility Driving	Joint protection and conservation Assess accessibility Assistive technology	Wheelchair	Flexibility Positioning Endurance

Data from Donohoe M: Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, pp. 313–332.

ADLs, Activities of daily living; *AFOs,* ankle-foot orthoses; *ROM,* range of motion.

Range of Motion

Range-of-motion exercises and stretching exercises are the cornerstone of physical therapy intervention in children with AMC. Initially, stretching needs to be performed three to five times a day. Each affected joint should be moved three to five times and held for 20 to 30 seconds at the end of the available range. Because these children have multiple-joint involvement, range of motion requires a serious commitment on the part of the family. Incorporating stretching into the daily routine of feeding, bathing, dressing, and diaper changing is warranted. As the child grows older, the frequency of stretching can be decreased. The school-age child should begin to take over responsibility for his or her own stretching program. Although stretching is less important once skeletal growth has ceased, flexibility remains a goal to prevent further deformities from developing. Joint preservation and energy conservation techniques are legitimate strategies for the adult with AMC.

Positioning

Positioning options depend on the type of contractures present. If the joints are more extended in the upper extremity, this will hamper the child's acceptance of the prone position and will require that the chest be supported by a roll or a wedge. Too much flexion and abduction in the lower extremities may need to be controlled by lateral towel rolls or a Velcro strap (Figure 8-5). Quadruped is not a good posture to use because it reinforces flexion in the upper and lower extremities. Prone positioning is an excellent way to stretch hip flexion contractures while encouraging the development of the motor abilities of the prone progression. A prone positioning program should be continued throughout the life span.

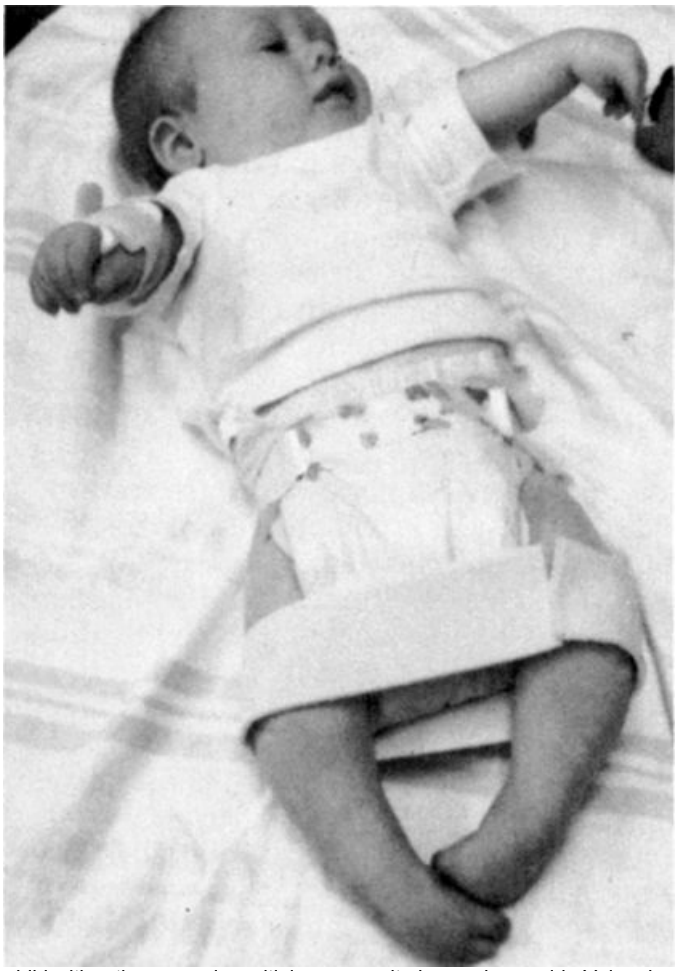


FIGURE 8-5 This child with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita is wearing a wide Velcro band strapped around the thighs to keep the legs in more neutral alignment. (From Donohoe M, Bleakney DA: Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 2. Philadelphia, 2000, WB Saunders.)

Functional Activities and Gait

Rolling and scooting on the bottom are used as primary means of floor mobility. Development of independent sitting is often delayed because of the child's inability to attain the position, but most of these children do so by 15 months of age. Placement in sitting and encouragement of static sitting balance with or without hand support should begin early, at around 6 months of age. Focus on dynamic balance and transitions into and out of sitting while using trunk flexion and rotation should follow. Nine months is an appropriate age for the child to begin experiencing weight bearing in standing. For children with plantar flexion contractures, shoes can be wedged to allow total contact of the foot with the support surface. In some cases, a standing frame or parapodium, as is used with children with myelomeningocele, can be beneficial (Figure 8-6). Other children benefit from use of supine or prone standers. The standing goal for a 1-year-old child is 2 hours a day (Donohoe and Bleakney, 2000). Strengthening of muscles needed for key functional motor skills, such as rolling, sitting, hitching (bottom scooting), standing, and walking, is done in play. Reaching to roll, rotation in sitting and standing, and movement transitions into and out of postures can facilitate carryover into functional tasks. Toys should be adapted with switches to facilitate the child's ability to play, and adaptive equipment should be used to lessen dependence during ADLs.

FIGURE 8-6 A child with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita who is using a standing frame. (From Donohoe M: Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orline MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.)

Ambulation is achieved by most children with AMC by 18 months of age (Donohoe and Bleakney, 2000). Because clubfoot is often a part of the presentation in AMC, its presence must be dealt with in the development of standing and walking. Early surgical correction of the deformity often requires later surgical revisions, so investigators have suggested that surgery occur after the child is stronger and wants to walk, at around the end of the first year of life. The operation should be performed by the time the child is 2 years old to avoid the possibility of having to do more bony surgery, as opposed to soft-tissue corrections.

Use of orthoses for ambulation depends on the strength of the lower extremity extensors and the types of contractures found at the hip, knee, and ankle. Less than fair muscle strength at a joint usually indicates the need for an orthosis at that joint. For example, if the quadriceps muscles are scored less than 3 out of 5 on manual muscle testing, then a knee-ankle-foot orthosis (KAFO) is indicated. Children with knee extension contractures tend to require less orthotic control than those with knee flexion contractures (Donohoe, 2012). Children with weak quadriceps or knee flexion contractures may need to walk with the knees of the KAFO locked. Functional ambulation also depends on the child's ability to use an assistive device. Because of upper extremity contractures, this may not be possible, and adaptations to walkers and crutches may be needed. Polyvinyl chloride pipe can often be used to fabricate lightweight walkers or crutches to give the child maximal independence (Figure 8-7). Power mobility may provide easy and efficient environmental access for a child with weak lower extremities and poor upper extremity function. Some school-age children or adolescents routinely use a manual wheelchair to keep up with peers in a community setting.

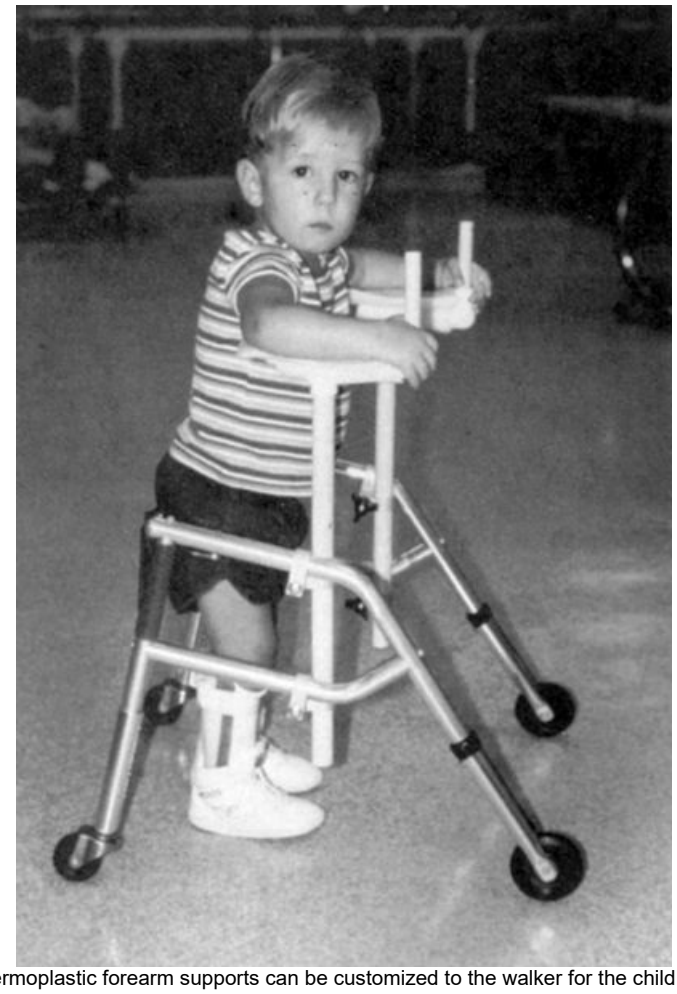


FIGURE 8-7 Thermoplastic forearm supports can be customized to the walker for the child with arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. (From Donohoe M: Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.)

Osteogenesis imperfecta

OI is an autosomal dominant disorder of collagen synthesis that affects bone metabolism. The original classification scheme of four types was devised by Sillence et al. (1979) based on clinical examination, x-ray findings, and type of inheritance. Recent research in molecular genetics has resulted in the identification of three more types, expanding the number of types from four to seven. The first four types are listed in Table 8-5. Type V and VI represent only a small percentage of cases and type VII is only found in a certain population. Types I and IV account for 95% of all cases (Martin and Shapiro, 2007). All four types are inherited as an autosomal dominant trait, which occurs in 1 per 10,000 live births. Each type has a different degree of severity. Depending on the type of OI, the infant may be born with multiple fractures or may not experience any broken bones until reaching preschool age. The more fragile the skeletal system, the less likely it is that a physical therapist assistant will be involved in the child's therapy. It would be more likely for an assistant to treat children with types I and IV because these are the most common. Individuals with OI have "brittle bones." Many also exhibit short stature, bowing of long bones, ligamentous joint laxity, and kyphoscoliosis. Average or above-average intelligence is typical.

Table 8-5

Classification of Osteogenesis Imperfecta

Type	Characteristics	Severity	Ambulation
I	AD, mild to moderate fragility	Mildest	Community
II	AD, in utero fractures	Most severe (perinatal lethal)	
III	AD, progressive deformities	Moderately severe	Exercise walking
IV	AD, mild to moderate deformity, short stature	More severe than type I	Household/community

Data from Donohoe M: Osteogenesis Imperfecta. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, pp. 332–352; Engelbert et al., 2000; Glanzman, 2014.

AD, Autosomal dominant.

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with OI typically identifies the following impairments to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Impaired range of motion
2. Impaired strength
3. Pathologic fractures
4. Delayed motor development
5. Impaired functional mobility
6. Limitations in ADLs
7. Impaired respiratory function
8. Scoliosis

Children with milder forms of OI are seen for strengthening and endurance training in a preschool or school setting. Every situation must be viewed as being potentially hazardous because of the potential for bony fracture. Safety always comes first when dealing with a potential hazard; therefore, orthoses can be used to protect joints, and playground equipment can be padded. No extra force should be used in donning and doffing orthoses. Signs of redness, swelling, or warmth may indicate more than excessive pressure and could indicate a fracture.

Caution

Fracture risk is greatest during bathing, dressing, and carrying. Baby walkers and jumper seats should be avoided. All trunk or extremity rotations should be active, not passive.

Social interaction may need to be structured if the child with OI is unable to participate in many, if any, sports-related activities. Being the manager of the softball or soccer team may be as close as the child with OI can be to participating in sports. Table 8-6 provides an overview of the management of a child with OI across the life span.

Table 8-6

Therapeutic Management of Osteogenesis Imperfecta

Time Period	Goals	Therapeutic Interventions
Infancy	Safe handling and positioning Development of age-appropriate skills	Even distribution of body weight Padded carrier Prone, side-lying, supine, sitting positions Pull-to-sit transfer contraindicated
Preschool	Protected weight bearing Safe independent self-mobility	Use of contour-molded orthoses for compression and support in standing Adaptive devices Light weights, aquatic therapy
School age and adolescence	Maximizing independence Maximizing endurance Maximizing strength Peer relationships	Mobility cart, HKAFOs, clamshell braces, air splints Ambulation without orthoses as fracture rate declines Wheelchair for community ambulation Adaptive physical education Boy Scouts, Girl Scouts, 4-H
Adulthood	Appropriate career placement	Career counseling Job site evaluation

Data from Donohoe M: Osteogenesis imperfecta. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders, pp. 333–352.

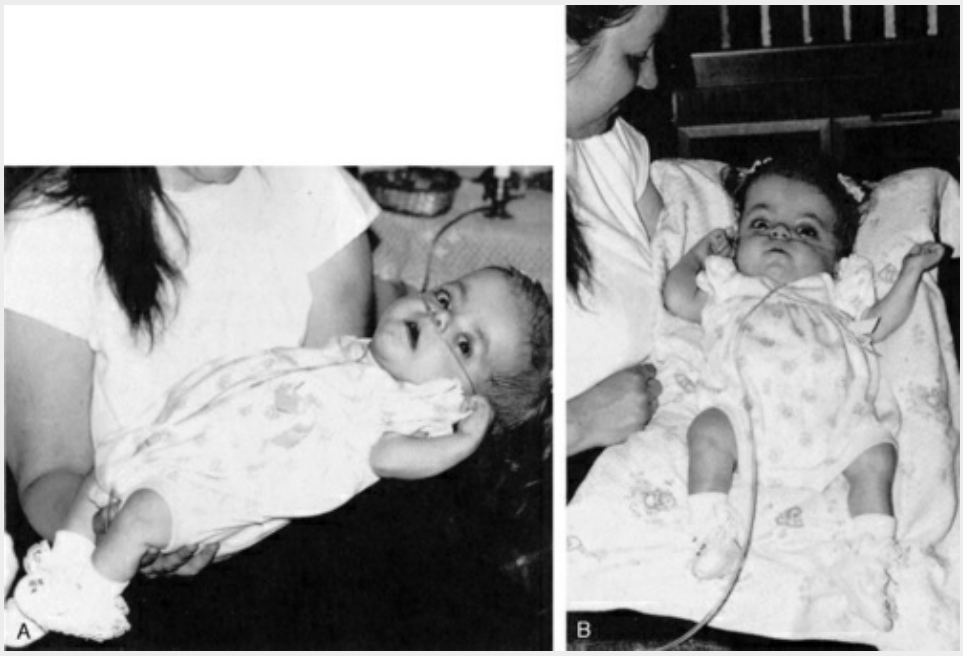
HKAFOs, Hip-knee-ankle-foot orthoses.

Handling and Positioning

Parents of an infant with OI must be taught to protect the child while carrying him or her on a pillow or in a custom-molded carrier. Handling and positioning are illustrated in Intervention 8-1. All hard surfaces must be padded. Protective positioning must be balanced with permitting the infant's active movement. Sandbags, towel rolls, and other objects may be used. Greatest care is needed when dressing, diapering, and feeding the child. When handling the child, caregivers should avoid grasping the child around the ankles, around the ribs, or under the arms because this may increase the risk of fractures. Clothing should be roomy enough so that it fits easily over the child's head. Temperature regulation is often impaired, so light, absorbent clothing is a good idea. A plastic or spongy basin is best for bathing. Despite all precautions, infants may still experience fractures. The physical therapist assistant will most likely not be involved in the initial stages of physical therapy care for the infant with OI because of the patient's fragility. However, if the physical therapist assistant is involved later, he or she does need to be knowledgeable about what has been taught to the family.

Intervention 8-1

Handling a Child with Osteogenesis Imperfecta



A. In handling a young child with osteogenesis imperfecta, support the neck and shoulders and the pelvis with your hands; do not lift the child from under the arms.
B. Placing the child on a pillow may make lifting and holding easier.

(From Myers RS: *Saunders manual of physical therapy practice,* Philadelphia, 1995, WB Saunders.)

Positioning should be used to minimize joint deformities. Using symmetry with the infant in supine and side lying positions is good. A wedge can be placed under the chest when the infant is in prone to encourage head and trunk movement while providing support (Figure 8-8). The child's feet should not be allowed to dangle while sitting but should always be supported. Water beds are not recommended for this population because the pressure may cause joint deformities.

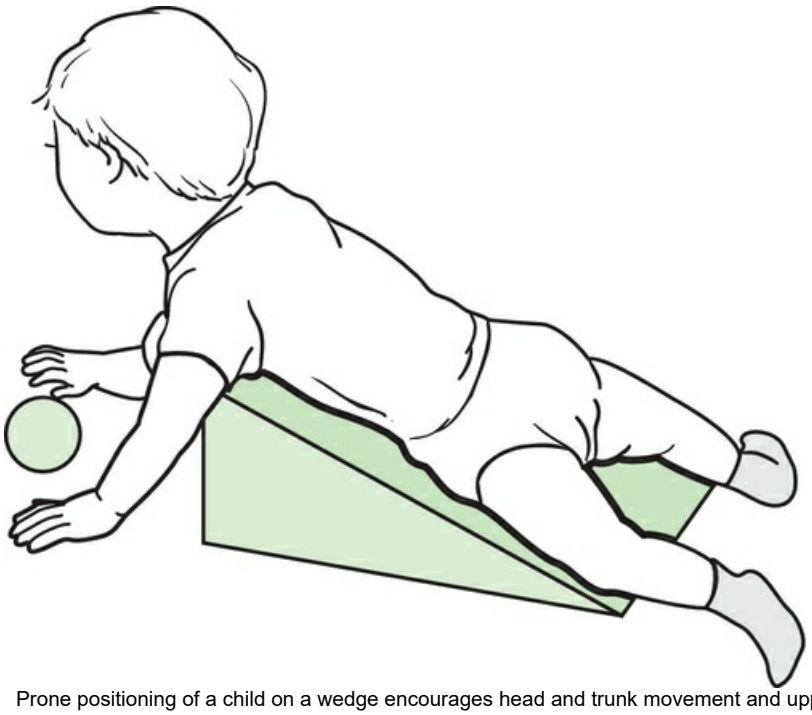


FIGURE 8-8 Prone positioning of a child on a wedge encourages head and trunk movement and upper extremity weight bearing.

Range of Motion and Strengthening

By the time the child is of preschool age, not only are the bones still fragile, the joints lax, and the muscles weak, but the child also has probably developed disuse atrophy and osteoporosis from immobilization secondary to fractures in infancy or childhood. OI has a variable time of onset depending on the type. Range of motion and strengthening are essential. Active movement promotes bone mineralization, and early protected weight bearing seems to have a positive effect on the condition. Range of motion in a straight plane is preferable to diagonal exercises, with emphasis placed on the shoulder and pelvic girdles initially. Light weights can be used to increase strength, but they need to be placed close to the joint to limit excessive torque.

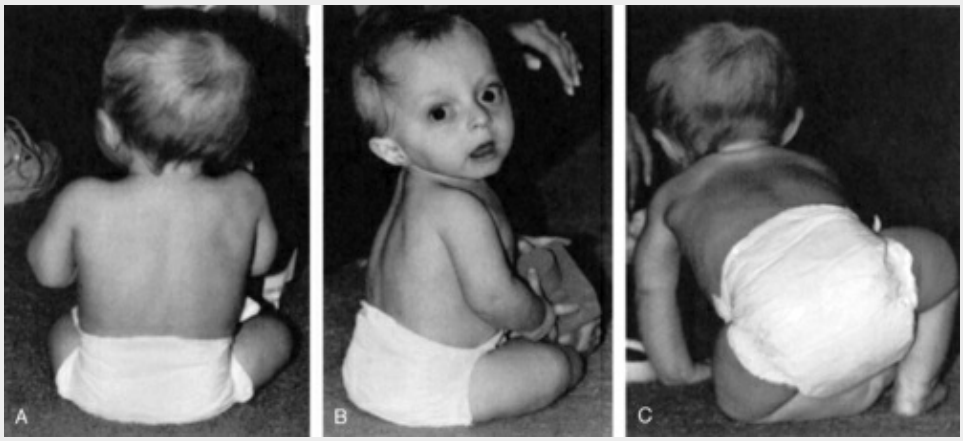
Pool exercise is good because the water can support the child's limbs, and flotation devices can be used to increase buoyancy. Water is an excellent medium for active movement progressing to some resistance as tolerated. The child's respiratory function can be strengthened in the water by having the child blow bubbles and hold his or her breath. Deep breathing is good for chest expansion, which may be limited secondary to chest wall deformities. The water temperature needs to be kept low because of these children's increased metabolism (Donohoe, 2012). Increased endurance, protected weight bearing, chest expansion, muscle strengthening, and improved coordination are all potential benefits of aquatic intervention. Initial sessions in the pool are short, lasting for only 20 to 30 minutes (Cintas, 2005).

Functional Activities and Gait

Developmental activities should be encouraged within safe limits (Intervention 8-2). Use proximal points from which to handle the child and incorporate safe, lightweight toys for motivation. Reaching in supine, side lying, and supported sitting can be used for upper extremity strengthening, as well as for encouraging weight shifting. Rolling is important as a primary means of floor mobility. Prepositioning one upper extremity beside the child's head as the child is encouraged to roll can be beneficial. All rotations should be active, not passive (Brenneman et al., 1995). Performing a traditional pull-to-sit maneuver is contraindicated. The assistant or caregiver should provide manual assistance at the child's shoulders to encourage head lifting and trunk activation when the assistant is helping the child into an upright position.

Intervention 8-2

Developmental Activities for a Child with Osteogenesis Imperfecta



A. The emphasis is on sitting with an erect trunk.
B. All rotations should be active.
C. Weight bearing on the arms and legs is indicated as tolerated.

(From Myers RS: *Saunders manual of physical therapy practice,* Philadelphia, 1995, WB Saunders.)

Sitting needs to be in erect alignment, as compared with the typical progression of children from prop sitting to no hands, because propping may lead to a more kyphotic trunk posture. External support may be necessary to promote tolerance to the upright position, such as with a corner seat or a seat insert. Sling seats in strollers and other seating devices should be avoided because they do not promote proper alignment. Once head control is present, short sitting or sitting straddling the caregiver's leg or a bolster can be used to encourage active trunk righting, equilibrium, and protective reactions. These sitting positions can also be used to begin protected weight bearing for the lower extremities, such as that seen in Figure 8-9. Scooting on a bolster or a bench can be the start of learning sitting transfers. Sitting and hitching are primary means of floor mobility for the child with OI after rolling and are used until the child masters creeping. A scooter propelled by a child's arms or legs can be used for mobility (Figure 8-10).

FIGURE 8-9 Straddle roll activity of supported sit-to-stand for lower extremity strengthening and weight bearing.
(From Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, p. 343.)

FIGURE 8-10 Scooter used for mobility that can be propelled by a child's legs or arms. (From Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders, p. 344.)

Transition to Standing

The child with OI should have sufficient upright control to begin standing during the preschool period. Prior to that time, standing and walking with insufficient support will put too much weight on the lower extremities and will produce further bending and bowing of the long bones. Susceptibility to fractures of these long bones is greatest between 2 years and 10 to 15 years (Jones, 2006). A child with OI should be fitted with a standing or ambulatory device by the age of 2 or 3 years (Pauls and Reed, 2004). Hip-knee-ankle-foot orthoses (HKAFOs) are used in conjunction with some type of standing frame such as a prone stander. Ambulation is often begun in the pool because of the protection afforded by the water. The child is then progressed to shallow water. Water can also be used to teach ambulation for the first time or to retrain walking after a fracture, but lightweight plastic splints should also be used. Duffield (1983) suggested the following progression in water: (1) in parallel bars or a standing frame, with a weight shift from side to side, forward, and backward, and (2) forward walking.

Motor skill development is delayed because of fractures and also because muscles are poorly developed and joints are hypermobile. The disease type and ability to sit by 9 or 10 months of age are the best predictors of ambulatory status (Daley et al., 1996; Engelbert and Uitervaal, 2000). Most children with type I OI will be ambulatory within their household and about half will become community ambulators without the need for any assistive device (Glanzman, 2014). This is in contrast to children with type III, in which almost 50% will depend on power mobility.

Medical Management

Typically developing children without disabilities form 7% more bone than is resorbed when their bones grow and remodel. Children with mild forms of OI only form 3% more bone than they resorb

(Batshaw et al., 2013). Prior to the last decade, there had really not been any substantive medical management of children with OI other than surgical. Many types of therapy have been tried to enhance bone formation, such as prescribing calcitonin, fluoride, and vitamin D, but none of these have been found to be successful. Pamidronate therapy has become the standard of care for those children with moderate to severe OI (Glorieux, 2007). Pamidronate is a bisphosphonate that is a powerful anitresorptive agent. It has been found to increase bone density, decrease bone pain, and increase the ability of the patients to ambulate (Land et al., 2006; DiMeglio and Peacock, 2006). Pamidronate is administered intravenously in 3-day cycles (Glorieux, 2007). Positive effects have not been documented in mild cases.

Orthotic and Surgical Management

Orthoses are made of lightweight polypropylene and are created to conform to the contours of the child's lower extremity. Initially, the orthosis may have a pelvic band and no knee joints for maximum stability. As strength and control increase, the pelvic band may be removed, and knee joints may be used. Some orthoses have a clamshell design that includes an ischial weight-bearing component, a feature borrowed from lower extremity prostheses. The ambulation potential of a child with OI is highly variable, so orthotic choices are, too. From using a standing frame and orthosis, the child progresses to some type of KAFO with the knees locked in full extension (Figure 8-11). The child first ambulates in the safety of the parallel bars, then moves to a walker, and finally progresses to crutches as limb strength and coordination improve. "Most children ambulate without braces when the fracture rate decreases" (Donohoe, 2012, p. 345).

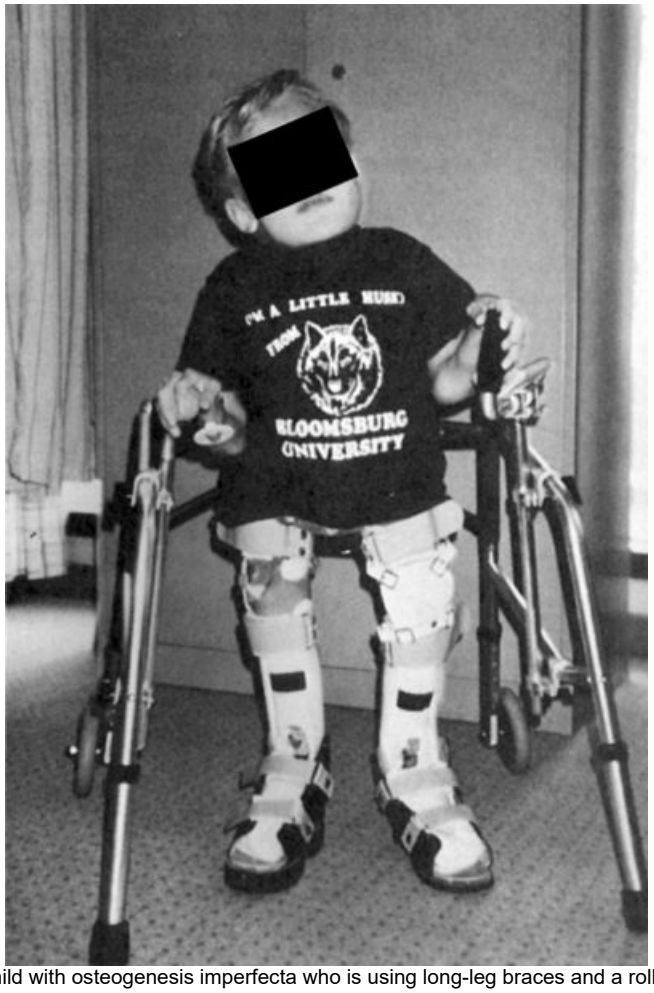


FIGURE 8-11 A child with osteogenesis imperfecta who is using long-leg braces and a rollator posture walker.
(From Bleakney DA, Donohoe M: Osteogenesis imperfecta. In Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 3. Philadelphia, 2006, WB Saunders.)

Healing time for fractures in children with OI is normally 4 to 6 weeks, the same as in children without the condition. What is not normal is the number of fractures these children can experience. Intramedullary rod fixation is the best way to stabilize fractures that occur in the long, weight-bearing bones. Special telescoping rods developed by Bailey and Dubow (1965) allow the child's bones to grow with the rod in place. This type of surgical procedure is usually performed after the child is 4 or 5 years of age to allow for sufficient growth of the femur. However, one study suggests that the operation be performed when the child is between the ages of 2 and 3.5 years, potentially to improve the child's neuromotor development (Engelbert et al., 1995). Fortunately, the frequency of fractures tends to decrease after puberty (Glorieux, 2007).

Scoliosis or kyphosis occurs in 50% of children with OI (Tachdjian, 2002). Often, the child cannot use an orthosis to manage a spinal curve, because the forces from the orthosis produce rib deformities rather than controlling the spine. Curvatures can progress rapidly after the age of 5 years, with maximum deformity present by age 12 (Gitelis et al., 1983). Surgical fixation with Harrington rods is often necessary (Marini and Chernoff, 2001). In addition to compounding the short stature in the child with OI, spinal deformities can significantly impair chest wall movement and respiratory function.

School Age and Adolescence

The goals during this period are to maximize all abilities from ambulation to ADLs. One circumstance that may make this more difficult is overprotection of the school-age child by anyone involved with managing the student's care. Strengthening and endurance exercises are continued during this time to improve ambulation. At puberty, the rate of fractures decreases, thus making ambulation without orthoses a possibility for the first time. Despite this change, a wheelchair becomes the primary means of mobility for most individuals for community mobility. This allows the child with OI to have the energy needed to keep up and socialize with her peer group. Proper wheelchair positioning must be assured to protect exposed extremities from deformities or trauma. The school-age child with OI has to avoid contact sports, for obvious reasons, but still needs to have some means of exercising to maintain cardiovascular fitness. Swimming and wheelchair court sports, such as tennis, are excellent choices.

Strengthening and fitness programs have been undertaken in children with type I and IV OI which have resulted in functional gains. Van Brussel et al. (2008) conducted a study of a 12-week graded exercise program in children with the mildest forms of OI. In this random control trial, children who participated in 30 sessions of 45 minutes of graded exercise showed significant improvements in aerobic capacity and muscle force and a decrease in subjective fatigue. The improvements were not sustained after the intervention ended, which supports the need for ongoing exercise in this group. Caudill et al. (2010) found that weak plantar flexion in children with type I OI was correlated with function as measured by the Pediatric Outcome Data Collection Instrument, the Gillette Functional Assessment Questionnaire, and the revised Faces Pain Scale. Ambulatory children with OI need to participate in progressive strengthening and functional fitness programs. Children with OI who are not ambulatory need to increase core strength and their ability to sit and hitch or sit-scoot as these are essential for transfers and self-care into adulthood. Whole body vibration has been recommended as an intervention for immobilized children and adolescents with OI (Semler et al., 2007).

Adulthood

The major challenge to individuals with OI as they move into adulthood is dealing with the secondary problems of the disorder. Spinal deformity may be severe and may continue to progress. Scoliosis is present in close to 80% to 90% of teens and adults with OI (Albright, 1981). Career planning must take into account the physical limitations imposed by the musculoskeletal problems. Assisting youth with developmental disabilities to transition into the adult care system, work, and community is a relatively new role for the physical therapist (Cicirello et al., 2012).

Cystic fibrosis

CF is an autosomal recessive disorder of the exocrine glands that is caused by a defect on chromosome 7. The pancreas does not secrete enzymes to break down fat and protein in 85% of these individuals. CF produces respiratory compromise, because abnormally thick mucus builds up in the lungs. This buildup creates a chronic obstructive lung disorder. A parent can be a carrier of this gene and may not express any symptoms. When one parent is a carrier or has the gene, the child has a 1 in 4 chance of having the disorder. The incidence is 1 in 3000 live births in whites. Five percent of the population carries a single copy of the CF gene which equates to 12 million people in the United States. Newborn screening is mandated in every state.

Diagnosis

CF is the most lethal genetic disease in whites. Diagnosis can be made on the basis of a positive sweat chloride test. Children with CF excrete too much salt in their sweat, and this salt can be measured and compared with normal values. Values greater than 60 mEq/L indicate CF. Some mothers have even stated that the child tastes salty when kissed. Because of the difficulty with digesting fat, the child may have foul-smelling stools and may not be able to gain weight. Before being diagnosed with CF, the child may have been labeled as failing to thrive because of a lack of weight gain. Prenatal diagnosis is available, and couples can be screened to detect whether either is a carrier of the gene.

Pathophysiology and Natural History

Even though the genetic defect has been localized, the exact mechanism that causes the disease is still unidentified. The ability of salt and water to cross the cell membrane is altered, and this change explains the high salt content present when these children perspire. Thick secretions obstruct the mucus-secreting exocrine glands. The disease involves multiple systems: gastrointestinal, reproductive, sweat glands, and respiratory. The two most severely impaired organs are the lungs and the pancreas. Diet and pancreatic enzymes are used to manage the pancreatic involvement. With life expectancy increasing, there has been an increased incidence of CF-related diabetes (CFRD) due to damage of the beta cells in the pancreas (Moran et al., 2009). The percentage of individuals with CFRD rises with increasing age such that 40% to 50% of adults with CF have this condition.

The structure and function of the lungs are normal at birth. Only after thick secretions begin to obstruct or block airways, which are smaller in infants than in adults, is pulmonary function adversely affected. The secretions also provide a place for bacteria to grow. Inflammation of the airways brings in infiltrates that eventually destroy the airway walls. The combination of increased thick secretions and chronic bacterial infections produces chronic airway obstruction. Initially, this condition may be reversed with aggressive bronchial hygiene and medications. Eventually, repeated infections and bronchitis progress to bronchiectasis, which is irreversible. Bronchiectasis stretches the breathing tubes and leads to abnormal breathing patterns. Pulmonary function becomes more and more severely compromised over the life span, and the person dies of respiratory failure.

Life expectancy for an individual with CF has increased over the last several decades. The median survival is into the late 30s with current newborns diagnosed with CF projected to live into their 40s (Volsko, 2009). Increase in longevity can be related to improved medical care, pharmacologic intervention, and heart and lung transplantation. The pulmonary manifestations of the disease are those that result in the greatest mortality. Sixty-seven percent of adolescents and sixteen percent of adults who receive lung transplants have CF (Boucek et al., 2003). The two biggest factors for prognosticating survival are nutrition and pulmonary function (Mahadeva et al., 1998), a higher exercise capacity has been linked to improved survival (Nixon et al., 1992).

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with CF typically identifies the following impairments to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Retained secretions
2. Impaired ability to clear airways
3. Impaired exercise tolerance
4. Chest wall deformities
5. Nutritional deficits

Chest Physical Therapy

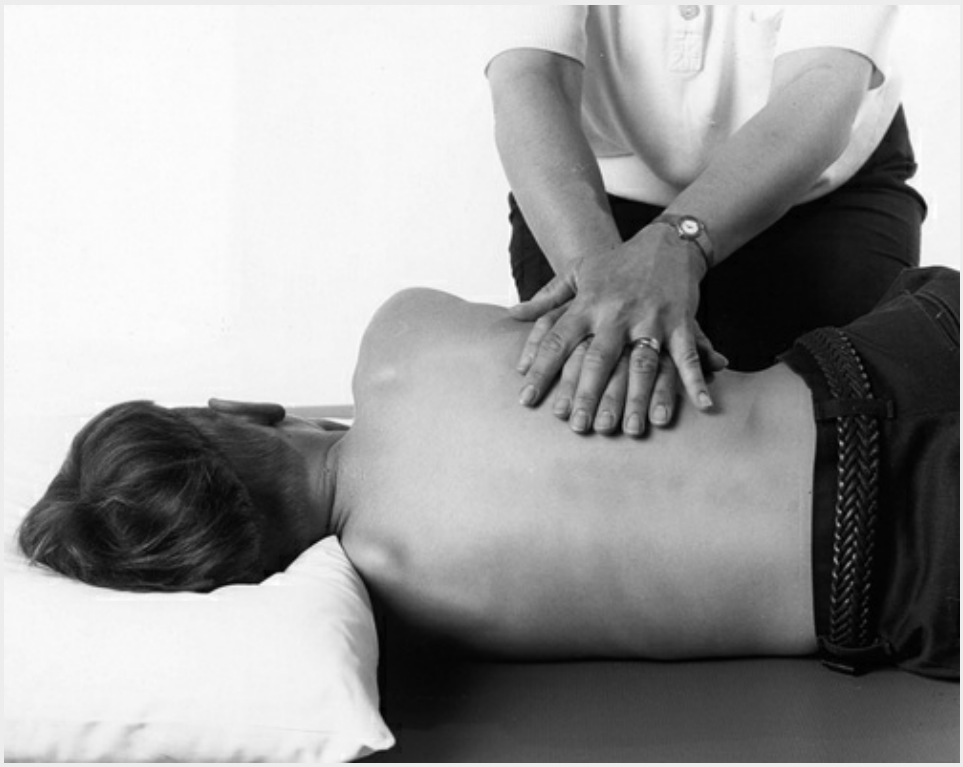
Central to the care of the child with CF is chest physical therapy (CPT). It consists of bronchial drainage in specific positions with percussion, rib shaking, vibration, and breathing exercises and retraining. Treatment is focused on reducing symptoms. Respiratory infections are to be avoided or treated aggressively. Signs of pulmonary infection include increased cough and sputum production, fever, and increased respiration rate. Additional findings could include increased white blood cell count, new findings on auscultation or radiographs, and decreased pulmonary function test values. Unfortunately, bacteria can become resistant to certain medications over time. Parents are taught to perform postural drainage three to five times a day. Adequate fluid intake is important to keep the mucus hydrated and therefore make it easier to move and be expectorated. The child with CF receives medications to provide hydration, to break up the mucus, to keep the bronchial tubes open, and to prevent bronchial spasms. These drugs are usually administered before postural drainage is performed. Antibiotics are a key to the increased survival rate in patients with CF and must be matched to the organism causing the infection.

Postural Drainage

Postural drainage is the physical act of using gravity or body position to aid in draining mucus from the lungs. The breathing tubes that branch off from the two main stem bronchi are like branches of an upside-down tree, each branch becoming smaller and smaller the farther away it is from the main trunk. The position of the body for postural drainage depends on the direction the branch points. Each segment of the lobes of the lungs has an optimal position for gravity to drain the secretions and allow them to travel back up the bronchial tree to be expelled by coughing. Postural drainage or positioning for drainage is almost always accompanied by percussion and vibration. Manual vibration is shown in Intervention 8-3. *Percussion* is manually applied with a cupped hand while the person is in the drainage positions for 3 to 5 minutes. Proper configuration of the hand for percussion is shown in Figure 8-12. Percussion dislodges secretions within that segment of the lung, and gravity usually does the rest. The classic 12 positions are shown in Figure 8-13. Percussion and vibration should be applied only to those areas that have retained secretions. Treatment usually lasts no more than 30 minutes total, with the time divided among the lung segments that need to be drained.

Intervention 8-3

Manual Vibration



Vibration is used in conjunction with positioning to drain secretions out of the lungs. The chest wall should be vibrated as the child exhales to encourage coughing.

FIGURE 8-12 Proper configuration of the hand for percussion. (From Hillegass EA, Sadowsky HS: *Essentials of cardiopulmonary physical therapy*, Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders.)

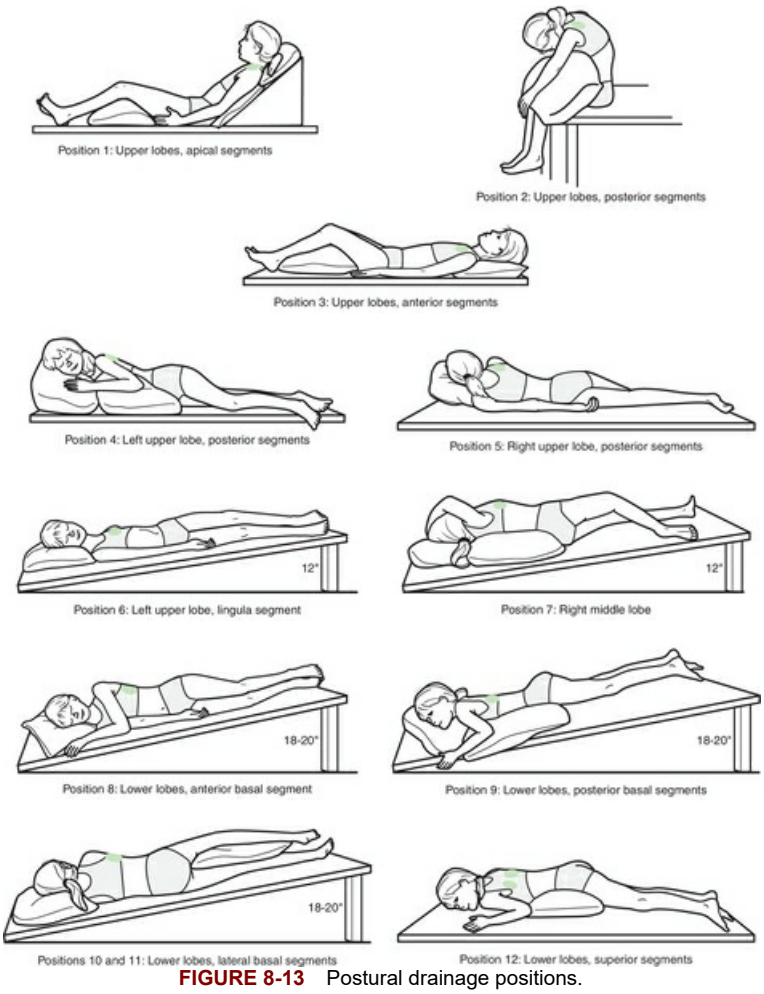


FIGURE 8-13 Postural drainage positions.

Coughing as a form of forced expiration is necessary to clear secretions. Laughing or crying can stimulate coughing. Although most children with CF cough on their own, some may need to be encouraged to do so through laughter. If this technique is unsuccessful, the tracheal "tickle" can be used by placing a finger on the trachea above the sternal notch and gently applying pressure. If you attempt this maneuver on yourself, you will feel the urge to clear your throat. To make coughing more functional and productive, the physical therapist assistant can teach the child a *forced expiration technique*. When in a gravity-aided position, the child is asked to "huff" several times after taking a medium-sized breath. This is followed by several relaxed breaths using the diaphragm. The sequence of huffing and diaphragmatic breathing is repeated as long as secretions are being expectorated. The force of the expirations (huffs) can be magnified by manual resistance over the epigastric area or by having the child actively adduct the arms and compress the chest wall laterally. This technique can be taught to children who are 4 to 5 years of age.

Alternative forms of airway clearance are undergoing research in an effort to increase effectiveness and patient usage and reduce time demands on caregivers. These alternatives include positive expiratory pressure (PEP) delivered via a mask (Figure 8-14), autogenic drainage, and use of a Flutter device (Figure 8-15). PEP is easy to use, takes less time than typical chest physical therapy, and is accepted by patients (McIlwaine et al., 1997). Most importantly, it is effective in removing secretions (Gaskin et al., 1998). "The PEP device maintains pressure in the lungs, keeping the airways open and allowing air to get behind the mucous" (Packel and von Berg, 2014). PEP is combined with the forced expiratory technique of huffing to expectorate mucus. This technique was described earlier in the postural drainage section. Autogenic drainage is a sequence of breathing exercises performed at different lung volumes. The reader is referred to Frownfelter and Dean (2012) for a more detailed description of this breathing exercise. Oscillating PEP either using the Flutter or Acapella is a popular airway clearance technique (Morrison and Agnew, 2009). The Flutter device does the same thing as the PEP mask and is also used with autogenic drainage (Packel and von Berg, 2014). The last way that high frequency vibration can be used for airway

clearance is through use of an inflatable vest that fits snugly around the chest wall. A pump generates high-frequency oscillations. This technique is called high-frequency chest wall oscillation, or HFCWO, and has been successful in short-term studies (Grece, 2000; Tecklin et al., 2000).

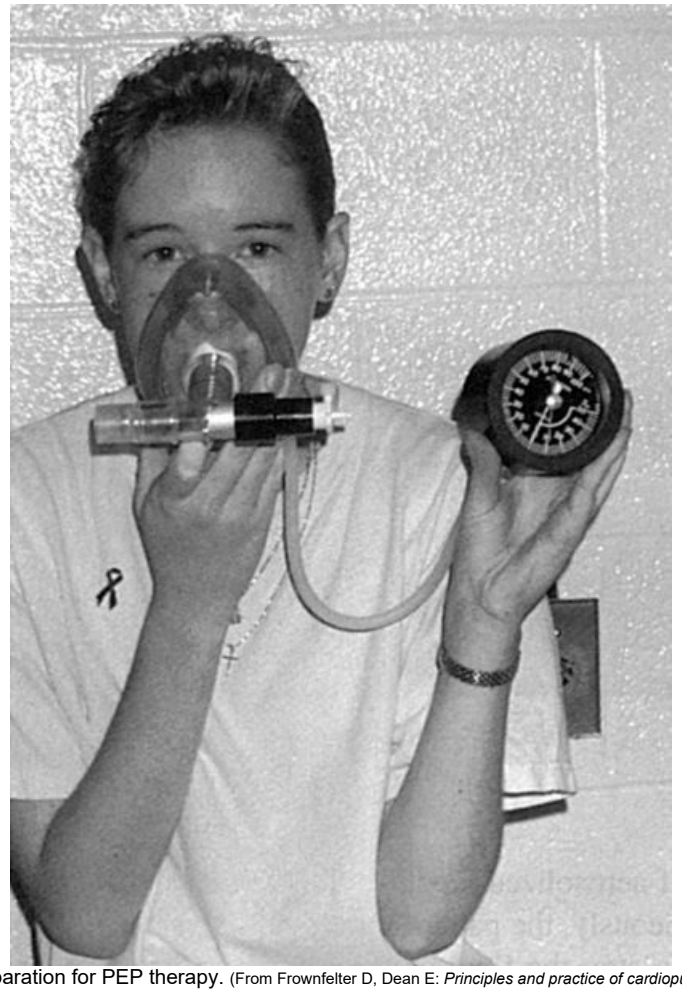


FIGURE 8-14 Preparation for PEP therapy. (From Frownfelter D, Dean E: *Principles and practice of cardiopulmonary physical therapy*, ed 3. Philadelphia, 1996, WB Saunders, p. 356.)

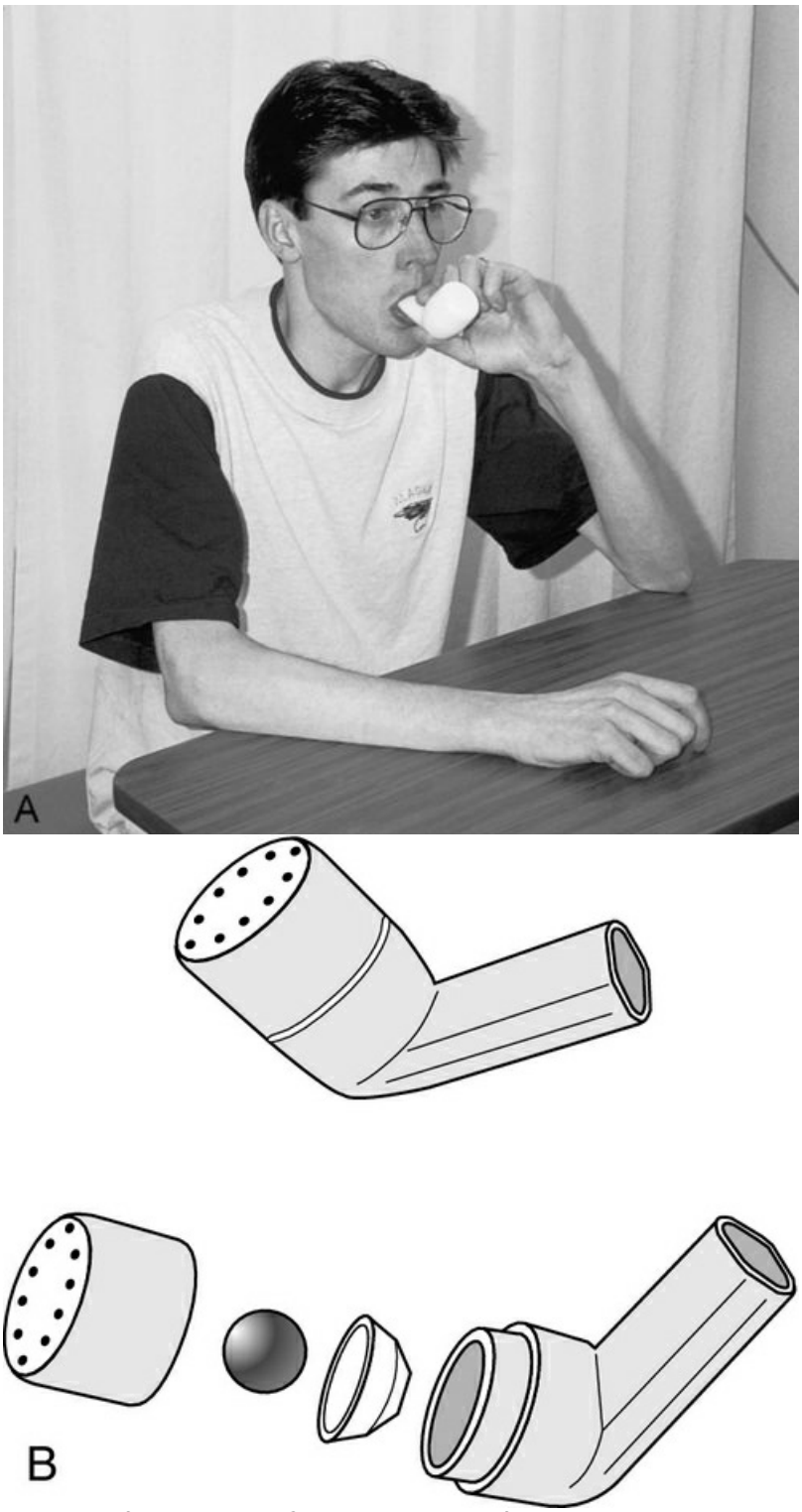


FIGURE 8-15 **A,** Use of Flutter valve. **B,** Close-up construction of valve. (**A,** From Frownfelter D, Dean E: *Principles and practice of cardiopulmonary physical therapy*, ed 3. Philadelphia, 1996, WB Saunders, p. 356.)

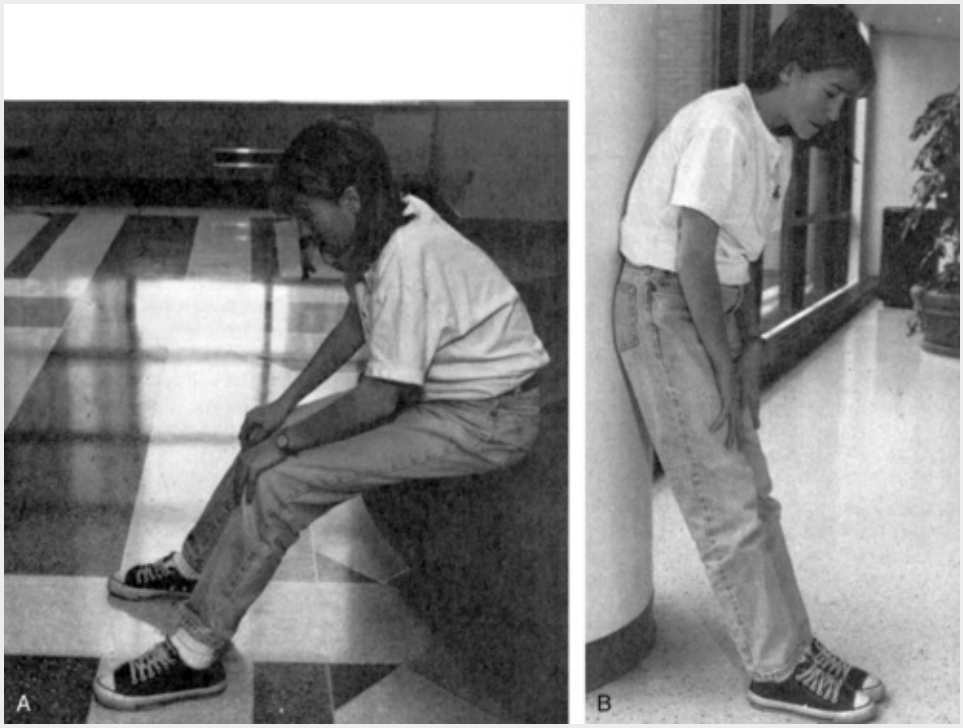
Strengthening specific muscles can assist respiration. Target the upper body, with emphasis on the shoulder girdle and chest wall muscles such as the pectoralis major and minor, intercostals, serratus, erector spinae, rhomboids, latissimus dorsi, and abdominals. Stretches to maintain optimal length-tension relationships of chest wall musculature are helpful. Respiratory efficiency can be lost when too much of the work of breathing is done by the accessory neck muscles.

Part of pulmonary rehabilitation is to teach breathlessness positions, use of the diaphragm, and lateral basal expansion. *Breathlessness positions* allow the upper body to rest to allow the major

muscle of inspiration, the diaphragm, to work most easily. Typical postures are seen in Intervention 8-4. *Diaphragmatic breathing* can initially be taught by having the child in a supported back-lying position and by using manual cues on the epigastric area (Intervention 8-5, *A*). The child should be progressed from this position to upright sitting, to standing, and then to walking (Intervention 8-5, *B, C*). The diaphragm works maximally when the child breathes deeply. Manual contacts on the lateral borders of the ribs can be used to encourage full expansion of the bases of the lungs (Intervention 8-6).

Intervention 8-4

Breathlessness Postures

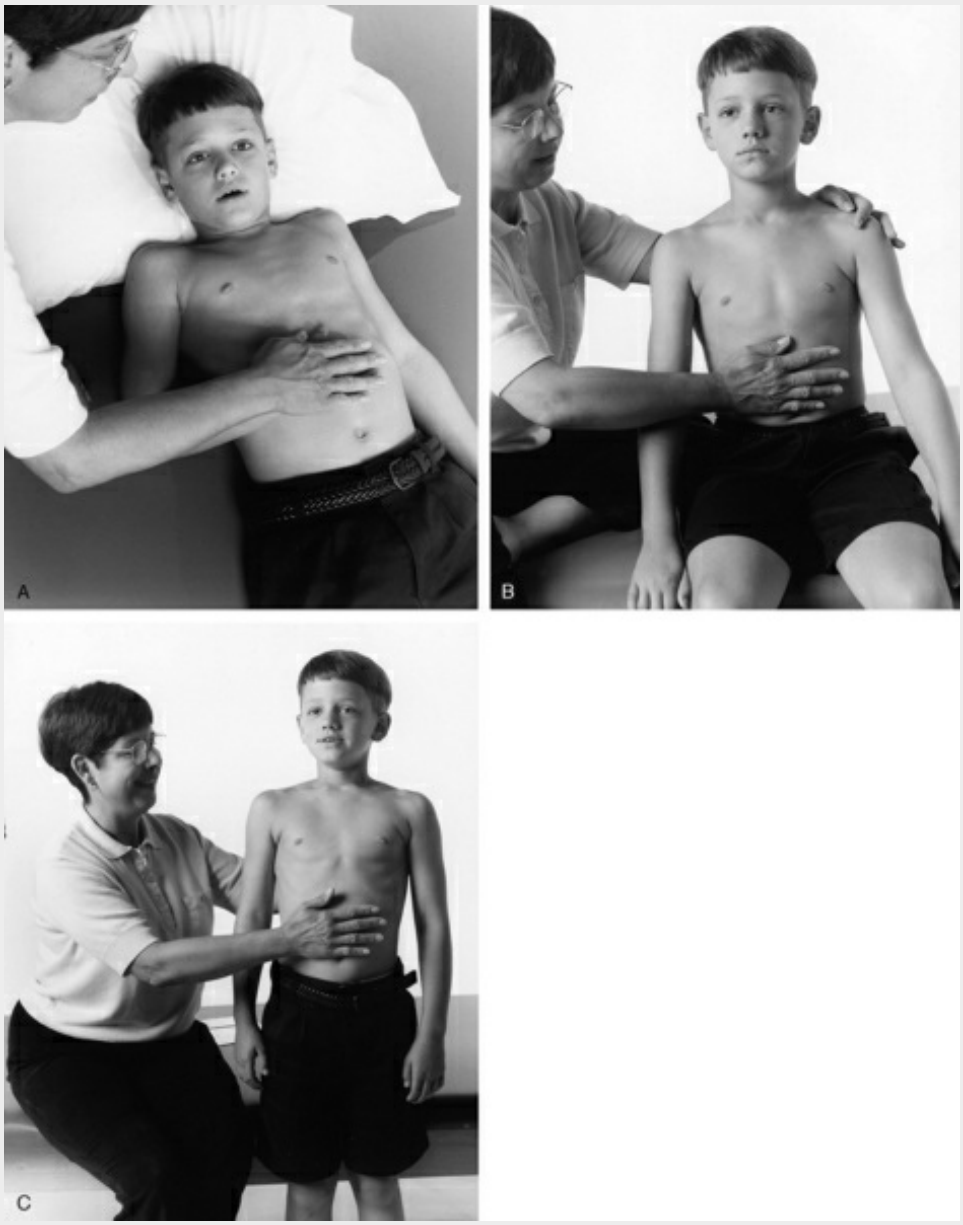


A, B. Breathlessness postures for conserving energy, promoting relaxation, and ease of breathing.

(From Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.)

Intervention 8-5

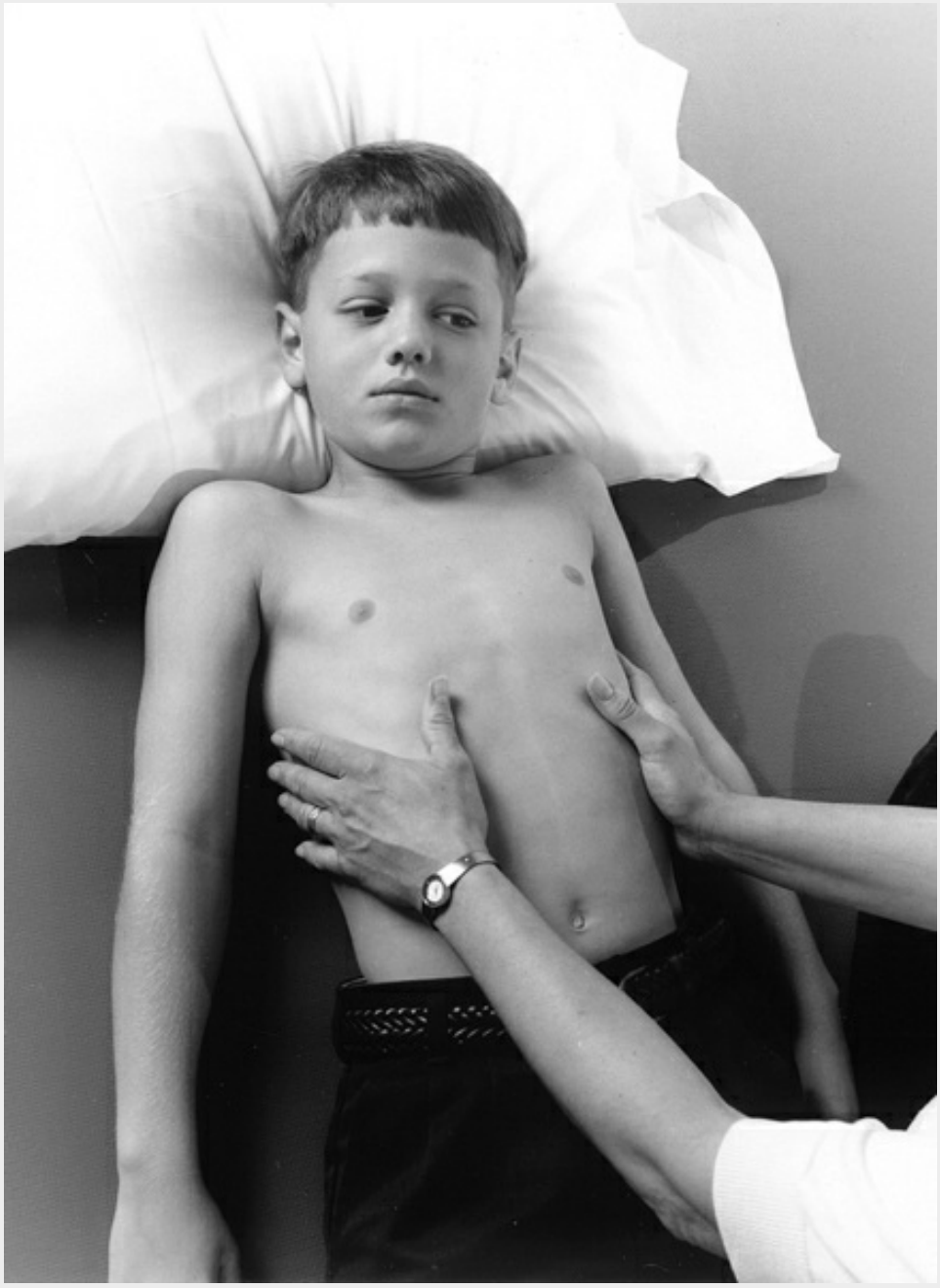
Diaphragmatic Breathing



A. Initially, the child can be taught diaphragmatic breathing in a supported back-lying position, with manual cues on the epigastric area.
B, C. Then the child should be progressed to upright sitting, standing, and eventually walking while continuing to use the diaphragm for breathing.

Intervention 8-6

Lateral Basal Chest Expansion



Manual contacts on the lateral borders of the ribs can be used to encourage full expansion of the bases of the lungs.

Exercise

Most individuals with CF can participate in an exercise program. Exercise tolerance does vary with the severity of the disease. Exercise for cardiovascular and muscular endurance plays a major role in keeping these individuals fit and in slowing the deterioration of lung function. Using exercise early on provides the child with a positive attitude toward exercise. Bike riding, swimming, tumbling, and walking are all excellent means of providing low-impact endurance training. With decreases in endurance resulting from disease progression, other activities, such as table tennis, can be suggested. Exercise programs for those with CF should be based on the results of an exercise test performed by a physical therapist. Children with CF may cough while exercising, causing brief oxygen desaturation. Coughing during exercise is not an indication to stop the exercise (Philpott et al., 2010). Some children with CF also have asthma. The results of the exercise test may indicate the need to monitor oxygen saturation using an ear or finger pulse oximeter while the child exercises.

Oxygen saturation should remain at 90% during exercise. Exercise improves not only lung function but also the habitual activity of children with CF (Paranjape et al., 2012).

When monitoring exercise tolerance with an individual with CF, use the perceived exertion rating scale and level of dyspnea scale to assess how hard the child is working. These ratings are found in Tables 8-7 and 8-8. If the child is known to desaturate with exercise, monitoring with an oximeter is indicated. If the oxygen saturation level drops below 90%, exercise should be terminated, and the supervising therapist should be notified before additional forms of exercise are attempted. Use of bronchodilating medication 20 minutes prior to exercise may also be beneficial, but again, guidelines for use of any medication should be sought from the supervising therapist in consultation with the child's physician.

Table 8-7

Rating of Perceived Exertion Scale

6	No exertion at all
7	Extremely light
8	
9	Very light
10	
11	Light
12	
13	Somewhat hard
14	
15	Hard (heavy)
16	
17	Very hard
18	
19	Extremely hard
20	Maximal exertion

(From Borg RPE scale, © Gunnar Borg, 1970, 1985, 1998, 2006.)

Table 8-8

Dyspnea Scale

+1	Mild, noticeable to patient but not observer
+2	Mild, some difficulty, noticeable to observer
+3	Moderate difficulty, but can continue
+4	Severe difficulty, patient cannot continue

From American College of Sports Medicine: *Guidelines for exercise testing and prescription*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 1991, Lea & Febiger. Reprinted with permission.

As life expectancy has increased, sports and exercise have become an even bigger part of the management of children, adolescents, and adults with CF (Hebestreit et al., 2006; Philpott et al., 2010; Orenstein et al., 2004). Webb and Dodd (1999) report that most students with CF can participate in school sports. These patients are able to continue to pursue cycling, swimming, and even running marathons as adults. Good nutrition and pulmonary function must always be considered. Caloric intake may need to be increased to avoid weight loss since individuals with CF expend more energy to perform exercises than individuals without CF. Fluid replacement during exercise is crucial and needs to include electrolytes not just water. Exercise improves airway clearance, delays decline in pulmonary function, delays onset of dyspnea and prevents decreases in bone density. However, the best reason to exercise is to improve aerobic fitness since it correlates with increased survival (Nixon et al., 1992, 2001).

Some sports to be avoided are those such as skiing, bungee jumping, parachute jumping, and scuba diving. These have inherent risks due to altitude, increasing vascular pressure, or air trapping. Sports activities should be curtailed during an infective exacerbation (Packel and von Berg, 2014). Exercising in hot weather is not contraindicated but, again, fluid and electrolytes must be sufficiently replaced. Heavy breathing is a typical response to intense exercise. Deconditioned individuals with CF may demonstrate heavy breathing at lower workloads; this is not pathologic (Orenstein, 2002). In general, individuals with CF should be encouraged to exercise and set their own limits. Quality of life is associated with fitness and physical activity in this population (Hebestreit et al., 2014).

Spinal muscular atrophy

SMA is a progressive disease of the nervous system inherited as an autosomal recessive trait. Although most of the genetic disorders discussed so far have involved the central nervous system, in SMA, the anterior horn cell undergoes progressive degeneration. Children with SMA exhibit hypotonia of peripheral, rather than of central, origin. Damage to lower motor neurons produces low muscle tone or flaccidity, depending on whether some or all of the anterior horn cells degenerate. Muscle fibers have little or no innervation from the spinal nerve if the anterior horn cell is damaged, and the result is weakness. Children with SMA have normal intelligence.

Although many types of SMA are recognized, the following discussion is limited to three types of SMA. All three types of SMA are really variations of the same disorder involving a gene mutation on chromosome 5. The earliest-occurring type of SMA is infantile-onset or acute SMA, also known as *Werdnig-Hoffman syndrome*. Type II SMA is a chronic or intermediate form. Type III SMA is known as *Kugelberg-Welander syndrome* and is the mildest form. All types of SMA differ in age at onset and severity of symptoms.

As a group of disorders, SMA occurs in 1 of 10,000 live births, is the second most common fatal recessive genetic disorder seen in children, after cystic fibrosis, and the leading cause of death in infants and toddlers (Practice committee, Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 2012). The prevalence of SMA in the population is 1 in 6000 with 1 in 40 people carrying the gene (Beroud et al., 2003). A routine test for prenatal diagnosis has recently been developed. SMA is a result of the loss of the Survival of Motor Neuron (SMN) 1 protein.

SMA Type I

The earliest-occurring and therefore the most physically devastating form is type 1, acute infantile SMA. The incidence is 1 in 6000 to 10,000 births (Pearn, 1973, 1978) with an onset between birth and 2 months. The child's limp, "frog-legged" lower extremity posture is evident at birth, along with a weak cry. Most children have a history of decreased fetal movements. Deep tendon reflexes are absent, and the tongue may fasciculate (quiver) because of weakness. Most infants are sociable and interact appropriately because they have normal intelligence. Motor weakness progresses rapidly, and death results from respiratory compromise. Infants with type I SMA usually die within the first 2 years of life (D'Amico et al., 2011). Life may be extended if the family chooses mechanical ventilation and gastrostomy feedings (Oskoui et al., 2007).

In the infant with SMA type I, positioning and family support are the most important interventions. Physical therapy focuses on fostering normal developmental activities and providing the infant with access to the environment. Positioning for feeding, playing with toys, and interacting with caregivers are paramount. Poor head control may make positioning in prone too difficult. The prone position may also be difficult for the child to tolerate because it may inhibit diaphragm movement. These infants rely on the diaphragm to breathe because their intercostal and neck accessory muscles are weak. Creative solutions to adaptive equipment needs can often be the result of brainstorming sessions with the entire healthcare team and the family. Positioning in side lying to play may be very appropriate as seen in Figure 8-16. Equipment should be borrowed rather than purchased because the length of time it will be used is limited. Because of the poor prognosis of children with this type of SMA, listening to the family's concerns is an integral part of the role of physical therapy clinicians.

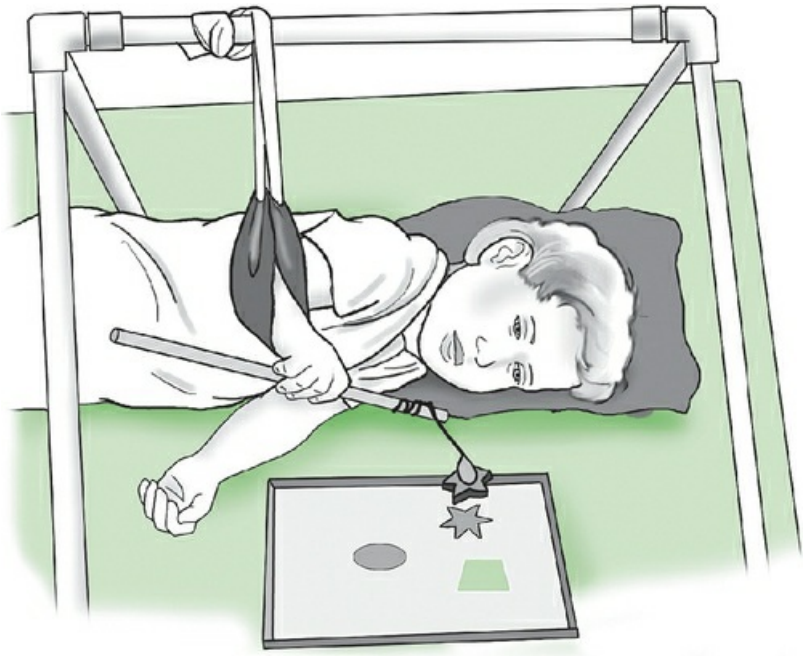


FIGURE 8-16 An overhead sling supports the forearm of a youngster with type I spinal muscle atrophy and allows her to fish with a magnet puzzle. (Adapted from Bach JR: *Management of patients with neuromuscular disease*, Philadelphia, 2004, Hanley & Belfus.)

SMA Type II

Chronic type II SMA has a later onset, which is reported to occur between 6 and 18 months. This type is characterized by the onset of proximal weakness, similar to the infantile type and has the same incidence in the population. There is a range of severity with some just able to sit unsupported. Most children with this type develop the ability to sit and, in some cases, stand but cannot walk independently. Because of trunk muscle weakness, scoliosis is a pervasive problem and may require surgical intervention. Furthermore, with a reported 12% to 15% fracture rate, weight bearing is also recommended as part of any therapeutic intervention to prevent fractures (Ballestrazzi et al., 1989). Standers and lower-extremity braces can be used to start standing at age 2 in children with type II SMA (Granata et al., 1987). Stuberg (2012) recommended a supine stander for children who lack adequate head control. Life expectancy is variable with some reaching adulthood and others succumbing in childhood. Survival is dependent on the support provided and presence of respiratory compromise.

The course of the disease is rapid at first and then stabilizes; therefore, the range of disability can be varied. Intellectually and socially, these children need to be stimulated just as much as their typically-developing peer group. The child's ability to participate in preschool and school is often hampered by inadequate positioning and lack of ability to access play and academic materials. Assistive technology can be very helpful in providing easier access. Power mobility can be used as early as 18 months (Jones et al., 2003; Jones et al., 2012). Goals can be related to improved access using switches, overhead slings, and adaptive equipment. Because the child will continue to weaken, any changes or decreases in strength should be reported by the physical therapist assistant to the supervising therapist (Ratliffe, 1998).

Physical therapy goals can also be directed toward attaining some type of functional mobility. Power mobility may be indicated even at a young age (Jones et al., 2003, 2012) for a child who is not strong enough to propel a manual chair. The physical therapist assistant can play a vital role in promoting the child's independence by teaching the child to control a power wheelchair both in and out of the classroom. Appropriate trunk support when seated must be ensured to decrease the progression of spinal deformities. Because of the tendency of the child to lean in the wheelchair even with lateral supports, one should consider alternating placement of the joystick from one side to the other (Stuberg, 2000). Although scoliosis cannot always be prevented, every effort should be made to minimize any progression of deformities and therefore to maintain adequate respiratory function.

Prognosis in this type of SMA depends on the degree and frequency of pulmonary complications. Postural drainage positioning can be incorporated into the preschool, school, and home routines. Deep breathing should be an integral part of the exercise program. Scoliosis can compound pulmonary problems, with surgical correction indicated only if the child has a good prognosis for survival. Respiratory compromise remains the major cause of death, although cardiac muscle involvement may contribute to mortality.

SMA Type III

The third type of SMA is Kugelberg-Welander syndrome, which has an onset after 18 months (D'Amico et al., 2011). This is the least involved form with an incidence of 6 in 100,000 live births. Type III can have its onset anywhere from 2 to 15 years. Characteristics include proximal weakness, which is greatest in the hips, knees, and trunk. Developmental progress is slow, with independent sitting achieved by 1 year and independent walking by 3 years. The gait is slow and waddling, often with bilateral Trendelenburg signs. These children have good upper extremity strength, a finding that can differentiate this type of SMA from DMD.

The progression of the disease is slow in type III. Physical therapy goals in the toddler and preschool period are directed toward mobility, including walking. Appropriate orthoses for ambulation could include KAFOs, parapodiums, and reciprocating gait orthoses. The reader is referred to Chapter 7 for a discussion of these devices. The physical therapist assistant may be involved in training the child to use and to apply orthotic devices. Orthotic devices assist ambulation, as does the use of a walker. Safety can be a significant issue as the child becomes weaker, so appropriate precautions such as close monitoring must be taken.

Goals for the school-aged and adolescent with SMA include support of mobility, access to and completion of academic tasks such as using a computer, positioning to prevent scoliosis and promote pulmonary hygiene, and vocational planning. The physical therapist assistant may not be treating a child with SMA that is in a regular classroom on a weekly basis since therapy may be provided in a consultative service delivery model. However, the assistant may be asked to adjust orthoses, adapt equipment or teach transfers when guided by the supervising physical therapist. Driver training may be indicated as part of the adolescent's prevocational plan. Even though children with type III SMA usually ambulate, half will lose the ability by age 10 and, by midadulthood, become wheelchair-dependent (Glanzman, 2014). Life expectancy is normal for individuals with type III so vocational planning is realistic.

The physical therapy needs are determined by the specific type of SMA, the functional limitations present, and the age of the child. While the needs of the child with infantile SMA type I are limited, the child with type II or III may very well survive into adolescence and require ongoing physical therapy intervention. Management includes positioning, functional strengthening and mobility training, standing and walking if possible, pulmonary hygiene, and ventilatory support.

Phenylketonuria

One genetic cause of intellectual disability that is preventable is the inborn error of metabolism called *phenylketonuria* (PKU). PKU is caused by an autosomal recessive trait that can be detected at birth by a simple blood test. The infant's metabolism is missing an enzyme that converts phenylalanine to tyrosine. Too much phenylalanine causes mental and growth retardation along with seizures and behavioral problems. Once the error is identified, infants are placed on a phenylalanine-restricted diet. If dietary management is begun, the child will not develop intellectual disability or any of the other neurologic signs of the disorder. If the error is undetected, the infant's mental and physical development will be delayed, and physical therapy intervention is warranted.

Duchenne muscular dystrophy

DMD is transmitted as an X-linked recessive trait, which means that it is manifested only in boys. Females can be carriers of the gene, but they do not express it, although some sources state that a small percentage of female carriers do exhibit muscle weakness. DMD affects 20 to 30 in 100,000 male births (Glanzman, 2014). Two-thirds of cases of DMD are inherited, whereas one-third of cases result from a spontaneous mutation. Boys with DMD develop motor skills normally. However, between the ages of 3 and 5 years, they may begin to fall more often or experience difficulty in going up and down stairs, or they may use a characteristic Gower maneuver to move into a standing position from the floor (Figure 8-17). The *Gower maneuver* is characterized by the child using his arms to push on the thighs to achieve a standing position. This maneuver indicates presenting muscle weakness. The diagnosis is usually made during this time. Elevated levels of creatine kinase are often found in the blood as a result of the breakdown of muscle. This enzyme is a measure of the amount of muscle fiber loss. The definitive diagnosis is usually made by muscle biopsy.

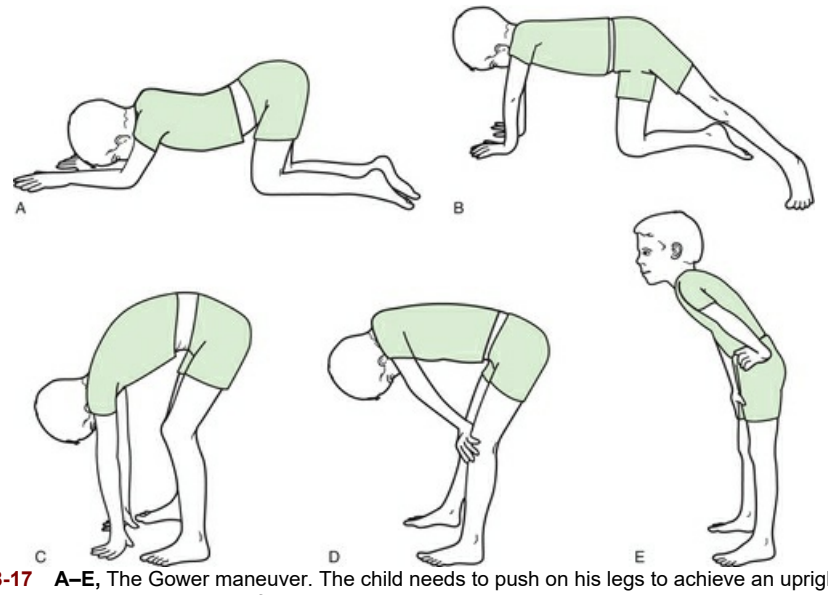


FIGURE 8-17 **A–E,** The Gower maneuver. The child needs to push on his legs to achieve an upright position because of pelvic girdle and lower extremity weakness.

Pathophysiology and Natural History

Children with DMD lack the gene that produces the muscle protein *dystrophin*. Absence of this protein weakens the cell membrane and eventually leads to the destruction of muscle fibers. The lack of another protein, *nebulin*, prevents proper alignment of the contractile filaments during muscle contraction. As muscle fibers break down, they are replaced by fat and connective tissue. Fiber necrosis, degeneration, and regeneration are characteristically seen on muscle biopsy. The replacement of muscle fiber with fat and connective tissue results in a *pseudohypertrophy*, or false hypertrophy of muscles that is most readily apparent in the calves (Figure 8-18). With progressive loss of muscle, weakness ensues, followed by loss of active and passive range of motion. Limitations in range and ADLs begin at around 5 years of age (Hallum and Allen, 2013); an inability to climb stairs is seen between 7 and 10 years of age. The ability to ambulate is usually lost between the ages of 9 and 13 years (Stuberg, 2012; Glanzman, 2014). Intellectual function is less than normal in about one-third of these children.

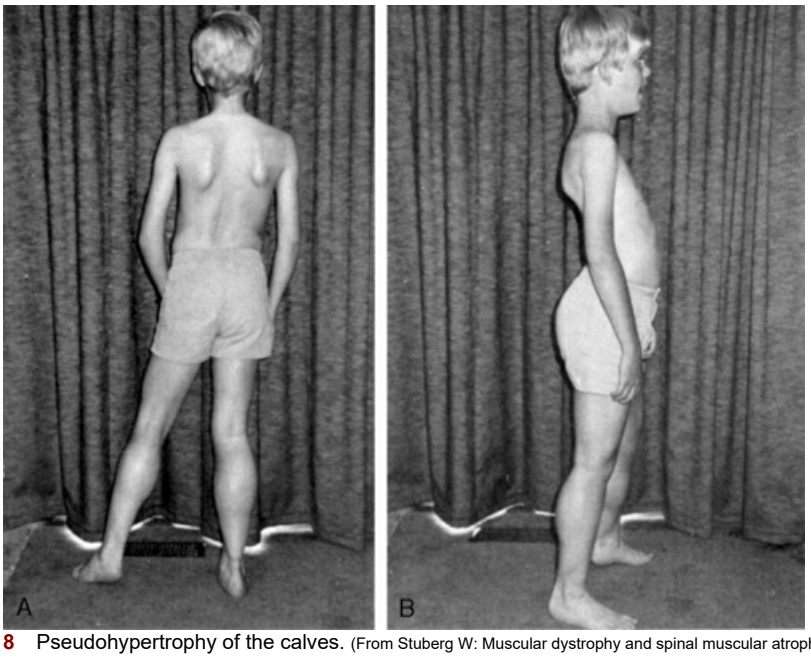


FIGURE 8-18 Pseudohypertrophy of the calves. (From Stuberg W: Muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. In Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 4. Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

Smooth muscle is also affected by the lack of dystrophin; 84% of boys with DMD exhibit cardiomyopathy, or weakness of the heart muscle. Cardiac failure results either from this weakness or from respiratory insufficiency. As the muscles of respiration become involved, pulmonary function is compromised, with death from respiratory or cardiac failure usually occurring before age 25. Life can be prolonged by use of mechanical ventilation, but this decision is based on the individual's and the family's wishes. Bach et al. (1991) reported that satisfaction with life was positive in a majority of individuals with DMD who used long-term ventilatory support. Survival is being prolonged by use of noninvasive ventilator support (Bach and Martinez, 2011).

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with DMD typically identifies the following impairments, activity limitations, or participation restrictions to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Impaired strength
2. Impaired active and passive range of motion
3. Impaired gait
4. Limitations in functional abilities
5. Impaired respiratory function
6. Spinal deformities—apparent or potential
7. Potential need for adaptive equipment, orthoses, and wheelchair
8. Emotional trauma of the individual and family

The family's understanding of the disease and its progressive nature must be taken into consideration when the physical therapist plans an intervention program. The ultimate goal of the program is to provide education and support for the family while managing the child's impairments. Each problem or impairment is discussed, along with possible interventions.

The physical therapy goals are to prevent deformity, to prolong function by maintaining capacity for ADLs and play, to facilitate movement, to assist in supporting the family and to control discomfort. Management is a total approach requiring blending of medical, educational, and family goals. Treatment has both preventive and supportive aspects.

Weakness

Proximal muscle weakness is one of the major clinical features of DMD and is most clearly apparent in the shoulder and pelvic girdles (see Figure 8-18). The loss of strength eventually progresses distally to encompass all the musculature. Whether exercise can be used to counteract the

pathologic weakness seen in muscular dystrophies is unclear. Strengthening exercises have been found to be beneficial by some researchers and not by others. More important, however, although exercise has not been found to hasten the progression of the disease, the role of exercise remains controversial (Ansved, 2003). Some therapists do not encourage active resistive exercises (Florence, 1999) and choose instead to focus on preserving functional levels of strength by having the child do all ADLs. Other therapists recommend that submaximal forms of exercise are beneficial but advocate these activities only if they are not burdensome to the family. Movement in some form must be an integral part of a physical therapy plan of care for the child with DMD.

Theoretically, exercise should be able to assist intact muscle fibers to increase in strength to make up for lost fibers. Key muscles to target, if exercise is going to be used to treat weakness, include the abdominals, hip extensors and abductors, and knee extensors. In addition, the triceps and scapular stabilizers should be targeted in the upper extremities. Recreational activities, such as bike riding and swimming, are excellent choices and provide aerobic conditioning. Even though the exact role of exercise in these children is unclear, clinicians generally agree that overexertion, exercising at maximal levels, and immobility are detrimental to the child with DMD. High resistance and eccentric training should also be avoided (Ansved, 2003). Exercise capacity is probably best determined by the stage and rate of disease progression (Ansved, 2003; McDonald, 2002). Exercise may be more beneficial early as opposed to later in the disease process.

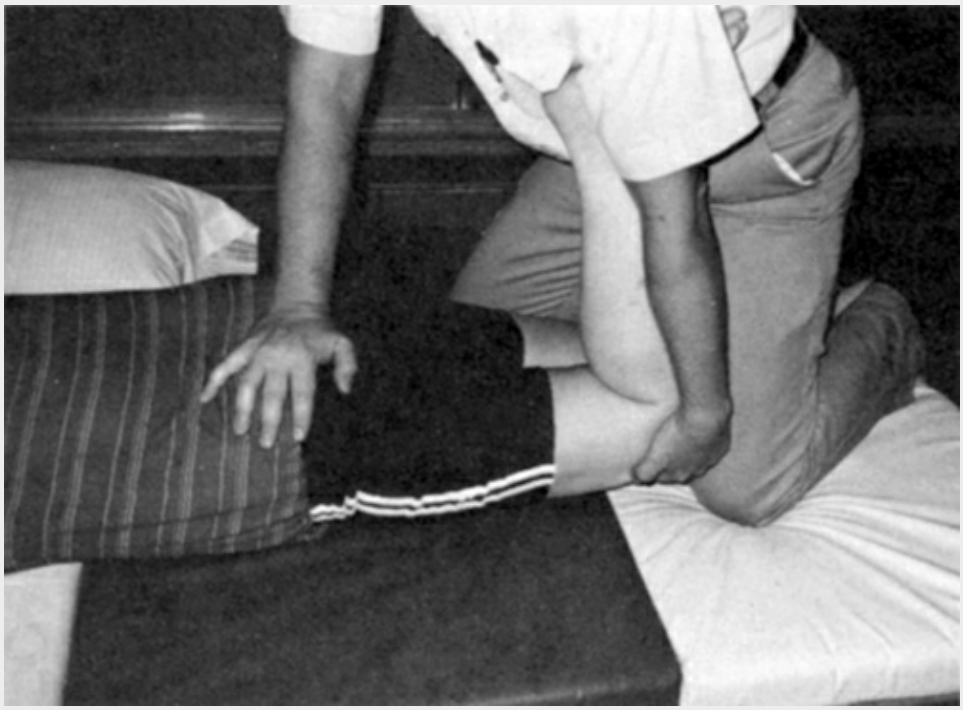
Mobility status is related to knee extension strength and gait velocity in children with DMD. Boys with less than antigravity (3/5) quadriceps strength lost the ability to ambulate (McDonald et al., 1995, McDonald, 2002). Walking should be done for a minimum of 2 to 3 hours a day, according to many sources (Siegel, 1978; Ziter and Allsop, 1976). The speed of walking has been used to predict the length of time that will pass before a child with DMD will require the use of a wheelchair. A high percentage of boys who walked 10 meters in less than 6 seconds were more than 2 years away from using a wheelchair whereas all of the boys who took 12 seconds or more to walk 10 meters required a wheelchair within a year (McDonald et al., 1995). The longer a child can remain ambulatory, the better.

Range of Motion

The potential for muscle contractures is high, and every effort should be made to maintain range of motion at all joints. Specifically, attention should be paid to the gastrocnemius-soleus complex and the tensor fasciae latae. Tightness in these muscle groups results in gait deviations and a widened base of support. Stretching of the illiopsoas, iliotibial band, and tensor fasciae latae is demonstrated in Intervention 8-7. Although contractures cannot be prevented, their progression can be slowed (Stuberg, 2012). A prone positioning program is crucial for managing the detrimental effect of gravity. Time in prone counteracts the potential formation of hip and knee flexion contractures, which develop from too much sitting. The physical therapist assistant may teach a home program to the child's parents and may monitor position changes within the classroom. Prolonged sitting can all too quickly lead to lower extremity flexion deformities that can hinder ambulation.

Intervention 8-7

Stretching of the Iliopsoas, Iliotibial Band, and Tensor Fasciae Latae



Prone stretching of the hip flexors, iliotibial band, and tensor fasciae latae. The hip first is positioned in abduction and then is moved into maximal hip extension and then hip adduction. The knee can be extended to provide greater stretch for the iliotibial and tensor muscles.

(From Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children*, ed 3. Philadelphia, 2006, WB Saunders.)

Alternatives to a sitting position should be scheduled several times a day. When the child is in preschool, the prone position can be easily incorporated into nap or rest time. A prone stander can be used during class time when the child is standing and working on the blackboard can be incorporated into the child's daily classroom routine. Prone positioning over a wedge can also be used. At home, sleeping in the prone position should be encouraged as long as it does not compromise the child's respiratory function.

Skin Care

Skin integrity must always be monitored. Pressure relief and use of a cushion must be part of the daily routine once the child is using a wheelchair for any length of time. If the child is using a splint or orthosis, wearing times must be controlled and the skin must be inspected on a routine basis.

Gait

Children with DMD ambulate with a characteristic waddle because the pelvic girdle muscles weaken. Hip extensor weakness can lead to compensatory lordosis, which keeps the center of mass posterior to the hip joint, as seen in Figure 8-18. Excessive lateral trunk lean during gait may be seen in response to bilateral Trendelenburg signs indicative of hip abductor weakness. Knee hyperextension may be substituted for quadriceps muscle strength, and it can further increase the lumbar lordosis. Failure to keep the body weight in front of the knee joint or behind the hip joint results in a loss of the ability to stand. Plantar flexion contractures can compromise toe clearance, can lead to toe walking and may make balance even more precarious.

Functional rating scales can be helpful in documenting the progression of disability. Several are available. Box 8-3 depicts simple scales for the upper and lower extremities. The Pediatric Evaluation of Disability Inventory (Haley et al., 1992) or the School Function Assessment (Coster et al., 1998) can be used to obtain more specific information about mobility and self-care. The supervising physical therapist may use this information for treatment planning, and the physical therapist assistant may be responsible for collecting data as part of the ongoing assessment. The physical therapist assistant also provides feedback to the primary therapist for appropriate

modifications to the child's plan of care.

Box 8-3

Vignos Classification Scales for Children with Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

Upper extremity functional grades

1. Can abduct arms in a full circle until they touch above the head.
2. Raises arms above the head only by shortening the lever arm or using accessory muscles.
3. Cannot raise hands above the head but can raise a 180-mL cup of water to mouth using both hands, if necessary.
4. Can raise hands to mouth but cannot raise a 180-mL cup of water to mouth.
5. Cannot raise hands to mouth, but can use hands to hold a pen or pick up a coin.
6. Cannot raise hands to mouth and has no functional use of hands.

Lower extremity functional grades

1. Walks and climbs stairs without assistance.
2. Walks and climbs stairs with aid of railing.
3. Walks and climbs stairs slowly with aid of railing (more than 12 seconds for four steps).
4. Walks unassisted and rises from a chair but cannot climb stairs.
5. Walks unassisted but cannot rise from a chair or climb stairs.
6. Walks only with assistance or walks independently in long-leg braces.
7. Walks in long-leg braces but requires assistance for balance.
8. Stands in long-leg braces but is unable to walk even with assistance.
9. Must use a wheelchair.
10. Bedridden.

(Data from Vignos PJ, Spencer GE, Archibald KC: Management of progressive muscular dystrophy in childhood. *JAMA* 184:89–96, 1963.)

Medical Management

No known treatment can stop the progression of DMD. Steroid therapy has been used to slow the progression of both the Duchenne and Becker forms of muscular dystrophy. Becker is a milder form of muscular dystrophy with a later onset, slower progression, and longer life expectancy. Prednisolone has been shown to improve the strength of muscles and to decrease the deterioration of muscle function (Dubowitz et al., 2002; Backman and Hendriksson, 1995; Hardiman et al., 1993). Two additional promising approaches for the treatment of DMD are myoblast transplantation and gene therapy. Both approaches have met with many difficulties, mostly involving immune reactions (Moisset et al., 1998). No reports have been published to date of improved strength in individuals with DMD using the myoblast transfer (Smythe et al., 2000). A report of a pilot study of myoblast transfer in the treatment of subjects with Becker muscular dystrophy stated that myoblast implantation has had limited success (Neumeyer et al., 1998).

Surgical and Orthotic Management

As the quality of the child's functional gait declines, medical management of the child with DMD is broadened. Surgical and orthotic solutions to the loss of range or ambulation abilities are by no means universal. Many variables must be factored into a final decision whether to perform surgery or to use an orthosis. Some clinicians think that it is worse to try to postpone the inevitable, whereas others support the child's and family's right to choose to fight for independence as long as resources are available. Surgical procedures that have been used to combat the progressive effects of DMD are Achilles tendon lengthening procedures, tensor fasciae latae fasciotomy, tendon transfers, tenotomies, and, most recently, myoblast transfers. These procedures must be followed by vigorous physical therapy to achieve the best gains. Ankle-foot orthoses (AFOs) are often prescribed following heel cord lengthening. Use of KAFOs has also been tried; one source reported that early surgery followed by rehabilitation negated the need for KAFOs (Bach and McKeon, 1991).

Orthoses can be prescribed to maintain heel cord length while the patient is ambulating. A night

splint may be fabricated to incorporate the knees, because knee flexion contractures can also be a problem. In the majority of cases, however, as the quadriceps muscles lose strength, the child develops severe lordosis as compensation. This change keeps the body weight in front of the knee joints and allows gravity to control knee extension. The child's gait becomes lurching, and if the ankles do not have sufficient range to keep the feet plantigrade, dynamic balance becomes impaired. Surgical release of the Achilles tendon followed by use of polypropylene AFOs may prolong the length of time a child can remain ambulatory. However, once ambulation skills are lost, the child will require a wheelchair.

Adaptive Equipment

The physical therapist assistant may participate in the team's decision regarding the type of wheelchair to be prescribed for the child with DMD. The child may not be able to propel a manual wheelchair because of upper extremity weakness, so consideration of a lighter sports wheelchair or a power wheelchair may be appropriate. Energy cost and insurance or reimbursement constraints must be considered. The child may be able to propel a lighter wheelchair during certain times of the day or use it to work on endurance, but in the long term, he may be more mobile in a power wheelchair, as seen in Figure 8-19. If reimbursement limitations are severe and only one wheelchair is possible, power mobility may be a more functional choice. Other adaptive equipment such as mobile arm supports for feeding or voice-activated computer and environmental controls may also be considered to augment the child's level of function.

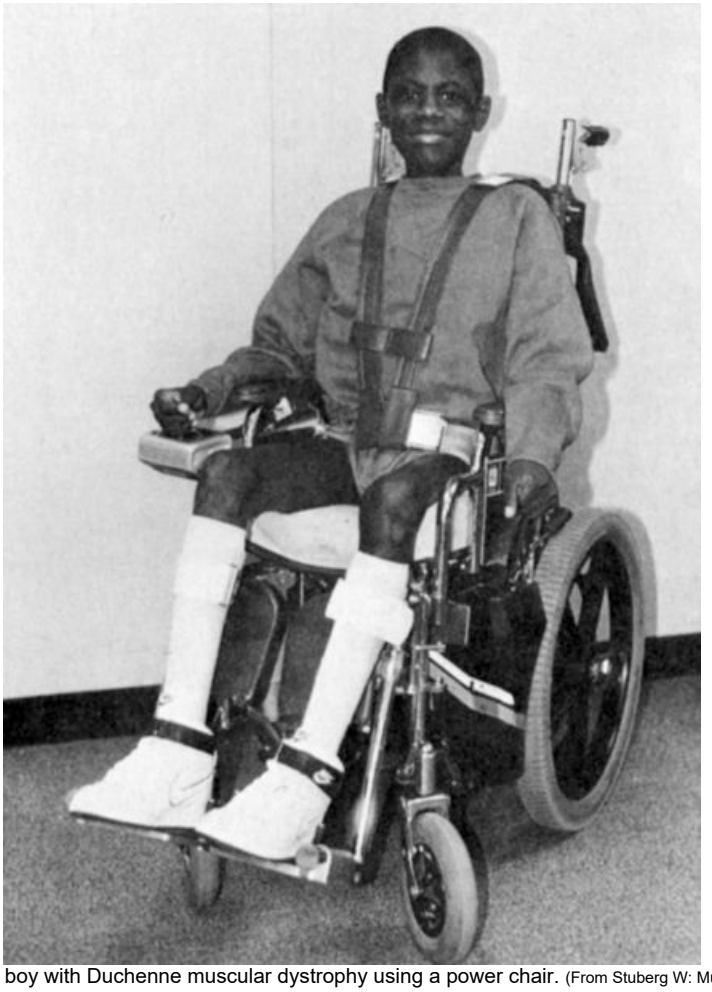


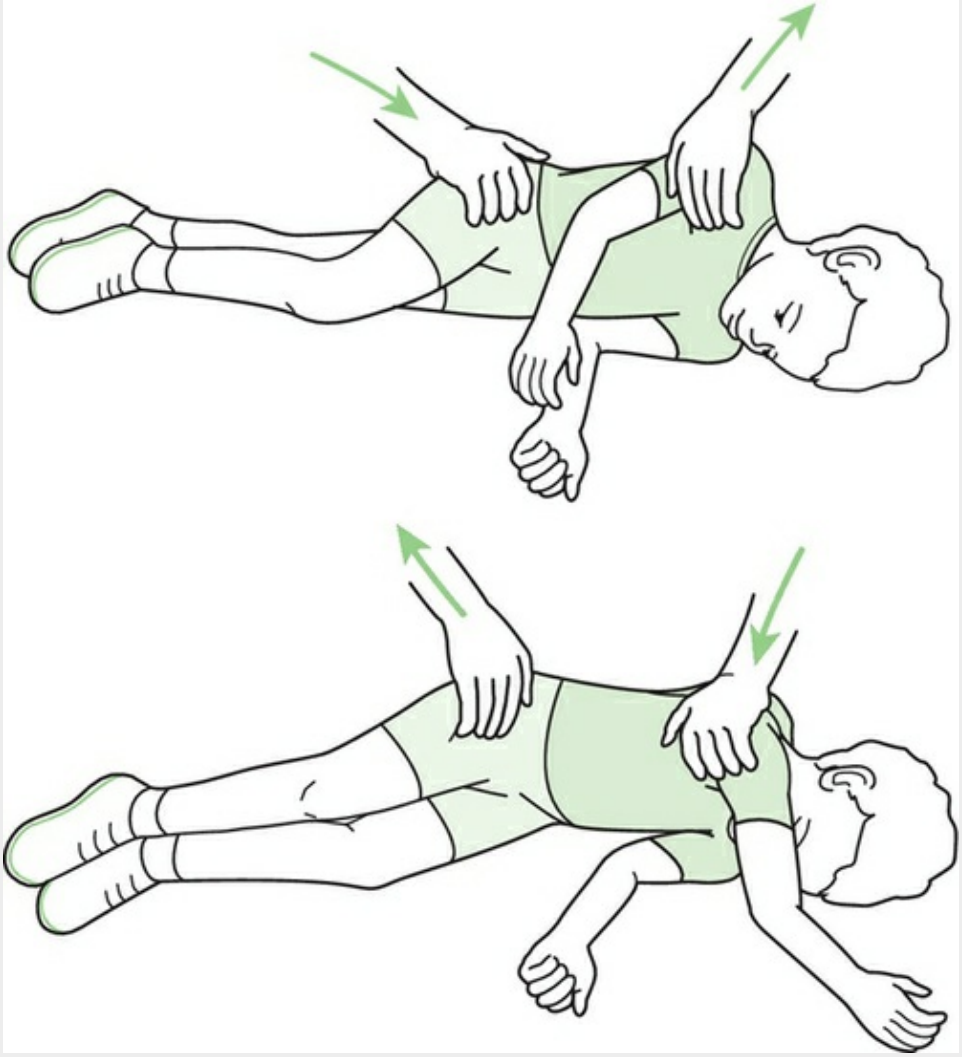
FIGURE 8-19 A boy with Duchenne muscular dystrophy using a power chair. (From Stuberg W: Muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. In Campbell SK, editor: *Physical therapy for children,* Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders.)

Respiratory Function

Respiratory function must be targeted for aggressive management. Breathing exercises and range of motion should be part of a home exercise program and incorporated into any therapy session. Flexion of the arms or legs can be paired with inspiration, while extension can be linked to expiration. Diaphragmatic breathing is more efficient than use of accessory muscles and therefore should be emphasized along with lateral basal chest expansion. Chest wall tightness can be discouraged by active trunk rotation, passive counterrotation, and manual stretching (Intervention 8-8). On occasion, postural drainage with percussion may be needed to clear the lungs of retained secretions. Children often miss school because of respiratory involvement. Parents should be taught appropriate airway clearance techniques, as described in the section on CF.

Intervention 8-8

Chest Wall Stretching



Chest wall mobility can be promoted by active trunk rotation, passive counterrotation, and manual stretching. Stretching counteracts the tendency to tightness that occurs as the child becomes more sedentary.

Activities that promote cardiovascular endurance are as important as stretching and functional activities. Always incorporate deep breathing and chest mobility into the child's upper- or lower-extremity exercises. Wind sprints can be done when the child is in a wheelchair. These are fast,

energetic pushes of the wheelchair for set distances. The child can be timed and work to improve or maintain his best time. An exercise program for a child with DMD needs to include an aerobic component, because the respiratory system ultimately causes the child to die from the effects of the disease. Swimming is an excellent aerobic exercise for children with DMD.

At least biannual reexaminations are used to document the inevitable progression of the disease. Documenting progression of the disease is critical for timing of interventions as the child declines from one functional level to another. Whether to have surgical treatment or to use orthotic devices remains controversial. Accurate data must be kept to allow one to intervene aggressively to provide adequate mobility and respiratory support for the individual and his family. Table 8-9 outlines some of the goals, strategies, and interventions that could be implemented over the life span of a patient with DMD.

Table 8-9

Management of Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

Time Period	Goals	Strategies	Medical/Surgical	Home Program
School age	Prevent deformity Preserve independent mobility Preserve vital capacity	Stretching Strengthening Breathing exercises	Splints/AFOs Monitor spinal alignment Manual wheelchair as walking becomes difficult Motorized scooter	ROM program Night splints Cycling or swimming Prone positioning Blow bottles
Adolescence	Manage contractures Maintain ambulation Assist with transfers and ADLs	Stretching Guard during stair climbing or general walking Positioning ADLs, ADL modifications Strengthening shoulder depressors and triceps	AFOs/KAFOs before ambulation ceases Surgery to prolong ambulatory ability Proper wheelchair fit and support Surgery for scoliosis management	ROM program Night splints Prone positioning Blow bottles Assistance with transfers and ADLs
Adulthood	Monitor respiratory function Manage mobility and transfers	Breathing exercises, postural drainage, assisted coughing Assistive technology	Mechanical ventilation Monitoring oxygen saturation Power mobility	Hospital bed Ball-bearing feeder Hoyer lift

From Stuberg WA: Muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. In Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors: *Physical therapy for children,* ed 2. Philadelphia, 2000, WB Saunders, pp. 339–369.

ADLs, Activities of daily living; *AFOs,* ankle-foot orthoses; *KAFOs,* knee-ankle-foot orthoses; *ROM,* range of motion.

Becker muscular dystrophy

Children with Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD) have an onset of symptoms between 5 and 10 years of age. This X-linked dystrophy occurs in 5 per 100,000 males, so it is rarer than DMD. Dystrophin continues to be present but in lesser amounts than normal. Laboratory findings are not as striking as in DMD; one sees less elevation of creatine kinase levels and less destruction of muscle fibers on biopsy. Another significant difference from DMD is the lower incidence of intellectual disability with the Becker type of muscular dystrophy. Physical therapy management follows the same general outline as for the child with DMD; however, the progression of the disorder is much slower. Greater potential and expectation exist for the individual to continue to ambulate until his late teens. Prevention of excessive weight gain must be vigorously pursued to avoid use of a wheelchair too early, because life expectancy reaches into the 40s. Providing sufficient exercise for weight control may be an even greater challenge in this population because the use of power mobility is more prevalent.

The transition from adolescence to adulthood is more of an issue in BMD because of the longer life expectancy. Individuals with BMD live into their 40s with death secondary to pulmonary or cardiac failure (Glanzman, 2014). Vocational rehabilitation can be invaluable in assisting with vocational training or college attendance, depending on the patient's degree of disability and disease progression. Regardless of vocational or avocational plans, the adult with BMD needs assistance with living arrangements. Evaluation of needs should begin before the completion of high school.

Fragile X syndrome

Fragile X syndrome (FXS) is the leading inherited cause of intellectual disability. It occurs in 1 per 4000 males and 1 per 8000 females (Jorde et al., 2010). Detection of a fragile site on the X chromosome at a cellular level makes it possible to confirm this entity as the cause of a child's intellectual disability. The fragile X gene (FMR) codes for a fragile X mental retardation protein (FMRP). FXS is characterized by intellectual disability, unusual facies, poor coordination, a generalized decrease in muscle tone, and enlarged testes in male patients after puberty. These children may have a long, narrow face with a prominent forehead, jaw, and ears (Figure 8-20). The clinical manifestations of the disorder vary depending on the completeness of the mutation. The FMR gene determines the number of repeats of a series of three amino acids. When the FMR gene is inherited the number of repeats can go from normal (6 to 40 repeats) to a permutation (50 to 200 repeats) to a full blown mutation of greater than 200 repeats. In the full blown mutation almost no FMRP is produced. The less FMRP produced, the more severe the intellectual disability. Over successive generations there is an increased risk of the number of repeats expanding so that the disease appears to worsen in successive generations. Genetic counseling for the family of a child with fragile X is extremely important for them to understand the reproductive risks.

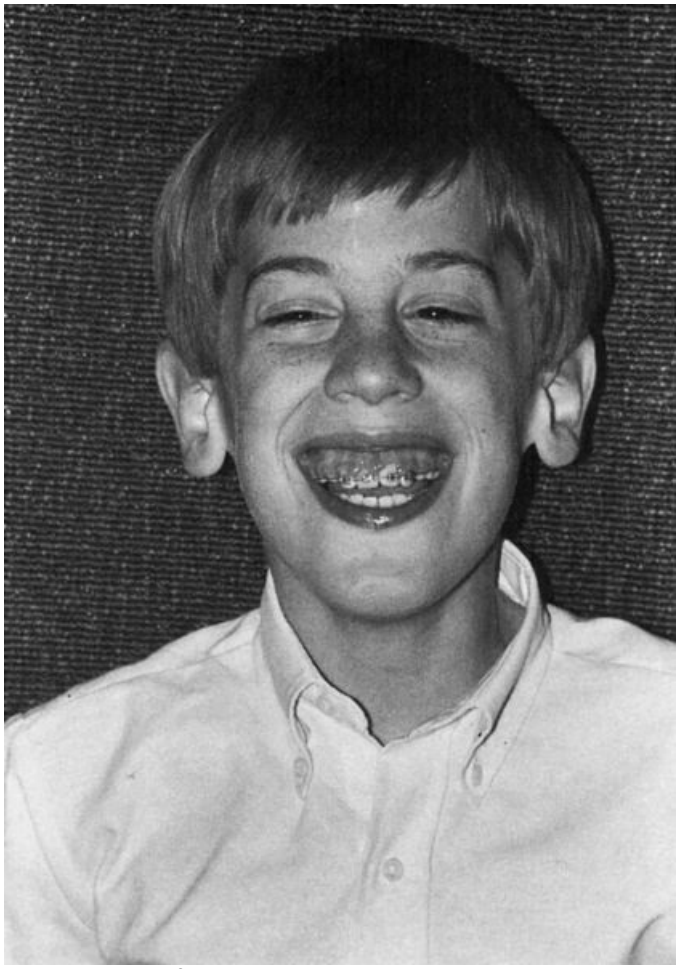


FIGURE 8-20 A 6-year-old boy with fragile X syndrome. (From Hagerman R: Fragile X syndrome. In Allen PJ, Vessey JA, and Schapiro NA, editors: Primary care of the child with a chronic condition, ed 5, St. Louis, 2010, Mosby, pp 514–526.)

Connective tissue involvement can include joint hypermobility, flatfeet, inguinal hernia, pectus excavatum, and mitral valve prolapse (Goldstein and Reynolds, 2011). Symptoms in girls are not as severe as in boys. Girls do not usually present with dysmorphic features (structural differences often seen in the face) or connective tissue abnormalities. Females with fragile X are more likely to

have normal intelligence but may have a learning disability. Children of female carriers, however, have a greater risk of the disorder than those of male carriers which again reinforces the importance of genetic counseling for this condition. Behavioral characteristics of both males and females with FXS include a short attention span, impulsivity, tactile defensiveness, hyperactivity and perseveration in speech and motor actions (Goldstein and Reynolds, 2011).

FXS is the most common single gene defect associated with autism spectrum disorder. Thirty percent of children with FXS will be diagnosed with autism (Harris et al., 2008). Most children with FXS demonstrate autistic-like behavior. There appears to be a shared molecular overlap between autism, FXS, and fragile X permutation (Gurkan and Hagerman, 2012). There is greater impairment of cognition, language, and adaptive behavior in those with FXS and autism compared with those with FXS without autism (Hagerman et al., 2008).

Intelligence

Intellectual disability in children with FXS can range from severe to borderline normal. The average IQ falls between 20 and 60, with a mean of 30 to 45. Additional cognitive deficits may include attention deficit-hyperactivity disorder, learning disability, and autistic-like mannerisms. In fact, girls may be incorrectly diagnosed as having infantile autism or may exhibit only a mild cognitive deficit, such as a learning disability (Batshaw et al., 2013).

Motor Development

Gross and fine motor development is delayed in the child with FXS. The average age of walking is 2 years (Levitas et al., 1983), with 75% of boys exhibiting a flatfooted and waddling gait (Davids et al., 1990). The child's motor skills are at the same developmental age level as the child's mental ability. Even before the diagnosis of FXS is made, the physical therapist may be the first to recognize that the child has more problems than just delayed development. Maintaining balance in any developmental posture is a challenge for these children because of their low tone, joint hypermobility, and gravitational insecurity. Individuals who are mildly affected may present with language delays and behavioral problems, especially hyperactivity (Schopmeyer and Lowe, 1992).

Tactile Defensiveness

Regardless of the severity of the disorder, 90% of these children avoid eye contact and 80% display tactile defensiveness. The characteristics of tactile defensiveness are listed in Table 8-10. Touch can be perceived as aversive, and light touch may elicit a withdrawal response rather than an orienting response. Treatment involves the use of different-textured surfaces on equipment that the child can touch during play. Vestibular stimulation, firm pressure, and increasing proprioceptive input through weight bearing and movement are helpful (Schopmeyer and Lowe, 1992).

Table 8-10

Tactile Defensiveness

Major Symptom	Child's Behavior
Avoidance of touch	Avoids scratchy or rough clothing, prefers soft material, long sleeves or pants Prefers to stand alone to avoid contact with other children Avoids play activities that involve body contact
Aversive responses to non-noxious touch	Turns away or struggles when picked up, hugged, or cuddled Resists certain ADLs, such as baths, cutting fingernails, haircuts, and face washing Has an aversion to dental care Has an aversion to art materials such as finger-paints, paste, or sand
Atypical affective responses to nonnoxious tactile stimuli	Responds aggressively to light touch to arms, face, or legs Increased stress in response to being physically close to people Objects to or withdraws from touch contact.

From Royeen CB: Domain specifications of the construct of tactile defensiveness. *Am J Occup Ther* 39:596–599, 1985. © 1985 American Occupational Therapy Association. Reprinted with permission.

ADLs Activities of daily living.

Sensory Integration

In addition to tactile defensiveness, other sensory integration problems are evident in the decreased ability of these children to tolerate being exposed to multiple sensory inputs at one time. These

children become easily overwhelmed because they cannot filter out environmental stimuli. When gaze aversion occurs, it is thought to be related to the child's high degree of anxiety, rather than to autism or social dysfunction. Because low tolerance for frustration often leads to tantrums in these children; always be alert to the child's losing control and institute appropriate behavior modification responses that have been decided on by the team.

Learning

Visual learning is a strength of children with FXS, so using a visual cue with a verbal request is a good intervention strategy. Teaching any motor skill or task should be done within the context in which it is expected to be performed, such as teaching hand washing at a sink in the bathroom. Examples of inappropriate contexts are teaching tooth brushing in the cafeteria or teaching ball kicking in the classroom. The physical, social, and emotional surroundings in which learning takes place are significant for the activity to make sense to the child. Teaching a task in its entirety, rather than breaking it down into its component parts, may help to lessen the child's difficulty with sequential learning and tendency to *perseverate*, defined as repeating an action over and over.

Rett syndrome

Rett syndrome is a neurodevelopmental disorder that almost exclusively affects females. It occurs in approximately 1 in 12,000 females. The presentation in females suggests an X-linked dominant means of inheritance but this has been disproven (Goldstein and Reynolds, 2011). Males with Rett syndrome have been described in the literature (Clayton-Smith et al., 2000; Moog et al., 2003).

Rett syndrome is characterized by intellectual disability, ataxia, and growth retardation. It is a major cause of intellectual disability in females (Shahbazian and Zoghbi, 2001). Despite the intellectual disability, Rett syndrome is not a neurodegenerative disorder (Zoghbi, 2003). It represents a failure of postnatal development due to a mutation in the MECP2 gene, which is responsible for development of synaptic connections in the brain. Intellectual disability is in the severe, profound range. There is a prestage in which the child's development appears normal. This prestage lasts 6 months and is followed by four stages of decline. Stage 1 has been characterized as early onset stagnation where there is loss of language and motor skills between 6 and 18 months. Stage 2 is rapid destruction of previously acquired hand function. It is during this stage that children develop stereotypical hand movements, such as flapping, wringing, and slapping, as well as mouthing. Decline in function during childhood includes a decreased ability to communicate, seizure activity, and later, scoliosis. There is a plateau during stage 3, which lasts until around the age of 10 years, followed by late motor deterioration in stage 4. Expression of the syndrome varies in severity. Girls with Rett syndrome live into adulthood (Goldstein and Reynolds, 2011).

Autism Spectrum Disorder

Infants and children diagnosed with autism have deficits in social, communication, and motor and behavioral development. Autism spectrum disorders (ASDs) include autistic disorder, pervasive developmental delay not otherwise specified (PDD-NOS), and Asperger syndrome (CDC, 2014). Autism must be differentiated from developmental delay in order to provide an accurate diagnosis and implementation of the appropriate interventions (Mitchell et al., 2011). The diagnosis of autism at the age of 2 years has been found to be stable, reliable, and valid (Kleinman et al., 2008), yet the diagnoses of Asperger and PDD-NOS are usually not made until later, around age 6 years and 4 years, respectively (Batshaw et al., 2013). Early detection allows for early intervention and the potential for positive developmental change and a substantially better prognosis (Kleinman et al., 2008).

ASD is more common in boys than girls and occurs in all ethnic, racial, and socioeconomic groups. It is estimated that 1 in 68 children have ASD. According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM-5), in order to be diagnosed with ASD, a child has to demonstrate impaired social interaction, communication, and restricted, repetitive behaviors. Motor impairment is not part of the diagnostic criteria despite the fact that difficulty with motor control has been recognized in early descriptions of autism (Kanner, 1943). Many recent studies have highlighted the impaired motor function demonstrated by young children with ASD (Bhat et al., 2012; Lloyd et al., 2011; Provost et al., 2007). However, some researchers have not reported delays in motor development in children with ASD compared with typically developing children (Ozonoff et al., 2008) and others only found delays in the motor age equivalents not on scaled scores (Lane et al., 2012). Motor imitation is delayed in children with ASD (Carey et al., 2014). Early motor delays in siblings of children with autism were found to predict risk for later communication delays (Bhat et al., 2012). Slow reach-to-grasp movements were found in lower functioning children with autism (Mari et al., 2003). Older children with ASD have been found to demonstrate difficulty with motor planning (praxis) (MacNeil and Mostofsky, 2012). There is evidence that some degree of motor delay is present in most children with autism. There is currently not enough evidence to support whether the presence of an early delay in motor development can be predictive of autism. Physical therapists need to be involved in the evaluation of motor skills in this group.

Genetic disorders such as DS and fragile X have been found to be associated with ASD. The cause of ASD is as yet unknown. A diagnosis of autism along with a genetic disorder can compound developmental problems, although services may be more readily available with a diagnosis of autism because of the increased prevalence. Children with autism do not exhibit the ability to pretend play but can be taught to engage in pretend play by peer and adult modeling (Barton and Pavilanis, 2012). Best practice includes use of social scripts to model social skills for children with autism (Reichow and Volkmar, 2010). The most commonly targeted skills are communication and social interaction. However, based on the findings regarding motor development in children with autism, physical therapy intervention should include posture and balance training as well as motor imitation and planning in conjunction with sensory integration provided by occupational therapy. Parents should be taught to foster social play in addition to social interaction and communication. Play is age-appropriate and can take advantage of movement and language skills as well as engaging the imagination.

Genetic disorders and intellectual disability

One to three percent of the total population of the United States has psychomotor or intellectual disability. *Intellectual disability* is "a substantial limitation in present function characterized by subaverage intelligence and related limitations in two or more of the following areas: communication, self-care, home living, social skills, community use, health and safety, academics, leisure, and work," as defined by the American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD, 2010). A person must have an IQ of 70 to 75 or less to be diagnosed as having intellectual disability. The foregoing definition emphasizes the effect that a decreased ability to learn has on all aspects of a person's life. Educational definitions of intellectual disability may vary from state to state because of differences in eligibility criteria for developmental services. An IQ score tells little about the strengths of the individual and may artificially lower the expectations of the child's capabilities. Despite the inclusion of the deficits in adaptive abilities seen in individuals with intellectual disability, four classic levels of retardation are reported in the literature. These levels, along with the relative proportion of each type within the population with intellectual disability, are listed in Table 8-11.

Table 8-11

Classification of Intellectual Disability

Level of Intellectual Disability	IQ	Percentage of Disabled Population
Mild	55-70	70%-89%
Moderate	40-55	20%
Severe	25-40	5%
Profound	< 25	1%

Based on data from Grossman HJ: *Classification in mental retardation*. Washington, DC, 1983, American Association on Mental Retardation; Jones ED, Payne JS: Definition and prevalence. In Patton JR, Payne JS, Beirne-Smith M, editors: *Mental retardation*, ed 2. Columbus, OH, 1986, Charles E. Merrill, pp. 33–75.

The two most common genetic disorders that produce intellectual disability are DS and FXS. DS results from a trisomy of one of the chromosomes, chromosome 21, whereas FXS is caused by a defect on the X chromosome. This major X-linked disorder explains why the rate of intellectual disability is higher in males than females. The defect on the X chromosome is expressed in males when no normal X chromosome is present. Most genetic disorders involving the nervous system produce intellectual disability, and children present with low muscle tone as a primary clinical feature.

Child's Impairments and Interventions

The physical therapist's examination and evaluation of the child with low muscle tone secondary to a genetic problem, regardless of whether the child has associated intellectual disability, typically identifies similar impairments or potential problems to be addressed by physical therapy intervention:

1. Delayed psychomotor development (only motor delay in SMA)
2. Hypotonia or weakness
3. Delayed development of postural reactions
4. Hyperextensible joints
5. Contractures and skeletal deformities
6. Impaired respiratory function

Intervention to address these impairments is discussed here both generally and within the context of a case study. *Intellectual disability* is the preferred term rather than *mental retardation*.

Psychomotor Development

Promotion of psychomotor development in children with genetic disorders resulting in delayed motor and cognitive development is a primary focus of physical therapy intervention. Children with intellectual disability are capable of learning motor skills and life skills. However, children with intellectual disability learn fewer things, and those things take longer to learn. Principles of motor learning can and should be used with this population. Practice and repetition are even more critical in the child with intellectual disability than in a child with a motor delay without intellectual

disability. The clinician must always ensure that the skill or task being taught is part of the child's everyday function. Breaking the task into its component parts improves the potential for learning the original task and for that task to carry over into other skills. The ability to generalize a skill to another task is decreased in children with intellectual disability. Each task is new; no matter how similar we may think it is, the process of teaching must start again. Skills that are not practiced on a regular basis will not be maintained, which is another reason for tasks to be made relevant and applicable to everyday life.

Hypotonia and Delayed Postural Reactions

Early in therapy, functional goals are focused on the development of postural control. The child must learn to move through the environment safely and to perform tasks such as manipulating objects within the environment. The intellectual disability, hypotonia, joint hypermobility, and delayed development characteristically seen in children with genetic disorders such as DS interact to produce poor postural control. The child with low postural tone cannot easily support a posture against gravity, move or shift weight within a posture, or maintain a posture to use limbs efficiently. Making the transition from one posture to another is accomplished only with a great deal of effort and unusual movement patterns. By improving postural tone in therapy, the therapist provides the child with a foundation for movement. Children with DS benefit from being taught or trained to achieve motor milestones and to improve postural responses. Table 8-2 lists the ages at attainment of developmental milestones in children with DS compared with the typical age at attainment of the same skills.

Ann, as shown in Figure 8-21, is a 17-month-old child with DS. She provides a model for treatment of children with genetic disorders in which hypotonia and delayed motor development are the overriding impairments. Ann is seen weekly for physical therapy. She creeps and pulls to stand but is not yet walking independently. While Ann undresses, the therapist encourages Ann's ability to balance while her weight is shifted to one side (see Figure 8-21). In addition, typical help with sock removal is greatly appreciated (Figure 8-22).

FIGURE 8-21 Trunk weight shift while undressing.

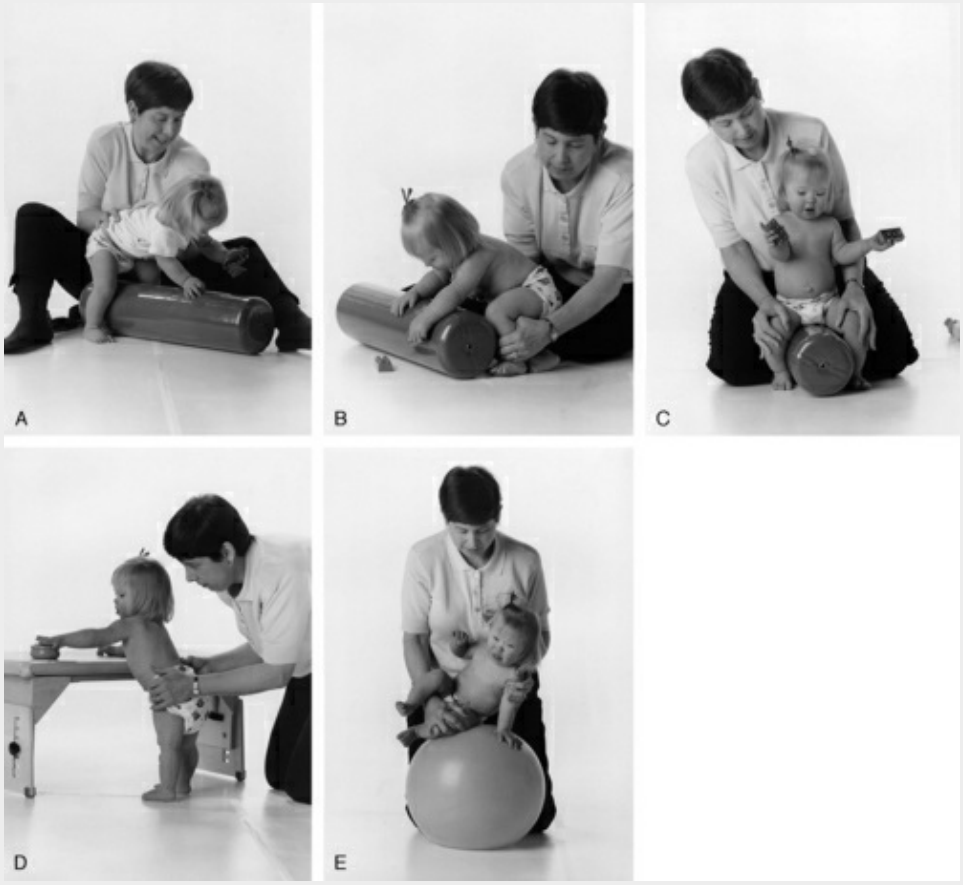
FIGURE 8-22 Child with Down syndrome removing her sock.

Stability

Preparation for movement in children consists of weight bearing in appropriate joint alignment. Splints of various materials may be used to maintain the required alignment without any mechanical joint locking if the child is unable to do so on her own. Gentle intermittent approximation by manual means helps prepare a body part to accept weight. Approximation is shown in Intervention 8-9. Approximation through the extremities during weight bearing can reinforce the maintenance of a posture and can provide a stable base on which to superimpose movement, in the form of a weight shift or a movement transition. Intervention 8-10 shows the therapist guiding Ann's movement from sitting to upper extremity weight bearing and Ann reaching with a return to sitting.

Intervention 8-9

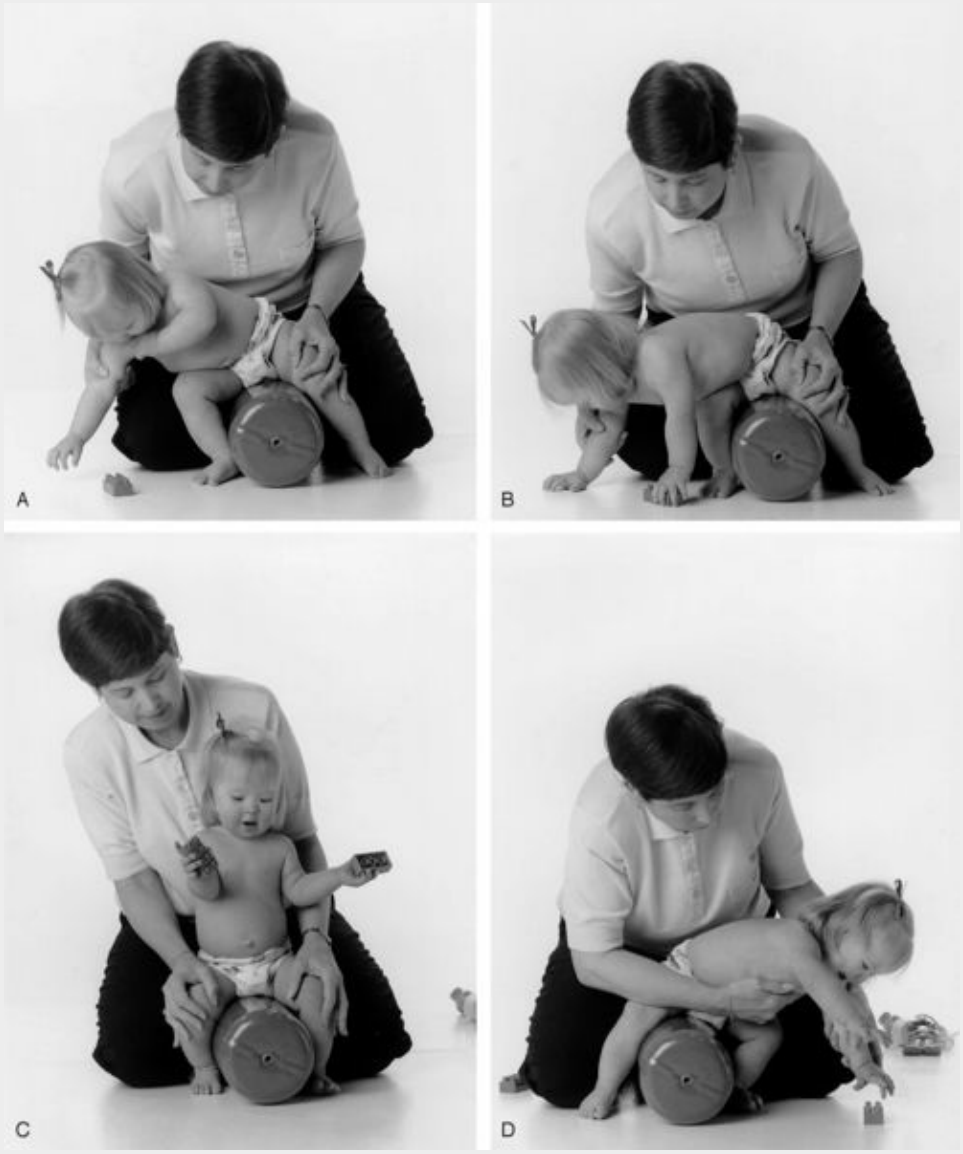
Approximation



A. Approximation in a modified plantigrade position.
B. Approximation of the foot to the floor in a squatting position.
C. Approximation from the knees to the feet while the child sits on a bolster.
D. Approximation at the hips in standing.
E. Approximation through the shoulder.

Intervention 8-10

Movement Transition



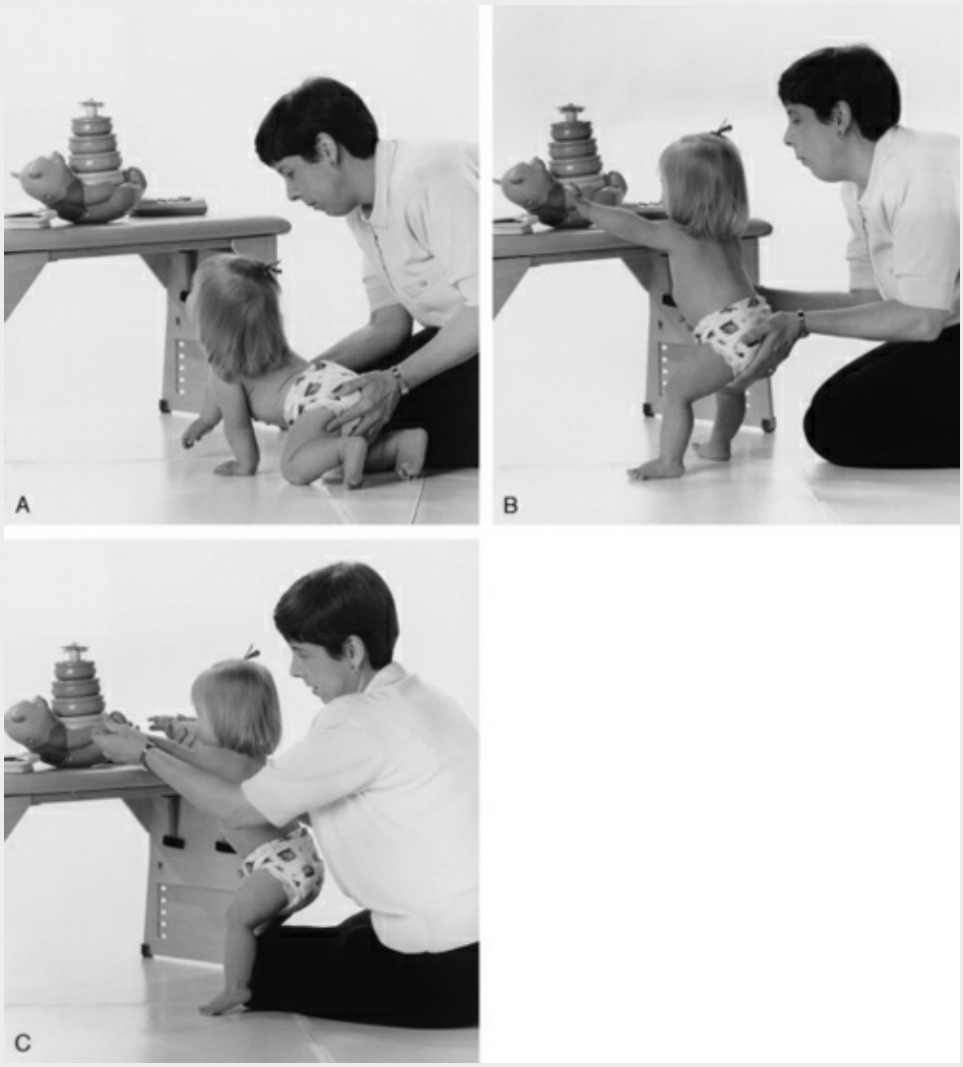
A–D. The child practices active trunk rotation within a play task. Guided movement from sitting to upper extremity weight bearing and reaching with a return to sitting.

Mobility

The child with intellectual disability needs to be mobile to explore the environment. Manual manipulation of objects and the ability to explore the surrounding environment are assumed to contribute positively to the development of cognition, communication, and emotion. Even if motor and cognition develop separately, they facilitate one another, so by fostering movement, understanding of an action is made possible. Ann is encouraged to come to stand at a bench to play both by pulling up and by coming to stand from sitting on the therapist's knee (Intervention 8-11). The use of postural supports such as a toy shopping cart can entice the child into walking (Intervention 8-12). Mobility options facilitate the child's mastery of the environment.

Intervention 8-11

Coming to Stand



The child is encouraged to stand as follows:
A, B. By pulling up from the floor.
C. By coming to standing from sitting on the therapist's knee.

Intervention 8-12

Walking

A, B. The use of postural supports, such as a toy shopping cart, can encourage walking.

Alternative means of mobility, such as a power wheelchair, a cart, an adapted tricycle, or a prone scooter, can be used to give the child with moderate to severe intellectual disability and impaired motor abilities a way to move independently. McEwen (2000) stated that children with intellectual disability who have vision and cognition at the level of an 18-month-old are able to learn how to use a powered means of mobility. Orientation in an upright position is important for social interaction with peers and adults. McEwen (1992) also found that teachers interacted more with children who were positioned nearer the normal interaction level of adults, that is, in a wheelchair, than with children who were positioned on the floor.

Postural Control

The child with low tone should be handled firmly, with vestibular input used when appropriate to encourage development of head and trunk control. Joint stability must always be taken into consideration when the clinician uses vestibular sensation or movement to improve a child's balance. The therapist and family should use carrying positions that incorporate trunk support and allow the child's head either to lift against gravity or to be maintained in a midline position. An infant can be carried over the adult's arm, at the adult's shoulder, or with the child's back to the adult's chest (Intervention 8-13). Gathered-together positions in which the limbs are held close to the body and most joints are flexed promote security and reinforce midline orientation and symmetry. Prone on elbows, prone on extended arms, propping on arms in sitting, and four-point are all good weight-bearing positions. When the child cannot fully support the body's weight, the use of an appropriate device, such as a wedge, a bolster, or a half-roll, can still allow the physical therapist assistant to position the child for weight bearing. Upright positioning can enhance the child's arousal and therefore can provide a more optimal condition for learning than being recumbent (Guess et al., 1988).

Intervention 8-13

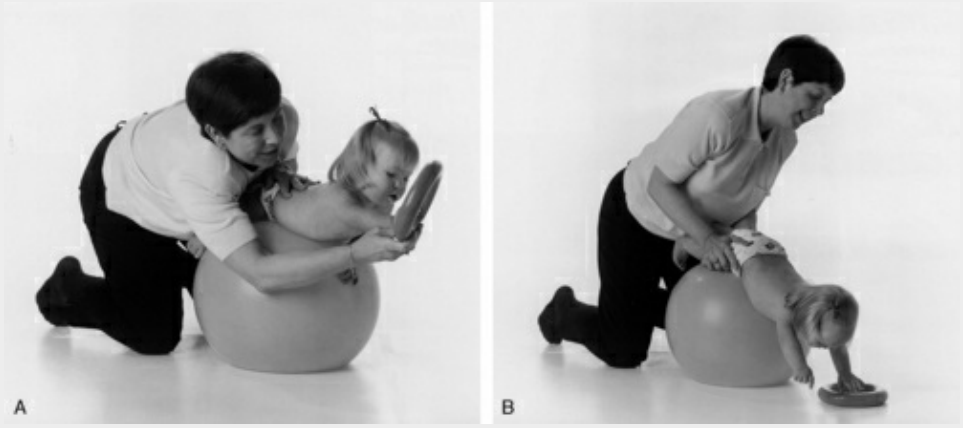
Carrying Positions

A. Carrying the child with her back to the adult's chest promotes stability.
B. Carrying the child over the arm promotes head lifting and improves tolerance for the prone position.

To develop postural control of the trunk, the clinician must balance trunk extensor strength with trunk flexor strength. Trunk extension can be facilitated when the child is in the prone position over a ball by asking the child to reach for an object (Intervention 8-14, *A*). Protective extension of the upper extremities can also be encouraged at the same time, as seen in Intervention 8-14, *B*. The ball can also be used to support body weight partially for standing after the hips have been prepared with some gentle approximation (Intervention 8-15). A balanced trunk allows for the possibility of eliciting balance reactions. These reactions can be attempted on a movable surface (Intervention 8-16). The reader is referred to Chapter 5 for descriptions of additional ways to encourage development of motor milestones and ways to facilitate protective, righting, and equilibrium reactions within developmental postures.

Intervention 8-14

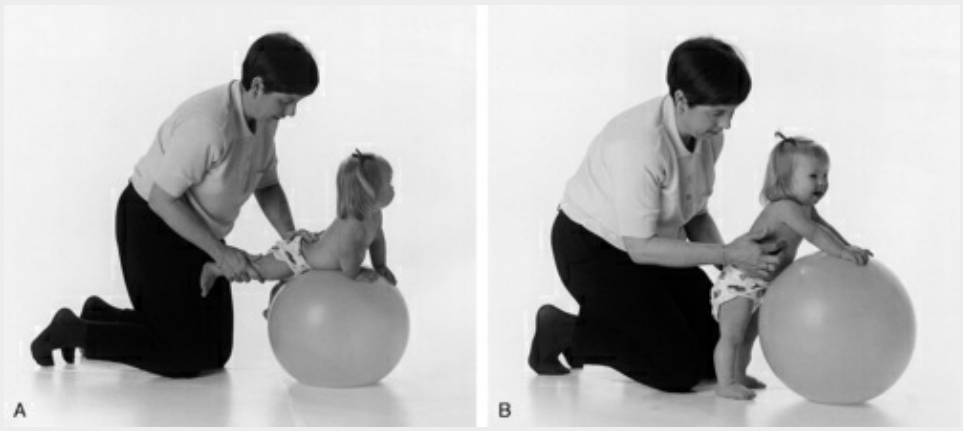
Trunk Extension and Protective Extension



A. Trunk extension can be facilitated with the child in the prone position over a ball by asking the child to reach for an object. The difficulty of the task can be increased by having more of the child's trunk unsupported.
B. Protective extension of the upper extremities can also be encouraged from the same position over a ball if the child is moved quickly forward.

Intervention 8-15

Standing with Support from the Ball



A. Preparing the hips for standing, with some gentle approximation.
B. Use of the ball as a support for standing.

Intervention 8-16

Eliciting Balance Reactions

A. Ensure a neutral pelvis, neither anteriorly nor posteriorly tilted.
B. Shift weight to one side, keeping the weight on the downside hip. This allows the child to respond with lateral head and trunk righting.

C. When the child exhibits lateral righting, trunk rotation can be encouraged as part of an equilibrium reaction.

When trunk extension is not balanced by abdominal strength, trunk stability may have to be derived from hip adduction and hip extension by using the hamstrings (Moerchen, 1994). If a child has such low tone that the legs are widely abducted in the supine position, the hip flexors will quickly tighten. This tightness impairs the ability of the abdominal oblique muscles to elongate the rib cage. The result is inadequate trunk control, a high-riding rib cage, and trunk rotation. Inadequate trunk control in children with low tone not only impairs respiratory function but also impedes the development of dynamic postural control of the trunk, usually manifested in righting and equilibrium reactions.

Contractures and Deformities

Avoiding contractures and deformities may seem to be a relatively easy task because these children exhibit increased mobility. However, muscles can shorten in overly lengthened positions. Because of low tone and excessive joint motion, the child's limbs are at the mercy of gravity. When the child is supine, gravity fosters external rotation of the limbs and the tendency for the head to fall to one side, thus making it difficult for the child with low tone to maintain the head in midline. Simple positioning devices such as a U-shaped towel roll can be used to promote a midline head position.

Intervention should be aimed at normal alignment and maintenance of appropriate range of motion for typical flexibility and comfort. Positions that provide stability at the cost of continuing excessive range, such as wide abducted sitting, propping on hyperextended arms in sitting, or standing with knee hyperextension, should be avoided. Modify the positions to allow for more typical weight bearing and use of muscles for postural stability rather than maintaining position. Narrow the base of sitting when the child sits with legs too widely abducted. Use air splints or soft splits to prevent elbow or knee hyperextension. Another possibility is to use a vertical stander to support the child so that the knees are in a more neutral position. Good positioning can positively affect muscle use for maintaining posture, for easier feeding, and for breathing.

Respiratory Function

Chest wall tightness may develop in a child who is not able to sit supported at the appropriate time developmentally (6 months). Gravity normally assists in changing the configuration of the chest wall in infants from a triangle to more of a rectangle. If this change does not occur, the diaphragm will remain flat and will not work as efficiently. The child may develop rib flaring as a consequence of the underuse of all the abdominal muscles or the overuse of the centrally located rectus abdominis muscle. If the structural modifications are not made, the diaphragm cannot become an efficient muscle of respiration. The child may continue to belly breathe and may never learn to expand the chest wall fully. Fatigue during physical activity in children with low tone may be related to the inefficient function of the respiratory system (Dichter et al., 1993). Because these children work harder to breathe than other children, they have less oxygen available for the muscular work of performing functional tasks.

Any child with low muscle tone may have difficulty in generating sufficient expiratory force to clear secretions. Children who are immobile because of the severity of their neuromuscular deficits, such as those with SMA or late-stage muscular dystrophy, can benefit greatly from chest physical therapy including postural drainage with percussion and vibration. The positions for postural drainage are found in Figure 8-11. Additional expiratory techniques are described in the section of this chapter dealing with CF.

Chapter summary

Working with children with genetic disorders can be challenging and rewarding because of the many variations exhibited within the different disorders. The commonality of clinical features exhibited by children with these disorders, such as low muscle tone, delayed development, and some degree of intellectual disability, except for the children with SMA, allows for discussion of some almost universally applicable interventions. Because motor development in children with genetic disorders is generally characterized by immature patterns of movement rather than by abnormal patterns, as seen in children with cerebral palsy, physical therapy management is geared

to fostering the normal sequence of sensorimotor development including postural reactions while safeguarding joint alignment. Because of the progressive nature of some of the genetic disorders, physical therapy management must also be focused on preserving motor function or on optimizing function in any body system that is compromised. The physical therapist assistant can play a valuable role in implementing physical therapy interventions for children with any of the genetic disorders discussed in this chapter.

Review questions

1. What is the leading cause of inherited intellectual disability?
2. When one parent is a carrier for CF, what chance does each child have of being affected?
3. What genetic disorder produces muscle weakness without cognitive impairment?
4. What are the three mechanisms by which chromosome abnormalities occur?
5. What are the two most common clinical features in children with most genetic disorders involving the central nervous system?
6. What principles of motor learning are important to use when working with children with cognitive impairment?
7. What types of interventions are appropriate for a child with low tone?
8. What interventions can be used to prevent secondary complications in children with low tone?
9. What interventions are most often used with a child with OI?
10. What physical therapy goal is most important when working with a child with a progressive genetic disorder?
11. What constitutes an autism spectrum disorder?

Case studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation: AG

History

Chart Review

AG is a 17-month-old girl with DS. AG and her parents have been participants in an infant program since she was 3 months old. AG was born at term with a pneumothorax. During her stay in the neonatal intensive care unit, the DS diagnosis was confirmed by genetic testing. She has had no rehospitalizations. Her health continues to be good. Immunizations are up to date.

Subjective

The child's mother reports that AG laughs and sings. She smiles easily and is a good eater. She previously had difficulty with choking on food. Her mother's biggest concern is knowing when to expect AG to walk.

Objective

Systems Review

Communication/Cognition: AG has 10 words in her vocabulary. She understands "no." AG's mental development index on the Bayley scale is < 50, based on a raw score of 75, which is mildly delayed performance.

Cardiovascular/pulmonary: Values normal for age.
Integumentary: Skin intact, no scars or areas of redness.
Musculoskeletal: AROM greater than normal, strength decreased throughout.
Neuromuscular: Coordination and balance impaired.

Test and Measures

Anthropometric: Height 32", weight 30 lbs, BMI 21 (20–24 is normal).

Motor Function: AG rolls from supine to prone and pushes herself into sitting over her abducted legs. She pulls to stand by furniture but is unable to come to stand from sitting without pulling with her arms. AG sits independently with a wide base of support. She is unable to stand from a squat.

Neurodevelopmental Status*:* Peabody Developmental Motor Scales (PDMS) Gross Motor Developmental Motor Quotient (DMQ) is below average (DMQ = 65), age equivalent is 9 months. Fine Motor DMQ = 69, with an age equivalent of 9 months.

Range of Motion: PROM is WFL in all joints, with joint hypermobility present in the hips, knees, and ankles of the lower extremities and in the shoulders and elbows of the upper extremities. No asymmetry is noted.

Reflex Integrity: Biceps, patellar, and Achilles 1 + bilaterally. Low muscle tone is present throughout her extremities and trunk. No asymmetry is noted.

Cranial Nerve Integrity: AG turns her head toward sound. Visually, she tracks in all directions, although she tends to move her head with her eyes. Quick changes in position such as when she is being picked up or in an inverted position are tolerated without crying. She has no difficulty swallowing liquids or solids by parent report.

Sensory Integrity: Sensation appears to be intact to light touch.

Posture: When she is ring sitting on the floor, her trunk is kyphotic. Her posture is slightly lordotic in quadruped position.

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance*:* AG creeps on her hands and knees for up to 30 feet. She pivots in sitting. AG occasionally exhibits trunk rotation when making the transition from hands-and-knees to side sitting. AG exhibits head righting reactions in all directions. Trunk righting reactions are present, but equilibrium reactions are delayed and are incomplete in sitting position and quadruped position. Upper extremity protective reactions are present in all directions in sitting but are delayed. Balance in standing requires support of a person or object. She leans forward, flexing her hips and keeping her knees hyperextended.

Self-care: AG finger-feeds. She assists with dressing by removing some clothes.

Play: AG plays with toys appropriate for a 9- to 12-month-old. She looks at pictures in a book and squeezes a doll to make it squeak.

Assessment/evaluation

AG is a 17-month-old girl with DS who is functioning below her age level in gross and fine motor development and cognitive development. She is creeping reciprocally and pulling to stand but not walking independently. She is classified at a GMFCS level 1. She has a supportive family and is involved in an infant intervention program. Frequency of treatment is one time a week for an hour.

Problem List

1. Delayed gross and fine motor development, secondary to hypotonia
2. Hypermobile joints
3. Dependent in ambulation
4. Delayed postural reactions

Diagnosis

AG demonstrates impaired neuromotor development which is guide pattern 5B. Down syndrome is a genetic syndrome which is included in this pattern, as is delayed development and cognitive delay.

Prognosis

AG will improve her level of functional independence and functional skills in her home. Her potential is good for the following goals.

Short-term goals (1 month)

1. AG will walk while pushing an object 20 feet 80% of the time.
2. AG will demonstrate trunk rotation when moving in and out of side sitting 80% of the time.
3. AG will rise to standing from sitting on a stool without pulling with her arms 80% of the time.

Long-term goals (6 months)

1. AG will ambulate independently without an assistive device for unlimited distances.
2. AG will go up stairs alternating feet while holding on to a rail independently.
3. AG will assist in dressing and undressing as requested.
4. AG will exhibit beginning pretend play by substituting one object for another while playing with a doll.

Plan

Coordination, communication, and documentation

The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant will be in frequent and constant communication with the family and the early childhood educator regarding AG's program. Outcomes of interventions will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/client instruction

Discuss family instruction regarding positions to avoid and a home exercise program. The program is to include movement/games that encourage exploration and play in postural positions that challenge AG's balance.

Procedural interventions

1. Using a small treadmill, the parents will support AG as she is encouraged to take steps 15 minutes twice a day.
2. Using appropriate verbal and manual cues, AG will assist with removing her clothes before therapy and putting them back on after therapy.
3. Work on movement transitions from four-point to kneeling, kneeling to half-kneeling, half-kneeling to standing, standing from sitting on a stool, standing to a squat, and returning to standing.
4. Use weight bearing through the upper and lower extremities in developmentally appropriate postures such as four-point, kneeling, and standing to increase support responses. Maintain joint alignment to prevent mechanical locking of joints and encourage muscular holding of positions.
5. Use alternating isometrics and rhythmic stability in sitting, quadruped, and standing positions to increase stability.
6. AG will be encouraged to push a weighted toy shopping cart during play.
7. AG will be engaged in play with a doll and functional objects, such as a cup and spoon.

Questions to think about

- What activities could be part of AG's home exercise program?
- How can fitness be incorporated into AG's physical therapy program?

AROM, Active range of motion; *BMI,* body mass index; *GMFCS,* gross motor functional classification system; *PROM,* passive range of motion; *WFL,* within functional limitations.

Case studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation: DJ

History

Chart review

DJ is an 8-year-old boy diagnosed with DMD at the age of 3. He attends a regular school and is in the second grade. He has had one recent hospitalization for pneumonia which lasted 3 days. He continues on an antibiotic for the recent lung infection and has just begun taking Prednisone.*

Subjective

DJ's mother reports that he lives with his parents and one younger sister. He ambulates independently and wants to play basketball with his classmates during recess. He is being seen in school for physical therapy one time a week. His mother and father are active participants in his home exercise program, which consists of active and passive range of motion and aerobic exercise. DJ's orthopedist is considering surgery to release his tight heel cords.

Objective

Systems review

Communication/Cognition: DJ is talkative and friendly. His IQ is 80.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: RR is 20 beats/min with adventitious breath sounds. HR and BP are normal for age.

Integumentary: Intact.

Musculoskeletal: AROM and PROM impaired. Strength impaired proximally.

Neuromuscular: Coordination diminished.

Tests and measures

Appearance and Anthropometric: Height 50″, weight 49 lbs, BMI 14 (20–24 is normal). Pseudohypertrophy noted in calf muscles bilaterally.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: Rales and crackles evident at bases bilaterally. Diaphragm strength is fair with a functional cough. Vital capacity is 75% of predicted for age.

Motor Function: DJ ambulates independently but fatigues easily. Starting with arms at the sides, he can abduct his arms in a full circle until they touch above his head. He can lift a 10-lb weight to a shelf above eye level. He stands up from lying supine in 60 seconds demonstrating a Gower sign. He climbs stairs with the aid of a railing foot over foot.

Muscle Performance: Muscle testing is performed in sitting unless otherwise specified as per standard manual muscle testing procedures (Berryman, 2005).

	R	L
Shoulders ▪ Flexors ▪ Abductors	4 4	4 4
Elbow ▪ Flexors ▪ Extensors	5 4 +	5 4 +
Wrist ▪ Flexors ▪ Extensors	5 5	5 5
Hip ▪ Flexors ▪ Extensors ▪ Abductors	4 3– 4–	4 3– (tested in prone) 4– (tested in side lying)
Knee ▪ Extensors ▪ Flexors	4– 4	4– 4 (tested in prone)
Ankle ▪ Plantar flexors ▪ Dorsiflexors	4 + 3–	4 + (tested in standing) 3–

Range of Motion: Active and passive range of motion is WFL except for 15-degree hip flexion contracture bilaterally. He exhibits iliotibial band tightness and 5-degree plantar flexion contractures with 15 degrees of active dorsiflexion bilaterally.

Reflex Integrity: Patellar 2 +, Achilles 1 +, Babinski is absent bilaterally.

Sensory Integrity: Intact.

Posture: In standing, DJ exhibits a forward head and lordosis; weight is shifted forward onto the toes and his heels are off the ground.

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance: He walks with no arm swing, does not run easily or well. He walks a total of 60 feet in 3 minutes with one rest of 1-minute duration. He can walk 30 feet as fast as he can without falling in 2 minutes. On average, he walks 2.5 hours a day. He takes a protective step in any direction when standing balance is disturbed.

Self-care: DJ dresses, feeds, and toilets himself independently.

Play: He plays with videogames, likes action figures, and is involved in cub scouts. He reads at grade level. He enjoys swimming, going to the zoo, and riding his bicycle around the neighborhood. He participates in physical education at school.

Assessment/evaluation

DJ is an 8-year-old boy with DMD who attends school regularly and receives physical therapy in the school setting as needed to prevent pulmonary complications and maintain present level of function. He recently had an upper respiratory infection that required hospitalization. He is ambulatory but has lower extremity contractures that are beginning to interfere with upright function. His physician is considering surgical intervention to release his heel cords. He is being seen once a week for 30 minutes and is participating in a home exercise program.

Problem list

1. Lower extremity contractures
2. Decreased strength and endurance
3. Decreased pulmonary function
4. At risk for decreased locomotion

Diagnosis

DJ exhibits impaired muscle performance, which is guide pattern 4C because it includes myopathies. He also could be classified under 5B, because muscular dystrophy is a genetic disorder, or 6A, which is a prevention/risk reduction pattern for cardiovascular/pulmonary disorders.

Prognosis

DJ will improve or maintain his present level of function and prevent a recurrence of respiratory infection, which might lead to permanent respiratory compromise. His potential is fair for the following goals.

Short-term goals (Actions to be Accomplished by Midyear Review)

1. DJ will increase active and passive dorsiflexion to 20 degrees bilaterally so that he can stand to write math problems on the board.
2. DJ will play on the playground equipment safely.
3. DJ will be independent in breathing exercises.
4. DJ's family will demonstrate correct postural drainage and assisted coughing techniques.
5. DJ will ambulate 50 feet times 3 with custom molded AFOs during the school day with only one rest.

Long-term goals (End of 2nd Grade)

1. DJ will maintain lower extremity muscle strength.
2. DJ will swim across the pool, breathing every other stroke.
3. DJ will exhibit no decline in vital capacity.
4. DJ will ambulate 50 feet times 4 with AFOs during the school day.
5. DJ will increase total standing time by 30 minutes a day.

Plan

Coordination, communication and documentation

The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant will be in frequent and constant communication with DJ's family and his teacher. The therapist will communicate with the physician and orthotist prior to and after surgery to lengthen his heel cords. If another therapist/assistant is involved during the acute care phase, the school therapist would need to establish and maintain communication. Outcomes of interventions will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/client instruction

Teach how to don and doff AFOs independently following surgery; implement wearing schedule;

and check for skin integrity. Teach safety on the playground. Teach and review techniques of chest wall stretching, diaphragmatic breathing, inspiratory and expiratory muscle training, postural drainage, and assistive cough. Have DJ stand a total of 3 hours a day, part of which should occur at home.

Procedural interventions

1. Positioning
   a. Standing on a small wedge for increasing amounts of time to stretch heel cords.
   b. Use a prone stander for one or two class periods to provide stretch to hip and knee flexors and dorsiflexors.
   c. Wear lower extremity night splints before and after surgery.
   d. Monitor for development of scoliosis.

Strengthening
   a. Do concentric movements of quadriceps, hamstrings, and dorsiflexors against gravity; add manual resistance or Theraband if suitable.
   b. Use marching, kicking, and heel walking.
   c. Pull on Theraband with upper extremities.
   d. Monitor for change in strength.

Aerobic and functional activities
   a. Move through an obstacle course while being timed. Include activities such as walking up an incline ramp to increase dorsiflexion range but avoid going down. Vary the speed of movement using music.
   b. Schedule therapy sessions on the playground.
   c. Ride bicycle every day.
   d. Swim twice a week.
   e. Monitor for changes in respiratory or musculoskeletal status.

Questions to think about

- What activities could DJ engage in that will increase his standing time?
- What sports activities can DJ engage in?
- What signs or symptoms would indicate respiratory or musculoskeletal deterioration?
- DJ's frequency of care is anticipated to change as the disease progresses. When might some episodes of care be considered PT maintenance and others considered prevention?

---

* Prednisone has been shown to increase strength and delay loss of ambulation (Biggar et al., 2001; Pandya and Moxley, 2002).

References

Albright JA. Management overview of osteogenesis imperfecta. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1981;159:80–87.

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Sports Medicine and Fitness. Atlantoaxial instability in down syndrome: subject review. *Pediatrics.* 1995;96:151–154.

American Association on Intellectual Disability. *Intellectual disability: definition, classification, and systems of supports.* ed 11 Washington, DC: American Association on Intellectual Disability; 2010.

Ansved T. Muscular dystrophies: influence of physical conditioning on the disease evolution. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care.* 2003;6(4):435–439.

Bach JR, Martinez D. Duchenne muscular dystrophy: continuous noninvasive ventilator support prolongs survival. *Resp Care.* 2011;56(6):744–750.

Bach JR, McKeon J. Orthopedic surgery and rehabilitation for the prolongation of brace-free ambulation of patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1991;70:323–331.

Bach JR, Campagnolo DI, Hoeman S. Life satisfaction of individuals with Duchenne muscular dystrophy using long term mechanical ventilatory support. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1991;70:129–135.

Backman E, Hendriksson KG. Low-dose prednisolone treatment in Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophy. *Neuromuscul Disord.* 1995;5:233–241.

Bailey RW, Dubow HI. Experimental and clinical studies of longitudinal bone growth: utilizing a new method of internal fixation crossing the epiphyseal plate. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1965;47:1669.

Ballestrazzi A, Gnudi A, Magni E, et al. Osteopenia in spinal muscular atrophy. In: Merlini L, Granata C, Dubowitz V, eds. *Current concepts in childhood spinal muscular atrophy.* New York: Springer-Verlag; 1989:215–219.

Bamshad M, Watkins WS, Zenger RK, et al. A gene for distal arthrogryposis type I maps to the pericentromeric region of chromosome 9. *Am J Genet.* 1994;55:1153–1158.

Barton EE, Pavilanis R. Teaching pretend play to young children with autism. *Young Excep Child.* 2012;15:5–17.

Baty BJ, Carey JC, McMahon WM. Neurodevelopmental disorders and medical genetics: An overview. In: Goldstein S, Reynolds CR, eds. *Handbook of neurodevelopmental and genetic disorders in children.* ed 2 New York: Guilford Press; 2011:33–57.

Batshaw ML, Roizen NJ, Lotrecchiano GR. *Children with disabilities.* ed 7 Baltimore, MD: Paul H Brookes; 2013.

Bellamy SG, Shen E. Genetic disorders: a pediatric perspective. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St Louis: Elsevier; 2013:345–378.

Bellenir K, ed. *Genetic disorders sourcebook.* ed 3 Detroit, MI: Omnigraphics; 2004.

Beroud C, Karliova M, Bonnefont JP, et al. Prenatal diagnosis of spinal muscular atrophy by genetic analysis of circulating fetal cells. *Lancet.* 2003;361(9362):1013–1014.

Berryman RN. *Muscle and sensory testing.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2005.

Bhat AN, Galloway JC, Landa RJ. Relationship between early motor delay and later communication delay in infants at risk for autism. *Infant Behav Dev.* 2012;35(4):838–846.

Biggar WD, Gingras M, Feblings DL, et al. Deflazacort treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *J Pediatr.* 2001;138:45–50.

Bittles AH, Bower C, Hussain R. The four ages of Down syndrome. *Eur J Pub Health.* 2006;17:221–225.

Boucek MM, Edwards LB, Keck BM, et al. The registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: sixth official pediatric report 2003. *J Heart Lung Transp.* 2003;22:636–652.

Brenneman SK, Stanger M, Bertoti DB. Age-related considerations: pediatric. In: Myers RS, ed. *Saunders manual of physical therapy.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1995:1229–1283.

Carey H, Hendershot S, Brock J. *Gross motor development and autism: linking research to practice.* Las Vegas, NV: Combined sections meeting of the American Physical Therapy Association;

February 4, 2014.
Carlin ME. *5p–/Cri-du-Chat syndrome.* Stanton, CA: 5p–Society; 1995.
Cassidy SB, Allanson JE, eds. *Management of genetic syndromes.* New York: Wiley-Liss; 2001.
Caudill A, Flanagan A, Hassani S, et al. Ankle strength and functional limitations in children and adolescents with type I osteogenesis imperfecta. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2010;22:288–295.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Improved national prevalence estimates for 18 selected major birth defects—United States 1999–2001. *MMWR Morb Wkly Rep.* 2006;54:1301–1305.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *Autism spectrum disorder fact sheet*. Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/actearly. Accessed September 25, 2014.
Chen H: Cri-du-chat syndrome. *WebMD* (website). Updated June 26, 2013. Available at http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/942897-overview. Accessed September 27, 2014.
Cicerello NA, Doty AK, Palisano RJ. Transition to adulthood for youth with disabilities. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 2012:1030–1058 Philadelphia.
Cintas HL. Aquatics. In: Cintas HL, Gerber LH, eds. *Children with osteogenesis imperfecta: strategies to enhance performance.* Gaithersburg, MD: Osteogenesis Imperfecta Foundation; 2005.
Clayton-Smith J, Watson P, Ramsden S, Black GCM. Somatic mutation in MECP2 as a non-fatal neurodevelopmental disorder in males. *Lancet.* 2000;356(9232):830–832.
Connolly BH, Morgan SB, Russell FF, et al. A longitudinal study of children with Down syndrome who experienced early intervention programming. *Phys Ther.* 1993;73:170–181.
Coster W, Deeney T, Haltiwanger J, Haley S. *School function assessment.* San Antonio: Therapy Skill Builders; 1998.
D'Amico A, Mercuri E, Tiziano FD, Bertini E. Spinal muscular atrophy. *Orphanet J Rare Dis.* 2011;6:71.
Daley K, Wisbeach A, Sanpera Jr. I, et al. The prognosis for walking in osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1996;78:477–480.
Davids JR, Hagerman RJ, Eilkert RE. Orthopaedic aspects of fragile X syndrome. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1990;72:889–896.
Dichter CG, Darbee JC, Effgen SK, et al. Assessment of pulmonary function and physical fitness in children with Down syndrome. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 1993;5:3–8.
DiMeglio LA, Peacock M. Two-year clinical trial of oral alendronate versus intravenous pamidronate in children with osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Bone Miner Res.* 2006;21(1):132–140.
Donohoe M. Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2012:313–332.
Donohoe M. Osteogenesis imperfecta. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:333–352.
Donohoe M, Bleakney DA. Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2000:302–319.
Dubowitz V, Kinali M, Main M, et al. Remission of clinical signs in early Duchenne muscular dystrophy on intermittent low-dosage prednisolone therapy. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol.* 2002;6:153–159.
Duffield MH. Physiological and therapeutic effects of exercise in warm water. In: Skinner AT, Thomson AM, eds. *Duffield's exercise in water.* ed 3 London: Bailliere Tindall; 1983.
Dykens EM, Cassidy SB, DeVries ML. Prader-Willi syndrome. In: Goldstein S, Reynolds CR, eds. *Handbook of neurodevelopmental and genetic disorders in children.* ed 2 New York: Guilford Press; 2011:484–511.
Engelbert R, Uiterwaal C. Osteogenesis imperfecta in childhood: prognosis for walking. *J Pediatr.* 2000;137:397–402.
Engelbert RH, Helders PJ, Keessen W, et al. Intramedullary rodding in type III osteogenesis imperfecta: effects on neuromotor development in 10 children. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1995;66:361–364.
Fact sheet on spinal muscle atrophy. Practice Committee, Section on Pediatrics, APTA, 2012.
Florence JM. Neuromuscular disorders in childhood and physical therapy intervention. In: Tecklin SJ, ed. *Pediatric physical therapy.* ed 3 Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1999:223–246.
Frownfelter D, Dean E, eds. *Cardiovascular and pulmonary physical therapy.* ed. 5 St Louis:

Mosby; 2012.
Gardiner K, Herault Y, Lott IT, et al. Down syndrome: from understanding the neurobiology to therapy. *J Neurosci.* 2010;30(45):14943–14945.
Gaskin L, Shin J, Reisman J, et al. Long term trial of conventional postural drainage and percussion vs. positive expiratory pressure. *Pediatr Pulmonol.* 1998;15(Suppl):345a.
Gitelis S, Whiffen J, DeWald RL. Treatment of severe scoliosis in osteogenesis imperfecta. *Clin Orthop.* 1983;175:56–59.
Glanzman AM. Genetic and developmental disorders. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist, ed 4.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2014:1161–1210.
Glorieux FH. Experience with bisphosphonates in osteogenesis imperfecta. *Pediatrics.* 2007;119:S163–S165.
Goldstein S, Reynolds CR. *Handbook of neurodevelopmental and genetic disorders in children.* ed 2 New York: Guilford Press; 2011.
Granata C, Cornelio F, Bonofiglioli S, Mattutini P, Merlini L. Promotion of ambulation of patients with spinal muscle atrophy by early fitting of knee-ankle-foot orthoses. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 1987;29(2):221–224.
Grece CA. Effectiveness of high frequency chest compression: a 3-year retrospective study. *Pediatr Pulmonol.* 2000;20(Suppl):302.
Guess D, Mulligan-Ault M, Roberts S, et al. Implications of biobehavioral states for the education and treatment of students with the most profoundly handicapping conditions. *J Assoc Pers Sev Handicaps.* 1988;13:163–174.
Gurkan CK, Hagerman RJ. Targeted treatments in autism and fragile X syndrome. *Res Autism Spectr Disord.* 2012;6(4):1311–1320.
Hagerman RJ, Rivera SM, Hagerman PF. The fragile X family of disorders: a model for autism and targeted treatments. *Curr Pediatr Rev.* 2008;4(1):40–52.
Haley SM, Coster WF, Ludlow LH, et al. *The pediatric evaluation of disability inventory: development standardization and administration manual.* Boston: New England Medical Center Publications; 1992.
Hall JG. Arthrogryposes (multiple congenital contractures). In: Rimoin DL, Conner JM, Pyeritz RE, Kork BR, eds. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 3785–3856. *Emery and Rimoin's principles and practice of medical genetics.* 2007;vol 3 ed 5.
Hallum A, Allen DD. Neuromuscular diseases. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St Louis: Elsevier; 2013:521–570.
Hardiman O, Sklar RM, Brown Jr. RH. Methylprednisolone selectively affects dystrophin expression in human muscle cultures. *Neurology.* 1993;43:342–345.
Harris SW, Goodlin-Jones B, Nowicki ST, et al. Autism profiles of young males with fragile X syndrome. *Am J Ment Retarard.* 2008;113:427–438.
Head E, Lott IT. Down syndrome and beta-amyloid deposition. *Curr Opin Neurol.* 2004;17:95–100.
Hebestreit H, Kieser S, Rudiger S, et al. Physical activity is independently related to aerobic capacity in cystic fibrosis. *Eur Respir J.* 2006;28:734–739.
Hebestreit H, Schnid K, Kieser S, et al. Quality of life is associated with physical activity and fitness in cystic fibrosis. *BMC Pulm Med.* 2014;14:26.
Heller T, Hsieh K, Rimmer J. Barriers and supports for exercise participation among adults with Down syndrome. *J Gerontol Soc Work.* 2002;38:161–178.
Hines S, Bennett F. Effectiveness of early intervention for children with Down syndrome. *Ment Retard Dev Disabil Res Rev.* 1996;2:96–101.
Jones KL. *Smith's recognizable patterns of human malformation.* ed 6 Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2006.
Jones MA, McEwen IR, Hansen L. Use of power mobility for a young child with spinal muscular atrophy. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83(3):253–262.
Jones MA, McEwen IR, Neas BR. Effects of power wheelchairs on the development and function of young children with severe motor impairments. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2012;24(2):131–140.
Jorde LB, Carey JC, Bamshad MC. *Medical genetics.* ed 4 Philadelphia: Mosby; 2010.
Kanner L. Autistic disturbances of affective contact. *Nervous Child.* 1943;2:217–250.
Kleinman JM, Ventola PE, Padey J, et al. Diagnostic stability in very young children with autism. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 2008;38(4):606–615.
Land C, Rauch F, Montpetit K, Ruck-Gibis J, Glorieux FH. Effect of intravenous pamidronate

therapy on functional abilities and level of ambulation in children with osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Pediatr.* 2006;148:456–460.
Lane A, Ha K, Heathcock J. Motor characteristics of young children referred for possible autism spectrum disorder. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2012;24(1):21–29.
Levitas A, Braden M, Van Norman K, et al. Treatment and intervention. In: Hagerman RJ, McBogg P, eds. *The fragile X syndrome: diagnosis, biochemistry, and intervention.* Dillon, CO: Spectra Publishing; 1983:201–226.
Lewis CL. Prader-Willi syndrome: a review for pediatric physical therapists. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2000;12:87–95.
Lloyd M, Macdonald M, Lord C. Motor skills of toddlers with autism spectrum disorders. *Autism.* 2011;15(3):1–18.
Looper J, Ulrich DA. Effect of treadmill training and supramalleolar orthosis use on motor skill development in infants with Down syndrome: a randomized clinical trial. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:382–390.
Looper J, Benjamin D, Nolan M, Schumm L. What to measure when determining orthotic needs in children with Down syndrome: a pilot study. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2012;24:313–319.
Lott IT, Dierssen M. Cognitive deficits and associated neurological complications in individuals with Down syndrome. *Lancet Neurol.* 2010;9:623–633.
Lowry RB, Sibbald B, Bedard T, Hall JG. Prevalence of multiple congenital contractures including arthrogryposis multiplex congenital in Alberta, Canada, and a strategy for classification and coding. *Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol.* 2010;88(12):1057–1061.
MacNeil LK, Mostofsky SH. Specificity of dyspraxia in children with autism. *Neuropsychology.* 2012;26(2):165–171.
Mahadeva R, Webb K, Westerbeek RC, et al. Clinical outcome in relation to care in centers specializing in cystic fibrosis: cross-sectional study. *BMJ.* 1998;316:1771–1775.
Mari M, Castiello U, Marks D, Marraffa C, Prior M. The reach-to-grasp movement in children with autism spectrum disorder. *Phil Trans R Soc Lond B.* 2003;358:393–403.
Marini JC, Chernoff EJ. Osteogenesis imperfecta. In: Cassidy SB, Allanson JE, eds. *Management of genetic syndromes.* New York: Wiley-Liss; 2001:281–300.
Martin K. Effects of supramalleolar orthoses on postural stability in children with Down syndrome. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2004;46:406–411.
Martin E, Shapiro JR. Osteogenesis imperfecta: epidemiology and pathophysiology. *Curr Osteoporos Rep.* 2007;5:91–97.
McDonald CM. Physical activity, health impairments, and disability in neuromuscular disease. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;81(11 Suppl):S108–S120.
McDonald CM, Abresche RT, Carter GT, et al. Profiles of neuromuscular diseases. Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1995;74:S70–S92.
McDonald CM, McDonald DA, Bagley AM, et al. Relationship between clinical outcome measures and parent proxy reports of health-related quality of life in ambulatory children with Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *J Child Neurol.* 2010;25(9):1130–1144.
McEwen I. Assistive positioning as a control parameter of social-communicative interactions between students with profound multiple disabilities and classroom staff. *Phys Ther.* 1992;72:534–647.
McEwen I. Children with cognitive impairments. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2000:502–532.
McIlwaine PM, Wong LT, Peacock D, Davidson AG. Long-term comparative trial of conventional postural drainage and percussion versus positive expiratory pressure physiotherapy in the treatment of cystic fibrosis. *J Pediatr.* 1997;131(4):570–574.
Menear KS. Parents' perceptions of health and physical activity needs of children with Down syndrome. *Down Syndr Res Pract.* 2007;12:60–68.
Mik G, Gholbe PA, Scher DM, Widmann RF, Green DW. Down syndrome: orthopedic issues. *Curr Opin Pediatr.* 2008;20(10):30–36.
Mitchell S, Cardy JO, Zwaigenbaum L. Differentiating autism spectrum disorder from other developmental delays in the first two years of life. *Dev Dis Res Rev.* 2011;17:130–140.
Moerchen V. Respiration and motor development: a systems perspective. *Neurol Rep.* 1994;18:8–10.
Moisset PA, Skuk D, Asselin I, et al. Successful transplantation of genetically corrected DMD myoblasts following ex vivo transduction with the dystrophin minigene. *Biochem Biophys*

Res Commun. 1998;247:94–99.
Moog U, Smeets EE, van Roozendaal KE, et al. Neurodevelopmental disorders in males related to the gene causing Rett syndrome in females (MECP2). *Eur J Paediatr Neurol.* 2003;7(1):5–12.
Moran A, Dunitz J, Nathan B, et al. Cystic fibrosis related diabetes: current trends in prevalence, incidence, and mortality. *Diabetes Care.* 2009;32:1626–1631.
Morrison L, Agnew J. Oscillating devices for airway clearance in people with cystic fibrosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2009;1: CD006842.
Nervik D, Roberts T. Clinical Bottom Line, Commentary on "What to measure when determining orthotic needs in children with Down syndrome": a pilot study. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2012;24:320.
Neumeyer AM, Cros D, McKenna-Yasek D, et al. Pilot study of myoblast transfer in the treatment of Becker muscular dystrophy. *Neurology.* 1998;51:589–592.
Nixon PA, Orenstein DM, Kelsey SF, et al. The prognostic value of exercise testing in patients with cystic fibrosis. *N Engl J Med.* 1992;327:1785–1788.
Nixon PA, Orenstein DM, Kelsey SF. Habitual physical activity in children and adolescents with cystic fibrosis. *Med Sci Sports Ex.* 2001;33:30–35.
Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man (OMIM), Center for Medical Genetics, Johns Hopkins University (Baltimore, MD), and National Center for Biotechnology Information. US National Library of Medicine (Bethesda, MD), 2014. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim.
Orenstein DM. Pulmonary problems and management concerns in youth sports. *Pediatr Clin North Am.* 2002;49:709–721.
Orenstein DM, Hovell MF, Mulvihill M, et al. Strength vs aerobic training in children with cystic fibrosis. *Chest.* 2004;126:1204–1214.
Oskoui M, Levy G, Garland CJ, et al. The changing natural history of spinal muscular atrophy type 1. *J Neurol.* 2007;69:1931–1936.
Ozonoff S, Young GS, Goldring S, et al. Gross motor development, movement abnormalities, and early identification of autism. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 2008;38(4):644–656.
Packel L, von Berg K. The respiratory system. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist.* ed 4 St Louis: Saunders; 2014:772–861.
Pagano G, Castello G. Oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction in Down syndrome. *Adv Exp Med Bio.* 2012;724:291–299.
Palisano RJ, Walter SD, Russell DJ, et al. Gross motor function of children with Down syndrome: creation of motor growth curves. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82:494–500.
Pandya S, Moxley RT. Long-term prednisone therapy delays loss of ambulation and decline in pulmonary function (abstract). *J Neurol Sci.* 2002;199:S120.
Paranjape SM, Barnes LA, Carson KA, et al. Exercise improves lung function and habitual activity in children with cystic fibrosis. *J Cyst Fibros.* 2012;11:18–23.
Pauls JA, Reed KL. *Quick reference to physical therapy.* ed 2 Austin, TX: ProEd; 2004 pp 532–537.
Pearn J. The gene frequency of acute Werdnig-Hoffman disease (SMA type I): a total population survey in North-East England. *J Med Genet.* 1973;10:260–265.
Pearn J. Incidence, prevalence, and gene frequency studies of chronic childhood spinal muscular atrophy. *J Med Genet.* 1978;15:409–413.
Philpott J, Houghton K, Luke ACanadian Paediatric Society, Healthy Living and Sports Medicine Committee, Canadian Academy of Sport Medicine, Paediatric Sport and Exercise Medicine Committee. Physical activity recommendations for children with specific chronic health conditions: juvenile idiopathic arthritis, hemophilia, asthma, and cystic fibrosis. *Paediatr Child Health.* 2010;15:213–218.
Prader A, Labhart A, Willi H. Ein syndrome von adipositas, kleinwuchs, kryptochismus und oligophrenie nach myatonieartigem zustand im neurgeborenenalter. *Schweiz Med Wschr.* 1956;86:1260–1261.
Provost B, Lopez BR, Heimerl S. A comparison of motor delays in young children: autism spectrum disorder, developmental delay, and developmental concerns. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 2007;37:321–328.
Pueschel SM. Clinical aspects of Down syndrome from infancy to adulthood. *Am J Med Genet.* 1990;7(Suppl):52–56.
Pueschel SM. Should children with Down syndrome be screened for atlantoaxial instability?

Arch Pediatr Adolesc. 1998;152:123–125.
Ratliffe KT. *Clinical pediatric physical therapy.* St Louis: CV Mosby; 1998.
Reichow B, Volkmar FR. Social skills interventions for individuals with autism: evaluation for evidence-based practices within a best evidence synthesis framework. *J Autism Dev Disord.* 2010;40:149–166.
Schopmeyer BB, Lowe F, eds. *The fragile X child.* San Diego: Singular Publishing Group; 1992.
Selby-Silverstein L, Hillstrom HJ, Palisano RJ. The effect of foot orthoses on standing foot posture and gait of young children with Down syndrome. *Neurobiol Rehabil.* 2001;16:183–193.
Semler O, Fricke O, Vezyroglou K, et al. Preliminary results on the mobility after whole body vibration in immobilized children and adolescents. *J Musculoskelet Neuronal Interact.* 2007;7(1):77–81.
Shahbazian MD, Zoghbi HY. Molecular genetics of Rett syndrome and clinical spectrum of MECP2 mutations. *Curr Opin Neurol.* 2001;14(2):171–176.
Sharav T, Bowman T. Dietary practices, physical activity, and body mass index in a selected population of Down syndrome children and their siblings. *Clin Pediatr.* 1992;31:341–344.
Shields N, Dodd K, Abblitt C. Children with Down syndrome do not perform sufficient physical activity to maintain good health or optimize cardiovascular fitness. *Adapt Phys Activ Q.* 2009;26:307–320.
Siegel IM. The management of muscular dystrophy: a clinical review. *Muscle Nerve.* 1978;1:453–460.
Sillence DO, Senn A, Danks DM. Genetic heterogeneity in osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Med Genet.* 1979;16:101–116.
Smythe GM, Hodgetts SI, Grounds MD. Immunobiology and the future of myoblast transfer therapy. *Mol Ther.* 2000;1(4):304–313.
Stuberg W. Muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 2 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2000:339–369.
Stuberg W. Muscular dystrophy and spinal muscular atrophy. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin M, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* ed 4 Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2012:353–384.
Tachdjian M, ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; . *Pediatric orthopedics.* 1990;vol 2 ed 2.
Tachdjian M, ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; . *Pediatric orthopedics.* 2002;vol 2 ed 3.
Tanamy MG, Magal N, Halpern GJ, et al. Fine mapping places the gene for arthrogryposis multiplex congenital neuropathic type between D5S394 and D5S2069 on chromosome 5qter. *Am J Med Genet.* 2001;104(2):152–156.
Tecklin JS, Clayton RG, Scanlin TF. High frequency chest wall oscillation vs. traditional chest physical therapy in DF: a large, 1-year, controlled study. *Pediatr Pulmon.* 2000;20(Suppl):304.
Ulrich DA, Ulrich BD, Angulo-Kinzler RM, Yun J. Treadmill training of infants with Down syndrome: evidence-based developmental outcomes. *Pediatrics.* 2001;108:E84.
Ulrich DA, Lloyd MC, Tiernan CW, et al. Effects of intensity of treadmill training on developmental outcomes and stepping in infants with Down syndrome: a randomized trial. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88:114–122.
Van Brussel M, Takken T, Uiterwaal C, et al. Physical training in children with osteogenesis imperfecta. *J Pediatr.* 2008;152:111–116.
Vis JC, Duffels MG, Winter MM, et al. Down syndrome: a cardiovascular perspective. *J Intellect Disabil Res.* 2009;53(5):419–425.
Volsko TA. Cystic fibrosis and the respiratory therapist: a 50-year perspective. *Resp Care.* 2009;54:587–593.
Webb AK, Dodd ME. Exercise and sport in cystic fibrosis: benefits and risks. *Br J Sports Med.* 1999;33(2):77–78.
Zigman W, Silverman W, Wisniewski HM. Aging and Alzheimer's disease in Down syndrome: clinical and pathological changes. *Ment Retard Dev Disabil Res Rev.* 1996;2:73–79.
Ziter FA, Allsop K. The diagnosis and management of childhood muscular dystrophy. *Clin Pediatr.* 1976;15:540–548.
Zoghbi HY. Postnatal neurodevelopmental disorders: meeting at the synapse? *Science.* 2003;302(5646):826–830.

SECTION 3

Adults

CHAPTER 9

Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation*

Terry Chambliss, PT, MHS, OCS

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- State the philosophy of proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation.
- List the proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation patterns for the extremities and trunk.
- Describe applications of extremity and trunk patterns in neurorehabilitation.
- Explain the use of proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation patterns and techniques within postures of the developmental sequence.
- Identify which proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques are most appropriate to promote the different stages of motor control.
- Understand the rationale for using the proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation approach in neurorehabilitation to address movement impairment.
- Discuss the motor learning strategies used in proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to present one of the most frequently used treatment interventions in neurologic rehabilitation, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF). PNF can be used to improve performance of functional tasks by increasing strength, flexibility, and range of motion. Integration of these gains assists the patient to: (1) establish head and trunk control, (2) initiate and sustain movement, (3) control shifts in the center of gravity, and (4) control the pelvis and trunk in the midline while the extremities move. Using the developmental sequence as a guide, the goal of these techniques is to promote achievement of progressively higher levels of proficiency and functional independence in bed mobility, transitional movements, sitting, standing, and walking.

History of proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation

Dr. Herman Kabat, a medical physician, applied his background in neurophysiology to conceptualize this therapeutic approach in the early 1940s. He was joined by two physical therapists, Margaret Knott in 1947 and Dorothy Voss in 1953. The team collaborated in expanding and refining treatment techniques and procedures to improve motor function. Knott and Voss authored the first book introducing PNF in 1956.

The initial focus of these founders was on development and application of integral concepts including resistance, stretch reflexes, approximation, traction, and manual contacts to facilitate movement. Their goal and the goal of their treatment approach was to promote improvement in patient efficiency in motor function and independence in activities of daily living (Kabat, 1961). PNF was based on the understanding of the central nervous system at the time and grew to become a viable treatment method. Kabat, Knott, and Voss continued to treat patients, review the literature, and refine their approach during the ensuing years. Today, clinicians and researchers continue to provide input that allows PNF to grow and evolve. This chapter presents a combination of the traditional interventions used by clinical practitioners and the tenets embraced by the International PNF Association.

Basic principles of PNF

Motor learning is enhanced through skilled application of ten essential components (Knott and Voss, 1968). These concepts are often referred to as the key elements of PNF (Table 9-1).

Table 9-1
Essential Components of PNF

Manual contacts
Body position and body mechanics
Stretch
Manual resistance
Irradiation
Joint facilitation
Timing of movement
Patterns of movement
Visual cues
Verbal input

Manual Contacts

Placing the hands on the skin stimulates pressure receptors and provides information to the patient about the desired direction of movement. Optimally, manual contacts are placed on the skin overlying the target muscle groups and in the direction of the desired movement (Adler et al., 2008). For example, to facilitate shoulder flexion, one or both of the clinician's hands are placed on the anterior and superior surface of the upper extremity; to facilitate trunk flexion, the hands contact the anterior surface of the trunk. A lumbrical grip is preferred to control movement and provide optimal resistance, especially regarding rotation, while avoiding excessive pressure or producing discomfort (Figure 9-1).

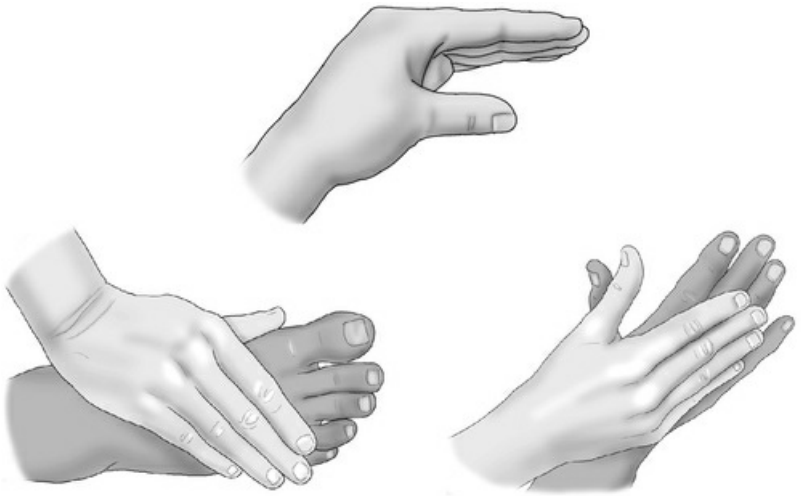


FIGURE 9-1 Lumbrical grip. A lumbrical grip is one in which the metacarpophalangeal joints are flexed and adducted while the fingers are in relaxed extension. This position allows flexion forces to be generated through the clinician's hand without squeezing (which provides ambiguous sensory stimulation regarding muscle group and direction) or exerting excessive pressure. This grip provides optimal control of the three-dimensional movements that occur in PNF patterns.

Body Position and Body Mechanics

Dynamic clinician movement that mirrors the patient's direction of movement is essential to effective facilitation. The pelvis, shoulders, arms, and hands of the clinician should be placed in line with the movement. When this is not possible, the arms and hands of the clinician should be in alignment with the movement. Resistance is created through use of the clinician's body weight while the hands and arms remain relatively relaxed (Adler et al., 2008).

Stretch

Kabat proposed that the stretch reflex could be used to facilitate muscle activity. He hypothesized that if the muscle is placed in an elongated position, a stretch reflex could be elicited by producing slight movement farther into the elongated range. A stretch facilitates the muscle that is elongated, synergistic muscles at the same joint and facilitates other associated muscles (Loofbourrow and Gellhorn, 1948). Although quick stretch tends to increase motor response, prolonged stretch can potentially decrease muscle activity; therefore, patient response should be closely monitored. The presence of joint hypermobility, fracture, or pain contraindicates the use of facilitatory stretch. Stretch, especially quick stretch, should be applied with caution in the presence of spasticity because individual responses vary, and may result in undesired motor activity.

Manual Resistance

Resistance is defined by Sullivan and Markos (1995) as "an internal or external force that alters the difficulty of moving." The status of the involved tissue regarding stiffness, length, and neurologic influences dictates the internal resistance that the patient encounters during movement. Manual, mechanical, or gravitational forces can be used to apply resistance external to the body surface. Some PNF procedures focus on reducing internal resistance by altering neural firing patterns; other activities or techniques provide external resistance to increase motor unit recruitment. Therefore, in the context of PNF, resistance may be considered either a means of neuromuscular facilitation or a tool through which muscle strengthening can be promoted. Through complex interactions among neural and contractile components, resistance may influence movement initiation, postural stability, timing of functional movement patterns, motor learning, endurance, and muscle mass (Sullivan and Markos, 1995).

Appropriate resistance facilitates the maximum motor response that allows proper completion of the defined task (Knott and Voss, 1968). If the goal of intervention is mobility, appropriate resistance is the greatest amount of resistance that allows the patient to move smoothly and without pain through the available range of motion (Kisner and Colby, 2007). The amount and direction of the applied force must adapt to the changes in muscle function and patient ability that may occur throughout the range. If the goal of intervention is stability, appropriate resistance is the greatest amount that allows the patient to isometrically maintain the designated position.

Irradiation

Irradiation is a neurophysiologic phenomenon defined as an increase in activity in related muscles in response to external resistance. This term is often used synonymously with overflow and reinforcement (Adler et al., 2008; Sullivan et al., 1982). The magnitude of the response increases as the stimulus increases in intensity and duration (Sherrington, 1947). PNF uses the process of irradiation to increase muscular activity in the agonist muscle(s) or to inhibit opposing antagonist muscle groups. Each person's response to resistance varies; therefore, different patterns of overflow occur among individuals. By watching patient response, the clinician can identify the manual contacts and amount of resistance that maximize a patient's ability to generate the desired movement. Examples of activities and typical patterns of response include the following:

1. Resistance to trunk flexion produces overflow into the hip flexors and ankle dorsiflexors.
2. Resistance to trunk extension produces overflow into the hip and knee extensors.
3. Resistance to upper extremity extension and adduction produces overflow into the trunk flexors.
4. Resistance to hip flexion, adduction, and external rotation produces overflow into the dorsiflexors.

Joint Facilitation

Traction and approximation stimulate receptors within the joint and periarticular structures. Traction creates elongation of a body segment, which can be used to facilitate motion and decrease pain (Sullivan et al., 1982). Approximation produces compression of body structures, which can be used to promote weight bearing and muscle cocontraction (Adler et al., 2008). Individual responses to traction and approximation vary. These forces may be applied during performance of extremity patterns or superimposed upon body positions.

Timing of Movement

Normal movement requires smooth sequencing and gradation of muscle activation. Timing of most functional movements occurs in a distal to proximal direction, as in picking up a pencil. The pencil is grasped in the hand and then positioned for use by actions of the elbow and shoulder. A related consideration is that development of postural control proceeds from cephalad to caudal and from proximal to distal (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 2012). These issues must be considered when assessing, facilitating, and teaching movement strategies in the neurologically impaired individual (Carr and Shepherd, 1998). Adequate muscle strength and joint range of motion may be present to allow execution of a specified functional task; however, sequencing of the components within a movement pattern may be faulty. Also, sufficient control of the trunk and proximal extremity joints must be attained before mastery of tasks that require precise movements of the distal joints.

Patterns of Movement

PNF is characterized by its unique diagonal patterns of movement. Kabat and Knott recognized that groups of muscles work synergistically in functional contexts. They combined these related movements to create PNF patterns. Furthermore, because muscles are spiral and diagonal in both structure and function, most functional movements do not occur in cardinal planes. For example, reaching with an upper extremity and walking are two common activities that occur as triplanar versus uniplanar movements. PNF patterns, therefore, more closely simulate the demands incurred during functional movements.

Visual Cues

Visual cues can help an individual control and correct body position and movement. Eye movement influences head and body position. Feedback from the visual system may be used to promote a stronger muscle contraction (Adler et al., 2008) and to facilitate proper alignment of body parts, such as the head and trunk, through postural reactions.

Verbal Input

A verbal command is used to provide information to the patient. The command should be concise and should provide a directional cue. The verbal command consists of three phases: preparation, action, and correction. The preparatory phase readies the patient for action. The action phase provides information about the desired action and signals the patient to initiate the movement. The correction phase tells the patient how to modify the action if necessary. PNF uses the knowledge of the effects of voice volume and intonation to promote the desired response, such as relaxation or greater effort (Adler et al., 2008).

Application of Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation Principles

When considered as a group, the preceding principles provide a template for the clinical application of PNF techniques. The clinician's hands are placed on the surface of the patient's body in the direction of the desired diagonal movement using a lumbrical grip (see Figure 9-1). The clinician positions the patient to allow for dynamic movement by aligning the patient's body with the diagonal movement pattern. The body segment is elongated before requesting the patient to move, and a quick stretch is applied if appropriate. A concise verbal command is given and timed to

coincide with the initiation of the desired movement. The amount of resistance is graded (increased or decreased to match the patient's ability to generate force) to allow for the desired response. Normal timing is considered and reinforced during the movement pattern. The clinician monitors the patient's response and may add a visual cue to enhance the response. Table 9-2 lists key points to use as a tool for clinical application. This checklist may help the clinician select specific PNF techniques to address individual patient needs.

Table 9-2

PNF Checklist for Clinical Use

Component	Correct	Incorrect
Patient position		
Clinician position		
Clinician's body mechanics		
Manual contacts		
Desired movement		
Stretch		
Verbal command		
Resistance		

Biomechanical considerations

Other considerations that affect relative ease or difficulty of movement include biomechanical factors such as the base of support (BOS), center of gravity (COG), number of weight-bearing joints, and length of lever arm. The BOS involves both the body surface in contact with the supporting surface and the area enclosed by the contacting body segments. COG refers to the distance of the center of mass of the patient's body to the supporting surface. The number of weight-bearing joints involved indicates the complexity and degree of control inherent in the activity. In general, the greater the number of joints through which the line of force passes, the greater the degree of muscle control required to efficiently perform a related task. The lever arm is affected by gravity, body weight, and the site of application of the resistive force. The resultant force on the moving segment increases as the distance between the applied force and the target muscles increases. All of these factors must be considered when selecting and progressing activities and techniques within a therapeutic exercise program. A relative increase in difficulty is experienced by the patient when the height of the COG, number of weight-bearing joints, and length of lever arm are increased or the BOS is decreased. Within the developmental sequence, the natural progression of postures is that of increasing challenge to the stabilizing muscles. Quadruped, therefore, is a more demanding position than prone-on-elbows because of COG location relative to the support surface and differences in surface area within the BOS.

Patterns

Early development of PNF techniques included analysis of typical movement strategies (Knott and Voss, 1968). The results of these observations were integrated into specific combinations of joint movements called *patterns*. Although often combined in clinical practice, patterns focus on either the extremities or the trunk. All PNF patterns consist of a combination of motions occurring in three planes. The rotation component is especially important and should be recruited during the beginning range of the pattern. Early rotation reinforces normal distal to proximal timing of extremity movements while recruiting greater participation of the trunk musculature.

Extremity Patterns

The two extremity diagonal patterns are diagrammed in Figure 9-2. These are named *diagonal 1 (D_1)* and *diagonal 2 (D_2)*. Extremity patterns are named for the direction of movement occurring in the proximal joint and represent the movement that results from performing the pattern. Each diagonal is further subdivided into *flexion* and *extension* directions. For example, in D_1 flexion in the upper extremity (UE), the shoulder moves into flexion, and in D_1 extension, the shoulder moves into extension. The middle or intermediate joint may be flexed or extended. Straight arm and leg patterns are used to emphasize the proximal component of the pattern and recruit greater trunk activity. When the intermediate joints are flexed, more emphasis can be placed on the intermediate or distal components. The UE patterns will be described in a supine position. Figure 9-2 illustrates and identifies the components of the UE patterns.

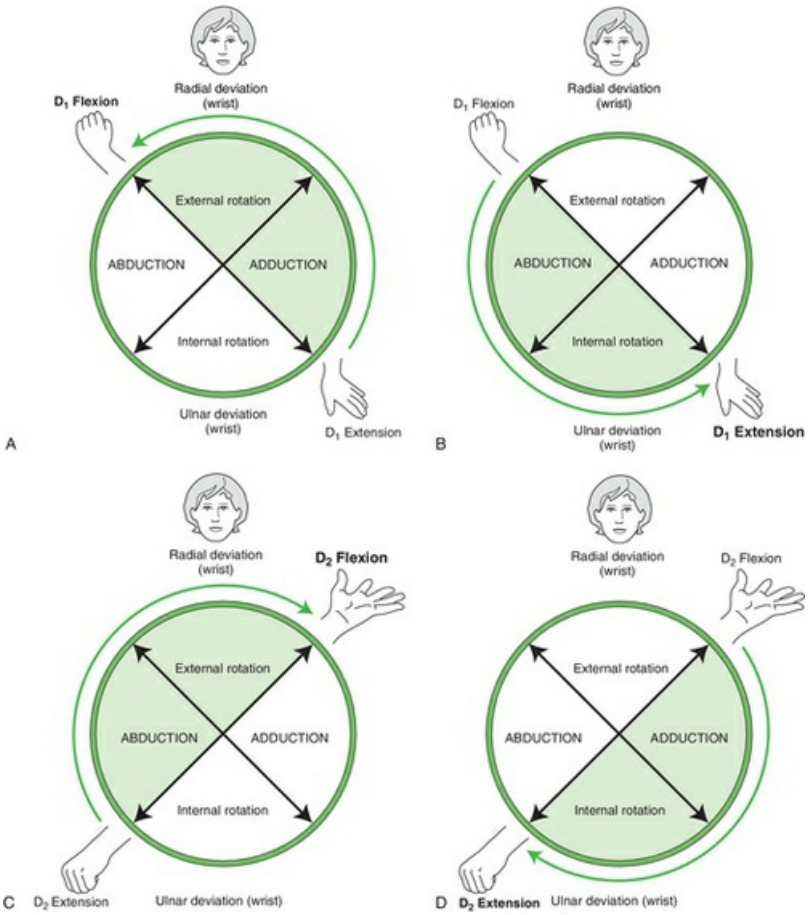


FIGURE 9-2 Upper extremity diagonal patterns. The two major diagonal patterns (D_1 and D_2) of the upper extremity are depicted in the four pictured diagrams. The reader should orient herself to the illustration as if the reader is the person (patient role) moving the left arm with the head at the top of the diagram. The posture of the hands is used to help the reader guide the movements in the correct combinations. The shaded areas represent

the shoulder components of the pattern in bold type: **(A)** D_1 Flexion, **(B)** D_1 Extension, **(C)** D_2 Flexion, and **(D)** D_2 Extension. For example, to perform D_1 Flexion, the reader begins with the hand in the D_1 extension hand position in which the left hand is thrust slightly out from the left side of the body as if in preparation to stop a fall and performs the shaded movements depicted in diagram **A**, i.e., shoulder external rotation and adduction, so that the hand ends up in the D_1 hand position (the left hand has performed a movement similar to grasping a scarf and bringing it across the body and over the right shoulder). To perform D_1 Extension, the reader looks at Figure 9-2, *B*, and starts in the D_1 Flexion hand position, performing the shaded movements in a reverse sequence. To perform D_2 Flexion, the reader starts with the left hand curled in a fist next to the right hip with the arm across the body and then moves the arm up and to the left as if in preparation to throw something over the left shoulder. D_2 Extension is performed in a reverse sequence.

Upper Extremity Patterns

The UE D_1 flexion pattern consists of shoulder flexion/adduction/external rotation. The arm begins in an extended position slightly out to the side, about one fist width from the hip. The shoulder is extended/abducted/internally rotated with the forearm pronated, and the wrist ulnarly deviated. The clinician requests that the patient "squeeze my hand and pull up." It may be helpful for the clinician to suggest that the patient think about reaching up to bring a scarf over the opposite shoulder.

The UE D_1 extension pattern is the reverse of the flexion pattern and consists of extension/abduction/internal rotation. The patient starts with the arm flexed with the elbow across the midline of the body at about nose level. The forearm is supinated with the wrist and fingers flexed and the wrist radially deviated. The clinician requests that the patient "open your hand and push down and out." The UE D_1 flexion diagonal pattern is often thought of as functional for feeding and the UE D_1 extension pattern as functional for performing a protective reaction when in a sitting position. Detailed descriptions of the UE D_1 flexion pattern and the UE D_1 extension pattern are found in Tables 9-3 and 9-4, respectively. Performance of the UE D_1 flexion pattern and UE D_1 extension pattern are depicted in Interventions 9-1 and 9-2, respectively.

Table 9-3

Upper Extremity D_1 Flexion—Flexion/Abduction External Rotation—Elbow Extended

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Scapula	Posterior depression	Anterior elevation
Shoulder	Extension/abduction/internal rotation	Flexion/adduction/external rotation
Elbow	Extension	Extension
Forearm	Pronation	Supination
Wrist	Extension/ulnar deviation	Flexion/radial deviation
Fingers	Extension	Flexion

Table 9-4

Upper Extremity D_1 Extension—Extension/Adduction/Internal Rotation—Elbow Extended

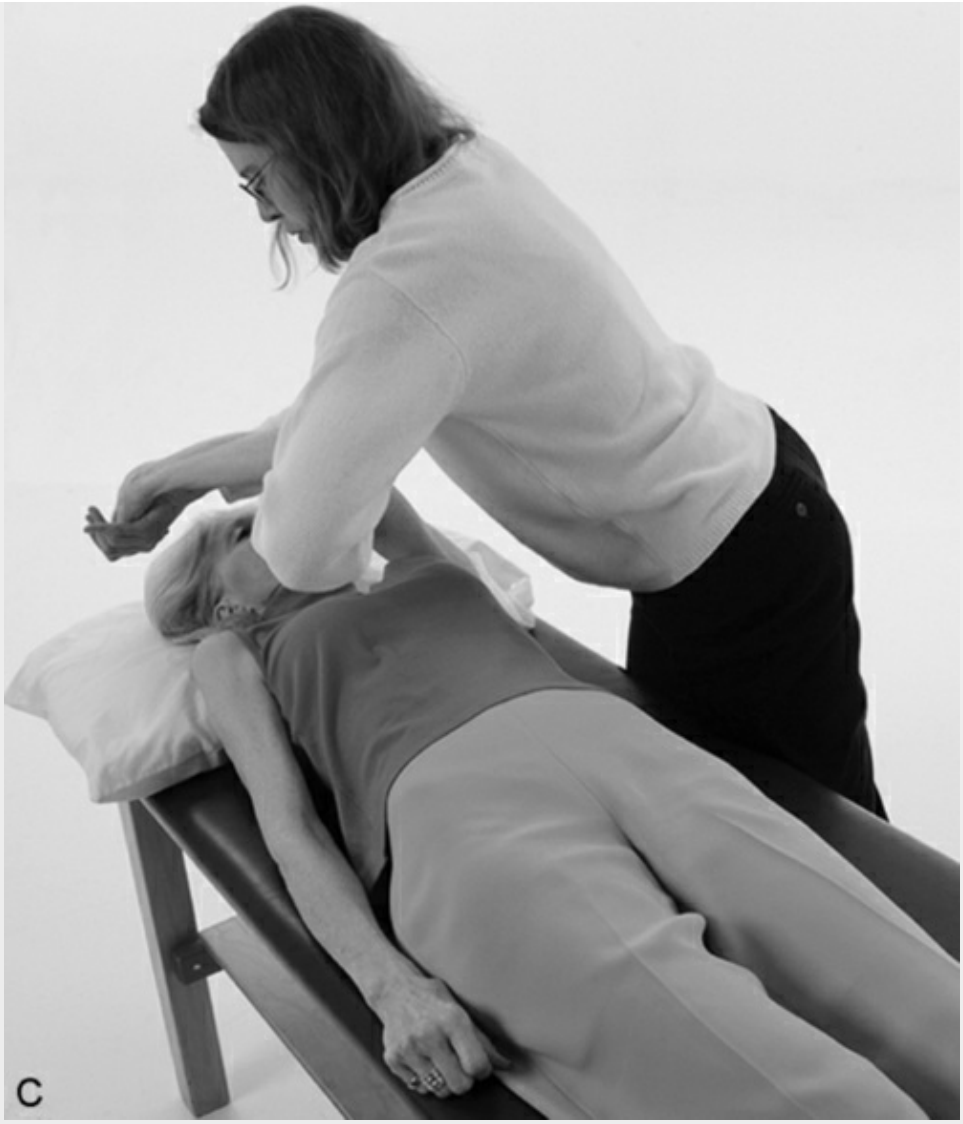
Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Scapula	Anterior elevation	Posterior depression
Shoulder	Flexion/adduction/external rotation	Extension/abduction/internal rotation
Elbow	Extension	Extension
Forearm	Supination	Pronation
Wrist	Flexion/radial deviation	Extension/ulnar deviation
Fingers	Flexion	Extension

Intervention 9-1

Upper Extremity D_1 Flexion


A


B



The pattern begins in the lengthened position of the primary muscles involved (extension) and ends in the shortened position of the same muscle groups (flexion). The patient's left upper extremity is being treated. The clinician's right hand is placed distally; her left hand proximally.

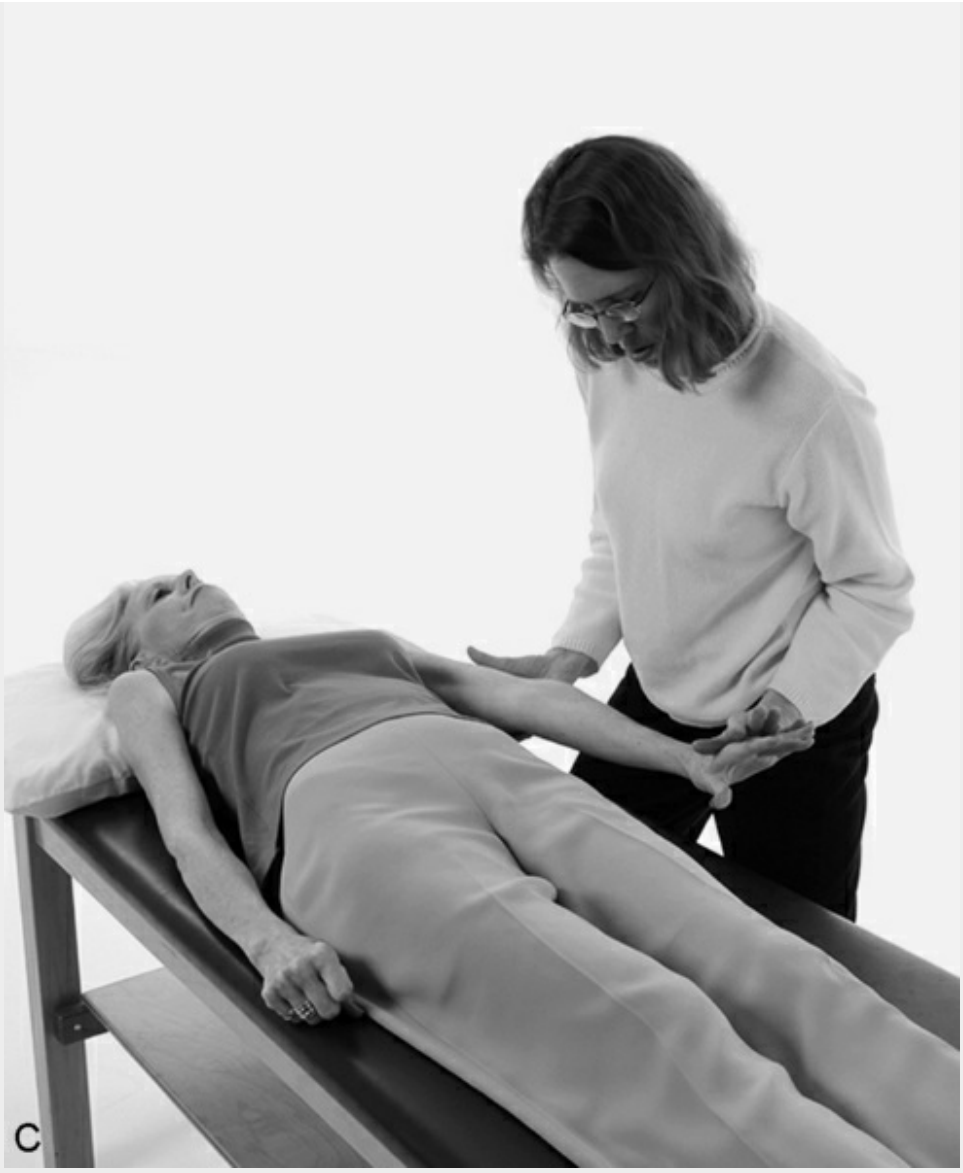
A. Beginning. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's feet. The clinician's right palm contacts the patient's left palm, similar to holding hands as if going for a walk. The palmar surface of the clinician's left hand is placed on the anterior aspect of the patient's arm just proximal to the elbow. The verbal command is given to "turn your hand up and pull up and across your body."
B. Midrange. As the patient pulls the left upper extremity across the body, the clinician remains in the diagonal position while pivoting to face the patient. Manual contacts may shift slightly to accommodate patient effort.
C. End range. The patient completes the range with hand placements consistent with the previous description of midrange.

Intervention 9-2

Upper Extremity D_1 Extension

A


B



The pattern begins in the lengthened range of the involved muscle groups (flexion) and ends in the shortened range (extension). The patient's left upper extremity is treated. The clinician's left hand contacts the dorsal aspect of the patient's hand, including the fingers. The clinician's right palm contacts the patient's dorsal arm, just proximal to the elbow.

A. Beginning. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient. The given verbal command is "turn your hand down and push down and out to the side." The patient extends the wrist and fingers and pronates the forearm, as if pushing the clinician away. Note that some clinicians prefer to face the patient's feet in the starting position of this pattern.
B. Midrange. The clinician shifts body weight and position to accommodate movement through the range. Manual contacts continue on the dorsal hand or fingers and the dorsal and distal aspect of the patient's humerus.
C. End range. The clinician pivots toward the patient's feet while remaining in the diagonal position. Manual contacts remain as previously. It is important that during the latter part of this pattern that as the clinician facilitates or resists wrist extension that the force is parallel to the patient's forearm.

CAUTION: Care must be taken to avoid application of force perpendicular to the forearm, which can result in resistance to the shoulder flexors. This input disrupts the flow of the pattern and often confuses the patient as to the intent of the movement.

The D_2 flexion pattern consists of shoulder flexion/abduction/external rotation. The arm begins

extended across the body with the elbow crossing the midline, forearm pronated, wrist and fingers flexed, and wrist ulnarly deviated. The clinician asks the patient to "lift your wrist and arm up." The UE D_2 extension pattern is the reverse of the flexion pattern and consists of shoulder extension/adduction/internal rotation. The arm begins in flexion about one fist width lateral to the ipsilateral ear. The shoulder is externally rotated with the forearm supinated, wrist and fingers extended, and the wrist radially deviated. The clinician requests that the patient "squeeze my hand and pull down and across."

Students can remember these diagonals functionally by thinking of D_2 flexion as throwing a wedding bouquet over the same shoulder and D_2 extension as placing a sword in its sheath. Detailed descriptions of the UE D_2 flexion pattern and UE D_2 extension pattern are found in Tables 9-5 and 9-6, respectively. Performance of the UE D_2 flexion pattern and UE D_2 extension pattern are depicted in Interventions 9-3 and 9-4, respectively.

Table 9-5

Upper Extremity D_2 Flexion—Flexion/Abduction/External Rotation—Elbow Extended

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Scapula	Anterior depression	Posterior elevation
Shoulder	Extension/adduction/internal rotation	Flexion/abduction/external rotation
Elbow	Extension	Extension
Forearm	Supination	Pronation
Wrist	Flexion/ulnar deviation	Extension/radial deviation
Fingers	Flexion	Extension

Table 9-6

Upper Extremity D_2 Extension—Extension/Adduction/Internal Rotation—Elbow Extended

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Scapula	Posterior elevation	Anterior depression
Shoulder	Flexion/abduction/external rotation	Extension/adduction/internal rotation
Elbow	Extension	Extension
Forearm	Pronation	Supination
Wrist	Extension/radial deviation	Flexion/ulnar deviation
Fingers	Extension	Flexion

Intervention 9-3

Upper Extremity D_2 Flexion


A


B

The pattern is pictured as applied to the patient's left upper extremity. The clinician's right hand contacts the dorsal aspect of patient's hand, with the left hand on the dorsal humeral region.

A. Beginning. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's left hip. The clinician's right palm contacts the patient's dorsal hand, and then places the dorsal aspect of her left hand against the patient's dorsal humerus, just proximal to the elbow. The given command is "open your hand and lift your thumb up and out."

B. Midrange. As the patient moves into midrange, the clinician shifts backward. The clinician's left hand naturally supinates with the movement, allowing the palm to now contact the patient's dorsal arm. The clinician's right thumb may be used to facilitate or resist thumb abduction.

C. End range. Movement continues through range with manual contacts remaining similar to those at midrange. The clinician shifts farther posteriorly as needed to accommodate patient movement.

Intervention 9-4

Upper Extremity D_2 Extension


A


B

The patient's left upper extremity participates, starting with the shoulder in a flexed position overhead.

A. Beginning. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient. She then places the left hand in the patient's palm and the dorsal aspect of the right hand on the anterior surface of the patient's arm, just proximal to the elbow. The pattern commences upon the command to "squeeze my hand, turn your thumb down and toward your opposite hip." The patient then flexes her fingers to grasp the clinician's hand, flexes the wrist, and pronates the forearm.
B. Midrange. As the patient extends and adducts her shoulder, the clinician pivots to face the patient's feet and supinates the forearm such that the patient's dorsal arm now lies within the clinician's open hand.
C. End range. The patient completes the motion as the clinician shifts her weight backward to resist the patient's efforts as appropriate. The clinician maintains similar manual contacts as described for midrange.

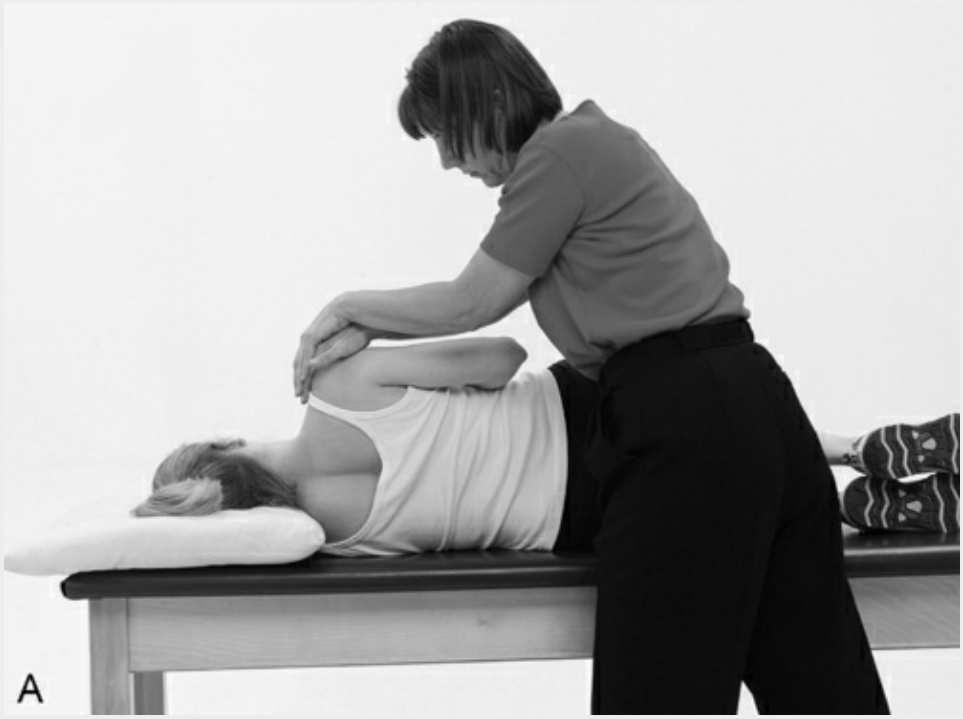
The following associations may help students remember the movement combinations in the upper extremity. Flexion patterns are always paired with shoulder external rotation, forearm supination, and radial deviation of the wrist. Conversely, UE extension patterns are always paired with shoulder internal rotation, forearm pronation, and ulnar deviation of the wrist.

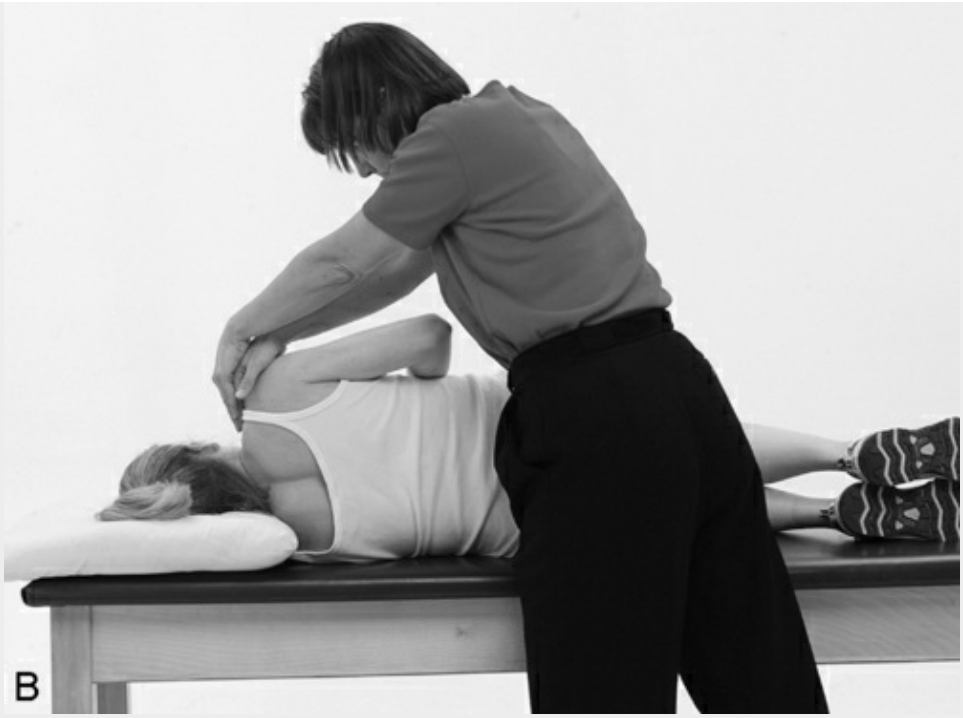
Scapular Patterns

The scapula moves in diagonal patterns in keeping with scapulohumeral biomechanics. The scapular pattern associated with D_1 flexion is *anterior elevation*. The scapula elevates and protracts as the arm comes across the body. The scapular pattern associated with D_1 extension is the opposite of anterior elevation or *posterior depression*. The scapula is depressed and retracted. To help visualize these movements, consider shrugging your shoulder forward toward your ear as being associated with the UE D_1 flexion pattern and putting the inferior angle of your right scapula in the left hip pocket as related to D_1 extension. These patterns are pictured in Interventions 9-5 and 9-6, respectively.

Intervention 9-5

Scapular Anterior Elevation





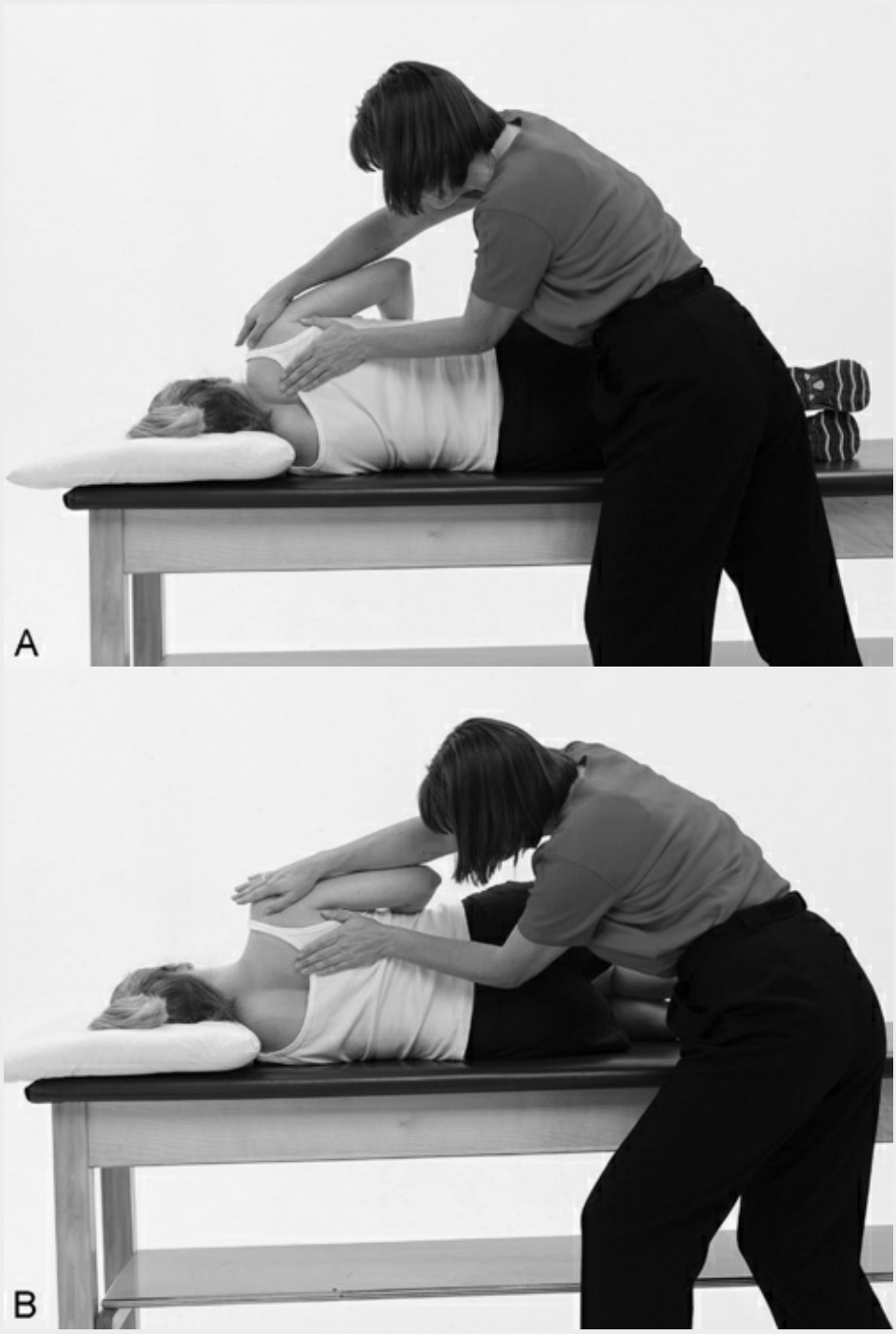
The patient is pictured in left side-lying with the cervical spine in neutral position. The right scapular region is addressed. The clinician stands behind the patient, approximately at level with the patient's pelvis. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's head.

A. Beginning. The clinician's right hand contacts the patient's right acromial region. The clinician's left hand is placed on top of and reinforces her right. The patient is asked to "shrug your shoulder forward toward your ear."

B. End. The patient completes the motion while the clinician shifts her body weight onto the forward foot, mirroring patient movement.

Intervention 9-6

Scapular Posterior Depression



The patient is lying on the left side and the right shoulder region is treated. The clinician stands in the diagonal position, behind the patient and facing her head.

A. Beginning. The clinician's right hand is placed on the patient's right acromion with her left hand contacting the inferior and medial border of the scapula. The pattern begins upon the command "pull your shoulder blade down and back."

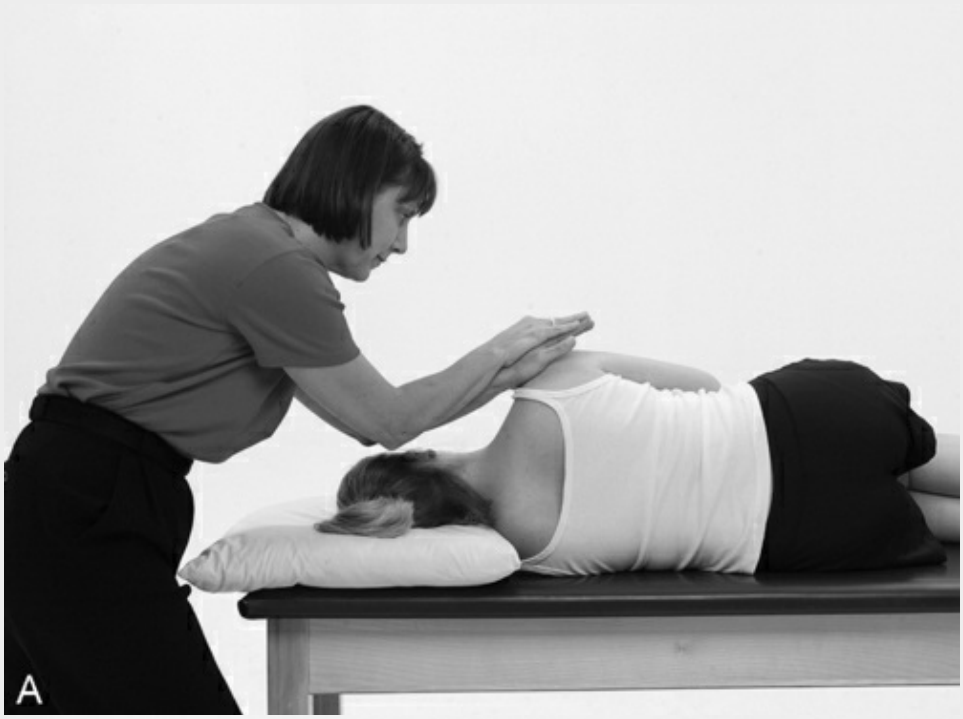
B. End. As the patient continues through the range, the clinician shifts her body weight onto the back leg to counter patient effort.

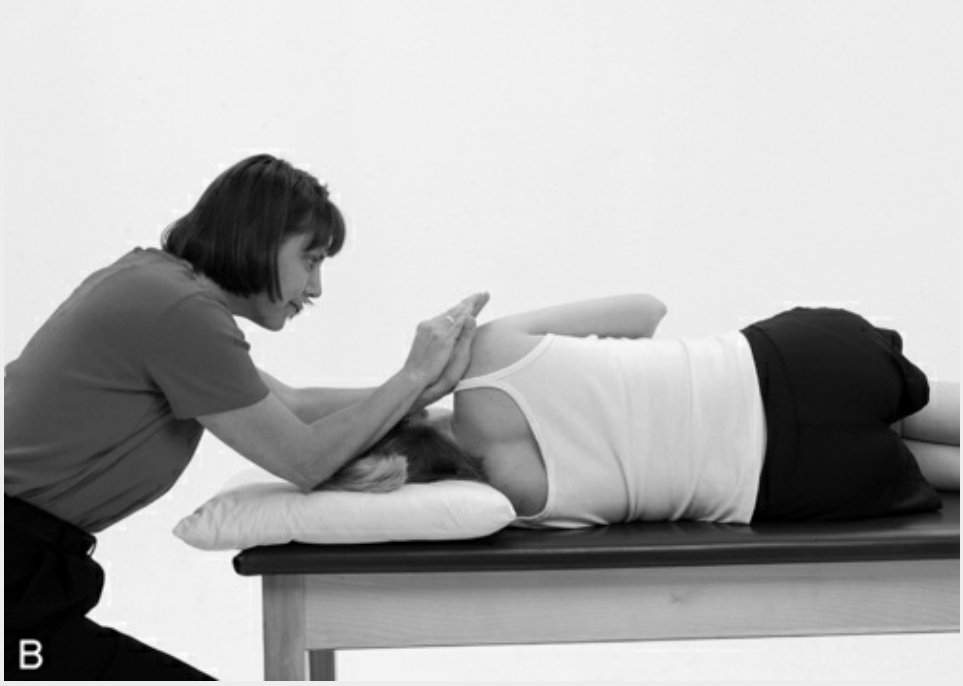
The scapular pattern associated with D_2 flexion is *posterior elevation*. As the arm is lifted up and externally rotated, the scapula is posteriorly elevated. Shrugging with the shoulder held back is approximately the same motion as the scapula is elevated and retracted. Scapular *anterior depression*

is part of the D_2 extension pattern and is the opposite of posterior elevation. The scapula is depressed and protracted as when pushing up to sitting from side-lying. These patterns are shown in Interventions 9-7 and 9-8, respectively.

Intervention 9-7

Scapular Posterior Elevation



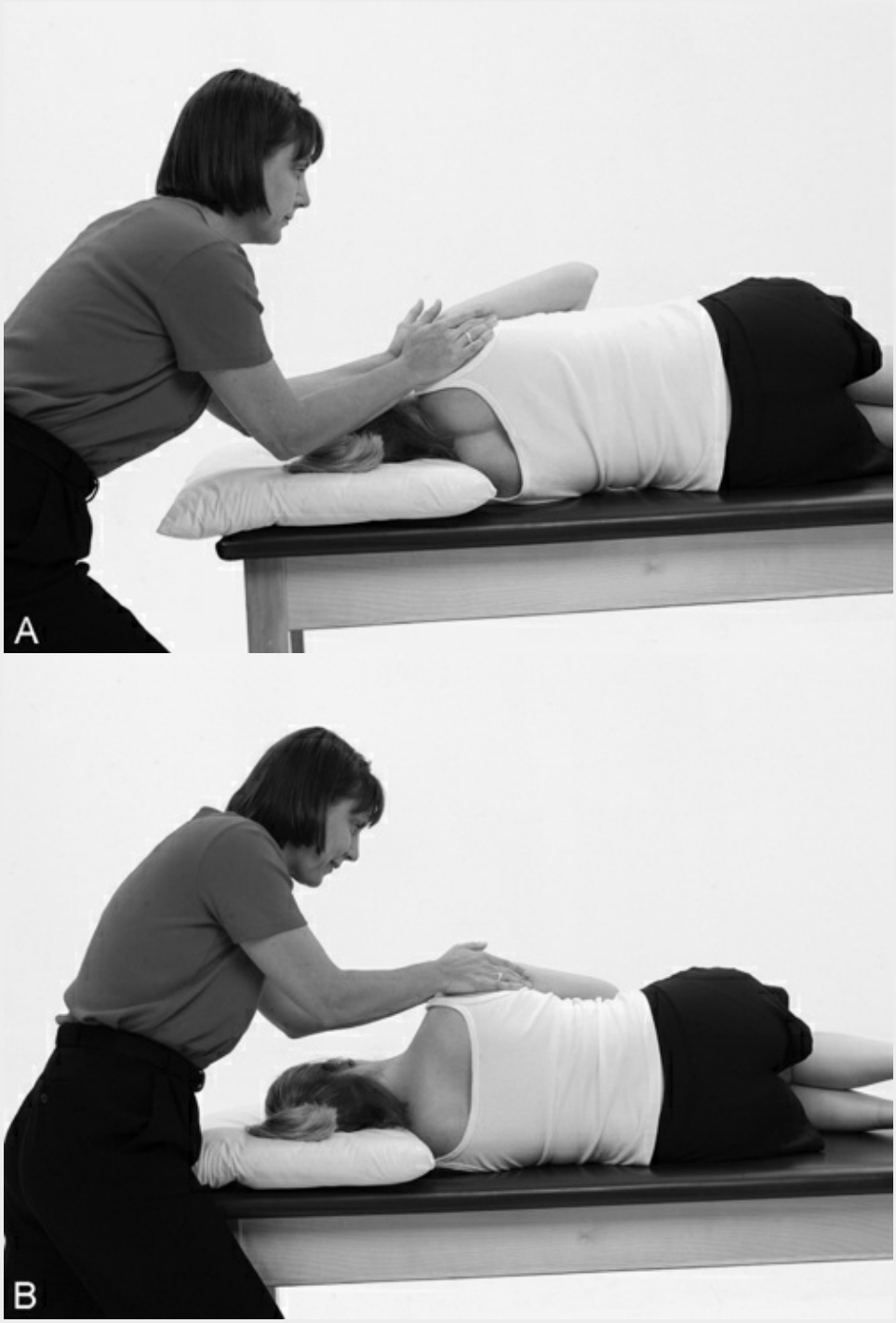


The pattern is performed with the right scapula with the patient lying on the left side. The clinician stands in the diagonal position at the end of the table adjacent and slightly posterior to the

patient's head.
A. Beginning. The clinician's left hand is placed slightly posterior to the patient's right acromion; the right hand covers the left hand. The patient is asked to "shrug your shoulder up and back."
B. End. As the patient elevates and adducts the scapula, the clinician shifts her body weight backward.

Intervention 9-8

Scapular Anterior Depression



The pattern is applied to the patient's right scapula while the patient is left side-lying. The clinician stands at the head of the table adjacent and slightly posterior to the patient's head.

A. Beginning. Manual contacts are positioned slightly anterior to the patient's right acromion with the left hand under the right. The verbal command "push your shoulder blade down and forward" is given.

B. End. The clinician shifts her weight forward as the patient depresses and adducts the scapula.

A clock is a useful way to visualize the scapula moving on the thorax. The patient is positioned in left side-lying. Twelve o'clock is toward the patient's head, and six o'clock is toward the feet. Figure 9-3 depicts the placement of the scapular diagonals on a clock face. Posterior elevation is at eleven o'clock, and diagonally opposite at five o'clock is anterior depression. Anterior elevation is at one o'clock, and diagonally opposite at seven o'clock is posterior depression.

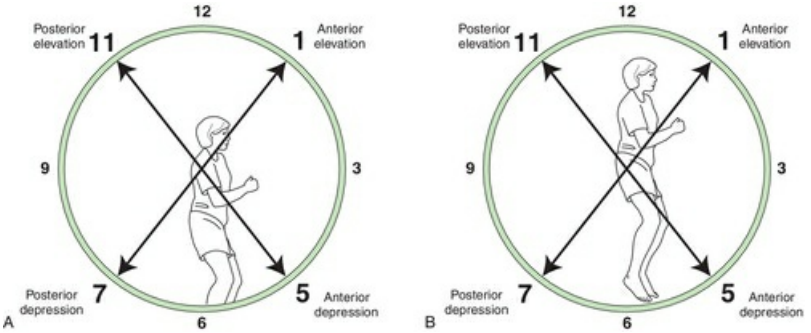


FIGURE 9-3 Scapula and pelvic diagonal patterns. Visualizing a clock is a useful way to understand the scapular and pelvic diagonals. **A,** The axis for the scapular diagonals occurs at the right shoulder. Posterior elevation is diagonally opposite anterior depression, whereas anterior elevation is diagonally opposite posterior depression. **B,** The axis of motion is at the right hip.

Lower Extremity Patterns

The lower extremity (LE) patterns are illustrated and explained in supine position but will be related to functional movements in sitting and standing (Figure 9-4). Analogous to the upper extremity, four lower extremity patterns along two diagonals will be described. The D_1 flexion pattern in the LE includes hip flexion/adduction/external rotation. The pattern begins with the leg resting on the support surface with heel in line with ipsilateral shoulder. The hip is abducted and internally rotated. The foot is plantar flexed and everted. The patient is requested to "pull your foot up and in and pull your leg across." Knee flexion frequently accompanies associated functional movements and is, therefore, the most common direction of movement for the intermediate joint during this pattern. This is the motion used to cross one leg over the other in sitting or to bring the foot up to the opposite hand to take off a shoe. If the person is supine, the lower extremity no longer contacts the surface as the knee and foot move toward the contralateral hip.

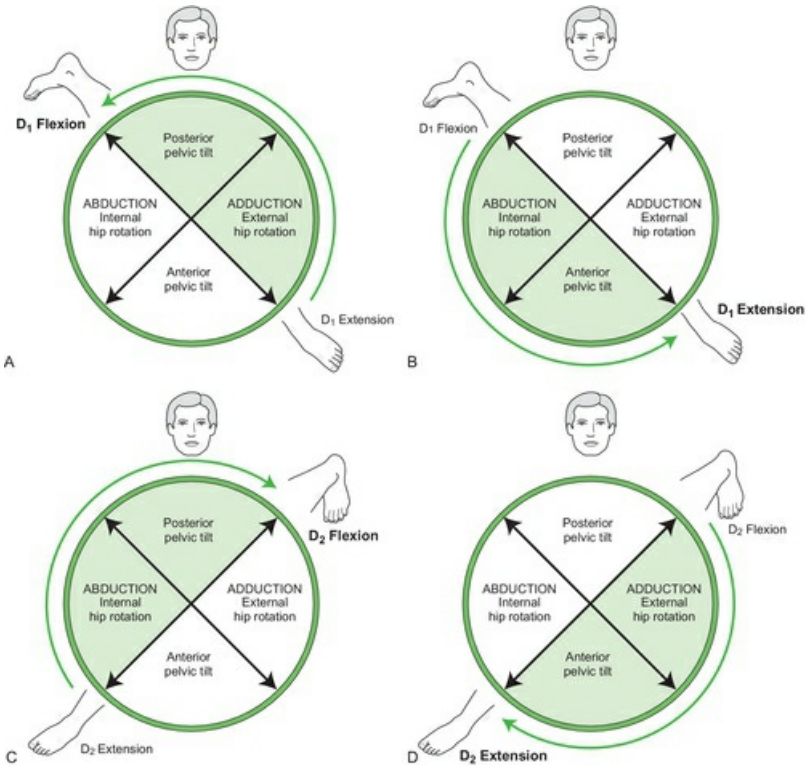


FIGURE 9-4 Lower-extremity diagonal patterns. The two major diagonal patterns (D_1 and D_2) of the lower extremity are depicted. The reader should orient himself or herself to the illustration as if the reader is the person moving the left leg with the head at the top of the diagram. The posture of the feet is used to help the reader guide his movements in the correct combinations. Unlike the upper extremity, hip internal rotation is *always* paired with ABDUCTION, and hip external rotation is *always* paired with ADDUCTION. The shaded areas represent the components of the pattern: **(A)** D_1 Flexion, **(B)** D_1 Extension, **(C)** D_2 Flexion, and **(D)** D_2 Extension. For example, to perform D_1 flexion, the reader places the foot in the D_1 extension position (which is out to the side as if taking a protective step) and performs the shaded movement, as depicted in **A** so that the foot ends up in the D_1 flexion position, with the bottom of the foot turned up (as if about to cross the left leg over the right). To perform D_1 extension, the reader looks at **B** and places the foot in the D_1 foot position, then performs the shaded movements in a reverse sequence. To perform D_2 flexion, the reader places the left foot in the D_2 extension position. To get to the D_2 foot position, the reader moves the right leg out to the side, allowing the left foot to cross the midline of the body. The reader performs the shaded movements in **C** so the foot ends up in the D_1 flexion foot position much like a dog lifting its leg at a fire hydrant. D_2 extension is performed in a reverse sequence, as in a soccer kick.

The D_1 extension pattern is a hip extension/abduction/internal rotation and follows the same diagonal but in the opposite direction as D_1 flexion. The pattern begins with the hip externally rotated and the hip and knee flexed. The foot is dorsiflexed and inverted. The patient is requested to "push your foot down and out." This motion is similar to the stance phase of gait and coming to stand from a seated position. At the end of the pattern, the hip and knee are extended with the ankle in plantar flexion and eversion. Detailed descriptions of LE D_1 flexion pattern and LE D_1 extension pattern are found in Tables 9-7 and 9-8, respectively. Performance of the LE D_1 flexion pattern and LE D_1 extension pattern are depicted in Interventions 9-9 and 9-10, respectively.

Table 9-7

Lower Extremity D_1 Flexion—Flexion/Adduction/External Rotation—Knee Flexed

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Pelvis	Posterior depression	Anterior elevation
Hip	Extension/abduction/internal rotation	Flexion/adduction/external rotation
Knee	Extension	Flexion
Ankle	Plantar flexion/eversion	Dorsiflexion/inversion

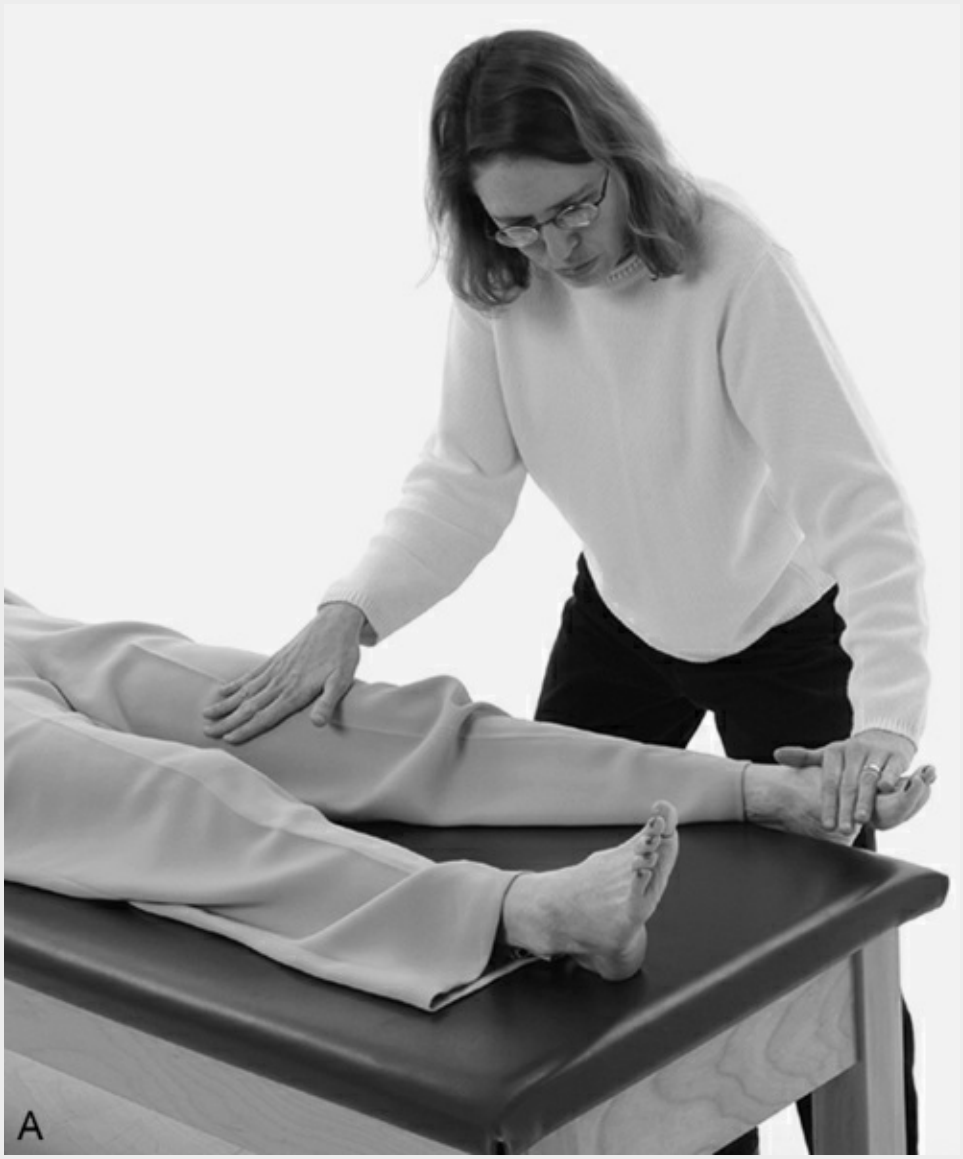
Table 9-8

Lower Extremity D_1 Extension—Extension/Abduction/Internal Rotation—Knee Extended

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Pelvis	Anterior elevation	Posterior depression
Hip	Flexion/adduction/external rotation	Extension/abduction/internal rotation
Knee	Flexion	Extension
Ankle	Dorsiflexion/inversion	Plantar flexion/eversion

Intervention 9-9

Lower Extremity D_1 Flexion




B

The pattern is applied to the patient's left lower extremity, beginning with the primary muscles in a lengthened position (extension). The patient may be requested to maintain isometric knee extension throughout the pattern, or as pictured here, to flex the knee as the hip flexes.

A. Beginning. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's feet. Alternatively, the clinician may begin facing the patient's head. The clinician places her left hand on the patient's dorsomedial foot and her right hand on the anteriomedial thigh. The patient is requested to "pull your foot up and in, and lift your leg across the other leg." The clinician facilitates ankle dorsiflexion and inversion, then hip flexion with adduction and medial rotation. The knee is pictured as flexing but may remain extended, depending upon the goals for this patient.

B. Midrange. As the patient moves toward midrange of the pattern, the clinician pivots to face the patient's head. The distal hand placement remains consistent. The proximal hand shifts as appropriate to facilitate or resist as needed to address the individual patient's needs.

C. End range. As the patient completes the pattern, the clinician remains in the diagonal position and shifts her body weight onto the back foot. This allows for more efficient application of resistance, if needed. Manual contacts continue as previously described; however, the proximal hand may be shifted to promote the optimal combination of hip flexion, adduction, and medial rotation for this patient.

Intervention 9-10

Lower Extremity D_1 Extension


B

The pattern begins with primary muscle groups involved in a lengthened position (flexion). The knee is shown moving from a flexed to an extended position, although the knee may remain extended throughout as appropriate for the individual patient. The left limb is being treated. The clinician stands close to the plinth in the diagonal position and faces the patient.

A. Beginning. The clinician's left hand contacts the plantar surface of the patient's foot, with the right hand on the posterolateral thigh. When asked to "step down and out into my hand," the patient plantar flexes and everts the foot while extending the hip and knee.
B. Midrange. The clinician's left hand may pivot about the plantar surface of the patient's foot to promote optimal plantar flexion and eversion. The clinician shifts her body weight as needed to accommodate patient movement and effort.
C. End range. The patient completes the pattern to rest on the plinth. Manual contacts are similar to those described at midrange. The clinician continues to shift her weight as needed within the diagonal position. The patient may be positioned closer to the edge of the plinth to allow movement into further hip extension.

Two additional patterns follow the second LE diagonal (D_2). Hip components of the D_2 flexion pattern include hip flexion/abduction/internal rotation. The leg begins in hip and knee extension with external rotation of the hip. To position the knee past the midline of the body, the leg not involved in the pattern is abducted. The foot is plantar flexed and inverted. The patient is requested to "pull your foot up and out." This pattern has euphemistically been called the *fire hydrant* as the end position resembles the movement used by an animal to relieve itself. D_2 flexion is not used as

frequently as the other LE patterns but does provide a means to elicit eversion with dorsiflexion, a movement combination that is often difficult for patients who have had a stroke. The LE D_2 extension pattern is characterized by hip extension/adduction/external rotation. To start, the hip and knee are flexed with the hip abducted. The hip is internally rotated, with care taken to avoid valgus stress to the knee. The patient is asked to "push your foot down and in." In standing, this movement resembles a soccer kick. Detailed descriptions of the LE D_2 flexion pattern and LE D_2 extension pattern are found in Tables 9-9 and 9-10, respectively. Performance of the LE D_2 flexion pattern and LE D_2 extension pattern is depicted in Interventions 9-11 and 9-12, respectively.

Table 9-9

Lower Extremity D_2 Flexion—Flexion/Abduction/Internal Rotation—Knee Flexed

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Pelvis	Posterior elevation	Anterior depression
Hip	Extension/adduction/external rotation	Flexion/abduction/internal rotation
Knee	Extension	Flexion
Ankle	Plantar flexion/inversion	Dorsiflexion/eversion

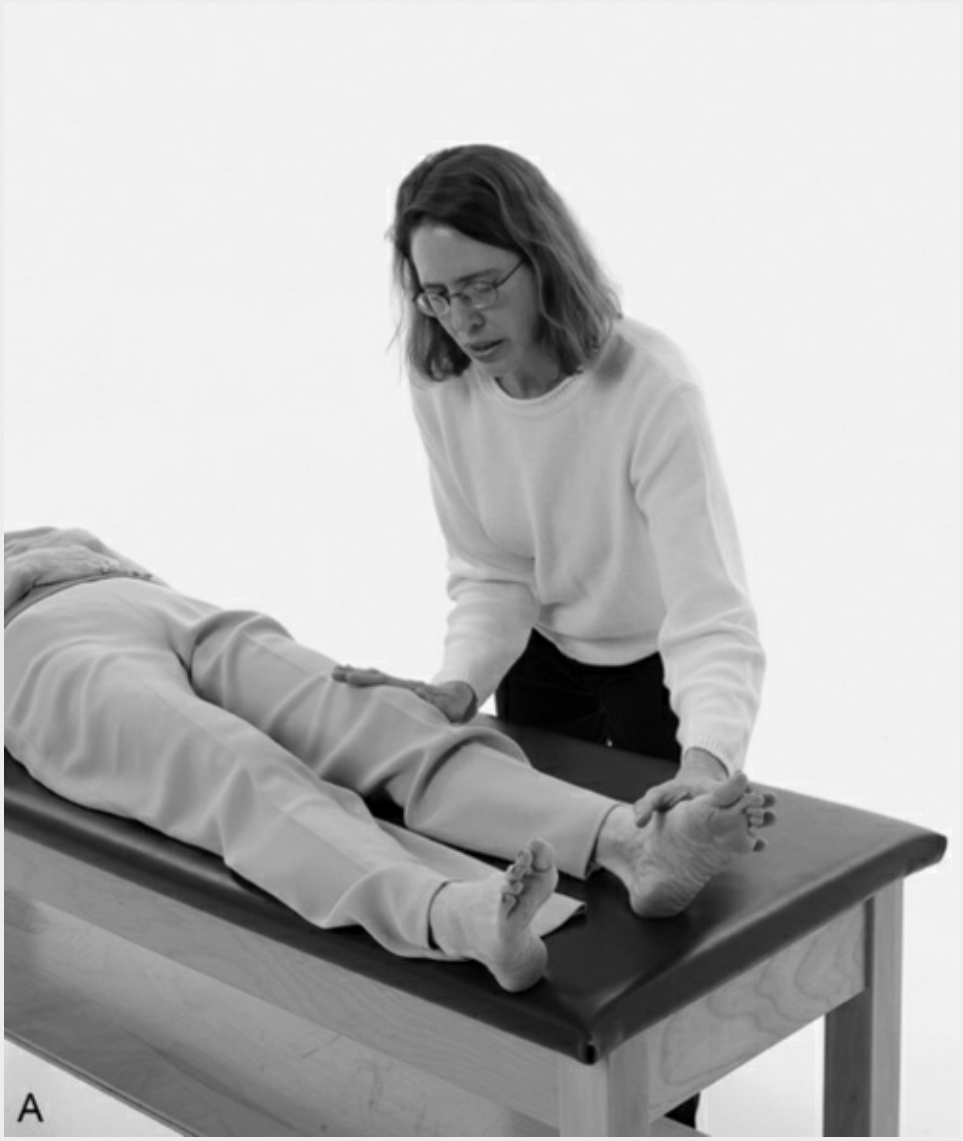
Table 9-10

Lower Extremity D_2 Extension—Extension/Adduction/External Rotation—Knee Extended

Joint	Starting Position	Ending Position
Pelvis	Anterior depression	Posterior elevation
Hip	Flexion/abduction/internal rotation	Extension/adduction/external rotation
Knee	Flexion	Extension
Ankle	Dorsiflexion/eversion	Plantar flexion/inversion

Intervention 9-11

Lower Extremity D_2 Flexion


A


B

The pattern is presented on the left lower extremity. The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's feet, with her left hand on the patient's foot and her right hand on the thigh.

A. Beginning. The clinician contacts the patient's dorsolateral foot with her left hand and the patient's anterolateral thigh with her right hand. The patient is requested to "pull your foot up and out and lift your leg out to the side." Near-full-range ankle dorsiflexion and eversion should be achieved early in the range to promote normal timing of the movement pattern. This also provides a "handle" for the clinician that improves her ability to control the patient's limb.

B. Midrange. The clinician remains in the diagonal position and shifts her body weight to optimize patient effort. The proximal contact (right hand) may shift in position to enhance the quality of the movement. For example, if inadequate hip medial rotation is produced, the clinician may move her hand to the medial thigh.

C. End range. As the patient completes the pattern, the clinician may continue to make subtle adjustments in her body and hand positions to enhance the patient's motor response.

Intervention 9-12

Lower Extremity D_2 Extension


A


B

The pattern begins in the lengthened position of the pattern (flexion). The clinician stands in the diagonal position and faces the patient's feet. The clinician's left hand is placed distally and her right hand proximally on the patient's lower extremity. To allow for greater hip adduction at the end of the pattern, the patient's stationary limb may be prepositioned in abduction. The patient may also lie close to the edge of the plinth or in sidelying position to allow a greater range of hip extension.

A. Beginning. Manual contacts are such that the clinician's left hand is placed on the medial and plantar aspect of the patient's foot, and her right hand is placed on the posterior thigh. In this example, the clinician's hand is shown posteromedial, which helps to facilitate hip adduction and the general direction of the pattern. If the patient has difficulty producing hip lateral rotation, a posterolateral contact may enhance the patient's effort. The verbal command to "step down into my hand" initiates the movement pattern.

B. Midrange. Full or nearly full ankle motion and hip rotation should be attained by midrange of the pattern. The clinician may pivot her left hand and shift her body weight to accommodate patient movement and effort.

C. End range. The pattern ends as the moving limb contacts the stationary limb. Alternatively, the patient may be prepositioned to allow for greater range of movement into hip extension and adduction, as previously described.

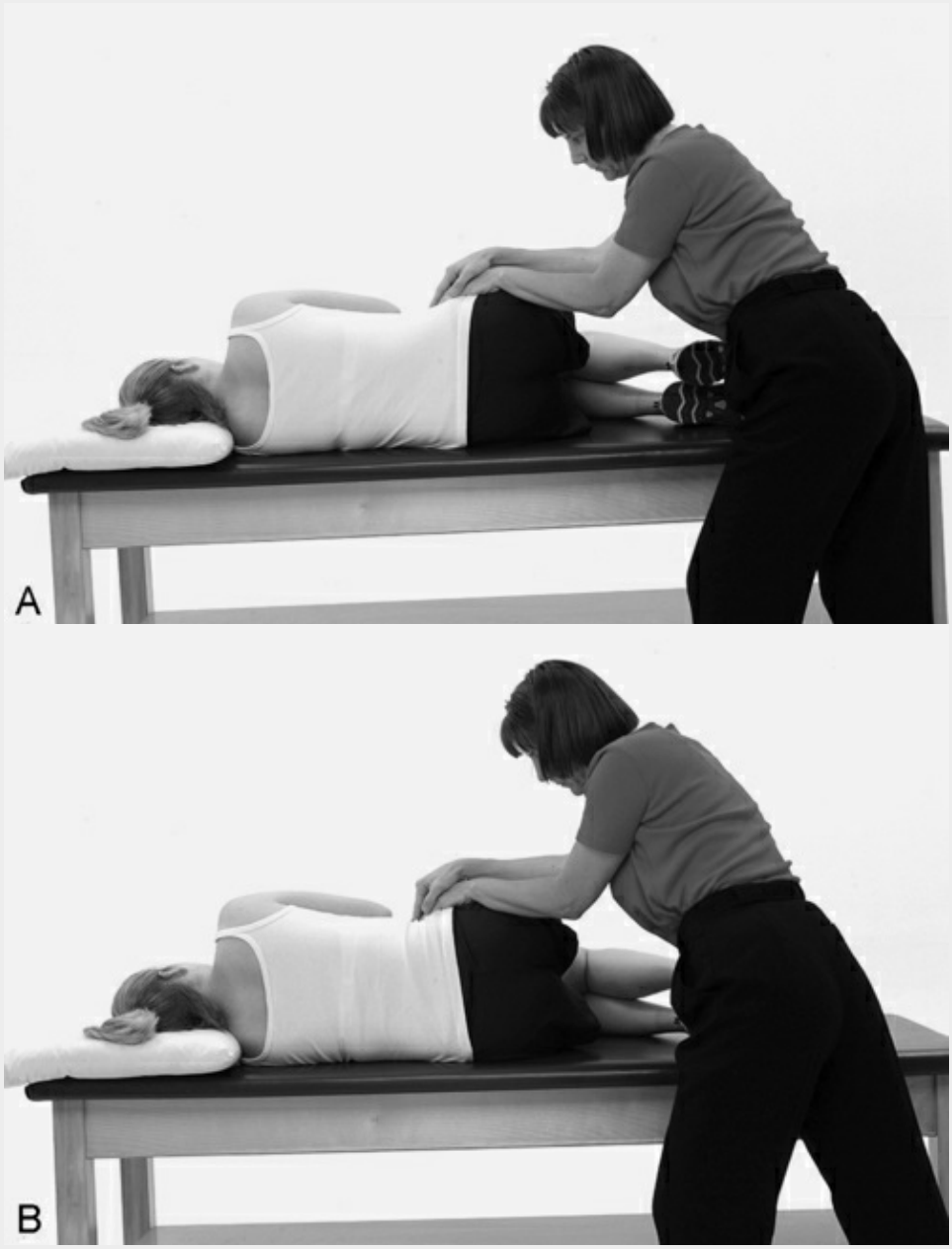
Pelvic Patterns

As previously discussed, there are direct associations between scapular and UE diagonal patterns.

Similarly, pelvic patterns are linked with LE diagonal patterns. There is considerably less motion available in the pelvis than scapula resulting in extremely narrow ranges of movement. All four pelvic diagonals may be visualized on the same clock as the scapular diagonals because they have the same names. Figure 9-3 pictures this clock. Intervention 9-13 features the anterior elevation pattern and Intervention 9-14 illustrates the posterior depression pelvic pattern. These are the most functionally relevant pelvic patterns.

Intervention 9-13

Pelvic Anterior Elevation



The pelvic pattern of anterior elevation is pictured with the patient in left side-lying position. The clinician stands in the diagonal position, behind and facing the patient. The clinician flexes her hips and knees to adjust her position according to the plinth height.
A. The clinician's left hand contacts the patient's right anterior superior iliac spine with her right

hand reinforcing the left. The patient is requested to "pull your pelvis up and forward."
B. The clinician's body follows the line of the pattern as the patient completes the movement.

Intervention 9-14

Pelvic Posterior Depression

The pelvic pattern of posterior depression is also pictured with the patient in left side-lying position.
A. The clinician's left hand contacts the patient's right ischial tuberosity, and the right hand is placed over the left. The patient is asked to "sit back into my hands."
B. The clinician shifts weight onto her back leg as the patient moves to the end of the range.

Patterns and basic principles may be modified using the PNF philosophy to address specific patient needs or to allow for the demands of the relevant activity. Specific muscle groups or

components of functional movements may be targeted with the patient supine. For example, the UE D_2 flexion/abduction/external rotation pattern may be used to strengthen the deltoids in supine. This position is inherently stable; therefore, patient and clinician can concentrate on the focal movement. Extremity patterns may also be performed in more challenging postures, such as quadruped position, to incorporate dynamic total body control into the activity. Progression and functional integration may include performance of the UE D_2 flexion/abduction/external rotation pattern in quadruped, sitting, or standing. Each respective posture creates different demands on the target muscles and imposes increasingly greater challenge to the trunk stabilizers.

Trunk Patterns

The PNF approach recognizes the trunk as the foundation of controlled movement. To maximize recruitment of the trunk musculature, patterns are used that emphasize either the shoulder or pelvic girdles, or bilateral extremity patterns. *Bilateral extremity patterns* and *trunk patterns* are synonymous terms that will be considered in detail in the following section. The scapula and pelvis are the connecting segments between the trunk and the respective extremities. Thus, scapular and pelvic patterns are used to improve the quality, sequence, strength, range of motion, and coordination of both trunk and extremity movements. Scapular patterns directly influence upper extremity function and alignment of the cervical and thoracic spine, whereas pelvic patterns influence lower extremity function and alignment of the lumbar spine. Scapular and pelvic movements may be targeted as components of related extremity patterns or performed in a more isolated manner.

Side-lying is an excellent position for performing scapular and pelvic patterns because it provides ease of access for the clinician and unrestricted movement for the patient. The scapular and pelvic PNF patterns are components of functional activities such as rolling, reciprocal arm movements, scooting in supine and sitting, and gait. As previously described, there are two diagonal patterns for both the scapula and the pelvis. These diagonals are narrow, and excessive spinal rotation should be avoided.

Upper Trunk Patterns

Although Knott and Voss described both upper and lower trunk patterns, practical considerations minimize the application of lower trunk patterns. Proper performance of lower trunk patterns entails considerable physical demands on both the patient and the therapist, rendering their clinical use much more infrequent than those patterns targeting the upper trunk. The remaining discussion will address upper trunk patterns only. The term *upper trunk patterns* refers to synchronous performance of PNF patterns with both UEs. This therapeutic tool can promote activation of the trunk musculature, especially the rotators. The two extremities are in contact with each other. One hand holds the other extremity at the wrist. The extremity in which the hand is free may also be referred to as the *lead arm* (Sullivan et al., 1982; Adler et al., 2008). The movement of the lead arm determines the specific name of the trunk pattern. If the lead arm follows the D_2 flexion pattern, the movement is termed a *lifting pattern*. This pattern is depicted in Intervention 9-15.

Intervention 9-15

Lifting Pattern


A


B

A left lifting pattern is shown, which involves movement of the left lead arm through the D_2 flexion pattern. Many options exist for appropriate manual contacts. Both the clinician and patient sit and face each other; however, the activity may be performed in various positions, including supine, kneeling, and standing. Hand placements on the patient's distal upper extremities are shown. The patient is encouraged to watch her hands as she moves through all trunk patterns.

A. Beginning. The clinician facilitates the D_2 flexion pattern in the left lead arm through manual contact on the dorsal forearm; she also promotes the D_1 flexion pattern in the right upper extremity through contact with the anterior forearm. The command is given to "turn your left hand up and lift your arms over your left shoulder."

B. Midrange. The clinician actively maintains an upright trunk as she observes the patient's trunk position throughout the range of the pattern. Additional verbal cues or changes in manual contacts may be used to enhance trunk extension and rotation.

C. End range. The patient completes the range of the pattern including trunk extension with rotation while the clinician mirrors the movement and applies resistance as indicated to promote optimal patient response.

Facilitatory manual contacts may be used and vary according to the patient abilities and impairments. The combination of two extremities working together increases the irradiation or overflow into the trunk musculature. Resistance may be used to promote isotonic movement

throughout the entire range or to enhance isometric contraction in a desired position. Holding the end range position of a lift can facilitate trunk extension, elongation on one side of the trunk, and a weight shift. The downward motion from the lift position is traditionally referred to as a *reverse lift*. In a reverse lift, the lead arm performs a D_2 extension pattern. This trunk pattern is pictured in Intervention 9-16.

Intervention 9-16

Reverse Lifting Pattern


B

A left reverse lift is pictured involving movement of the left lead arm through the D_2 extension pattern. Both the clinician and patient are shown in sitting. Manual contacts at the distal upper extremities are used in this example.

A. Beginning. The clinician places one hand on the right dorsal forearm and the other on the left anterior forearm or wrist. The request is made for the patient to "make a fist with your left hand, turn your thumb down, and bring your arms down toward your right hip."
B. Midrange. The clinician shifts her body weight to accommodate patient movement. Manual contacts may also shift slightly to adjust to changes in the patient's upper-extremity position. The clinician monitors the patient's trunk and provides verbal or manual cues to promote the desired amounts of flexion and rotation.
C. End range. The patient completes the appropriate range of upper extremity and trunk movement, as the therapist adjusts her body weight and hand positions to evoke optimal patient response.

The other upper trunk pattern created by concurrent movement of the upper extremities is called a *chopping pattern*. The extremities are in contact as previously described. The extremity with the free hand, or the lead arm, is again used for naming the pattern. In a chop, the lead arm follows and moves through the D_1 extension pattern, as seen in Intervention 9-17. This combination of UE patterns facilitates trunk flexion, shortening of the trunk on one side, and a weight shift. The

upward motion returning from the chop may be referred to as a *reverse chop* (Adler et al., 2008; Sullivan et al., 1982), which is shown in Intervention 9-18. The direction of the weight shift during both chopping and lifting differs from patient to patient. The clinician is encouraged to vary the position of the arms and to use both traction and approximation forces to determine the optimal response for each individual.

Intervention 9-17

Chopping Pattern

Picture shows right chopping pattern, which involves movement of the right lead arm through the D_1 extension pattern. This activity may be performed in various developmental postures to appropriately challenge the patient. In the given example, the therapist stands in stride stance behind the kneeling patient.

A. Beginning. The therapist stands in stride stance behind the kneeling patient. Manual contacts are on the dorsal hand and dorsal distal humerus. A request is made for the patient to "open your left hand, turn your thumb down, and push down toward your right hip as if chopping wood."
B. Midrange. The patient moves through the pattern as the clinician mirrors patient movement and shifts her body weight to facilitate optimal motor strategies.
C. End range. The patient completes the range of trunk and upper extremity movement. The clinician continues to alter her own body position to accommodate patient effort.

Special note: The patient's left wrist and fingers should extend as the pattern proceeds, which is not depicted in picture **B**.

Intervention 9-18

Reverse Chopping Pattern


B

The left or reverse chopping pattern involves movement of the left lead arm through the D_1 flexion pattern. The clinician and patient sit and face each other. Manual contacts at the distal forearms are shown.

A. Beginning. The clinician places one hand on the anterior surface of the patient's left forearm and the other hand on the dorsal surface of the right forearm. The patient is asked to "make a fist with your left hand, turn your thumb up, and pull your arms toward your right shoulder." special note: The patient's wrist and fingers should be extended when initiating the pattern, which is not shown here.

B. Midrange. The clinician observes the patient's trunk and provides manual or verbal cues as needed. The clinician shifts her body weight to adapt to patient movements.

C. End range. The patient completes the desired range of movement of the trunk and upper extremities. The clinician mirrors patient movement and alters her body and hand positions to optimize patient efforts.

Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques

The goal of PNF techniques is to promote functional movement through facilitation, inhibition, strengthening, or relaxation of muscle groups (Adler et al., 2008). These techniques are designed to promote or enhance specific types of muscle activity associated with a target pattern, posture, or task. Some techniques focus on isometric contractions to increase stability in a chosen position; others promote movement through a functional range, using isotonic contractions. Techniques can be used to alleviate impairments in motor-control characteristic of specific stages, such as mobility, stability, controlled mobility, and skill (Table 9-11).

Table 9-11

PNF Techniques Related to Stages of Motor Control

Stage/Technique	Mobility	Stability	Controlled Mobility	Skill
Agonistic reversal			X	X
Alternating isometrics		X		
Contract relax	X			
Hold relax	X			
Hold relax active movement				
Rhythmic initiation	X			
Rhythmic rotation	X			
Rhythmic stabilization		X		
Slow reversal hold		X	X	X
Slow reversals			X	X

Some techniques address tissue shortness, which limits joint range of motion; others enhance movement initiation. Names assigned to the techniques indicate the focus of that technique. These names have evolved over the last several decades. This process has caused confusion as a specific technique may be referred to by more than one name. The names of techniques presented in this chapter are those most commonly used by clinicians. If the International PNF Association has proposed a different term, it is given in parentheses. The techniques will be presented according to the primary stage of motor control that each promotes, beginning with the *mobility* stage.

Rhythmic Initiation

Rhythmic initiation is a technique that focuses on improving *mobility* that is impaired by deficits in movement initiation, coordination, or relaxation. This technique involves sequential application of first passive, then active assisted, then active or slightly resisted motion. Passive movement is used to encourage relaxation and teach the movement or task. Once relaxation is achieved, the patient is asked to assist. The clinician constantly monitors the patient's movement strategies. If appropriate recruitment patterns are noted, the progression continues such that manual contacts remain in place

but no assistance is provided by the clinician. Slight resistance may then be added to promote further muscle contraction and reinforce the movement pattern. This technique can be used successfully with any pattern or activity, particularly as a teaching tool. It is frequently used with lower-level functional tasks, such as rolling. Patients with hypertonicity who have difficulty initiating functional movements are especially appropriate candidates for this technique.

Rhythmic initiation may be used successfully to promote efficient patterns of rolling. The patient begins supine with the head turned toward the side to which he or she intends to roll. The UE on that side is prepositioned so that it is away from the body. The therapist passively moves the patient into a side-lying position using manual contacts on the trunk and extremities while asking the patient to feel the movement. The clinician then asks the patient to move toward the clinician's manual contacts. The goal is for the patient to continue to increase motor recruitment and desired movement. Facilitatory manual contacts remain in place, but assistance is gradually withdrawn. When appropriate, the clinician may apply slight resistance to the rolling movement through manual contacts on the trunk or extremities.

Rhythmic Rotation

Rhythmic rotation is characterized by application of passive movement in a rotational pattern. The movement is slow and rhythmical in an attempt to promote total body relaxation or tone reduction. The goal is to lessen spasticity to allow further active or passive joint *mobility*. The clinician applies slow rotary movements about the longitudinal axis of the part. The patient is instructed to relax and allow the clinician to perform these movements without assistance. The technique can affect both resting muscle tone and hypertonicity that presents during attempts at active movement (Sullivan et al., 1982).

Lower trunk rotation in hook lying is an example of rhythmic rotation. The patient is positioned supine with the hips and knees flexed and the feet flat on the surface. The clinician kneels and faces the patient with his or her knees on either side of the patient's feet to help stabilize the LE. Manual contacts are placed on the lateral aspect of the knees or another suitable position on the thighs to allow adequate control. With the clinician's trunk moving as a unit with the patient's lower body, the patient's knees are moved side to side, producing lower trunk rotation.

Hold Relax Active Movement

The hold relax active movement (replication) technique enhances functional *mobility* by facilitating recruitment of muscle contraction in the lengthened range of the agonist. Only one direction of a movement pattern is emphasized. A resisted isometric contraction of the agonist pattern in a shortened range is used to increase muscle spindle sensitivity. Once an optimal contraction is achieved, the patient is asked to relax. The clinician then passively moves the part toward the lengthened position in increments according to patient response. A quick stretch may be applied concurrently with a command for the patient to move into the agonist pattern. Light resistance is often applied as a facilitatory element, although resistance is not mandatory.

Patient control of the scapular pattern anterior elevation may be enhanced through use of hold relax active movement. The patient is side-lying with the clinician kneeling behind. The patient's scapula is passively placed in anterior elevation, and he or she is asked to hold this position. The clinician provides resistance to the isometric contraction. The patient is then told to relax and is moved back slightly toward posterior depression. The patient is told to "pull up" and moves back into anterior elevation. This motion can be performed actively or with resistance. The patient holds the end position of anterior elevation once again, relaxes upon verbal command, and then is moved further back toward posterior depression. This cycle is repeated as the patient moves through a greater range each time until he or she completes the entire pattern.

Hold Relax

The purpose of the hold relax technique is to increase passive joint *mobility* and decrease movement-related pain. Main components of the technique include resisted isometric contraction, verbal cues, and active or passive stretch. The patient or clinician moves the joint or body segment to the limit of pain-free motion. The patient maintains this position while the therapist resists an isometric contraction of the antagonist muscle group, the muscles restricting the desired direction of

movement. A verbal cue of "hold" is given as the clinician gradually increases the amount of applied resistance. A command is given for the patient to slowly relax. When possible, the joint or body segment is moved through a greater range of motion. The clinician may perform the movement passively; however, active patient-controlled movement is preferred, especially when pain is a factor. All steps are repeated until there is no further improvement in range of motion. A variation in the traditional method is to elicit an isometric contraction of the agonist muscle, instead of the antagonist, then proceed with active or passive movement into further range (Prentice, 2001).

Hold relax technique can be effectively used to increase hip flexion with concurrent knee extension as in a straight leg raise. If hip flexion with knee extension (agonist movement) is limited, the hip extensors and knee flexors, or hamstrings, would be the limiting muscles (antagonist). As depicted in Intervention 13-3, the person lies supine and an active or passive straight leg raise is performed. An isometric contraction of the hip extensors (hamstrings), or alternatively the hip flexors (iliopsoas/rectus femoris), is elicited through a request to "hold" the position. After the contraction is held for a minimum of five seconds, the patient is asked to relax as resistance is slowly withdrawn. Further range of hip flexion is attempted either actively or passively.

Contract Relax

The contract relax technique provides another method to increase passive joint range and soft tissue length. It is most appropriate and effective when addressing decreased length in two-joint muscles and when pain is not a significant factor. Primary components of the technique include resisted isotonic and isometric contractions of the short muscles, verbal cues, and active or passive stretch. Either the clinician or the patient moves the joint or body segment to the end of the available range of motion. A verbal cue to "turn and push or pull" is given. The resistance overcomes all motion except rotation. Thus, the result is a resisted concentric contraction of the rotary component and an isometric contraction of the remaining muscles (Sullivan et al., 1982; Knott and Voss, 1968; Kisner and Colby, 2007). A strong muscle contraction is elicited and held for a minimum of five seconds. After the contraction, the patient relaxes and the joint or body segment is repositioned either actively or passively to the new limit of passive range of motion. As in hold relax, the sequence is repeated until no further gains are made. Changes in muscle tension with this technique are relatively abrupt, although those used during hold relax are gradual.

Increasing shoulder range of motion into D_2 flexion—flexion/abduction/external rotation is an example of appropriate therapeutic use of contract relax. The arm is placed at the end of available range of the D_2 flexion pattern. The shoulder and elbow extensors are identified as the muscles that are short and limiting motion into flexion. The patient is asked to lift the arm up and out to the side into the D_2 flexion pattern. An isometric contraction of the shoulder extensors and adductors is held for a minimum of five seconds while resisted rotation through available range is allowed to occur. A command to "relax" is then given. The arm is moved into further flexion, abduction, and external rotation by either the patient or the clinician, establishing the new limit to motion. The technique is repeated until there is no further improvement. The arm is then resisted through the UE D_2 patterns of flexion/abduction/external rotation and extension/adduction/internal rotation to help integrate the new range into functional movements.

Alternating Isometrics

The alternating isometrics (isotonic stabilizing reversals, alternating holds) technique promotes *stability*, strength, and endurance in identified muscle groups or in a specific posture. Isometric contractions of both agonist and antagonist muscle groups are facilitated in an alternating manner. Manual contacts and verbal cues are the primary facilitatory elements. As proximal extremity joint or trunk stability is a common focus, this technique is often applied in developmental postures; however, it may also be used with bilateral or unilateral extremity patterns.

Manual resistance is imparted to encourage isometric contraction of agonist muscles. Once an optimal response is achieved, the clinician changes one hand to a new location over the antagonist muscles and gradually increases resistance in the appropriate direction. The second hand may be moved to the new location or removed from the surface until the next change in direction of resistance is initiated. Manual contacts are smoothly adjusted to encourage gradual shifting of contractions between agonist and antagonist muscle groups.

Alternating isometrics may be used to promote trunk stability in unsupported sitting. The clinician resists trunk flexion with manual contacts on the anterior trunk. The initial verbal command of "don't let me push you backward" is given. Once the trunk flexors contract, input is maintained with one hand and the second hand is moved to the posterior trunk to activate the trunk extensors. A second verbal cue of "don't let me pull you forward" is voiced. As the patient responds to the initial posterior input, the second hand is moved to the posterior trunk. The hands continue to alternate from the anterior to posterior trunk, challenging trunk stability in the sagittal plane. Intervention 9-19 shows this technique being used to increase trunk stability in unsupported sitting.

Intervention 9-19

Alternating Isometrics to Increase Trunk Stability in Sitting


A


B


C

A. Resistance is provided to trunk flexion through symmetrical manual contacts on the anterior shoulder. The verbal cue "don't let me push you backward" is given as the clinician leans posteriorly using her body weight to produce the resistance.
B. The clinician places her hands bilaterally on the superior aspect of the patient's scapulae. The command "don't let me push you forward" is given as the clinician shifts her body weight anteriorly.
C. The clinician provides resistance to right trunk lateral flexion through placement of her right hand on the patient's right shoulder. The verbal command "don't let me push you to the left" is given as the clinician shifts her weight to the right to produce the resistance.
D. Resistance is provided to left trunk lateral flexion through placement of the clinician's left hand on the patient's left shoulder.

Rhythmic Stabilization

Rhythmic stabilization (isometric stabilizing reversals) enhances *stability* through cocontraction of muscles surrounding the target joint(s). Resistance is applied to promote isometric contraction. Often the goal is to enhance the patient's ability to maintain a specific developmental position. A rotary force is emphasized to encourage simultaneous contraction of the primary stabilizers about the involved joints. The patient is asked simply to hold the position. Force is increased slowly, emphasizing the rotary component of the motion and matching patient effort. When the patient has built up muscular force in one direction, the clinician changes the position of one hand and begins to slowly apply force in a different direction, again emphasizing rotation. Depending upon the demands of the clinical situation, rhythmic stabilization may be used to promote stability and balance, decrease pain upon movement, and increase range of motion and strength.

Rhythmic stabilization may also be applied to promote trunk stability in unsupported sitting. Rotation of the trunk is resisted with the clinician placing one hand on the anterior trunk and the other hand on the posterior trunk. The patient is expected to isometrically hold an erect trunk position. A verbal cue of "hold; don't let me move you" is used. The relative positions of the right and left hands are sequentially adjusted so that opposing rotational forces are created. There is no intention of movement on the part of the patient. The patient matches the resistance provided by the clinician and dynamically maintains the position. Intervention 9-20 depicts the use of rhythmic stabilization to promote trunk stability in sitting.

Intervention 9-20

Rhythmic Stabilization to Increase Trunk Stability in Sitting


A

The patient sits on the edge of table. The clinician kneels behind the patient. Suggested manual contacts allow the clinician to resist flexion, extension, and rotation simultaneously or sequentially as placements are rhythmically shifted between the two options pictured.

A. The clinician places her left hand on the anterior aspect of the patient's left shoulder and her right hand on the posterior right shoulder.
B. Manual contacts are shifted to vary the forces applied to the patient. The clinician's left hand is now posterior and her right hand is anterior.

Slow Reversal

Slow reversal (reversal of antagonists, dynamic reversals) is a versatile technique that may be used to address a variety of patient problems, such as muscle weakness, joint stiffness, or impaired coordination. Concentric contraction of muscles in an agonist pattern is facilitated through manual contacts and verbal cues. At the desired end of range, manual contacts of one or both hands are

changed to facilitate concentric contraction of the antagonist pattern. Resistance is applied to both directions of movement, with force varying from slight to maximal in accordance with the patient's abilities and goals. As the amount of force generated by a patient may vary throughout a pattern, resistance must accommodate changes in patient effort. Emphasis is placed on smooth transitions between directions of movement patterns such as when moving from D_2 flexion to D_2 extension. The *mobility*, *controlled mobility*, and *skill* stages of motor control can be addressed through this technique. In the *skill* stage, smooth reversal of movement from one direction to another is a primary concern. Fatigue is minimized by rhythmically alternating between agonist and antagonist muscle groups.

Performance of the UE D_2 flexion pattern as the agonist and D_2 extension—extension/adduction/internal rotation as the antagonist is an example of therapeutic application of slow reversal technique. Beginning in the lengthened position of the agonist (D_2 flexion) pattern, appropriate resistance is applied through both proximal and distal manual contacts. The flexion pattern is initiated by the command to "open your hand and lift the arm up and out." Near the completion of the pattern, the clinician's proximal hand is moved to resist the distal component of the antagonist (D_2 extension) pattern. The verbal cue to "squeeze my hand and pull down" is timed with the change in direction. As the patient starts to move into extension, the clinician's other hand moves to resist the remaining components (usually proximal) of the antagonist pattern. This process of reversing directions and altering manual contacts continues. Either full or partial range of motion may be used. Although there are personal preferences among clinicians, some specific suggestions regarding hand placements will be offered. When the patient performs a UE flexion (D_1 or D_2) pattern with the right hand, the clinician places the patient's left hand distally and right hand proximally on the patient's arm. The placements reverse when D_1 or D_2 extension patterns are performed. These manual contacts tend to allow more consistent application of appropriate resistance throughout both directions of the pattern. Interventions 9-1 and 9-2 demonstrate the patterns and manual contacts recommended with this technique.

Slow Reversal Hold

Slow reversal hold is a variation of the slow reversal technique in which a resisted isometric contraction is held at the completion of range in each direction of the chosen pattern or activity. Movement may proceed through the available joint range or a lesser excursion may be used, depending on the patient situation or goal. Movement occurs as described for the slow reversal; however, at the desired end point in each direction, a resisted isometric contraction of all involved muscles is elicited. This technique aids in the transition from the *mobility* to *stability* stages of motor control by promoting increased strength, balance, and endurance. The slow reversal hold is appropriate for use with single extremity or trunk patterns as well as functional movements.

Performance of the UE D_2 flexion as agonist pattern in kneeling is an example of clinical application of slow reversal hold technique. Concentric contraction of the muscles involved in the D_2 flexion (agonist) pattern is resisted throughout the desired range. Without changing manual contacts, the patient is requested to hold the chosen end position using all muscles within the flexion pattern. The distal then proximal hand placements are carefully reestablished to facilitate a smooth transition into the D_2 extension pattern. Graded resistance is applied throughout the D_2 extension pattern. An isometric contraction of the D_2 extension pattern is held at the desired point within the pattern.

Agonistic Reversals

The agonistic reversal technique (combination of isotonics) is used to facilitate functional movement throughout a pattern or task. Both concentric and eccentric contractions of the agonist musculature are used. The focus of the technique is to promote functional stability in a smooth, controlled manner (*controlled mobility*). Other goals include increasing muscle strength and endurance, improving coordination, and training eccentric control. To implement the technique, a concentric contraction of the agonist muscle group(s) is resisted through a specific direction and range of the chosen pattern or task. At the desired endpoint of the movement, the patient holds isometrically against resistance. The clinician then resists the patient's slow, controlled return toward the

beginning of the movement pattern, promoting an eccentric contraction. The patient holds again at the completion of the eccentric phase to further encourage stability in this range. In summary, the technique begins with resistance to a concentric contraction, followed by a stabilizing hold, resistance to an eccentric contraction, and another stabilizing hold. The agonist muscle groups are targeted throughout this sequence (Saliba et al., 1993).

Bridging is often an appropriate activity with which to superimpose the agonistic reversal technique. The patient lifts the pelvis into a bridge against resistance from the clinician (concentric phase). Manual contacts are on the anterolateral pelvis with force directed posteriorly. The patient is requested to hold the pelvis in this position (stabilizing hold) and then asked to slowly lower the pelvis toward the bed while the clinician's manual contacts and direction of resistance remain consistent (eccentric phase). The clinician instructs the patient to hold the new position (stabilizing hold). Intervention 9-21 depicts this technique as used with bridging.

Intervention 9-21

Agonistic Reversal Technique During Bridging


A

Manual contacts are consistent throughout the activity. The clinician places the heel of each hand on the patient's anterior superior iliac spine with resistance applied in line with the patient's ischial tuberosities.

A. The patient begins in hook-lying position. Upon the command "lift your buttocks," the patient pushes the pelvis upward, performing a resisted concentric contraction of the hip extensors.

B. When reaching a full bridge position, the patient is requested to "hold" this position briefly. The final command is to "let me push you down slowly" as the patient lowers the buttocks to the surface by eccentrically contracting the hip extensors against resistance.

Resisted Progression

The resisted progression technique focuses on the *skill* level task of locomotion. Resistance is used to increase strength and endurance, develop normal timing, or reinforce motor learning. This technique may be applied during crawling, creeping, or walking. Manual contacts are selected according the desired emphasis, including upper or lower trunk, extremities, pelvis, and scapula (Sullivan et al., 1982).

Resisted progression may be applied effectively promote proper recruitment hip extensors and pelvic rotators during backward locomotion in quadruped (creeping). Backward progression may

occur by moving each extremity separately or by moving contralateral UE and LE simultaneously. This choice is dependent upon the motor abilities, coordination, trunk control, strength, and cognitive status of the patient. Typical manual contacts include the posterior thigh, posterior humerus, ischial tuberosity, and inferior angle of the scapula. Any combination of contacts may be used, depending on the intended focus. For example, the clinician's hands may be placed on the ischial tuberosities bilaterally, on the right posterior humerus and left posterior thigh, or on the left scapula and right ischial tuberosity. The clinician kneels beside or behind the patient and faces the patient's head.

Application of PNF Techniques

The physical therapist examines each patient and determines an individualized plan of care. Specific interventions are selected to meet individual patient's needs; however, there are some typical combinations of PNF basic principles and techniques that are used to address certain impairments. Table 9-12 matches specific impairments with suggested PNF techniques. The use of these techniques in appropriate clinical situations has already been discussed in the sections about techniques. Clinicians should always follow the basic principles of PNF when using any of these techniques while being mindful of those principles that are emphasized in the management of particular impairments.

Table 9-12

Use of PNF Techniques to Treat Impairments

Impairment	Goal	Technique
Pain	Decrease pain	Alternating isometrics
		Hold relax
		Rhythmic stabilization
Decreased strength	Increase strength	Agonistic reversal
		Rhythmic stabilization
		Slow reversal
Decreased range of motion	Increase range of motion	Alternating isometrics
		Contract relax
		Hold relax
		Hold relax active motion
		Rhythmic initiation
Decreased coordination	Increase coordination	Alternating isometrics
		Agonistic reversal
		Rhythmic initiation
		Slow reversal
Decreased stability	Increase	Alternating isometrics stability
		Agonistic reversal
		Rhythmic stabilization
Movement initiation	Initiate movement	Rhythmic initiation
		Hold relax active motion
Muscle stiffness/ hypertonicity	Promote tone reduction	Rhythmic initiation
		Rhythmic rotation
		Hold relax
Decreased endurance	Increase endurance	Alternating isometrics
		Rhythmic stabilization
		Slow reversal

Developmental sequence

PNF patterns and principles of intervention may be used within the different postures that constitute the developmental sequence. The fundamental motor abilities represented within the developmental sequence are interrelated and universal. Most typically developing infants learn to roll (supine ←→ prone), to move in the prone position, to assume a sitting position, to stand erectly, walk, and run. Individual variations occur in the method of performance, sequence, and rate of mastery. Typical movement patterns emerge from the maturation and interaction of multiple body systems. Developmental postures and patterns of movement can provide a basis for restoration of motor function in persons with neuromuscular impairments and related functional deficits. A review of the developmental process and patterns can be found in Chapter 4.

The developmental sequence provides a means to progress from simple to complex movements and postures (McGraw, 1962). The supine progression and the prone progression compose the developmental sequence. Supine progression consists of the following positions: supine, hook lying, side-lying, propping up on one elbow, pushing up to one hand, sitting, and standing. Prone progression consists of the following positions: prone, prone on elbows, quadruped, kneeling, half-kneeling, and standing.

Impairments in strength, flexibility, coordination, balance, and endurance can be addressed using the prone and supine progressions. The patient is familiar with these positions and understands the movements; therefore, the progression is relevant and functional. Within the developmental sequence, the natural progression of postures is that of increasing challenge to the stabilizing muscles. For example, in prone-on-elbows position, a broad surface area is in contact with the supporting base; the COG is very close to the surface; and only the shoulder and cervical spine segments bear significant weight. Therefore, this position is very stable and requires relatively minimal muscular effort to maintain. This biomechanical situation may be ideal to address scapular stabilization in the individual with poor global trunk control. In quadruped, however, the demands placed upon the muscles are much greater. The BOS is reduced. The COG is higher. The muscles about the hips, shoulders, and elbows must work in a coordinated fashion to sustain the position, both statically and during superimposed activity.

These biomechanical changes create greater motoric demands which, in the appropriate client, can produce more efficient therapeutic and functional outcomes. Each posture within the developmental sequence fosters achievement of motor skills that serve as a foundation for more advanced functional activities. The stronger components of a total pattern are used to augment the weaker components (Voss et al., 1985). Greater demands may be placed on the patient within each position by considering the stages of motor control and applying these principles in developmental postures. The following section addresses selected postures as to possible treatment progression strategies.

Supine Progression

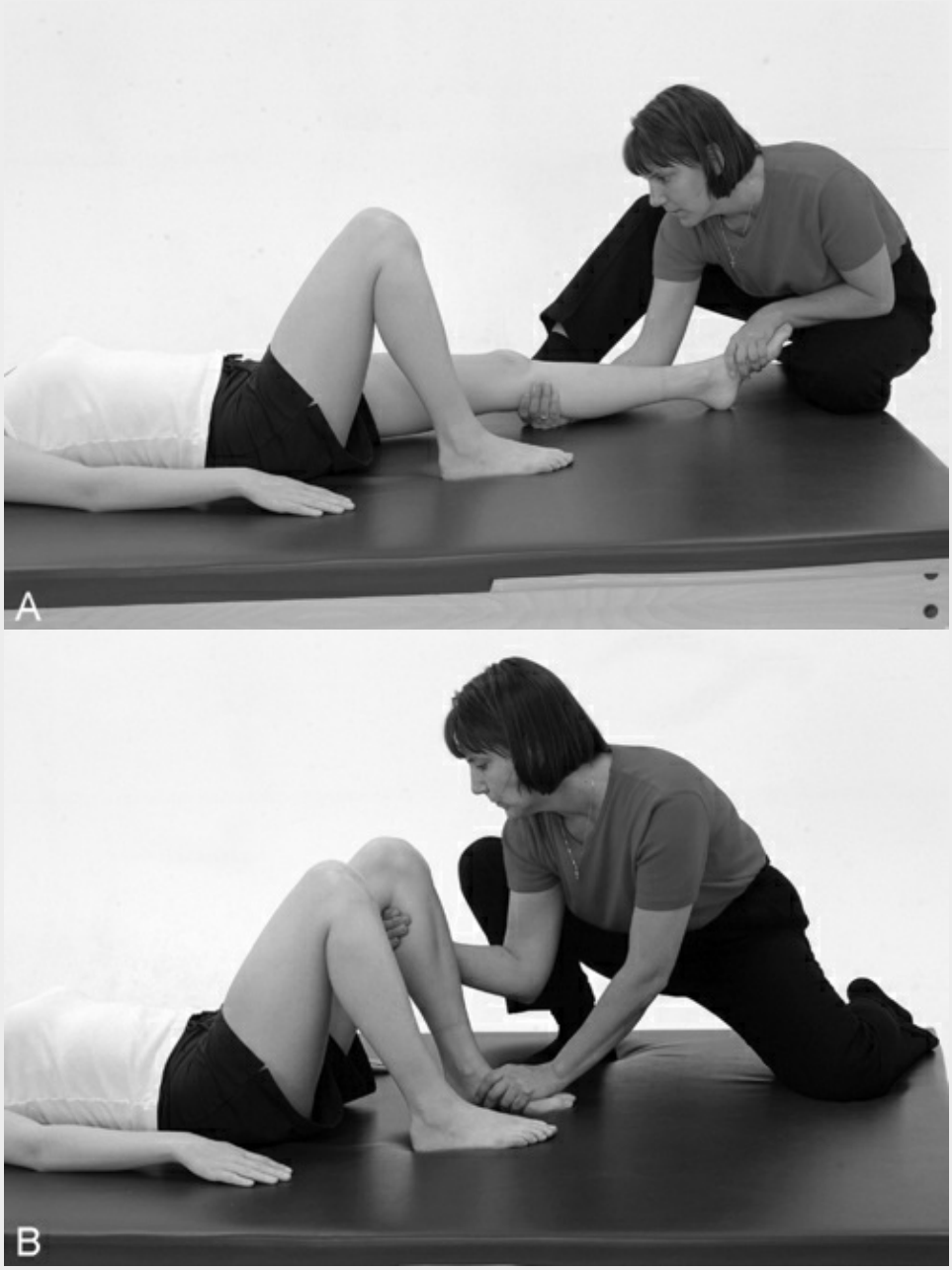
Working in a *hook-lying* position prepares the patient for bridging and scooting, which are essential for bed mobility. Weight bearing through the feet facilitates cocontraction of the trunk and LE muscles which is needed to maintain the position. Unilateral and bilateral LE PNF patterns are used to facilitate acquisition of the hook-lying position. Initial focus within any position is on the *mobility* stage, which is defined as the ability to assume a stated position. Sufficient joint range of motion and muscular strength in the pertinent body regions are prerequisite to mastering this stage.

Use of PNF patterns helps the patient gain the ability to position the legs into a hook-lying position independently. LE D_1 flexion with knee flexion is an appropriate pattern to use. Please refer to Intervention 9-7 for a review of the pattern and manual contacts. Mass flexion of the LE (hip/knee flexion and ankle dorsiflexion without significant rotation) may also be used to aid in assuming hook lying as pictured in Intervention 9-22. Resisted movement of the uninvolved extremity can enhance muscular activity through irradiation into the trunk and involved LE.

Intervention 9-22

Mass Flexion Pattern of the Lower Extremity to Assist in

Achieving Hook-Lying Position



A. The clinician kneels to one side, approximately at level with the patient's knees. Beginning in supine, manual contacts are placed on the dorsal foot and posterior calf and are used to facilitate flexion throughout the lower extremity.
B. The patient completes the flexion movement of first one lower extremity, then the other to assume the hook-lying position.

Once the patient has achieved hook-lying position, stability can be promoted by applying alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization. Both of these techniques employ facilitation of isometric contractions to sustain a position. Manual contacts may be applied from proximal thigh to ankle as appropriate to vary the lever arm and thus the demand on the patient. The *stability* stage of motor control is reached when the patient can independently maintain the hook-lying position. The third stage of motor control, *controlled mobility*, then becomes the focus of treatment. Controlled

mobility involves superimposing proximal mobility on a stable position. Activities in hook lying that contribute to functional gains in this stage include hip abduction/adduction and lower trunk rotation.

Slow reversal, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversals may be applied with either activity. Both slow reversal and slow reversal hold include resisted alternating concentric contractions of agonist and antagonist patterns (e.g., hip abduction and adduction, or D_1 flexion and D_1 extension). Slow reversal hold adds a held isometric contraction in the shortened range of each muscle group or pattern. Agonistic reversal focuses on one muscle group only, the designated agonist, and concentric then eccentric contractions are facilitated. The medial and lateral femoral condyles provide effective manual contacts for hip abduction/adduction and lower trunk rotation, with care taken to facilitate the desired direction of movement. The clinician positions himself or herself in front of the patient, or off to one side in the diagonal. The diagonal position may produce a different patient response including increased recruitment of trunk muscles.

Bridging is a prerequisite to many functional activities including dressing, toileting, scooting in bed, and weight shifting for pressure relief. The motion of bridging also includes hip extension and pelvic rotation, which are both components of the stance phase of gait. Bridging increases weight bearing through the plantar surface of the foot and can reduce extensor tone in a patient with hypertonicity. Bridging addresses balance, coordination, and strength while activating multiple muscle groups in a functional context. Bridging is an example of the third stage of motor control.

Bridging is facilitated by use of manual contacts on the patient's anterior pelvis near the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS). Manual contacts and an appropriate level of assistance are provided to teach proper movement strategies to achieve the *mobility* stage of motor control. It is noted that some individuals may be able to maintain hip extension (*stability* stage) if assisted to the bridge position. The PNF technique hold relax active movement may be used to effectively promote active assumption of a bridge posture in persons for whom this task is particularly challenging. Once this position is achieved either actively or with assistance, techniques such as alternating isometrics or rhythmic stabilization may be applied at the pelvis, then progressively more distally to enhance *stability*. For patients who are weaker on one side, resistance is given to the stronger side while assistance is offered to the weaker side. Once the patient no longer requires assistance to achieve a bridge position, agonistic reversals may be used to promote *controlled mobility*. Eccentric lowering of the pelvis in a smooth coordinated manner is often difficult for patients. *Agonistic reversal* technique is used with bridging to address coordination and strength in both the concentric and eccentric components of the movement. Refer to Intervention 9-18 for illustrations of this technique as used with bridging. The clinician may vary the challenge of bridging by altering the BOS or hold duration. Complexity and functional applicability may be enhanced by combining bridging with various extremity movements. Examples include removing one limb from the surface through hip flexion or knee extension while the patient holds the bridge position or applying a resistive technique such as slow reversal to a UE or LE pattern.

Scooting in bed is considered a *skilled* movement associated with the hook-lying and bridging positions. Skill is the fourth stage of motor control. Scooting is often a difficult transitional movement and requires coordination of the head, upper trunk, lower trunk, and extremities. Movement may be initiated with either the upper trunk, LEs, or lower trunk. Manual contacts facilitate the direction of movement and offer assistance or resistance to the component movements as appropriate. Manual contacts may be used below the clavicles to facilitate upper trunk flexion while verbal cues are given for head and neck flexion. Manual contacts on the pelvis similar to those used to facilitate bridging promote recruitment of the lower trunk.

Rolling

Many components of gait and other higher-level activities are found in movements associated with rolling. Additionally, rolling stimulates cutaneous receptors, the vestibular and reticular systems, and proprioceptors within the joints and muscles. Rolling can influence muscle tone, level of arousal/alertness, and body awareness. Rolling is an excellent total body activity that provides opportunities to improve strength, coordination, and sensation in the trunk and extremities.

There are several key points to consider when incorporating rolling into a therapeutic program. As with all complex functional activities, individuals use various strategies to accomplish this task including flexion movements, extension movements, or pushing/pulling with one arm or leg (Richter et al., 1989). The ability to roll in either direction is an important functional and

foundational task. Rolling to the involved side may be easier in individuals with hemiplegia because a frequently used strategy involves initiation of trunk rotation to the hemiplegic side through movements of the uninvolved UE or LE. *Prepositioning* in hook lying or side-lying encourages use of certain components or methods of rolling. In hook lying, a shorter lever arm is created for initiation of LE and trunk movements with emphasis on the lower trunk and hip musculature. Side-lying provides an ideal position in which to focus on trunk rotation or to minimize the effects of gravity on extremity patterns. The clinician may choose specific extremity or trunk patterns as well as certain PNF techniques to optimally use the patient's abilities and promote maximal function. Rolling is also an effective task through which to enhance head control and eye-hand coordination. Basic prepositioning and one example of manual contacts are shown in Intervention 9-23.

Intervention 9-23

Prepositioning and Manual Contacts to Facilitate Rolling Supine to Right Side-Lying

A. Beginning position. In preparation to roll to the right, the patient turns her head to the right. The left hip and knee are flexed. The left upper extremity is placed in flexion with the shoulder adducted. The left upper extremity is positioned away from the body in extension and adduction.
B. End position. Through manual contacts at the right anterior shoulder and pelvis, the patient is assisted, facilitated, or resisted, as appropriate, to aid in assumption of right side-lying position.

Because of the transitional nature of this activity, the stages of motor control are less useful in providing a clear path of functional treatment progression; therefore, treatment applications will focus on tools to enhance rolling in general. Mass flexion and extension trunk patterns provide an initial means to facilitate rolling from supine to side-lying and side-lying to supine, respectively. Use of extremity patterns introduces greater trunk rotation into the rolling strategy. The right UE D_2 extension pattern or right LE D_1 flexion pattern with knee flexion are used to encourage rolling from supine to left side-lying. The antagonist patterns of the right extremities can be used to enhance rolling from left side-lying to supine, that is, UE D_2 flexion or LE D_1 extension. In side-lying, both directions of the D_1 and D_2 patterns of the uppermost extremities may be performed in a reciprocal manner to improve strength, coordination, recruitment, or reinforcement of the trunk and extremity components necessary for rolling. Use of the D_1 pattern with the left LE to promote rolling from supine to right side-lying is pictured in Intervention 9-24.

Intervention 9-24

D_1 Pattern with the Left Lower Extremity to Promote Rolling Supine to Right Side-Lying


A
B

A. The clinician positions in to half-kneeling just left of the patient's left lower extremity. The clinician contacts on the patient's dorsal foot with her right hand and the posterior tibia with the left hand.
B. The clinician shifts her body weight forward as the patient completes the left LE D_1 flexion pattern to assist in rolling to right side-lying.
C. To return to supine, the patient performs the D_1 extension pattern with the left lower extremity. The clinician places her right hand on the patient's posterior knee region and the left hand on the plantar surface of the foot.
D. The patient moves through the D_1 extension pattern with the left lower extremity and completes the transition back to supine position. The clinician shifts weight onto her back leg during the transition.

Trunk patterns, such as chops, lifts, and lower trunk rotation, are also quite helpful in facilitating the movements required to roll. For example, rolling supine to left side-lying may be assisted by using a left chop in which the left UE moves through the D_1 extension pattern. A left lift in which the left UE moves through the D_2 flexion pattern may also be used to roll from supine to left side-

lying. Determining which pattern depends upon patient abilities. When a person's preferred strategy is to initiate rolling with the LEs, incorporating lower trunk rotation in hook lying is advantageous. This activity has been described previously in relation to the hook-lying developmental posture.

Rhythmic initiation is often used when teaching a patient to roll. Movement progresses from passive to assistive to active or slightly resisted. Supine or hook lying may be used as the starting position. Review the section on rhythmic initiation for a complete description of promoting rolling. The technique hold relax active movement may also be an effective tool to enhance the patient's ability to roll. Initially, the patient is placed in side-lying position and asked to "hold" while the clinician applies resistance to the patient's trunk, as if trying to roll the patient back toward supine. The command to "relax" is given and the patient is passively rolled slightly back toward supine. The patient is then requested to actively roll toward side-lying as appropriate resistance is applied. This sequence is repeated with the clinician progressively taking the patient through greater range of motion until the patient is able to roll from supine to sidelying against resistance. Slow reversal, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversals may then be incorporated into rolling with emphasis on efficient movement strategies, normal timing, trunk control, and effective use of extremity patterns.

Prone Progression

Lying prone and prone on elbows are the foundational postures of the prone progression. Use of an external support, such as a wedge, pillow, or towel roll, may be necessary to promote comfort because of joint or soft tissue restrictions or respiratory dysfunction. The progression begins with the patient moving from lying prone to prone on elbows *(mobility)*. The prone-on-elbows position provides minimal biomechanical stresses because of the low center of gravity, large BOS, and minimal number of weight-bearing joints. This situation provides an ideal opportunity for early weight bearing on the UEs. Lifting one arm reduces the BOS, providing greater biomechanical challenge to the patient. Patients often fatigue quickly in the prone-on-elbows position; therefore, the patient should be monitored carefully for discomfort and proper postural alignment. Frequent verbal and manual cues may be needed to help the patient maintain appropriate cervical and thoracic spine extension, scapular adduction, and shoulder alignment; otherwise, excessive strain may be placed on the periarticular structures of the shoulder, such as the capsule and ligaments. Activities such as weight shifting and reaching form a natural functional progression and promote cocontraction of the upper trunk and shoulder girdle muscles, encourage asymmetrical use of the arms, and establish a foundation for crawling or bed mobility in prone.

Rhythmic initiation uses manual cues and graded assistance to teach the patient to transition from lying prone to prone on elbows (see "Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation Techniques"). Once the patient has learned to assume the position, alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization may be applied to the shoulder girdle or head to create *stability*. *Controlled mobility* may be facilitated first through lateral or diagonal weight shifting and then through use of unilateral UE patterns with slow reversal and slow reversal hold techniques.

Commando style crawling is defined as a *skill* level activity in this position. Manual cues at the anterior humerus to guide directional movement or on the scapula to promote stability may assist in developing effective movement strategies. This task also provides an opportunity to introduce reciprocal pelvic and lower trunk rotation early in the prone progression.

Quadruped

Quadruped represents the first posture in the developmental sequence in which the COG is a significant distance from the supporting surface. The higher COG combined with less body surface contact and a greater number of weight-bearing joints make this posture much more challenging from a biomechanical perspective than the preceding postures within the prone progression. The added biomechanical stresses in addition to weight bearing on all four extremities create unique opportunities to pursue gains in strength, range of motion, balance, coordination, and endurance throughout the body. Musculoskeletal dysfunction and pain may prohibit or limit the therapeutic use of this posture, especially regarding the knees, shoulders, and hands. Padding the palms or knees and altering the amount of hip and shoulder flexion through forward or backward weight shifting can improve patient comfort. This position may also place additional stress on the cardiovascular system; therefore, patients must be carefully screened for preexisting conditions and

monitored for signs of intolerance.

To obtain quadruped position from prone on elbows, patients may begin by moving their upper or lower trunk, or one LE. This transition *(mobility)* can be enhanced through rhythmic initiation by using carefully selected manual contacts at the shoulders or pelvis. Individuals with poor control of the lower trunk will have more difficulty completing this transition. Manual contacts near the ischial tuberosities, as demonstrated in Intervention 9-25, help guide the movement of the pelvis, as well as allow the clinician to provide assistance as needed. Alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization are appropriate to establish *stability* within this position. Examples of manual contacts are shown in Intervention 9-26. Only the creativity of the clinician limits the array of activities in this posture, especially during the *controlled mobility* stage of motor control. Some possibilities include forward, backward, and diagonal weight shifts; single extremity patterns; and contralateral arm/leg lifts. Movement-oriented techniques such as slow reversal, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversals may be applied as indicated by patient abilities and impairments. Intervention 9-27 pictures the use of slow reversal in facilitation of rocking backward. Intervention 9-28 provides examples of activities using the extremities to promote this stage of motor control. Combinations of techniques can be very effective in maximally challenging the patient. One example would be application of rhythmic stabilization to the trunk while the slow reversal technique is applied to an extremity pattern; such hybrid approaches are motorically challenging to the clinician but represent innovative ways to maximally benefit the individual.

Intervention 9-25

Transition from Prone-on-Elbows to Quadruped

A. Beginning. The patient lies prone, propped on the elbows. The clinician is positioned in half-kneeling, straddling the patient's lower legs. Manual contacts are at the posterior pelvis, near the ischial tuberosities. The patient is requested to "push up on your arms and sit back into my hands."
B. End. The clinician shifts her body weight back to accommodate patient movement into the quadruped position while providing facilitation or resistance as appropriate.

Intervention 9-26

Alternating Isometrics and Rhythmic Stabilization to Promote Stability in Quadruped


A

A. The clinician kneels behind the patient with manual contacts on the right and left sides of the pelvis. The verbal command "don't let me push you to the right/left" is given as the clinician provides resistance in the frontal plane.
B. The clinician is positioned in half-kneeling and faces the top of the patient's head. The clinician places one hand on either of the patient's scapula and requests that the patient "hold this position." The clinician alternates pressure from hand to hand to promote cocontraction in the

patient's trunk.

C. The clinician is positioned in half-kneeling just to the right of the patient's pelvis. The clinician places her right hand on the patient's right scapula and the left hand on the patient's left iliac crest. The patient is requested to "hold" as the clinician applies alternating forces.

Intervention 9-27

Slow Reversal Technique to Promote Rocking in Quadruped

A. The clinician assumes half-kneeling behind the patient and places the heels of her hands over the ischial tuberosities. The patient is requested to "push back into my hands."
B. The patient continues the weight shift until the buttocks approximate the heels or through the desired excursion. The clinician shifts her body weight to accommodate patient's movement.
C. The clinician changes her manual contacts to the anterior superior iliac spine region bilaterally and provides the verbal command "pull your pelvis forward" as the patient returns to quadruped position.

Intervention 9-28

Extremity Patterns to Facilitate the Controlled Mobility Stage in Quadruped


A


B

The clinician kneels or half-kneels on the patient's left side.

A. The clinician facilitates or resists the D_2 flexion pattern on the left upper extremity while the patient is in quadruped position. The clinician places her left hand on the patient's dorsal wrist and the right hand on the patient's anterolateral shoulder. The clinician asks the patient to "lift your arm up and out."

B. The patient continues through the pattern and shifts body weight to accommodate the change in base of support. The clinician mirrors patient movement.

C. As the patient nears end range of the pattern, the clinician may shift the right hand to the patient's left scapular region to promote greater scapular and trunk control as shown. The clinician continues to shift body weight to follow the patient's movement.

Kneeling

Kneeling provides functional progression from quadruped by freeing the UEs for environmental exploration. Therapeutically, biomechanical and neurophysiologic considerations must be addressed. Kneeling is the first developmental position in the prone progression to allow axial loading of the spine and hip joints. Number of weight-bearing joints and potential level arm are greatly increased. The hips are extended and knees flexed, which lessens the influence of an extensor synergy pattern in the LEs. Weight bearing through the LEs can also decrease excessive extensor tone. These changes provide functional challenges and therapeutic opportunities. Impairments in hip/knee range of motion, trunk/LE strength, and balance are efficiently addressed either sequentially or concurrently.

The transition from quadruped to kneeling *(mobility)* may be considered a continuation of the process of moving from prone on elbows to quadruped. Because the two transitions share key components, facilitation techniques are similar. Manual contacts are adjusted throughout the movement to most effectively facilitate shifting of the body posteriorly, as portrayed in Intervention 9-29. The transition to upright is cued by traction or approximation to the upper trunk or approximation to the pelvis. The applied force is small because the patient is already lifting his or her body weight against gravity. Once the patient is in a kneeling position with the trunk erect, alternating isometrics or rhythmic stabilization is used to create *stability* with suggested manual contacts, as pictured in Intervention 9-30. Manual contacts may be applied on the pelvis or on the

lower or upper trunk, depending on the desired focus and lever arm.

Intervention 9-29

Transition from Quadruped to Kneeling

The clinician positions in to half-kneeling to one side of the patient. The front foot is at level with the patient's knees.

A. The clinician places the heels of her hands on the patient's ischial tuberosities. The verbal command "sit back into my hands and push off your hands" is given.
B. The patient shifts weight backward to unload the upper extremities. Manual contacts are moved to the iliac crest and posterior pelvis to facilitate continued posterior weight shift.
C. The patient is then requested to "straighten your hips and trunk." Manual contacts shift, as needed, to promote hip and trunk extension. The transition is completed with the patient assuming the kneeling position.

Intervention 9-30

Alternating Isometrics and Rhythmic Stabilization Techniques to Promote Stability in Kneeling


A


B

A. The patient kneels at the edge of the mat table with the feet extending off the surface. The right hand is supported on a stool. The clinician stands on the mat table and faces the patient. The verbal command "don't let me move you forward" is given. Symmetrical manual contacts are used to facilitate trunk extension. The clinician alternates between anterior and posterior hand placements to apply the alternating isometrics technique to enhance trunk stability.
B. The clinician kneels in front of the patient and places her hands on the patient's anterior pelvis. The verbal command "don't let me push you back" is given. Resistance is applied to match patient effort as alternating isometrics is applied. The clinician alternates between anterior and posterior manual contacts to sequentially facilitate both the trunk flexors and extensors.
C. The clinician stands in front of the patient and applies her hands to scapula and anterolateral pelvis. She requests that the patient "hold" the position as forces are applied to promote cocontraction of the trunk musculature during the rhythmic stabilization technique.

There are many ways to promote *controlled mobility* in kneeling position. Initial therapeutic activities emphasize active maintenance of a stable upright trunk. Examples include weight shifting

in all directions with the trunk upright; chopping and lifting; and moving in and out of heel sitting or side sitting. Intervention 9-31 presents a sample of activities that may be used to enhance achievement of the controlled mobility stage in kneeling. Further progression promotes dynamic stabilization of the trunk during sagittal and then transverse plane movements. Slow reversal, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversals are frequently used to apply appropriate resistance to selected patterns and movements of the UEs or trunk. Foundational motor components of higher-level functional tasks, particularly sit to/from stand transfers, are recruited and reinforced through activities in kneeling.

Intervention 9-31

Activities to Promote Controlled Mobility in Kneeling


B


C


D

A. Right lifting pattern. The clinician stands behind the patient, adjacent to the right lead arm. The clinician places her right hand on the dorsal surface of the patient's right hand and the left hand on the patient's anterior humerus. The command "turn your right hand up and lift your arms over your right shoulder" initiates the pattern.
B. As the patient moves through the right lifting pattern, the clinician also moves through the diagonal position to accommodate the patient's movements and to maintain effective manual contacts. Optimally, patient gaze follows her lead hand.
C. Rising from heel sitting to kneeling. The clinician kneels (shown) or half-kneels and faces the patient. She contacts the anterior aspect of the patient's left shoulder and right pelvis. The patient's trunk should be erect and the arms at the sides. A request is made for the patient to "straighten your hips."
D. The patient proceeds through midrange of the transition, maintaining manual contacts, and the clinician shifts body position as needed to enhance patient effort.
E. The patient completes the transition to kneeling position. Alternative manual contacts may be used to address individual patient strengths and impairments, including the judicious use of assistance and resistance at the thigh, pelvis, trunk, and head.

The developmental level defined as *skill* in kneeling is represented by independent movements of the UEs while trunk and pelvic stability is actively maintained. Functional movements such as throwing or catching and writing on a chalkboard are categorized as skilled tasks that may be performed while kneeling. These and other similar functional activities target impairments in strength, core stability, balance, endurance, and UEs and eye-hand coordination.

Half-kneeling is the last posture in the prone progression and enhances efficiency of transition from floor to standing. In cases of unilateral or asymmetrical impairment, either of the LEs may assume the forward position as there are therapeutic benefits associated with either placement. The asymmetrical positioning of the LEs encourages dissociation of hip and knee musculature with the potential for functional carryover to higher-level activities such as walking, stair climbing, and certain athletic endeavors associated with kneeling may be applied successfully in half-kneeling to enhance the *stability* and *controlled mobility* stages of motor control.

Sitting

Sitting is the primary position for many functional tasks, as well as the midpoint of the transition between recumbency and standing. The sitting position frees both UEs and loads the trunk in an erect position. Learning to weight shift and control the midline position of the trunk and pelvis helps to develop the balance, strength, and neuromuscular control necessary for efficient gait. Multiple combinations of trunk and extremity movements are possible in sitting, allowing patients to develop both mobility and stability in different body regions concurrently. Balance reactions can also be facilitated in this position.

Ideal sitting posture is one in which the pelvis and spine are in neutral positions; the head is aligned with the sternum; and the feet are firmly on the floor. Attention to these details will enhance the effectiveness of sitting activities and their carryover into functional tasks in more challenging postures. Because many persons, especially those with neurologic dysfunction, tend to sit with the thoracic and lumbar spine flexed and the pelvis posteriorly tilted, facilitation is often required to assist patients in achieving an erect trunk. Postural correction should occur at the pelvis first because it is the foundation for upright sitting. The heels of the clinician's hands are placed between the iliac crest and ASIS, with the fingers pointing down and back toward the ischial tuberosities. The clinician may passively move the patient's pelvis from a posterior to an anterior tilt to help the patient to gain awareness of the desired movements. To facilitate assumption of an anterior tilt position, the clinician may passively move the pelvis into a posterior tilt and give resistance down and back as the patient attempts to move the pelvis up and forward. Verbal cues such as "sit up tall" or "push your hips toward me" are used. Approximation or traction through the scapulae or shoulders provides a stimulus to move into an upright posture. Assistance is given if necessary for the patient to successfully achieve an upright posture. The therapist may be able to resist the stronger side and assist the weaker side, thus using the principle of overflow. Intervention 9-32 demonstrates methods of facilitating erect sitting posture using a variety of manual contacts.

Intervention 9-32

Erect Sitting Posture


A

The clinician stands and faces the patient, who is seated on the edge of the mat table with feet on the floor.

A. The clinician may use the lower extremities to stabilize the patient's lower extremities as needed. The clinician uses manual contacts on the pelvis to facilitate an anterior pelvic tilt as a component of upright sitting posture. The clinician requests that the patient "bring your pelvis up and forward into my hands." The patient starts in a slouched sitting position. The end position of the requested movement is shown in the picture.

B. The patient sits on the mat table with feet on the floor. The clinician faces the patient with manual contacts on the scapulae. The patient is requested to "sit up tall" while the clinician applies approximation in a downward and posterior direction.

Rhythmic initiation and hold relax active movement are effective techniques to teach patients to assume an upright symmetrical sitting posture *(mobility)*. Intervention 9-33 depicts use of the latter technique. Manual contacts are placed in the direction of the desired movement, unless assistance is needed during early rehabilitation. Once the patient has achieved vertical posture, *stability* is

created or reinforced by application of alternating isometrics or rhythmic stabilization. UE weight-bearing activities, with or without facilitatory techniques, may be appropriate in sitting, especially during the stability stage of motor control. Further progression into the *controlled mobility* stage includes lateral weight shifts on the pelvis, unilateral UE patterns, trunk movements in cardinal or diagonal planes, and chops and lifts. Recommended techniques for promoting dynamic trunk control include slow reversal, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversal.

Intervention 9-33

Hold Relax Active Movement Technique to Promote Assumption of Erect Sitting Posture


B

The patient sits without external support on the edge of the mat table with feet securely on the floor. The clinician stands in midstance position and faces the patient.

A. Manual contacts are placed on the patient's posterior trunk in the intrascapular area. The clinician resists an isometric hold of the trunk extensors in the shortened range.
B. Upon the command "relax," the clinician passively moves the patient into the lengthened range of trunk extensors. The clinician shifts body weight posteriorly during the movement.
C. The patient actively returns to the upright sitting position while the clinician facilitates or resists concentric contraction of the trunk extensors. The clinician shifts weight forward as the patient moves into erect sitting.

Emphasis may be placed on trunk rotation by incorporating lifting and chopping patterns. The combination of two extremities working together increases irradiation into the trunk musculature. Lifting pattern facilitates trunk extension, elongation on one side of the trunk, and a weight shift. Chopping pattern promotes trunk flexion, shortening of the trunk on one side, and a weight shift. The direction of the weight shift with either movement pattern varies. Resistive techniques (slow reversal, slow reversal hold, agonistic reversal) are applied as appropriate to increase strength,

motor control, endurance, and coordination in the trunk and UEs. See Intervention 9-15 for an example of the use of trunk patterns in promoting erect sitting posture.

Scooting

The key to successful scooting is the weight shift that occurs before advancing the pelvis forward. For any attempt at reciprocal scooting to be successful, a weight shift to the left must occur to unweight the right side of the pelvis. The right pelvis may then be advanced forward. The weight shift right occurs in a lateral and slightly forward direction with elongation of the left trunk and shortening of the trunk on the right. Left trunk lengthening is facilitated by placing one hand on the patient's left anterior superior shoulder and the other hand on the right anterior superior pelvis. The clinician stands in front of and to the left of the patient. An approximation force is applied concurrent with a verbal cue to "shift to me." The patient responds by lengthening the trunk on the left and shortening the trunk on the right. A manual contact on the right side of the pelvis is used to facilitate the advancement of the right pelvis. The clinician assists the pelvis forward if the patient is unable to perform the movement. The sequence is repeated to obtain elongation to the right side of the trunk and advancement of the left pelvis. The clinician switches position from side to side as the motion of scooting is facilitated. If the patient is unable to perform the motion of reciprocal scooting, the clinician can isolate component parts, assisting as needed. Rhythmic initiation and hold relax active movement are useful tools that can assist in the process of teaching the patient the motions necessary for scooting. Once each component has been facilitated, the entire motion is then practiced to ensure motor learning of the task as a whole. Because scooting and sit-to-stand transfers (to be considered in the following section) are, by definition, movements; identification of developmental stages is irrelevant.

Sit to Stand

Moving from a seated position into standing requires the patient to move the center of gravity over the BOS and lift the body against gravity. This task is quite challenging for many patients. Forward inclination of an extended trunk with the hips flexed and the knees anterior to the feet brings the center of gravity over the feet and enables the weight of the body to be shifted forward and upward (Carr and Shepherd, 1998). As the person continues to lean forward, the buttocks are lifted off the chair. Ultimately, the hips and knees are extended as the trunk moves into an erect posture, and standing is achieved. Either assistance or resistance can effectively facilitate the transition from sitting to standing. It is important that normal timing of the movement occurs regardless of the type and degree of facilitation. Weakness in the hip extensor musculature is associated with premature knee extension. This occurrence disrupts the normal timing and sequencing of the optimal movement pattern and increases the difficulty of achieving trunk extension in an efficient manner.

The clinician stands in front of the patient or on a diagonal when facilitating the transition from sitting to standing. Standing on a diagonal encourages a weight shift in that direction and is particularly recommended for the patient who tends to push up only with the stronger limb. Manual contacts vary based on the patient's needs and abilities. Hand placements on the upper trunk are effective for patients who have the ability to stand but need cues for the correct sequencing or timing of the movement. Manual contacts on the pelvis are more appropriate for patients who require greater facilitation to successfully complete this transfer. The clinician's hands are placed on both sides of the pelvis in the space between the anterior superior iliac spine and the iliac crest. During the transitional movement, the clinician mirrors the forward movement expected from the patient. To maximize patient success, the clinician must deliberately plan and execute his or her own body movements. Posterior weight shift, synchronization of clinician and patient movements, and precise grading of resistance are crucial. The verbal command consists of "lean toward me and stand up." Once initiated, the sit-to-stand transition must proceed without delay during any phase; otherwise, the patient will experience greater difficulty generating sufficient force to complete the transfer (Carr and Shepherd, 1998). Manual contacts on the pelvis, the clinician's movements, and concise verbal cues inform the patient as to which direction to move. Lifting patterns may be incorporated into the movement to enhance forward weight transfer and maintenance of erect trunk posture, as pictured in Intervention 9-34.

Intervention 9-34

Activities to Promote Independent Standing in Symmetrical Stance Position


B


C

The patient stands with symmetrical foot placement. The clinician stands in midstance position and faces the patient.

A. The clinician applies approximation at the pelvis through manual contacts at the iliac crest. A verbal cue to "stand up straight" may be given.
B. The clinician applies approximation through the superior aspect of the shoulder girdle to promote upright trunk posture.
C. The clinician applies traction through hand placements over the scapula to promote upright standing.
D. Rhythmic stabilization is applied with asymmetrical manual contacts at the shoulder and the pelvis. Emphasis is in on application of rotary forces to promote trunk cocontraction to enhance upright standing posture.

If assistance is needed only on the weaker side, the clinician can maintain manual contact on the pelvis on the strong side and assist the weaker side through a manual contact on the posterolateral iliac crest or at the buttocks. If the patient requires more assistance, both of the clinician's hands are placed on the buttocks to assist the patient into standing, maintaining appropriate timing during the transition. Initial use of an elevated surface, such as a raised hi-lo mat table or lift chair, lessens

the demands of the activity to promote early success. Resistive LE patterns, bridging, and controlled mobility activities in sitting or kneeling help the patient to develop the requisite strength, coordination, and motor control to successfully perform sit-to-stand transfers.

Efficient return to sitting from the standing position with efficient eccentric control is also a relevant functional skill. Patients must constantly counteract the downward force of gravity to complete a controlled slow descent to the sitting position; therefore, further resistance is rarely needed therapeutically. Carefully chosen and timed verbal cues and manual contacts, however, effectively improve the quality of this transitional movement. PNF techniques may be adapted and applied to both directions of the sit-to-stand transfer to improve quality, efficiency, and stability including hold relax active movement, slow reversal hold, and agonistic reversal.

Standing

Safety and stability in standing are paramount to functional independence. Standing provides the foundation for many higher-level functional tasks, such as gait, stand-pivot transfers, activities of daily living, cleaning or cooking tasks, and work-related skills. The transition from sitting position to standing is the *mobility* stage of motor control and was addressed in the previous section. Once the patient has achieved erect standing, approximation may be used at the pelvis to enhance cocontraction of the muscles in the LEs and create *stability*. The clinician stands and faces the patient on a diagonal with one foot forward while applying approximation. A lumbrical grip (see Figure 9-1) is used with the thenar eminence on the anterior superior aspect of the patient's iliac crest and fingers pointing toward the ischial tuberosities. Approximation is given through both sides of the pelvis equally and directed downward and backward at a 45-degree angle toward the patient's heels. Suggested hand placements are pictured in Intervention 9-35. The clinician gradually increases the amount of force used as the patient responds. Further *stability* can be developed through the use of alternating isometrics or rhythmic stabilization, as is also shown in Intervention 9-35. The clinician may stand directly in front of the patient or on a diagonal while applying these techniques.

Intervention 9-35

Activities to Promote Stability and Pelvic Control While Standing in Midstance Position


A

B

The patient stands in midstance position with the right lower extremity forward. The clinician also stands, but her relative position varies according to the specific patient situation and goal.

A. The clinician is shown standing in front of the patient to apply approximation through the pelvis. The heels of the clinician's hands are placed symmetrically on the anterior superior aspect of the iliac crests.

B. An alternative position for application of approximation is shown in the picture, with the clinician standing behind the patient. Manual contacts are similar to those described above; however, the clinician's hands are shifted posteriorly.

C. The clinician facilitates pelvic control through contact on the unloaded limb. The patient assumes midstance position with the weight shifted onto the forward lower extremity; in this case, the left. The clinician stands on the left side. She uses her right hand to facilitate, assist, or resist isometric control of the left lower extremity. She places her left hand on the patient's right pelvis, near the anterior superior iliac spine. The patient is asked to "push your pelvis into my hand" to promote initiation of swing phase on the unloaded limb; in this case, the right.

Varying manual contacts assists in providing the amount of resistance that appropriately

challenges the patient's abilities through changes in lever arm. The least resistance is experienced through use of contacts on the pelvis, and an intermediate amount through contacts on the thigh and lower trunk. The greatest resultant force is produced through hand placements on the lower leg, ankle, shoulder girdle, or UE.

Static positioning in single limb stance provides an excellent intermediate progression between bilateral LE standing and dynamic pregait activities. Techniques that promote stability, such as alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization as previously described for the typical standing position, are equally appropriate in single limb stance. Alterations in position or use of additional devices may be advantageous to maximize patient performance or safety, including placement of weight-bearing or non-weight-bearing limb on a stool, provision of a bar or surface for UE support, and positioning of patient perched on corner of elevated mat table with only one limb contacting the floor.

The *controlled mobility* stage of development is represented by weight-shifting and squatting activities through partial range, with the LEs assuming various positions. The crucial role of these activities in establishing a foundation for the acquisition of motor components involved in locomotion justifies the need for more detailed analysis and delineation in the following section.

Pregait Activities

In standing, *controlled mobility* activities are targeted at acquiring the skills needed to walk. Weight shifting is a fundamental movement that must be mastered before actual steps are attempted. Symmetrical standing may be used initially, with progression to midstance position (one foot forward) as soon as indicated by patient status. The midstance position in itself facilitates a weight shift from one limb to the other. Assumption of a lunge position with the forward limb flexed at the knee creates additional loading of the forward limb. Procedurally, the clinician uses contacts on the anterior pelvis similar to those used for scooting and the transition from sitting to standing. Intervention 9-36 shows several options for application of approximation and facilitation of pelvic control. Light hand support on a table or bar serves to increase patient stability, safety, and confidence. An additional staff member may also guard the patient to further ensure safety.

Intervention 9-36

Methods of Facilitating and Assisting with Swing Phase of Gait


A


B


C


D


E

The clinician and patient both stand in midstance position and face each other.

A. The clinician facilitates initiation of the swing phase of gait through manual contacts and appropriate assistance at the ischial tuberosity. The clinician's other hand facilitates trunk extension.
B. The clinician assists the patient's right lower extremity through midswing. She steps backward during the movement to mirror the patient's progression.
C. The clinician facilitates weight transfer onto the right lower extremity through manual contacts at the posterior pelvis. The clinician repositions her body as needed.
D. The clinician demonstrates use of manual contacts at the posterior thigh to assist and facilitate initiation of swing phase.
E. The patient progresses through midswing. The clinician shifts her manual contacts and body weight to accommodate patient movement.
F. The clinician promotes weight transfer onto the right lower extremity through manual contacts at the posterior thigh.

Rhythmic initiation assists the patient with the act of weight shifting by using a sequence of passive, active-assisted, active, and slightly resisted motions. Slow reversal hold can be an effective tool that simulates the sequence of isotonic then isometric muscle contractions used during gait. Lever arm may be varied through manual contacts at the pelvis, thigh, lower leg, or trunk. Contacts

and resistance may be applied symmetrically or asymmetrically as indicated by patient abilities or responses. For example, appropriately strong resistance may be used through contact on the left midanterior thigh to produce overflow, whereas less resistance is applied on the left anterior pelvis to facilitate movement.

Some patients tolerate only short periods of time in the upright position because of multiple factors including cardiovascular status, balance, trunk control, coordination deficits, and cognitive impairment. Musculoskeletal conditions, such as arthritis in the hips, knees, or spine, may also limit tolerance to standing. It is often appropriate to determine alternative activities in lower level developmental positions to simulate the movements or muscle contractions required during standing and walking. Bridging and weight shifting in quadruped position or half-kneeling represent *controlled mobility* activities with direct functional carryover into components of the gait process. Slow reversal hold and agonistic reversals facilitate and reinforce the types of muscle contractions and movement strategies most crucial to upright locomotion. These techniques also serve to strengthen key muscles important to the process of initiating, sustaining, and refining gait patterns. Depending upon the patient's unique abilities and needs, other suggested interventions include resisted extremity patterns in quadruped; rhythmic stabilization or alternating isometrics in quadruped, kneeling, or half-kneeling; and resisted LE patterns in side-lying, especially D_1 extension with emphasis on pelvic control. Some of these activities may also be adapted for inclusion in a home program.

After the patient achieves an adequate weight shift in the midstance position, further stability can be developed especially in the forward limb through use of rhythmic stabilization. Manual contacts may be altered to focus on control of the pelvis, knee, or ankle. The importance of stability in the stance phase of gait cannot be overemphasized. Efficient progression, or swing through, of the unloaded limb occurs only when the stance limb provides adequate support and security. Once stance limb stability is deemed sufficient, swing phase of the unloaded limb may be facilitated by an applied stretch to ipsilateral pelvis through a lumbrical grip on the ASIS. The direction of the force is posterior and inferior, toward the ischial tuberosity. Application of the stretch is timed with the verbal cue, "step forward." Judiciously applied resistance may also facilitate greater movement. When the patient demonstrates satisfactory control of the pelvis, manual contacts may be moved to the anterior thigh to facilitate further hip flexion. As the foot again contacts the surface, the process of weight shifting and stabilization of the forward limb resumes. Many options exist for continued gait preparation and training. Suggested manual contacts are shown in Intervention 9-36. Dependent upon the patient's responses, several typical routes are pursued. Repeated forward and backward stepping may be practiced with or without applied stretch. The procedure for facilitating backward or lateral stepping is similar to that of forward stepping, with the therapist's hands adjusted to facilitate muscle contraction or the desired direction of movement. The therapist may also alternate focus on the swing and stance limb through the procedures previously described. Resisted progression with manual contacts on the trunk, pelvis, or LE is introduced when facilitation through stretch is no longer needed.

Retraining of a safe, efficient gait pattern in individuals with neurologic impairments is challenging for both the individual and the clinician. Although no one strategy is optimally effective for every client, the following progression may prove helpful:

- Approximation and stability exercises in standing with feet symmetrically placed
- Approximation and stability exercises in midstance and then with the patient's weight shifted forward onto the front limb
- Application of resistance at the pelvis of the advancing limb as the patient steps forward
- Repetitive stepping forward and backward with one limb
- Reciprocal gait with manual contacts at the pelvis and facilitatory stretch to the hip flexors at the initiation of swing phase
- Resistive reciprocal gait with manual contacts at the pelvis, then the trunk and lower extremities

Stair ambulation with or without an assistive device or handrail may be an appropriate goal for patients who demonstrate the requisite stability and strength. The progression of manual contacts and techniques suggested for level surface ambulation may be successfully adapted to the stair environment. Deliberate choices regarding LE sequence and method (alternating versus nonalternating) are critical to both patient success and optimal challenge. Step descension provides a functional opportunity for development of eccentric control of the hip and knee extensor musculature. Use of step stools or stacking step platforms within the parallel bars may offer a more

protected situation for preparatory training before use of an actual staircase.

Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation and motor learning

Motor learning is defined as "a set of processes associated with practice or experience leading to relatively permanent changes in the capability for producing skilled action" (Shumway-Cook and Woollacott, 2012). From its conception, the intended outcome of PNF as a therapeutic approach has been to develop and refine functional movement strategies. In the preface to the second edition of their classic text, *Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation: Patterns and Techniques*, Margaret Knott and Dorothy Voss stated repeatedly that development and application of the PNF approach was targeted at maximizing motor learning. The following excerpt summarizes their perceptions:

All of the procedures suggested for the facilitation of total patterns have a common purpose: to promote motor learning. Oddly this term strikes some physical therapists as new or foreign, yet we have always tried to "teach the patient" to perform a motor act and have been pleased when the patient has learned (Knott and Voss, 1968, p. xiii).

A positive environment that nurtures an interactive relationship between clinician and patient sets the stage for optimal learning and relearning of motor skills. This environment creates a place where the patient is motivated by realistic demands, clearly articulated expectations, and functionally relevant outcomes. Auditory, tactile, and proprioceptive input are crucial elements in promoting and reinforcing the motor performance that contributes to the acquisition of the pertinent functional skills. The continual process of implementing techniques and patterns matched with the patient's current abilities, observing the patient's responses, and making appropriate modifications is key to optimal achievement of the patient's functional goals.

Chapter summary

Kabat and Knott created an approach to patient treatment in the 1940s that continues to grow and evolve today. The PNF treatment approach has clinical application to a wide variety of patients and diagnoses. It consists of a philosophy and basic principles, which can be adapted and applied by clinicians to any functional activity. By incorporating the basic principles of PNF, clinicians broaden their repertoire of intervention strategies and are better able to customize therapeutic exercise programs to each patient's unique needs. When using PNF principles to create specific activities and patterns of movement for individual clients, a checklist ensures that the basic principles are being followed. Such care allows the clinician to incorporate PNF techniques to address specific problems and enhance patient performance. When the emphasis of treatment is on function, PNF is a viable treatment option.

Review questions

1. Define the term *appropriate resistance* according to the proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) approach.

2. What is irradiation? Describe how this phenomenon may be used to promote movement in individuals with hemiplegia.

3. What two PNF techniques are frequently applied to increase stability?

4. What activities, patterns, or techniques are appropriate to use when the outcome is improvement of the functional ability to roll to the left in a patient who has sustained a right cerebrovascular accident (CVA)? How would clinician strategies change when teaching rolling to the right in the same individual?

5. A patient is having difficulty weight bearing on the right lower extremity after a left CVA. What interventions are appropriate to enhance the patient's ability regarding right stance during gait?

6. A patient has weakness in the right gluteals. Identify activities to strengthen these muscles eccentrically. What PNF technique is most appropriate to address an eccentric deficit?

7. Hamstring shortness is limiting a patient's ability to sit with the knees extended (long sitting

position). What PNF technique promotes lengthening of this muscle group?

References

Alder SS, Beckers D, Buck M. *PNF in practice: an illustrated guide.* ed 3 Heidelberg: Springer; 2008.

Carr J, Shepherd R. *Neurological rehabilitation optimizing motor performance.* Woburn, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1998.

Kabat H. Proprioceptive facilitation in therapeutic exercise. In: Licht S, Johnson EW, eds. *Therapeutic exercise.* 2 ed. Baltimore: Waverly; 1961.

Kisner C, Colby LA. *Therapeutic exercise foundations and techniques.* ed 5 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2007 pp 85–87; 195–203.

Knott M, Voss D. *Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation: patterns and techniques.* ed 2 New York: Harper & Row; 1968.

Loofbourrow GN, Gellhorn E. Proprioceptively induced reflex patterns. *Am J Physiol.* 1948;154:433–438.

McGraw MB. *The neuromuscular maturation of the human infant.* New York: Columbia University Press; 1962.

Prentice WE. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques in rehabilitation. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, eds. *Techniques in musculoskeletal rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001:197–213.

Richter RR, VanSant AF, Newton RA. Description of adult rolling movements and hypothesis of developmental sequence. *Phys Ther.* 1989;69:63–71.

Saliba V, Johnson G, Wardlaw C. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation. In: Basmajian J, Nyberg R, eds. *Rational manual therapies.* Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1993:243–284.

Sherrington C. *The integrative action of the nervous system.* ed 2 New Haven: Yale Press; 1947.

Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. *Motor control: translating research into clinical practice.* ed 4 Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012.

Sullivan PE, Markos PD. *Clinical decision making in therapeutic exercise.* Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange; 1995.

Sullivan PE, Markos PD, Minor MA. *An integrated approach to therapeutic exercise: theory and clinical application.* Reston, VA: Reston; 1982.

Voss DE, Ionta M, Meyers B. *Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation: patterns and techniques.* ed 3 New York: Harper & Row; 1985.

* The Editors would like to acknowledge Dr. Cathy Jeremiason Finch, PT, for her foundational work on this chapter in previous editions.

CHAPTER 10

Cerebrovascular Accidents

Objectives:

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- Discuss the etiology and clinical manifestations of stroke.
- Identify common complications seen in patients who have sustained cerebrovascular accidents.
- Explain the role of the physical therapist assistant in the treatment of patients with stroke.
- Describe appropriate treatment interventions for patients who have experienced strokes.
- Recognize the importance of functional training for patients who have had strokes.

Introduction

Cerebrovascular accidents (CVAs), or *strokes* as they are more commonly called, are the most common and disabling neurologic condition of adult life. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention estimates that 7 million Americans are living with the effects of stroke, and that 795,000 new CVAs occur annually. CVAs continue to be the fifth leading cause of death in the United States with a mortality rate of approximately 130,000 individuals annually. It should be noted, however, that with improvements in medical management and reductions in predisposing risk factors, mortality rates for this condition have decreased significantly over the past 10 years (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2015; American Stroke Association, 2014).

Definition

A *cerebrovascular accident* may be defined as the sudden onset of neurologic signs and symptoms resulting from a disturbance of blood supply to the brain. The onset of the symptoms provides the physician with information regarding the vascular origin of the condition. The individual who sustains a CVA may have temporary or permanent loss of function as a result of injury to cerebral tissue.

Etiology

The two major types of CVAs are ischemic and hemorrhagic. Approximately 85% of all CVAs are caused by ischemia, and 15% are caused by hemorrhage. Hemorrhagic strokes account for 40% of all stroke deaths (National Stroke Association, 2014b; CDC, 2015).

Ischemic Cerebrovascular Accidents

Ischemia is a condition of hypoxia or decreased oxygenation to tissue and results from poor blood supply. Ischemic strokes can be subdivided into two major categories: those that result from thrombosis and those that result from an embolus.

Thrombotic CVAs are most frequently a consequence of atherosclerosis. In atherosclerosis, the lumen (opening) of the artery decreases in size as plaque is deposited within the vessel walls. As a result, blood flow through the vessel is reduced, thereby limiting the amount of oxygen that is able to reach cerebral tissues. If an atherosclerotic deposit completely occludes the vessel, the tissue supplied by the artery will undergo death or cerebral infarction. A *cerebral infarct* is defined as the actual death of a portion of the brain.

CVAs of *embolic* origin are frequently associated with cardiovascular disease, specifically atrial fibrillation, myocardial infarction, or valvular disease. In embolic CVAs, a blood clot breaks away from the intima, or inner lining of the artery, and is carried to the brain. The embolus can lodge in a cerebral blood vessel, occlude it and consequently cause death or infarction of cerebral tissue. If cerebral blood flow is lower than 20 mL/100 mg of tissue per minute, there is disruption in neurologic functioning. If perfusion is less than 8 to 10 mL/100 mg, cell death occurs (Fuller, 2009).

The area surrounding the infarcted cerebral tissue is called the *ischemic penumbra* or transitional zone. Neurons in this area are vulnerable to injury because cerebral blood flow is decreased and is unable to support neuronal function (Fuller, 2009). Changes to neurotransmitters are thought to cause further injury after the ischemic insult. *Glutamate* is a neurotransmitter present throughout the central nervous system (CNS) and stored at synaptic terminals. The amount released at the synapse is regulated so that the level of glutamate is minimal. Following an ischemic injury, however, the cells that control glutamate levels are compromised, which leads to overstimulation of postsynaptic receptors. This excessive level of glutamate in the extracellular space facilitates the entry of calcium ions into the cell. Calcium ions enter the brain cells and further propagate cellular destruction and death. Various destructive (catabolic) enzymes and free radicals (neurotoxic by-products) are activated by these calcium ions, and this process leads to additional damage of vital cellular structures. As a consequence, cerebral tissue damage may extend beyond the initial site of infarction (Fuller, 2009).

Hemorrhagic Cerebrovascular Accidents

Hemorrhagic strokes, including those that are caused by intracerebral and subarachnoid hemorrhage and arteriovenous malformation, result from abnormal bleeding from rupture of a cerebral vessel. The incidence of *intracerebral hemorrhage* is low among persons less than 45 years old and increases after age 65. Common causes of spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage include vessel malformation and changes in the integrity of cerebral vessels brought on by the effects of hypertension and aging (Fuller, 2009).

Subarachnoid hemorrhages are a consequence of bleeding into the subarachnoid space. The subarachnoid space is located under the arachnoid membrane and above the pia mater. Aneurysms, which can be defined as a ballooning or outpouching of a vessel wall, and vascular malformations are the primary causes of subarachnoid hemorrhages. These types of conditions tend to weaken the vasculature and can lead to rupture. Approximately 90% of subarachnoid hemorrhages are caused by berry aneurysms. A *berry aneurysm* is a congenital defect of a cerebral artery in which the vessel is abnormally dilated at a bifurcation (Fuller, 2009).

Arteriovenous malformations (AVMs) are congenital anomalies that affect the circulation in the brain. In AVMs, the arteries and veins communicate directly without a conjoining capillary bed (Fuller, 2009). Blood vessels become dilated and form masses within the brain. These defects weaken the blood vessel walls, which, in time, can rupture and cause a CVA. Most strokes resulting

from AVM occur in the third and fourth decades of life (Fuller, 2009).

Transient Ischemic Attacks

CVAs are not to be confused with *transient ischemic attacks* (TIAs), which also occur in many individuals. A TIA resembles a stroke in many ways. When a patient experiences a TIA, the blood supply to the brain is temporarily interrupted. The patient complains of neurologic dysfunction, including loss of motor, sensory, or speech function. These deficits, however, completely resolve within 24 hours. The patient does not experience any residual brain damage or neurologic dysfunction. Recurrent TIAs indicate thrombotic disease and more than one third of individuals who have a TIA will have a major stroke within 1 year if treatment is not initiated (CDC, 2013).

Medical intervention

Diagnosis

Medical management of a patient who has had a stroke includes hospitalization to determine the etiology of the infarct. The physician completes a physical examination to evaluate motor, sensory, speech, and reflex function. Subjective information received from the patient or a family member regarding the time of onset of symptoms is also important. Neuroimaging by either a computed tomography scan or a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan is performed to determine whether the CVA is the result of ischemic or hemorrhagic injury and that information guides medical treatment. However, computed tomography scans that are performed initially do not always show small lesions and may not be able to detect an acute embolic CVA, whereas MRI can diagnose an ischemic event within 2 to 6 hours after the initial onset (Fuller, 2009). Diffusion-weighted imaging, a type of MRI, measures the movement of water in cerebral tissue and is useful in detecting small ischemic infarcts and strokes in evolution (Fuller, 2009; National Institutes of Health [NIH], 2009).

Acute Medical Management

Acute care management consists of monitoring the patient's neurologic function and preventing the development of secondary complications. Regulation of the patient's blood pressure, cerebral perfusion, and intracranial pressure is recommended. Pharmacologic interventions may also be prescribed. Heparin, diuretics, beta-blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, and thrombolytic and neuroprotective agents can be administered to improve blood flow and to minimize tissue damage (Fuller, 2009). Thrombolytic medications, such as tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), can decrease the effects of neurologic damage when these agents are administered to patients within 3 hours of the event. Tissue plasminogen activator helps dissolve blood clots and increase blood flow; however, because of its anticoagulant properties, it is not recommended for patients with cerebral hemorrhage or those with significant hypertension. Unfortunately, only 3% to 5% of patients experiencing a stroke reach a hospital in time for the medication to be administered. Neuroprotective agents minimize tissue damage when adequate blood supply does not exist. Medications that modify or interfere with glutamate release or enhance recovery from calcium overload have shown promise. Clinical trials continue to determine whether these drugs will be effective for patients with acute CVA (Fuller, 2009; NIH, 2009).

Surgical intervention, including placement of a metal clip at the base of an aneurysm, removal of an abnormal vessel, or evacuation of a hematoma, may be indicated in patients with hemorrhagic CVAs (Fuller, 2009). A carotid endarectomy may be suggested if the carotid arteries are occluded (NIH, 2009). This surgical procedure cannot, however, be performed after acute CVA secondary to the risk of additional ischemic injury (O'Sullivan, 2014b).

Recovery from stroke

Many survivors of CVA sustain permanent neurologic damage resulting in disability and are unable to resume previous social roles and functions (Roth and Harvey, 1996). The most significant recovery in neurologic function occurs within the first 3 to 6 months after the injury, although movement patterns may be able to be improved with goal-directed activities for up to 2 to 3 years after the initial injury (Cumming et al., 2011; Fuller, 2009). General recovery guidelines estimate that 10% of the individuals who have a CVA recover almost completely, 25% have mild impairments, 40% experience moderate to severe impairments requiring special care, 10% require placement in an extended-care facility, and 15% die shortly after the incident (National Stroke Association, 2014c). Specific data regarding functional outcome following CVA vary. Data obtained from the Framingham Heart Study indicated that 69% of individuals who had a stroke were independent in activities of daily living, 80% were independent in functional mobility tasks, and 84% had returned home. Despite independence in self-care and functional mobility skills, 71% of the study subjects had decreased vocational function, 62% had reduced opportunities for socialization in the community, and 16% were institutionalized (Roth and Harvey, 1996). Stroke severity, age, and a history of diabetes have been associated with lower rates of recovery and functional potential (Cumming et al., 2011).

Ambulation abilities are a primary factor in the determination of discharge destination and whether patients are able to return to previous levels of social and vocational activities (Hornby et al., 2011). Gait velocity is a "reliable, valid, sensitive measure of recovery of poststroke mobility that discriminates the effects of stroke and is related to the potential for rehabilitation recovery" (Schmid et al, 2007). Additionally, it can predict future health and function. Research also suggests that patients who receive inpatient rehabilitation have improvements in motor recovery, functional mobility, and quality of life (O'Sullivan, 2014b).

Prevention of cerebrovascular accidents

Although progress has been made in the medical management of patients after CVA, more attention has been given to the area of prevention. Individuals can reduce their risk of stroke by recognizing the medical and lifestyle risk factors associated with the condition. Everyone has some risk for the development of stroke, including age (being over the age of 55), gender (males have a greater risk than females), and race (African Americans, Pacific Islanders, and Hispanics have a greater incidence of CVA). Medical risk factors include previous stroke, TIA, cardiac disease, diabetes, atrial fibrillation, and hypertension. Risk factors associated with lifestyle include smoking, obesity, excessive alcohol and drug use, and inactivity. The two primary preventable risk factors for the development of CVA are hypertension and heart disease. Hypertension is defined as a blood pressure of 160/95, although the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends blood pressure readings of less than 140/90. Lowering one's diastolic blood pressure by 5 to 6 mm Hg results in a reduction of stroke risk by 40% (Fuller, 2009; NIH, 2009). A review of risk factors reveals that many of them are directly related to an individual's lifestyle and are potentially preventable or modifiable.

Unfortunately, most individuals do not recognize that strokes are preventable and that treatment interventions are available. The average person who experiences a CVA waits more than 12 hours before seeking medical treatment. The window of opportunity for administration of medications that enhance patient outcome is exceeded within this time frame. In an effort to educate the public, support to rename CVA as a *brain attack* has continued. Individuals are being encouraged to activate the emergency medical system (call 911) immediately, once they recognize the onset of symptoms, including sudden weakness, confusion, sudden dimness or loss of vision in one eye, difficulty speaking, sudden severe headache, unexplained dizziness, and loss of balance or difficulty walking. It is hoped that this view (similar to that used during a myocardial infarction) will lead to earlier entry into the medical system and improved outcomes for individuals with CVAs (NIH, 2009).

Stroke syndromes

To understand the clinical manifestations seen in an individual who has sustained a stroke, it is necessary to know the structure and function of the various parts of the brain, as well as the distribution of the cerebral circulation. A review of this information can be found in Chapter 2. Because specific arteries supply blood to various parts of the cortex and brain stem, a blockage or hemorrhage in one of the vessels results in fairly predictable clinical findings. Individual differences, however, do occur. Table 10-1 provides a review of common stroke syndromes.

Table 10-1

Cerebral Circulation and Resultant Stroke Syndromes

Artery	Distribution	Patient Deficits
Anterior cerebral	Supplies the superior border of the frontal and parietal lobes	Contralateral weakness and sensory loss primarily in the lower extremity, incontinence, aphasia, and apraxia
Middle cerebral	Supplies the surface of the cerebral hemispheres and the deep frontal and parietal lobes	Contralateral sensory loss and weakness in the face and upper extremity, less involvement in the lower extremity, homonymous hemianopia
Vertebrobasilar	Supplies the brain stem and cerebellum	Cranial nerve involvement (diplopia, dysphagia, dysarthria, deafness, vertigo), ataxia, equilibrium disturbances, headaches, and dizziness
Posterior cerebral	Supplies the occipital and temporal lobes, thalamus, and upper brain stem	Contralateral sensory loss, memory deficits, homonymous hemianopia, visual agnosia, and cortical blindness

Anterior Cerebral Artery Occlusion

A blockage in the anterior cerebral artery is uncommon and is most frequently caused by an embolus (Fuller, 2009). The anterior cerebral artery supplies the superior border of the frontal and parietal lobes of the brain. A patient who has an anterior artery occlusion will have contralateral weakness and sensory loss, primarily in the lower extremity, aphasia, incontinence, and apraxia.

Middle Cerebral Artery Occlusion

Middle cerebral artery infarcts, which are the most common type of CVAs, can result in contralateral sensory loss and weakness in the face and upper extremity. Patients with middle cerebral artery infarcts often have less involvement in their lower extremity. Infarction of the dominant hemisphere can lead to global aphasia. *Homonymous hemianopia*, which is a defect or loss of vision in the temporal half of one visual field and the nasal portion of the other, may be evident. A patient may also experience a loss of *conjugate eye gaze*, which is the movement of the eyes in parallel.

Vertebrobasilar Artery Occlusion

Complete occlusion of the vertebrobasilar artery is often fatal. Cranial nerve involvement including *diplopia* (double vision), *dysphagia* (difficulty in swallowing), *dysarthria* (difficulty in forming words secondary to weakness in the tongue and muscles of the face), *deafness*, and *vertigo* (dizziness) may be present. In addition, infarcts to areas supplied by this vascular distribution may lead to *ataxia*, which is characterized by uncoordinated movement, equilibrium deficits, and headaches.

Blockage of the basilar artery can cause the patient to experience a *locked-in syndrome*. Patients with this type of stroke have significant motor impairments. The patient is alert and oriented but is unable to move or speak because of weakness in all muscle groups. Eye movements are the only type of active movement possible and thus become the patient's primary means of communication (O'Sullivan, 2014b).

Posterior Artery Occlusion

The posterior cerebral artery supplies the occipital and temporal lobes. Occlusion in this artery can lead to contralateral sensory loss; pain; memory deficits; homonymous hemianopia; *visual agnosia*, which is an inability to recognize familiar objects or individuals; and *cortical blindness*, which is the inability to process incoming visual information even though the optic nerve remains intact.

Lacunar Infarcts

Lacunar infarcts are most often encountered in the deep regions of the brain, including the internal capsule, thalamus, basal ganglia, and pons. The term *lacuna* is used because a cystic cavity remains after the infarcted tissue is removed. These infarcts are common in individuals with diabetes and hypertension, and result from small vessel arteriolar disease. Clinical findings can include contralateral weakness and sensory loss, ataxia, and dysarthria.

Other Stroke Syndromes

Other stroke syndromes may occur in patients. The neurologic impairments are closely related to the area of the brain affected. For example, a CVA within the parietal lobe can cause inattention or neglect, which is manifested as a disregard for the involved side of the body; an impaired perception of vertical, visual, spatial, and topographic relationships; and motor perseveration. *Perseveration* is the involuntary persistence of the same verbal or motor response regardless of the stimulus or its duration. Patients who demonstrate perseveration may repeat the same word or movement over and over. It is often difficult to redirect these patients to a new idea or activity.

The resultant patient findings also depend on the hemisphere of the brain affected, although motor and sensory functions are attributed to both hemispheres. Reviewing information covered in Chapter 2, the left hemisphere of the brain is the verbal and analytic side. The left hemisphere allows individuals to process information sequentially and to solve problems. Speech and reading comprehension are also functions of the left hemisphere. The right hemisphere of the brain allows individuals to look at information holistically, to process visual information, to perceive emotions, and to be aware of body image and impairments (O'Sullivan, 2014b).

Thalamic Pain Syndrome

Thalamic pain syndrome can occur following an infarction or hemorrhage in the lateral thalamus, the posterior limb of the internal capsule, or the parietal lobe. The patient experiences intolerable burning pain and sensory perseveration. The sensation of the stimulus remains long after the stimulus has been removed or terminated. The patient also perceives the sensation as noxious and exaggerated.

Pusher Syndrome

Patients with CVAs in the right or left posterolateral thalamus may demonstrate *pusher syndrome* (Karnath and Broetz, 2003). The prevalence of this condition is approximately 10% to 16% (Abe et al., 2012). Patients with pusher syndrome actively push and lean toward their hemiplegic side and are at increased risk for balance deficits and falls (Abe et al., 2012). Efforts to passively correct the patient's posture are met with resistance (Roller, 2004). Davies (1985) identified the clinical presentation of patients with this condition as: (1) cervical rotation and lateral flexion to the right; (2) absent or significantly impaired tactile and kinesthetic awareness; (3) visual deficits; (4) truncal asymmetries; (5) increased weight bearing on the left during sitting activities, with resistance encountered when attempts are made to achieve an equal weight-bearing position; and (6) difficulties with transfers as the patient pushes backward and away with the right (uninvolved) extremities. Patients with pusher syndrome frequently report sitting or standing upright when in fact they are "actually tilted 18 degrees to the side of the brain lesion" (Karnath and Broetz, 2003). Patients experience a mismatch between their perception of vertical and the body's orientation to the environment and gravity (Karnath and Broetz, 2003). Specific treatment interventions for patients with this syndrome are discussed later in the chapter.

Summary

In summary, although a description of the different stroke syndromes and a classification system for right hemisphere and left hemisphere disorders has been provided, each patient may have different clinical signs and symptoms. Patients should be viewed and treated as individuals and should not be classified on the basis of which side of the body is exhibiting impairments. The information presented regarding the functional differences between the right and left hemispheres

is meant to serve only as a guide or framework in understanding possible patient impairments and selecting appropriate treatment interventions.

Clinical findings: Patient impairments

A patient who has sustained a CVA may have a number of different impairments. The extent to which these impairments interfere with the patient's functional capabilities depends on the nature of the stroke, the amount of nervous tissue damaged, and the potential for neuroplastic changes. In addition, any preexisting medical conditions, the amount of family support available, and the patient's financial resources may affect the patient's recovery and eventual outcome.

Motor Impairments

One of the primary and most prevalent of all clinical manifestations seen in patients following stroke is the spectrum of motor problems resulting from damage to the motor cortex. Initially, a patient may be in a state of low muscle tone or flaccidity. *Flaccid* muscles lack the ability to generate muscle contractions and to initiate movement. This condition of relative low muscle tone is usually transient, and the patient soon develops characteristic patterns of hypertonicity or spasticity. *Spasticity* is a motor disorder characterized by exaggerated deep tendon reflexes and velocity-dependent increased muscle tone. Clinically, the patient with spasticity has increased resistance to passive stretching of the involved muscle, hyperreflexia of deep tendon reflexes, posturing of the extremities in flexion or extension, cocontraction of muscles, and stereotypical movement patterns called *synergies*.

Spasticity

Theories on the development of spasticity have evolved as research in the area of motor behavior has increased. The classic theory of spasticity development centers around the idea that spasticity develops in response to an upper motor neuron injury. This view of spasticity incorporates a hierarchic view of the nervous system and the development of motor control and movement. Investigators had previously postulated that spasticity developed from hyperexcitability of the monosynaptic stretch reflex. This theory is based on muscle spindle physiology. Increased output from the muscle spindle afferents or sensory receptors controls alpha motor neuron activity in the gray matter of the spinal cord. Uninterrupted activity of the gamma efferent or motor system is thought to account for continuous activation of the afferent system by maintaining the muscle spindle's sensitivity to stretch (Craik, 1991).

Research raises questions regarding the validity of this theory. Investigators have postulated that the stretch reflex is not strong enough to control all alpha motor neuron activity. In today's view of spasticity, hypertonicity or increased muscle tone is thought to develop from abnormal processing of the afferent (sensory) input after the stimulus reaches the spinal cord. In addition, investigators have proposed that a defect in inhibitory modulation from higher cortical centers and spinal interneuron pathways leads to the presence of spasticity in many patients (Craik, 1991).

Assessment of Tone

The Modified Ashworth Scale is a clinical tool used to assess the presence of abnormal tone. A 0 to 4 ordinal scale is used. A score of 0 equates to no increase in muscle tone, whereas a score of 4 indicates that the affected area is fixed in either flexion or extension (Bohannon and Smith, 1987). Table 10-2 describes each of the grades.

Table 10-2

Modified Ashworth Scale for Grading Spasticity

Grade	Description
0	No increase in muscle tone
1	Slight increase in muscle tone, manifested by a catch and release or by minimal resistance at the end of the range of motion when the affected part is moved in flexion or extension
1 +	Slight increase in muscle tone, manifested by a catch, followed by minimal resistance throughout the remainder (less than half) of the range of motion
2	More marked increase in muscle tone through most of the range of motion, but affected part easily moved
3	Considerable increase in muscle tone, passive movement difficult
4	Affected part rigid in flexion or extension

From Bohannon RW, Smith MB: Interrater reliability of a modified Ashworth scale of muscle spasticity. *Phys Ther* 67:207, 1987. With permission of the APTA.

Brunnstrom Stages of Motor Recovery

Signe Brunnstrom did much to describe the characteristic stages of motor recovery following stroke. Brunnstrom observed many patients who had sustained CVAs and noted a characteristic pattern of muscle tone development and recovery (Sawner and LaVigne, 1992). Table 10-3 gives a description of each of the Brunnstrom stages of recovery.

Table 10-3
Brunnstrom Stages of Recovery

Stage	Description
I. Flaccidity	No voluntary or reflex activity is present in the involved extremity.
II. Spasticity begins to develop	Synergy patterns begin to develop. Some of the synergy components may appear as associated reactions.
III. Spasticity increases and reaches its peak	Movement synergies of the involved upper or lower extremity can be performed voluntarily.
IV. Spasticity begins to decrease	Deviation from the movement synergies is possible. Limited combinations of movement may be evident.
V. Spasticity continues to decrease	Movement synergies are less dominant. More complex combinations of movements are possible.
VI. Spasticity is essentially absent	Isolated movements and combinations of movements are evident. Coordination deficits may be present with rapid activities.
VII. Return to normal function	Return of fine motor skills.

(Modified from Sawner KA, LaVigne JM: *Brunnstrom's movement therapy in hemiplegia*, ed 2. Philadelphia, 1992, JB Lippincott, pp. 41–42.)

Brunnstrom reported that, initially, the patient experienced flaccidity in involved muscle groups. As the patient recovered, flaccidity was replaced by the development of spasticity. Spasticity increased and reached its peak in stage 3. At this time, the patient's attempts at voluntary movements were limited to the flexion and extension synergies (Sawner and LaVigne, 1992).

A *synergy* is defined as a group of muscles that work together to provide patterns of movements. These patterns initially occur in flexion and extension combinations. The movements produced are stereotypical and primitive and can be elicited either as a reflexive or a volitional movement response. Flexion and extension synergies have been described for both the upper and lower extremities (Sawner and LaVigne, 1992). Table 10-4 provides a description of the upper extremity and lower extremity flexion and extension patterns.

Table 10-4
Components of the Brunnstrom Synergy Patterns

	Flexion	Extension
Upper extremity	Scapular retraction and/or elevation, shoulder external rotation, shoulder abduction to 90 degrees, elbow flexion, forearm supination, wrist and finger flexion	Scapular protraction, shoulder internal rotation, shoulder adduction, full elbow extension, forearm pronation, wrist flexion with finger flexion
Lower extremity	Hip flexion, abduction and external rotation, knee flexion to approximately 90 degrees, ankle dorsiflexion and inversion, toe extension	Hip extension, adduction, and internal rotation, knee extension, ankle plantar flexion and inversion, toe flexion

In the later stages of Brunnstrom's recovery patterns, spasticity begins to decline, and the patient's movements are dominated to a lesser degree by the synergy patterns. An individual may be able to combine movements in both the flexion and extension patterns and may have increased voluntary control of movement combinations. In the final stages of recovery, spasticity is essentially absent, and isolated movement is possible. The patient is able to control speed and direction of movement with increased ease, and fine motor skills improve. Brunnstrom reported that a patient passes through all of the stages and that a stage would not be skipped. However, variability in a patient's clinical presentation at any stage is possible. The patient may, in fact, move through a stage quickly, and thus observation of its typical characteristics may be difficult. Brunnstrom also postulated that a patient could plateau at any stage, and consequently full recovery would not be possible (Sawner and LaVigne, 1992). As mentioned previously, each patient is unique and progresses through the stages at different rates. Therefore, a patient's long-term prognosis and functional outcome are difficult to predict in the early stages of rehabilitation.

Development of Spasticity in Proximal Muscle Groups

Spasticity often initially develops in the muscles of the shoulder and pelvic girdles. At the shoulder, one can see adduction and downward rotation of the scapula. The scapular depressors, as well as the shoulder adductors and internal rotators, can develop muscle stiffness. As upper extremity muscle tone increases, tone in the biceps, forearm pronators, and wrist and finger flexors may also become evident. This pattern of tone produces the characteristic upper extremity posturing seen in patients who have sustained CVAs. Figure 10-1 illustrates this positioning.

FIGURE 10-1 Characteristic upper extremity posturing seen in patients following cerebrovascular accident. The patient has increased tone in the shoulder adductors and internal rotators, biceps, forearm pronators, and wrist and finger flexors. (From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation*, New York, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.)

Anterior tilting or hiking is common at the pelvis. The pelvic retractors, hip adductors, and hip internal rotators can develop spasticity. In addition, the knee extensors or quadriceps, the ankle plantar flexors and supinators, and the toe flexors can become hypertonic. This pattern of abnormal tone development produces the characteristic lower extremity extensor positioning seen in many patients. As the patient attempts to initiate movement, the presence of abnormal tone and synergies can lead to the characteristic flexion and extension movement patterns.

Other Motor Impairments

Additional motor problems can become evident in this patient population. The impact of muscle weakness or paresis is receiving new emphasis in the literature. Approximately 75% to 80% of patients who have a stroke are often unable to generate normal levels of muscular force, tension, or torque to initiate and control functional movements or to maintain a posture. After a stroke, patients may have difficulty in maintaining a constant level of force production to control movements of the extremities (Ryerson, 2013). Atrophy of remaining muscle fibers on the involved side, abnormal recruitment and timing of muscle activation, and motor units that are more easily fatigued are common findings (Craik, 1991; Light, 1991). One additional point that must be made is that a stroke does not affect only one side of the body. The muscles on the uninvolved side can also exhibit mild weakness following the injury (O'Sullivan, 2014b; Craik, 1991).

Motor Planning Deficits

Motor problems may be present in patients who have sustained a stroke. These problems are most frequently noted in patients with involvement of the left hemisphere because of its primary role in the sequencing of movements. Patients can exhibit difficulty in performing purposeful movements,

although no sensory or motor impairments are noted. This condition is called *apraxia*. Patients with apraxia may have the motor capabilities to perform a specific movement combination such as a sit-to-stand transfer, but they are unable to determine or remember the steps necessary to achieve this movement goal. Apraxia may also be evident when the patient performs self-care activities. For example, the patient may not remember how to don a piece of clothing or what to do with an item, such as a comb or a brush.

Sensory Impairments

Sensory deficits can also cause the patient many difficulties. Patients who sustain strokes of the parietal lobe may demonstrate sensory dysfunction. Individuals may lose their tactile (touch) or proprioceptive capabilities. *Proprioception* is defined as the patient's ability to perceive position sense. The way in which the physical therapist (PT) evaluates a patient's proprioception is to move a patient's joint quickly in a certain direction. Up-and-down movement is most frequently used. With eyes closed, the patient is asked to identify the position of the joint. Accuracy and speed of response are used to determine whether proprioception is intact, impaired, or absent. Many patients with CVAs tend to have partial impairments, as opposed to total loss of sensory integrity. These sensory impairments may also affect the patient's ability to control and coordinate movement. Patients may lose the ability to perceive an upright posture during sitting and standing, which can lead to difficulties in weight shifting, sequencing motor responses, and eye-hand coordination.

Communication Impairments

Infarcts in the frontal and temporal lobes of the brain can lead to specific communication deficits. Approximately 30% of all patients with CVAs have some degree of language dysfunction (Kelly-Hayes et al., 1998). *Aphasia* is an acquired communication disorder caused by brain damage and is characterized by impairment of language comprehension, oral expression, and use of symbols to communicate ideas (Roth and Harvey, 1996). Several different types of aphasia are recognized. Patients can have an expressive disorder called *Broca aphasia*, a receptive aphasia known as *Wernicke aphasia*, or a combination of both expressive and receptive deficits termed *global aphasia*. Patients with expressive aphasia have difficulty speaking. These patients know what they want to say but are unable to form the words to communicate their thoughts. Individuals with expressive aphasia frequently become frustrated when they are unable to articulate their wants and needs verbally. Patients with receptive aphasia do not understand the spoken word. When attempting to communicate with a patient with receptive aphasia, the patient will not understand what you are trying to say or may misinterpret your words. Working with these patients can be challenging because you will not be able to rely on verbal instructions to direct activity performance. Patients with global aphasia have severe expressive and receptive dysfunction. These individuals do not comprehend spoken words and are unable to communicate their needs, and frequently, they also have difficulties understanding gestures that have communicative meaning. Developing a rapport with the patient and trying to establish some method of communicating basic needs can be challenging. Time and patience are needed so the patient will begin to trust the therapist and for a therapeutic relationship to develop. The assistant should also work with the speech-language pathologist in implementing the communication system developed for the patient.

Other Communication Deficits

Other communicative deficits include dysarthria and emotional lability. *Dysarthria* is a condition in which the patient has difficulty articulating words as a result of weakness and inability to control the muscles associated with speech production. *Emotional lability* may be evident in patients who have sustained right hemispheric infarcts. These patients exhibit difficulties in controlling emotions. A patient who is emotionally labile may cry or laugh inappropriately without cause. The patient is often unable to inhibit the emergence of these spontaneous emotions.

Orofacial Deficits

A patient's orofacial function may also be affected by the stroke. These deficits are often associated with cranial nerve involvement, which can occur with CVAs of the brain stem or midbrain region.

Frequent findings include facial asymmetries resulting from weakness in the facial muscles, muscles of the eye, and muscles around the mouth. Weakness of the facial muscles can affect the patient's ability to interact with individuals in the environment. The inability to smile, frown, or initiate other facial expressions such as anger or displeasure affects a person's ability to use body language as an adjunct to verbal communication. Inadequate lip closure can lead to problems with control of saliva and fluids during swallowing. Weakness of the muscles that innervate the eye can lead to drooping or ptosis of the eyelid. The patient may also be unable to close the eye to assist with lubrication.

Orofacial dysfunction can be manifested in a patient's difficulty or inability to swallow foods and liquids, also known as *dysphagia*. Dysphagia can result from muscle weakness, inadequate motor planning capabilities, and poor tongue control. Patients with dysphagia may be unable to move food from the front of the mouth to the sides for chewing and back to the midline for swallowing. Many of these patients may pocket food within their oral cavities.

A final problem seen in patients with orofacial dysfunction is poor coordination between eating and breathing. Such difficulty can lead to poor nutrition and possible aspiration of food into the lungs. Aspiration frequently leads to pneumonia and other respiratory complications, including atelectasis (collapse of a part of the lung tissue).

Respiratory Impairments

Lung expansion may be decreased following a CVA because of decreased control of the muscles of respiration, specifically the diaphragm. A stroke can affect the diaphragm just as it can affect any other muscle in the body. Hemiparesis of the diaphragm or external intercostal muscles may be apparent and can affect the individual's ability to expand the lungs. Poor lung expansion leads to a decrease in an individual's vital capacity. Therefore, to meet the oxygen demands of the body, the patient is forced to increase respiration rate. Pulmonary complications including pneumonia and atelectasis may develop if shallow breathing continues. Lack of lateral basilar expansion can also lead to the foregoing pulmonary complications. Cough effectiveness may be impaired secondary to weakness in the abdominal muscles.

Lung volumes are decreased by approximately 30% to 40% in patients who have had a stroke (Watchie, 1994). The capacity for exercise (peak oxygen consumption, VO2 peak) is decreased after acute stroke and is 60% lower than that of the general population (Tang and Eng, 2014; Billinger et al., 2012). Impairments in the neuromuscular, respiratory, and cardiovascular systems leads to a decreased tolerance to exercise (Billinger et al., 2012). Oxygen consumption is increased, leading to muscle and cardiopulmonary fatigue. Fatigue is a major complaint among patients with CVAs. Patients frequently ask to rest or stay in bed instead of participating in physical therapy. Although it is necessary to monitor the patient's cardiovascular and pulmonary responses, the patient and family should be advised that participation in exercise and functional activities will improve the patient's tolerance for activity and that a certain level of intensity is needed to induce neural plasticity (Hornby et al., 2011).

Reflex Activity

Primitive spinal and brain stem reflexes may appear following a stroke. Both types of reflexes are present at birth or during infancy and become integrated by the CNS as the child ages, usually within the first 4 months of life. Once integrated, these reflexes are not present in their pure forms. They do, however, continue to exist as underlying components of volitional movement patterns. In adults, it is possible for these primitive reflexes to reappear when the CNS is damaged or if an individual is experiencing extreme fatigue or stress.

Spinal Reflexes

Spinal level reflexes occur at the spinal cord level and result in overt movement of a limb. Frequently, these reflexes are facilitated by a noxious stimulus experienced by the patient. Table 10-5 provides a list of the most common spinal level reflexes seen in patients with CNS dysfunction. Family members must be educated regarding the true meaning of these reflexes. The presence of a spinal level reflex, such as a flexor withdrawal, does not indicate that the patient is demonstrating volitional (voluntary) movement. These reflexive movements often occur when a patient is

unresponsive. For example, if a caregiver inadvertently stimulates the patient's foot, the patient may flex the involved lower extremity. This does not, however, mean that the patient is exhibiting conscious control of the limb.

Table 10-5
Spinal Reflexes

Reflex	Stimulus	Response
Flexor withdrawal	Noxious stimulus applied to the bottom of the foot	Toe extension, ankle dorsiflexion, hip and knee flexion
Cross extension	Noxious stimulus applied to the ball of the foot with the lower extremity prepositioned in extension	Flexion and then extension of the opposite lower extremity
Startle	Sudden loud noise	Extension and abduction of the upper extremities
Grasp	Pressure applied to the ball of the foot or the palm of the hand	Flexion of the toes or fingers, respectively

Deep Tendon Reflexes

Patients who have experienced a stroke may also have altered *deep tendon reflexes*. Deep tendon reflexes (DTRs) are stretch reflexes that can be elicited by striking the muscle tendon with a reflex hammer or the examiner's fingers. Common DTRs assessed include the biceps, brachioradialis, triceps, quadriceps/patellar, and gastrocnemius soleus/Achilles. The patient's response to the tendon tap is assessed on a 0 to 4 + scale: 0, no response; 1 +, minimal response; 2 +, normal response; 3 +, hyperactive response; and 4 +, clonus. Examination and evaluation of the patient's DTRs by the physical therapist (PT) gives valuable information about the presence of abnormal muscle tone. Flaccidity or hypotonia may cause the reflexes to be hypoactive or absent. Spasticity or hypertonia may cause deep tendon reflexes to be exaggerated or hyperactive. Clonus may also be present when the muscle tendon is tapped or stretched and is described as alternating periods of muscle contractions and relaxation. Clonus is frequently seen in the ankle or wrist and occurs in response to a quick stretch.

Brain Stem Reflexes

Brain stem reflexes occur and are integrated at the level of the midbrain. As with all primitive reflexes, these reflexes may initially be present in infants but become integrated during the first year of life. In adult patients with CNS disorders, brain stem level reflexes may become apparent during times of significant stress or fatigue. Brain stem reflexes are primitive reflexes that alter the posture or position of a part of the body. These reflexes frequently serve to alter or affect muscle tone. Table 10-6 lists examples of common brain stem level reflexes.

Table 10-6
Brain Stem Reflexes

Reflex	Response
Symmetric tonic neck reflex	Flexion of the neck results in flexion of the arms and extension of the legs. Extension of the neck results in extension of the arms and flexion of the legs.
Asymmetric tonic neck reflex	Rotation of the head to the left causes extension of the left arm and leg and flexion of the right arm and leg. Rotation of the head to the right causes extension of the right arm and leg and flexion of the left arm and leg.
Tonic labyrinthine reflex	Prone position facilitates flexion. Supine position facilitates extension.
Tonic thumb reflex	When the involved extremity is elevated above the horizontal, thumb extension is facilitated with forearm supination.

Associated Reactions

Associated reactions are automatic movements that occur as a result of active or resisted movement in another part of the body. Table 10-7 describes common associated reactions seen in patients with hemiplegia. As stated previously, associated reactions can be misinterpreted as voluntary movement by either the patient or the patient's family member. All individuals interacting with the patient should recognize the meaning of a patient's involuntary movements.

Table 10-7
Associated Reactions

Reaction	Response
Souques phenomenon	Flexion of the involved arm above 150 degrees facilitates extension and abduction of the fingers.
Raimiste phenomenon	Resistance applied to hip abduction or adduction of the uninvolved lower extremity causes a similar response in the involved lower extremity.
Homolateral limb synkinesis	Flexion of the involved upper extremity elicits flexion of the involved lower extremity.

Bowel and Bladder Dysfunction

Patients who have had a CVA may also exhibit bowel and bladder dysfunction. *Incontinence* or the inability to control urination may be initially seen secondary to muscle paralysis or inadequate sensory stimulation to the bladder. For adults, incontinence can be extremely problematic and embarrassing. Early weight bearing through either bridging or standing activities can assist the patient with regaining bladder control. Movement and activity assists in the regulation of bowel function. Attention to the patient's bowel and bladder program by all members of the rehabilitation team can be beneficial in assisting the patient to relearn these important activities of daily living.

Functional Limitations

Patients often exhibit functional limitations after CVA. Individuals may lose the ability to perform activities of daily living, such as feeding or bathing, or may be unable to roll over in bed, sit up, or walk. Functional limitations are the result of motor and/or sensory deficits caused by the stroke. Patients may lack the volitional movement needed in the involved upper extremity to wash their faces or comb their hair. The presence of spasticity in the involved lower extremity may limit the patient's ability to ambulate.

Great emphasis is placed on function in current physical therapy practice. The purpose of physical therapy is to help patients achieve their optimal level of physical functioning and to improve their quality of life. Treatment goals and intervention plans must be functionally relevant. For example, if a patient who has had a CVA has decreased active dorsiflexion in the involved ankle, an appropriate goal would be for the patient to demonstrate dorsiflexion during the heelstrike phase of the gait cycle 50% of the time with verbal cueing while ambulating a certain distance on level surfaces. The goal of improving active dorsiflexion has been incorporated into performance of a functional task.

Treatment planning

When the primary PT develops the patient's short- and long-term treatment goals and the plan of care, he or she must do so in consultation with the patient and the patient's family. The patient must be actively engaged in the planning and delivery of his or her care. Information must be gathered regarding the patient's previous level of function, the patient's goals for resuming those activities, and the patient's goals regarding the rehabilitation process. If a patient did not, for example, perform housework or gardening before his or her stroke, it would not be realistic to expect that the patient would perform those tasks after such an event. The PT should select interventions that are meaningful to the patient, to assist the patient in returning to his or her previous level of function.

Functional Assessments

With increased emphasis placed on the achievement of functional outcomes, many assessment tools have been developed to quantify a patient's recovery or progress and the effectiveness of therapeutic interventions. Although a detailed description of all of the functional assessment tools available is outside the scope of this text, several of the tools most frequently used in the examination and treatment of patients with neurologic deficits are discussed here.

The Functional Independence Measure (FIM) was developed in the early 1980s in response to the need for a national data system that could be used to differentiate among various clinical services and to establish the efficacy of services provided. The FIM measures physical, psychological, and social functions as well as the patient's burden of care (how much assistance is needed to care for the individual). Specific items tested in the FIM include self-care, transfers, locomotion, communication, and cognition. A 7-point ordinal scale is used to score the various categories. A score of 1 equates to complete dependence, and a score of 7 indicates that a patient is completely independent during performance of the activity. Scores range from 18 to 126. The FIM is available for purchase through the Uniform Data System for Medical Rehabilitation (UDSMR) and requires evaluator training before instrument administration (Rehabilitation Measures Database [RMD], 2013; UDSMR, 2012). The primary PT is responsible for completing the FIM at the time of the patient's initial examination and also at the patient's discharge. The physical therapist assistant (PTA) may score the FIM at other intervals to provide the rehabilitation team with updates regarding the patient's progress.

The Fugl-Meyer Assessment is one of the most widely used instruments to quantify motor functioning following stroke. In addition, the tool can be used to analyze the efficacy of treatment interventions provided. The Fugl-Meyer Assessment evaluates passive joint range of motion, pain, light touch, proprioception, motor function, and balance. The tool is easy to administer and can be completed in 20 to 30 minutes (Baldrige, 1993; Duncan and Badke, 1987). Limitations of the instrument include increased weighting of upper extremity scores, limited evaluation of finger function, and the availability of better outcomes measures to assess balance (RMD, 2010). The tool does, however, remain a highly recommended clinical and research assessment instrument which measures motor impairment in individuals poststroke.

Goals and Expectations

If a setting is not using a standardized functional assessment, it is still imperative that the PT develop functional goals and expectations for the patient. Interventions that address bed mobility, transfers, ambulation, stair negotiation, wheelchair propulsion (if appropriate), and safety issues should all be included in the plan of care. Patient and family education is also necessary. If it appears that the patient may not be able to resume his or her previous level of function, instruction of the patient's family will become even more important. A more detailed discussion of patient and family education occurs in the section of this chapter on discharge planning.

Complications seen following stroke

Abnormal Posturing and Positioning

Patients can develop certain complications following CVAs. As stated previously, spasticity often develops in certain muscle groups and can lead to the development of contractures and deformities. Patients may have flexion contractures of the elbow, wrist, and fingers as a result of spasticity in the flexor muscle groups. This condition can lead to the characteristic upper extremity posturing often seen in patients who have had a stroke. Hygiene and other self-care activities can become extremely difficult in the presence of wrist and finger contractures. The patient may not be able to open the fist to wash the palm of the hand or to perform nail care.

Spasticity in the gastrocnemius-soleus complex can lead to plantar flexion contractures of the involved ankle. Ankle contractures make ambulation and transfers difficult by preventing the patient from bearing weight on a flat or plantigrade foot and impedes foot clearance during the swing phase of the gait cycle. Several oral medications are available for patients with significant spasticity, including baclofen (Lioresil), tizanidine (Zanaflex), and dantrolene sodium (Dantrium) (Ibrahim et al., 2003; Teasell and Hussein, 2014). A major disadvantage associated with several of these medications is that they decrease CNS activity and promote lethargy (Ryerson, 2013). These are undesirable side effects for patients with neurologic dysfunction. Additionally, the medications do not ameliorate the underlying problem. Instead, they provide a temporary change in the level of muscle tone.

Of the medications discussed here, dantrolene sodium is less likely to cause lethargy or cognitive changes. The drug intervenes at the muscular level and decreases the force production of muscle units. Side effects include hepatotoxicity and seizures (Ryerson, 2013).

Other pharmacologic interventions are available to minimize the effects of spasticity. Botulinum toxin type A can be injected directly into a spastic muscle and produces selective muscle weakness by blocking the release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction (Ryerson, 2013). The effects of an injection can last from 3 to 6 months, and side effects are limited. Intrathecal baclofen is administered via a subcutaneous pump. The pump is implanted within the abdominal cavity and a catheter administers the baclofen into the subarachnoid space. The medication acts directly on spastic muscles (Ryerson, 2013).

In some situations, the presence of spasticity is advantageous for the patient. Extensor tone in the lower extremity may assist a patient to bear weight on the involved lower extremity and may provide some lower extremity stability during ambulation. Increased tone around the shoulder joint may limit the patient's predisposition for shoulder subluxation. Clinicians are advised to determine if the patient is using abnormal muscle tone to improve function before requesting pharmacologic or surgical interventions to minimize its effects.

Shoulder pain is extremely common in patients with hemiplegia. Decreased muscle tone and muscle weakness can reduce the support provided by the rotator cuff muscles, specifically the supraspinatus. Consequently, the joint capsule and the ligaments of the shoulder become the sole supporting structures for the head of the humerus within the glenoid fossa. In time, the effects of this weakness combined with the effects of gravity can lead to shoulder subluxation.

Spasticity or increased muscle tone can also lead to shoulder dysfunction and pain. Spasticity within the scapular depressors, retractors, and downward rotators contributes to poor scapular position and joint alignment. Abnormal positioning of the scapula causes secondary tightness in the ligaments, tendons, and joint capsule of the shoulder and can lead to a decrease in the patient's ability to move the involved shoulder. Shoulder pain and loss of upper extremity function can develop as a consequence of changes in the orientation of anatomic structures within the shoulder girdle.

Complex Regional Pain Syndrome

Several terms, including *shoulder/hand syndrome* and *reflex sympathetic dystrophy,* have been used to describe the condition now known as *complex regional pain syndrome* (CRPS). The etiology of the condition is unknown although it is thought to result from an upper motor neuron injury. CRPS is characterized by pain, autonomic nervous system signs and symptoms, edema, movement disorders, weakness, and atrophy. Three distinct stages have been identified. Stage I begins

immediately after the injury and can last for 3 to 6 months. Signs and symptoms of stage I include burning and aching pain; stiffness and loss of range of motion; edema; warm, red skin; and accelerated hair and nail growth. Stage II has an onset between 3 and 6 months and a duration of 6 months. This stage is characterized by continuous, aching, and burning pain; edema leading to joint stiffness; thin, brittle nails; and thin, cool skin. Osteoporosis may also be evident on x-ray. Stage III begins 6 to 12 months after the onset and may last for years. Patients in this stage experience irreversible, atrophic skin changes, as well as contractures. Management of the condition is based on prevention through proper positioning and handling, and the encouragement of active functional use of the hand. In addition, elevation, compression, loading the limb through weight bearing, and pharmacologic interventions including analgesics, steroids, antidepressants, and opioids may be used to treat this condition (O'Sullivan, 2014b; NIH, 2014; Smith, 2003).

Additional Complications

Other complications seen after CVA include the following: (1) increased risk of trauma and falls because of impaired upper extremity and lower extremity protective reactions; (2) increased risk of thrombophlebitis secondary to decreased efficiency of the calf skeletal muscle pump; (3) pain in specific muscles and joints; and (4) depression. It is estimated that approximately one third of stroke survivors experience feelings of depression, anxiety, fear, frustration, and helplessness (Gordon et al., 2004; National Stroke Association, 2014a). A review of the physical therapy interventions used to decrease the risk of some of these complications is provided later in this chapter.

Acute care setting

Depending on the severity of the individual's stroke, the PTA may or may not be involved in the patient's treatment in the acute care setting. Average lengths of hospitalization following a CVA are approximately 2 to 4 days. In certain geographic areas, patients may not be admitted to an acute care facility unless a strong medical need exists. Patients who have sustained uncomplicated CVAs may be evaluated by their physician and instructed to begin outpatient or home-based therapies. Once the patient is medically stable, the physician may determine that it is appropriate for the patient to begin rehabilitation.

Directing interventions to a physical therapist assistant

Following the patient's initial examination, the supervising PT may determine that a patient who has sustained a CVA is an appropriate candidate to share with a PTA. The supervising PT needs to evaluate the patient carefully for the appropriateness of directing specific interventions to a PTA. Factors to consider when using the PTA to provide specific components or selected interventions are outlined in Chapter 1 and include acuteness of the patient's condition, special patient problems (including medical, cognitive, or emotional), and the patient's current response to physical therapy. Before the PTA's initial visit with the patient, the supervising PT should review the patient's examination and evaluative findings with the PTA. In addition, the PT must also discuss with the PTA the patient's plan of care and the short- and long-term treatment goals. Any precautions, contraindications, or special instructions should also be provided (American Physical Therapy Association [APTA], 2012).

A discussion of the patient's discharge plans should begin at the time of the initial examination. As lengths of stay have decreased, it has become necessary to begin planning of discharge the first time the patient is seen. The supervising PT's responsibility is to begin the discharge planning process. Although state practice acts do not prohibit a PTA from engaging in the planning and preparation for the patient's discharge, the guidelines of the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) regarding direction and supervision of PTAs state that it is the responsibility of the supervising PT to initiate and plan for the patient's discharge from the treatment facility. This includes completion of the discharge summary (APTA, 2012).

With input from the supervising PT, the PTA may find himself or herself responsible for providing many of the patient's treatment interventions. Requirements for contact with the primary therapist differ from state to state. The PTA is advised to review the state practice act and to adhere to any specific requirements regarding therapist supervision or patient reevaluations that may be required by state jurisdictions.

Early physical therapy intervention

Cardiopulmonary Retraining

An area of physical therapy practice that often receives limited attention in patients who have sustained strokes is cardiopulmonary retraining. Individuals who have had strokes frequently have significant cardiac and pulmonary medical histories. Previous myocardial infarctions, hypertension, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease are common findings in this patient population. In addition, diaphragmatic weakness, generalized deconditioning, decreased endurance, and fatigue may affect the patient's ability to participate in rehabilitation by decreasing pulmonary capabilities.

Diaphragmatic Strengthening

The diaphragm is a muscle and may respond to therapeutic techniques designed to improve strength and endurance. Diaphragmatic strengthening is accomplished by having the PTA place one hand on the patient's upper abdomen. Initially, the patient is directed to try, during inspiration, to lift the weight of the clinician's hand. A semireclined position may be the easiest for the patient because the patient will not have to contract the diaphragm directly against gravity. A quick stretch applied to the diaphragm before an active inspiratory movement can facilitate a stronger contraction. As the patient performs these exercises with increased ease, the clinician can make the exercise more challenging by increasing manual resistance, changing the patient's position, or incorporating the performance of a functional task during the exercise. Expansion of the lateral lobes of the lungs should also be practiced. The PTA places his or her hands on the patient's lateral lower rib cage and encourages the patient to breathe out against the manual pressure. Initially, the weight of the PTA's hands may be sufficient resistance. As the patient progresses, the PTA may increase resistance during this activity.

Other Cardiopulmonary Activities

Other activities that can be performed to improve cardiopulmonary functioning include deep-breathing exercises, the use of incentive spirometers, and stretching activities to the lateral trunk, especially in the presence of lateral chest wall tightness. Breathing exercises improve the efficiency of air intake. Breath support is important as the patient tries to perform activities and talk at the same time. The patient's speech-language pathologist can assist the patient in coordinating breathing during speaking and eating activities. As the patient progresses in rehabilitation, the PTA will need to be cognizant of the patient's cardiopulmonary function and medications. For patients with complicated medical histories, it may be necessary to monitor vital signs including having the patient report his or her rate of perceived exertion during activity performance. It is important to check with the primary PT to determine whether this type of monitoring is appropriate. All patients should be instructed to avoid breath holding during activity performance because this phenomenon is known to increase blood pressure.

Positioning

One of the most important components of physical therapy interventions is the proper positioning of the patient. Positioning should be started immediately following the patient's stroke and should continue throughout all phases of the patient's recovery. Positioning is the responsibility of the patient and all members of the rehabilitation team. Proper positioning out of the characteristic synergy patterns assists in stimulating motor function, increases sensory awareness, improves respiratory and oromotor functions, and assists in maintaining normal range of motion in the neck, trunk, and extremities. Additionally, common musculoskeletal deformities and the potential for pressure ulcers can be minimized with proper patient positioning.

The patient should be alternately positioned on the back, the involved side, and the uninvolved side. Areas of the patient's body that require special attention and should be addressed first are the shoulder and pelvic girdles. The rhomboids and gluteus maximus muscles frequently become tight and contribute to retraction at the shoulder and pelvic girdles. Therefore, both the shoulder and pelvis should be positioned in slight protraction to minimize the effects of muscle spasticity and tightness.

Supine Positioning

When the patient is in the supine position, the PTA will want to place small towel rolls (approximately 1.5 inches thick) underneath the patient's scapula and pelvis on the involved side to promote protraction. The towels should encompass approximately two thirds of the bony structures. (The rolls should not extend all the way to the vertebral column.) Care must be taken to avoid placing too much toweling under the scapula and pelvis because this will cause excessive rotation and asymmetry. The involved upper extremity should be externally rotated, abducted approximately 30 degrees, and extended with the forearm supinated. In addition, a neutral or slightly extended wrist position with finger extension and thumb abduction is desirable. Placement of a pillow under the involved upper extremity assists in maintaining this position and can help with venous return.

Pelvic protraction, coupled with hip and knee flexion and ankle dorsiflexion, is the preferred position for the lower extremity. A pillow can be placed under the patient's leg to help maintain this posture. Intervention 10-1 illustrates supine positioning for the patient with hemiplegia. Positioning the patient in the supine position as described previously is beneficial because it counteracts the strong flexion and extension synergies that develop in the upper extremity and lower extremity, respectively.

Intervention 10-1

Supine Positioning

Protraction of the scapula, external rotation of the shoulder, and elbow extension are emphasized

in the upper extremity. Pelvic protraction with slight hip and knee flexion is used to decrease extensor tone in the lower extremity.

In addition to the emphasis placed on the shoulder and hip, the clinician must also be aware of the position of the patient's head and neck. Often, in an effort to make the patient more comfortable, family members place extra pillows under the patient's head. This type of positioning promotes cervical flexion and can accentuate forward head posturing. A single pillow under the neck is sufficient unless a patient's medical condition warrants a more elevated neck and upper trunk position. The patient should also be encouraged to look toward the involved side to enhance visual awareness.

Side-Lying Positioning

As stated previously, positioning the patient on both sides should be incorporated. When the patient is lying on the uninvolved side, the patient's trunk should be straight, the involved upper extremity should be protracted on a pillow, the patient's elbow should be extended, and the forearm should be in a neutral position. The patient's wrist should also be in a neutral or slightly extended position, and the fingers should be relaxed. The lower extremity should be positioned with the pelvis protracted, the hip and knee flexed, and the ankle in dorsiflexion. Intervention 10-2 illustrates positioning of the patient in a side-lying position on the uninvolved side.

Intervention 10-2

Side-Lying Positioning (Uninvolved Side)

Scapular protraction with elbow extension is desired. Hip and knee flexion with ankle dorsiflexion is the preferred position for the lower extremity.

Positioning the patient on the involved side is also beneficial because it increases weight bearing and proprioceptive input into the involved extremities. When preparing the patient for this activity, one should ensure that the patient's involved shoulder is protracted and well forward, thus preventing the patient from lying directly on the shoulder and causing impingement. It is again optimal to have the elbow extended and the forearm supinated. The pelvis should be protracted, with the involved hip extended and the knee slightly flexed. The uninvolved limbs (both the upper and lower extremities) should be supported with pillows.

Minimizing the Development of Abnormal Tone and Patient Neglect

The positioning examples previously described have other variations. Many of the positioning alternatives are the results of clinicians' attempts to minimize the effects of abnormal tone or spasticity that develop in patients who have had CVAs. Positions need to be altered as the patient's mobility improves and tightness develops in various muscle groups. Regardless of the specific positioning techniques employed, special attention must be placed on the achievement of symmetry, midline orientation, and protraction of the scapula and pelvis. Care must also be taken

to avoid the potential development of patient neglect of the involved extremities. Neglect of the involved side of the body and visual field is often present when the right cerebral hemisphere is damaged. This neglect may be described as an impairment of the patient's awareness of body image or body parts. In addition, if the sensory cortex has been injured, the patient may be unable to perceive sensory stimulation applied to the involved extremities. Both of these situations can lead to the patient's inability to attend to the involved side or may cause the patient to neglect the involved upper or lower extremity. Positioning the patient in a side-lying position on the involved side decreases the effects of this neglect by increasing sensory input into the affected joints and muscles and by enhancing visual awareness of that side of the body.

Leaving Items within Reach

When leaving the patient in any of the previously described positions, one should place needed items, such as the nurse's call light, the bedside table, and the telephone, within the patient's reach and visual field. Therapists often instruct families to place commonly used objects on the patient's involved side to increase awareness and attention given to that side of the body. This practice should not, however, be employed if it creates a safety concern for the patient or family members. Families and caregivers alike should be encouraged to interact with the patient on his or her involved side because it reinforces the importance of visually attending to the side of involvement.

Other Considerations

Family members frequently suggest placing a washcloth or soft, squeezable ball in the patient's palm. Many individuals believe that this activity improves hand control. On the contrary, squeezing a soft object often increases tightness (spasticity) in the wrist and finger flexors and facilitates the palmar grasp reflex. A resting hand splint for the involved hand may be beneficial. A footboard placed at the end of the patient's bed can promote a similar type of unwanted response in the lower extremity. Instead of preventing the development of gastrocnemius-soleus tightness, the board provides a constant stimulus for the patient to push against and, in fact, can lead to increased spasticity at the ankle. Family members should be encouraged to bring in a pair of low-top tennis shoes for the patient to wear because they provide a better alternative for positioning the foot.

Early Functional Mobility Tasks

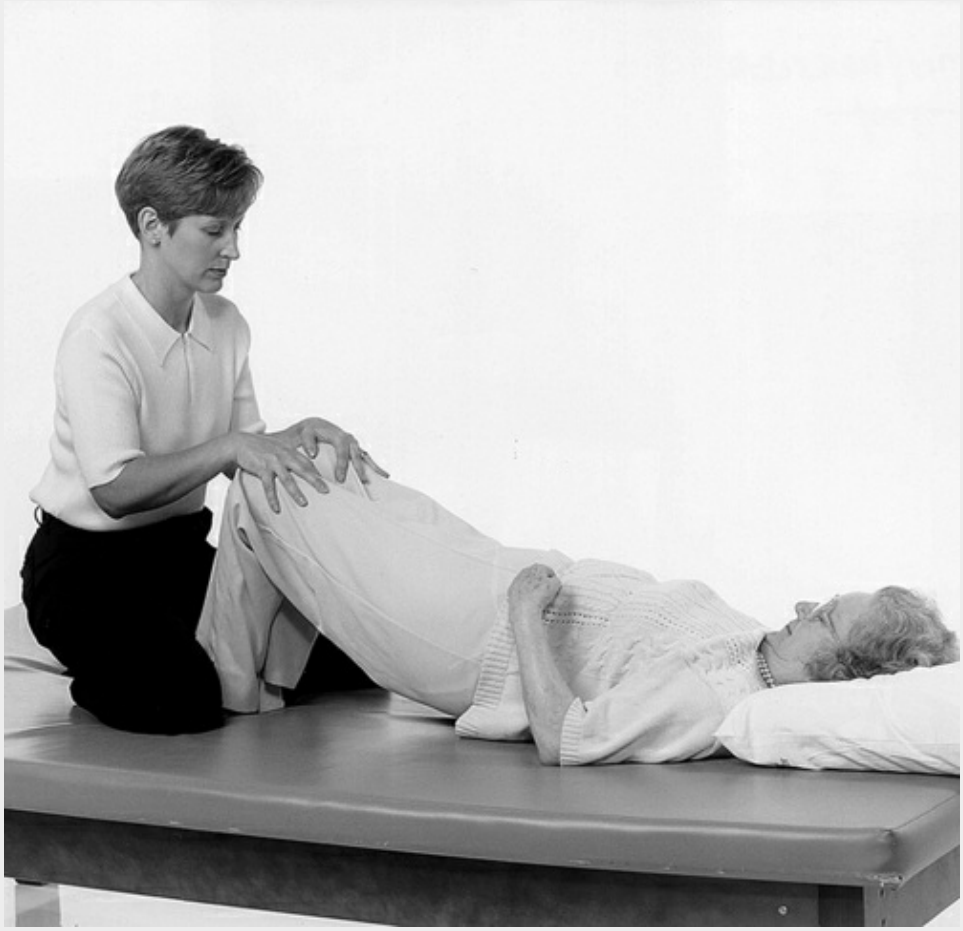
Physical therapy treatment interventions that facilitate movement should be initiated while the patient is still in bed. The hip and shoulder are the areas that should be targeted first because proximal control and stability are essential for distal movement.

Bridging and Bridging with Approximation

Examples of early treatment activities that can be performed with the lower extremities include *bridging* and *bridging with approximation*. *Approximation* or *compression* occurs when joint surfaces are brought together. These compressive forces activate joint receptors and facilitate postural holding responses (O'Sullivan, 2014a). Approximation applied downward through the knee before the patient's attempt to lift the buttocks prepares the foot for early weight bearing. Intervention 10-3 illustrates this technique. Approximation can also be administered superiorly through the hip in preparation for bridging. The PTA must observe the quality of the patient's bridge. Weakness in the gluteus maximus muscle and lack of lower extremity control may be evident. This condition can result in asymmetric lifting and lagging of the involved side. The PTA may need to provide more tactile assistance under the buttocks. Intervention 10-4 shows an PTA helping a patient with this exercise. Intervention 10-5 depicts a PTA helping a patient with bridging by using a draw sheet. Holding on to the draw sheet, the PTA pulls up and back, thus shifting the patient's weight posteriorly. This technique is extremely beneficial for patients who require greater physical assistance with bed mobility activities or when there are notable differences in size between the therapist and the patient.

Intervention 10-3

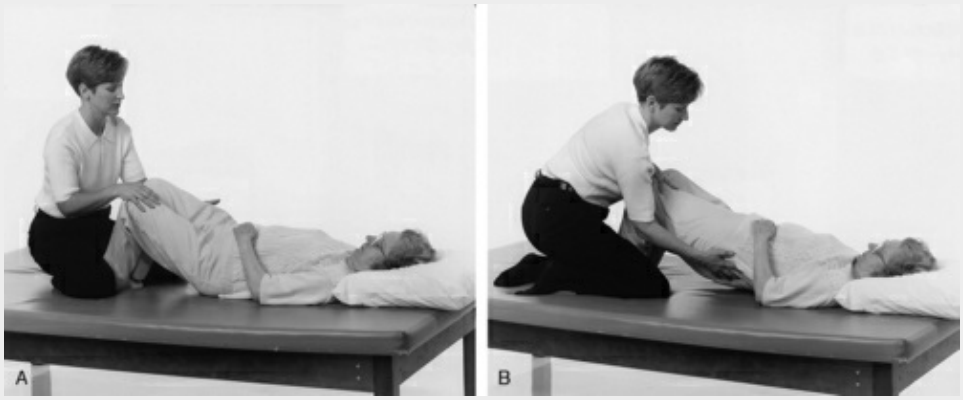
Preparation for Bridging



Gentle approximation is applied downward through the patient's knees in preparation for bridging.

Intervention 10-4

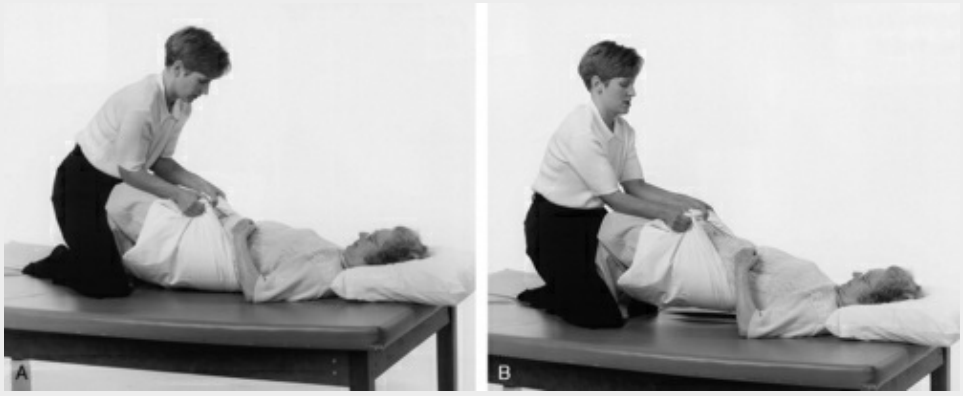
Using Tactile Cues to Assist Bridging



The physical therapist assistant may need to help the patient with bridging. Tactile cues (tapping) performed to the patient's gluteal muscles will assist the patient with lifting her buttocks.

Intervention 10-5

Using a Draw Sheet to Assist Bridging



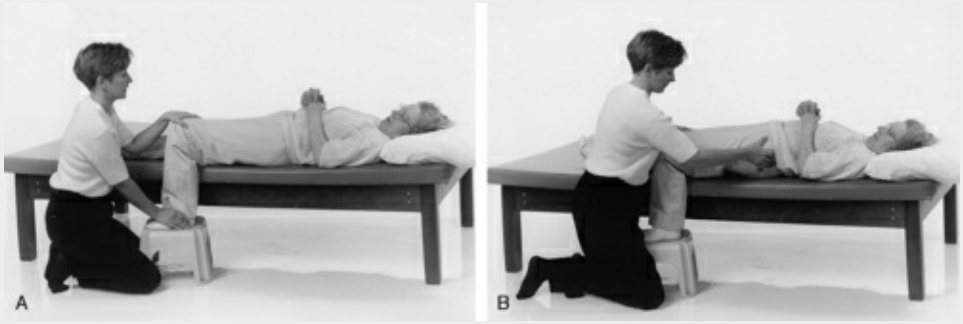
A draw sheet placed under the patient's hips can be used to assist the patient with bridging.
A. The physical therapist assistant places her forearms along the patient's femurs to maintain positioning of the patient's lower extremities and to provide proprioceptive input.
B. The physical therapist assistant uses a posterior weight shift of her body to help lift the patient's buttocks.

Other Bedside Activities

Other bedside exercises include hip extension over the edge of the bed or mat and straight leg raising with the uninvolved lower extremity while the involved lower extremity is flexed. Interventions 10-6 and 10-7 illustrate these exercises. One of the benefits of these exercises is that they facilitate early activation of the gluteus maximus and hamstring muscles. Other early treatment interventions that promote movement and control of the hip musculature include lower trunk rotation, scooting from one side of the bed to the other, and retraining the hip flexors. Lower trunk rotation provides for separation of the trunk and pelvis, assists in promoting general relaxation and facilitates pelvic protraction, which is necessary for functional activities, such as rolling, supine-to-sit transfers, and ambulation. Lower trunk rotation is depicted in Intervention 10-8. Facilitation of active hip flexion can be achieved by passively flexing the patient's hip and knee and then working on active hip flexion within various points in the range of motion (Intervention 10-9). As the patient is able to perform this exercise actively and as the quality of the lower extremity movement improves, the exercise can be advanced, and the patient can begin to work on active hip and knee flexion with voluntary ankle dorsiflexion. A final progression of this exercise is to have the patient reverse the movement and work on hip and knee extension with ankle dorsiflexion. The patient's ability to perform this movement combination demonstrates an ability to combine various components of the lower extremity flexion and extension synergy patterns. Intervention 10-10 shows the PTA using a more distal handhold at the toes to prevent excessive toe flexion and to promote ankle dorsiflexion. It should be remembered that the use of distal joints to guide movement implies that the patient possesses adequate control of the more proximal components.

Intervention 10-6

Hip Extension over the Edge of a Surface



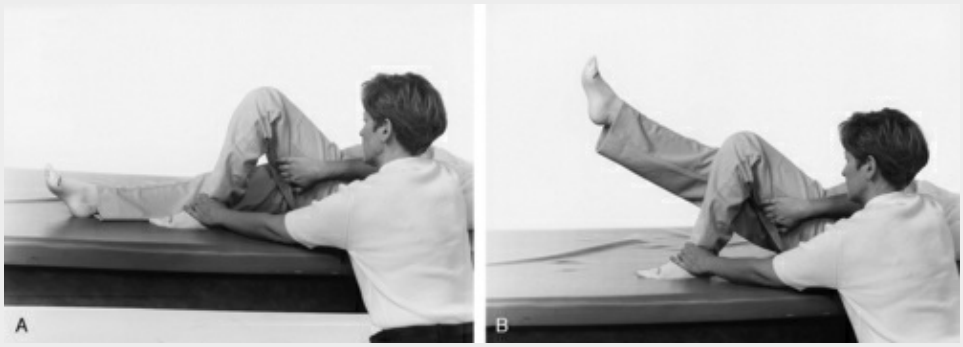
Hip extension can be accomplished over the edge of the bed or mat table. The patient must scoot to the edge of the mat.

A. The physical therapist assistant may need to help the patient with moving the involved leg off the support surface. The plantar surface of the patient's foot must be supported. A small step stool, a garbage can, or the assistant's leg can be used. The patient pushes down with the involved lower extremity.

B. The physical therapist assistant can palpate the gluteus maximus muscle to assess the strength of the patient's efforts.

Intervention 10-7

Straight Leg Raising (Uninvolved Lower Extremity)

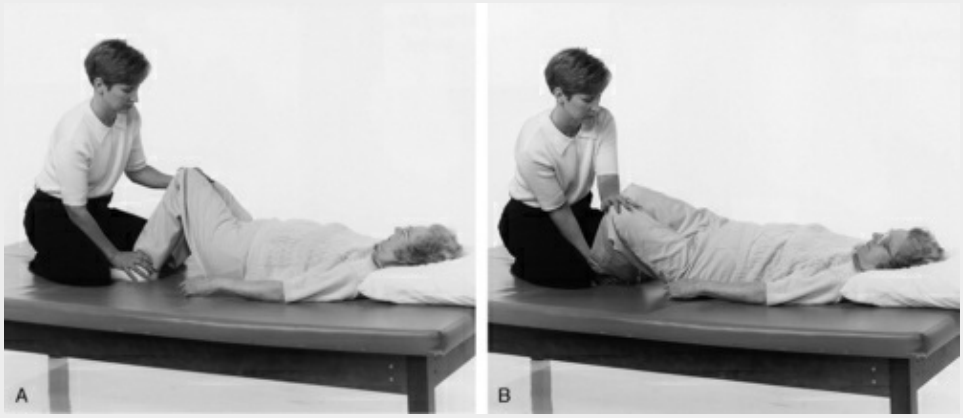


A. The patient is instructed to perform a straight leg raise with the uninvolved lower extremity.

B. As the patient lifts her leg, the physical therapist assistant palpates the hamstring musculature on the involved side. Contraction of the involved hamstrings should be felt as the patient lifts the uninvolved leg.

Intervention 10-8

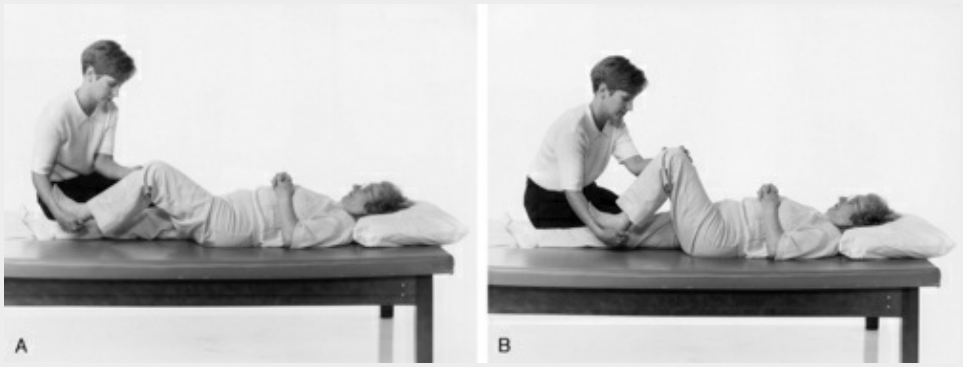
Lower Trunk Rotation



The physical therapist assistant guides the patient's lower extremities as the patient performs lower trunk rotation in hook lying.

Intervention 10-9

Hip and Knee Flexion



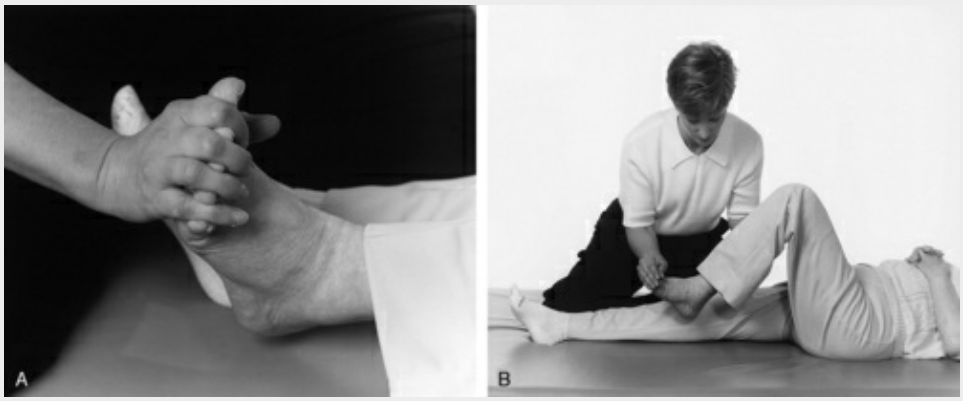
In the acute stages, facilitation of hip and knee flexion is performed with the patient in a supine position. The physical therapist assistant supports the entire plantar surface of the patient's foot to avoid stimulating a plantar flexion response.

A. Initially, the physical therapist assistant may need to support the patient's lower extremity.

B. As the patient is able to assume more active control of the movement, the physical therapist assistant can use a more anterior handhold slightly above the patient's patella.

Intervention 10-10

Inhibiting Toe Flexion and Promoting Ankle Dorsiflexion



A. The physical therapist assistant can use her fingers to abduct (separate) the patient's toes. This positioning combined with slight traction applied to the toes will inhibit toe clawing and facilitate ankle dorsiflexion.
B. A more distal handhold can be used to guide the patient's lower extremity movement.

Importance of Movement Assessment

Any time the patient moves, the clinician should observe the quality of the patient's movement. Although no universally accepted quality indicators are available in the physical therapy literature to describe movement, the following characteristics should be considered: (1) timing of the movement; (2) sequencing of muscle responses; (3) amount of force generated by the muscle during the movement; and (4) reciprocal release of muscle activity. To address these areas in treatment, the therapist should select motor tasks that demand the proper muscle response. For example, having a patient work on sit-to-stand movement transitions in which the timing of hip and knee extension is coordinated is beneficial. Flexion of the elbow followed by a controlled release of the biceps into elbow extension is another example of an activity that addresses the quality of the patient's motor response.

Scapular Mobilization

Treatment interventions for the upper extremity must be included at all times. Scapular mobilization performed in a side-lying position is extremely beneficial. This type of mobilization should not be confused with the orthopedic mobilization techniques described by Maitland (1977). Scapular mobilization for patients with hemiplegia can be thought of as a range-of-motion or mobility exercise. The goal of the mobilization is to keep the scapula moving on the thorax so that upper extremity function is not lost. Intervention 10-11 demonstrates gentle protraction (abduction) of a patient's scapula performed by a PTA. The PTA's hand is placed along the border of the patient's scapula. From that position, the PTA can guide the patient's scapular movement. The scapula can also be mobilized in the directions of the proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) diagonals, including elevation, abduction, and upward rotation, which are the scapular components of the D_1 flexion pattern, elevation, adduction, and upward rotation, demonstrating the scapular movements observed in the D_2 flexion pattern. Care should be taken to stabilize the trunk properly to avoid compensatory motion. Scapular mobility is essential in maintaining the normal scapulohumeral rhythm necessary for upper extremity range of motion and functional reaching. If the scapula is unable to move on the rib cage, the upper extremity will become tightly fixed to the side of the body, thereby limiting the patient's ability to use the arm. In addition, individuals who have had a stroke often develop tightness or increased tone in the scapular elevators and retractors (rhomboids, upper trapezius, and teres minor). This condition can lead to abnormal scapular positioning and upper extremity posturing.

Intervention 10-11

Scapular Mobilization

With her hand on the patient's scapula, the physical therapist assistant gently protracts the involved scapula. The physical therapist assistant uses a handshake grasp to support the patient's involved hand.

Other Upper Extremity Activities

The patient should be instructed in the performance of self-directed upper extremity elevation with external rotation (double-arm elevation), as illustrated in Intervention 10-12. This movement combination assists in maintaining function of the shoulder and can limit the development of spasticity in the latissimus dorsi muscle, which has been noted to contribute to abnormal posturing (Johnstone, 1995). Passive range-of-motion exercises performed to the patient's involved shoulder, elbow, wrist, and fingers should also be performed during this early stage of rehabilitation. These exercises are absolutely essential, especially in the absence of volitional upper extremity movement, because they prevent the development of upper extremity joint contractures.

Intervention 10-12

Double-Arm Elevation

The patient clasps her hands together. The involved thumb should be outermost to maintain the web space and to inhibit abnormal tone.

Facilitation and Inhibition Techniques

Depending on the patient's motor control, the presence or absence of abnormal tone, and the quality of volitional movement present, performance of facilitation or inhibitory activities in preparation for the patient's attempts at functional activities may be necessary.

Facilitation Techniques

The use of primitive (spinal) or tonic (brain stem) reflexes, quick stretching, tapping, vibration, approximation, and weight bearing may be required to prepare the patient for the performance of functional activities.

Primitive or Spinal Level Reflexes

Primitive or spinal level reflexes have limited usefulness in physical therapy practice. To establish the patient's level of responsiveness, it may be appropriate for the PTA to attempt to elicit a flexor withdrawal or a palmar or plantar grasp reflex. A noxious stimulus applied to the bottom of the patient's foot may elicit extension of the toes, with dorsiflexion of the ankle and flexion of the hip and knee. Maintained pressure applied to the palm of the hand or ball of the foot can cause the patient to flex the fingers or toes. Eliciting these spinal level reflexes should be avoided in treatment. More important, however, is the education provided to the patient's family members regarding the correct meaning of these reflexes. Individuals often misinterpret this type of reflexive response as volitional movement and may develop unrealistic expectations regarding the patient's current status or eventual functional outcome.

Using Brain Stem or Tonic Reflexes

The use of brain stem reflexes, such as the asymmetric tonic neck reflex, to elicit patient responses is also controversial. However, if a patient is not responding to conventional treatment interventions, other avenues must be employed. The use of the asymmetric tonic neck reflex, the symmetric tonic

neck reflex, and the tonic labyrinthine reflexes can affect the patient's muscle tone by increasing tone in otherwise flaccid or hypotonic extremities. Having the patient rotate the head to one side causes increased extension in the face arm and increased flexor tone in the skull arm. Flexing the patient's head may also elicit flexion in the upper extremities and increased extensor tone in the lower extremities. Positioning a patient in supine or prone can increase extensor or flexor tone, respectively.

Other Facilitation Techniques

A quick stretch applied to a muscle will facilitate the muscle spindle to fire and cause a contraction of the muscle fibers. A quick stretch followed by a verbal request to the patient to complete a specific movement may also facilitate a motor response. Once the patient is able to recruit a muscle actively, this technique should be discontinued. Tapping, vibration, approximation, and weight bearing are other facilitatory treatment techniques. Gentle tapping over a muscle belly often assists in preparing the muscle for activation. Tapping and vibration can be performed to both the agonist and antagonist of a given muscle group. The sensory stimulus should be applied from the muscle's insertion to its origin. Effects of vibratory stimulation last only as long as the stimulus is applied. Vibration can be applied for 1 to 2 minutes, and then the stimulus should be removed. In the presence of significant muscle tone, tapping or vibration administered to the muscle's antagonist often provides insufficient muscle activation to overcome the increased tone. Approximation and weight bearing are other types of facilitation techniques that provide the patient with proprioceptive input to the joint and muscle receptors. Approximation and early weight-bearing activities applied at the shoulder and hip may stimulate muscle activation around the joint and assist in the development of joint stability (O'Sullivan, 2014a).

Inhibition Techniques

For patients with increased tone, inhibitory techniques should be employed. Slow, rhythmic rotation can assist in reducing tone in spastic body parts. As stated previously, beginning these activities in proximal body segments is important if the desired outcome is to change the tone more distally. Weight bearing is another useful inhibitory technique. Prolonged ice applied with an ice pack or iced towels or static stretch applied in conjunction with pressure administered to a tendon of a spastic muscle can assist in decreasing tone in hypertonic muscle groups. Once the tone is at a more manageable level, the patient must then attempt a movement or functional task. Movement must be superimposed on the improved tonal state if carryover is to occur (Bobath, 1990).

Caution

Caution must be exercised when using ice to inhibit abnormal tone. The duration of the icing should not exceed 20 minutes. In addition, the patient's skin should be checked periodically. The use of ice is contraindicated in patients with autonomic nervous system instability, circulatory problems, and impaired sensation (O'Sullivan, 2014a).

Treatment Adjunct

Air (pressure) splints can be employed to assist with positioning, tone reduction, and sensory awareness. For some patients, air splints are used as an adjunct to the treatment they are receiving; for others, the therapist may recommend an air splint as a necessary piece of equipment for a patient's home exercise and positioning program.

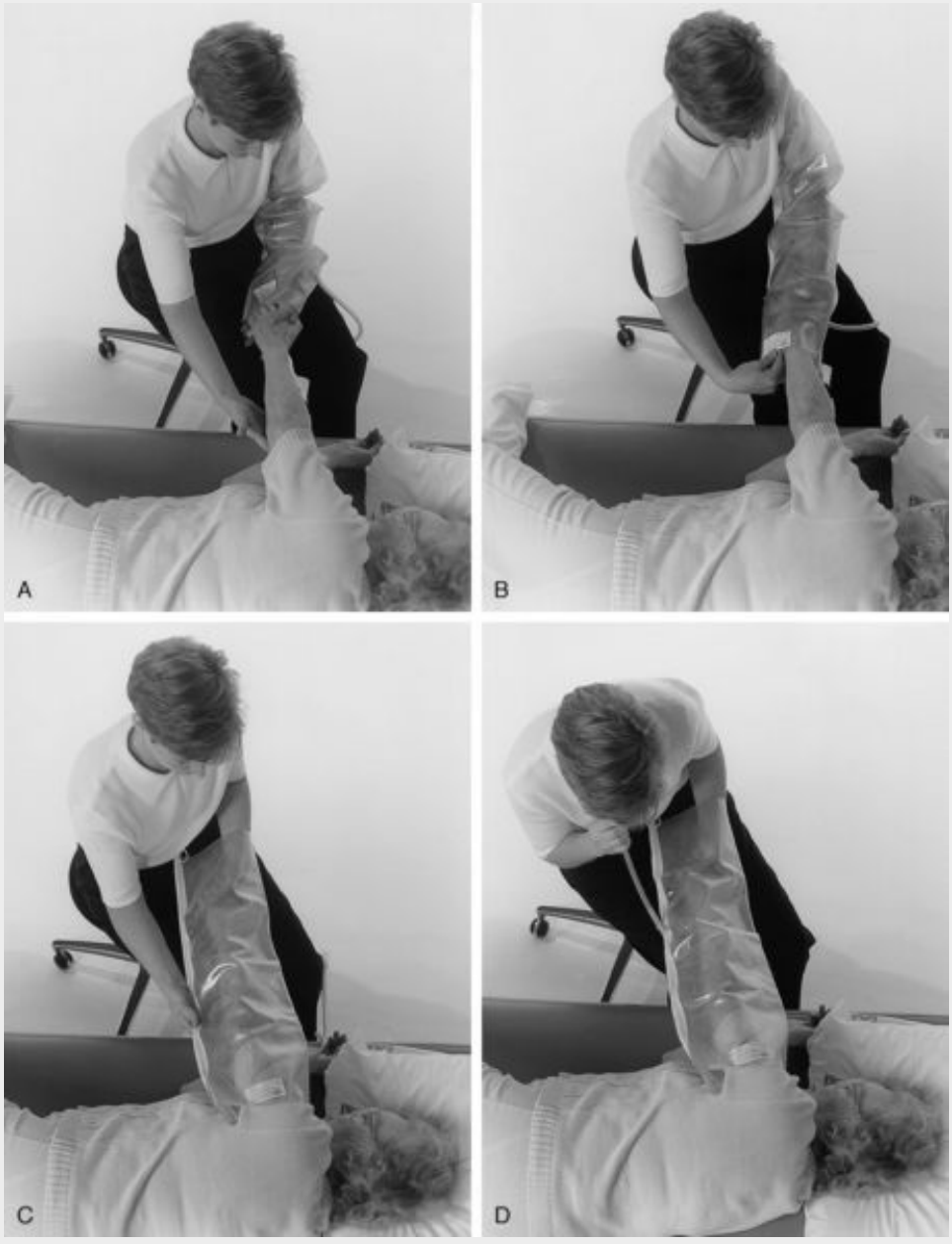
Johnstone (1995) described the use of air splints. Inflatable air splints are available for a number of different body parts, such as full-length arm and leg splints; splints for the elbow, forearm, and hand; and a splint for the foot and ankle. These splints can be applied to the involved joint or extremity and can assist with positioning and tone management. The dual-channeled air splints are inflated by the therapist. Warm air from the therapist's lungs allows the inner sleeve to contour to the patient and thus provides constant sensory feedback. The splint must be firmly applied, with the pressure reaching between 38 and 40 mm Hg. Numbness or tingling while wearing the splint may indicate overinflation. Splints should not be worn for longer than 1 hour at a time, although they can be reapplied throughout the day or during the course of a treatment session. A thin cotton sleeve can be applied under the splint to protect the patient's skin (Johnstone, 1995).

Long Arm Splint

The long arm splint is frequently used for patients who have sustained a stroke. The splint is applied to the patient's involved upper extremity. Maintaining the patient's hand in a handshake grasp during application of the splint assists in the process. Intervention 10-13 shows an PTA applying a long arm splint to a patient. As the patient's arm is placed through the splint, the patient's fifth finger should be on the side of the splint with the zipper. Positioning of the hand in this manner allows for ulnar weight bearing, which facilitates forearm pronation and radial opening of the patient's hand. Once the splint is on, the patient's fingers should rest securely within the confines of the splint.

Intervention 10-13

Applying a Long Arm Splint



A. With the zipper of the splint closed, the physical therapist assistant gathers the splint on her own

arm. The physical therapist assistant then supports the patient's involved hand with a handshake grasp.
B and C. The splint is applied to the patient's involved upper extremity. The zipper remains on the ulnar or little finger side of the forearm. The physical therapist assistant maintains a handshake grasp or other inhibitory handhold to the wrist and fingers as the splint is applied.
D. Once in place, the splint is inflated.

Initially, the PTA may want to use the splint for static positioning. After the splint is applied, the upper extremity is positioned in external rotation, and the patient wears the splint during supine activities, as depicted in Figure 10-2. The splint allows the arm to be maintained in the antispasm or recovery position. The air splint can also be worn during treatment interventions. With the patient in a side-lying position, the PTA protracts the scapula. Intervention 10-14 illustrates this activity. The splint inhibits the development of abnormal tone, which can develop as the patient attempts active movements of the arm. The patient may also wear the splint as he or she works on upper extremity elevation exercises. As the patient develops control of the shoulder musculature, placing and holding of the arm at various points within the range of motion can be initiated. Intervention 10-15 shows a patient wearing the long arm splint for upper extremity treatment activities.

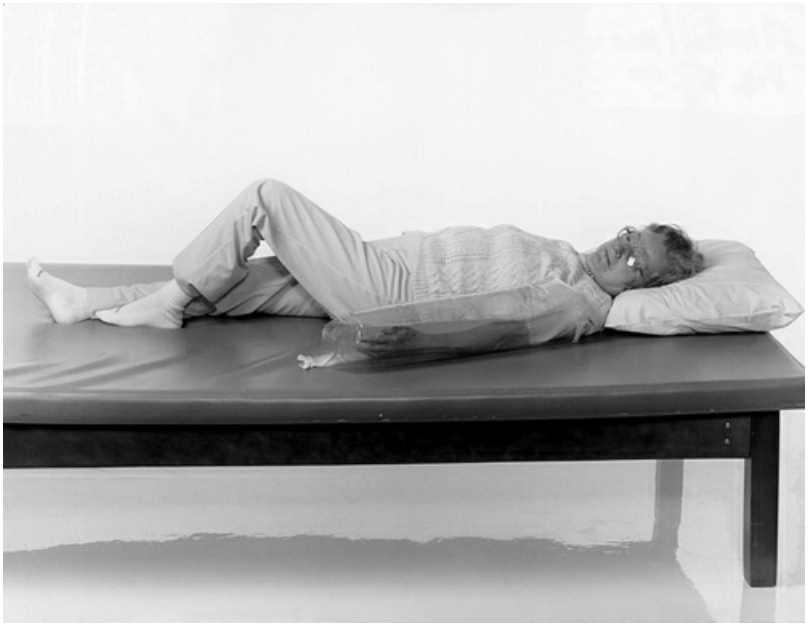


FIGURE 10-2 A patient wearing an air splint while lying in bed. The splint can be used as a static positioning device, or it can be applied before treatment to prepare the involved extremity for activity.

Intervention 10-14

Scapular Protraction with a Splint

Scapular protraction exercises can be practiced with the patient wearing a long arm splint. The physical therapist assistant guides the movement of the scapula.

Intervention 10-15

Double Arm Elevation with a Splint

The patient is practicing double-arm elevation exercises while wearing a long arm air splint.

Elbow and Hand Splint

The elbow or hand splint may be used for patients who lack more distal control and movement. The elbow splint can be applied as the patient works on upper extremity weight-bearing activities. The splint holds the elbow passively in extension. The hand splint is especially useful for patients who demonstrate increased flexor tone in the involved wrist and fingers during functional activities. As stated previously, these splints can also be used as static positioning devices when necessary. For example, a patient may be working on a high-level developmental sequence activity, such as kneeling. A hand splint can be applied to the involved hand to decrease the effects of increased flexor tone in the wrist and fingers that may be present while the patient practices this task.

Long Leg Splint

The lower extremity splint can be used during early pregait activities for individuals who lack control or movement in their legs. When the splint is inflated, the patient does not have to be concerned that the involved lower extremity will collapse or buckle when weight is applied. The

anterior and posterior chambers of the splint also provide the clinician with the ability to position the patient's knee in slight flexion before beginning standing activities. It is important to note that the lower extremity splint is not to be used for actual gait training activities.

Foot Splint

The foot splint can be used for static positioning and the development of lower extremity control. When the patient is wearing the foot splint, the ankle is maintained in a neutral 90-degree position and the heel is able to accept weight. This can be beneficial for patients who have limited active ankle movement. The foot splint may also be used when working on activities within the developmental sequence, such as from four-point to tall-kneeling to half-kneeling. The splint prevents the gastrocnemius soleus from exhibiting its strong plantar flexion action and limits excessive ankle inversion.

Neurodevelopmental Treatment Approach

The neurodevelopmental treatment (NDT) approach, developed by Karel Bobath and Berta Bobath in the 1940s, has been a popular therapeutic intervention used for individuals with hemiplegia. This treatment approach emphasizes the management of abnormal muscle tone and the importance of postural control in movement initiation (Ostrosky, 1990). Interventions are directed at inhibiting abnormal postural reflex activity and muscle tone and then superimposing normal movement patterns. In a clinical context, the therapist controls and guides the patient's motor performance through the use of manual contacts applied at key points of control (proximal joints).

The use of manual contacts or key points of control are still an important component of the treatment provided to patients. Proximal key points, such as the shoulder and pelvic girdles, are the most important points from which to influence postural alignment and tone. Manual contacts applied to the shoulder and pelvis influence muscle tone distribution and distal movements. The use of more distal key points such as the elbows, hands, knees, and feet affects movements of the trunk (Bobath, 1990). The use of manual contacts must be individualized to the patient and the patient's movement needs. Once the patient's tone is at a more normal or manageable state, the therapist superimposes normal movements and postural responses. This is always done within the context of a functional activity. Through the use of manual contacts, therapists are able to give patients the necessary control and stability to initiate movement in other areas. For example, by providing a manual point of control at the pelvis, the patient may be able to improve trunk posturing or foot placement during gait. By controlling the patient's proximal shoulder, hand position for grasp may be easier. It is also important for the clinician to grade the physical assistance provided through these manual contacts and gradually withdraw assistance as the patient learns to control the movement independently (Ostrosky, 1990).

Neuroplasticity

Many of the treatment interventions presented in the remaining portion of this chapter and in the rest of the text are based on the neurophysiologic approaches to patient care and the work of the Bobaths. However, current motor control and motor learning theories as well as principles of neuroplasticity and training focus less on the actual techniques and more on the process used to maximize patient function. These theories emphasize the need for the patient to be an active participant in learning or relearning movement strategies. Patients must become active problem solvers of their own movement deficits and learn to perform movements in different environments and within multiple contexts if function is to be improved (Whiteside, 1997).

There is a significant body of research regarding the recovery of motor function following stroke. Activity-dependent or task-specific training of appropriate intensity has proven to result in positive patient outcomes and produce cortical adaptations and reorganization (Teasell and Hussein, 2014; Kleim and Jones, 2008). Partial body-weight support treadmill ambulation and constraint-induced movement therapy are examples of such activities. Supported ambulation allows patients, even those that are unable to stand independently, the opportunity to practice stepping in a safe environment (Hornby et al., 2011). For example, if the desired outcome is an improvement in the patient's ambulation potential then clinicians must have the patient practice gait repetitively. Additionally, patients must be engaged in tasks that are meaningful and are at an appropriate intensity if the brain is to engage in repair through cortical reorganization and activation and

adaptation of previously unaffected neurons (Kleim and Jones, 2008).

In the sections that follow, we will attempt to identify the tasks critical to patient function and interventions that can assist in achieving those goals. We will emphasize current motor learning and motor development principles as well as an evidence-based practice perspective in our approach to the care of this patient population. We will, however, continue to address the need for use of manual contacts as patients relearn important motor skills and as students develop their psychomotor skills in the treatment of adults and children with neuromuscular deficits. Reliance on a single approach or technique would be a disservice to our patients and, in the end, would not promote best practice (Sullivan, 2009).

Functional Activities

Rolling

During the period of early rehabilitation (including the time spent in acute care), the patient should begin practicing functional movements. Rolling to the right and left should begin immediately. The patient must be instructed in methods to assist in active performance of this activity.

Rolling to the Involved Side

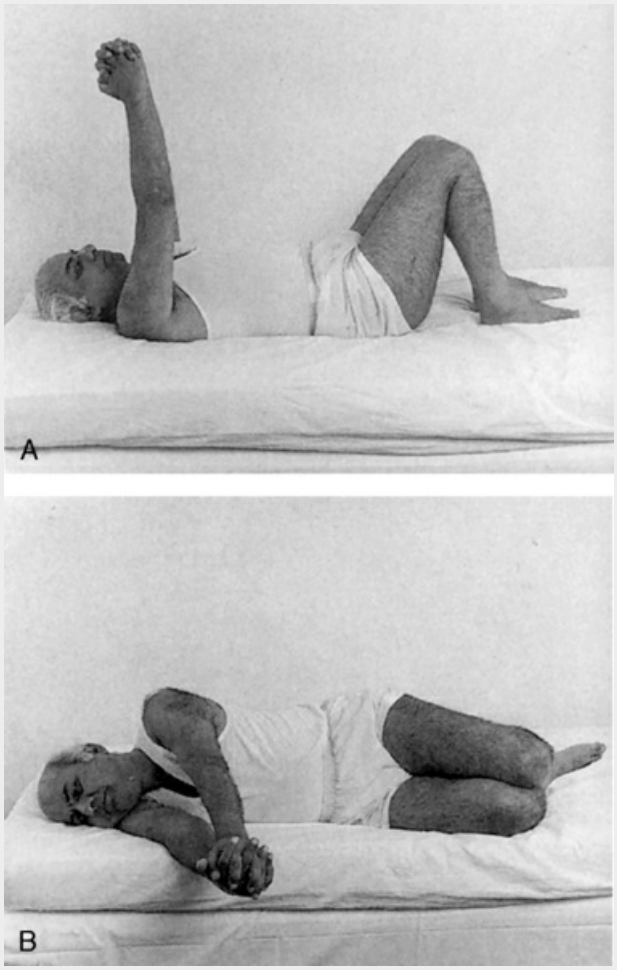
Rolling to the involved side is often easier because the patient initiates the movement with the uninvolved side of the body. The activity begins with the patient turning the head to the side toward which the patient is going to roll. Head and eye movements provide strong cues to the body to prepare for movement. Head turning also helps to unweight the opposite upper extremity and facilitates upper trunk rotation. The patient should be encouraged to use the uninvolved upper and lower extremities to assist with the transition from supine to side-lying on the involved side. Patients often want to reach and hold on to the bed rails to assist with rolling. This practice should be discouraged by all members of the patient's rehabilitation team and by the patient's family because few patients return home with hospital beds. To roll over, the patient reaches across the body with the uninvolved upper extremity and flexes and adducts the uninvolved hip and knee. This provides the patient with the momentum needed to complete the roll.

Rolling to the Uninvolved Side

Rolling to the uninvolved side is usually more challenging for the patient. Again, the activity must be initiated with rotation of the head to the side toward which the patient is rolling. Patients with neglect often have a difficult time initiating cervical rotation for head turning. The patient should be encouraged to look in the direction in which he or she is moving. It is also important to note the position of the patient's eyes during this activity. If neglect is significant, it may be difficult for the patient to move his or her eyes past midline to focus on items, tasks, or individuals on the involved side. To initiate rolling to the uninvolved side, the patient is encouraged to assist as much as possible. If the patient is able to initiate any active movement in the involved extremities, the sequence will be similar to that presented for rolling to the involved side. If the patient's extremities are flaccid or essentially hypotonic, the following preparatory activities are often beneficial in assisting the patient. The patient should clasp both hands together with the involved thumb outermost. Thumb abduction is an inhibitory technique used to promote relaxation in the patient's hand. The clasping of the patient's hands also facilitates finger abduction and extension. With the hands clasped, the patient flexes the shoulders to approximately 90 degrees. Slight shoulder adduction should also be present. The patient's lower extremities should then be positioned in hook lying. If the patient is unable to flex the involved lower extremity actively, the therapist can assist with positioning by unweighting the involved leg and encouraging the patient to flex the hip and the knee while the therapist approximates through the femur and into the hip. Intervention 10-16 illustrates a patient rolling in this manner. A compensatory strategy frequently used by patients involves hooking the uninvolved lower extremity under the involved leg and bringing the two legs up into hook-lying position together.

Intervention 10-16

Rolling to the Uninvolved Side



The patient is rolling to side-lying with the upper extremities clasped and the lower extremities in hook lying.

(From Bobath B: *Adult hemiplegia: evaluation and treatment*, ed 3. Boston, 1990, Butterworth-Heinemann.)

An alternative technique is to place the uninvolved lower extremity on top of the involved leg and bring both legs up into the hook-lying position as a unit. The patient is encouraged to do this independently or assisted by the therapist. The advantage of this technique over the one mentioned previously is that proprioceptive input is applied into the anterior shin of the involved lower extremity, and the patient is required to use the involved leg as much as possible. The more sensory input that can be applied through the involved lower extremity, the better. Once the patient has his or her upper and lower extremities in flexion, the patient is asked to turn the head and eyes to the uninvolved side to initiate the roll. The PTA must assess the patient's ability to perform the activity and assist the patient with verbal and tactile cues as needed. PNF techniques can also be incorporated when assisting the patient with rolling. Techniques such as slow reversals and hold-relax active movement can be incorporated into rolling activities.

Scooting

Another bed mobility activity that should be practiced is scooting in the supine position. Patients who are able to move independently in bed possess greater freedom because they do not require assistance from health-care personnel to reposition themselves. The patient needs to be able to scoot the hips to both sides but must also be able to move the upper trunk in the same direction as the hips. Having the patient flex the head and neck is the first step when trying to move the shoulders for scooting. Cervical flexion also assists with activation of the patient's core. The PTA can place his or her hands under the patient's scapulae to assist with moving the upper trunk to the side. Positioning the patient's lower extremities in a hook-lying position assists with moving the patient's

lower trunk in the desired direction. As the patient is able to initiate more of the movement independently, the PTA can decrease tactile input.

Movement Transitions

Other early functional mobility tasks include movement transitions from supine to sitting and from sitting to supine. Because of shorter hospital and rehabilitation stays, the patient's physical therapy plan of care must address the performance of functional activities from the first treatment session.

Supine-to-Sit Transfer

Transitions from supine to sitting should be practiced from both the patient's involved and uninvolved sides. Too often, patients are taught to perform activities in a single, structured way and then find it difficult to generalize the task to other environmental conditions. Based on a patient's living arrangements, it may not always be possible for the patient to transfer to the stronger, less involved side. Examples of ways to facilitate movement from supine to sitting include having the patient roll to the uninvolved side, as previously described, followed by moving the lower extremities off the bed. From that point, the patient can use the uninvolved upper extremity to push up into an upright sitting position. The PTA provides appropriate manual assistance at the patient's shoulders and pelvis. As the patient is able to assume a greater degree of independence in the performance of this activity, the PTA decreases the manual assist provided and allows the patient more control over the movement transition. Intervention 10-17 shows a patient performing a supine-to-sit transfer with assistance.

Intervention 10-17

Supine-to-Sit Transfer

A. The patient rolls to the side. The physical therapist assistant helps the patient as needed at the pelvis or shoulder girdle to complete the transition.
B. The patient pushes up with the upper extremity to a sitting position.

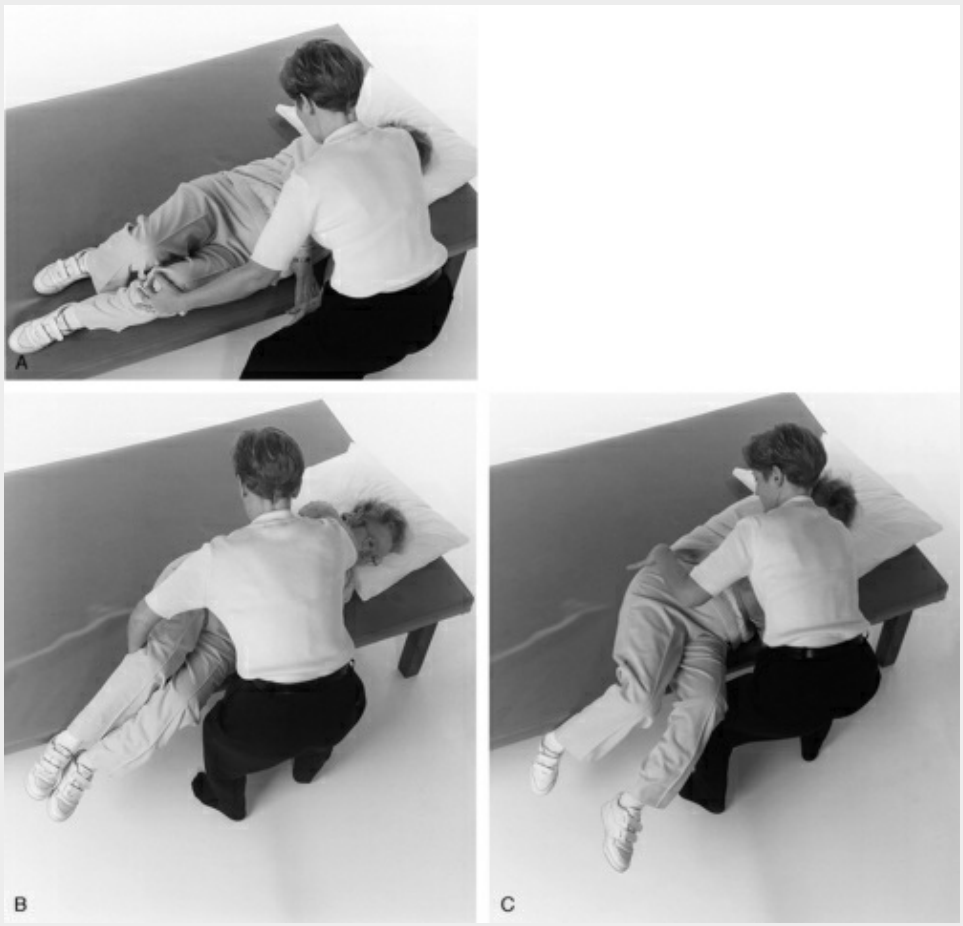
Care must be taken to ensure that distractional forces are not applied to the involved upper extremity during performance of this activity. Frequently, one observes health-care workers and family members using both of the patient's upper extremities to assist with coming to sit and other movement transitions. Distraction applied to the shoulder joint can lead to subluxation and can promote the development of painful upper extremity conditions, including CRPS and frozen shoulder. All family members and health-care personnel should receive instruction in proper transfer techniques, including protection of the involved upper extremity.

Supine-to-sit transfers can also be facilitated in other ways. Patients can be taught to use diagonals versus straight plane movements to perform this transition. Supine-to-sit transfers performed in a diagonal pattern can be practiced from either the involved or uninvolved side. Most able-bodied individuals perform functional activities in diagonal movement patterns. Diagonal movement patterns tend to be more functional and are also more energy-efficient. To assist the

patient with this type of transition, the PTA needs to place the patient's lower extremities in a hook-lying position. The legs are then brought off the bed or mat surface. The patient is asked to tuck the chin and, with the uninvolved upper extremity, reaches forward. This technique enables patients to activate their abdominal muscles (core) to assist in the achievement of upright sitting. Intervention 10-18 demonstrates a patient performing this transition. The PTA may raise the head of the bed or prop the patient on pillows or a wedge to make the task easier for individuals with weak abdominal musculature. This technique provides the patient with a mechanical advantage and decreases the work the abdominals need to perform. As the patient is able to complete the transition with increased ease, the degree of inclination can be decreased.

Intervention 10-18

Supine-to-Sit Transfer on a Diagonal Pattern



A. The patient scoots to the edge of the mat. This maneuver is accomplished by bridging and then moving the upper trunk and head.
B. The patient brings her lower extremities off the mat table or surface of the bed.
C. The patient is encouraged to tuck her chin and to reach forward with her uninvolved upper extremity. The physical therapist assistant provides manual cues at the hips and pelvis or shoulder girdle as needed.

Some patients require increased physical assistance for supine-to-sit transfers. The technique is essentially the same when a second person is used. Often, it is easiest to divide the work and have one person control and assist at the patient's trunk while the other is responsible for the patient's lower extremities. Both individuals must be clear about who is leading the activity and who is responsible for providing the verbal directions. Patients should not be allowed under any

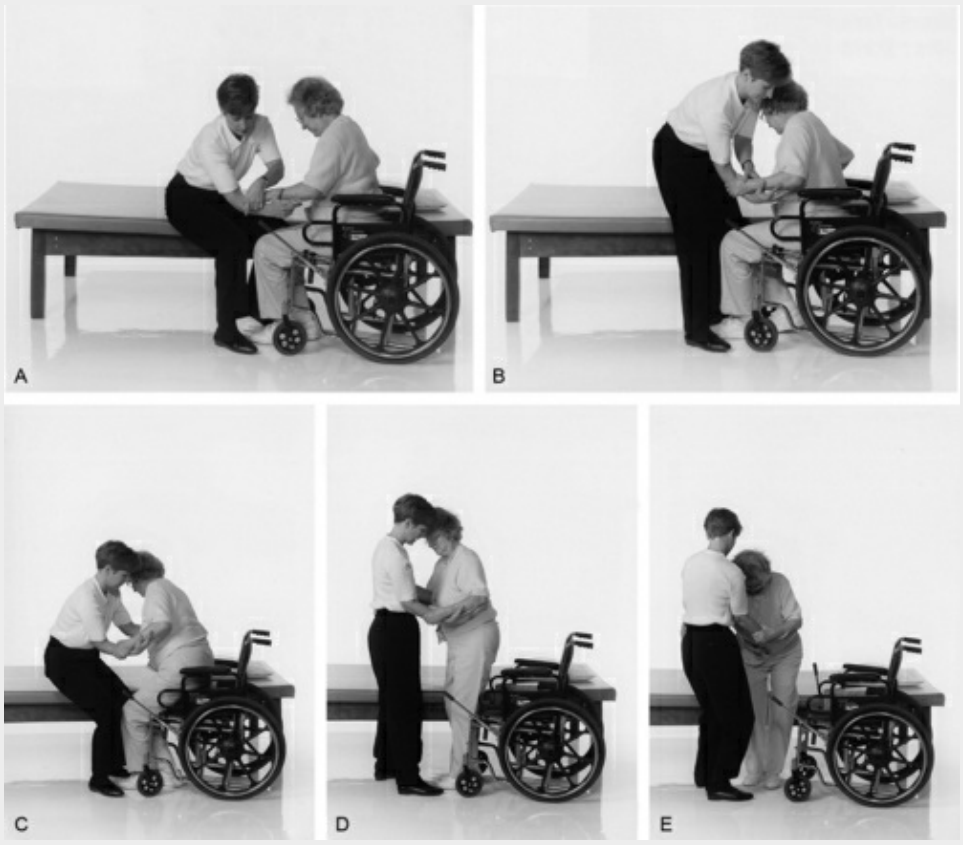
circumstance to pull up on the therapist's neck during the performance of supine-to-sit transition. This practice can create a safety concern for both the clinician and the patient.

Wheelchair-to-Bed/Mat Transfers

Once the patient has made the transition from supine to sitting, transfers to the wheelchair are attempted. A stand-pivot transfer is the most common. Initially, therapists may have the patient transfer to the stronger side as this does not require the patient to step with the involved lower extremity. Over time the patient will need to be able to transfer to both the right and left sides to maximize independence. To begin the transfer, the patient must scoot forward in the wheelchair or on the mat table to ensure that both feet are flat on the floor. If the patient is sitting in a wheelchair, it is not uncommon for the patient to lean against the back of the chair to scoot the hips forward. Weight shifting from one side to the next is the preferred technique and should be encouraged. Upon moving the left hip forward, the patient shifts his or her weight to the right. This weight shift should be accompanied by elongation of the trunk musculature on the right side. The patient repeats this sequence with movement of the right hip forward and a weight shift to the left. Once the patient's feet are flat on the floor, the gait belt is applied, and the involved upper extremity is prepositioned. The patient performs an anterior weight shift and is instructed to stand. The PTA guards the patient closely and uses his or her knees to block the patient's hemiplegic knee if necessary. Weakness or spasticity in the involved lower extremity may cause the knee to buckle as weight is transferred to the limb. The patient steps with the uninvolved leg and pivots on the involved lower extremity to the mat table or bed. The position of the involved ankle must be carefully monitored to avoid instability or inadvertent weight bearing on the lateral malleolus. Intervention 10-19 depicts a patient performing a stand-pivot transfer from the wheelchair to the mat table.

Intervention 10-19

Stand-Pivot Transfer



A. The patient shifts weight forward in the chair so her feet are supported and are in a plantigrade position on the floor.
B. The PTA prepositions the patient's involved arm.
C. The patient is encouraged to perform an anterior weight shift to come to standing. The PTA guards the involved knee to prevent buckling.
D. The patient stands erect.
E. The patient pivots on her feet to sit down. Some patients may require continuous support of the involved lower extremity during performance of stand-pivot transfers.

Early mobilization including transferring the patient out of bed and the performance of upright sitting activities has been shown to improve ambulation abilities and may lead to an earlier discharge to a patient's home (Cumming et al., 2011).

Summary

Treatment interventions that can be performed by the patient in the early stages of rehabilitation have been presented. Before more advanced interventions are discussed, a summarized list of techniques that may be part of the initial treatment plan is provided.

- Positioning
- Bridging and bridging with approximation
- Hip extension over the edge of the mat or bed
- Hamstring cocontraction (modified straight leg raising)
- Lower trunk rotation and lower trunk rotation with bridging
- Hip flexor retraining
- Hip and knee extension with ankle dorsiflexion
- Scapular mobilization
- Upper extremity elevation
- Functional activities including rolling, scooting, and supine-to-sit and wheelchair-to-bed transfers

Adjuncts to treatment at this phase include air splints, the use of spinal and brain stem level reflexes, and various facilitation and inhibition techniques. The treatment of the patient in other functional positions will now be discussed. The inclusion of any of the following interventions into the plan of care depends on the cognitive and functional status of the patient.

Other Functional Positions

Sitting

Once the patient is able to achieve a short-sitting position, which is defined as sitting on a surface such as a bed or mat table with one's hips and knees flexed and one's feet supported on the floor, the PTA may begin to work on sitting posture and balance activities with the patient. Figure 10-3 shows a patient who exhibits fair sitting posture and balance. With increased clinical experience, it will become apparent that some patients with hemiplegia have poor or nonfunctional sitting balance. Patients with an altered sense of midline and motor control deficits often lose their balance. In this case, it may be necessary for the PTA to seek help from another clinician or an aide. The second person can be positioned behind the patient and assist with the patient's trunk control. The PTA may position herself in front of the patient to try to establish eye contact and to control the patient's head and trunk position. If not guarded properly, the patient can lose balance and fall off the support surface and injure himself or herself. Thus, patients functioning at a low level often benefit from treatment sessions with more than one individual.

FIGURE 10-3 A patient who exhibits fair sitting posture and balance. The assistant should observe the position of the patient's pelvis and trunk, the height of the shoulders, the symmetry of weight bearing on both hips, and the position of the patient's feet.

Motor Control

The first problem area that must be addressed is the patient's sitting posture. A patient cannot progress to functional movements of the limbs without a stable upper and lower trunk from which to initiate movement and perform skilled activities of the extremities. *Stability* is defined as the ability to fix or maintain a position or posture in relation to gravity, and it is a prerequisite for the more advanced stages of motor development, including controlled mobility and skilled activities. *Controlled mobility* refers to the ability to maintain postural stability while moving. An example of this would be weight shifting in a quadruped (four-point) position with the hands fixed and the proximal joints moving, in this example, the shoulders. *Skilled activities* are described as coordinated, purposeful movements that are superimposed on a stable posture. These tasks are the ones our patients most often aspire to achieve. Ambulation and fine motor activities of the hand are two common examples of skilled activities.

Sitting Posture: Positioning the Pelvis

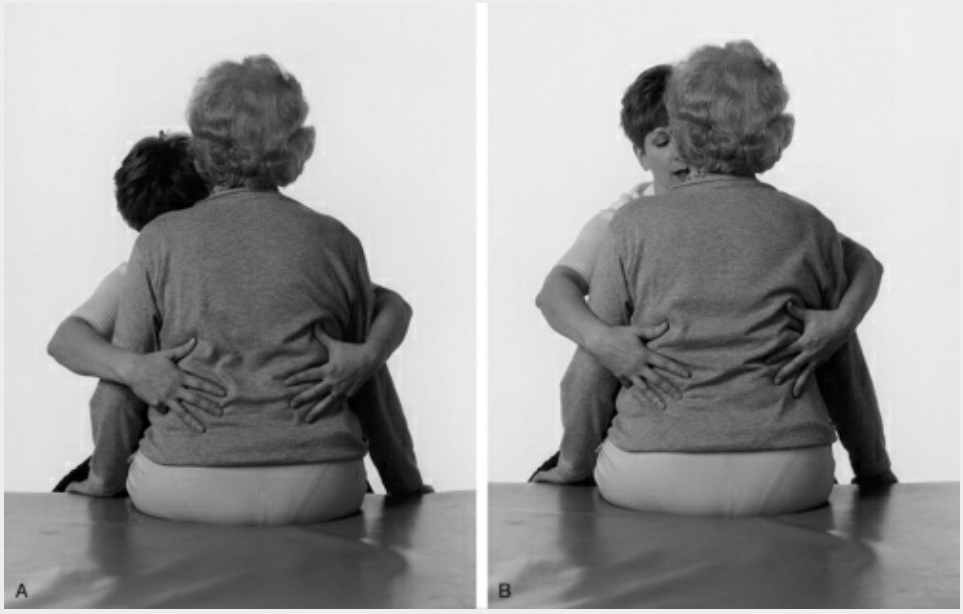
The position of the patient's pelvis must be assessed initially. Figure 10-4 provides a posterior view of the patient's sitting posture. Clinicians often ignore the pelvis and try to initially correct deviations noted in the trunk. A patient will be unable to maintain adequate trunk and/or head control if he or she is unable to achieve a neutral position of the pelvis. A posteriorly tilted pelvis creates a bias toward thoracic kyphosis and a forward head position. This type of posturing is common in our everyday world, and as a consequence, many patients have these premorbid postural deviations. By placing one's hands over the lumbar paraspinal musculature, one can gently guide the patient's pelvis in the direction of an anterior pelvic tilt. This technique provides the patient with tactile feedback for achieving a more neutral pelvic position. Intervention 10-20 depicts

this activity. Care must be taken to avoid excessively tilting the pelvis and locking the patient in an anterior pelvic tilt. An anterior tilt puts the spine in extension, thus creating a closed-pack position and preventing movement. This closed-pack position limits the patient's abilities to perform functional movement transitions that require lateral weight shifts and rotation.

FIGURE 10-4 A posterior view of a patient's sitting posture. The patient sits with a slight posterior pelvic tilt, increased weight bearing on the right without associated trunk elongation, and right shoulder depression.

Intervention 10-20

Achieving a Neutral Pelvis



A. The physical therapist assistant provides tactile cues to the patient's paraspinals to achieve a neutral pelvis.
B. Tension within the intrinsic finger musculature provides tactile feedback to the patient. Care is taken to avoid poking the patient with the physical therapist assistant's fingertips. The little fingers are positioned on the patient's abdominals to facilitate movement back into a posterior pelvic tilt.

Achieving Pelvic Tilts in Supine

For individuals who are having difficulty in isolating pelvic movements, the PTA can have the patient work on achieving anterior and posterior pelvic tilts in the supine position. A large therapy ball can be placed under the patient's lower extremities. While stabilizing the patient's legs on the ball, the PTA can gently move the ball forward and backward. This technique allows the patient to feel the movement of the pelvis in a controlled and secure position.

Positioning the Trunk

Once the PTA has taught the patient to move the pelvis actively and the patient is able to maintain a neutral pelvic position in sitting, attention is then given to the trunk musculature. Alignment of the shoulders over the hips is desired for an erect sitting posture. Gentle extension of the trunk should be encouraged by having the patient look up and bring the shoulders back. Initially, the patient may require tactile cues to be able to extend the trunk and contract the abdominal muscles. While maintaining a tactile cue in the patient's low back region, the PTA may place his or her other hand on the patient's sternum and move the patient's upper trunk into extension. Eventually, the patient must be taught to self-correct his or her own positioning in sitting. Recognizing when posture should be corrected facilitates motor learning of this task and enables the patient to assume this posture during other functional activities such as standing. If the patient has difficulty maintaining an upright sitting posture, the PTA may try increasing the patient's visual input through the use of a mirror. It may be necessary to work jointly with another clinician (the occupational therapist) or an aide to provide adequate manual contacts for equal weight bearing over both hips and to maintain an erect trunk position.

Positioning the Head

Poor pelvic positioning often contributes to misalignment of the patient's head. The patient must be able to hold the head erect to orient to the environment. An inability to maintain an upright position of the head causes visual and postural deficits through incorrect input into the vestibular system. Forward flexion of the cervical spine causes the patient's gaze to be directed toward the floor. This condition can affect arousal and the patient's ability to attend to persons or events within

the environment. Excessive flexion of the head also biases the patient toward increased thoracic kyphosis and posterior tilting of the pelvis. If the patient is unable to maintain an upright position of the head and neck, facilitation techniques must be employed to correct the deficit. Quick icing or gentle tapping to the posterior cervical muscles produces cervical extension. At times, it is necessary for the PTA to provide manual cues to maintain the patient's head upright. A second person may be needed to achieve this outcome. Once the patient is able to maintain his or her head positioning independently, the PTA should decrease manual support.

Additional Sitting Balance Activities: Weight Bearing on the Involved Hand

Once the patient is able to maintain an upright sitting posture with minimal to moderate assistance, progression to additional balance activities is warranted. An early sitting activity that promotes sitting balance and upper-extremity function is weight bearing on the involved hand. The patient's upper extremity should be placed in neutral rotation and abducted approximately 30 degrees, the elbow should be extended, and the wrist and fingers should also be extended, as depicted in Intervention 10-21. Care must be taken to avoid excessive external rotation of the shoulder. Extreme external rotation of the shoulder causes the elbow to become anatomically locked, thus eliminating the need for the patient to use the triceps actively to maintain elbow extension. Extension of the wrist and fingers with thumb abduction assists in decreasing spasticity in the wrist and finger flexors. Some patients, however, find this position uncomfortable or painful secondary to tightness in the wrist and fingers or because of arthritic changes. Thus, modifications of this position can be used. Weight bearing on a flexed elbow with the forearm resting on a bolster or half-roll offers the same benefits. Weight bearing stimulates joint and muscle proprioceptors to contract and assists in the development of muscle control around a joint. It is especially beneficial to patients who have flaccid or hypotonic upper extremity musculature and who demonstrate glenohumeral subluxation. Use of an upper extremity air splint may also be helpful to assist with stabilizing the arm during weight-bearing activities.

Intervention 10-21

Weight Bearing on the Involved Hand

Sitting with the involved upper extremity extended. The patient is wearing a Bobath arm sling with

a humeral cuff to prevent subluxation of the shoulder. The clinician assists in stabilizing the patient's elbow and fingers in extension.

(From O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, editors: *Physical rehabilitation assessment and treatment*, Philadelphia, 2007, FA Davis.)

Shoulder Subluxations

A subluxation is the separation of the articular surfaces of bones from their normal position in a joint. Shoulder subluxation is relatively common in patients who have sustained strokes. If the upper extremity is flaccid, the scapula can assume a position of downward rotation. This orientation causes the glenoid fossa to become oriented posteriorly. Loss of muscle tone, stretch on the capsule, and abnormal bony alignment results in an inferior shoulder subluxation. Strong hypertonicity in the scapular and shoulder musculature and truncal rotational asymmetries can predispose the patient to an anterior subluxation (Ryerson, 2013). Prevention of shoulder subluxation through proper positioning in sitting, standing, and gait, as well as muscle reeducation activities and patient education, is important.

To determine whether a patient has a subluxation, place the patient's upper extremity in a non–weight-bearing position and palpate the acromion process. Moving distally from the border of the acromion, you should be able to palpate whether a separation exists between the process and the head of the humerus. Figure 10-5 depicts a shoulder subluxation. Compare the involved shoulder with the uninvolved joint. Measure the separation in terms of finger widths with the fingers oriented horizontally to the acromion. The extent of the separation can vary from one-half finger width up to a separation of four or more. In addition to the resulting bony malalignment, subluxations also lead to ligamentous laxity around the joint. Weight bearing temporarily moves the head of the humerus back up into the glenoid fossa and assists in the realignment of the joint. Weight bearing offers only temporary remediation of the condition, however. Active control of the middle deltoid and rotator cuff muscles is necessary to bring the head of the humerus back into proper alignment permanently. Alternative treatments that assist in reducing subluxations include functional electric stimulation, biofeedback, and slings. The use of functional electric stimulation and biofeedback for the purposes of muscle reeducation is beyond the scope of this text. Slings can be prescribed for patients who need support of the shoulder joint. However, clinicians disagree regarding the use of slings in patients with hemiparesis. Many slings do not fit the patient properly and consequently do little to support the shoulder. In addition, slings promote neglect and disregard of the involved upper extremity and facilitate asymmetry within the trunk and upper extremities. There has, however, been some advancements in sling design in recent years. The GivMohr sling is used for the flaccid upper extremity and provides joint compression (sensory input) into the hemiparetic limb. The sling maintains the upper extremity in a functional position (shoulder abduction with external rotation and elbow extension). The sling provides protection to the involved arm and facilitates weight shifting during ambulation (Dieruf, 2005).

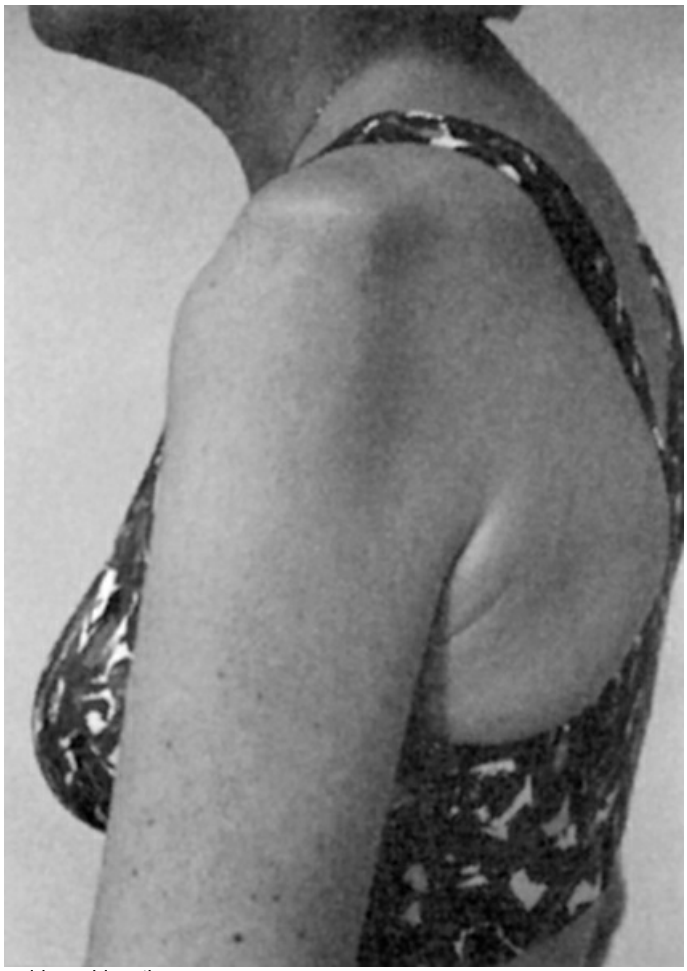


FIGURE 10-5 Shoulder subluxation. (From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation*, New York, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.)

Weight-Shifting Activities

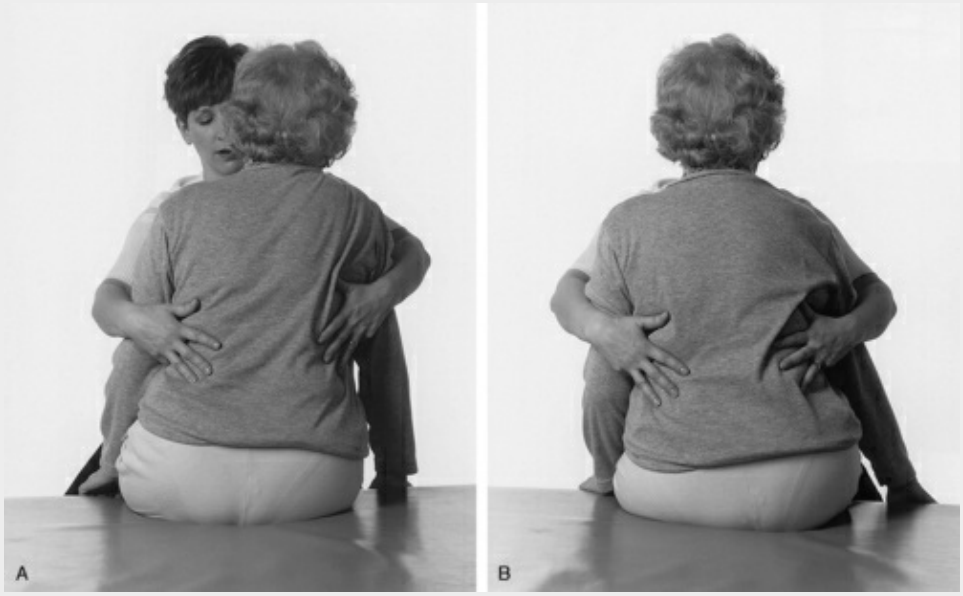
A gradual progression of sitting activities includes weight shifting in both anteroposterior and mediolateral directions. Weight-shifting activities are performed with the patient's upper extremities in a weight-bearing position or with the arms resting in the lap. Initially, patients should relearn to shift their weight within their base of support. Patients with hemiplegia often exhibit difficulties with weight shifting, especially toward the involved side, because many patients lack the ability to control their trunk musculature actively. A lateral weight shift to the right requires the ability to elongate the trunk muscles on the right and to shorten the trunk muscles on the left, thus maintaining the weight of the body within the base of support. In addition, the head turns to the right in an attempt to keep the eyes vertical and the mouth horizontal. Patients with spasticity or hypotonia may not be able to activate their neck or trunk muscles in such a way. An attempt to shift weight to the right frequently results in a collapse of the head and trunk into right lateral flexion. As a consequence, the patient experiences increased weight bearing on the right side. This, however, is not a controlled weight-bearing condition. Figure 10-6 shows a patient performing a weight shift to the right side with trunk shortening on the weight-bearing side. A patient's inability to perform weight shifts while sitting may affect his or her ability to perform activities of daily living, which include self-care tasks, feeding, and dressing.

FIGURE 10-6 Weight shifting to the right in sitting. The patient's trunk should elongate on the weight-bearing side.

In an effort to assist the patient in relearning the appropriate trunk strategies, the PTA can provide tactile cues on the trunk musculature. Intervention 10-22 depicts a PTA who is facilitating trunk elongation on the patient's weight-bearing side. This activity should be practiced to both right and left sides.

Intervention 10-22

Facilitating Weight Shifts



The physical therapist assistant facilitates weight shifts to the right and left in sitting. The physical therapist assistant provides tactile cues to the patient's paraspinals to facilitate the desired trunk response.

Sitting Balance Activities to Improve Trunk Control

Once the patient is able to maintain a stable sitting position with proper alignment, additional static sitting balance activities can be practiced. The clinician can apply manual resistance (alternating isometrics) at the shoulders or pelvis in an anteroposterior or mediolateral direction to promote cocontraction around the joints. Manual resistance with a rotational component (rhythmic stabilization) can also be performed to promote trunk stability.

Assessing Protective Reactions

While the patient is sitting, the PTA may also want to observe the patient's protective reactions. Patients should demonstrate protective reactions laterally, anteriorly, and posteriorly. Protective extension, characterized by extension and abduction, is evident in the upper extremities when a patient's balance is quickly disturbed and the patient realizes that he or she may fall. Often, this protective reaction is absent or delayed in patients who have had strokes. A patient with a flaccid or spastic upper extremity may not be able to elicit the motor components of the protective response. When testing this reaction, one should try to elicit an unanticipated response. Too often, clinicians inform the patient of what they are planning to do, thus allowing the patient an opportunity to prepare a muscle response and react with cocontraction around the joint. This eliminates any spontaneous movement on the patient's part.

Activities that can be performed to facilitate weight shifting in sitting include reaching to the right and left and to the floor and ceiling. Intervention 10-23A depicts a patient reaching to the left with her hands clasped. Incorporating these activities within the context of a functional activity is highly desirable and therapeutically beneficial. For example, to challenge a patient's ability to shift weight forward, the PTA can have the patient practice putting on shoes and socks or picking up an object off the floor. Other tasks that challenge a patient's sitting balance include the performance of activities of daily living, such as sitting on the edge of the bed or in a chair to don items of clothing or sitting in a chair to reach for a cup, as demonstrated in Intervention 10-23B and C. Reaching activities in sitting should also incorporate trunk rotation. Rotation is a frequently lost movement component in older patients. Passive or active-assisted lower trunk rotation performed in the supine position assists the patient in maintaining the necessary flexibility in the trunk musculature to perform this movement component. Furthermore, maintaining separation of the upper and lower parts of the trunk assists the patient's ability to rotate and dissociate movements of the shoulder and pelvic girdles. As the patient progresses, performance of bilateral PNF patterns (chops and lifts) can be used to facilitate trunk rotation. These exercises are illustrated in Intervention 10-24.

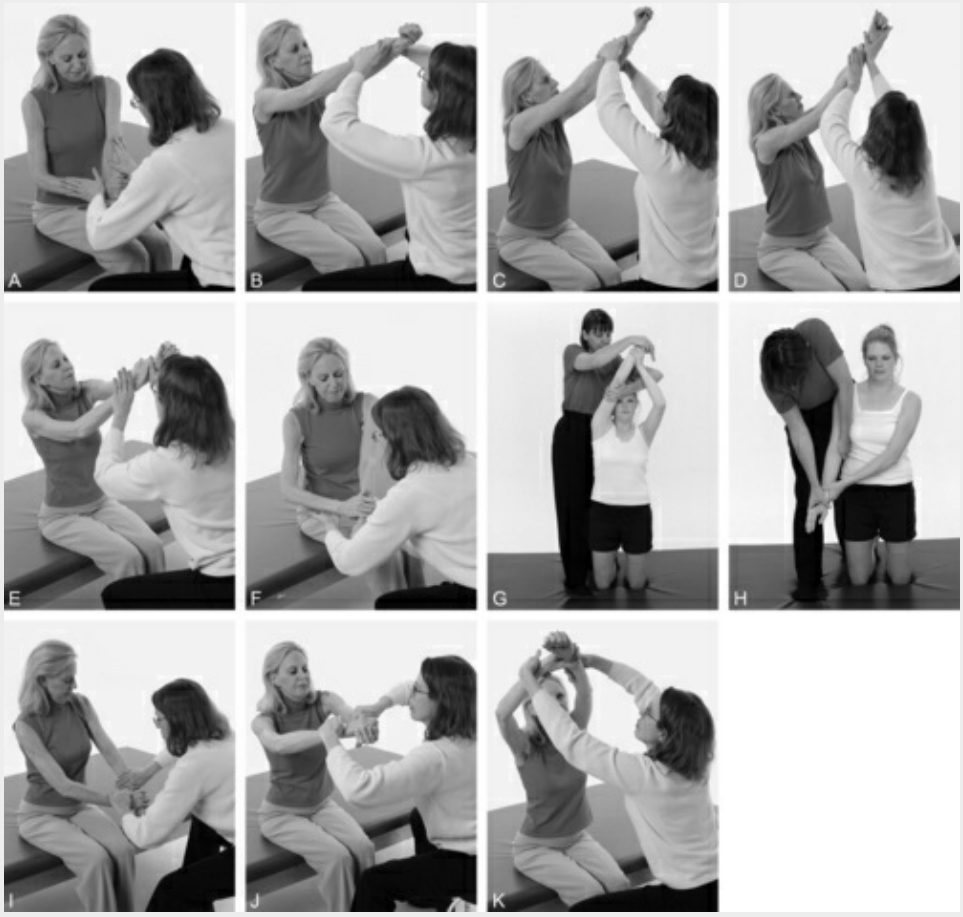
Intervention 10-23

Reaching Activities

A. Reaching with the hands clasped. Patients should practice reaching to the right and left and at various heights.
B and C. Reaching with the uninvolved upper extremity to the right and left. The involved arm is in a weight-bearing position during performance of the activity. If the patient has active movement in the involved arm, she can perform reaching tasks with it.

Intervention 10-24

Bilateral Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation Patterns while Sitting



A-C. PNF lifting pattern
D-F. PNF reverse lifting pattern
G and H. PNF chopping pattern
I-K. PNF reverse chopping pattern

Sitting Activities

A summary of interventions to be performed in sitting includes the following:
- Pelvic positioning
- Trunk positioning
- Head positioning
- Weight bearing on the involved upper extremity
- Weight shifting in anteroposterior and mediolateral directions
- Alternating isometrics
- Rhythmic stabilization
- Functional reaching

Standing

As the patient is able to tolerate more treatment activities during sitting, the patient should be progressed to upright standing. It is not necessary to perfect one posture or activity before advancing the patient to a more challenging one. Patients should work in all possible postures to reach the highest functional level. While working on sitting activities, the patient may also advance to supported standing. However, the PTA must follow the plan of care developed for the patient by the supervising PT. The primary PT should evaluate the patient's standing abilities before the PTA guides the patient to standing for the first time.

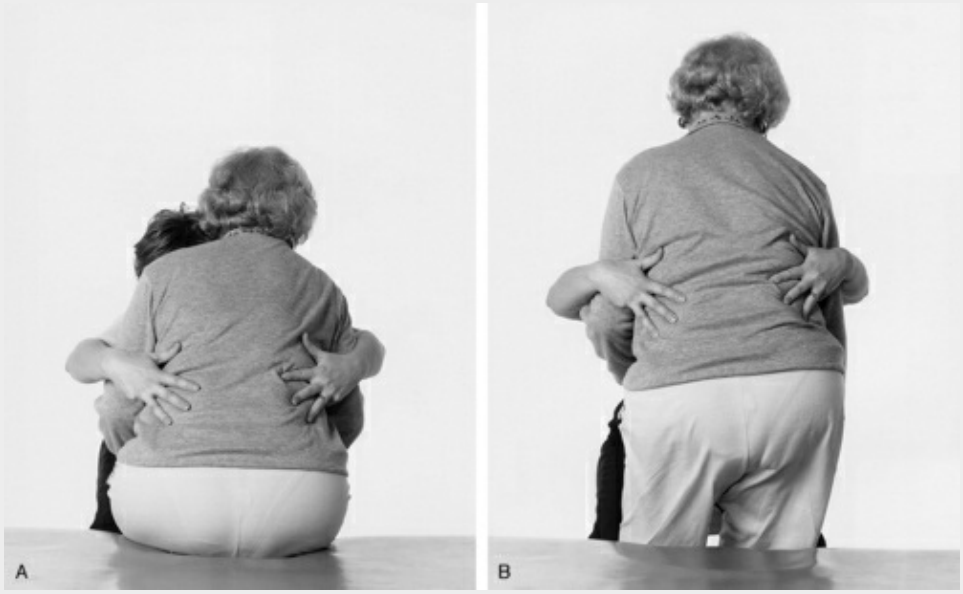
Position of the Physical Therapist Assistant in Relation to the Patient

A common question asked by students is where to position oneself when assisting the patient from

sitting to standing. Much depends on the patient and the patient's current level of motor control and function. Sitting in front of the patient as he or she transfers to standing gives the patient more space to move into and also offers the clinician the opportunity to assess the patient's posture in standing. This transition is illustrated in Intervention 10-25. The clinician may also elect to start from a squat position in front of the patient and move to standing with him or her. If this method is employed, the PTA must allow the patient physical space to perform the forward weight shift that accompanies trunk flexion before lifting the buttocks off the support surface. Often, clinicians guard the patient so closely that it is nearly impossible for the patient to complete the necessary movement sequences and weight shifts. Standing on the patient's side should be avoided initially because it can promote excessive weight shift to that side. As the patient progresses and exhibits increased control, the PTA may be able to guard the patient from the side, as shown in Intervention 10-26. In addition to the PTA's position relative to the patient, a safety belt must always be used. Use of safety belts is standard in most facilities. Even if a patient insists that he or she does not need a gait belt, it is always in the patient's and the clinician's best interest to use one.

Intervention 10-25

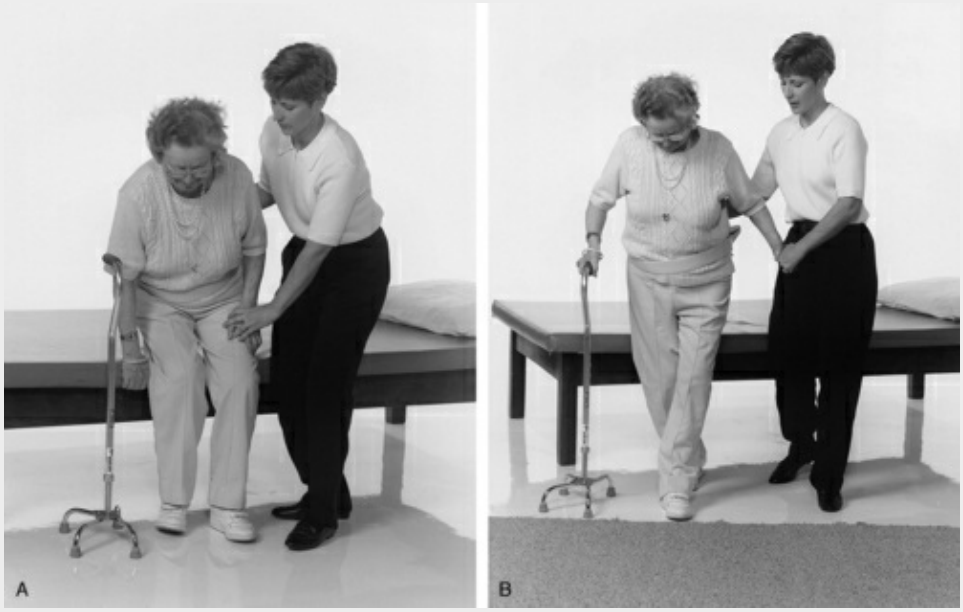
Sit-to-Stand Transition



A. Prepositioning of the patient is important before a sit-to-stand transition is performed. The patient must be able to shift weight to scoot forward on the mat so that only half of the femurs are supported. The patient's feet should be shoulder-width apart.
B. The physical therapist assistant sits in front of the patient with her hands on the patient's paraspinals to facilitate an anterior weight shift. The patient should be encouraged to push up with both lower extremities equally to promote symmetric weight bearing.

Intervention 10-26

Guarding the Patient from the Side During a Sit-to-Stand Transition



Patients with fair to good static and dynamic standing balance may be able to be guarded from their involved side.

A. The physical therapist assistant provides a tactile cue to the patient's upper extremity to inhibit abnormal tone. Note the position of the patient's involved lower extremity during the transition. The left leg is positioned in front of the right leg. This position reinforces reliance on the uninvolved lower extremity to assume the standing position. Ideally, both lower extremities should be positioned symmetrically.
B. Once the patient is standing, an inhibitory handhold can be used to decrease flexor tone, which is present in the patient's elbow, wrist, and fingers.

Sit-to-Stand Transition

The transition from sitting to standing is the first part of the standing progression. The patient must initially be able to maintain the lower extremities in flexion at the hips, knees, and ankles. In addition, the patient must be able to achieve and maintain a neutral or slightly anterior tilt of the pelvis during a forward weight shift over the fixed feet. It therefore becomes essential that the patient be able to advance the tibias over the feet. Patients with plantar flexion contractures of the ankles or increased tone in the gastrocnemius-soleus complex may not be able to achieve the amount of passive ankle dorsiflexion necessary to complete this activity. In people without neurologic deficits, the ascent to standing is accomplished by combining knee extension with hip extension. Frequently, patients are unable to perform this part of the movement smoothly and exhibit difficulty maintaining a neutral hip position once they are upright because of lack of strength in their hip extensors. These patients often appear to be in a crouched or flexed position, or they use strong knee hyperextension to lock the knees into extension while coming to stand.

Other deviations noted during sit to stand include excessive reliance on the uninvolved lower extremity. This may be caused by lower extremity weakness, insecurity, and a fear of falling. This reliance is evident by increased weight bearing on the uninvolved leg and truncal asymmetry. The problem can be accentuated if the patient is allowed to push up with the upper extremity. Intervention 10-27 shows a patient coming to stand with the use of the upper extremity. Continued performance of sit-to-stand transitions in this manner results in the patient's inability to bear weight on the involved leg and can intensify the patient's insecurity about stability of the involved lower extremity. Patients with hemiplegia must be encouraged to perform sit-to-stand transitions with equal weight bearing on both lower extremities. Symmetric foot placement, with feet shoulder-width apart, and the patient's feet flat on the floor can assist in the achievement of equal weight bearing.

Intervention 10-27

Sit-to-Stand Using the Uninvolved Upper Extremity

Using the uninvolved upper extremity to assist with coming to stand. Note the increased weight bearing on the uninvolved side and the associated asymmetry.

The patient's upper extremity must be carefully monitored during a sit-to-stand transfer. The involved arm should not be allowed to hang down at the patient's side. In this situation, gravity applies a distractional force that can predispose an individual to shoulder subluxation. The upper extremity can be prepositioned by placing the involved arm on the patient's knee or the PTA's arm, as shown in Intervention 10-28. In some instances, a sling may be necessary to give additional support, or the patient may be advised to place the involved hand in a pants pocket. By prepositioning the upper extremity in these ways, one is supporting the shoulder and applying a minimal amount of approximation to the shoulder joint and surrounding musculature.

Intervention 10-28

Prepositioning the Patient's Involved Upper Extremity

It is necessary to preposition the patient's involved upper extremity during movement transitions to prevent injury to the shoulder.

During the sit-to-stand transition, the PTA needs to carefully gauge the amount of physical assistance required by the patient. The clinician can provide manual cues over the patient's gluteus maximus muscle to promote hip extension. As previously stated, if the patient is unable to extend the hips, the patient will often assume a forward flexed posture. The PTA may find it physically necessary to move the patient's hips into extension to achieve an upright position. Intervention 10-29 illustrates a PTA who is providing manual contacts at the patient's gluteal muscles.

Intervention 10-29

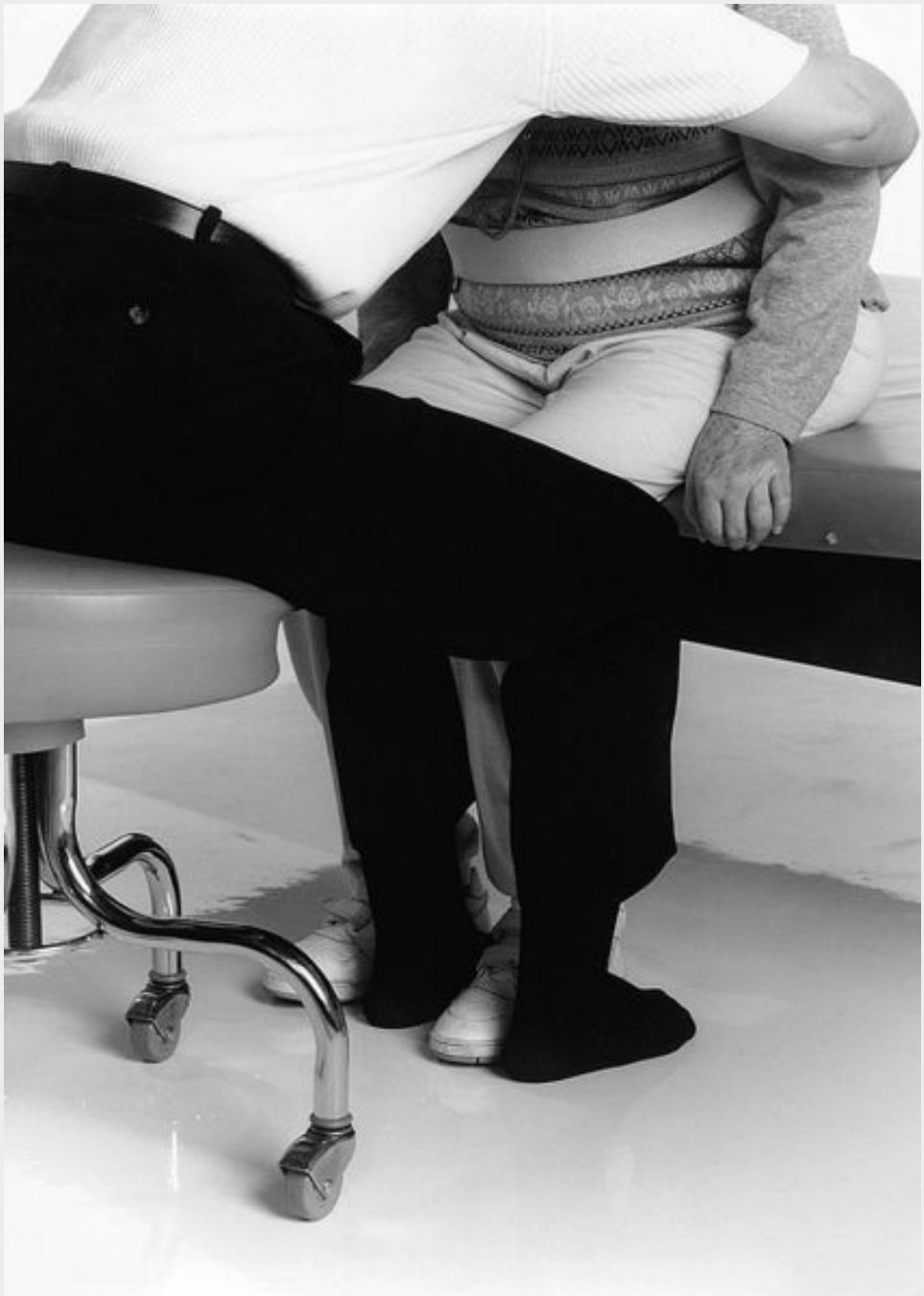
Using Tactile Cues to Assist the Sit-to-Stand Transition

During sit-to-stand and standing activities, the physical therapist assistant can apply tactile cues to the gluteal muscles to help achieve hip extension and an upright posture.

In addition to monitoring the position of the patient's hips, one must observe the alignment of the patient's involved knee and ankle for proper positioning. If the ankle musculature is flaccid and unstable, the patient may bear weight on the malleolus or the lateral aspect of his or her foot, with resulting long-term ligamentous injury. To avoid this complication, the PTA needs to preposition the patient's foot or block the patient's ankle to keep it from turning inward. This can be accomplished by placing both feet around the patient's involved ankle, thus providing additional support. This type of positioning also provides additional support to the entire involved lower extremity. Intervention 10-30 shows a PTA blocking the patient's ankle to prevent instability.

Intervention 10-30

Blocking the Patient's Ankle



The physical therapist assistant blocks the patient's involved ankle with both of her feet to prevent weight bearing on the malleoli and possible injury.

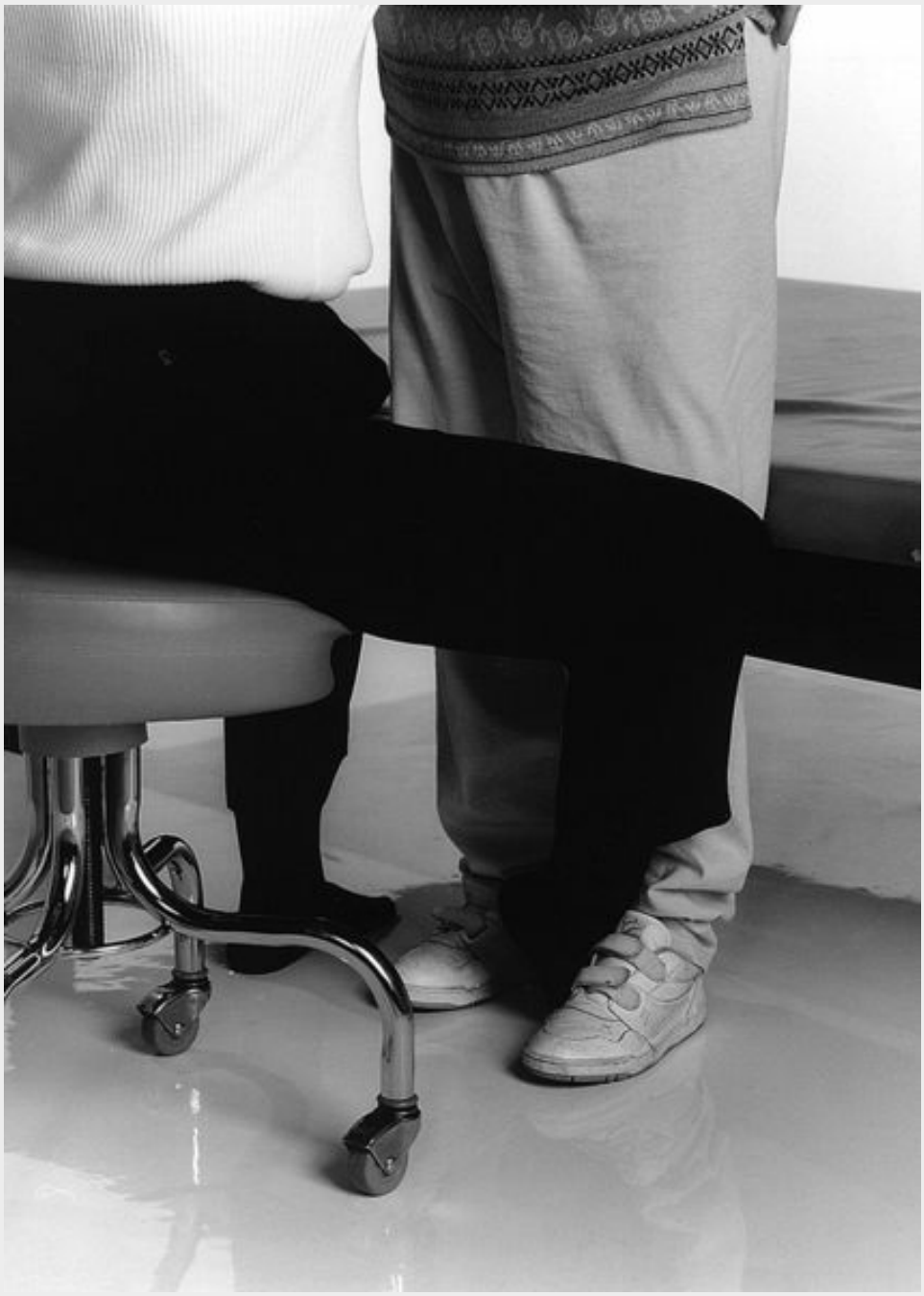
Establishing Knee Control

Inadequate knee control impedes the patient's ability to stand and to ambulate. The patient's knee may buckle when the joint is required to accept weight. This condition is often caused by weakness in the quadriceps. Clinically, when individuals with quadriceps weakness stand up, they immediately assume a crouched or flexed posture. Quadriceps weakness or inefficient gastrocnemius-soleus function can lead to strong knee hyperextension or genu recurvatum during standing. Patients who demonstrate this condition lock their knees into extension to maintain

stability. Several explanations for this phenomenon have been suggested. Decreased proprioceptive input from the joint may cause the patient to hyperextend the knee joint in an attempt to find a stable point as maximum input is received at the joint's end range or closed-pack position. Overactive or spastic quadriceps and a lack of balance between strength of the hamstrings and quadriceps have also been cited as reasons for knee hyperextension. In both situations, knee instability results because the patient does not have active control over the thigh muscles. To control these deviations, appropriate manual (tactile) cues around the knee must be used. Pressure on the anterior shin may be needed when buckling is present. The PTA may actually have to assist the knee joint into extension, as illustrated in Intervention 10-31. In contrast, manual cues applied to the posterior knee may be required in the presence of knee hyperextension. The clinician may need to prevent the knee from extending to a completely locked position. Continued knee hyperextension can cause long-term ligamentous and capsular problems and therefore should be avoided.

Intervention 10-31

Using Tactile Cues to Promote Knee Extension



The physical therapist assistant uses her leg to provide a tactile cue to the patient's shin. This cue is used to promote knee extension in the involved lower extremity.

Positioning the Standing Patient

Once the patient is standing, the goal is to achieve symmetry and midline orientation. Equal weight bearing on both lower extremities, an erect trunk, and midline orientation of the head are the desired postural outcomes. Patients who have extremely low function may require additional assistance. In some instances, it may initially be necessary to have the patient work on standing on the tilt table. The tilt table should be used only when the patient requires excessive assistance or when the patient is unable to tolerate upright standing because of medical complications or physiologic instability.

For patients who do not need the tilt table but who have poor trunk and lower extremity control, the therapist may determine that a second person is needed to assist with positioning the patient's trunk and involved upper or lower extremity. The support person can be behind the patient,

providing tactile cues for trunk extension. The person may assist with positioning of the involved upper extremity. A bedside table or an ARJO walker are often used to provide the upper extremities with a weight-bearing surface. Increased proprioceptive input is received through the involved upper extremity during weight bearing. The use of upper extremity support also assists in unloading the lower extremity and decreases the amount of control needed for the patient to stand and to bear weight. Intervention 10-32 illustrates a patient who is using a bedside table during standing activities. At times, it is helpful for the second person to be at the patient's side. Much depends on the individual patient and his or her response to standing and weight-bearing activities.

Intervention 10-32

Using a Bedside Table During Standing Activities

A bedside table can be used during standing activities to support the involved upper extremity. The physical therapist assistant provides a tactile cue to maintain the wrist in a neutral to slightly

extended position with the fingers extended.

Early Standing Activities: Weight Shifting

The PTA can help the patient to practice standing activities from the patient's bed, the mat table, or the parallel bars. Early standing activities should include weight shifts (moving the patient's center of gravity) to the right and left and in anterior and posterior directions. Small, controlled weights shifts are preferred to those that are extreme. Observation of the patient's responses to these early attempts at weight shifting is essential. Patients are often reluctant to shift weight onto the involved lower extremity. To avoid weight shifting, the patient laterally flexes the trunk toward the side of the weight shift instead of accepting weight onto the lower extremity and elongating the trunk.

The clinician must monitor the position of the patient's hip, knee, and ankle during all standing activities. Achievement of hip extension with the patient's pelvis in a neutral or slightly anterior position is desired. As stated previously, tactile cues applied to the gluteus maximus may be necessary to assist the patient with hip extension. If the patient is experiencing difficulty with knee control, the PTA may elect to spend part of the treatment session working on this problem. Having the patient slowly bend and straighten the involved knee is the first step. The PTA may have to guide the knee into flexion and then extension manually. The patient should gauge the amount of muscle force generated during this task. Frequently, patients exaggerate knee extension by quickly snapping the knee back into an extended position. Once the patient is able to control this movement, the PTA should have the patient relax the knee into flexion and then slowly extend it without producing knee hyperextension or genu recurvatum. Active achievement of the last 10 to 15 degrees of extension is often most difficult for the patient. Clinicians often use terminal knee extension exercises to assist with this control, although current evidence would suggest that patients must practice activities in a task-specific manner and in the appropriate environmental context. Therefore, if the patient needs to achieve the final few degrees of knee extension in standing or walking, the patient should practice this component of the movement in an upright standing position or during gait training activities.

Assessing Balance Responses

As the patient continues to perform weight-shifting activities, the therapist should observe if the patient has appropriate standing balance responses. Ankle dorsiflexion should be elicited as the patient's body mass is shifted posteriorly. Figure 10-7 shows an ankle strategy. This motor response normally occurs as a balance strategy in standing. If the patient's balance is disrupted too much, the patient will exhibit a hip or stepping strategy. Movement of the hip occurs to realign the patient. A stepping strategy is used if the patient's balance is displaced too far, and a step is taken to prevent the patient from falling. Many patients who have sustained CVAs lack the ability to elicit these appropriate balance responses in standing secondary to muscle weakness and the inability to time muscle responses. This problem is illustrated in Figure 10-8. The PTA should note the patient's ability to perform these strategies (ankle, hip, stepping), especially if the patient is working on ambulation skills.

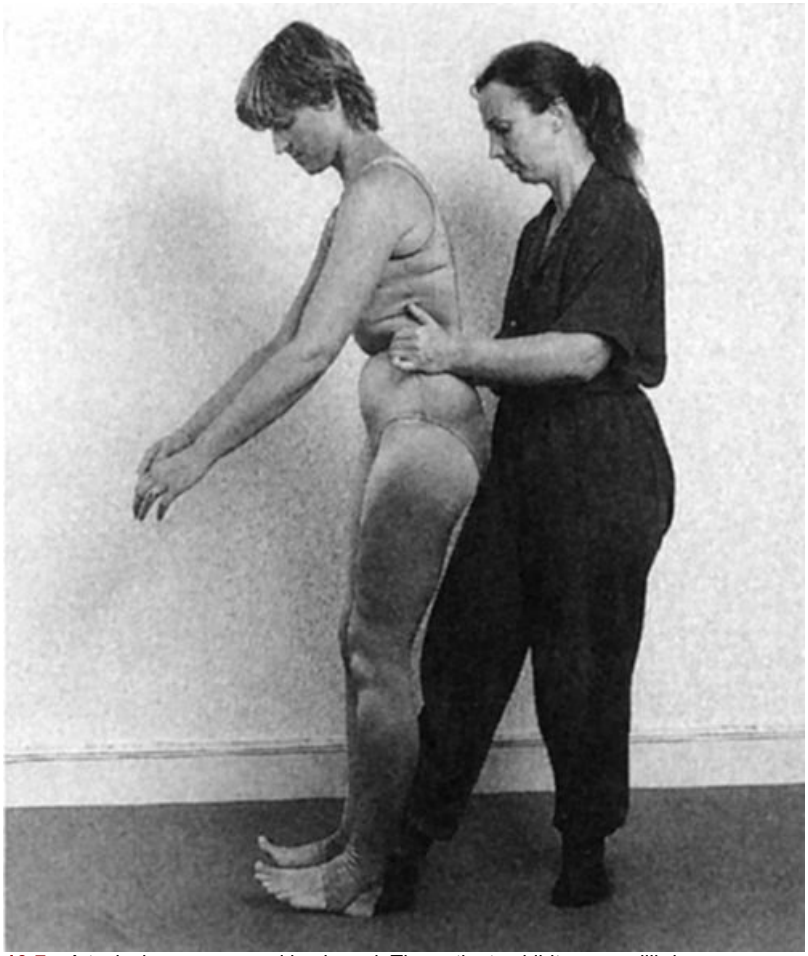


FIGURE 10-7 A typical person moved backward. The patient exhibits an equilibrium response. Note the dorsiflexion of the ankles and toes; the arms move forward, as well as the head. (From Bobath B: *Adult hemiplegia: evaluation and treatment,* ed 3. Boston, 1990, Butterworth-Heinemann.)

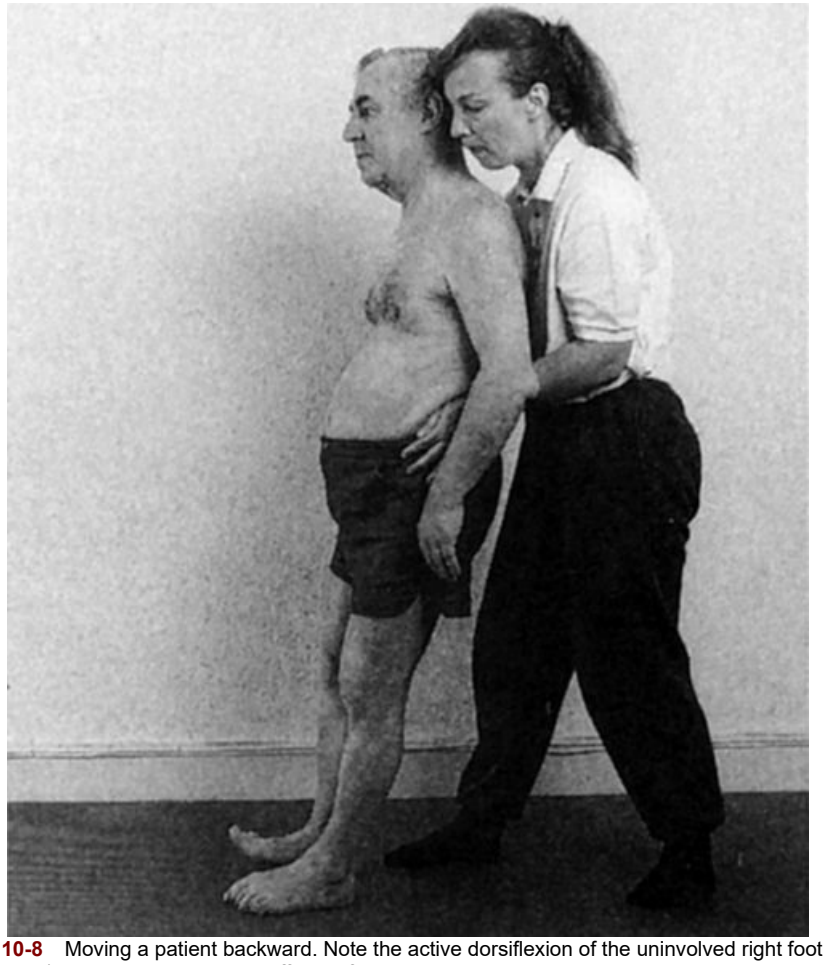


FIGURE 10-8 Moving a patient backward. Note the active dorsiflexion of the uninvolved right foot (normal balance reaction) and its absence in the affected foot. (From Bobath B: *Adult hemiplegia: evaluation and treatment,* ed 3. Boston, 1990, Butterworth Heinemann.)

Standing Progression (Walking): Position of the Physical Therapist Assistant in Relation to the Patient

Once the patient is able to maintain an upright position and accept weight on lower extremities, it is time to progress the patient to stepping. Because walking is the primary goal for many of our patients and it is the treatment intervention in which patients most wish to participate, walking should be practiced and encouraged during therapy if at all possible. Although 80% to 90% of patients progress to independent ambulation after their stroke, approximately 80% present with gait defects including decreased gait speed and efficiency and postural instability and asymmetry (Hornby et al., 2011). Practice guidelines related to gait training have changed. Therapists used to think that patients needed to possess adequate trunk and lower extremity control for ambulation. However, with the research available regarding task-specific training and body-weight support treadmill ambulation, therapists are now initiating gait training activities with patients who possess limited balance and lower extremity motor control.

It is not safe or functional to drag a patient down the parallel bars just to satisfy the patient's need to walk, and, at the same time, it is not necessary to perfect the patient's sitting or standing posture before introducing ambulation activities.

The PTA can position herself in several different places during standing activities with a patient. The PTA can sit or stand in front of the patient and can control the patient at the hips. The PTA can also stand on the patient's hemiplegic side. This method of guarding can be of benefit if the patient requires tactile cues at the pelvis or posterior hip area of if the patient is demonstrating improved control of the involved lower extremity and requires only tactile cueing distally. In patients with pusher syndrome, standing on the patient's involved side can promote excessive weight shifting to that extremity and should be avoided; the clinician should position herself on the patient's uninvolved side in an effort to increase weight bearing there.

Advancing the Uninvolved Lower Extremity

Initially, patients should be taught to step forward with the uninvolved lower extremity, as shown in Intervention 10-33. The advantage to this sequence is that it requires the patient to bear weight exclusively on the involved leg, thus promoting single-limb support (weight bearing). Many patients take a small step with the uninvolved leg or simply slide the foot forward along the floor in an effort to make this task easier. Both instances decrease the amount of time spent in unilateral limb support on the involved lower extremity. Although patients are able to ambulate in such fashion, the continuance of this pattern can lead to the development of postural deviations and increased lower extremity tone. To achieve a more normal gait pattern, the patient must be able to maintain single-limb support on the involved side during stance to allow the other leg to take a normal-sized step. Single-limb support is also required for other functional activities, such as negotiation of curbs and stairs.

Intervention 10-33

Pregait Activities

In standing, the patient initially steps forward with the uninvolved lower extremity. This maneuver facilitates single weight bearing on the involved leg as the patient steps. The physical therapist assistant blocks the patient's involved lower extremity as needed to prevent knee buckling.

Advancing the Involved Lower Extremity

Often, a portion of the patient's treatment session is devoted to practicing forward stepping. Once the patient is able to advance the uninvolved leg forward and to maintain weight on it, the patient is progressed to advancing the involved lower extremity. Patients often have difficulty in initiating hip flexion for lower extremity advancement. As previously stated, the extension synergy pattern is frequently present in the involved lower extremity and becomes evident as the patient tries to take a step forward. Instead of using hip flexion to advance the leg forward, the patient uses hip circumduction (hip abduction with internal rotation). Pelvic retraction frequently accompanies this movement pattern. Knee extension and ankle plantar flexion, also part of the extension synergy, can be evident. Consequently, as the patient moves the involved leg forward, the extremity advances as an extended unit. This extension limits the patient's ability to initiate knee flexion, which is needed for the swing phase of the gait cycle, and ankle dorsiflexion, which is necessary for heelstrike. Strong extension in the lower extremity results in decreased weight bearing on the involved lower extremity during stance. Because of the presence of abnormal tone and the strong desire of many patients to walk, PTs and PTAs frequently see patients who ambulate in this fashion. Patients should be discouraged from walking like this if at all possible. Continued substitution of hip circumduction for true hip flexion can cause the patient to relearn an abnormal and inefficient movement pattern. Concomitantly, abnormal stresses are placed on the involved joints, and it becomes increasingly difficult to change or replace the abnormal pattern with a more normal one. Ambulation performed in this way also reinforces the patient's lower extremity spasticity.

Achieving a Normal Gait Pattern: Positioning the Pelvis

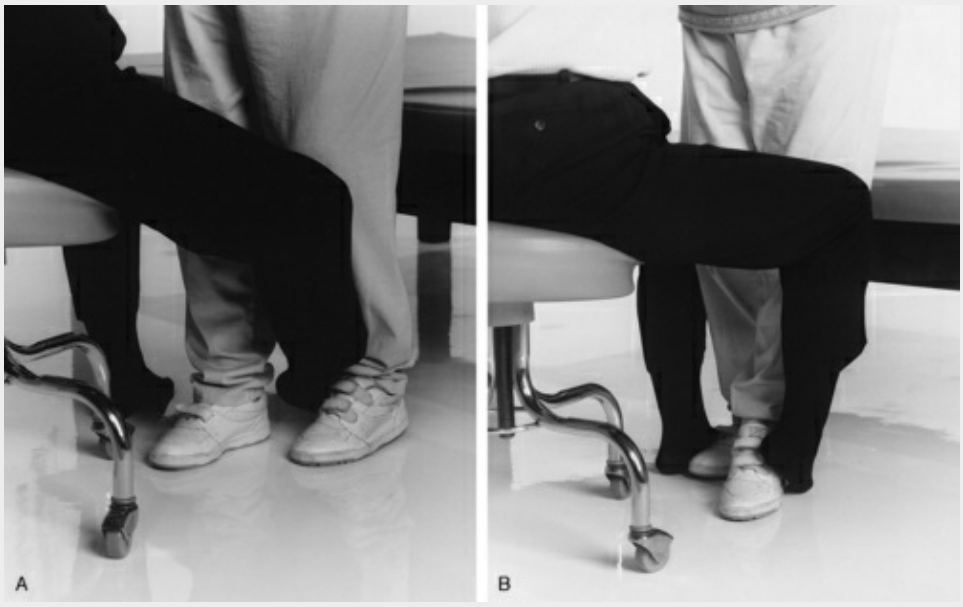
To assist the patient in initiating hip flexion, the following techniques can be employed. Before providing any tactile cues, the PTA must determine the position of the patient's pelvis. The PTA should note the relative position of the patient's pelvis in terms of pelvic tilt and observe whether the pelvis is in a retracted position. If the patient's pelvis is retracted or in an elevated or hiked position, the PTA needs to provide a downward and slightly forward tactile cue on the patient's pelvis to restore proper pelvic alignment. It may be necessary for the PTA to also apply a tactile cue on the patient's posterior buttocks to assist the pelvis into a more neutral pelvic tilt. Often, the patient can be asked to flex (bend) the involved knee to assist in bringing the pelvis to a better position.

Advancing the Involved Lower Extremity Forward

Once the pelvis is in proper alignment, the patient is asked to slide the involved foot forward. If the patient is unable to initiate this movement, the PTA may need to help the patient manually. This technique is demonstrated in Intervention 10-34. Sliding the foot forward is easier than having the patient attempt to lift the involved limb off the floor to advance it. Increased effort and possible patient frustration can increase abnormal tone. At times, it may be difficult to slide the involved foot forward because of the friction created between the patient's shoe and the floor. Patients can be requested to take their shoes off, or a pillowcase or small towel can be placed under the patient's foot to make it easier to advance. A piece of stockinette can also be placed on the toe of the patient's shoe to reduce friction. The patient should practice bringing the foot forward and backward several times. The PTA can make this activity easier for the patient by physically moving the towel or pillowcase for the patient. Again, tactile cues applied at the posterior or lateral hip and pelvis are beneficial. Maintaining the involved knee in slight flexion decreases the likelihood that the patient will initiate lower extremity advancement with hip hiking or circumduction.

Intervention 10-34

Advancing the Involved Leg Forward



The patient may need assistance stepping forward with the involved leg.
A. The physical therapist assistant can use her foot behind the patient's heel to advance the involved leg.
B. Repositioning the foot may be necessary.

Backward Stepping

Stepping backward should also be practiced. When asking the patient to step backward, the PTA should note the position of the patient's hip and pelvis. Often, the patient performs hip extension with hiking and retraction. The patient should be encouraged to advance the lower extremity backward followed by hip extension.

Putting It All Together

Once the patient is able to move the involved leg forward and back with fairly good success, the patient is progressed to putting several steps together. The patient is instructed to step forward first with the uninvolved lower extremity in preparation for toe-off and the swing phase of the gait cycle. Overground locomotor training can begin once the patient is able to take several steps with both lower extremities. Intervention 10-35 illustrates a patient who is ambulating several steps. Table 10-8 provides a review of the normal gait training progression.

Intervention 10-35

Assisting Ambulation

A. The clinician uses an axillary grip with her right arm and lifts the patient's upper trunk up and back. The patient was previously trained to use a quad cane. As the patient gains control, a straight cane can be introduced.
B. The clinician uses her left hand to assist the patient to initiate the movements from her legs in right step stance. It is important to teach the patient how to shift weight over both legs without excessive leaning onto the quad cane.
C. As the patient practices the same movements in left step stance, she cannot keep her right heel on the floor because of overshifting to the cane, insufficient hip extension range and control, or insufficient ankle dorsiflexion range. Forward and backward weight shifting movements are practiced repeatedly in the right and left step stance positions.
D. The clinician's right hand uses an axillary grip to support the upper trunk while her left hand is on the posterolateral side of the patient's left rib cage.
E. The clinician reminds the patient to keep her upper trunk extended as she shifts her trunk and hip forward. Note how the clinician's feet step in parallel with the patient's.
F. The clinician must be careful to time her corrections and assistance to the patient's movement initiation patterns.

(From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation,* New York, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.)

Table 10-8

Ambulation Progression

1. Standing activities	The patient should practice weight shifting to the right and left, and forward and backward. Knee control activities should also be emphasized.
2. Advancing the uninvolved lower extremity	The patient should practice stepping forward and backward with the uninvolved lower extremity. Emphasis should be on weight bearing on the involved lower extremity and achievement of the proper step length.
3. Advancing the involved lower extremity	The patient should practice advancing the involved lower extremity forward. A tactile cue at the hip may be necessary to promote hip flexion and to decrease hip hiking and circumduction.
4. Stepping back with the involved lower extremity	Stepping backward with the involved lower extremity must also be practiced. The tendency again is for the patient to hike the hip. Patients must concentrate on releasing the extensor tone and allowing for hip and knee flexion.
5. Putting several steps together	Once the patient can step forward and backward with both the uninvolved and involved extremities, the patient must begin to put several steps together. Emphasis must be placed on advancing the involved lower extremity during swing and appropriate weight shifts during the stance phase of the gait cycle.

Normal Components of Gait

When assessing the patient's movements during the initial stages of ambulation training, the

clinician should note the following movement components: (1) diagonal weight shift to the uninvolved side should occur during advancement of the involved lower extremity; (2) accompanied by this shift is trunk elongation; and (3) the patient needs to flex the involved knee and advance the hip forward. Many patients have a difficult time with this specific movement combination. The ability to flex the knee with the hip in a relatively neutral or extended position, coupled with adequate ankle dorsiflexion to prevent toe drag, is extremely difficult. If one thinks in terms of the Brunnstrom stages of recovery, to walk with a normal gait pattern requires that the patient perform a stage 5 movement combination, which means combining different components of various synergy patterns.

Patients who lack the ability to flex the knee and to dorsiflex the foot for swing tend to exaggerate the weight shift to the uninvolved side in an effort to shorten the extremity so that the foot can clear the floor. It may be necessary for the PTA to help the patient with lower extremity advancement. Again, the PTA can use a towel under the patient's foot or manual cues to the posterior leg to advance the extremity forward. The PTA may also need to guide the patient's weight shifts during this time. As stated previously, many patients are unable to gauge the degree of movement during early weight-shifting activities appropriately. The patient may need tactile cues at the hip or trunk to promote the proper postural response.

Turning Around

While practicing putting several steps together to walk forward, the patient should also learn to turn around. Turning toward the involved side is usually easier. Instead of having the patient think about picking up the involved foot and taking a step, the PTA should ask the patient to move the involved heel toward the midline. When the patient moves the heel inward, the toes are automatically moved outward and are ready for the directional change. From this position, the patient can easily step with the uninvolved lower extremity. It may be necessary for the patient to repeat this sequence several times to complete the turn. The clinician must carefully observe the patient's performance of this activity. Frequently, the patient attempts to turn by twisting the lower extremity, a movement that can result in injury to the knee and ankle if not prohibited.

Upper Extremity Positioning During Ambulation

Care must always be given to the position of the patient's upper extremity during gait activities. The involved arm can be prepositioned on the PTA's upper extremity, on a bedside table, in the patient's pocket, or in an appropriate sling. The patient's arm should not be allowed to hang unsupported with gravity pulling down on it, especially in the presence of shoulder subluxation. Many patients experience an increase in the amount of tone present in the upper extremity during ambulation activities. This is the result of overflow of abnormal muscle tone, which is often exaggerated as patients attempt more challenging activities. Patients should be encouraged to consciously try to relax, thus controlling the amount of tone present. Inhibiting handholds and armholds can be used for patients who do not require a great deal of physical assistance for ambulation. Intervention 10-36 demonstrates one of the most common tone-inhibiting positions for the upper extremity. A handshake grasp combined with upper extremity abduction with wrist extension and thumb abduction can be used effectively in patients who experience an increase in flexor tone during ambulation. The handhold maintains the upper extremity in a position opposite that of the dominant flexor synergy pattern. For patients with good upper extremity motor return, interventions should focus on the return of reciprocal arm swing.

Intervention 10-36

Inhibiting the Patient's Involved Upper Extremity while Ambulating

Ambulating the patient while inhibiting increased tone in the involved upper extremity. Shoulder abduction and external rotation combined with elbow extension and wrist and finger extension are desired.

Common Gait Deviations

As previously mentioned, several common gait deviations are seen in patients with hemiplegia. For the purposes of our discussion here, possible gait deviations that may develop are addressed by each individual joint and are summarized in Table 10-9.

Table 10-9

Common Gait Deviations Seen in Patients with Stroke

Deviation	Possible Causes
Hip	
Retraction	Increased lower extremity muscle tone
Hiking	Inadequate hip and knee flexion, increased tone in the trunk and lower extremity
Circumduction	Increased extensor tone, inadequate hip and knee flexion, increased plantar flexion in the ankle or foot drop
Inadequate hip flexion	Increased extensor tone, flaccid lower extremity
Knee	
Decreased knee flexion during swing	Increased lower extremity extensor tone, weak hip flexion
Excessive flexion during stance	Weakness or flaccidity in the lower extremity, increased flexor tone in the lower extremity, weak ankle plantar flexors
Hyperextension during stance	Hip retraction, increased extensor tone in the lower extremity, weakness in the gluteus maximus, hamstrings, or quadriceps
Instability during stance	Increased lower extremity flexor tone, flaccidity
Ankle	
Foot drop	Increased extensor tone, flaccidity
Ankle inversion or eversion	Increased tone in specific muscle groups, flaccidity
Toe clawing	Increased flexor tone in the toe muscles

Ambulation

Quality of Movement versus Function

Clinicians often ask themselves whether they should allow the patient to walk even though the patient's gait pattern does not possess the desired quality of movement. In the present health-care environment in which resources are limited, clinicians must work toward functional patient goals. Function must be considered at all times; however, consideration must be given to the goals or activities the patient wishes to pursue. PTs and PTAs no longer have the luxury of spending months working with patients. In the current managed care environment, the PT must carefully design the patient's plan of care and choose activities that effectively address function and an optimal patient outcome. In addition, clinicians must use the patient's resources appropriately and responsibly to achieve optimal benefit. Clinicians will continue to assist patients in the achievement of more normal movement patterns during performance of functional tasks; however, the emphasis of physical therapy intervention must be on the patient's ability to function in the home and community environment and on the development of treatment plans based on principles of motor learning and neuroplasticity.

Selection of an Assistive Device

For the patient who is progressing well with ambulation activities, selection of the most appropriate assistive device is the next step in the patient's rehabilitation. This decision should be discussed with the patient, the patient's family (if appropriate), and the primary PT. Individual differences and preferences do exist regarding which assistive device may be desirable for the patient.

Generally, walkers are not appropriate for patients who have sustained a CVA because these patients frequently lack the hand and upper extremity function needed to use the walker safely and effectively. Most often, clinicians recommend some type of cane for the patient. Hemiwalkers (walk-canes), wide-base and narrow-base quad canes, and straight (single-point) canes are the most popular assistive devices. The wider the base of the cane, the more support it offers. Unfortunately, some of the wider-base canes are not as functional in the patient's home. For example, if a person lives in a small home or trailer, a hemiwalker may be difficult to maneuver in areas with limited space. In addition, hemiwalkers cannot be used on stairs. Wide-base quad canes are a little smaller than hemiwalkers, but they are still not as easy to use on steps because they often need to be turned sideways to fit onto a step. Narrow-base quad canes and straight (single-point) canes usually offer the most flexibility in the patient's home and can be easily used in the community.

Some PTs often suggest starting the patient with a more stable cane that provides greater support and then decreasing the support as the patient progresses. That is certainly an option, but one must recognize that once a patient has trained with a device, it is often difficult to advance the patient to the next, less stable one because of the patient's fear of falling and overreliance on the initial device. Many clinicians therefore challenge the patient early on by providing less support initially and transitioning to a different device if the patient requires additional support. Canes should be of

adequate height to allow the patient's elbow to bend approximately 20 to 30 degrees when the patient has his or her hand on the handgrip. It is important to know whether a patient is going to purchase an assistive device for home use, because a physician's order is necessary for reimbursement.

Any equipment that may be needed for the patient at home should be ordered so that it can be delivered and properly adjusted before the patient leaves the rehabilitation facility. This need can create a dilemma for the PT and PTA because it is difficult to know how much the patient will progress and what the long-term needs might be.

Ambulation Training with Assistive Devices

The patient may need to work on assisted ambulation for some time. It is often difficult for patients to coordinate all parts of the body during walking. The patient needs to be able to maintain a stable postural base at the pelvis and trunk to initiate more distal movement. Frequently, a patient masters a more general skill, such as standing and weight shifting, but when asked to move from that position, the patient regresses and seems to lose the basic postural components. As the patient is able to assume more control, the PTA should begin to decrease manual assistance.

If the patient is having difficulty with standing or gait activities or if the PTA finds it difficult to control the patient, additional assistive devices can be used. At times, having the patient stand with an object in front of him or her can be helpful. For example, some clinicians use a bedside table to the side of the patient to allow the patient to bear weight on the upper extremity during ambulation training. This technique can be especially beneficial if the patient requires more external trunk control or support or if she needs proper positioning of the involved upper extremity. Grocery carts and ARJO walkers offer the same benefits. The patient can position the upper extremities on the handle of the cart or walker and then push it. The PTA can stand behind the patient and offer tactile cues and feedback to assist with lower extremity advancement and single-limb support. For some patients, ambulation training may be best practiced in the parallel bars or at a hemirail. Both of these pieces of therapeutic equipment provide the patient with a railing to grasp. However, many patients do not just hold on to the bars; they actually pull themselves along, thus making the transition to an assistive device more difficult. The hand support of a cane is considerably less than that of the parallel bars, and if the patient pulls on the cane, the support will be lost. An additional criticism of the parallel bars is that patients often lean against the bars, thus increasing tactile input and physical assistance received. The patient can rely on this cue to assist with balance correction.

Ambulation Progression with a Cane

The proper progression for a patient using an assistive device for ambulation is as follows: (1) the patient advances the uninvolved lower extremity first; (2) then advancement of the cane with the uninvolved hand; and finally (3) the involved lower extremity moves forward. Manual assistance may be necessary to help the patient advance the involved lower extremity. Physical assistance can be given by having the PTA lift or slide the patient's leg forward. The PTA can also advance the patient's involved lower extremity with the PTA's own leg. The patient must be instructed to limit how far forward he or she advances the cane. On average, a distance of 18 inches in front of the lower extremities is adequate. The patient may need assistance with the diagonal weight shift to allow for the swing phase of the gait cycle. The patient is encouraged to maintain proper postural alignment during ambulation by actively contracting the trunk extensors and the abdominals.

As discussed previously, care must be exercised with the placement of the involved upper extremity during ambulation activities. A permanent sling or a temporary one made from an elastic band, placement of the patient's hand in a pocket, the use of a bedside table, or tactile support provided by the therapist can support the patient's arm during upright activities.

The patient may have more difficulty with ambulation activities when the assistive device is introduced. This is not uncommon because the cane offers more of a challenge for the patient. Weight shifting during the stance phase of the gait cycle and maintaining the correct sequence with the device can be difficult. The ambulation progression with the cane is identical to the one the patient used when beginning ambulation activities from the mat or in the parallel bars. With repetition, the patient's abilities in this area should improve.

Cane Use and Asymmetry

A common concern expressed by therapists after issuing a cane to a patient is the tendency toward

body asymmetry, which the cane promotes. Having the cane in the patient's uninvolved hand promotes weight bearing on that side and often makes it difficult for the patient to shift weight toward and adequately elongate the trunk on the hemiparetic side. Inadequate weight shifting, coupled with the patient's asymmetric performance of a sit-to-stand transition, will accentuate previously discussed problems with equal weight bearing on lower extremities. This point is illustrated in Figure 10-9. The goal should be the achievement of symmetry and bilateral weight bearing on lower extremities during all upright movement transitions.

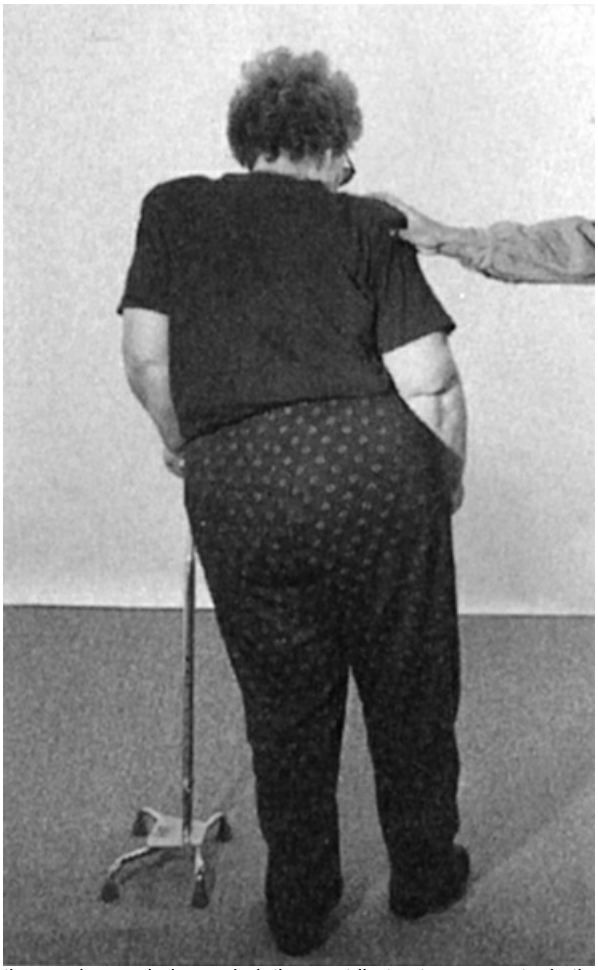


FIGURE 10-9 Use of the quad cane during ambulation contributes to asymmetry in the trunk and poor weight shift to the hemiplegic side. The clinician's hand is guarding the patient. (From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation*, New York, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.)

An individual's ability to ambulate is a primary factor used in the determination of the appropriate discharge destination and determines whether a patient can return to social and vocational function (Hornby et al., 2011). Additionally, walking speed can be used to predict the level of disability. A walking speed of 0.8 m/sec or greater allows an individual to ambulate in the community, whereas a speed of less than 0.4 m/sec will limit a person to ambulate in the home (Duncan et al., 2011; Schmid et al., 2007).

It is important, however, for the PT to assess the benefits of ambulation in the presence of abnormal movement patterns as we know repetition and practice is essential for motor learning and neuroplasticity. Current evidence suggests that the average number of steps performed during a typical physical therapy treatment session is approximately 300 to 800, whereas it is also recognized that thousands of steps are needed to induce neuroplasticity. Additionally, data suggest that early gait-training programs foster improvements in both walking and nonwalking tasks (Hornby et al., 2011). The primary PT must determine what type and intensities of interventions will provide the patient with the most functional outcomes possible.

Walking on Different Surfaces

The patient should begin ambulation on standard flooring. This activity is most often accomplished in the physical therapy gym. The patient should, however, quickly progress to ambulating on carpeting and other types of floor coverings, because these are much more prevalent in home environments. Once the patient has fair dynamic balance during gait and can advance the involved leg forward with good control, the patient should begin ambulation outside on different types of terrain. Walking on sidewalks, grass, and gravel is beneficial to the patient as the patient begins reentry into the community. Eventually, the patient will need to be able to walk in a crowded mall or to walk while negotiating environmental barriers.

Pusher Syndrome

As described earlier in this chapter, some patients may exhibit pusher syndrome. The previously described treatment interventions are appropriate for patients with this condition. Specific activities that should be practiced include weight bearing on the involved lower extremity, provision of appropriate tactile and proprioceptive input, midline retraining in both sitting and standing positions with the use of visual cues or a visual aid such as the therapist's arm, and the incorporation of the hands during activity performance (Karnath and Broetz, 2003). The use of fixed resistance on the patient's uninvolved side, such as that given by the clinician's body or a table, can provide the patient with the sensory feedback needed to allow him or her to correct alignment and to relearn appropriate movement strategies (Davies, 1985). During gait-training activities, the therapist can lower the height of the assistive device so that the patient has to bear weight on the uninvolved side.

Orthoses

The patient may reach a plateau at any stage and may be left with a variety of motor capabilities. Recovery usually begins proximally and then progresses more distally. Thus, for many patients, the hand and the ankle do not regain normal function. Decreased or absent ankle dorsiflexion can make ambulation activities difficult for the patient. Gait deviations emerge as the patient attempts to clear the foot and prevent the toes from dragging. If the patient is not able to activate the anterior tibialis for heel strike and to maintain the foot in relative dorsiflexion for the swing phase of the gait cycle, some type of orthosis may be needed.

PTs have varying views on the use of orthoses. Some PTs recommend orthoses for all patients, others may be more selective, and still others may not want to recommend orthoses at all for fear that a brace will interfere with the patient's ability to demonstrate normal movement patterns. The PTA and the supervising PT should discuss the philosophy that is to be applied when recommending orthoses for patients. One of the simplest ways to assess whether the patient may benefit from some type of orthosis is to Ace wrap the foot in dorsiflexion and eversion. The clinician applies the Ace wrap over the patient's shoe. This provides support to the foot and a more neutral ankle position on which to practice ambulation.

Various types of custom-made orthoses and shoe inserts are available. Many of these can be fabricated by PTs in the clinic. A discussion of the fabrication of these devices is outside the scope of this text. What is important to remember, however, is that orthoses can be beneficial pieces of equipment for many patients. The primary PT and the PTA must discuss the patient's needs to determine whether an orthosis would be therapeutically beneficial. If the opportunity exists for the patient to use a training orthosis, and for the PTA and supervising PT to work together with the patient, a positive outcome may be expected. This approach allows for a thorough recommendation to be made to the physician regarding the best orthotic option for the patient.

Prefabricated Ankle-Foot Orthoses

For the patient who has sustained a CVA, the ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) is the orthosis or brace most frequently prescribed. Figure 10-10 shows an AFO. Patients may begin early ambulation tasks with a plastic prefabricated orthosis found in the clinic or physical therapy gym. These plastic training orthoses are relatively inexpensive and serve to maintain the patient's ankle and foot in a neutral or slightly dorsiflexed position. AFOs normally come in small, medium, large, and extra-large sizes and are made for either the right or left lower extremity. The patient dons the orthosis, and then the shoe is applied. The positioning of the patient's foot in the orthosis allows the patient to ambulate

without dragging the toes and allows the patient to have some degree of heel strike. However, movement of the tibia over the fixed foot is difficult and may affect the patient's ability to perform a sit-to-stand transfer. Loosening the calf strap during the transition from sit to stand can help in alleviating this problem. AFOs are excellent training tools for patients. Use of the orthosis during treatment provides the PTA with information on how the patient would ambulate if there is improved control of the ankle.

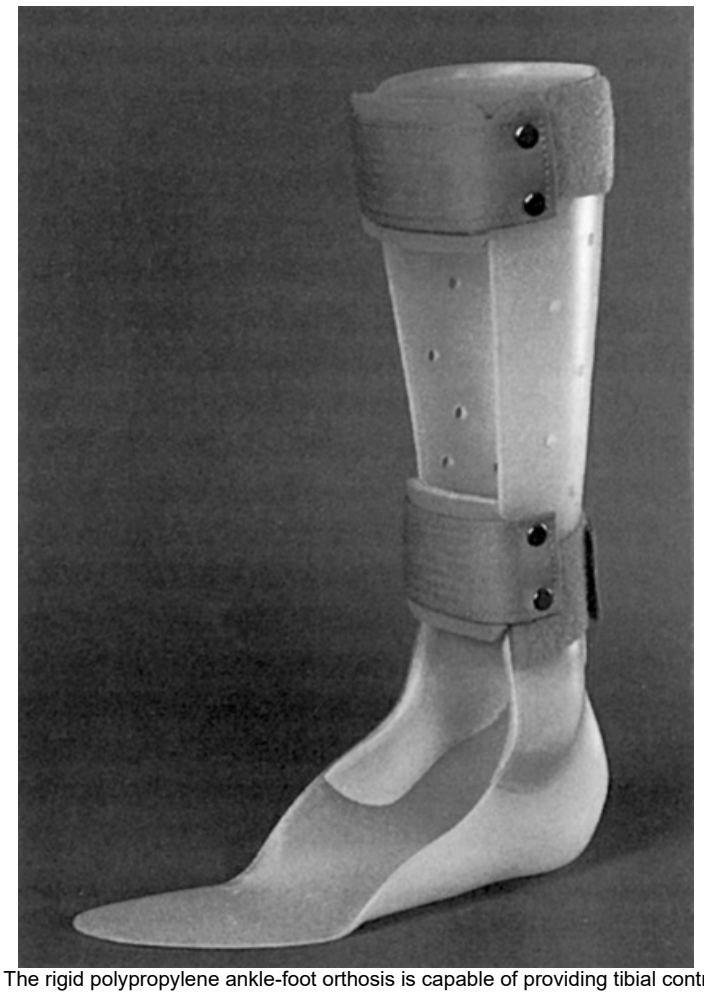


FIGURE 10-10 The rigid polypropylene ankle-foot orthosis is capable of providing tibial control in stance. (From Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME: *Orthotics in functional rehabilitation of lower limb*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

Posterior Leaf Splints

A posterior leaf splint is a plastic orthosis that controls ankle movement by limiting dorsiflexion and plantar flexion. During the stance phase of the gait cycle, the posterior portion of the orthosis becomes slightly bent. As the patient advances the lower limb forward, the orthosis recoils and helps lift the foot to prevent footdrop.

Checking for Skin Irritation

Because some AFOs are prefabricated, they do not fit the unique bony and soft tissue structures of each patient's lower extremity. Thus, areas of redness may develop, and the potential for pressure areas must be considered. This problem can be compounded by a patient's decreased or absent sensation. It is recommended that when a patient first starts to use an orthosis or brace, wearing times should be limited. Initially, a patient may wear the orthosis for 10 to 15 minutes or for one walk with the clinician. The PTA should then remove the orthosis and check the patient's skin for any areas of redness. As the patient begins to accommodate and tolerate the orthosis, wearing times can be increased. Patients should be instructed to check their feet frequently. Skin checks are

extremely important for patients with decreased sensation secondary to their stroke or who exhibit complications of diabetes or impaired circulation. Patients must be advised to remove the AFO and to check their skin frequently to avoid the development of pressure ulcers. If the patient is unable to remove the orthosis independently, a caregiver should be instructed to assist.

Customized Ankle-Foot Orthoses

In addition to prefabricated plastic AFOs, custom-fabricated solid AFOs are also available. These types of orthoses must be made by an orthotist. An orthotist is a health-care provider who specializes in the fabrication of orthoses and braces. The orthotist frequently makes a cast of the patient's foot and then fabricates the orthosis from this model. The orthosis is often set in a neutral or slightly dorsiflexed position. Custom-fabricated orthoses usually fit patients well; however, several problems exist. One disadvantage to this type of orthosis is the cost. Custom-fabricated orthoses are expensive. In some situations, the cost may be prohibitive. In addition, depending on the patient's stage in the recovery process, an orthosis ordered for a patient today may not be what the patient will need next week or when the patient is ready for discharge to home. Therapists often wait to order a custom-made orthosis until later in the patient's rehabilitation stay or when the patient begins outpatient services to ensure that the most appropriate device is fabricated. This is becoming more of a challenge, however, as lengths of stay in rehabilitation are becoming shorter.

Articulated Ankle-Foot Orthoses

Other types of custom-made orthoses exist. Orthoses with articulated ankle joints may also be prescribed for the patient. These types of orthoses offer the clinician and the orthotist the opportunity to vary the degree of ankle joint motion available to the individual patient. The orthosis can be locked in a position of slight dorsiflexion for the patient who has difficulty initiating heel strike. An orthosis positioned in dorsiflexion assists the patient who has a tendency to hyperextend the knee. The dorsiflexed position of the ankle causes the knee to move into slight flexion. Articulated orthoses also offer the clinician flexibility in choosing the position of the ankle. Figure 10-11 depicts an articulated AFO.

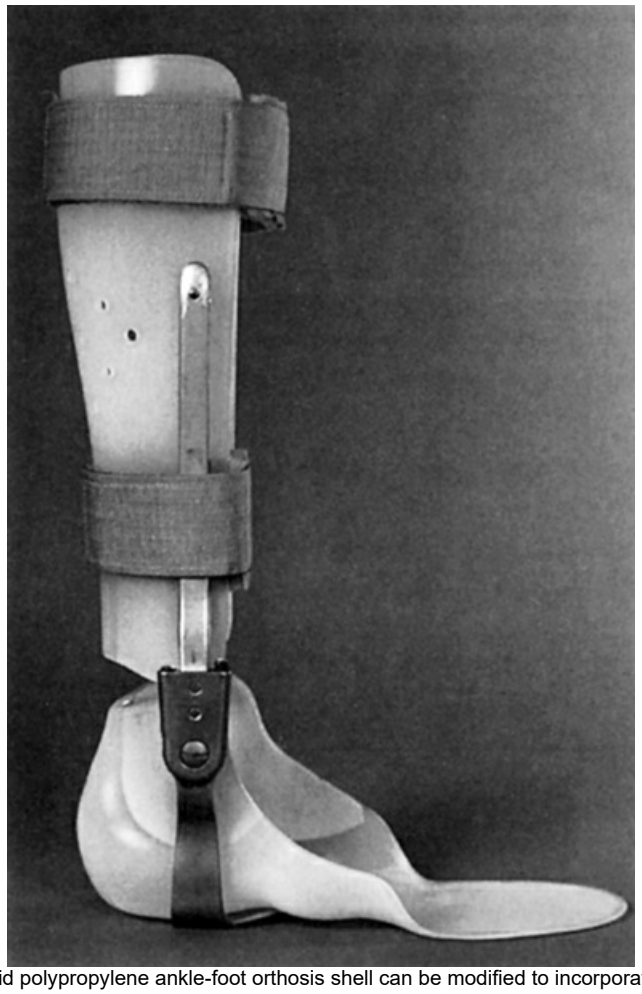


FIGURE 10-11 A rigid polypropylene ankle-foot orthosis shell can be modified to incorporate a double-adjustable ankle joint for improved versatility in patient management. (From Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME: *Orthotics in functional rehabilitation of lower limb*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

As stated previously, the ankle can be locked; however, most clinicians like to adjust the orthosis individually to meet the patient's needs. If the patient has weak or absent dorsiflexors, a posterior stop can be used to limit the patient's ability to plantar flex. Alternatively, an anterior stop may be used if the patient has marked weakness in the plantar flexors or if the anterior tibialis is hyperactive.

Articulated orthoses have several advantages. For example, the orthosis can be adjusted and changed at various times during the patient's recovery. Initially, when the involved ankle is weak, the ankle joint can be locked to provide the patient stability. As the patient progresses and can move more actively, the ankle joint can be adjusted to allow the patient greater opportunity to initiate as much dorsiflexion as possible. The orthosis can, however, be adjusted to limit plantar flexion. This type of positioning would encourage the patient's active attempts at dorsiflexion for heel strike, but it would also provide passive positioning when the patient is fatigued. If a patient is placed in an orthosis that does not allow active movement, the patient may lose the ability to strengthen weak muscle groups.

Metal upright orthoses are a type of articulated AFO that can be attached to the patient's shoe. Figure 10-12 shows a metal upright orthosis. These types of orthoses are similar to the articulated plastic orthoses just discussed. Metal uprights were the orthoses of choice for many years. They have, however, been replaced because of the lightweight nature and cosmesis associated with plastic orthoses. Although this system offers advantages in progression of ankle motion similar to those of the articulated AFO, the patient is limited to use of one pair of shoes for all occasions.

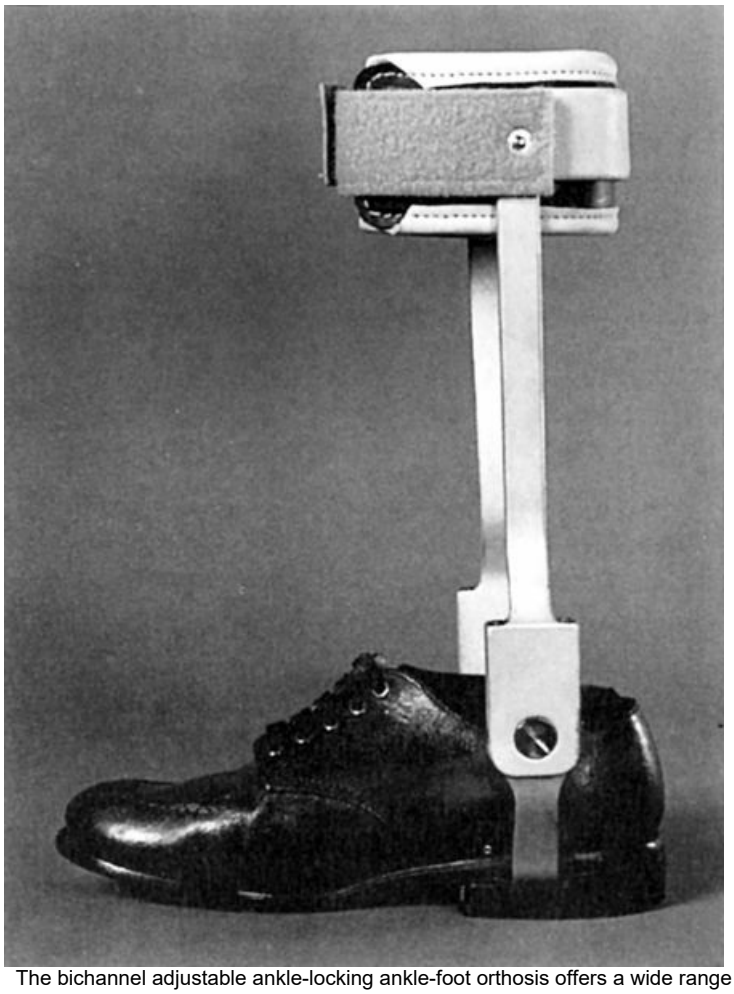


FIGURE 10-12 The bichannel adjustable ankle-locking ankle-foot orthosis offers a wide range of adjustability options but lacks cosmetic appeal. (From Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME: *Orthotics in functional rehabilitation of lower limb*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.)

Electric stimulation applied to the common peroneal nerve and anterior tibialis muscle can serve as an effective orthosis for some patients. Commercially available electric stimulation units (Ness L300) are available and may be recommended for those patients who lack active dorsiflexion during the swing phase of the gait cycle (Teasell and Hussein, 2014). A patient wears a small electric stimulation unit on the upper calf and a heel switch is placed in the shoe. As the patient lifts the lower extremity for swing, stimulation is applied producing dorsiflexion of the ankle. When the heel comes in contact with the ground, the stimulation is terminated (Senelick, 2011).

Following the Developmental Sequence

Performance of postures and movement transitions that make up the developmental sequence remains a popular choice among practicing clinicians. Having the patient practice transitional movements between postures is not only therapeutic but also functional. Moving from a prone-on-elbows to a four-point (quadruped) position, from quadruped to tall-kneeling, from tall-kneeling to half-kneeling, and from half-kneeling to standing is used in many activities of daily living. Practicing these movement transitions independently or with assistance depends on the patient's motor control, balance, and cardiopulmonary function. Because adults do not perform all the postures within the sequence on a daily basis, it is not necessary for every patient to practice and perfect all components of the developmental sequence.

Kneeling and half-kneeling positions are important for the patient to practice in the clinic. They are the transition positions that the patient will need to perform if he or she falls and must get up from the floor. Often, anxiety and apprehension result when a patient falls at home. By practicing transfers to and from the floor, the patient and family should feel comfortable with the steps necessary should a fall occur once the patient is discharged from the health-care facility.

Caution

The patient must be carefully monitored during the performance of the developmental sequence. During the more difficult and challenging positions, the patient must be observed for signs of fatigue or cardiac compromise. Shortness of breath, diaphoresis, and increased heart rate or blood pressure are signs that the activity may be too difficult for the patient. Thus, the selection of some of the more challenging positions, such as the four-point, tall-kneeling, and half-kneeling positions, must be carefully considered. If a patient does not tolerate positions within the developmental sequence, the PTA, in consultation with the primary PT, needs to select other treatment interventions that will address the patient's goals.

Prone Activities

The prone position is an extremely difficult position for many older patients to achieve, especially in the presence of arthritic and cardiopulmonary changes. If the patient is able to tolerate the prone position, several activities can be practiced. In a completely prone position, the patient can work on knee flexion and hip extension with the knees bent. Many patients have difficulty in initiating antigravity knee flexion with the hip maintained in a neutral position secondary to decreased control of the hamstrings. The patient tends to flex the hips at the same time the knees are flexed. Hip extension with the knee bent requires that the patient be able to activate the gluteus maximus with minimal assistance from the hamstrings. Careful monitoring of the patient's performance is necessary because substitution is extremely common.

If the patient can tolerate it, prone on elbows is another excellent position for treatment because the patient bears weight through the elbows and into the shoulders. Use of the PNF techniques of alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization applied to the shoulders aids in developing proximal control. If the patient has difficulty in maintaining the hand in a relaxed position, a hand or short arm air splint can be applied to keep the wrist in a relatively neutral position with the fingers extended.

Transition from Prone on Elbows to Four-Point

The transition to a four-point or quadruped position from prone on elbows requires that the patient be able to maintain the involved upper extremity in extension and accept weight on it. Because the four-point position is more challenging, only those patients without medical complications and with moderately intact trunk control should attempt this position. It is often easy for the clinician to stand or kneel behind the patient holding on to the patient's waist. The PTA can then direct the patient's weight back toward the feet. As the patient does this, he or she should be instructed to straighten the arms. If the patient lacks the necessary control in the triceps to maintain adequate elbow extension, a long arm air splint can be used. As stated previously, it is desirable to have the patient bear weight on extended arms with the wrists and fingers extended and the thumb abducted. If the patient is unable to achieve this resting posture actively or passively, the PTA should allow the patient's fingers to stay in a flexed position. The patient's fingers should not be pulled into extension because it may cause joint subluxation.

Four-Point Activities

Once in a quadruped position, the patient works on maintenance of the position. Forward, backward, medial, and lateral weight shifts are performed but should be practiced with control and should not be excessive. Alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization techniques can again be applied to the patient's shoulder or pelvic region, as depicted in Intervention 10-37A. For the patient with advanced motor control, unilateral upper and lower extremity lifting and reaching exercises can be attempted, as shown in Intervention 10-37B. The PTA needs to monitor the patient's response carefully during performance of these activities. Exaggerated weight shifts to the involved or uninvolved sides may occur. Collapse of the involved upper extremity may occur if the patient has triceps weakness.

Intervention 10-37

Activities in Four Point


A

A. Holding—alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization.
B. Upper extremity reaching.
C. Creeping—resisted.

Creeping

Creeping on hands and knees, better known to much of the lay population as crawling, may also be practiced during the patient's treatment sessions. Creeping provides the patient with the opportunity to practice reciprocal upper extremity and lower extremity activities while maintaining support on the opposite limbs. The patient should move one upper extremity, followed by the opposite lower extremity, then the contralateral upper extremity, followed by the remaining leg. Reciprocal movement of the extremities during creeping is closely related to the movement skills necessary for ambulation. Creeping is also a good activity to practice in the clinic because patients often need to be able to move in this fashion when they fall at home. The patient can creep to a piece of furniture and transfer back to an upright position. To make creeping more difficult, the PTA can provide resistance at the patient's pelvis or hips, as illustrated in Intervention 10-37C.

Transition from Four-Point to Tall-Kneeling

From a four-point position, the patient can make the transition to tall-kneeling. The patient should shift weight posteriorly and then extend the trunk to assume the upright position. The PTA may need to provide the patient with assistance at the upper trunk (anterior shoulders) to achieve a complete upright position. Patients who have gluteal and trunk extensor weakness may push on their thighs in an effort to assist with knee extension. To achieve and maintain a tall-kneeling position, the patient must possess adequate balance and muscular control of the trunk. If the patient appears unstable in the tall-kneeling position, a small table or a roll can be placed in front of the patient to assist with balance. By providing additional trunk support through upper extremity weight bearing, the PTA may make the patient may feel more secure, and balance may be improved.

Physical Observations

The PTA must diligently observe the patient's position in tall-kneeling. Patients often have difficulty in maintaining the pelvis in a neutral or slightly anterior position. As in sitting, the patient's hips should be in line with the shoulders. The patient should bear weight equally on both lower extremities. Frequently, patients have an excessive anterior pelvic tilt and truncal asymmetries. It may be necessary to begin with posture correction before advancing the patient to specific exercises in the tall-kneeling position.

Tall-Kneeling Activities

Alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization techniques can be applied at the patient's shoulder and pelvic girdles while the patient is in the tall-kneeling position. Intervention 10-38A illustrates these techniques. These techniques assist in the development of proximal stability and can foster improvements in balance and coordination. Upper extremity PNF patterns can be performed, including the D_1 and D_2 diagonal patterns and lifts and chops, as demonstrated in Chapter 9. The benefit of performing the bilateral lifting and chopping patterns is that they incorporate a greater amount of trunk movement, specifically flexion and rotation. Functional activities, such as gardening and house cleaning, can also be simulated in this position.

Intervention 10-38

Tall-Kneeling Activities


A


B


C

A. Alternating isometrics.
B-D. Kneeling to heel-sitting using proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation.

Another activity that can be performed in this position is tall-kneeling to heel sitting. In this exercise, the patient moves from a tall-kneeling position to one of sitting on the heels, as illustrated in Intervention 10-38C. This exercise allows the patient to work on eccentric control of the quadriceps, a skill needed for many functional activities, including stand-to-sit transitions and stair negotiation. The patient can also perform forward and backward knee walking while in tall-kneeling. The clinician should observe the quality of the patient's lower extremity movement during knee walking. The lower extremity, specifically the hip, should advance in flexion. Hip hiking or circumduction should not be encouraged.

Special Note

During the patient's performance of all these developmental postures, the physical therapist assistant must guard the patient appropriately. Because the patient's balance is challenged, it is possible that the patient may experience a loss of balance and fall.

Transition from Tall-Kneeling to Half-Kneeling

The transition from kneeling to half-kneeling is difficult for many patients. To initiate the transition, the patient must be able to perform a controlled weight shift to one side with elongation of the trunk on the weight bearing side. The trunk on the side that will move forward to assume the half-

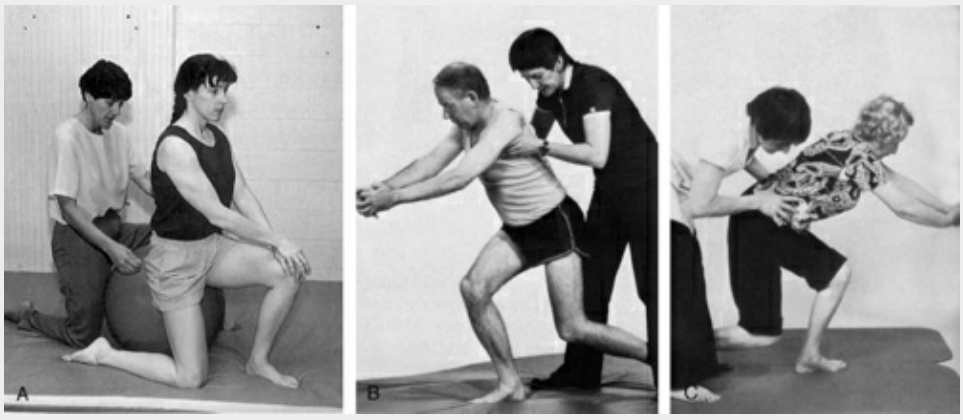
kneeling; foot-flat position must shorten. Rotation of the trunk opposite of the weight shift must also occur. The hip on the moving side must hike and slightly abduct. The moving knee must remain flexed as the patient brings the leg forward. The patient must also keep the foot in a neutral to slightly dorsiflexed position to clear the foot from the floor as the patient brings the leg forward. Adequate ankle range of motion is necessary to maintain the foot on the floor or mat with good contact. Often, patients need physical assistance advancing the lower extremity to assume this challenging position. Half-kneeling with the stronger, uninvolved leg forward is often easier for the patient to achieve initially.

Half-Kneeling Activities

The patient should work on maintaining a half-kneeling position. The patient may sway from side to side while attempting to maintain her center of gravity over the base of support. Asymmetric weight bearing may also be observed. If the patient is having difficulty in maintaining the position, a Swiss ball can be placed under the hips, as shown in Intervention 10-39A. Active control of hip extension can be practiced in the half-kneeling position. The patient can work on shifting the weight forward and backward over the fixed front foot while reaching for an object. As with the other developmental positions previously described, once the patient is in half-kneeling, the PNF techniques of alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization can be applied to promote stability and balance control. Active upper extremity exercises and PNF chops and lifts can be performed in this position. Over time, the patient should practice half-kneeling with both the uninvolved and involved lower extremities forward. The transition to and from the position is also important to master. Once the patient is able to maintain the position independently and also able to move in and out of the position, the patient should progress to standing. Initially, the patient may need help from the PTA or from a piece of equipment or the wall, as depicted in Intervention 10-39B and C. To complete the ascent to upright, the patient must be able to perform a forward weight shift over the fixed front foot. This prerequisite demands the necessary postural control and range of motion at the ankle. As the patient assumes more active control of the transition from half-kneeling to standing, the clinician should decrease support. For the patient with greater motor control, this activity can be manually resisted with pressure applied to the patient's hips and pelvis.

Intervention 10-39

Half-Kneeling Activities



A. Half-kneeling on a Swiss ball: active-assistive movements. Standing up from half-kneeling
   1. From sitting on a Swiss ball, the therapist assists the patient into half-kneeling.
   2. The therapist instructs the patient to put both hands on the knee flexed forward.
   3. Using manual contact on the pelvis, the therapist provides a diagonally forward and upward weight shift over the forward foot.
   4. Therapist and patient end in standing.

B. The therapist facilitates the transition from half-kneeling to standing (left hemiplegia)

1. The therapist instructs the patient to clasp hands together while in half-kneeling.
2. While standing, the therapist uses manual contacts on the axillae and provides a diagonally forward and upward weight shift.
3. The patient comes to stand over the forward foot.

C. Facilitation of half-kneeling from standing using the pelvis (right hemiplegia)

1. The therapist instructs the patient to clasp hands while standing.
2. The therapist assists the patient to bring one leg behind the other in preparation for half-kneeling.
3. The therapist uses manual contacts on the pelvis to lower the patient into a half-kneeling position.

Note: Half-kneeling with the stronger, uninvolved leg forward is often easier for the patient to achieve. As the patient gains strength and motor control, half-kneeling with the involved leg forward may be used a progression of the intervention.

(**A,** from O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ: *Physical rehabilitation laboratory manual focus on functional training*, Philadelphia, 1999, FA Davis; **B and C,** from Davies PM: *Steps to follow: a guide to the treatment of adult hemiplegia,* New York, 1985, Springer Verlag.)

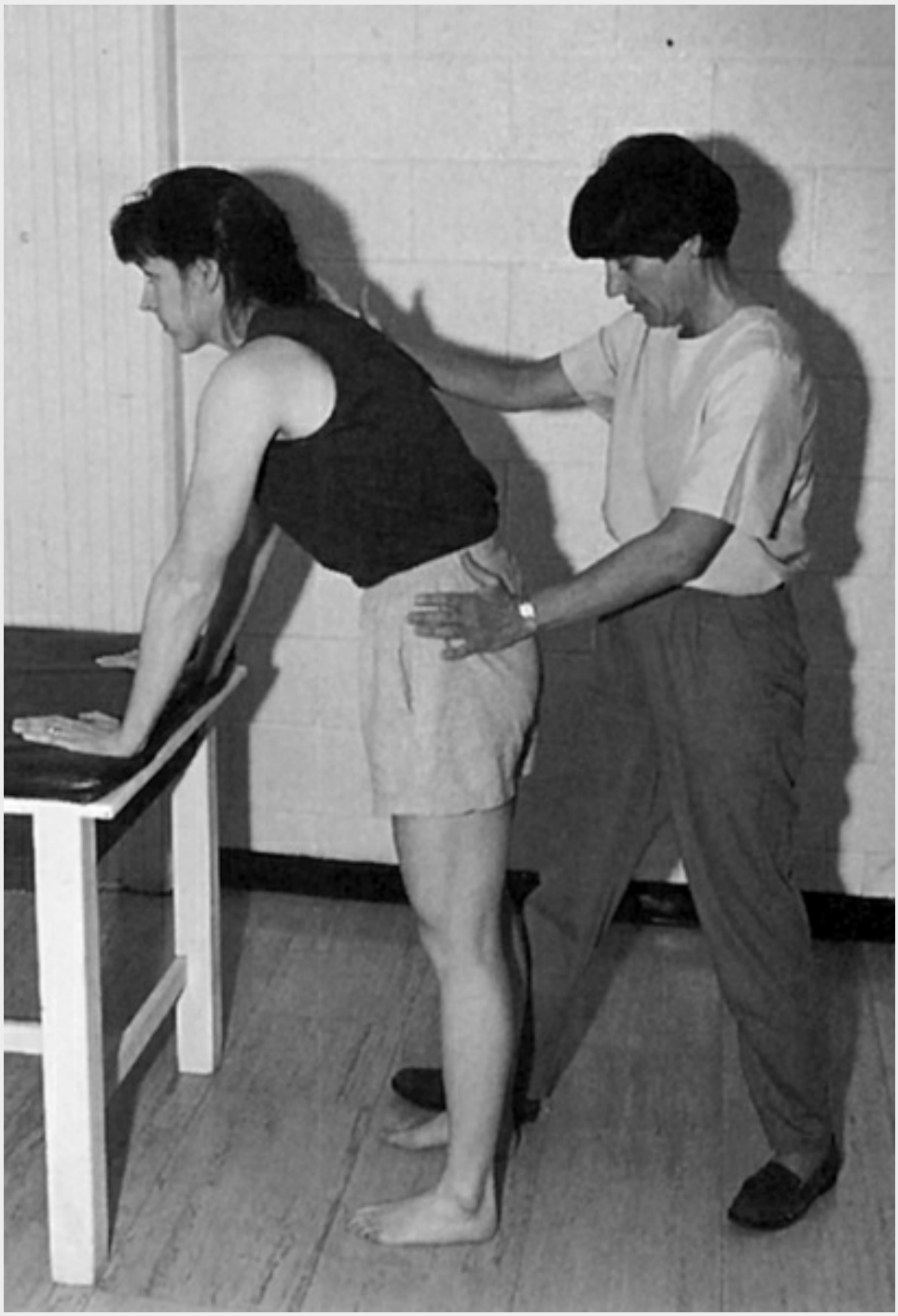
Modified Plantigrade Position

The final developmental position that we will discuss in this section is modified plantigrade. In plantigrade, the patient is weight bearing on both the upper and lower extremities. Plantigrade is a position that children often experiment with as they attempt upright standing. It is not, however, a position that most adults achieve with much regularity. It does offer therapeutic benefits to patients because it allows for upper and lower extremity weight bearing in a modified standing position. Upper and lower extremity weight bearing provides proprioceptive input into the shoulder and hip joints, respectively, and assists with tone reduction. The therapist may also want to approximate down through the shoulders or pelvis when the patient is in this position, to increase sensory awareness and motor recruitment.

In plantigrade, the patient can work on rocking forward, backward, and to the sides. These activities can be performed actively at first, and, with practice, the PTA can resist the exercise. Alternating isometrics can once again be used to promote stability. Intervention 10-40 illustrates this activity. Lower extremity progressions can be initiated when the patient is in this position, including forward and backward stepping. Knee control activities such as knee flexion, extension, and mini squats can also be practiced. The patient can also perform functional activities in this position, including self-care and homemaking activities.

Intervention 10-40

Modified Plantigrade Activities



Modified plantigrade position: Alternating isometrics.

(From O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ: *Physical rehabilitation laboratory manual focus on functional training*, Philadelphia, 1999, FA Davis.)

Midrecovery to late recovery

Depending on the patient's injury, recovery stage, age, and insurance status, the next phase of the patient's rehabilitation may be termed *midrecovery* to *late recovery*. The PTA's involvement with the patient at this stage can occur in a number of different practice settings. The services may be provided in a skilled care or subacute unit, in a rehabilitation center, in the patient's home, or in an outpatient clinic. Regardless of the treatment setting, the primary goals for the patient still focus on the achievement of functional skills. Mat activities may continue, but the types of exercises selected should be more challenging. The PTA and the primary PT will want to discuss advancing the patient to exercises performed in sitting and standing positions as well as increasing the time spent working on gait training. The amount of time spent performing exercises in the supine position should be minimal.

The interventions appropriate for midrecovery to late recovery vary, depending on the patient's motor and functional return. Through regular reexaminations by the primary PT, the PTA will receive guidance and feedback regarding appropriate interventions for each phase of the recovery process. As the patient is able to assume more independence in the performance of functional activities, the physical therapy team will want to incorporate more challenging activities into the patient's plan of care.

Negotiation of Environmental Barriers

Activities that address the negotiation of environmental barriers, including stairs, curbs, and ramps, should be considered.

Stairs

Patients should be instructed in the following sequence when learning to negotiate stairs.

A patient who is using a handrail should lead with the stronger uninvolved foot when ascending the stairs. The involved foot follows. This sequence continues until the patient has negotiated all the steps. Intervention 10-41 illustrates a patient who is walking up the stairs. The PTA must guard the patient carefully to avoid loss of balance or a fall. The PTA may find it safer and easier to guard the patient from behind during stair ascent.

Intervention 10-41

Stair Climbing

A and B. The patient with right hemiplegia initiates lifting the leg onto a step. She initiates the pattern with pelvic elevation and a strong overshift of her trunk to the left as she circumducts and lifts her leg with knee extension.
C. The clinician uses her left hand in an axillary grip to correct trunk alignment and uses her right hand to help the patient learn to lift her right leg with hip and knee flexion.
D and E. The clinician uses her right hand on the distal femur to teach the patient to move forward over her extending right leg. The clinician's left hand moves the trunk forward and upward as the leg extends and the patient lifts her left leg upward. The patient does not overshift and rely on her left arm as the clinician helps her to learn to use her right leg.

(From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation*, New York, 1997,Churchill Livingstone.)

When descending the stairs with a handrail, the patient needs to lead with the involved foot. Intervention 10-42 shows a patient going down the steps. The PTA observes the response of the involved lower extremity as it begins to accept weight. The patient must possess ample lower-extremity control to maintain the leg in relative extension during lowering of the involved lower extremity. As previously stated, the extension synergy pattern is common in many patients with CVAs. This extension pattern may cause the involved lower extremity to stay extended during stair climbing. When the patient is descending the stairs, the PTA will want to guard the patient from the front. It may also be necessary for the PTA to provide manual cues at the patient's knee. Prevention of genu recurvatum on descent should be encouraged by maintaining the involved knee in slight flexion.

Intervention 10-42

Descending Stairs

A. The patient leads with her right leg. The right leg is adducting as it reaches to the step. This leg adduction contributes to the feeling of "falling" to the hemiplegic side.
B and C. The clinician uses her left hand in an axillary grip to support the patient's trunk and pelvis. She reminds the patient to keep the upper trunk extended over the pelvis as the right foot reaches to the floor and the left foot steps down.
D and E. The clinician lets the patient control the trunk as she reeducates the forward movement pattern of the right leg.

(From Ryerson S, Levit K: *Functional movement reeducation: a contemporary model for stroke rehabilitation*, New York, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.)

Caution

A safety belt should always be used during stair training.

Stair Climbing with a Cane

If the patient is going to use an assistive device on the stairs, the sequence will be the same. When going up the stairs, the patient leads with the uninvolved foot, followed by the involved leg, and then the cane. The sequence for going down the stairs is to have the patient lower the cane and the involved lower extremity at the same time if possible and then lower the uninvolved leg.

Special Note

Depending on the type of cane selected for the patient, the cane may or may not fit on the step. Straight canes and narrow-base quad canes can be used without modification. A wide-base quad cane must be turned sideways to fit safely on the step. Hemiwalkers cannot be used on steps safely. Patients should be encouraged to negotiate 12 to 14 steps (a flight) if possible as this number is used in Functional Independence Measurement (FIM) scoring and represents community independence.

Curbs and Ramps

Negotiation of a curb is similar to that of a single step. Ramps can be a challenge, based on their degree of incline or grade.

Family Participation

Family members should practice the skills needed to assist the patient at home and should be responsible for return demonstrations in the clinic. Encourage family members to take an active role in practicing these activities. Family members may tell you that they feel confident with the activity simply after observing it. It is optimal for both the patient and the patient's family to practice these tasks with a skilled therapist present. These practice sessions allow the clinician to provide feedback on techniques and to identify potential challenges that the patient and the caregiver may experience in the home setting.

Working on Fine Motor Skills

Frequently, at this point in the recovery process, the patient is trying to gain full control of the distal joint components. Often the wrist, fingers, and ankle are unable to perform coordinated movements. Exercises or activities that stress these skills should be included in the patient's plan of care. Depending on the level of motor return in the hand, the patient may be able to complete fine motor activities. Dressing, bathing, and grooming tasks are frequently used to improve hand coordination because of the large degree of fine motor control necessary to complete these activities. In addition, activities of daily living are functionally oriented. Determining if the patient has any hobbies or areas of interest helps in identifying treatment interventions. If the therapist can select tasks that are meaningful and have functional relevance, the PTA will usually find much better compliance of the patient with activity performance. Cooking, gardening, writing, computer work, and crafts are just a few examples of the types of activities that may promote fine motor control and dexterity in the upper extremity. The patient should be encouraged to use the involved upper extremity as much as possible. If the involved arm lacks the necessary motor control to complete fine motor tasks, it should be positioned in weight bearing or be used as an assist.

Advanced Exercises for the Lower Extremity

Exercises designed to enhance lower extremity function can also be performed. Again, the selection of different treatment interventions will depend on the patient's level of motor return. Once the patient is up and ambulating, supine exercises should be limited, and more challenging closed chain activities should be used for strengthening and training purposes. To continue to improve hip and knee control, the patient can transfer to a high-low mat table. With the height of the table raised and the involved lower extremity weight bearing on the floor, the patient can work on hip and knee extension from this position. In a supported standing position, the patient can perform the following exercises: standing hip abduction on both the involved and uninvolved sides; hip extension with the knee straight; hip flexion or marching; and knee flexion with the hip in a neutral or slightly extended position. Other advanced exercises include mini squats, resisted gait, and pushing or carrying an object. The benefits of these exercises are that they activate the lower extremity musculature in ways directly opposite the normal lower extremity synergy patterns, and they allow for unilateral weight bearing and promote balance and coordination skills.

Advanced Exercises for the Ankle

Exercises that address range of motion of the involved ankle should also be included. Patients who are experiencing difficulties in achieving active ankle dorsiflexion can place a rolling pin under the foot and work on moving the rolling pin back and forth. This maneuver can be performed when the patient is either in sitting or standing. If the patient has relatively good active dorsiflexion and plantar flexion, he or she can work on tapping the foot, drawing a circle or alphabet on the floor, or kicking a small ball forward. Additional activities that can be performed include heel raises with the knee in slight flexion, active ankle eversion, or resistive exercises with an elastic band. Patients can also work on active ankle exercises while standing on a tilt board, BOSU ball, or BAPS (Biomechanical Ankle Platform System) board.

Coordination Exercises

Exercises targeted at improving coordination of the upper and lower extremities should also be performed. Standard coordination tests performed when the patient is sitting include finger to nose, the patient's finger to the therapist's finger, alternating nose to finger, finger opposition, and bilateral pronation and supination activities. Lower extremity coordination exercises include alternating heel to knee and heel to toe, toe to examiner's finger, and heel to shin. The incorporation of these exercises into the patient's treatment plan depends on the degree of motor return in the upper and lower extremities.

Balance Exercises

Balance and coordination exercises can be performed with the patient in a standing position. Examples of exercises that can be performed to improve a patient's static balance include standing with both feet together with a narrow base of support; tandem standing, which is standing with one foot directly in front of the other; and standing on one foot. In addition, the patient's balance strategies should be observed by displacing the patient's center of gravity unexpectedly. As described previously, the PTA should observe the presence of appropriate ankle, hip, and stepping strategies. Balance responses are normal reactions to perturbation or a sudden change in the patient's center of gravity as it relates to the patient's base of support. Patients who do not possess adequate dorsiflexion may not be able to initiate or perform the ankle strategy. Patients with limited ability to activate lower extremity musculature may not be able to use hip and protective stepping responses to prevent falls when their balance is disturbed.

There are many balance and mobility assessment tools that may be administered to the patient following CVA. The Berg Balance Scale is one such tool that measures balance in older adults including those that have sustained a CVA. The maximum score is 56 and a score less than 45 indicates that the individual is at risk for falling. Other assessment tools that evaluate mobility and are used clinically in the rehabilitation setting include the Timed Up and Go Test and the 6-Minute Walk Test, both which assess mobility and gait and are used in determining the patient's functional capacity (Teasell and Hussein, 2014). Clinicians are encouraged to review the following websites for additional information regarding balance assessment instruments for patients post-CVA: www.rehabmeasures.org and www.ebrsr.com.

Dynamic Balance Activities

Other examples of activities that can be performed to challenge the patient's dynamic balance include walking on uneven surfaces, tandem walking, walking on a balance beam, side stepping, walking backwards, braiding (walking sideways, crossing one foot over the other), throwing and catching a small ball, batting a balloon, and marching in place. All are useful activities for the patient to perform if the goal is to improve the patient's ability to maintain a balanced postural base while moving the lower extremities and, in the case of throwing and catching, while the upper extremities are also moving.

Additional activities that can be performed include walking activities in which the patient is asked to change speed or direction. Abrupt stopping and starting, walking in a circle, walking over and around objects as in an obstacle course, walking while carrying an object, or having the patient walk on heels or toes will challenge the patient's balance and coordination.

Dual Task Training

Clinicians are encouraged to perform dual task training if the patient is able to tolerate. These tasks incorporate concurrent performance of motor and cognitive tasks and require the patient's attention while engaged in a balance or mobility activity (Allison and Fuller, 2013). Examples include throwing or catching a ball or shooting a basketball while standing on foam or having the patient carry on a conversation while engaged in a physical activity, such as walking. These tasks simulate normal everyday activities and assist the patient and the clinician in recognizing the cognitive and motor aspects of activity performance.

Advanced Balance Exercises

For patients who need even more challenging activities, the PTA can remove the patient's visual feedback and have the patient stand on a level surface with eyes closed. A patient who is able to do this can be progressed to standing on different types of surfaces (foam) with eyes open and then with eyes closed. It is extremely important to guard the patient closely during advanced balance activities, although the clinician must gauge the amount of assist provided. If too much physical support is provided, the patient will rely on the assistance and will not make the necessary postural modifications to maintain and improve balance.

Dynamic Sitting and Standing Balance Exercises Using Movable Surfaces

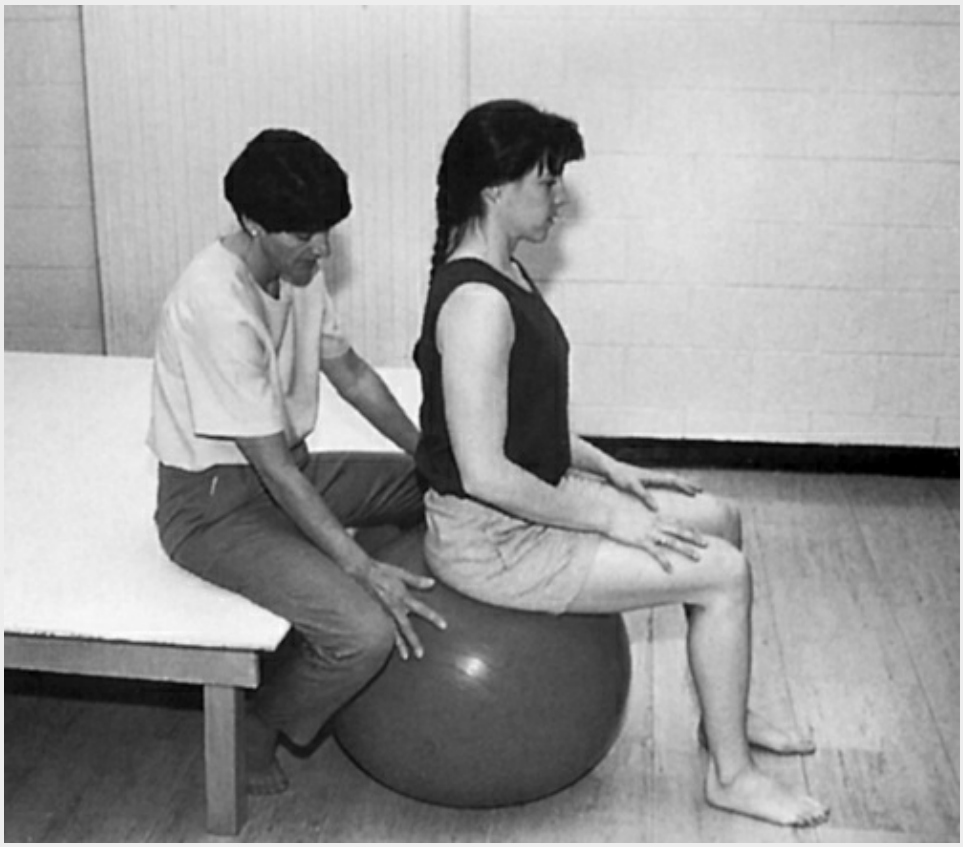
Movable surfaces provide another means of working on the patient's dynamic balance. Swiss (therapeutic) balls, BOSU balls, and tilt boards can be used effectively for the patient who needs to continue to work on dynamic balance.

Swiss Ball

When the Swiss ball is used, the right-sized ball must be selected for the patient. The patient should be able to sit on the ball and have both feet touch the floor. In addition, the hips, knees, and ankles should be at a 90-90-90 position. Intervention 10-43 illustrates the use of the Swiss ball during treatment. The patient can be assisted to the ball and can work on the achievement of an upright erect posture. The ability to achieve proper posture requires that the patient actively contract the abdominal muscles to keep the shoulders in line with the hips. In addition, the patient must keep the knees over the feet. Some of the first exercises that should be performed on the ball are those that address pelvic mobility. While sitting on the ball, the patient can isolate anterior and posterior pelvic tilts and lateral tilts to the right and left. The lateral shifts assist the patient with the ability to elongate the trunk on the weight-bearing side and shorten it on the opposite side. Once the patient is able to maintain balance on the ball while moving the pelvis, the patient can be progressed to adding movements of the limbs. While sitting on the ball, the patient can perform the following exercises: reciprocal arm movements of the upper extremities; marching in place; and unilateral knee extension. As his or her balance improves, the patient can perform PNF chops and lifts or trunk rotation exercises. A discussion of placing the patient in the prone position over the ball occurs in Chapter 11.

Intervention 10-43

Sitting on a Swiss Ball



The patient should be able to sit on the ball and have both feet touch the floor. Hips, knees, and ankles should be at a 90-90-90 position. The patient should first work on maintaining an upright erect posture on the ball before progressing to other exercises such as pelvic mobility and movement of the limbs.

(From O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ: *Physical rehabilitation laboratory manual focus on functional training*, Philadelphia, 1999, FA Davis.)

The ball, as a movable surface, provides the patient with some uncertainty in terms of stability. A sudden movement of the ball requires the patient to be able to make a quick, unanticipated postural response to realign the center of gravity in relation to the base of support. Many patients lack the ability to adjust their postural responses in this way. As stated previously, it is necessary to guard the patient carefully while on the ball. Only those patients who already exhibit a certain degree of trunk control should attempt these activities.

Tilt Boards

Tilt boards offer another type of movable surface for our patients. Therapists often use boards on which the adult patient can stand to work on postural reactions. As with the ball, selection of a tilt board as part of the treatment plan requires that the patient possess a certain amount of trunk and extremity control in addition to fairly good dynamic balance. A patient who requires an assistive device for ambulation would not be an appropriate candidate for standing tilt board activities. It is often beneficial to first demonstrate for the patient what the clinician wants the patient to do on the board. The patient needs to be advised that the board will move as the patient tries to position himself or herself on it. The patient should be assisted onto the board. Standing in front of the patient and allowing him or her to hold on to your hands is often easiest. At times, it may be necessary to have someone else hold the board as the patient steps up onto it. Once on the board, the patient must accommodate to the movable surface, as illustrated in Figure 10-13. A slight shift in the patient's weight from one side to the next causes the board to move. Initially, maintaining the board in a balanced position is difficult. In an attempt to improve stability, the patient often locks the knees into extension so he or she does not have to concentrate on knee control in addition to maintaining balance on the board. If the PTA should observe this phenomenon, it may indicate that

the activity is too difficult for the patient. Discussion with the primary PT is then warranted.

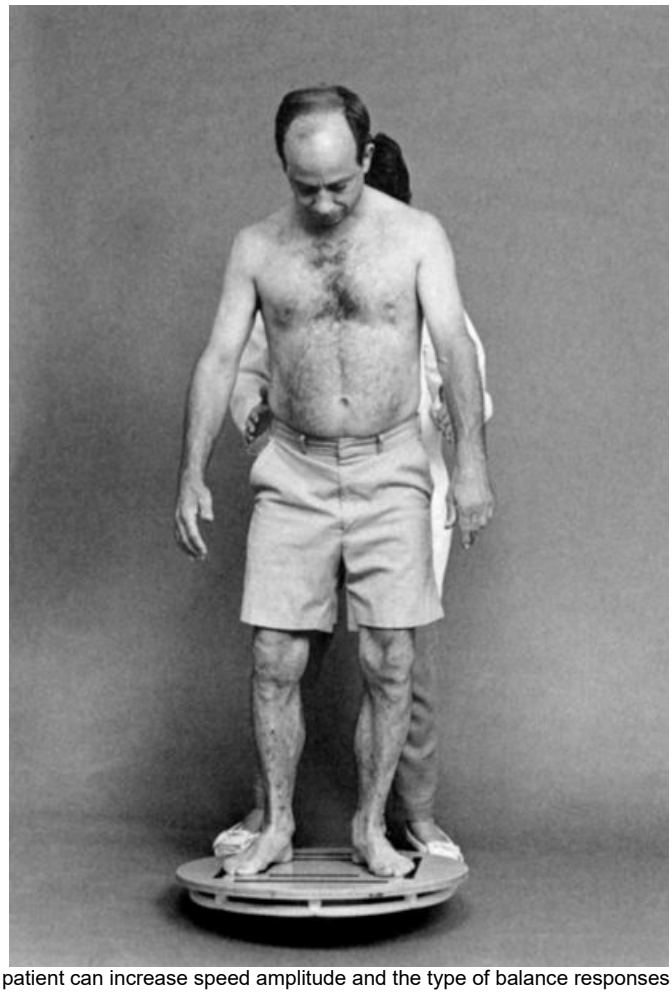


FIGURE 10-13 A patient can increase speed amplitude and the type of balance responses on an adjustable tilt board. (From Duncan PW, Badke MB: *Stroke rehabilitation: recovery of motor control*, Chicago, 1987, Year Book.)

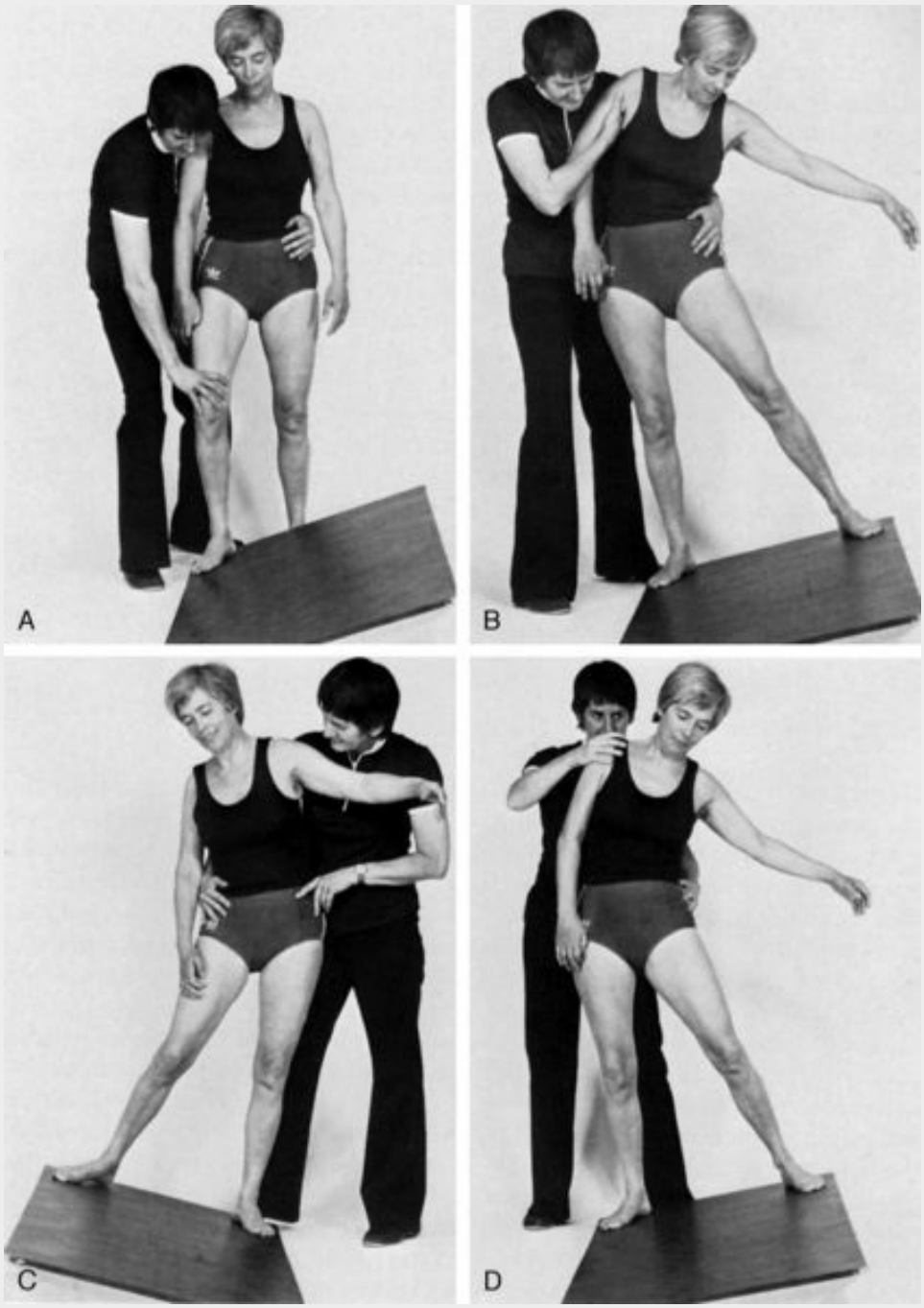
During the patient's acclimation to the tilt board, the PTA should continue to hold on to the patient's arms for balance support. Once the PTA believes that the patient is relatively stable and safe on the board, the assistant can help the patient with small weight shifts to the right and left. The PTA, through manual contacts, is able to grade the excursion of the patient's weight shift.

Observations

When the patient shifts the weight to the right, the PTA will want to see the patient exhibit elongation of the trunk on the right with trunk and head righting. Intervention 10-44 shows a patient on a tilt board. The position of the patient's lower extremities should also be noted, in addition to the position of the upper extremities. On occasion, the patient will overcompensate with the upper extremities if he or she believes that balance is being compromised. Extension and abduction of the upward side with protective extension on the opposite (downward) side may be evident. As the patient becomes more comfortable on the board, he or she can begin to shift weight actively to the right and left. The patient needs to possess adequate control of the weight shift. Often, the patient limits the shift to the involved side because of anxiety associated with having all the weight on his involved lower extremity. The patient can also work on trying to maintain the board in a neutral position with equal weight on both lower extremities.

Intervention 10-44

Using a Tilt Board



Moving the tilt board sideways (right hemiplegia).
A. Stepping onto the board with the hemiplegic foot first. The clinician guides the patient's knee forward.
B. Transferring weight to the hemiplegic side. The clinician lengthens the side of the trunk, and her hip maintains extension of the patient's hip.
C. Transferring the weight to the uninvolved leg. The clinician has changed her position so that the patient moves toward her.
D. The clinician reduces the amount of support.

(From Davies PM: *Steps to follow: a guide to the treatment of adult hemiplegia,* New York, 1985, Springer Verlag.)

Anterior and Posterior Weight Shifts on the Tilt Board

The position of the board can also be changed to allow the patient to work on anterior and posterior weight shifts. The patient again needs to be assisted onto the board. The advantage of this board

position is that it allows the patient to work on active ankle dorsiflexion and plantar flexion. As the board moves in a posterior direction, the patient is dorsiflexing both ankles. For patients who have difficulties with active dorsiflexion or performance of the ankle strategy for balance control, this exercise can be effective. Selection of a tilt board requires that the patient possess a fairly high level of motor function and is simply in need of refinement of ankle movements and postural responses.

For those patients who are discharged to home after completing their rehabilitation, dynamic balance deficits have been identified as a strong predictor of falls in this group (Lubetzky-Vilnai and Kartin, 2010). Research supports the use of balance training for patients after a stroke. A systematic review found that patients who engaged in standing balance exercises had improvements in their balance performance. Specific activities that were performed included static standing activities, reaching tasks, sit-to-stand transitions, walking, stair climbing, and altering the base of support. Through repetition of these exercises either in an individual or group setting, patients were able to improve their balance performance (Lubetzky-Vilnai and Kartin, 2010).

Management of Abnormal Tone

The presence of abnormal tone may become apparent during the patient's recovery. Spasticity and the dominance of the synergy patterns can interfere with the patient's attempts at active movement. Although, at present, no surgical, pharmacologic, or physical therapy interventions can permanently eliminate increased tone, PTs and PTAs can intervene to make the tone more manageable for a short period of time. Our goal is to decrease the abnormal tone long enough for the patient to perform an active movement or functional task. This allows the patient the opportunity to move with increased ease and to have a more "normal sensory experience." Abnormal movement patterns develop in response to the abnormal sensory feedback perceived. Thus, abnormal movement patterns are reinforced each time the patient moves.

As mentioned earlier, positioning the patient in the antispasm patterns described can assist in decreasing the abnormal tone that may develop. Rhythmic rotation applied with steady passive movement, such as that applied with lower trunk rotation or rhythmic rotation of the extremities, is beneficial. Rotational exercises followed by activities that incorporate weight bearing can be extremely beneficial in providing the patient with a more normal postural base. Weight bearing through the upper or lower extremities is an excellent treatment modality for tone reduction. Other activities that can be administered to assist in managing the patient's abnormal tone include PNF diagonals (including the chopping and lifting patterns), tapping and vibration to the weaker antagonist muscles, tendon pressure applied directly to the spastic muscle tendon, air splints, the prolonged application of ice, functional electrical stimulation, and biofeedback. Any of these treatment interventions may be beneficial to the patient. Often, it is necessary to try one and then grade the patient's response to the sensory intervention applied. Again, it is not sufficient simply to apply a tone-reducing modality. The patient's tone should be decreased through a therapeutic modality, but the patient must then be provided with a movement transition or functional task that allows the patient to experience more normal sensory feedback while moving. This concept should ultimately reinforce the desired movement and, one hopes, should lead to improved function.

Neuroplasticity

Review materials presented in Chapters 2 and 3 regarding principles of neuroplasticity and their relationship to treatment planning. This will provide a framework for discussion of the following interventions. Constraint-induced movement therapy is an intervention designed to reduce the effects of learned nonuse. Learned nonuse develops as the patient attempts to move the involved side and is unsuccessful. The patient may experience failure and frustration after unsuccessful movement attempts. Consequently, the patient begins to compensate for these experiences by using the uninvolved extremity to complete functional tasks. Over time, the patient learns to disregard and not use the involved extremity (Bonifer and Anderson, 2003). Constraint-induced movement therapy (CIMT) is a treatment approach based on neuroscience and behavioral techniques. There are three components to CIMT including: (1) repetitive, task-specific training of the involved extremity for 2 to 3 weeks; (2) required use of the involved extremity during waking hours (restraining the involved extremity is sometimes required; and (3) use of behavioral strategies to allow transference of improvements made in the clinic to the patient's home environment (Taub and Uswatte, 2006). When using CIMT in a clinical setting, the patient's uninvolved upper

extremity is restrained or immobilized in a mitt or glove. This forces the patient to use the involved upper extremity repetitively for the completion of functional tasks (Liepert, 2000). Sessions with a physical or occupational therapist are typically 6 to 7 hours a day, in which the clinician is providing the patient with verbal and tactile cues as well as hand-over-hand assistance to perform the desired task. Patients are also responsible for keeping a journal regarding their performance. Most research studies have as inclusion criteria that subjects must possess at least 10 degrees of finger and 20 degrees of active wrist extension. Positive results have been reported for those patients with mild to moderate deficits (Umphred et al., 2013; Taub and Uswatte, 2006). Use of CIMT does provide challenges to both the patient and the clinician. The intervention is extremely time and labor intensive, and patient adherence to the intensity and practice schedule can be problematic.

Locomotor training is an important component of the treatment plan for a patient post-CVA, as improved walking is one of the most commonly reported goals for patients (Mulroy et al., 2010). Body-weight support treadmill training (BWSTT) is an effective intervention in the treatment of gait disturbances in patients with CVA (Figure 10-14). Individuals, even those unable to stand independently, are able to practice stepping in a safe environment (Hornby et al., 2011). With BWSTT, a percentage of the patient's weight (30%–40%) is supported by an overhead harness while the patient is walking on a treadmill. Clinicians help stabilize the patient's pelvis and assist with lower extremity advancement as the treadmill moves. Other robotic systems are available which provide similar gait opportunities for the patient but require less assistance from clinicians. Studies performed to evaluate the effectiveness of this intervention have demonstrated improvements in gait velocity, endurance, and balance (Fulk, 2004; Hornby et al., 2011). There is conflicting evidence regarding the effectiveness of body-weight support treadmill ambulation in comparison with typical physical therapy interventions. In the LEAPS trial, a randomized control study, BWSTT did not result in superior gait outcomes when compared to in-home physical therapy services, which consisted of range of motion, flexibility, and strengthening exercises, balance and coordination activities, and encouragement of the patient to walk daily (Duncan et al., 2011). Despite this conflicting information, evidence is moving in the direction of the support of BWSTT in improving gait performance, especially when compared with more traditional physical therapy interventions. In addition, BWSTT supports the premise of task-specific interventions (Teasell and Hussein, 2014; Mulroy et al., 2010). Therapists must continue to consider the patient's goals and task-specific training principles when designing the appropriate treatment plan for a patient.

FIGURE 10-14 **A and B,** Client with right hemiplegia walking on a treadmill with partial body-weight support. (From Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Rollere ML, Burton GU: *Neurological rehabilitation*, ed 6. St. Louis, 2013, Elsevier, p. 744).

Preparation for Discharge

Depending on the patient's recovery and home situation (including family support), the PT and PTA will need to plan for the patient's discharge to home or another type of health-care facility. This planning should begin during the initial examination and continue throughout the patient's episode of care.

Assessing the Patient's Home Environment

During the initial examination, the primary PT needs to ask questions regarding the patient's home environment. Factors that must be considered when addressing discharge include the type of dwelling in which the patient resides, whether it is an apartment (with steps or an elevator), a house, a trailer, or another type of structure. Asking patients or their significant others whether they rent or own their home is also important because renting may preclude the family from making any permanent structural changes. The entrance to the home should also be assessed. The number, height, and condition of the steps, the presence or absence of a handrail or landing area, proximity to the driveway or parking lot, and the direction in which the front door opens will help in planning for the patient's safe return to the home environment.

The following is a list of general considerations for exterior accessibility. These guidelines are provided to assist clinicians in suggesting environmental modifications to their patients' existing dwellings.

1. Steps should not be higher than 7 inches or deeper than 11 inches.
2. Handrails should measure between 34 to 38 inches maximum in height.
3. One handrail should extend a minimum of 12 inches beyond the foot and top of the stairs.
4. If a ramp is needed, the recommended grade for wheelchairs is 12 inches of ramp for every inch of threshold height.

5. Ramps should be a minimum of 36 inches wide and should be covered with a nonslip surface.
6. A door width of 32 to 34 inches is acceptable and accommodates most wheelchairs.
7. Raised doorway thresholds should be removed.
8. Additional space and equipment considerations are required for patients who are obese (Schmitz, 2014).

Much of the information pertaining to the patient's home may be provided by the family. Many facilities use a checklist that a family member can complete regarding the home and its accessibility. In some cases, it may be necessary for the rehabilitation team to go out and perform a home assessment. This assessment may be conducted by the primary PT, the PTA, the occupational therapist, or a combination of these team members. Family members are often included in these assessments, so information regarding home modifications or equipment needs can be provided.

Other information that is needed regarding the patient's home includes interior accessibility, specifically in the areas of the bedroom and bathroom. The amount of space needed by the patient for negotiation depends on his or her ambulatory status. Wheelchairs require space for turning and also for positioning of the chair near furniture for transfers. In the patient's bedroom, the therapist will want to note the type of bed, whether space is adequate for transfers, the location of a nightstand or bedside table, and the need for a bedside commode or urinal. The width of the bathroom door also needs to be assessed because frequently these entrances are narrower than other interior door frames. An elevated toilet seat and grab bars may be necessary to ensure the patient's safety when toileting. Talking with the patient and primary caregiver provides information on the bathing patterns of the patient. A tub bench or shower chair in addition to a hand spray attachment may be suggested.

Other considerations for interior accessibility include the type of carpeting. Low, dense-pile carpets are recommended because they tend to be the easiest on which to ambulate or over which to propel a wheelchair. All throw rugs should be removed because they create a safety hazard for the patient who is ambulatory. The design of the kitchen should also be observed. Counter heights and handles on cabinets should be noted. Frequently used items should be moved to lower cabinets to allow for easier reach.

The PTA will also want to question the patient about the patient's primary means of transportation at discharge. This information helps in identifying the most appropriate car transfer to practice and aids in planning follow-up care for the patient. Car transfers with and without the patient's family should be practiced before discharge. In addition, family members should be instructed in safe techniques for loading and unloading the wheelchair from their vehicle.

Further recommendations for rehabilitation services should be made before the patient's discharge from the health-care facility. The primary PT needs to reexamine the patient and, with input from the PTA, suggest equipment and additional physical therapy needs to the patient's physician. Properly planning for the patient's discharge facilitates the patient's transition from the rehabilitation setting to the home and the community.

The development of the patient's home exercise program is also an important component of the discharge planning process. As with other patients who are being discharged from physical therapy services, identification of three to four critical exercises or activities is necessary to maintain patient function and prevent the development of secondary complications. It is also important to note, however, that the patient's performance of a home exercise program is not sufficient to maintain the patient's overall health status. In 2004, the American Heart Association released exercise recommendations for individuals post-CVA which recognize the benefits of physical fitness programs and aerobic exercise. These guidelines state that individuals should engage in aerobic training 3 to 7 times per week at an intensity of 40% to 70% of peak oxygen consumption or heat rate reserve for 20 to 60 minutes of continuous exercise. Resistive exercises targeted at the major muscle groups should also be a component of the program, with 10 to 15 repetitions of each exercise performed 2 to 3 days per week (Gordon et al., 2004). Progressive resistive exercises have been shown to increase strength in hemiparetic muscles without increasing spasticity, although the impact on patient function is still uncertain (Foley et al., 2013). As clinicians, we must recognize the importance of incorporating physical fitness into our patients' home programs in an effort to improve poststroke outcomes and reduce the risk of future cardiovascular events (Tang and Eng, 2014). Evidence suggests that cardiorespiratory training (ergometry, treadmill training, recumbent stepping, aquatics programs, circuit training), resistance training, and combined cardiorespiratory and strengthening programs have resulted in improved walking speed and endurance as well as improvements in sensorimotor function (Tang and Eng, 2014; Billinger et al., 2012; Gordon et al.,

2004).

Caution

Before any patient can begin a fitness program, a release from the patient's physician regarding clearance to participate is necessary to ensure the patient's safety.

The physical therapy management of the patient with CVA has evolved from one based on neurophysiologic approaches to one that now address motor learning and the brain's capacity to change and adapt after injury. Because of changes in reimbursement and our health-care system, it has become essential that the primary physical therapist is diligent in the development of a plan of care that has the potential to provide the patient with the best possible functional outcome. At all times, the clinician must keep the patient actively engaged in the activity performance and consider the task itself, the intensity of the training,the feedback provided, and the structure of the practice session. When these factors are included in the planning and implementation of the treatment session, the clinician has provided the patient with the very best care possible.

Chapter summary

Adults who have experienced a cardiovascular accident make up a significant number of the patients treated in physical therapy. Based on the type and extent of the initial insult, patients can have a multitude of different problems, and the extent of these problems can be highly variable. Different treatment interventions are presented in this chapter to assist patients in improving their volitional motor control and functional abilities. As physical therapists and physical therapist assistants working with these patients, the primary goal of our interventions is to improve patients' abilities to perform meaningful functional activities and thus improve their quality of life.

Review questions

1. Describe the major impairments seen in patients who have had CVAs (cardiovascular accidents).
2. What are risk factors for the development of a CVA?
3. Describe the upper extremity and lower extremity flexion and extension synergy patterns.
4. Discuss the benefits of patient positioning.
5. The acute-care physical therapy management of a patient who has had a CVA should include what type of interventions?
6. What are appropriate physical therapy interventions to be performed with the patient in sitting?
7. Describe the gait training sequence for patients after acute CVA.
8. Name four advanced dynamic standing balance exercises.
9. What environmental factors must be considered when preparing the patient for discharge to home?
10. Discuss the benefits of body-weight support treadmill ambulation.
11. Describe how principles of neuroplasticity can be incorporated into the treatment plans of patients with CVAs?

Case Studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation

History

Chart Review

Patient is a 67-year-old male who is a retired accountant. He came to the emergency department 3 days ago for vomiting in what his wife thought was an allergic response to shellfish, but Benadryl

was ineffective. Patient was then admitted to the hospital. An initial computed tomography (CT) scan showed no evidence of significant mass and normal-sized ventricles. CT scan today revealed an abnormality in the left parietal lobe compatible with ischemic infarction in the distribution of the left middle cerebral artery. Past medical history includes hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and occasional low back pain. Patient is currently taking Atenolol 25 mg qd, Simvastatin 20 mg qd, and a baby aspirin. Blood test at admission revealed normal blood urea nitrogen, electrolytes, and blood gases. Lumbar puncture was negative; electrocardiogram showed an old nonsymptomatic infarct. Admitting diagnosis: Patient is now being admitted to inpatient rehabilitation unit 3 days post–left cerebrovascular accident (CVA) of the middle cerebral artery distribution with resultant right hemiparesis; in addition, patient exhibits mild chronic obstructive lung disease, a history of asthma, and mild emphysema.

Physical therapy order for examination and treatment received.

Subjective

Patient is unable to communicate verbally. He can communicate by nodding or shaking his head to indicate yes or no. A social history is obtained from his wife during the initial examination. Patient lives with his wife, who is in good health, in a one-story house. The house has two steps without a railing at the entry. There are carpeted, tiled, and hardwood floors; the shower does not have grab bars or a shower seat. Patient has two daughters, who both live out of town. Patient's goal is to return home and to be walking and be able to communicate; these are his wife's goals as well. Wife states that they have neighbors and friends who will help her take care of her husband. Patient has been sleeping a lot since admission, but before the CVA, he and his wife liked to walk for exercise, camped, visited their daughters, and golfed. Patient was in good health before the CVA. Patient nodded yes when asked for consent to perform therapy; wife also agrees to her husband's participation in therapy.

Objective

Appearance, Rest Posture, and Equipment

Patient is supine in bed on a pressure-relieving mattress. His right shoulder is internally rotated and adducted; right elbow is in maximum flexion; and right wrist and fingers are also flexed. His right hip is extended, adducted, and internally rotated; right knee is extended, and right ankle is in plantar flexion and inversion. The left extremities are resting at the patient's side. Patient has a Foley catheter.

Systems Review

Communication/Cognition: Patient is unable to communicate verbally except for one-word answers such as yes and no. Is reliable with yes/no questions via head nods.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: BP = 114/71 mm Hg; HR = 58 bpm; RR = 11 breaths/min using 2-chest 2-diaphragm breathing pattern.

Integumentary: Both upper extremities (UEs) and lower extremities (LEs) are not impaired. No edema is present.

Musculoskeletal: Left (L) UE and LE gross range of motion (ROM)—not impaired; right (R) UE and LE gross ROM—impaired; (L) UE and LE gross strength—not impaired; (R) UE and LE strength—impaired.

Neuromuscular: Gait and transfers are impaired; balance is impaired; motor function: (R) UE and LE are impaired; (L) UE and LE are not impaired.

Psychosocial: Communication is impaired; orientation x 3—not impaired; learning barriers caused by inability to expressively communicate; education needs include safety and precautions, activities of daily living (ADLs), and postural awareness.

Tests and measures

Anthropometrics: Height 5 feet 11 inches, Weight 180 lbs., Body Mass Index 25 (20–24 is normal).

Arousal, Attention, Cognition: Patient is alert and awake. He often loses focus but regains attention when his name is called. Patient able to respond to one-step commands consistently.

Cranial Nerve Integrity: Both pupils have direct and consensual responses to light. Peripheral vision is within functional limits (WFL). Horizontal, vertical, and diagonal smooth pursuit and tracking are WFL and symmetric in both eyes. Facial sensation is present. Facial movement is unimpaired. The uvula and tongue are in midline.

Range of Motion: Right (R) UE active movement is limited to 1/4 of flexion and extension synergies. Passive ROM is WFL in the (R) UE but rhythmic rotation is used to relax (R) UE; (R) LE

is able to move through entire flexion synergy with minimal assist using anterior handholds on the ankle and knee. Right LE actively moves back into full extension synergy from flexion synergy. No other active movements are possible. Passive ROM of (R) LE is WFL.

Reflex Integrity: Deep tendon reflexes (DTRs) 3 + (R) biceps, brachioradialis, patellar, and Achilles. All DTRs 2 + on (L). Babinski present on (R) absent on (L). No associated or primitive reflexes are present. Moderate increased tone in (R) shoulder internal rotators and adductors; (R) biceps; (R) wrist and finger flexors; minimal increase in tone in (R) hip adductors, internal rotators, and extensors; (R) knee extensors; and (R) ankle plantar flexors and invertors also present with a minimal increase in muscle tone.

Motor Function, Control: Bridging is performed asymmetrically and patient's right pelvis is retracted, posteriorly tilted, and rotated to the right. Bridging improves with approximation at knees through heels and manual tapping on right gluteus maximus.

Posture: In supine, patient's head is turned to the right with UEs and LEs positioned as described previously. In sitting, patient leans to the left and has a forward head, rounded shoulders, increased thoracic kyphosis, and posterior pelvic tilt; right foot is placed in front of left with heel off floor. Patient uses the left upper extremity to support self in sitting.

Neuromotor Development: Patient demonstrates head righting bilaterally. Trunk righting is delayed on the right but present on the left. Protective reactions are absent on the right.

Sensory Integrity, Perception: Light touch sensation is intact on the left. Light touch sensation is impaired on the dorsum and palm of the right hand; the dorsum, heel, and ball of the foot; and the lower one third of the right LE. Proprioception is impaired distally in right wrist, fingers, ankle, and toes.

Pain: Patient does not verbally report any pain. A pain scale is not administered.

Muscle Performance: Right UE demonstrates little active movement from initial resting position. Patient moves his right UE back into shoulder internal rotation and adduction, elbow flexion, and wrist and finger flexion once placed in recovery position. Right LE hip, knee flexors, ankle dorsiflexors, and trunk musculature are weak, with difficulty in muscle recruitment causing decreased ability to initiate movement.

Gait, Locomotion, Balance

Bed Mobility: Patient rolls to left and right from hook-lying position with minimal assist of 1 to provide approximation through the right knee toward the ankle. Patient has been instructed in interlacing fingers together and holding hands in midline during rolling. He requires minimal assist of 1 to scoot, with manual cues given on opposite hip and shoulder to assist with weight shifting and moving pelvis in bed.

Sitting Balance: Patient leans to the left unless the right UE is extended in weight bearing. Once patient supports himself using both UEs, he requires only stand-by assist (SBA) to remain upright. However, he is unable to weight shift and take any outside perturbations without losing his balance. Patient closes eyes in sitting, and this causes him to sway significantly.

Transfers: Supine-to-sit: moderate assist of 1 to move right LE on and off bed and guide shoulders. Sit-to-stand: moderate assist of 1 to keep feet apart and block right knee.

Stand-Pivot Transfer: Maximal assist of 1. Patient's right knee buckles two times when three steps are taken to turn and sit. He also requires verbal and manual cues to stand upright because he is leaning backward.

Standing Balance: Patient leans to the left and needs moderate assist of 1 to remain upright. He requires manual assist to keep his right knee from collapsing. He also tends to shift his center of mass posteriorly, which causes him to lean backward in an unsafe upright position. Verbal and tactile cues are applied to the buttocks to assist with hip extension and to promote upright standing.

Gait: Patient able to ambulate 5 feet x 1 with maximal assist of 1 on level surfaces. Patient requires tactile cue at right hip to decrease hiking and to assist with advancement. Manual cues are also needed to assist with right knee extension and to initiate weight shifts. Stairs not assessed to this date secondary to patient's status.

Wheelchair Mobility: Patient is able to propel self 20 feet in wheelchair using his left extremities with moderate assist of 1.

Self-Care: Patient is dependent in grooming activities with his right UE because he lacks voluntary movement. He is also unable to dress, tie his shoes, and bathe because of insufficient sitting and standing balance.

Assessment/evaluation

Patient is a 67-year-old man who is 3 days post–left CVA of the middle cerebral artery distribution with right hemiparesis and sensory deficits. Patient able to complete 45-minute initial examination without changes in physiologic measures although appears lethargic and slightly fatigued.

Functional Independence Measure (FIM): Bed transfers, 2; wheelchair transfers, 2; walk/wheelchair, 1; stairs, not assessed

Brunnstrom stages: right UE—level 3; right LE—level 3

Problem List

1. Decreased voluntary movement of right UE and LE
2. Decreased functional mobility (bed mobility, transfers, and gait)
3. Decreased balance in sitting and standing
4. Decreased sensory awareness of right UE and LE
5. Decreased ability to perform self-care activities
6. Decreased ability to verbally communicate
7. Patient and family lack understanding of the rehabilitation process

Diagnosis: Patient shows neuromuscular impairments with impaired motor function and sensory integrity associated with nonprogressive disorders of the central nervous system acquired in adulthood. Patient exhibits neuromuscular *APTA Guide* pattern 5D.

Prognosis: Patient will demonstrate optimal motor function, sensory integrity, and the highest level of functioning in home, community, and leisure environments within the context of the impairments, functional limitations, and disability. Number of physical therapy visits in rehabilitation is up to 60 visits. Patient's rehabilitation potential for stated goals is good secondary to his level of motor return in right LE and family support.

Short-Term Goals (to be achieved by 1 week)

1. Patient will segmentally roll to the right and left with minimal assist of 1.
2. Patient will transfer from supine to sitting with minimal assist.
3. Patient will transfer from sitting to standing with minimal assist of 1.
4. Patient will perform a stand-pivot transfer with moderate assist of 1.
5. Patient will sit on edge of the mat or bed with SBA and a neutral pelvis and erect posture, while performing ADLs with the left UE.
6. Patient will actively move right arm to mouth to feed himself.
7. Patient will independently propel himself in wheelchair to therapies.
8. Patient will ambulate 20 feet with moderate assist of 1 with assistive device on level surfaces.

Long-Term Goals (to be achieved by 3 weeks)

1. Patient will be independent in rolling to the right and left.
2. Patient will be independent in supine to sitting.
3. Patient will be independent with sit-to-stand transfers.
4. Patient will perform stand-pivot transfer with stand by assist of 1.
5. Patient will sit independently to don and doff shoes and put on pants independently.
6. Patient will stand for 5 minutes with arms supported on counter/sink/etc. with SBA of 1 while performing self-care.
7. Patient will actively move right UE above head with appropriate mechanics to dress himself and perform self-care tasks.
8. Patient will ambulate at least 150 feet with least restrictive assistive device at modified independent level on level surfaces.
9. Family will demonstrate an understanding of correct techniques to assist patient with transfers and gait.
10. Patient will perform home exercise program independently.

Plan

Treatment Schedule: The physical therapist (PT) and physical therapist assistant (PTA) will see the patient twice a day Monday through Saturday for 45-minute treatment sessions for the next 3 weeks. This plan was discussed with the patient and his wife and was agreed on. Treatment sessions will focus on positioning, early shoulder and hip care, functional mobility training, intensive gait training, patient/family education, and discharge planning. The PT will reexamine the patient and make necessary changes to the plan as needed in 1 week. Anticipated discharge from inpatient rehabilitation is after 3 weeks.

Coordination, Communication, and Documentation: The PT and PTA will communicate with patient, wife, physician, speech pathologist, and occupational therapist on a regular basis. In addition, the PT will communicate about discharge date, findings from this examination, necessary assistive devices for home, and continued therapy or services after discharge. Outcomes of rehabilitation will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/Client Instruction: Patient and his family will receive verbal and written instructions for the home exercise program. Patient and his family will be instructed in transfer and gait techniques. Education regarding the patient's condition will be provided to his wife. A home assessment is recommended before discharge.

Procedural Interventions

1. Positioning:
   a. Side-lying on affected side with right UE and LE in recovery position to increase right side awareness and decrease the dominance of the synergy patterns
   b. Supine and side-lying on left side with right UE and LE in recovery position to decrease tone
2. Early shoulder and hip care:
   a. Side-lying scapular protraction to promote scapular mobility and normal scapular rhythm: (1) begin with the clinician's hand on scapula and upper arm and apply approximation through the shoulder joint; (2) as patient gains control, the manual contacts will move farther distally until the his right arm is supported by a pillow and the clinician is applying approximation through the right palm
   b. Double-arm elevation in supine to increase ROM in right UE: (1) left hand will grasp right hand interlocking fingers and the right thumb on top of left; (2) left arm will assist the right in moving the UEs overhead; (3) progress this to active-assisted ROM and, finally, active ROM
   c. Bridging: (1) approximation is given through knees to promote heel weight bearing, may use sheet to promote symmetrical pelvic motions progressing to bridging with agonist reversals, alternating isometrics, and rhythmic stabilization for core stability to assist with sitting and standing balance; (2) start hip extension over mat: initially have right hip in flexion and progress to starting with the hip in neutral to increase hip extensor strength, thus increasing step length; (3) supine with ball under feet and knees: trunk rotations, posterior pelvic tilt and anterior pelvic tilt to promote trunk-pelvic-hip control to increase sitting and standing balance; (4) PNF chops and lifts in sitting
3. Facilitation and inhibition for motor control:
   a. Bridging with manual contacts on right gluteus maximus to facilitate symmetrical pelvic motions and approximation at knee to promote weight bearing through heel
   b. Air splint on right UE: (1) in sitting, have patient bear weight on right UE and reach across body to facilitate proprioception and inhibit flexion synergy; (2) have left UE reach across body for objects (glass, food, clothes, etc.)
   c. Approximation through right knee in sitting to facilitate weight bearing on heel when coming to stand
   d. Manual contacts on paraspinals in sitting to facilitate neutral pelvis for upright posture and in preparation for sit-to-stand transfers
   e. Manual contacts on both gluteals in standing to promote upright posture
   f. Tapping of triceps, prolonged tendon pressure on biceps to facilitate extension of UE
   g. Rhythmic rotation beginning proximal and moving distal to move tight UE out of flexion synergy; incorporate a reaching task after tone is inhibited
   h. Place mirror to side in standing to facilitate upright posture
   i. Manual contacts on posterior or lateral right knee to prevent excessive knee flexion in weight bearing
4. Functional mobility training:
   a. Practice supine-to-sit transfers using diagonals to activate trunk and abdominals
   b. Practice sit-to-stand transfers, beginning at higher surfaces and progressing to lower surfaces to activate quads in different angles and enhance timing of muscle recruitment
   c. Lateral weight shifts in sitting to assist with scooting to edge of mat in preparation for transfers
   d. Sitting with neutral pelvis and erect posture statically then dynamically while performing functional activities that require weight shifting by having patient pass a ball from side to side
   e. Dynamic sitting balance activities, weight shifts, reaching outside limits of stability, reaching to the floor (as in putting on and removing shoes) so patient can become independent in ADLs

while maintaining neutral pelvis and erect trunk and be safe when ambulating in environment
f. Prone on elbows: add alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization to promote scapular stability and control
g. Dynamic standing balance activities, beginning with weight shifts progressing to forward and back stepping with both LEs, side stepping, mini squats, maneuvering around obstacles, and steps to improve ambulation; progress to use of assistive device
h. Modified plantigrade to promote weight bearing through UEs with neutral hip and knee flexion to promote strength and control for swing phase of gait
i. Negotiation of wheelchair on level surfaces; instruction in operation of wheelchair parts
j. Transfers to the floor: transitions through prone, four-point, tall-kneeling, half-kneeling, and standing positions
k. Gait training: Initiate body-weight support treadmill ambulation 1 time a day for 45 minutes. Progress to overground ambulation with assistive device and manual assist. Begin stair climbing as patient is able to tolerate.

5. Family training:
   a. Schedule family training days
   b. Work with family on positioning, transfers, car transfers, and ambulation
   c. Educate family regarding the patient's condition, potential complications, barriers to recovery, need for architectural modifications, safety concerns, and probability of long-term sequelae
6. Discharge planning:
   a. Perform a home assessment if indicated
   b. Secure necessary medical equipment, including assistive device, tub bench, and elevated toilet seat
   c. Teach patient and family home exercise program including strengthening exercises and aerobic conditioning

Questions to think about

- What type of specific strengthening exercises should be included in the patient's plan of care?
- How can aerobic conditioning be included in the patient's treatment program?
- What types of activities or exercises would be included as part of the patient's home exercise program?

References

Abe H, Kondo T, Oouchida Y, Yoshimi S, Satora F, Shin-Ichi I. Prevalence and length of recovery of pusher syndrome based on cerebral hemisphere lesion in patients with acute stroke. *Stroke.* 2012;43:1654–1656.

Allison LK, Fuller K. Balance and vestibular dysfunction. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological rehabilitation.* 6 ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013:653–709.

American Physical Therapy Association Direction and supervision of the physical therapist assistant, HOD 06-05-18-26, Alexandria, VA, 2012, American Physical Therapy Association House of Delegates: standards, policies, positions, and guidelines.

American Stroke Association. Heart disease and stroke statistics at a glance. Available at www.heart.org/ldc/groups/ahamah-public/wcm/sop/smd/documents/downloadable/ucm_470704.pdf December 2014. Accessed April 23, 2015.

Baldrige RB. Functional assessment of measurements. *Neurol Rep.* 1993;17:3–10.

Billinger SA, Mattlage AE, Ashenden AL, Lentz AA, Harter G, Rippee MA. Aerobic exercise in subacute stroke improves cardiovascular health and physical performance. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2012;36:159–165.

Bobath B. *Adult hemiplegia.* ed 3 Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1990 pp 9–66.

Bohannon RW, Smith MB. Interrater reliability of a modified Ashworth scale of muscle spasticity. *Phys Ther.* 1987;67:206–207.

Bonifer NM, Anderson KM. Application of constraint-induced movement therapy on an individual with severe chronic upper-extremity hemiplegia. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83:384–398.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Stroke in the United States. Available at www.cdc.gov/stroke/facts.htm, March 2015. Accessed April 23, 2015.

Craik RL. Abnormalities of motor behavior. In: *Contemporary management of motor control problems [Proceedings of the II STEP Conference].* Alexandria, VA: Foundation for Physical Therapy; 1991:155–164.

Cumming TB, Thrift AG, Collier JM, et al. Very early mobilization after stroke fast tracks return to walking: further results from the Phase II AVERT randomized control trial. *Stroke.* 2011;42:153–158.

Davies PM. *Steps to follow: a guide to the treatment of adult hemiplegia.* Berlin: Springer Verlag; 1985 pp. 266–284.

Dieruf K, Poole JL, Gregory C, Rodriguez EJ, Spizman C. Comparative effectiveness of the GivMohr sling in subjects with flaccid upper limbs on subluxation through radiographic analysis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86:2324–2329.

Duncan PW, Badke MB. Measurement of motor performance and functional abilities following stroke. In: Duncan PW, Badke MB, eds. *Stroke rehabilitation: the recovery of motor control.* Chicago: Year Book; 1987:199–221.

Duncan PW, Sullivan KJ, Behrman A, et al. Body-weight support treadmill rehabilitation after stroke. *N Engl J Med.* 2011;354:2026–2036.

Foley N, Peireira S, Teasell R, Nerissa C, Richardson M, McIntyre A: *Mobility and the lower extremity*, Evidence-Based Review of Stroke Rehabilitation (Chapter 9), Updated December 2013. Available at www.ebrsr.com/sites/default/files/CHapter-9_Mobility-and-Lower-Extrem_FINAL_16ed.pdf. Accessed September 15, 2014.

Fulk GD. Locomotor training with body-weight support after stroke: the effects of different training parameters. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2004;28:20–28.

Fuller KS. Stroke. In: Goodman CC, Boissonnault WG, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology implications for the physical therapist.* St. Louis: Elsevier; 2009:1449–1476.

Gordon NF, Gulanick M, Costa F, et al. Physical activity and exercise recommendations for stroke survivors. *Circulation.* 2004;109:2031–2041.

Granger CV, Hamilton BB. The uniform data system for medical rehabilitation report of first admissions for 1992. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1994;73:51–55.

Hornby TG, Straube DS, Kinnaird CR, et al. Importance of specificity, amount, and intensity of locomotor training to improve ambulatory function in patients poststroke. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2011;18:293–307.

Ibrahim M, Wurpel J, Gladson B. Intrathecal baclofen: a new approach for severe spasticity in patients with stroke. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2003;27:142–148.
Johnstone M. *Restoration of normal movement after stroke.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1995 pp. 49–74.
Karnath HO, Broetz D. Understanding and treating pusher syndrome. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83:1119–1125.
Kelly-Hayes M, Robertson JT, Broderick JP. The American Heart Association stroke outcome classification. *Stroke.* 1998;29:1274–1280.
Kleim JA, Jones TA. Principles of experience-dependent neural plasticity: implications for rehabilitation after brain injury. *J Speech Hear Res.* 2008;51:S225–S239.
Liepert L, Bauder H, Miltner HR, et al. Stroke rehabilitation constraint-induced movement therapy. *Stroke.* 2000;31:1210–1216.
Light KE. Clients with spasticity: to strengthen or not to strengthen. *Neurol Rep.* 1991;15:63–64.
Lubetzky-Vilnai A, Kartin D. The effect of balance training on balance performance in individuals poststroke: a systematic review. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2010;34:127–137.
Maitland GD. *Peripheral manipulation.* ed 2 Boston: Butterworths; 1977 pp 3–31.
Mulroy SJ, Klassen T, Gronley JK, Eberlly VJ, Brown DA, Sullivan KJ. Gait parameters associated with responsiveness to treadmill training with body-weight support after stroke: an exploratory study. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90:209–223.
National Institute of Neurologic Disorders and Stroke, National Institutes of Health [NIH]. *Stroke: challenges progress, and promise.* 1–33 February 2009. Available at www.stroke.nih.gov/documents/NINDS_StrokeChallenge_Brochure.pdf.
National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. *Complex regional pain syndrome fact sheet.* June 2013. Available at www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/reflex_sympathetic_dystrophy/detail_reflex_sympathetic_dys Accessed April 30, 2015.
National Stroke Association: *Depression*. Available at www.stroke.org/we-can-help/survivors/stroke-recovery/post-stroke-conditions/emotional/depression, 2014a. Accessed September 14, 2014.
National Stroke Association. Hemorrhagic stroke. Available at www.stroke.org/understand-stroke/what-stroke/hemorrhagic-stroke, 2014b. Accessed April 23, 2015.
National Stroke Association: *Rehabilitation therapy after a stroke*. Available at www.stroke.org/we-can-help/stroke-survivors/just-experienced-stroke/rehab, 2014c. Accessed April 25, 2015.
O'Sullivan SB. Strategies to improve motor function. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014a:393–443.
O'Sullivan SB. Stroke. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014b:645–719.
Ostrosky KM. Facilitation vs motor control. *Clin Manag.* 1990;10:34–40.
Rehabilitation measures data base. Fugl-Meyer assessment of motor recovery, berg balance scale. Available at www.rehabmeasures.org. Accessed 07 11, 2014.
Rehabilitation measures data base. Functional independence measure. Available at www.rehabmeasures.org/lists/rehabmeasures/dispform.aspxID889. Accessed July 11, 2014.
Roller ML. The pusher syndrome. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2004;28:29–34.
Roth EJ, Harvey RL. Rehabilitation of stroke syndromes. In: Braddom RL, ed. *Physical medicine and rehabilitation.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1996:1053–1087.
Ryerson SD. Movement dysfunction associated with hemiplegia. In: Umphred DA, Burton GU, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, eds. *Neurological rehabilitation.* 6 ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013:711–751.
Sawner KA, LaVigne JM. *Brunnstrom's movement therapy in hemiplegia.* ed 2 Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1992 pp 41–65.
Schmid A, Duncan PW, Studenski S, et al. Improvements in speed-based gait classifications are meaningful. *Stroke.* 2007;38:2096–2100.
Schmitz TJ. Examination of the environment. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:338–392.
Senelick RC. Technological advances in stroke rehabilitation: high-tech marries high touch. *US Neurology.* 2011;2–4.
Smith MB. The peripheral nervous system. In: Goodman CC, Boissonnault WG, Fuller KS,

eds. *Pathology implications for the physical therapist.* 2 ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2003:1170–1171.
Sullivan KJ. What is neurologic physical therapist practice today. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2009;33:58–59.
Tang A, Eng JJ. Physical fitness training after stroke. *Phys Ther.* 2014;94:9–13.
Taub E, Uswatte G. Constraint-induced movement therapy: answers and questions after two decades of research. *NeuroRehabilitation.* 2006;21:93–95.
Teasell R, Hussein N: *Brain reorganization, recovery and organized care*, Evidence-Based Review of Stroke Rehabilitation. Available at www.ebrsr.com/sites/default/files/Chapter%202_Brain%20Reorganization%2C%20Recovery Accessed July 2014.
Teasell R, Hussein N: *Lower extremity and mobility post stroke*, Stroke Rehabilitation Clinician Handbook. Available at www.ebrsr.com/sites/default/files/Chapter%204A_Lower%20Extremity%20and%20mobility Accessed July 2014.
Umphred DA, Bly NN, Lazaro RT, Roller ML. Interventions for clients with movement limitations. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological rehabilitation.* 6 ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013.
Uniform Data System for Medical Rehabilitation. *The FIM® instrument: its background, structure, and usefulness.* Buffalo: UDS; 2012. http://www.udsmr.org/Documents/The_FIM_Instrument_Background_Structure_and_Usefu Updated July 8, 2014. Accessed September 14, 2014.
Watchie J. Cardiopulmonary implications of specific diseases. In: Hillegass EA, Sadowsky HS, eds. *Essentials of cardiopulmonary physical therapy.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1994:285–323.
Whiteside A. Clinical goals and application of NDT facilitation. *NDTA Network.* Sept–Oct 1997;2–14.

CHAPTER 11

Traumatic Brain Injuries

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- Identify causes and mechanisms of traumatic brain injuries.
- List secondary complications associated with traumatic brain injuries.
- Explain specific treatment interventions to facilitate functional movement.
- Discuss strategies that will improve cognitive deficits.

Introduction

The Brain Injury Association of America defines traumatic brain injury (TBI) as "an alteration in brain function, or other evidence of brain pathology caused by an external force" (Brain Injury Association of America [BIA], 2012). Effects of TBI include impairments in cognitive abilities, movement and sensory deficits, and disruptions in behavioral responses and emotions. These impairments may be either temporary or permanent and not only affect the individual but also the individual's family (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2014).

Approximately 2.2 million Americans are treated for brain injuries each year. Of that number, 280,000 individuals are admitted to the hospital with a diagnoses of mild to moderate TBI; 80,000 incur a TBI with a significant loss of function including the onset of long-term disability; and more than 52,000 people die as a result of their injury (CDC, 2014). Because TBI may result in lifetime impairments of an individual's physical, cognitive, and psychosocial functioning, TBI is considered a condition of major public health significance (CDC, 2014).

The economic impact of TBI is also significant. The estimated cost for direct and indirect medical costs was $76.5 billion in 2010 (CDC, 2014). Cost for acute-care hospitalization and rehabilitation is $9 to $10 billion annually. Average lifetime expenses associated with caring for someone with TBI range from $600,000 to $1,875,000. These figures may, however, underestimate the total costs to families and society because they do not include lost wages and the costs associated with social service programs (CDC, 2014).

The most common cause of TBI is falls (40.5%); followed by unknown/other (19%); being struck by an object (15.5%); motor vehicle accidents (MVA) (14.3%); and assaults (10.7%) (CDC, 2014). Men are more frequently affected than women at a ratio of 2:1. The incidence of TBI peaks at three different age ranges: 1 to 2 years, 15 to 24 years, and the elderly (those over 75 years of age) (CDC, 2014). Child abuse, including shaken baby syndrome, falls, automobile accidents, and bicycle accidents are the primary causes of brain injury in children. The risk of severe brain injury in children can be reduced by 88% if children wear bicycle helmets (Fuller, 2009b).

It is difficult to predict an individual's outcome after TBI. Several factors have been identified that may contribute to the person's outcome after brain injury. These include: (1) the amount of immediate damage from the impact or insult; (2) low initial scores on the Glasgow Coma Scale, especially in the eye opening and motor response categories; (3) the cumulative effects of secondary brain damage; (4) the individual's premorbid cognitive characteristics, such as intellect, level of education, and memory; (5) the presence or absence of substance abuse; and (6) the individual's preinjury personality including the quality of interpersonal relationships and work history (Fulk and Nirider, 2014; Winkler, 2013; Bontke and Boake, 1996).

Classifications of brain injuries

Open and Closed Injuries

The two major classifications of brain injuries are open and closed injuries. *Open injuries* result from penetrating types of wounds such as those received from a gunshot, knife, or other sharp objects. The skull can be either fractured or displaced. The damage to the brain appears to follow the path of the object's entry and exit, thus resulting in more focal deficits. Furthermore, with an open injury, the meninges are compromised, and the risk of infection is increased as bony fragments, hair, and skin penetrate brain tissue (Campbell, 2000). A *closed or intracranial injury* is the second type of injury, and several subtypes are recognized. An individual is said to have sustained a closed injury when there is an impact to the head, but the skull does not fracture or displace. Neural (brain) tissue is damaged and the dura remains intact.

Subtypes of Traumatic Brain Injuries

Concussion

A concussion is the most common type of TBI and can result from either an open or closed injury. A concussion is defined as a "trauma that induces an alteration in mental status (physical and cognitive abilities) that may or may not involve a loss of consciousness" (BIA, 2014). Symptoms of a concussion include dizziness, disorientation, blurred vision, difficulty in concentrating, alterations in sleep patterns, nausea, headache, and a loss of balance (BIA, 2014). The individual can have retrograde (before the injury) or anterograde (posttraumatic) amnesia. *Retrograde amnesia* is characterized by a loss of memory of the events before the injury, whereas in posttraumatic amnesia, individuals are unable to learn new information (Bontke and Boake, 1996). The duration of posttraumatic amnesia is considered a clinical indicator of the severity of the injury (Fuller, 2009b). With a concussion, there is no structural damage to the brain tissue; however, because of the shearing forces, the synapses are disrupted.

Three different grades of concussion have been identified. In a grade 1 concussion, the person is confused, dazed, and experiences difficulty in following directions and thinking clearly, but the individual remains conscious. Symptoms resolve within 15 minutes. Grade 2 concussions are characterized by consciousness although the person develops amnesia, and the symptoms last longer than 15 minutes. Persons with grade 3 concussions are unconscious for several seconds or minutes and there is an observable change in the individual's physical, cognitive, or behavioral function. Concussions represent a significant health concern for the public as it is "estimated that 1.6 to 3.8 million sport- and recreation-related brain injuries" occur each year (Borich et al., 2013). For most individuals who sustain a concussion, a full recovery is possible (BIA, 2014). Concussion management including return to sport is a significant issue for medical professionals and has been a popular point of discussion in the media. Physical and cognitive rest followed by a gradual return of activity is recommended (Borich et al., 2013). The American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) has endorsed legislation and practice guidelines related to the risks for concussion, assessment standardization, and return to play guidelines. Athletes should not return to sport until they are symptom-free and without medications (Giza et al., 2013).

Contusion

A contusion is another type of intracranial injury. With a *contusion,* bruising on the surface of the brain is sustained at the time of impact. Small blood vessels on the surface of the brain hemorrhage and lead to the condition. A contusion that occurs on the same side of the brain as the impact is called a *coup lesion*. Surface hemorrhages that occur on the opposite side of the trauma as a result of deceleration are called *contrecoup lesions*. The acceleration associated with contrecoup injuries can cause further vessel occlusion and edema formation. Figure 11-1 depicts both a coup injury and a contrecoup injury.

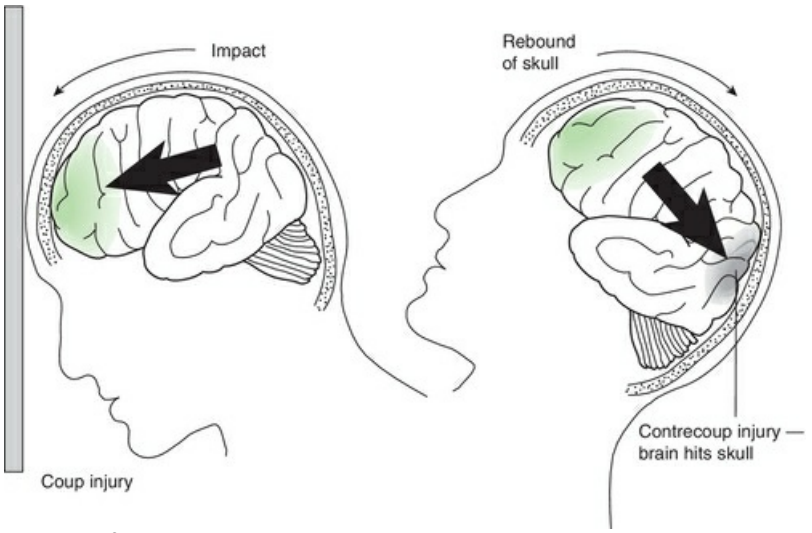


FIGURE 11-1 Types of contusions: coup and contrecoup. (From Gould BE: *Pathophysiology for the health-related professions*, Philadelphia, 1997, Saunders.)

Damage to brain tissue may take several forms. The extent of the injury depends on the nature of the insult and the type and amount of force that impacts the head. In individuals with open wounds, local brain damage occurs at the site of impact. Secondary brain damage can occur as a consequence of lacerations to cerebral tissue, as is frequently seen with skull fractures. Acceleration and deceleration forces can produce coup or contrecoup injury. Polar brain damage can occur as the brain moves forward within the skull. The frontal and temporal lobes are most frequently affected. High-velocity and rotational injuries can cause diffuse axonal injury because the brain tissue accelerates and decelerates within the skull. Subcortical axons can shear and become disrupted within the myelin sheath (BIA, 2014). Calcium enters the cell further propagating axonal injury (Lundy-Ekman, 2013). This diffuse axonal injury can disconnect the brain stem activating centers from the cerebral hemispheres (Bontke et al., 1992). Areas most susceptible to this type of injury include the corpus callosum, basal ganglia, periventricular white matter, and superior cerebellar peduncles (Lundy-Ekman, 2013).

Hematomas

Vascular hemorrhage with *hematoma* formation is another type of closed head injury. There are two specific types of hematomas worthy of notation. *Epidural hematomas* form between the dura mater and the skull (Figure 11-2A). These types of injuries are frequently seen after a blow to the side of the head or severe trauma from a motor vehicle accident. Rupture of the middle meningeal artery within the temporal fossa can cause epidural hematomas. Clinically, the individual has a period of unconsciousness and then becomes alert and lucid. As blood continues to leak from the ruptured vessel, the hematoma enlarges. This is followed by rapid deterioration of the person's condition. Immediate surgical intervention consisting of craniotomy and hematoma evacuation is necessary to save the individual's life or to prevent further deterioration of his or her condition.

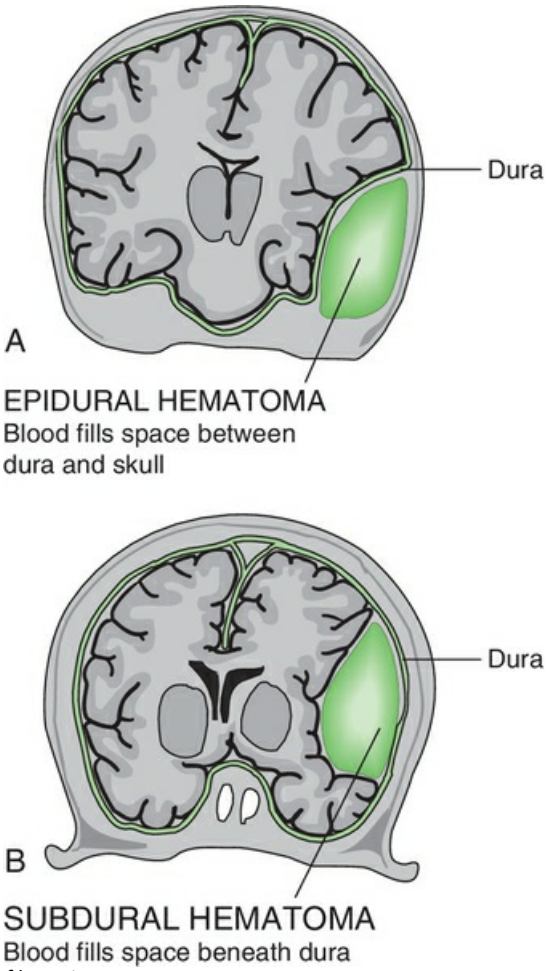


FIGURE 11-2 Types of hematomas. (From Gould BE: *Pathophysiology for the health-related professions*, Philadelphia, 1997, Saunders.)

A *subdural hematoma,* on the other hand, is an acute venous hemorrhage that results because of rupture to the cortical bridging veins. This hematoma develops between the dura and the arachnoid. Blood leaking from the venous system accumulates more slowly, generally over a period of several hours to a week. An injury of this type is often seen in older adults after a fall with a blow to the head. The symptoms fluctuate and can resemble those seen in individuals with cerebrovascular accident. The individual can experience decreased consciousness, ipsilateral pupil dilation, and contralateral hemiparesis. Smaller clots may be reabsorbed by the body, whereas larger hematomas may require surgical removal. Figure 11-2B shows the location of a subdural hematoma.

Locked-in Syndrome, Acquired Brain Injuries, and Sudden Impact Syndrome

Additional categories of brain injuries also need to be mentioned including locked-in syndrome, acquired brain injuries, and sudden impact syndrome. *Locked-in syndrome* is a rare neurologic disorder that can result after a TBI. The condition is characterized by complete paralysis of all voluntary muscles except those that control movement of the eyes. The individual remains conscious and possesses cognitive function but is unable to move. The prognosis for this condition is poor. *Acquired brain injuries* are those which are not hereditary, congenital, degenerative, or induced by trauma at birth. Causes of acquired brain injuries may include: airway obstruction, near-drowning, myocardial infarction, cerebrovascular accident, exposure to toxins, and electrical shock or lightning strike. *Sudden impact syndrome* is also known as recurrent traumatic brain injury. This syndrome occurs when an individual receives a second injury before the symptoms of a first injury have resolved and typically involves a young athlete who returns to sport prematurely. In

these cases, one is more likely to see edema and diffuse damage (BIA, 2012).

Secondary problems

Individuals who sustain a TBI may also sustain secondary cerebral damage as a result of the brain's response to the initial injury. This damage can occur within an hour of the initial injury or as much as several months later. The following is a discussion of common secondary problems that may affect the patient's outcome.

Increased Intracranial Pressure

Increased intracranial pressure (ICP) is a common finding after a traumatic brain injury. Approximately 70% of patients with serious injuries have increased ICP (Campbell, 2000). The adult skull is rigid and does not expand to accommodate increasing volumes of fluid secondary to edema formation or hemorrhage. The result is an increase in pressure that can lead to compression of brain tissue, decreased perfusion of blood in brain tissues, and possible herniation. Normal ICP is approximately 5 to 10 mm Hg. Pressures greater than 20 mm Hg are considered abnormal and can result in neurologic and cardiovascular changes. Activities that may increase a patient's ICP include cervical flexion, the performance of percussion and vibration techniques, and coughing (Fulk and Geller, 2001; Campbell, 2000). Signs and symptoms of increased ICP include: (1) decreased responsiveness; (2) impaired consciousness; (3) severe headache; (4) vomiting; (5) irritability; (6) papilledema; and (7) changes in vital signs including increased blood pressure and decreased heart rate (VanMeter and Hubert, 2014; Gould, 1997; Jennett and Teasdale, 1981). If a patient is going to develop increased ICP, it will normally occur within the first week after the injury. However, it is important for all clinicians to recognize the signs and symptoms of this condition because patients can develop it months or weeks after initial injuries. Treatment of increased ICP includes careful monitoring, pharmacologic agents (Mannitol), and ventricular peritoneal shunting if permanent correction is needed (Fulop, 1998).

Anoxic Injuries

Brain tissue demands a constant flow of blood to maintain proper oxygen saturation levels and metabolic functions (VanMeter and Hubert, 2014). Anoxic injuries are most frequently caused by cardiac arrest. These types of injuries typically cause diffuse damage within brain tissue. However, some areas have been shown to be more vulnerable to local damage such as neurons in the hippocampus (an area involved in memory storage), the cerebellum, and the basal ganglia. This may explain the prevalence of amnesia and movement disorders in this patient population (Bontke and Boake, 1996; Jennett and Teasdale, 1981).

Seizures

Approximately 25% of patients with contusions and 50% of patients with penetrating open injuries develop seizure activity immediately (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke [NINDS], 2014; Winkler, 2013). Seizures are defined as "discrete clinical events reflecting temporary, physiologic brain dysfunction, characterized by excessive hypersynchronous cortical neuron discharge" (Hammond and McDeavitt, 1999). Events that may trigger a seizure include stress, poor nutrition, electrolyte imbalance, missed medications or drug use, flickering lights, infection, lack of sleep, fever, anger, worry, and fear (Fuller, 2009a). Certain physical therapy interventions are also contraindicated in patients with a history of seizure activity. Vestibular stimulation techniques, such as fast spinning, and irregular movements with sudden acceleration and deceleration components should be avoided (O'Sullivan, 2001). If a patient should have a seizure during treatment, the assistant should transfer the patient to the floor to avoid possible injury. Observation of the patient of physical signs, respiratory status, and the duration of the seizure is important (Fuller, 2009a). Notification of the patient's physician and primary nurse is necessary. Patients who remain unconscious after the seizure should be positioned on their side to prevent possible aspiration (Davies, 1994).

Medications are prescribed according to the type of seizure activity demonstrated by the patient. Common medications given to control seizure activity include phenytoin (Dilantin) and phenobarbital (Luminal). Phenytoin should be given for 1 to 2 weeks after the injury as a

prophylactic measure for patients with severe injuries to decrease the risk of posttraumatic seizure disorder (Fulk and Nirider, 2014; Fuller, 2009a). Common side effects of these medications include sedative effects that can decrease a patient's arousal, memory, cognition, ataxia, dysarthria, double vision, and hepatotoxicity. Carbamazepine (Tegretol) is another antiseizure medication that is well tolerated and has fewer adverse side effects (Naritoku and Hernandez, 1995). An important consideration for physical therapists (PTs) and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) is that relatively small changes in a patient's level of arousal or awareness may affect his or her ability to respond to the environment (Bontke et al., 1992).

Patient examination and evaluation

Glasgow Coma Scale

A patient who is brought to the emergency room following TBI is evaluated to determine the extent of injury. The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) is used to assess the individual's level of arousal and function of the cerebral cortex. The scale specifically evaluates pupillary response, motor activity, and the patient's ability to verbalize (VanSant, 1990a) (Table 11-1). Scores for this assessment can range from 3 to 15, with higher scores indicating less severe brain damage and a better chance of survival. Individuals who are admitted through the emergency room with scores of 3 or 4 often do not survive. A score of 8 or less indicates that the patient is in a coma and has sustained a severe brain injury (Winkler, 2013). "It has been repeatedly demonstrated that the depth and duration of unconsciousness, as indexed by the GCS score, is the single most powerful predictor of outcome from TBI" (Bontke and Boake, 1996).

Table 11-1

Glasgow Coma Scale*

Eye Opening	Score
Spontaneous	4
To speech	3
To pain	2
No response	1
Motor Response	Score
Obeys verbal command	6
Localized	5
Withdraws to pain	4
Decorticate posturing	3
Decerebrate posturing	2
No response	1
Verbal Response	Score
Oriented	5
Conversation confused	4
Use of inappropriate words	3
Incomprehensible sounds	2
No response	1

Modified from Jennett B, Teasdale G: *Management of Head Injuries*. Philadelphia, 1981, FA Davis, p. 78.

* Overall score equals the sum of eye opening and motor response and verbal response.

Classifying the Severity of Traumatic Brain Injury

TBI is classified as mild, moderate, or severe. An individual with mild TBI has a GCS of 13 or higher, a loss of consciousness lasting less than 20 minutes, and a normal computed tomography scan. Individuals with mild TBI are awake on their arrival to the acute-care facility but may be dazed, confused, and complaining of headache and fatigue. An individual with a moderate TBI has a GCS score of 9 to 12. On admission to the hospital, the individual is confused and unable to answer questions appropriately. Many individuals with moderate TBIs have permanent physical, cognitive, and behavioral deficits. A severe TBI corresponds to a score of 3 to 8 and indicates that the individual is in a coma. Most people with severe TBIs have permanent functional and cognitive impairments (Bontke and Boake, 1996).

Patient problem areas

The clinical manifestations of TBI are varied, secondary to the diffuse neuronal damage that may occur. Common problems seen in this patient population include: (1) decreased level of consciousness; (2) cognitive impairments; (3) motor or movement disorders; (4) sensory problems; (5) communication deficits; (6) behavioral changes; and (7) associated problems.

Decreased Level of Consciousness

A decreased or altered level of arousal or consciousness is frequently seen in individuals who have sustained a TBI. *Arousal* is a primitive state of being awake or alert. The reticular activating system is responsible for an individual's level of arousal. *Awareness* implies that an individual is conscious of internal and external environmental stimuli. *Consciousness* is the state of being aware. The term *coma* is described as a decreased level of awareness. A coma is a state of unconsciousness in which the patient is neither aroused nor responsive to the internal or external environments (NINDS, 2014).

When patients are in a coma, their eyes remain closed, they are unable to initiate voluntary activity, and their sleep and wake cycles cannot be distinguished on an electroencephalogram. Coma, by definition, does not last longer than 3 to 4 weeks as sleep-wake cycles return, and there is restoration of brainstem functions such as respiration, digestion, and blood pressure control. A person who demonstrates a return of brainstem reflexes and sleep-wake cycles yet remains unconscious is said to be in a *vegetative state* (Lehmkuhl and Krawczyk, 1993). An individual at this stage may experience periods of arousal and may demonstrate spontaneous eye opening without tracking. General responses to pain such as increased heart or respiration rates, sweating, or abnormal posturing may be evident. The individual remains unaware of the external environment or internal needs (NINDS, 2014; Rappaport et al., 1992). A *persistent vegetative state* is the term used to identify a person who has been in a vegetative state for 30 days or longer. Adults generally have a 50% chance of regaining consciousness after being in a persistent vegetative state (NINDS, 2014). *Minimally conscious state* is another condition of impaired arousal and is characterized by a vague awareness of one's self and the environment. Patients are able to localize to noxious stimuli or sounds and may be able to visually fix on an object (Fulk and Nirider, 2014).

Other terms are also used to define unresponsiveness. *Stupor* is a condition of general unresponsiveness in which the patient is able to be aroused only after significant sensory stimulation. *Obtundity* is evident in people who sleep a great deal of the time. When these individuals are aroused, they demonstrate disinterest in the environment and are slow to respond to sensory stimulation. *Delirium* is categorized by disorientation, fear, and misperception of sensory stimuli. Patients at this stage can be agitated, loud, and socially inappropriate. *Clouding of consciousness* is a state in which the person is confused, distracted, and has poor memory (Winkler, 2013).

Recovery of consciousness is a gradual process whereby individuals demonstrate improvements in their orientation and recent memory. Progress through the stages is variable, and patients may plateau at any stage (Winkler, 2013).

Cognitive Deficits

In addition to deficits in arousal and responsiveness, many individuals with TBIs also experience cognitive deficits. Cognitive dysfunction can include disorientation, poor attention span, loss of memory, loss of executive functions (including poor planning and organizational skills, recognizing errors, problem solving, and abstract thinking) and an inability to control emotional responses. The severity of an individual's cognitive deficits greatly impacts the ability to learn new skills, an ability that is an integral part of the rehabilitation process (VanSant, 1990a, b). The following is a case example that illustrates this point.

A patient receiving physical therapy services in an inpatient rehabilitation center was able to ambulate independently without an assistive device to negotiate environmental barriers and to perform complex fine-motor tasks. The patient was not, however, able to remember his name, he could not identify family members, and he was not oriented to time or place. The patient would

often become confused by the external environment and would fill in gaps in his memory with inappropriate words or fabricated stories—an incident also known as *confabulation*. This patient's cognitive deficits were much more problematic to his overall functional independence and safety than were his physical limitations. Intervention strategies to address these impairments are discussed later in this chapter.

Motor Deficits

A second major area affected in individuals with TBI is motor function. When a patient is unconscious, mobility is impaired. The patient is not able to initiate active movements. Abnormal postures are also frequently seen as a consequence of brainstem injury. The two most prevalent abnormal postures exhibited are decerebrate and decorticate rigidity. In *decerebrate rigidity*, the patient's lower extremities are in extension. The hips are adducted and internally rotated, the knees are extended, the ankles are plantar flexed, and the feet are supinated. The upper extremities are internally rotated and extended at the shoulders, extended at the elbows, pronated at the forearms, and flexed at the wrists and fingers. Thumbs may be entrapped within the palm of the hand. Decerebrate rigidity results from severing of the neuroaxis in the midbrain region. The vestibular nuclei provide the source of the extensor tone. *Decorticate rigidity* appears as upper extremity flexion with adduction and internal rotation of the shoulders, flexion of the elbows, pronation of the forearms, flexion of the wrists, and extension of the lower extremities. Decorticate posturing results from dysfunction above the level of the red nucleus, specifically between the basal nuclei and the thalamus. Patients with significant injuries can be dominated by either abnormal pattern. Challenges arise when the patient is unable to deviate from the posture, and voluntary active movement is not possible (VanSant, 1990a).

In addition to the presence of abnormal postures, individuals who have sustained a TBI can present with other types of motor disorders. Individuals can demonstrate generalized weakness and difficulty initiating movement, as well as disorders of muscle tone. The reemergence of primitive and tonic reflexes without voluntary motor control can also affect the patient's ability to move into and out of different positions. The presence of the tonic labyrinthine reflex, asymmetrical tonic neck reflex, symmetrical tonic neck reflex, positive support reflex, and flexor withdrawal reflex can inhibit the patient's ability to initiate active movement. Motor sequencing, ataxia, incoordination, and decreased static and dynamic balance may also interfere with the patient's ability to perform functional movements.

Sensory Deficits

Sensory deficits are also apparent in a person with TBI. The sense of smell may be lost or impaired secondary to damage of the cribriform plate or anterior fossa fracture (Campbell, 2000). Perceptions of cutaneous (tactile and kinesthetic) sensations can be impaired or absent. In addition, individuals may experience visual, perceptual, and proprioceptive deficits, depending on the area of the brain that was affected.

Communication Deficits

The ability to communicate is often initially lost or severely impaired in the patient with TBI. A decreased awareness of the environment can limit opportunities for interaction. Patients with severe motor deficits may not be able to initiate communication because of abnormal tone or posturing. Mechanisms other than verbal communication must be explored. Eye blinks, head nods, or finger movements may be the only available options to establish yes-no responsiveness. PTs and PTAs often discover that the patient's first successful attempts at communication occur during the physical therapy treatment session. The inhibitory techniques used to manage abnormal tone and to facilitate normal movement patterns may allow the patient to initiate a motion or verbal response that can serve as a means for communicating basic needs.

Behavioral Deficits

Behavioral problems can also become evident after TBI. These deficits are frequently the most enduring and socially disabling. Patients can be debilitated by changes in their personalities and

temperaments. Patients can exhibit neuroses, psychoses, sexual disinhibition, apathy, irritability, lability, aggression, and low frustration tolerance. These personality changes can be challenging for the rehabilitation professionals, as well as for caregivers and family members. The clinician should consult with the patient's neuropsychologist who can develop and suggest appropriate strategies to use to address the patient's behavioral issues.

Associated Problems

A final area that must be mentioned in this population is that of associated problems that individuals may experience. Approximately 40% of individuals with TBI will have other injuries (Campbell, 2000). Serious medical complications, as well as orthopedic injuries, can occur during the traumatic event leading to the actual brain injury. A person who has sustained a TBI may also present with fractures, lacerations, and even spinal cord injury. These associated problems affect the individual's care and can make rehabilitation even more challenging.

Physical therapy intervention: acute care

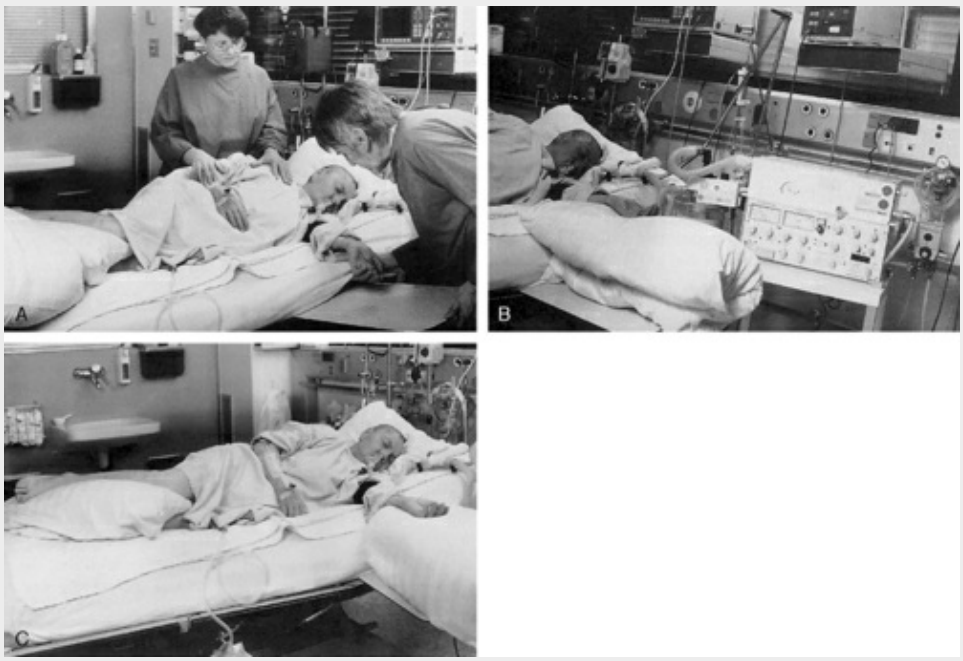
The physical therapy care of the patient with a TBI should begin in the acute care setting as soon as the patient is medically stable. Early goals of intervention should include: (1) increasing the patient's level of arousal; (2) preventing the development of secondary impairments; (3) improving patient function; and (4) providing the patient and the patient's family with education regarding the injury. The patient's length of stay in the acute-care facility may be short, especially if the patient does not experience any medical complications. Average lengths of acute-care hospitalization may be less than two weeks.

Positioning

One of the most important early treatment interventions that must be addressed is patient positioning. This is imperative because patients with TBI can exhibit abnormal tone and postures. Supine is the position in which many of these patients are placed because it facilitates performance of both nursing and self-care tasks. Supine is also the position in which the greatest impact of the tonic labyrinthine reflexes and the dominance of extensor tone may be evident. Interventions 11-1 and 11-2 provide positioning examples. Side-lying and semiprone positions are more desirable positions because the influence of the tonic labyrinthine reflex is reduced. Care must be taken when positioning these patients because of the potential for respiratory complications. Often, patients with TBI may be receiving mechanical ventilation or have tracheostomies. The patient can be positioned in prone by placing a pillow or a wedge under the chest and forehead. This position maintains the patient's airway. Positioning the upper extremities in slight abduction and external rotation while the patient is in prone or supine position also exerts an inhibitory influence on abnormal muscle tone (Davies, 1994).

Intervention 11-1

Side-Lying Positioning

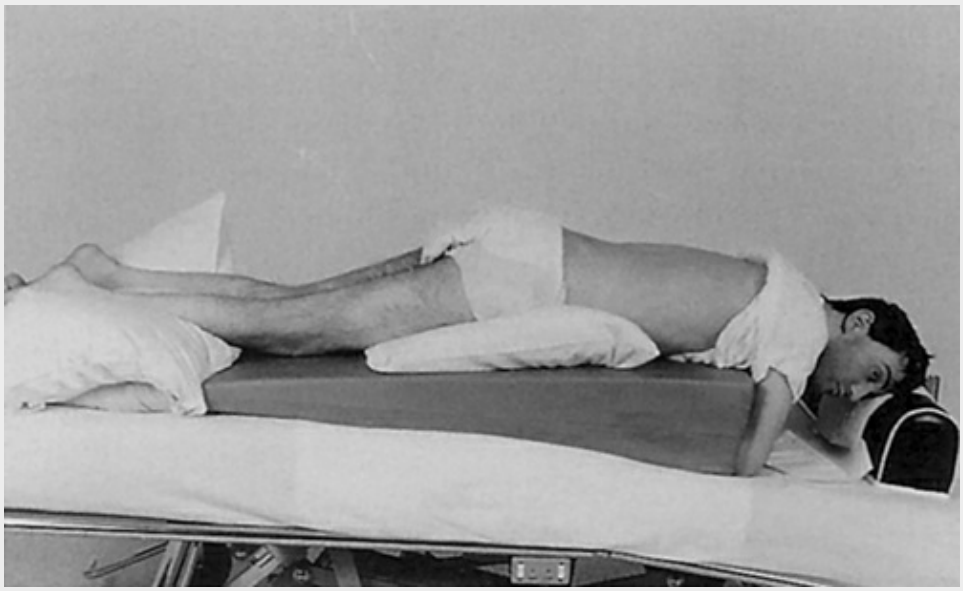


A. One end of the footboard is beneath the mattress.
B. A rolled pillow supports the extended arm.
C. The arm is well-supported in the corrected position.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Intervention 11-2

Prone Positioning



Despite severe contractures, this patient is able to lie prone with the help of different supports.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

The clinician should position the patient out of the decerebrate or decorticate posture. The nursing staff as well as the patient's family must be educated on the ways in which the patient should be positioned. Firm towels, small bolsters, or half-rolls should be used to assist the patient in maintaining the optimal position. Pillows and other soft objects should be avoided because they provide the patient with something to push against, which may elicit a stretch reflex and exacerbate abnormal posturing.

The abnormal muscle tone present in these patients can be significant. Contractures can develop quickly, especially in the elbow and ankle. Proper positioning, accompanied by range-of-motion exercises and static splinting, can alleviate these potentially limiting complications.

Heterotopic Ossification

Heterotopic ossification is abnormal bone formation in soft tissues and muscles surrounding joints that can occur after TBI. The origin of this problem is unknown; however, this condition is noted after brain or spinal cord injury. A common denominator in all cases of heterotopic ossification is prolonged immobilization. The incidence of this condition in patients with TBI is between 11% and 76% (Hammond and McDeavitt, 1999; Varghese, 1992). Patients can present with loss of range of motion, pain on movement, localized swelling, and erythema (Davies, 1994). If therapists suspect that a patient is developing this condition, they should notify the physician of the symptoms. A definitive diagnosis is made with a computerized tomography (CT) scan. Common joints affected include the hips, knees, shoulders, and elbows. In patients with TBI, the hip is the most common joint affected. There is no effective method available to treat heterotopic ossification once it has developed, which has led to controversy regarding continuation of physical therapy after diagnosis of the condition. Most experts do agree that range-of-motion exercises should continue to prevent possible ankylosis and that positioning, splinting, and managing abnormal muscle tone can be

helpful (Varghese, 1992). Pharmacologic interventions include etidronate disodium and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents (Goodman, 2009c).

Reflex-Inhibiting Postures

Reflex-inhibiting postures were first discussed by Karel Bobath and Berta Bobath. After observing children with cerebral palsy and the abnormal postures these children assumed, the Bobaths believed that the influence of abnormal tone from the tonic reflexes could be reversed by positioning a patient in the opposite pattern. Reflex-inhibiting postures were developed for the tonic labyrinthine reflexes, the asymmetrical tonic neck reflex, and the symmetrical tonic neck reflex. Initially, the Bobaths used these postures as static positions; however, with evolution of their treatment approach, active movement was superimposed on the reflex-inhibiting postures. These postures are now used to inhibit abnormal tone, and once a more manageable degree of muscle tone is achieved, the clinician facilitates normal movement patterns (Bobath and Bobath, 1984).

Activities Aimed at Increasing Patient Awareness

During this acute stage of recovery, activities targeted at increasing the patient's level of awareness are employed. These activities are important even for patients who are in a coma. Even though a patient may not be able to respond verbally or motorically, it should not be assumed that the patient is unable to hear or understand the information that is being provided. In fact, clinicians should assume that the patient can hear and understand all that is being said. All members of the rehabilitation team should be orienting the patient to his or her name, the facility in which he or she is currently residing, and why the patient is receiving medical intervention. The rehabilitation team often develops a script outlining pertinent orientation information about the patient so there is consistency in interactions between team members and the patient. Referring to subjects that are familiar to the patient within treatment sessions and conversations is beneficial. As clinicians work with the patient, it is imperative that they explain what they are doing at all times. Communicating with the patient in a respectful and personal manner also demonstrates to the patient and his or her family the core values of our profession.

Sensory Stimulation

The use of sensory stimulation for patients in a coma remains under review. A Cochrane review showed no reliable evidence to support or dispute the use of sensory stimulation in the facilitation of a person's level of arousal (Fulk and Nirider, 2014). In the past, the rationale for the use of sensory modalities was to increase the patient's level of arousal and responsiveness and to facilitate the patient's emergence from coma (Bontke et al., 1992). Sensory stimulation does play a significant role in assisting the rehabilitation team in the assessment of the patient's level of arousal and ability to perceive and attend to stimuli in the environment (Bontke et al., 1992). Auditory, olfactory, tactile, kinesthetic, vestibular, and oral stimuli can be administered for assessment and intervention purposes.

When administering sensory stimulation to the patient who is unresponsive, it is best to limit the time of exposure. Brief periods of stimulation are best. Overstimulation can agitate the patient and may cause increased fatigue. It is also important to monitor responses to sensory stimulation when the patient is most aroused. Therapists are more likely to see a response from the patient after assisting with range-of-motion exercises, movement transitions, or transfers. Only one sensory stimulus should be administered at a time. If the therapist is using tactile stimuli, no other sensory input should be provided. When multiple inputs are administered, it is not possible to determine what stimuli elicited the patient's response. Patients must also be given adequate time to respond once the stimulus has been presented. Response times can be greatly increased in patients who have sustained a TBI (Krus, 1988).

Patients' responses to the different sensory modalities administered must be observed. The rehabilitation team hopes that one type of stimulus will be effective in eliciting a response. Examples of various patient responses include changes in heart rate, blood pressure, or respiration rate; diaphoresis; increases or decreases in muscle tone; head turning; eye movements; grimacing; or vocalizations. Small vials of different scents such as coffee, peppermint, or ammonia can be passed under the patient's nose. Tactile stimuli such as different textures (cotton, paintbrushes,

sandpaper) can be applied to areas of the patient's skin. Noxious stimuli are only used if the patient is not responding to other forms of stimulation. Pressure on the patient's nail bed, sticking the patient with a pin, or pinching the patient's skin slightly may elicit a pain response. Brightly colored objects, familiar pictures, or objects presented to the patient can provide visual stimulation. Ice, mouth swabs, and tongue depressors can provide oral stimulation. Finally, range-of-motion exercises and position changes can be performed to assess the patient's response to kinesthetic input (Krus, 1988). Once a response to a specific stimulus is observed, team members can monitor the consistency of the response over time to record trends and patient improvements.

The clinician's voice can also be used as a tool to influence the patient's response. For patients who are in a heightened state of awareness, the use of a soft tone of voice may calm the patient. On the contrary, for patients who are lethargic, the use of the patient's name followed by a brief, concise command in a loud voice may be used to arouse the patient.

Cognitive Functioning

The Rancho Los Amigos Scale of Cognitive Functioning is a tool that is used to measure and describe the patient's level of cognitive function. Table 11-2 highlights major patient responses in each of the categories. The levels start with the patient at level I. Patients at this level do not respond to any type of stimuli, whereas individuals at level X are alert, oriented, and able to function independently within the community. Although this scale would appear to be an easy way to classify patients and their recoveries, some individuals may exhibit behaviors or responses from more than one category as they transition between stages. Furthermore, not every patient will progress through each of the stages and some patients may plateau at a given level. Despite these challenges, the scale remains an excellent means to classify an individual's cognitive functioning. It is important to remember that the Rancho Scale does not address the patient's physical capabilities.

Table 11-2

Levels of Cognitive Functioning

Levels of Cognitive Functioning	Behavior Description
Level I – No Response: Total Assistance	Complete absence of observable change in behavior when presented visual, auditory, tactile, proprioceptive, vestibular, or painful stimuli
Level II – Generalized Response: Total Assistance	Demonstrates generalized reflex response to painful stimuli Responds to repeated auditory stimuli with increased or decreased activity Responds to external stimuli with physiologic changes generalized, gross body movement, and/or not purposeful vocalization Responses noted above may be same regardless of type and location of stimulation Responses may be significantly delayed
Level III – Localized Response: Total Assistance	Demonstrates withdrawal or vocalization to painful stimuli Turns toward or away from auditory stimuli Blinks when strong light crosses visual field Follows moving object passed within visual field Responds to discomfort by pulling tubes or restraints Responds inconsistently to simple commands Responses directly related to type of stimulus May respond to some persons (especially family and friends) but not to others
Level IV – Confused/Agitated: Maximal Assistance	Alert and in heightened state of activity Purposeful attempts to remove restraints or tubes or crawl out of bed May perform motor activities, such as sitting, reaching and walking, but without any apparent purpose or upon another's request Very brief and usually nonpurposeful moments of sustained alternatives and divided attention Absent short-term memory May cry out or scream out of proportion to stimulus even after its removal May exhibit aggressive or flight behavior Mood may swing from euphoric to hostile with no apparent relationship to environmental events Unable to cooperate with treatment efforts Verbalizations are frequently incoherent and/or inappropriate to activity or environment
Level V – Confused, Inappropriate Nonagitated: Maximal Assistance	Alert, not agitated but may wander randomly or with a vague intention of going home May become agitated in response to external stimulation, and/or lack of environmental structure Not oriented to person, place, or time Frequent brief periods, nonpurposeful sustained attention Severely impaired recent memory, with confusion of past and present in reaction to ongoing activity Absent goal-directed, problem-solving, self-monitoring behavior Often demonstrates inappropriate use of objects without external direction May be able to perform previously learned tasks when structured and cues provided Unable to learn new information Able to respond appropriately to simple commands, fairly consistently with external structures and cues Responses to simple commands without external structure are random and nonpurposeful in relation to command Able to converse on a social, automatic level for brief periods of time when provided external structure and cues Verbalizations about present events become inappropriate and confabulatory when external structure and cues are not provided
Level VI – Confused, Appropriate: Moderate Assistance	Inconsistently oriented to person, time, and place Able to attend to highly familiar tasks in nondistracting environment for 30 minutes with moderate redirection Remote memory has more depth and detail than recent memory Vague recognition of some staff Able to use assistive memory aide with maximum assistance Emerging awareness of appropriate response to self, family, and basic needs Moderate assist to problem solve barriers to task completion Supervised for old learning (e.g., self-care). Shows carryover for relearned familiar tasks (e.g., self-care) Maximum assistance for new learning with little or no carryover Unaware of impairments, disabilities, and safety risks Consistently follows simple directions Verbal expressions are appropriate in highly familiar and structured situations
Level VII – Automatic, Appropriate: Minimal Assistance for Daily Living Skills	Consistently oriented to person and place, within highly familiar environments Moderate assistance for orientation to time Able to attend to highly familiar tasks in a nondistracting environment for at least 30 minutes with minimal assist to complete tasks Minimal supervision for new learning Demonstrates carryover of new learning Initiates and carries out steps to complete familiar personal and household routine but has shallow recall of what he/she has been doing Able to monitor accuracy and completeness of each step in routine personal and household ADLs and modify plan with minimal assistance Superficial awareness of his/her condition but unaware of specific impairments and disabilities and the limits they place on his/her ability to safely, accurately and completely carry out his/her household, community, work, and leisure ADLs Minimal supervision for safety in routine home and community activities Unrealistic planning for the future Unable to think about consequences of a decision or action Overestimates abilities Unaware of others' needs and feelings Oppositional/uncooperative Unable to recognize inappropriate social interaction behavior

Levels of Cognitive Functioning	Behavior Description
Level VIII – Purposeful, Appropriate: Stand-By Assistance	Consistently oriented to person, place, and time Independently attends to and completes familiar tasks for 1 hour in distracting environments Able to recall and integrate past and recent events Uses assistive memory devices to recall daily schedule, to-do lists and record critical information for later use with stand-by assistance Initiates and carries out steps to complete familiar personal, household, community, work, and leisure routines with stand-by assistance and can modify the plan when needed with minimal assistance Requires no assistance once new tasks/activities are learned Aware of and acknowledges impairments and disabilities when they interfere with task completion but requires stand-by assistance to take appropriate corrective action Thinks about consequences of a decision or action with minimal assistance Overestimates or underestimates abilities Acknowledges others' needs and feelings and responds appropriately with minimal assistance Depressed Irritable Low frustration tolerance/easily angered Argumentative Self-centered Uncharacteristically dependent/independent Able to recognize and acknowledge inappropriate social interaction behavior while it is occurring and takes corrective action with minimal assistance
Level IX – Purposeful, Appropriate: Stand-By Assistance on Request	Independently shifts between tasks and completes them accurately for at least two consecutive hours Uses assistive memory devices to recall daily schedule, to-do lists and record critical information for later use with assistance when requested Initiates and carries out steps to complete familiar personal, household, work, and leisure tasks independently and unfamiliar personal, household, work, and leisure tasks with assistance when requested Aware of and acknowledges impairments and disabilities when they interfere with task completion and takes appropriate corrective action but requires stand-by assist to anticipate a problem before it occurs and take action to avoid it Able to think about consequences of decisions or actions with assistance when requested Accurately estimates abilities but requires stand-by assistance to adjust to task demands Acknowledges others' needs and feelings and responds appropriately with stand-by assistance Depression may continue May be easily irritable May have low frustration tolerance Able to self-monitor appropriateness of social interaction with stand-by assistance
Level X – Purposeful, Appropriate: Modified Independent	Able to handle multiple tasks simultaneously in all environments but may require periodic breaks Able to independently procure, create, and maintain own assistive memory devices Independently initiates and carries out steps to complete familiar and unfamiliar personal, household, community, work, and leisure tasks but may require more than usual amount of time and/or compensatory strategies to complete them Anticipates impact of impairments and disabilities on ability to complete daily living tasks and takes action to avoid problems before they occur but may require more than usual amount of time and/or compensatory strategies Able to independently think about consequences of decisions or actions but may require more than usual amount of time and/or compensatory strategies to select the appropriate decision or action Accurately estimates abilities and independently adjusts to task demands Able to recognize the needs and feelings of others and automatically respond in appropriate manner Periodic periods of depression may occur Irritability and low frustration tolerance when sick, fatigued, and/or under emotional stress Social interaction behavior is consistently appropriate

From Rancho Los Amigos: Revised Assessment Scales. Original Scale authored by Chris Hagen, PhD, Danese Malkmus, MA, and Patricia Durham, MA. Communication Disorders Service, Rancho Los Amigos Hospital, 1972. Most recent revised scale in 1997 by Chris Hagen.

ADL, Activities of daily living.

Patient responses may be generalized or localized. Generalized responses are inconsistent and nonpurposeful. They can be physiologic changes including fluctuations in respiration rates, sweating, skin color changes, or goose bumps. Generalized responses may also present as gross body movements, including changes in the amount of extremity movement, increased tone or abnormal posturing, or withdrawal from the stimulus. Vocalizations or increased oral movements are also characteristic of generalized patient responses. Patients exhibiting generalized responses frequently respond in a similar manner regardless of the stimulus applied (VanSant, 1990a).

Patients with the ability to localize sensory responses will react specifically to the stimulus applied. Patients demonstrating this type of sensory processing may be able to follow simple one-step commands; however, responses are frequently delayed and are not consistently completed (VanSant, 1990a). An example of this is when the therapist touches the patient's right shoulder and asks the patient to do the same; after a short delay, the patient may reach and touch his or her right upper arm.

Patient and Family Education

Patient and family education is an important component of our physical therapy interventions. TBI is devastating to an individual's family and friends as well as to the individual. Initially, most

families are overwhelmed and may not know how to react to the patient. It is important for PTs and PTAs to provide the family with support and accurate information. Family members must be educated about changes in the patient's appearance and cognitive and physical functioning. Although this information may be initially shared with the family in the acute-care setting, it will need to be reinforced and continually updated as the patient is transferred to new facilities. Expectations for each stage and possible progress must be addressed. As soon as possible, family members should be encouraged to participate in the patient's care.

Physical therapy interventions during inpatient rehabilitation

Once the patient is medically stable, the patient will most likely be transferred to an inpatient rehabilitation setting if further intensive intervention is required. Primary patient problems at this stage are as follows: (1) decreased range of motion and the potential for contractures; (2) increased muscle tone and abnormal posturing; (3) decreased awareness and responsiveness to the environment; (4) the presence of primitive tonic reflexes; (5) decreased functional mobility and tolerance to upright; (6) decreased endurance; (7) decreased sensory awareness; (8) an impaired or absent communication system; and (9) decreased knowledge of present condition.

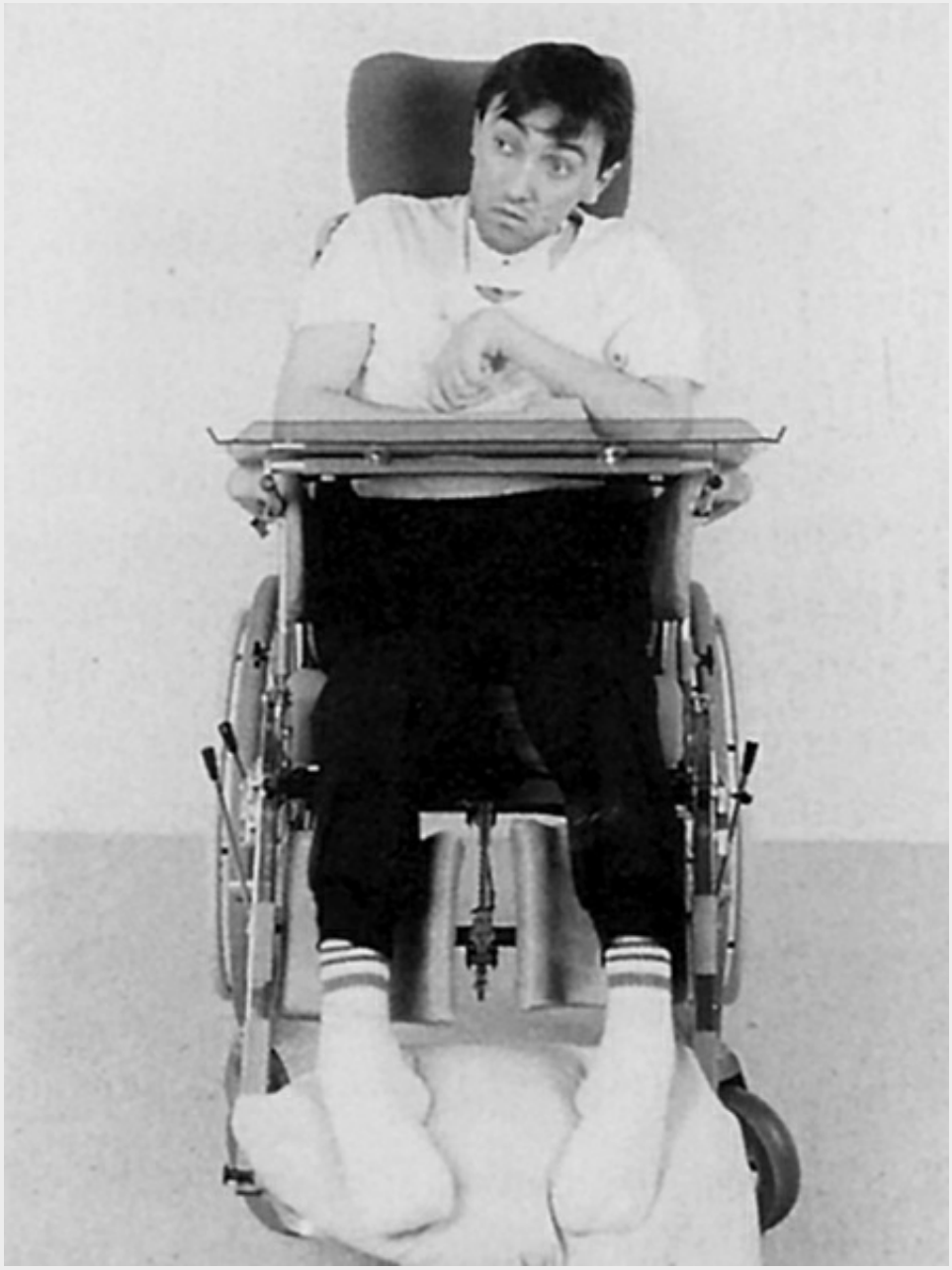
Positioning

Proper positioning continues to be an important component of care during rehabilitation. As discussed in the section on acute-care interventions, positioning warrants much attention by all health-care providers. The patient's position should be changed every 2 hours to prevent skin breakdown or the development of pneumonia. Proper positioning depends on the patient's resting posture, abnormal muscle tone, and the presence of any primitive reflexes. Side-lying and prone positions are the two most desirable positions. As the patient becomes medically stable, sitting in a wheelchair and acclimation to an upright position becomes important. Sitting orients the patient to a different position and assists with endurance and bronchial hygiene. For patients who are functioning at a low level and who do not possess head and trunk control, a tilt-in-space wheelchair may be necessary. A tilt-in-space wheelchair differs from a reclining wheelchair by allowing the trunk to recline while maintaining 90-degree angles at the hips, knees, and ankles. The tilt-in-space feature is beneficial because it assists in positioning the trunk and in maintaining proper alignment, and it allows for a change in the environment and kinesthetic input the patient receives. A drawback to this type of wheelchair and seating system is that it changes the patient's visual field. Gaze is directed upward, thus making it difficult for the patient to see individuals and objects in his or her environment.

Standard wheelchairs may be satisfactory for the individual with fair trunk and head control. Lap trays securely fastened to the chair support the patient's upper extremities and help in maintaining proper sitting alignment. Intervention 11-3 provides an example of a patient positioned in a standard wheelchair. The patient must be carefully monitored when sitting activities are initiated. Complications that result from immobility and prolonged supine positioning can become evident, including orthostatic hypotension and fatigue. In addition, the patient's skin condition must be carefully monitored to avoid any chance of pressure areas or skin breakdown. When attempting to position the patient, the therapist must remember the basic positioning concepts discussed in Chapter 10. Positioning begins by placing the patient's proximal body areas including the pelvis and the shoulder girdle in correct alignment. From there, the therapist can work more distally. Intervening at the more proximal joints initially will help to influence tone more distally. Poor positioning in the wheelchair or bed can lead to the development of contractures and an increase in abnormal muscle tone.

Intervention 11-3

Wheelchair Positioning



It is important for a patient with severe contractures to sit upright and to lie prone.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Wheelchair Propulsion

Once the patient is able to tolerate sitting in the wheelchair, self-propulsion activities can be initiated. Initially, the clinician may need to help the patient with hand-over-hand or guided practice. As the patient becomes more proficient, the goal will be for the patient to propel the wheelchair independently and to negotiate safely around the facility.

Range of Motion

Range-of-motion exercises are also important during the early stages of rehabilitation to minimize the likelihood of contracture formation. Because most patients with TBI have extensive problem lists, it is necessary to be as efficient as possible with our interventions. Stretching of individual

joints is time-intensive and may have limited short-term benefits. Instead, greater therapeutic benefits can often be achieved through the use of different developmental postures and positions to increase patient flexibility. For example, positioning a patient in prone or tall kneeling can be used to stretch the hip flexors; quadruped and sitting can be used to stretch the gluteals and quadriceps; and standing on a tilt table or approximation directed down through the knee when the foot is weight bearing can assist with stretching the gastrocnemius and soleus. It may, however, be necessary to spend dedicated treatment time to manually stretch the hamstrings and the heel cords more aggressively.

Whenever functional positions or developmental postures will meet the same goal as static stretching, they should be employed. Patients who have developed deformities or contractures as a result of abnormal tone and posturing may require more intensive stretching. A more effective intervention for these individuals may be static splinting or serial casting. A plaster cast is applied to the joint with the range-of-motion limitation or contracture and is left on for 7 to 10 days. Thus, a prolonged stretch is applied to the joint and soft tissues. The goal is to decrease the contracture through subsequent castings and stretching. Three to four casts may need to be applied to achieve the desired results (Booth et al., 1983). Ultimately, the final cast should be bivalved as it is removed so it can become a permanent splint for the patient. Areas that respond well to serial casting include the ankle, knee, elbow, and wrist. Clinicians working with patients who have been casted need to monitor the patient's response to the cast as the patient may not be able to verbalize pain or discomfort. Skin discoloration of the toes or fingers may indicate that the cast is too tight. Casts that are applied too loosely may slip down. It is not uncommon to find that a patient may have worked the cast off completely. A detailed description of the application of serial casts is beyond the scope of this text (Davies, 1994).

Improving Awareness

Increasing awareness of self and the environment is another important aspect of the patient's plan of care. Enhancing a patient's awareness is most often accomplished through the administration of various sensory stimuli. An assessment tool that can be administered to the patient and that assists in identifying or categorizing the patient's responses to stimuli is the Rappaport Coma/Near-Coma Scale (CNC). This tool was developed to measure small changes in awareness and responsivity in patients with severe brain injuries who function at levels characteristic of vegetative status. The CNC looks at the patient's responses to auditory, visual, olfactory, tactile, and painful stimuli. In addition, the patient's attempts at vocalizations, the ability to respond to a threat, and the ability to follow a one-step command are assessed. This assessment tool is used at admission to the facility and is repeated at regular intervals to document the patient's progress. Multiple disciplines can administer the test. Scores for the test items are determined, and the patient's level of awareness or responsivity is categorized as no coma (level 1) to extreme coma (level 4). Research suggests that patients with CNC scores less than 2.0 and are involved in an intensive rehabilitation program are most likely to improve (Rappaport et al., 1992).

As stated earlier, it is important to explain to the patient what is being done even if the patient appears to be unresponsive. Orienting the patient to the surroundings and the circumstances regarding admission to the facility may be beneficial in increasing awareness levels. Many brain injury rehabilitation teams develop patient scripts that assist in orienting the patient to the environment. Strategies to manage some of the other cognitive deficits demonstrated by this population are discussed later in this chapter.

Family Education

Educating the patient's family on ways in which they can assist the patient with orientation and awareness is important. Encouraging the family to bring in favorite pictures, music, or other items can be of assistance. However, family members should be cautioned against overstimulating the patient. In an effort to arouse the patient, families often play music or leave the patient's television on for extended periods. Few of us listen to music or watch television 24 hours a day. It is important to vary the amounts and intensities of the stimuli provided so the patient does not habituate to the sensory modality.

Family members should also be instructed in and encouraged to assist with patient positioning and passive range-of-motion exercises. As the patient progresses, families can assist with bed

mobility, transfers, wheelchair propulsion, and self-care activities. It is important to instruct family members in proper body mechanics when moving the patient to avoid injury. The team must also provide the family with education regarding the patient's cognitive recovery. Providing the family with an understanding of why the patient may be acting or responding in a given way coupled with strategies the family can employ to deal with the exhibited behavior is important. As the team prepares for the patient's eventual discharge, families should be provided with information on the support services that are available to them.

Functional Mobility Training

Functional mobility tasks are another important aspect of intervention. Often, patients are dependent in all aspects of mobility. Early on, it may be necessary for the PT or PTA to cotreat the patient with another member of the rehabilitation team. When patients have an extremely low functional level, it can be helpful to have two sets of hands available. However, in this current climate of cost containment, clinicians must use resources efficiently. For example, it may be more cost-effective for the assistant and the rehabilitation aide to treat the patient as compared to the physical and occupational therapists. The patient's status, level of acuity, and the interventions to be provided must be considered before these types of patient care decisions are made.

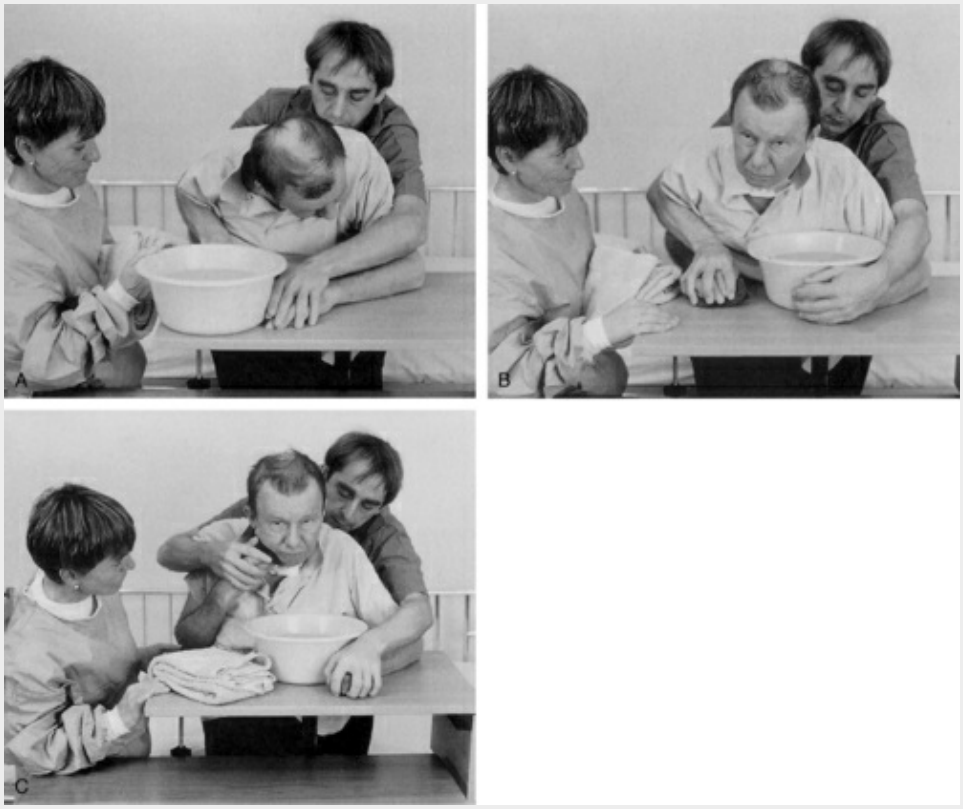
Frequently, therapists need to spend some time inhibiting abnormal tone or postures so functional activities can be attempted. Methods to inhibit abnormal tone are discussed in Chapter 10 and include prolonged stretch, weight bearing, approximation, slow rhythmic rotation, and tendon pressure. These techniques work effectively with this patient population as well. Total body postures and positions such as upper and lower trunk rotation, sitting, prone, and standing are also effective in decreasing abnormal tone. Slow vestibular stimulation including rocking in a sitting or side-lying position and neutral warmth can be effective in decreasing abnormal tone or promoting a more relaxed state in a patient who is agitated or highly aroused (O'Sullivan, 2014). As stated in Chapter 10, once the abnormal muscle tone has been decreased, normal movement patterns and task-specific training must be encouraged to promote motor relearning.

Individuals who have sustained a severe TBI lack postural and motor control. They are unable to initiate voluntary movement, are dominated by abnormal muscle tone and reflex activity, and exhibit difficulty in dissociating extremity movements from the trunk. In addition, these patients often are unable to perform automatic postural adjustments (VanSant, 1990a). Consequently, an early emphasis in the patient's physical therapy plan of care must be on the development of postural control. Head and trunk control must be developed before the patient can hope to have control over the distal extremities. The principles discussed in Chapter 10 regarding the development of functional movements are also applicable to this patient population. Therapeutic interventions performed with the patient in prone or prone over a wedge or bolster may provide excellent opportunities to address head and trunk control. These positions require that the patient work the cervical extensors against gravity and also provide inhibition to the supine tonic labyrinthine reflex. The prone position facilitates increased flexor tone in patients with the presence of this reflex. Patients who have significant extensor tone can also be positioned in prone over a ball. Although transferring and maintaining the patient's position on the ball is challenging, the activity has a profound effect on reducing abnormal tone. Once the patient is on the ball, a gentle rocking can be performed to decrease the effects of abnormal tone even further. This position is contraindicated in patients with seizure disorders and increased ICP. Moreover, all patients should be carefully monitored during prone activities to ensure adequacy of ventilation.

Practicing through repetition of well-learned and automatic activities is beneficial and promotes motor learning. Often, patients have difficulty in learning new motor tasks, but they respond well to activities they have performed thousands of times before. Selection of common, daily activities, such as washing the face, brushing the teeth, combing the hair, and walking, often result in active movement attempts by the patient because they are meaningful and have been performed thousands of times. During the performance of these tasks, the PT or PTA may see active movement attempts by the patient. Hand-over-hand or therapeutic guiding techniques, in which the therapist guides the patient's own extremity or body movements, are effective. The patient receives proprioceptive and kinesthetic feedback as he or she performs a functional movement pattern (Davies, 1994). Intervention 11-4 shows examples of a family member assisting a patient with hand-over-hand techniques.

Intervention 11-4

Hand-over-Hand Guiding (Face Washing)



A. A task is presented as the patient's wife watches.
B. During hand-over-hand guiding, the patient lifts his head.
C. Active neck and trunk extension are achieved as he washes his face.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

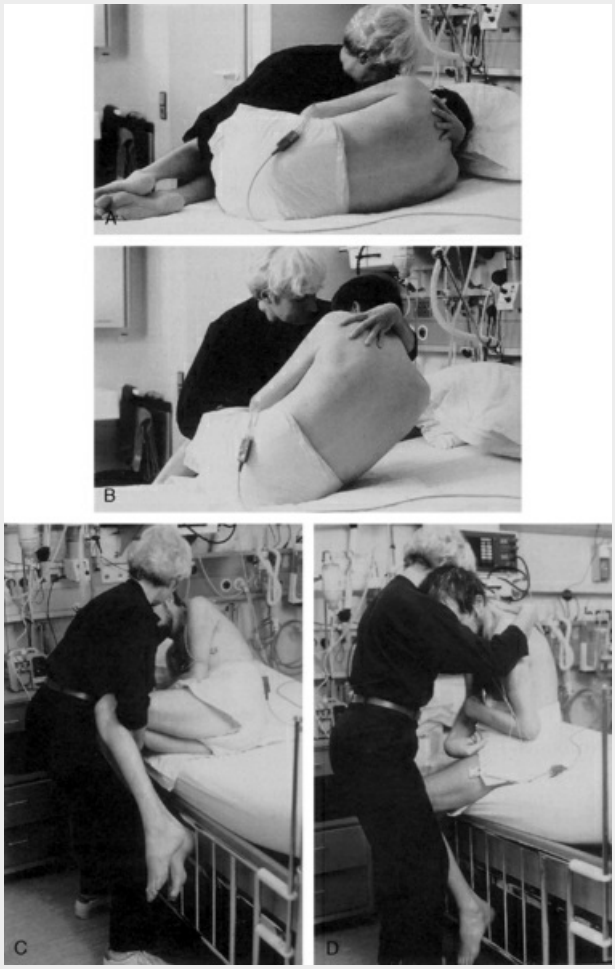
Vision is a valuable sensory modality that can be used during treatment. Activities that incorporate visual tracking or maintained visual contact with an object assist with the development of head control. For example, if the patient is in a sitting position and is unable to maintain the head in an erect position, the patient can be encouraged to maintain eye contact with the therapist or to look at an specific object. Vision can also be used to guide a patient's movement, as with rolling or turning.

Sitting Activities

Sitting is an important position to emphasize during treatment. Sitting can increase arousal and also provides a challenge to the patient's postural alignment and righting and equilibrium responses (VanSant, 1990b). Transferring the patient from supine to sitting can be accomplished in the same ways as discussed in Chapter 10. Intervention 11-5 shows a progression to sitting. Patients with a low functional level may require assistance from two individuals, one who is responsible for the head and upper trunk and one who transfers the lower trunk and legs. Changes in the patient's level of awareness and muscle tone should be noted during the change in position. Patients who exhibit strong extensor tone and posturing may become flexed and hypotonic once they are upright.

Intervention 11-5

Supine-to-Sit Transfer



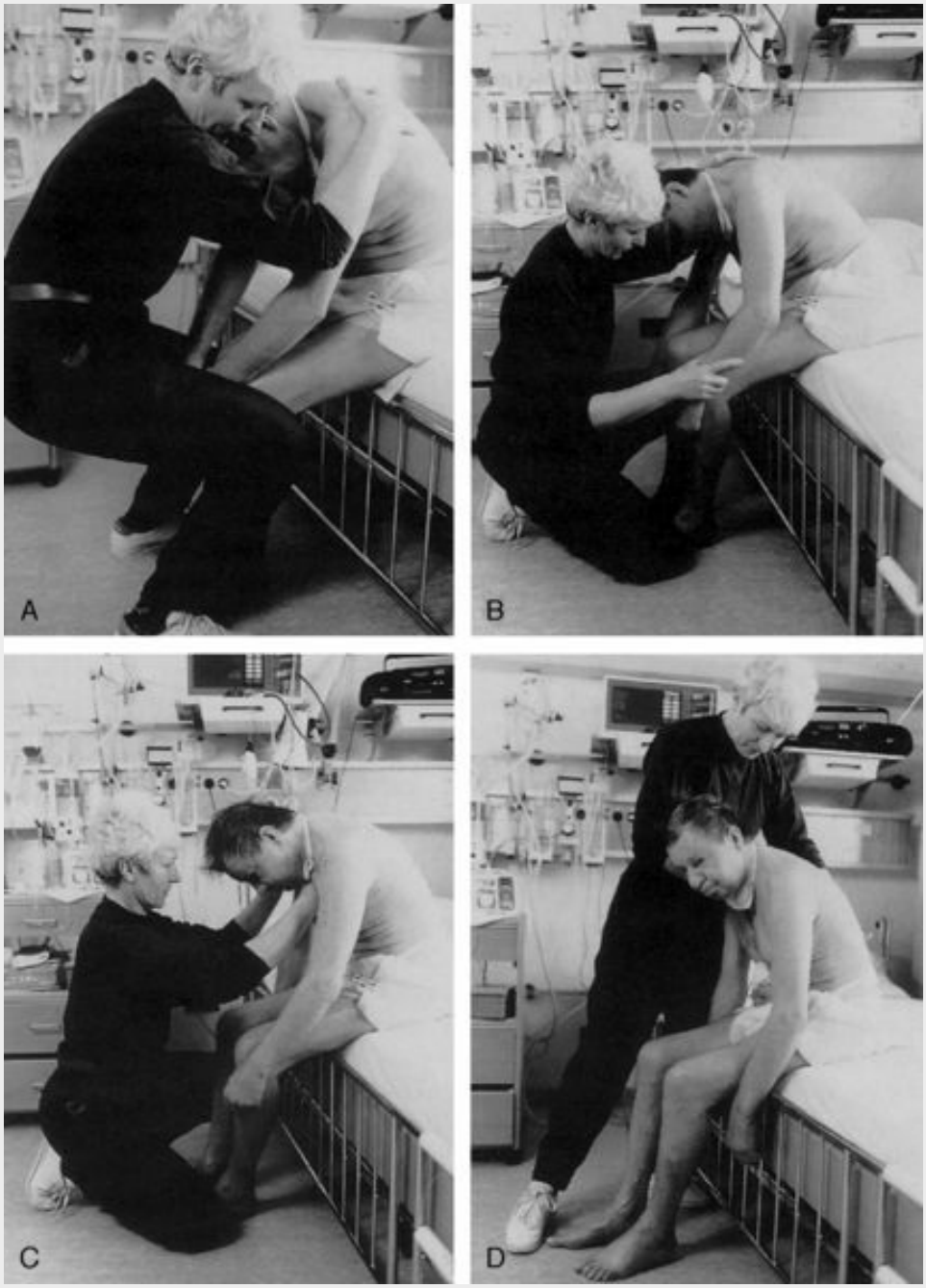
A. The therapist's arm is around the patient's flexed knees; her other arm beneath his neck.
B. His legs are brought over the side of the bed and are maintained in flexion.
C. His trunk is lifted toward the vertical.
D. His knees are prevented from sliding forward while supporting his head and trunk.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Once the patient is sitting upright on the side of the mat table, the goal for the activity is the patient's achievement of a neutral pelvic position with an erect trunk and head. Frequently, it is necessary to use two individuals during sitting activities because of abnormal tone in the patient's trunk. One person can assist the patient with trunk and head control from behind while the other therapist, facing the patient, works on the position of the patient's pelvis, the position of the upper and lower extremities, and general awareness. Supporting the upper extremities on a large ball in the patient's lap can be beneficial for the patient with poor trunk control or hypotonia. The ball assists the therapist in maintaining trunk stabilization and may provide a sensation of support for the patient. Gentle anterior and posterior weight shifts can also be performed with the patient in this position. The weight shifts provide a mechanism to assess the patient's postural responses and also serve to increase awareness through kinesthetic input. Trunk flexion performed in the short-sitting position also maintains range of motion. Intervention 11-6 depicts this activity.

Intervention 11-6

Trunk Flexion in Sitting



A. The patient is bending the trunk forward with the therapist blocking his knees.
B. The patient's hands reach for the feet.
C. The patient is being assisted to return to an upright position.
D. The patient is assisted for the extension of the thoracic spine.

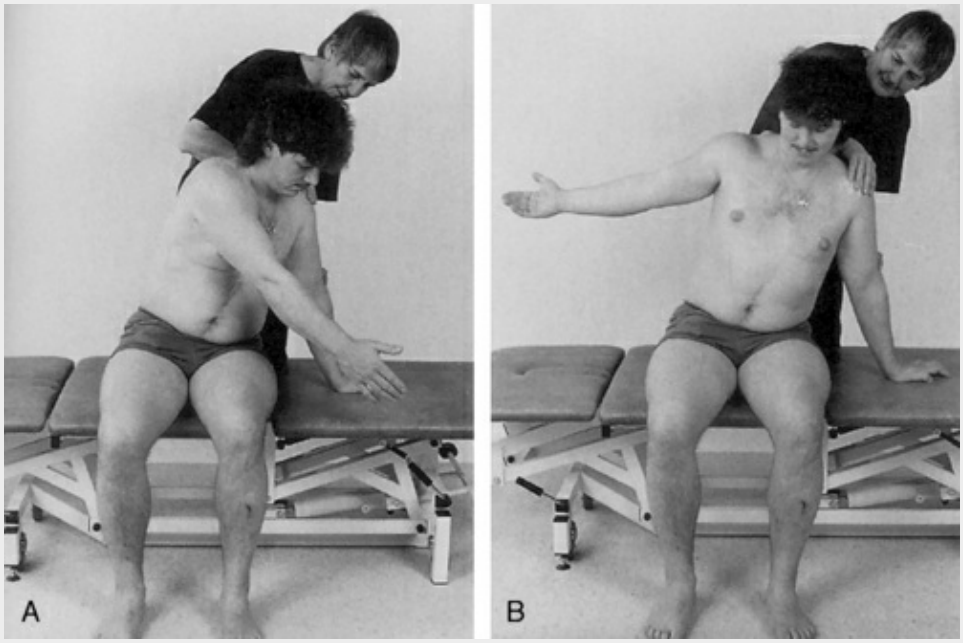
(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Other sitting activities can also be employed. Weight bearing on the upper extremities decreases abnormal muscle tone and also promotes proximal joint stability. As the patient progresses,

reaching activities, throwing and catching tasks, and the performance of activities of daily living, such as donning socks and shoes, can be completed when the patient is in a sitting position. Intervention 11-7 shows examples of upper extremity activities performed with the patient in a sitting position.

Intervention 11-7

Sitting Activities



A. Rotating the trunk forward with the upper extremity in weight bearing.
B. Trunk rotated back with the contralateral arm abducted.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Care must be taken not to overstimulate the patient with multiple sensory and verbal cues. Only one person should speak to the patient at a time. To maximize the patient's understanding of verbal information, the therapist facing the patient should be designated as the person to interact with him or her. This approach minimizes the likelihood that the patient will receive verbal information from multiple sources. In addition, instructions given should be brief, direct, and stated in simple terms.

Transfers

The techniques used to transfer the patient with hemiplegia discussed in Chapter 10 can be used for the patient with TBI. A sit-pivot transfer is recommended for patients who have low functioning and lack trunk control. Intervention 11-8 shows a therapist assisting a patient with a sit-pivot transfer. As the patient progresses, stand-pivot transfers to both the right and left sides should be attempted.

Intervention 11-8

Sit-Pivot Transfer

Transferring the patient with his trunk flexed forward.
A. The therapist flexes the patient's trunk and supports his head against her side.
B. She puts one hand under each trochanter.
C. Pressing her knees against his, she lifts and turns his buttocks onto the bed.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

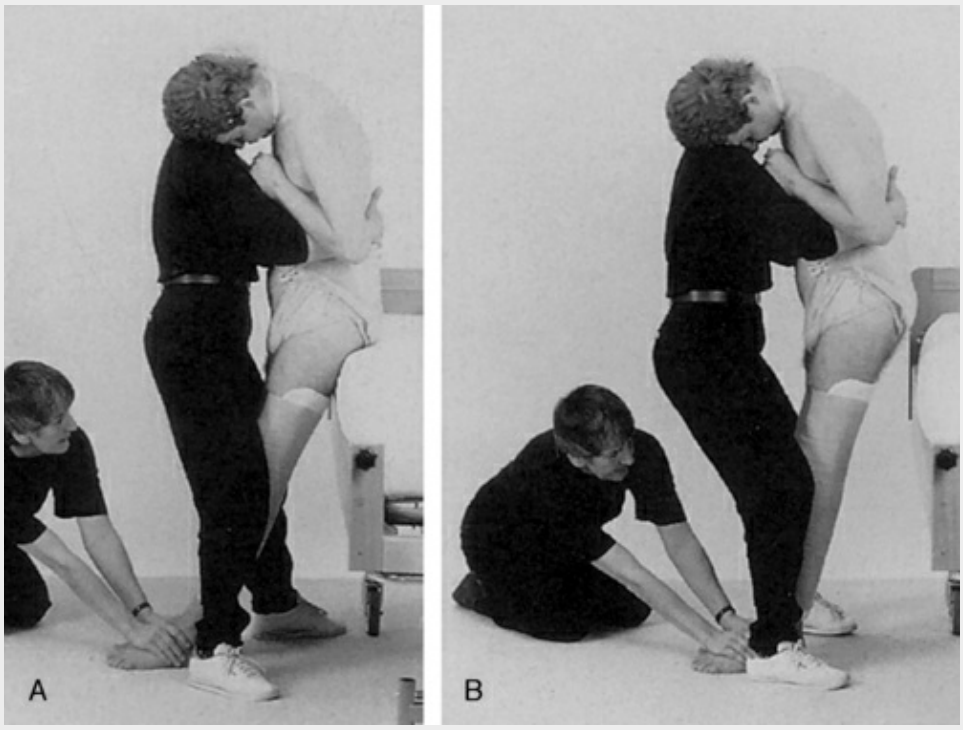
Standing Activities

Standing is another excellent position that can provide opportunities for the completion of functional tasks while promoting weight bearing and sensory input. If the patient has low functional capabilities, the tilt table may need to be initially used to provide necessary stabilization to maintain a standing posture. Patients can be transferred to a tilt table or a standing frame and acclimated to an upright position. Activities that increase awareness and cognition can be performed while the patient is standing on the tilt table. Administering different sensory modalities through the use of the CNC can be easily accomplished while the patient is on the tilt table. The upright posture may also serve to increase the patient's level of alertness. Performance of simple activities of daily living, such as face washing or teeth brushing, is also possible. During early standing activities, it is important to monitor the patient's vital signs to assess the patient's physiologic status.

As the patient progresses, standing activities at the bedside or mat table can be instituted with appropriate assistance. (See Chapter 10 for specific techniques.) Bedside tables, grocery carts, or high-low mat tables can be used for upper-extremity support when pregait activities are initiated. Depending on the gait training philosophy of the facility, body-weight support treadmill training (BWSTT) may also be used to promote task-specific locomotor training. There is some evidence, however, that would suggest that BWSTT is not superior to overground locomotor training in improving gait and balance in patients with TBI. Additional research studies are needed regarding the effectiveness of interventions for the TBI population (Bland et al., 2011). Intervention 11-9 demonstrates standing of a patient who is unconscious. Intervention 11-10 demonstrates various examples of assisting the patient with standing.

Intervention 11-9

Standing the Patient who is Unconscious

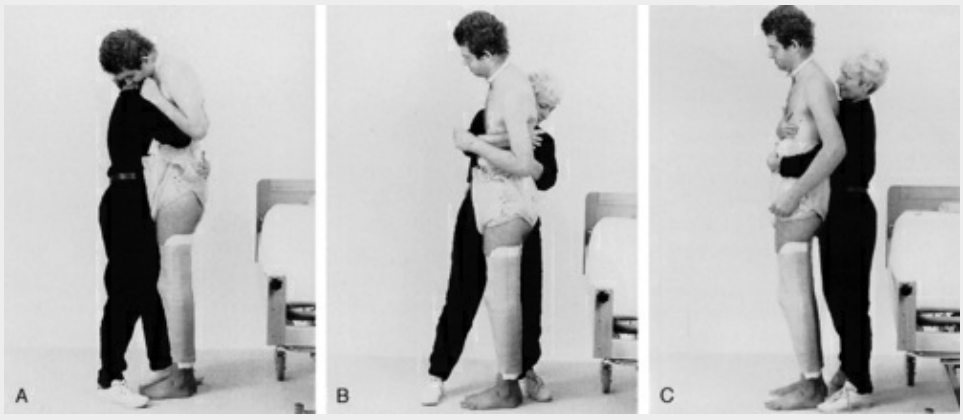


A. Starting position: feet held firmly to prevent forward sliding.
B. Therapist uses key points of control to support the patient.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Intervention 11-10

Supporting the Patient in Standing



A. Weight is brought forward over his feet.
B. Therapist moves around behind him.
C. Therapist uses tactile cues on the pelvis and trunk to achieve extension.

(From Davies PM: *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion*, New York, 1994, Springer-Verlag.)

Treatment Planning

When designing the plan of care, the primary PT should consider the patient's cognitive status and

the stages of motor learning when selecting appropriate treatment interventions. Practice of motor tasks should be interspersed with rest periods caused by patient fatigue. Extrinsic feedback is beneficial in the early stages to assist patients in activity performance. The focus of interventions may encompass either a *compensatory* or *restorative* approach. Compensation, as the term implies, means teaching the patient a skill using alternative means and strategies. When implementing the restorative approach, the therapist attempts to restore normal functional movements through the processes of task-specific training and the principles of neuroplasticity. Examples of activities that are directed at the restorative approach include constraint-induced therapies and BWSTT (Fulk, Nirider, 2014).

The Physical Environment

Careful attention to the physical environment must be made when working with this patient population. Patients who have sustained a TBI often have exaggerated responses to sensory stimuli in the environment. The lighting, noise level, and number of individuals present must be assessed. Think about the amount of activity that takes place in a typical physical therapy gym. Many people are present, and there is a great deal of auditory stimulation from people talking, background music, and public address systems. Frequently, patients with TBIs cannot filter out extraneous stimuli in the environment. Too much sensory stimuli can overstimulate the patient and lead to confusion or an adverse behavioral response (Persel and Persel, 1995). Patients may become more agitated, aggressive, or distracted in this type of environment. In addition, physical performance is often adversely affected when cognitive stress is increased (Wright and Veroff, 1988). Many facilities have smaller private treatment areas for these patients.

Structure is also important to the patient with TBI. A daily schedule, a consistent treatment team, and the establishment of some level of routine within the treatment sessions will assist the patient in adjusting to his or her injury and the rehabilitation environment. In addition, repetition and practice are needed for learning new information and tasks.

Integrating physical and cognitive components of a task into treatment interventions

Often, one of the most challenging aspects of treating patients with TBIs is the integration of the physical and cognitive components of a task. The cognitive deficits frequently are the more debilitating and difficult to treat. PTs and PTAs are adept with treatment interventions that address the patient's physical limitations; however, they often have more challenges with the patient's cognitive deficits and designing interventions that are at an appropriate intensity to address both the physical and cognitive challenges. The following is to be used as a guide in addressing the various cognitive and behavioral impairments seen in these patients.

Cognitive and Behavioral Impairments

Disorientation

Patients with TBI are often disoriented to place or time. Frequently, you will see caregivers quizzing the patient who is disoriented in the hope that eventually the patient will respond with the right answer. A better approach to this impairment is to provide the patient with correct information during the treatment session. In essence, the therapist fills in the missing information for the patient. As stated previously, the use of a script or a calendar can be effective in dealing with disorientation. If the patient's level of orientation does not improve, strategies that will allow the patient to independently retrieve the information from some type of source, such as a memory book, will need to be employed. The contents of memory books vary. Photographs of the patient, family members, and caregivers, along with calendars, daily schedules, and pertinent information about the patient including name, age, address, and medical history may be included in the patient's book. As the patient improves, responsibility for recording information in the memory book can be shifted to the patient. This provides an excellent means for family members to see what the patient is doing in therapy (Fulk and Geller, 2001). Additionally, patient's photographs, videos, and audiotaping are other means used to document changes in the patient's performance.

Attention Deficits

Attention deficits are also a frequent finding in this population. Patients may have difficulty maintaining attention to a task even for periods as short as 10 to 15 seconds. This deficit becomes a significant challenge during treatment. Early in the recovery process, the therapist will need to keep verbal instructions simple. Addressing the patient by his first name followed by a concise verbal direction can be effective in gaining the patient's attention. The therapist may also wish to have a number of different interventions planned and prepared. Treatment will be implemented more efficiently, and the patient may be successfully redirected to an original activity at a later time, if the therapist has several activities ready. As the patient progresses, the therapist can use a stopwatch or timer to encourage the patient to remain focused during specific activity performance. For example, the patient can ride a stationary bike for a predetermined amount of time and the therapist can try to increase the time each session. This approach is an excellent means to monitor patient progress.

Memory Deficits

Almost all patients who have sustained a TBI have some degree of memory impairment following their injury. Memory is an active process that organizes information so that it can be remembered and associated with similar items and events already stored (Bleiberg, 2009). As already discussed, the use of a day planner, cell phone, computer, or memory book may be recommended. Computerized schedule books, watches, and electronic paging systems are available. These devices sound alarms to remind patients of important times and events. If the patient has residual memory deficits, he or she must be instructed in the use of compensatory strategies to assist with functioning in the community.

Problem-Solving Deficits

Problem-solving deficits may also be apparent. Patients may demonstrate difficulties organizing and sequencing information to solve everyday problems. They may possess poor judgment or

difficulties with abstract thinking. Consequently, it may not be appropriate to use humor during a treatment session as humor is an abstract concept and may only confuse the patient. Asking the patient to pretend to complete an activity is also not advised. Therapists often design activities for the patient to practice without the necessary tools or environmental setup. Far greater therapeutic benefits can be achieved by creating a more realistic activity. For example, if the patient likes to garden, the use of pots, potting soil, and gardening tools is an excellent way to have the patient plan and execute a task. Safety issues are also a primary concern. Patients may not recognize their own impairments or understand the significance of a hot stove or a stranger at the front door. Creation of situations that require attention to safety within the confines of the rehabilitation unit can assist the patient in the transition to home. In addition, these types of problem-solving activities help to identify whether constant supervision will be necessary upon discharge.

Other strategies may be employed to address problem-solving deficits, such as the use of task cards that organize and sequence various activities that the individual is to perform. The use of "why" and "what if" types of questions can also be used to assess an individual's judgment and ability to solve simple challenges.

Difficulties with topographic orientation may be apparent in some individuals with TBIs. Patients with these types of deficits are unable to negotiate or find their way around the facility. Route-finding tasks can be employed. Patients are encouraged to use markers or cues, such as signs and pictures, for guidance as they move through the facility. As the patient progresses, obstacle courses and mazes can be constructed to challenge the patient's problem-solving abilities while also addressing dynamic balance (Krus, 1988).

Behavioral Deficits

Patients who have sustained a TBI may also exhibit behavioral problems. Some of the more common behavioral impairments include agitation and irritability, decreased control of emotional responses, denial of deficits, impulsiveness, and a lack of inhibition (Krus, 1988). Considering the physiologic cause of these behavioral problems may allow therapists to treat these patients more effectively. Agitation and irritability may be caused or heightened by the patient's level of disorientation, by the patient's fatigue, or because the demands of the activity are too great for the patient. If you can imagine for a moment what it would be like to have little or no memory, not to recognize family and friends, and perhaps to have some significant physical limitations, you may be better able to see why someone with a TBI may be agitated and irritable. Following a consistent schedule, environmental structure, and keeping the patient occupied can assist in managing the patient's disorientation. Limited use of television is also recommended. Patients can become easily confused by the events they see within the context of a television program and may have difficulty in distinguishing the television programming from reality.

For patients who are overreacting or exhibiting poor emotional control, the therapist or assistant may elect to ignore the behavior, reinforce positive behaviors, or communicate to the patient the inappropriateness of his or her actions. Having the therapist provide appropriate positive alternatives is also advisable because patients often are unable to select appropriate responses on their own. Sometimes, offering the patient a choice between two activities assists in redirecting inappropriate responses and allows the patient some control over the situation.

The use of group treatment activities may be of benefit for remediation of some behavioral and cognitive issues. Peer support, appropriate modeling of behaviors by others, and pressure to conform can assist patients in the recognition of their deficits.

Aggressive Behaviors

An area of concern for some clinicians working with this patient population is the aggressive and combative behavior that can sometimes be exhibited. Because of this possibility, many rehabilitation facilities require staff members to attend certified programs in crisis intervention. The Rancho Los Amigos Scale of Cognitive Functioning discusses possible patient responses at the confused-agitated level. Although aggressive and combative behaviors can occur, these are not the norm. The goal is to assist the patient in the development of self-controlling behaviors. Assisting the patient in the ability to deal with stressful and anxiety-producing situations is the first step in managing behavior.

Patients with TBI often have difficulty in dealing with both internal and external environmental stressors. Behavioral changes including physical aggression can occur as patients become afraid,

feel threatened, or are fatigued. If a patient is unable to manage stress and frustration successfully, a crisis situation can develop. During a crisis, the sympathetic nervous system responds, and certain physical and cognitive changes occur. Heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration rates increase, whereas cognitive skills become depressed. Communication skills, reasoning, and judgment become impaired. Thus, it is important for the PT and PTA to recognize how to assist the patient in dealing with stressors and to prevent a crisis from occurring. Several different models of crisis and behavior management have been developed. Many facilities provide crisis training programs for staff involved in the care of patients with TBIs. Individuals who work with this population should attend one of these courses.

Initially, if a patient becomes anxious and overstimulated, it is a good idea to be supportive and attempt to remove the stimulus. If the patient becomes frustrated during activity performance, assess the demands of the activity and if they are too great, decrease them. Sometimes it is not possible for the clinician to identify the triggering event or source of irritation to the patient. As the patient becomes anxious or distressed, the therapist may notice changes in the patient's tone of voice or other physical changes including pacing, tapping of the feet, or wringing of the hands. If such changes occur, it is advisable to remove the patient from the area, continue to offer emotional support, and redirect the patient to another task. Allowing an outlet for the patient's increased energy may assist in calming the patient. Reorientation may also prove beneficial as disorientation is often the underlying factor in severe behavior disturbances. (Campbell, 2000; Persel and Persel, 1995).

If these interventions do not help the patient relax, the situation can escalate to a full crisis. During a crisis, a patient can lose control over verbal and physical responses and may exhibit destructive and assaulting behaviors. The patient can be dangerous to self or to others. Often, when this situation occurs, the health-care provider becomes extremely anxious as well. If the PT and PTA do not remain calm, they, too, can escalate to a sympathetic state. If you become involved in such an incident and notice yourself becoming excessively stressed, remove yourself from the situation. Once the patient is in a crisis, your role should be to protect the patient from harming self or others. The episode will need to run its course. If possible, limit the audience. As the patient recovers from the event, the clinician will again need to provide emotional support. Reestablishing a therapeutic rapport with the patient is advisable. The patient will eventually return to his or her baseline behavioral state. Once the patient has moved through all the stages of crisis, the patient and the health-care provider who intervened will develop postcrisis drain or depression. This can last for several hours after the initial episode and manifests itself as exhaustion and withdrawal. It is best to allow the patient to rest following this experience. Once the patient has returned to a resting state, the clinician will want to reflect with the patient about the incident and what transpired. Questioning the patient about the event, object, or individual who triggered the episode is valuable. Reassuring the patient that the therapist is there to offer support and care for the patient is also important. If the rehabilitation team is able to identify the stressful object or trigger, methods to minimize the patient's response can be employed (Persel and Persel, 1995).

All members of the rehabilitation team should remember that patients who exhibit agitation or aggressive behaviors are demonstrating the need for structure and control over their environments. A health-care provider has no reason to take the event personally. Internalizing the event can affect the patient-therapist relationship and may ultimately affect the care that is provided.

Motor Deficits and Interventions

Much time has been spent discussing the cognitive aspects of treatment for the patient with TBI. Many of the physical interventions previously discussed for patients following a cerebrovascular accident are appropriate for this patient population as well. The movement transitions presented, as well as the interventions used to facilitate functional movements, can be used.

Students and experienced clinicians alike often report that the most challenging patients are those who have good motor skills but significant cognitive deficits. A review of interventions for patients who are functioning at a high physical level is now provided. High-level balance activities are challenging for these patients. Patients must maintain postural stability while performing selective movement patterns and attending to a cognitive task. Movable surfaces such as balls, bolsters, tilt boards, or balance systems can be used. Exercises that can be performed on the ball include the following:

1. Maintaining balance

2. Raising arms overhead
3. Performing proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation diagonal patterns
4. Rotating or laterally bending the trunk
5. Reciprocally moving the arms
6. Performing anterior and posterior pelvic tilts
7. Marching or knee extension exercises
8. Bouncing in a circle
9. Practicing more difficult exercises, including moving from sitting to supine and from sitting to prone on the ball can also be practiced

Bolsters are used for static positioning or to provide the patient with a movable surface. Patients can straddle the bolster and can practice weight shifting and coming to stand. Tilt boards can be used to practice weight shifting and equilibrium responses. Patients can either sit or stand on the tilt board, depending on their motor abilities. Other activities that challenge the patient's static and dynamic balance include one-foot standing, heel-toe walking, walking on a balance beam, turning, abrupt stopping and starting, braiding (walking sideways, crossing one foot over the other), walking over and around obstacles, carrying objects during ambulation, negotiating environmental barriers, jumping, and skipping.

The sensory components of an activity can also be modified to make the activity more challenging for the patient. Lighting can be changed. Patients can be asked to work on foam or floor mats, or they can take their shoes and socks off to change the proprioceptive input received through the feet. Patients can also progress from working in a quiet environment to working in one that is noisier and more congested although the focus remains on the patient's ability to complete the motor task presented.

Performing cardiovascular and aerobic conditioning activities are good exercises for patients with good motor abilities. Walking on a treadmill, cycling, swimming, and performing an aerobics program are all useful activities to improve cardiovascular responses and to challenge the patient's coordination. As stated previously, many patients who have sustained a TBI are deconditioned, and aerobic exercise is a good way to improve the patient's level of cardiovascular fitness. Exercise can also be used for stress management. Following the 2008 Physical Activity Guidelines for Adults with Disabilities is recommended when designing an exercise program for the patient. A hundred and fifty minutes of exercise of moderate intensity per week coupled with a general strengthening program two times a week is recommended (U.S. Department of Health and Human Service, 2008).

Incorporating Physical and Cognitive Components of a Task

Dual task training which consists of performance of cognitive and motor tasks simultaneously has been shown to be beneficial for patients with TBI (Fritz and Basso, 2013). Patients can practice ambulation skills while engaging in a conversation or performing simple mathematical calculations, or they might attempt walking on a treadmill and reading. Difficulty completing or an inability to perform dual tasks has been associated with safety concerns for the patient (Scherer et al., 2013).

The patient's plan of care should be composed of activities that include both physical and cognitive challenges. Throwing and catching, maneuvering through an obstacle course, and following a map allow for the performance of high-level motor and cognitive tasks. Balance activities previously mentioned can also be performed, and an additional cognitive component such as counting the repetitions can be incorporated. Decreasing the amount of structure or cueing provided or increasing the complexity of the task are ways in which the assistant can challenge the patient's cognitive abilities. Some facilities have access to simulated city environments (Easy Street). A grocery store, bank, fast-food counter, and environmental barriers one would encounter in the community are represented and available for patient practice. Community outings are another therapeutic way to work on physical and cognitive tasks. Many facilities arrange outings for patients at various stages in their rehabilitation. Trips to a restaurant, the zoo, or a bowling alley are common examples of community trips. On these trips, patients are encouraged to practice the skills they have been working on in therapy. The benefit of these outings is that therapists are there to assist the patients and can assess areas in which the patients may have difficulty once they are discharged to home.

Discharge planning

Discharge planning is an important component of treatment for the patient with TBI. Decisions must be made about the most appropriate discharge destination. It would be unrealistic to assume that all patients will make a full recovery and resume all previous aspects of their lives. Many patients require follow-up care ranging from supervision in the home to placement in an extended-care or residential facility. Planning for the patient's discharge should include the patient, the family, and appropriate members of the rehabilitation team. Procurement of adaptive equipment, environmental modifications required at the patient's home, and home health-care services should be arranged before the patient's discharge from the facility. Some patients may require additional services following their discharge from rehabilitation. Comprehensive outpatient physical therapy services, day treatment programs, and residential programs that address community reentry may continue to be needed to improve the patient's physical, cognitive, and behavioral limitations.

Chapter summary

Treating a patient with TBI can be extremely challenging and rewarding. Patients who have experienced a traumatic brain injury may present in a multitude of ways that vary from coma and no voluntary movement to high motor function with significant cognitive deficits. For many physical therapists and physical therapist assistants, the cognitive component of intervention is most difficult. To provide patients with the highest quality care possible, the clinician must be able to address motor and cognitive issues simultaneously. Creative interventions that integrate physical and cognitive tasks coupled with principles of motor learning and task-specific training will provide our patients with the most effective care possible to improve their functional abilities and, hopefully, resume their previous lifestyles.

Review questions

1. Describe the clinical manifestations of a subdural hematoma.

2. What are some signs and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure (ICP)?

3. Differentiate between a patient in a coma and a patient in a persistent vegetative state.

4. List four goals of acute physical therapy intervention for the patient with a traumatic brain injury (TBI).

5. Define the ten stages within the Rancho Los Amigos Scale of Cognitive Functioning.

6. Discuss the benefits of hand-over-hand modeling for patients with decreased cognitive functioning.

7. How may the physical environment affect the patient's response to intervention?

8. A patient is exhibiting significant disorientation and attention deficits. How could the physical therapist assistant (PTA) intervene to assist the patient in therapy?

9. A patient becomes easily agitated and frustrated during therapy. At times, he or she can escalate into a full crisis. What can the PTA do to minimize these episodes? What should the PTA do if a crisis situation occurs?

10. A patient who has had a TBI possesses good motor skills. She is able to walk independently without an assistive device and is able to transfer independently. The patient does exhibit occasional losses of balance. The patient's cognitive abilities are more seriously impaired. She is disoriented and has memory deficits. Identify four treatment activities for this patient that incorporate physical and cognitive components.

Case Studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation

History

Chart Review

Patient is a 25-year-old divorced male from Indiana. Patient works full-time as a self-employed contractor. He was transferred to University Hospital from a small rural hospital following a motor vehicle accident (MVA). Patient was unconscious at the scene and remained so to the time of arrival in the ER. His head CT showed evidence of considerable scalp hematoma involving the left parietal area, and a minimal hematoma in the right parietotemporal area. The CT was positive for depressed fracture left midparietal bone with no significant intracranial abnormality noted. Skull x-ray was positive for left parietal bone fracture. Chest x-ray showed mild prominence superior mediastinum, and localized pleural thickening along the left lateral chest wall possibly related to nondisplaced rib fracture. Patient was placed on volume ventilator. One week later, the tracheostomy was capped after he was weaned off the ventilator. Patient is currently taking Tegretol, Zanaflex, and Ativan.

Physical therapy (PT) order for examination and treatment received.

Subjective

Patient is unable to respond, and no family members were present at the time of the initial examination to provide information. Chart review was referred to for information. Not able to receive informed consent for examination.

Objective

Appearance/Rest Posture/Equipment: Patient is supine in hospital bed with midline head position; decerebrate posturing with wrist and fingers flexed, shoulders internally rotated and adducted, lower extremities adducted and extended. Patient is wearing low top tennis shoes. The tracheostomy is plugged; catheter and intravenous lines in place.

Systems Review

Cognition/Communication: Patient is moaning, no other verbalizations

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: BP = 135/80 mm Hg; HR = 140 bpm; RR = rapid at 40 bpm

Integumentary: Ecchymosis about the left ear, lacerations on the scalp

Musculoskeletal: Impaired bilaterally

Neuromuscular: Nonpurposeful movement left upper extremity shown once. Trace volitional movement in bilateral upper and lower extremities. Gait, locomotion, and balance impaired.

Psychosocial: Patient has a fair support system: family (parents) and friends.

Tests and Measures

Anthropometrics: Height 6'3", Weight 180 lbs, BMI 22 (20–24 is normal).

Arousal, Attention, Cognition: Patient is alert. He is not oriented to person, place, or time. He is able to withdraw from stimuli and follow one-step commands inconsistently. He orients toward sound 2/3 times, opens eyes in response to command 1/4 times, displays partial localization to light flashes 2/3 times, and partially tracks the therapist's face 1/3 times. Patient blinks 3/3 times in response to threat; shows delayed withdrawal from tap on shoulder 3/3 times bilaterally with elbow flexion, delayed withdrawal from pressure on nail bed 3/3 times, delayed withdrawal from robust ear pulls 3/3 times; and uses nonverbal vocalization (moans and groans).

Cranial Nerve Integrity: Patient squints with his eyes in response to light. He withdraws from noxious scent with grimacing 3/3 times.

Range of Motion: Passive range of motion in the upper extremities is within functional limits after inhibition; hip flexion is 90 degrees bilaterally, and both ankles lack 5 degrees from neutral. Active hip and knee flexion and elbow flexion to 30 degrees bilaterally.

Reflex Integrity: Bilateral patellar, biceps, ankle DTRs 3 +; Babinski present bilaterally. Asymmetric tonic neck reflex is present to R. Marked increase seen in tone in hip extensors and gastrocnemius soleus. A slight increase in tone of the hip internal rotators, hip adductors, triceps, forearm, and finger flexors is noted bilaterally during passive range of motion. Tone decreases with rhythmic rotation of the limb(s) or trunk. Extensor tone increases in the lower extremities when patient transferred into sitting.

Motor Function: Rolls to right and left with maximal assist of 1. Transfers from side-lying to sitting with maximal assist of 1; increased extensor tone in the lower extremities. Transfers from sit to supine with maximal assist of 1.

Posture: Patient's head is in midline. He demonstrates extension posture in supine: bilateral

shoulder adduction, elevation and internal rotation, elbow extension, finger and wrist flexion. He also demonstrates hip extension, adduction and internal rotation, knee extension, and ankle plantar flexion bilaterally. In supported sitting, patient demonstrates rounded shoulders, flexed head and neck, thoracic kyphosis, both upper extremities extended at sides, and lower extremities are in extension.

Muscle Performance: Not assessed because of patient's inability to follow complex commands.

Neuromotor Development: Patient's swallowing is facilitated by stroking downward on the anterior neck. No head or trunk righting is noted; protective reactions are not absent.

Gait, Locomotion, Balance: Patient shows fair sitting balance. Needs mod assist 1 to maintain head and trunk in midline. Patient stood at bedside for approximately one minute with maximal assist of 2. Required assist to maintain hips in extension and an erect trunk. Gait not assessed.

Sensory Integrity: Unable to accurately assess because of the patient's inability to respond, although patient does respond inconsistently to pain and tactile stimulation.

Self-Care: Patient is dependent for all care.

Assessment/evaluation

Patient is a 25-year-old man who sustained a traumatic brain injury as a result of a MVA. He is assessed to be at a level II/III of cognitive function on the Rancho Scale, based on inconsistent responses to sensory stimuli and verbal commands. Patient is also demonstrating limited active movement and decerebrate posturing.

Glasgow Coma Scale is eye opening 4, motor response 4; verbal response 2; 11 total
Rappaport Coma/Near-Coma Scale score is 1.8, which indicates near coma
FIM: Transfers 1, locomotion 1

Problem List

1. Dependent in functional mobility
2. Lacks head control in sitting
3. Poor head and trunk control in sitting and standing
4. Lacks ability to communicate
5. Decreased awareness and inconsistent responses to sensory stimuli
6. Decreased volitional movement

Diagnosis: Patient demonstrates impaired arousal, range of motion, and motor control associated with coma, near coma, or vegetative state. Patient exhibits neuromuscular *APTA Guide* pattern 5I. Rancho Scale level of cognitive function is II/III.

Prognosis: Over the course of 3 months, the patient will demonstrate optimal arousal, range of motion, and motor control and the minimization of secondary impairments. Potential to reach rehab goals is fair secondary to the patient's decreased cognitive abilities and motor deficits.

Short-Term Goals (by 2 Weeks)

1. Patient will roll to both sides in bed with minimal assist of 1 while demonstrating dissociation of trunk and pelvis.
2. Patient will transfer supine to sit with minimum assist of 1 and sit to stand with moderate assist of 1.
3. Patient will demonstrate head control in sitting for 5 minutes while performing self-care activities.
4. Patient will consistently respond to one-step commands three out of four times.
5. Patient will be able to communicate wants and needs via actions such as eye blinks or hand squeezes 75% of the time.
6. Patient will initiate upper extremity movement bilaterally to perform self-care activities in sitting with minimal assist of 1 using hand-over-hand technique.

Long-Term Goals (Actions to be Achieved by 4 Weeks)

1. Patient will be independent in bed mobility and transfers.
2. Patient will ambulate 50 feet with a rolling walker and minimum assist of 1.
3. Patient will be able to consistently communicate needs 100% of the time.
4. Patient will return to home with supervision.
5. Patient will perform home exercise program (HEP) independently.

Plan

Treatment Schedule: The physical therapist (PT) and physical therapist assistant (PTA) will see the patient BID 5 days a week and once on Saturday and Sunday for 60-minute treatment sessions.

Occupational therapy will be consulted regarding possible cotreatment. Treatment sessions are to include increasing patient's level of awareness, positioning, functional mobility training (including body-weight support treadmill training and patient and family education), and discharge planning. Patient will be reassessed weekly.

Coordination, Communication, Documentation: The PT and PTA will communicate with patient and with his family on a regular basis as much as possible. The PT will communicate with the rehabilitation team. Outcomes of rehabilitation will be documented on a weekly basis.

Patient/Client Instruction: Patient's parents will be educated in proper transfer and functional mobility interventions. Education regarding patient's condition and the prevention of secondary complications will be provided to the family. The family will participate in family training to learn to assist the patient with activities of daily living, transfers, and functional mobility. Instruction in a HEP will occur before discharge.

Procedural Interventions

1. Communication:
   a. A communication system of actions such as eye blinks or hand squeezes will be developed in order for the patient to communicate yes-no responses with visitors and the rehabilitation team
2. Cognitive retraining:
   a. A memory book will be developed, which includes pictures, pastimes, interests, and a daily schedule of therapy sessions, meals, medical interventions, and sleep
   b. The book will be used in conjunction with other interventions to help orient the patient
   c. A structured environment will be maintained at all times until patient becomes less confused and can tolerate less structure
   d. Patient will be treated in a quiet environment with minimal distractions until he can tolerate one in which there are more distractions
   e. Orientation of person, place, current events, and time will be performed frequently throughout the treatment session
3. Positioning:
   a. Patient will be positioned in side-lying (to both sides) to prevent the influence of the right asymmetrical tonic neck reflex
   b. To decrease the effects of the decerebrate posture, patient will be positioned in supine with his upper extremities flexed over his head with his hands weight bearing flat on the bed and his lower extremities flexed with a roll under his knees; prone positioning over a wedge will also be used
   c. Rhythmic rotation to the upper and lower extremities and trunk will be used to decrease rigidity to allow positioning and movement transitions
   d. Bottoms-up position will be attained with the therapist providing reciprocal rhythmical rotation of the lower and upper extremities to promote dissociation of the upper and lower trunk to decrease the decerebrate posture
4. Functional mobility training:
   a. Assisted rolling to both sides with progression from maximal assist of 1 → moderate assist of 1→ minimal assist of 1→ standby assist of 1 as patient is able
   b. Practice of supine ←→ sit and sit ←→ stand transfers with maximal assist of 1-2 → moderate assist of 1 → minimal assist of 1 as patient progresses
   c. Sitting on the edge of the bed or mat with both upper extremities flexed and weight bearing on a table at lap height with therapist supporting head, attending to memory book and completion of upper extremity activities
   d. Patient will be transferred to a tilt in space wheelchair, will transition to a regular wheelchair as the patient is able to tolerate
   e. Hand-over-hand techniques to promote self-care activities or upper extremity PNF techniques will be used with patient in this position with 1 hand support
   f. Washing of the face will be performed to increase sensory awareness to the face
   g. Patient can also look at the memory book while in this position
   h. Patient will be placed prone over a bolster (longways) with upper and lower extremities weight bearing
   i. In prone on elbows, patient will perform weight shifts to the right and left to increase proprioceptive input
   j. Facilitation techniques including tapping to the posterior cervical muscles will be performed to

facilitate head and neck extension; these will be decreased as patient is able to control his head posture
   k. Patient can use the memory book in prone position for orientation
   l. Transition from prone on elbows to quadruped and tall kneeling to increase patient's awareness, to lower extremity flexibility, and to increase tolerance to a more upright position
   m. Patient will be placed in a plantigrade position with upper extremities over a bolster and lower extremities in a step stance; weight shifts will be performed in all directions to increase proprioceptive information, facilitate postural reactions, and prepare for ambulation
   n. Patient will use the memory book or other cognitive challenges in conjunction with plantigrade position
   o. Patient will participate in BWSTT for 20 to 30 minutes each day, will progress to overground ambulation as the patient tolerates
   p. Patient will practice gait activities with a rolling walker with maximal assist of 1 to 2 → moderate assist of 1 → minimal assist of 1 → standby assist of 1 as he progresses
   q. Patient will be asked to walk toward an object or place of interest; orientation will be incorporated in this exercise by having patient walk to get a newspaper or objects he may need in the home
   r. As patient progresses, simulated shopping may be included with gait activities
   s. Patient will be asked to make a list of items or remember a list given to him verbally to make the task more cognitively challenging
5. Dynamic balance activities:
   a. In a standing position, patient will shoot baskets and count baskets made
   b. Patient will carry objects while ambulating
6. Discharge planning:
   a. Patient will be discharged to home with supervision by caregiver
   b. A home assessment will be performed if needed
   c. Equipment will be secured as necessary
   d. If a proper caregiver cannot be obtained for discharge to home, patient will be discharged to assisted-living facility
   e. Vocational rehabilitation will be contacted

Questions to think about

- How can the therapists facilitate the performance of functional activities?
- What other therapeutic interventions can be used to help the patient with motor learning?
- How can aerobic conditioning be included in the patient's treatment program?
- What types of activities or exercises would be included as part of the patient's home exercise program?

References

American Physical Therapy Association: *Position paper: protecting student athletes from concussions act of 2013 (HR 3530).* Available from www.apta.org/PolicyResources/PositionPapers/ConcussionsStudentAthletes. Accessed November 3, 2014.

Bland DC, Zampieri-Gallagher C, Damiani DL. Effectiveness of physical therapy for improving gait and balance in ambulatory individuals with traumatic brain injury: a systematic review of the literature. *Brain Inj.* 2011;25:664–679.

Bleiberg J: *The road to rehabilitation*. Part 3. Guideposts to recognition: cognition, memory, and brain injury, Brain Injury Association of America, 2009.

Bobath B, Bobath K. The neuro-developmental treatment. In: Scrutton D, ed. *Management of the motor disorders in children with cerebral palsy: clinics in developmental medicine.* Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1984:6–16.

Bontke CF, Boake C. Principles of brain injury rehabilitation. In: Braddom RL, ed. *Physical medicine and rehabilitation.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 1996:1027–1051.

Bontke CF, Baize CM, Boake C. Coma management and sensory stimulation. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 1992;3:259–272.

Booth BJ, Doyle M, Montgomery J. Serial casting for the management of spasticity in the head-injured adult. *Phys Ther.* 1983;63:1960–1966.

Borich MR, Cheung KL, Jones P, et al. Concussion: current concepts in diagnosis and management. *JNPT.* 2013;37:133–139.

Brain Injury Association of America. *Mild brain injury and concussion.* 2014. Vienna, VA www.biausa.org/mild-brain-injury,htm Accessed October 1, 2014.

Brain Injury Association of America (BIA). *About brain injury.* 2012. Vienna, VA. Available at www.biausa.org/about-brain-injury Accessed October 1, 2014.

Campbell M. *Rehabilitation for traumatic brain injury physical therapy practice in context.* London: Churchill Livingstone; 2000 pp 17–45.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *Traumatic brain injury in the United States: fact sheet*, Updated February 2014. Available at www.cdc.gov/traumaticbraininjury/get_the_facts.html. Accessed November 3, 2014.

Davies PM. *Starting again: early rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury or other severe brain lesion.* New York: Springer-Verlag; 1994 pp 23–44, 65–68, 86–88, 316–352, 361–364.

Fritz NE, Basso DM. Dual-task training for balance and mobility in a person with severe traumatic brain injury: a case study. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2013;37:37–43.

Fulk GD, Gellar A. Traumatic brain injury. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, eds. *Physical rehabilitation assessment and treatment.* ed 4 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2001:783–819.

Fulk GD, Nirider CD. Traumatic brain injury. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* ed 6 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:859–888.

Fuller KS. Epilepsy. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology implications for the physical therapist.* ed 3 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009a:1532–1546.

Fuller KS. Traumatic brain injury. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology implications for the physical therapist.* ed 3 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009b:1477–1495.

Fulop ZL, Wright DW, Stein DG. Pharmacology of traumatic brain injury: experimental models and clinical implications. *Neurol Rep.* 1998;22:100–109.

Giza CC, Kutcher JS, Ashwal S, et al: Summary of evidence-based guidelines update: evaluation and management of concussion in sports; report of the Guideline Development Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Published July 2013. Available at ptnow.org/PracticeGuidelines. Accessed April 2015.

Goodman CC: Soft tissue, joint, and bone disorders. In: Pathology: implications for the physical therapist, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2009c, Saunders, pp. 1238–1239.

Gould BE: *Pathophysiology for the health-related professions*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders, pp. 320–376.

Hammond FM, McDeavitt JT. Medical and orthopedic complications. In: Rosenthal M, Griffith ER, Kreutzer JS, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the adult and child with traumatic brain injury.* ed 3 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1999:53–73.

Jennett B, Teasdale G. *Management of head injuries.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1981 122-131.
Krus LH. Cognitive and behavioral skills retraining of the brain-injured patient. *Clin Manage.* 1988;8:24–31.
Lehmkuhl LD, Krawczyk L. Physical therapy management of the minimally-responsive patient following traumatic brain injury: coma stimulation. *Neurol Rep.* 1993;17:10–17.
Lundy-Ekman L. *Neuroscience fundamentals for rehabilitation.* ed 4 2013 St. Louis, p 445.
Naritoku DK, Hernandez TD. Posttraumatic epilepsy and neurorehabilitation. In: Ashley MJ, Krych DK, eds. *Traumatic brain injury rehabilitation.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1995:43–65.
National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke: *Traumatic brain injury: hope through research*, Updated July 22, 2014, Published February 2002. Available at www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/tbi/detail_tbi.htm. Accessed October 2, 2014.
O'Sullivan SB. Strategies to improve motor control and motor learning. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation, assessment, and treatment.* ed 4 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2001:405–408.
O'Sullivan SB. Strategies to improve motor control and motor learning. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* ed 6 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:393–443.
Persel CS, Persel CH. The use of applied behavior analysis in traumatic brain injury rehabilitation. In: Ashley MJ, Krych DK, eds. *Traumatic brain injury rehabilitation.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1995:231–273.
Rappaport M, Dougherty AM, Kelting DL. Evaluation of coma and vegetative states. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1992;73:628–634.
Rehabilitation of persons with traumatic brain injury. *NIH Consens Statement.* 1998;16(Oct 26–28):1–41.
Scelza W, Shatzer M. Pharmacology of spinal cord injury: basic mechanism of action and side effects of commonly used drugs. *J Neuro Phys Ther.* 2003;27:101–108.
Scherer MR, Weightman MM, Radomski MV, Davidson LF, McCulloch KL. Returning service members to duty following mild TBI: exploring the use of dual-task and multi-task assessment methods. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93:1254–1267.
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: *2008 Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans*. Available at www.health.gov/paguidelines/guidelines. Accessed October 2, 2014.
VanMeter KC, Hubert RJ. *Gould's pathophysiology for the health professions.* ed 5 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2014 pp. 331, 342–344.
VanSant AF. *Traumatic head injury: an overview of physical therapy care I (Topics in Neurology).* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 1990a pp 1–10.
VanSant AF. *Traumatic head injury: an overview of physical therapy care II (Topics in Neurology).* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 1990b pp 1–7.
Varghese G. Heterotopic ossification. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 1992;3:407–415.
Winkler PA. Traumatic brain injury. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013:753–790.
Wright KL, Veroff AE. Integration of cognitive and physical hierarchies in head injury rehabilitation. *Clin Manag.* 1988;8:6–9.

CHAPTER 12

Spinal Cord Injuries

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

- Discuss the causes, clinical manifestations, and possible complications of spinal cord injury.
- Differentiate between complete and incomplete types of spinal cord injuries.
- Discuss the various levels of spinal cord injury.
- Relate segmental level of muscle innervation to level of function in the patient with a spinal cord injury.
- Instruct patients with a spinal cord injury in pulmonary exercises, strengthening exercises, and mat activities.
- Teach gait training and wheelchair mobility interventions to the patient, as appropriate.

Introduction

An estimated 12,000 new cases of spinal cord injury (SCI) occur annually. Within the United States, currently more than 273,000 people are living with SCIs (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013). SCIs are most likely to occur in young adults between the ages of 16 and 30 years. However, as the population in the United States continues to age, the average age at time of injury has also increased to 42.6 years. Approximately 81% of the individuals with SCIs are male (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013). The etiology of SCIs continues to change. Previously, injuries that were due to motor vehicle accidents and sporting activities were identified as the most likely causes. More recent statistics suggest that motor vehicle accidents (36.5%), falls (28.5%), acts of violence (14.3%), and sports-related injuries (9.2%) are the most common causes of SCIs in the United States (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013).

Life expectancies for individuals with SCIs are still below those without SCI, and there has not been an improvement in this statistic since the 1980s. Individuals with SCIs can experience a lifetime of disability and life-threatening medical complications. Potential causes of death that significantly affect life expectancy include pneumonia and septicemia. The cost of medical care for these individuals is in the billions of dollars. Lifetime medical expenses for individuals with high cervical injuries are approximately $4.6 million, and $2.2 million for individuals with paraplegia. These figures can exceed the maximum insurance benefit allowed by many insurance policies. In addition to the direct costs of medical care, there are indirect costs associated with lost wages, employee benefits, and productivity—costs that can average $70,575 a year (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013).

Etiology

To understand the etiology of SCIs, it is necessary to review the anatomy of the region. There are 31 pairs of spinal nerves within the peripheral nervous system. The first seven pairs of spinal nerves, which originate in the cervical area, exit above the first seven cervical vertebrae. Spinal nerve C8 exits between C7 and T1, because there is no eighth cervical vertebra. The remaining spinal nerve roots exit below the corresponding bony vertebrae. This holds true through L1. At this point, the spinal cord becomes a mass of nerve roots known as the *cauda equina*. Figure 12-1 illustrates segmental and vertebral levels.

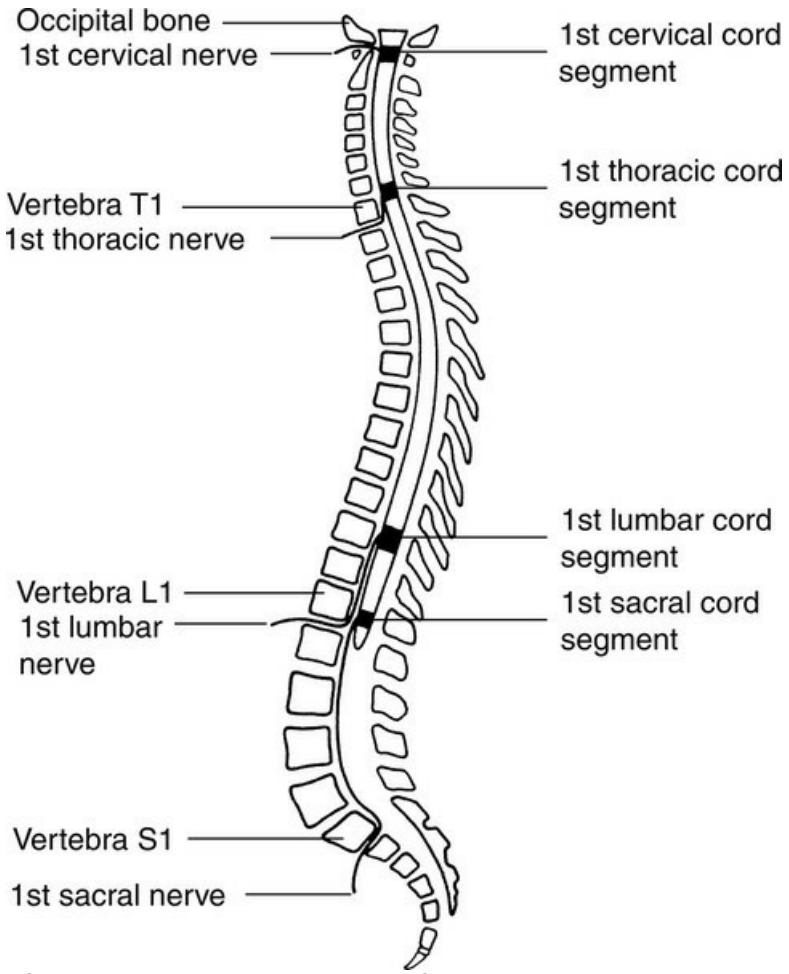


FIGURE 12-1 Segmental and vertebral levels compared. Spinal nerves 1 to 7 emerge above the corresponding vertebrae, and the remaining spinal nerves emerge below them. (From Fitzgerald MJT: *Neuroanatomy: basic and clinical, Clinical neuroanatomy and related neuroscience*, ed 4, London, 2002, WB Saunders.)

Certain areas of the spinal column are more susceptible to injury than others. In the cervical spine, the spinal segments of C1, C2, and C5 through C7 are often injured, and in the thoracolumbar area, T12 through L2 are most often affected. The biomechanics of the vertebral column accentuates this situation. Movement (rotation) is greatest at these segments and leads to instability within the regions. In addition, the spinal cord is larger in these areas because of the large number of nerve cell bodies which are located here. Figure 12-2 illustrates this configuration.

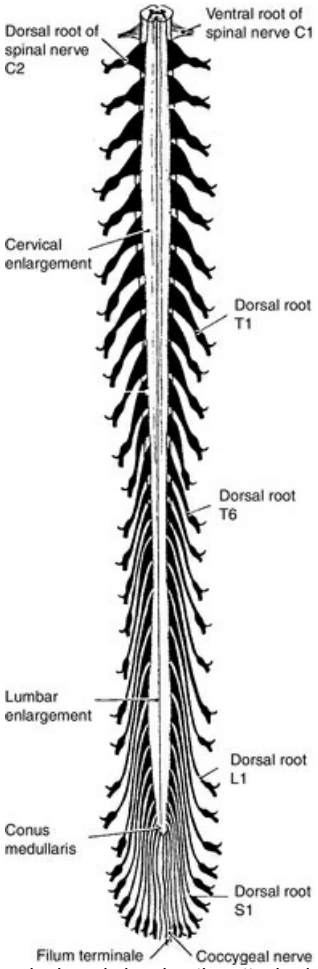


FIGURE 12-2 Posterior view of the spinal cord showing the attached dorsal roots and spinal ganglia. (From Carpenter MB, Sutin J: *Human neuroanatomy*, ed 8, Baltimore, 1983, Williams & Wilkins.)

Naming the level of injury

To name the level of an individual's injury, the health-care professional first identifies the vertebral or bony spine segment involved. For example, cervical injuries are designated with C, thoracic injuries with T, and lumbar injuries with L. This designation is followed by the last spinal nerve root segment in which innervation is present. Therefore, if a patient has an injury in the cervical region and has innervation of the biceps, the lesion would be classified as a C5 injury. Medical personnel have used the following terms to describe the extent of involvement a patient may be experiencing. Individuals with injuries to the cervical region of the spine are classified as having *tetraplegia,* which is the preferred term. Tetraplegia encompasses impairments to the upper extremities, lower extremities, trunk, and pelvic organs. Injuries involving the thoracic spine can produce *paraplegia*. With paraplegia upper extremity function is spared, but there are varying degrees of lower extremity, trunk, and pelvic organ involvement. Injuries at L1 or below are called *cauda equina injuries* (Burns et al., 2012).

The American Spinal Injury Association (ASIA) has developed standards to assist health-care providers in naming the level of the injury. The ASIA International Standards for Neurological Classification of Spinal Cord Injury assessment tool is the instrument that clinicians use to classify SCIs (Figure 12-3). The *neurologic level* is defined as the "most caudal segment of the cord with intact sensation and antigravity (3 or more) muscle function strength, provided that there is normal intact sensory and motor function rostrally respectively" (ASIA, 2013). Determination of the neurologic level is determined by testing key dermatomes (sensory areas) and myotomes (muscles) in a supine position. A patient's sensory level is determined by assessing both light touch and pinprick sensation bilaterally (ASIA, 2013).

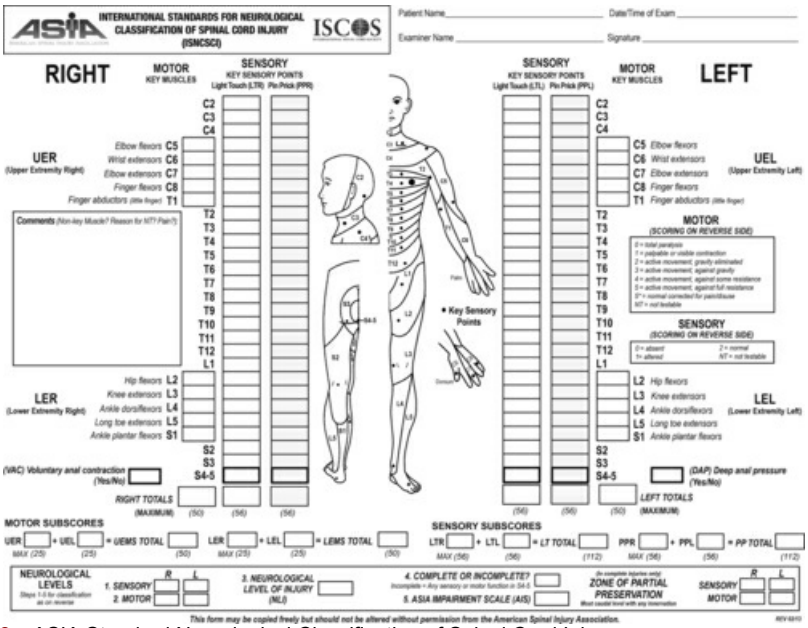


FIGURE 12-3 ASIA Standard Neurological Classification of Spinal Cord Injury. (From American Spinal Injury Association: *International standards for neurological classification of spinal cord injury, revised*. Atlanta, GA, 2013, American Spinal Injury Association.)

Normal muscle function is further defined as the lowest key muscle with a manual muscle testing grade of fair (3/5), provided that the key muscles above this level have intact (normal, 5/5) strength. ASIA has chosen these muscles because they are consistently innervated by the designated segments of the spinal cord and are easily tested in a clinical setting (ASIA, 2013). Table 12-1 lists the ASIA key muscles for the upper and lower extremities. For example, the elbow extensors (C7) are a key muscle group. Patients with C7 innervation have the potential to transfer independently without a sliding board because of their ability to extend the elbow and perform a lateral push-up. The ASIA standards also recognize that muscles are innervated by more than one spinal cord segment. Thus, assigning one muscle or group to represent a single spinal nerve is not appropriate

and leads to over simplification. Muscle innervation by one spinal nerve in the absence of additional innervation will result in muscle weakness (Burns et al., 2012). It is possible that an individual may have partial innervation of motor or sensory function in up to three segments below the injury site. In areas where there are not specific myotomes to test, the motor level is presumed to correspond to the sensory level if the muscles above that level are judged to have normal strength (ASIA, 2013).

Table 12-1

ASIA Identification of Key Muscles That Can Provide Greatest Functional Improvements

Level	Key Muscles
C5	Elbow flexors
C6	Wrist extensors
C7	Elbow extensors
C8	Finger flexors
T1	Finger abductors
L2	Hip flexors
L3	Knee extensors
L4	Ankle dorsiflexors
L5	Big toe extensors
S1	Ankle plantar flexors

Data from American Spinal Cord Injury Association: *International standards for neurological classification of spinal cord injury, revised*. Atlanta, GA, 2013, American Spinal Injury Association.

Mechanisms of injury

Traumatic impact is a common cause of SCI. Trauma can be precipitated by compression, penetrating injury, and hyperextension or hyperflexion forces. The resultant injury to the spinal cord can be temporary or permanent. Associated injuries to the vertebral bodies may also lead to spinal cord damage. Vertebral subluxation (separation of the vertebral bodies), compression fractures, and fracture-dislocations can further damage the spinal cord by encroachment or additional compression of the spinal cord. Severe injuries to the vertebral column can also result in partial or complete transection of the spinal cord.

Cervical Flexion and Rotation Injuries

In the cervical region, the most common type of injury is one that involves flexion and rotation. With this type of force, the posterior spinal ligaments rupture, and the uppermost vertebra is displaced over the one below it. Rupture of the intervertebral disc and, in severe cases, the anterior longitudinal ligament can also occur. Transection of the spinal cord is often associated with this type of injury. Rear-end motor vehicle accidents frequently produce flexion and rotation injuries. Figure 12-4, *A*, provides an example of a flexion and rotation mechanism of injury.

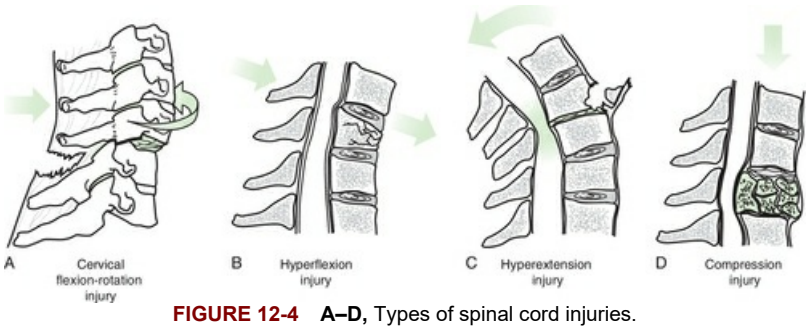


FIGURE 12-4 **A–D,** Types of spinal cord injuries.

Cervical Hyperflexion Injuries

A pure hyperflexion force causes an anterior compression fracture of the vertebral body with stretching of the posterior longitudinal ligaments. The ligaments remain intact, however. The force sustained by the bony structures leads to a wedge-type fracture of the vertebral bodies. This type of injury frequently severs the anterior spinal artery and results in an incomplete anterior cord syndrome. A head-on collision or a blow to the back of the head is a cause of this type of injury. Figure 12-4, *B*, depicts an example.

Cervical Hyperextension Injuries

Hyperextension injuries are common in the older adult as a result of a fall. The individual's chin often strikes a stationary object, and this leads to neck hyperextension. The force ruptures the anterior longitudinal ligament and compresses and ruptures the intervertebral disc. The spinal cord can become compressed between the ligamentum flavum and the vertebral body, with a resulting central cord type of injury. Figure 12-4, *C*, shows an example.

Compression Injuries

Vertical compressive forces can also injure the cervical or lumbar spine. Diving accidents cause injuries that are a combination of compression and flexion forces. Falls from elevated surfaces can also produce this type of injury. With vertical compression, one sees fracture of the vertebral end plates and movement of the nucleus pulposus into the vertebral body. Bone fragments can be produced and displaced outward. The longitudinal ligaments are stretched but remain intact

(Figure 12-4, *D*).

Compression injuries caused by the effects of osteoporosis, osteoarthritis, or rheumatoid arthritis can also produce SCIs in the older adult. A discussion of the pathologic processes that lead to these conditions is beyond the scope of this text.

Medical intervention

Following an acute SCI, the patient should be immobilized and transferred to a trauma center. Advances in the acute medical management include the administration of pharmacologic interventions which can limit the extent of initial injury by decreasing the effects of posttraumatic hemorrhage and ischemia, and thereby enhance blood flow. Methylprednisolone, a corticosteroid, and drugs that block opiate receptors can decrease the impact of hemorrhagic shock (Fuller, 2009).

Once the patient is medically stable, a primary concern of the physician is stabilization of the spine to prevent further spinal cord or nerve root damage. Surgery is indicated in the following situations: (1) to restore the alignment of bony vertebral structures; (2) to decompress neural tissue; (3) to stabilize the spine by fusion or instrumentation; (4) to minimize deformities; and (5) to allow the individual earlier opportunities for mobilization (Somers, 2010).

Several different stabilization procedures are available to the surgeon. Skeletal traction may be used on an interim basis while the patient's medical condition is fragile. Traction can reduce the overlapping of fracture fragments and can assist with spinal alignment. Once the patient is medically stable, the physician may schedule the patient for surgery. During surgery, fusion of the fracture fragments is performed. Bone grafting from the iliac crests, combined with placement of internal fixation devices, is often employed during this procedure. In some situations, surgery is not indicated, and external fixation with a halo jacket, a hard cervical collar, or a rigid body jacket may be all that is needed to stabilize the involved spinal segments. Bony fusion is usually complete in 6 to 8 weeks. Figure 12-5 shows various types of spinal orthoses.

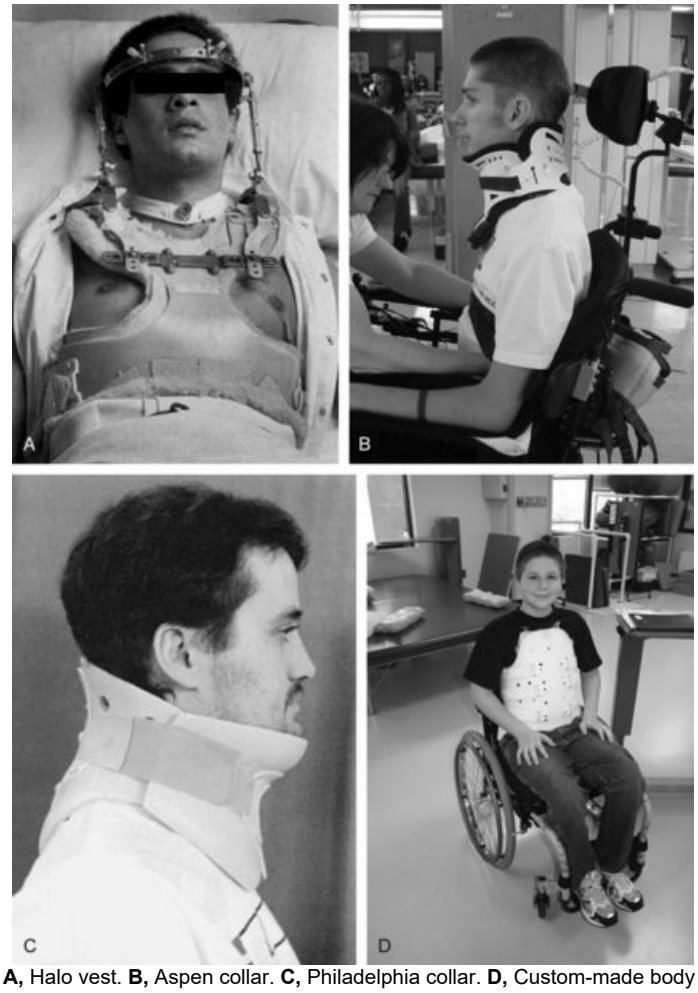


FIGURE 12-5 **A,** Halo vest. **B,** Aspen collar. **C,** Philadelphia collar. **D,** Custom-made body jacket. (**B–D**, From Umphred DA, editor: *Neurological rehabilitation, Umphred's neurological rehabilitation*, ed 6. St Louis, 2013, Elsevier, pp. 464, 466.)

Pathologic changes that occur following injury

Initially after the injury, hemorrhage into the gray matter of the spinal cord occurs. There is necrosis of the axons that were damaged by the actual injury. Edema develops within the white matter and exerts pressure on the nerve fiber tracts that carry various cutaneous sensations to the cerebral cortex and motor impulses from the cortex to the body. Secondary tissue destruction and trauma ensues and can expand the injured area. Ischemia, hypoxia, and biochemical changes further deprive the white and gray matter of needed oxygen (Somers, 2010). The myelin sheathes begin to disintegrate, and the axons begin to shrink. The immune system is also thought to contribute to additional cell death as monocytes and macrophages emit chemical substances that "trigger apoptosis or programmed cell death" (Fuller, 2009). Eventually, a scar forms around the injury site (Fuller, 2009).

It is extremely important to monitor the patient's level of injury for the first 24 to 48 hours. The injury may ascend one or two levels because of vascular changes. If loss of function is apparent more than two spinal cord segments above the initial level of the injury, it may mean that the spinal cord was damaged in more than one place. Immediate notification of the patient's primary nurse and physician is necessary.

Immediately after an SCI, the patient exhibits spinal shock. The condition results from interruption of the pathways between higher cortical centers and the spinal cord (Fulk et al., 2014). *Spinal shock* is characterized by a period of flaccidity, areflexia, loss of bowel and bladder function, and autonomic deficits including decreased arterial blood pressure and poor temperature regulation below the level of the injury. Spinal shock normally lasts for approximately 24 to 48 hours; however, certain sources state that it may last up to several weeks. Because of suppressed reflex activity, one cannot accurately assess the patient's level of injury during spinal shock. As spinal shock resolves, reflex activity below the level of the lesion will return, reaching a peak at 1 to 6 months after injury, and if motor and sensory tracts have been salvaged, function in these areas will also be evident (Fulk et al., 2014).

Types of lesions

SCIs are classified into two primary types: complete and incomplete. Because of the vast differences in clinical presentations, the ASIA Impairment Scale (AIS) was developed to allow for improved communication between health care professionals with respect to patient impairments (Fulk et al., 2014). The AIS is summarized in Table 12-2.

Table 12-2

ASIA Impairment Scale

Grade	Impairment
A = Complete	No motor or sensory function is preserved in the sacral segments S4–S5.
B = Sensory Incomplete	Sensory but not motor function is preserved below the neurologic level and includes the sacral segments S4–S5, And no motor is preserved more than three levels below the motor level on either side of the body.
C = Motor Incomplete	Motor function is preserved below the neurologic level, and more than half of key muscle functions below the neurologic level have a muscle grade less than 3.
D = Motor Incomplete	Motor function is preserved below the neurologic level, and at least half of key muscle functions below the neurologic level have a muscle grade of 3 or more.
E = Normal	Motor and sensory functions are normal in all segments, and the patient had prior deficits.

From American Spinal Cord Injury Association: *International standards for neurological classification of spinal cord injury, revised*. Atlanta, GA, 2013, American Spinal Injury Association.

Complete Injuries

If an injury is complete, sensory and motor function will be absent below the level of the injury and in the lowest sacral segments of S4 and S5. *Complete injuries* are most often the result of complete spinal cord transection, spinal cord compression, or vascular impairment. The most caudal segment with some sensory or motor function (or both) is defined as the *zone of partial preservation*. This condition applies only to complete injuries (Burns et al., 2012).

Incomplete Injuries

Incomplete injuries are described as those injuries in which there is partial preservation of some motor or sensory function (sacral sparing) below the neurologic level and in the lowest sacral segments of S4 and S5. Perianal sensation or voluntary contraction of the external anal sphincter indicates an incomplete injury (Burns et al., 2012). Investigators have estimated that more than 40.6% of patients have incomplete tetraplegia and 18.7% have incomplete paraplegia (National Spinal Cord Statistical Center, 2013).

The clinical picture of incomplete injuries is highly variable and unpredictable. The area of the spinal cord damaged and the number of spinal cord tracts that remain intact dictate the amount of motor and sensory functions preserved. Several clinical findings help to confirm a diagnosis of an incomplete injury. Sacral sparing is one such finding. Because the sacral tracts run most medially within the spinal cord, they are often salvaged. Patients with sacral sparing may have perianal sensation and/or the ability to have voluntary control over the rectal sphincter muscle (Finkbeiner and Russo, 1990). These spared motor and sensory functions can be of great functional benefit to the patient because they may provide for normal bowel, bladder, and sexual activities.

Another clinical finding observed in patients with incomplete injuries is *abnormal tone* or *muscle spasticity*. Resistance to passive stretching, clonus, increased deep tendon reflexes, and muscle spasms may be present. Decreased inhibition from descending supraspinal pathways, loss of sensory information associated with weight bearing, "loss of descending facilitation of afferents from Golgi tendon organs," sprouting of synaptic terminals, and increased responsiveness to neurons distal to the injury may be possible explanations for these findings (Somers, 2010).

Brown-Séquard Syndrome

Brown-Séquard syndrome results from an injury involving half of the spinal cord (Figure 12-6, *A*). Penetrating injuries, such as injuries sustained from gunshot or stab wounds, are common causes. The patient loses motor function, proprioception, and vibration on the same side as the injury because the fibers within the corticospinal tract and dorsal columns do not cross at the spinal cord level. Pain and temperature sensations are absent on the opposite side of the injury a few segments

lower. The reason for the loss of pain and temperature sensations in this distribution is that the lateral spinothalamic tract ascends several spinal segments on the same side of the spinal cord before it crosses to the contralateral side (Fuller, 2009). Light touch sensation may or may not be preserved in these patients. Prognosis for recovery with this type of injury is good. Many individuals become independent in activities of daily living (ADLs) and are continent of bowel and bladder.

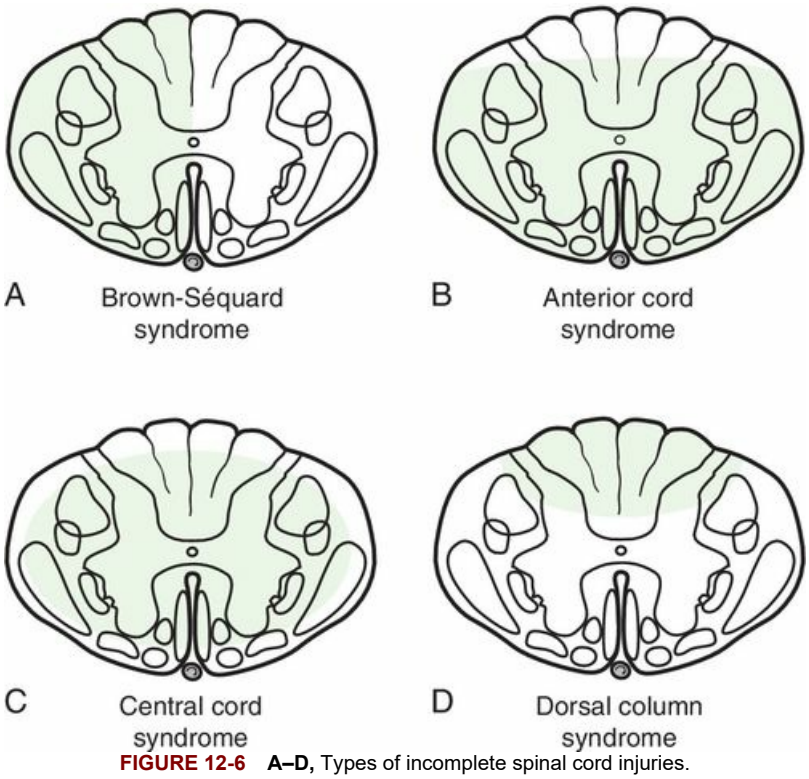


FIGURE 12-6 **A–D,** Types of incomplete spinal cord injuries.

Anterior Cord Syndrome

Anterior cord syndrome results from a flexion injury to the cervical spine in which a fracture-dislocation of the cervical vertebrae occurs. The anterior spinal cord or anterior spinal artery may be damaged (Figure 12-6, *B*). The patient loses motor, pain, and temperature sensations bilaterally below the level of the injury as a result of injury to the corticospinal and spinothalamic tracts. The posterior (dorsal) columns remain intact, and therefore the patient retains the ability to perceive position sense and vibration below the injury. The prognosis for functional return is limited because all voluntary motor function is lost.

Central Cord Syndrome

Central cord syndrome is another type of incomplete injury and is the most common. This type of SCI can result from progressive stenosis or compression that is a consequence of hyperextension injuries. Bleeding into the central gray matter causes damage to the spinal cord (Figure 12-6, *C*). Characteristically, the upper extremities are more severely involved than the lower extremities. This is because the cervical tracts are located more centrally in the gray matter. Injury to the central spinal cord damages three different motor and sensory tracts: the spinothalamic tract, the corticospinal tract, and the dorsal column. Sensory deficits tend to be variable. Bowel, bladder, and sexual functions are preserved if the sacral portions of the tracts are spared. Ambulation is possible for many patients. Functional independence in ADLs depends on the amount of upper extremity innervation the patient regains.

Dorsal Column Syndrome

Dorsal column syndrome or *posterior cord syndrome* is a rare incomplete injury that results from damage to the posterior spinal artery by a tumor or vascular infarct (Figure 12-6, *D*). A patient with this type of injury loses the ability to perceive proprioception and vibration. The ability to move and to perceive pain remains intact.

Conus Medullaris Syndrome

Patients with injuries to the *conus medullaris* present with flaccid paralysis and areflexic bowel and bladder function. In some situations, the sacral reflexes are present.

Cauda Equina Injuries

A *cauda equina injury* usually occurs after the patient sustains a direct trauma from a fracture-dislocation below the L1 vertebrae. This type of injury often results in an incomplete lower motor neuron lesion. Flaccidity, areflexia, and loss of bowel and bladder function are the common clinical manifestations. Regeneration of the involved peripheral nerve root is possible, but it depends on the extent of initial damage. Table 12-3 summarizes the causes and clinical findings seen in patients with incomplete injuries.

Table 12-3

Types of Incomplete Spinal Cord Injuries

Type	Cause	Findings
Brown-Séquard syndrome	Penetrating injury: gunshot or stab wounds	Loss of motor function, proprioception, and vibration on the same side as the injury Pain and temperature lost on the opposite side
Anterior cord syndrome	Flexion injury with fracture-dislocation of the cervical vertebrae	Loss of motor, pain, and temperature sensation bilaterally below the level of the injury Position and vibration sense intact
Central cord syndrome	Progressive stenosis or hyperextension injuries	Damage to all three tracts Upper extremities more involved than lower Sensory deficits variable
Dorsal column or posterior cord syndrome	Compression of the posterior spinal artery by tumor or vascular infarction	Loss of proprioception and vibration bilaterally
Cauda equina injuries	Direct trauma from a fracture-dislocation below L1	Upper and lower motor neuron signs possible including flaccidity, areflexia, loss of bowel and bladder function
Conus medullaris syndrome	Damage to the sacral aspect of the spinal cord and the lumbar nerve roots	Flaccidity of the lower extremities, areflexive bowel and bladder function Sacral reflexes remain intact in some individuals

Root Escape

Damage to the nerve root within the vertebral foramen can lead to a peripheral nerve injury. *Root escape* is the term used to describe the preservation or return of motor or sensory function in various nerve roots at or near the site of injury. Therefore, a patient may experience some improved function or a return of function in the muscles innervated by the peripheral nerve several months after the initial injury. This increased motor or sensory return should not, however, be mistaken for return of spinal cord function.

Clinical manifestations of spinal cord injuries

The clinical picture of a patient who has experienced an SCI is variable. Much depends on the level of the injury and the muscle and sensory functions that remain. In addition, one must consider whether the injury is complete or incomplete. In general, the following signs or symptoms may be present in an individual who has sustained an SCI: (1) motor paralysis or paresis below the level of the injury or lesion; (2) sensory loss (sensory function may remain intact two spinal cord segments below the level of the injury); (3) cardiopulmonary dysfunction; (4) impaired temperature control; (5) spasticity; (6) bladder and bowel dysfunction; and (7) sexual dysfunction.

Resolution of spinal shock

Reflex activity below the injury resumes after spinal shock subsides. The earliest reflexes that return are the sacral level reflexes. As a result, reflexive bowel and bladder function may return. Flexor withdrawal responses may also become apparent. Initially, these reflexes are evoked by a noxious stimulus, and as recovery progresses, they may be evoked by other, less noxious means. As time goes on, upper or lower extremity spasticity can develop in muscle groups that lack innervation. Flexor spasticity in the lower extremities often develops first, secondary to interruption of the vestibulospinal tract. In time, extensor tone usually dominates (Decker and Hall, 1986). Additional muscle tightness and shortening become evident as a result of static positioning and muscle imbalances. For example, tightness in the hip flexors can develop as the patient spends increased amounts of time sitting upright in a wheelchair.

Complications

Multiple complications can result following an SCI. Careful prevention of possible secondary complications can improve a patient's rehabilitation potential and quality of life.

Pressure Ulcers

One of the most common complications seen after SCI is the development of *pressure ulcers*. Pressure areas develop over bony prominences in response to the patient's inability to perceive the need to shift weight or relieve pressure. Additionally, changes in collagen degradation and decreased peripheral blood flow makes the skin more vulnerable to injury (Somers, 2010). The treatment of open wounds that develop as a consequence of excessive pressure is a leading reason for increased lengths of hospital stays and medical costs (Fulk et al., 2014). For health-care professionals, prevention of pressure ulcers is of the utmost importance. Patients must be instructed in pressure relief techniques, or family members and caregivers must be taught how to assist the patient with weight-shifting activities. Patients should be instructed to perform 1 minute of pressure relief for every 15 to 20 minutes of sitting (Somers and Bruce, 2014). Patients who are able should perform skin inspection independently with the use of a handheld mirror. Patients who require physical assistance with skin inspection should be advised to instruct others in the performance of this activity. Protective padding can also be applied during the performance of functional activities to decrease sheer forces and the possibility of trauma. Equipment including specialized beds, mattresses, custom wheelchairs, cushions, and lower extremity splints and padding may be necessary to provide patients with some pressure-reducing capacities.

Autonomic Dysreflexia

Autonomic dysreflexia occurs in patients with injuries above T6. This pathologic autonomic reflex is caused by sympathetic nervous system instability. All sympathetic outflow occurs below the T6 level. Consequently, in cervical and upper thoracic injuries, descending excitatory and inhibitory input from the medulla to sympathetic neurons are lost. Autonomic responses are discharged as a result of a noxious sensory stimulus applied below the level of the lesion. This noxious sensory input causes autonomic stimulation, vasoconstriction, and a rapid and massive rise in the patient's blood pressure. Normally, an increase in an individual's blood pressure would stimulate the baroreceptors in the carotid sinus and aorta and would cause an adjustment in peripheral vascular resistance, thereby lowering the patient's blood pressure. Because of the patient's condition, impulses are unable to travel below the level of the injury to decrease the patient's blood pressure. Thus, hypertension persists unless the noxious stimulus is removed or the patient receives medical intervention. This condition can cause life-threatening complications including renal failure, seizures, subarachnoid hemorrhage, and even death if left untreated. Common causes of autonomic dysreflexia include bladder or bowel distention, bowel impaction, disruption of the patient's catheter, urinary tract infections, noxious cutaneous stimulation, pressure sores, kidney malfunction, environmental temperature changes, and a passive stretch applied to the patient's hip (Somers, 2010).

Symptoms of autonomic dysreflexia include significant hypertension, severe and pounding headache, bradycardia, vasoconstriction below the level of the lesion, vasodilation (flushing) and profuse sweating above the level of the injury, constricted pupils, goose bumps (piloerection), blurred vision, and a runny nose. Immediate recognition and treatment of these signs or symptoms is essential. The first thing one should do is to look for the likely source of noxious stimulation. Often, the patient's catheter is kinked or the catheter bag may need emptying. If the source of the problem cannot be identified immediately, one should try to lower the patient's blood pressure by sitting or standing the patient. Monitoring of the patient's vital signs is necessary. Application of a nitroglycerin patch, a potent vasodilator, or administration of antihypertensive drugs including nifedipine, nitrates and captropril can assist in lowering the patient's blood pressure (Fulk et al., 2014). The patient's primary nurse and physician must be notified as soon as possible. Prevention of recurrent episodes and patient and family education are critical. Medications or surgical intervention may be needed to assist the patient in the regulation of this condition.

Postural Hypotension

Another possible complication is *postural hypotension*. Patients who have experienced an SCI often develop low blood pressure. Lack of an efficient skeletal muscle pump, combined with an absent vasoresponse in the lower extremities, leads to venous pooling. Consequently, the amount of blood circulating in the body is decreased, thereby precipitating decreases in stroke volume and cardiac output. Postural hypotension can develop when patients are transferred to sitting, when they are placed in upright standing, or during exercise. Thus, careful monitoring of blood pressure responses must occur during treatment activities. The application of an abdominal binder before beginning upright activities promotes venous return by minimizing the drops in intraabdominal pressure that can occur when the patient's position is changed. In addition, elastic stockings can be worn by the patient to prevent venous pooling in the lower extremities. Medications (vasopressors or mineralocorticoids) increase the patient's blood pressure and increasing fluid intake in the presence of hypovolemia may be prescribed to manage this condition (Somers and Bruce, 2014).

Pain

Pain is a common problem seen in patients after spinal cord injury. It has been reported that 26% to 96% of all individuals with SCI experience chronic pain (Fulk et al., 2014). Pain can limit the patient's ability to participate in rehabilitation and may have negative consequences on one's ability to perform ADLs, sleep, and one's overall quality of life. Two types of pain have been identified: nociceptive and neuropathic. Nociceptive pain is associated with musculoskeletal structures (i.e., muscles, bones, tendons) and can develop as a result of the initial injury, inflammation, poor handling and positioning, or muscle spasm. Over time, the patient with SCI can develop musculoskeletal pain and overuse pain syndromes, especially in the upper extremity. Common conditions seen include rotator cuff tears, shoulder impingement, lateral epicondylitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, and tendonitis of the wrist. These overuse injuries develop as a result of repetitive upper extremity movements and weight-bearing conditions needed to complete functional tasks including wheelchair propulsion, transfers, and pressure relief (Somers, 2010; Fulk et al., 2014).

Neuropathic pain develops as a consequence of injury to the central and or peripheral nervous system and can occur at, above, or below the level of the initial injury. Neuropathic pain above the injury site is often due to damage to a peripheral nerve from compression or entrapment. The nature of the pain can be variable and may be constant or intermittent, and can be sharp, shooting, or burning in nature. Treatment of neuropathic pain is challenging for health-care practitioners. Medical interventions include patient education about the nature of the pain and pharmacologic management. The physician may prescribe acetaminophen or other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, including ibuprofen (Motrin), naproxen (Naprosyn), and indomethacin (Indocin); anticonvulsants such as gabapentin (Neurontin), pregabalin (Lyrica), and valproic acid (Depakote); the antidepressant amitriptyline (Elavil); and analgesics (tramadol). Psychological pain management techniques, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, acupuncture, and mental imagery may also be helpful in the management of chronic pain (Fulk et al., 2014; Somers, 2010).

Contractures

Patients tend to develop flexion *contractures* as a result of the flexor reflex activity that develops after the injury and also as a consequence of prolonged sitting. Muscle imbalances around a joint may also predispose an individual to contracture formation. Prevention of contractures is important to maintain maximal function. Patients should be instructed in a good stretching program that they can perform independently or with the assistance of a family member or caregiver. In addition, all patients should be encouraged to perform a regular prone positioning program. Patients should spend at least 20 minutes each day on their stomachs to stretch the hip flexors. The prone position also relieves pressure on the ischial tuberosities and can provide aeration to the buttocks.

Heterotopic Ossification

Heterotopic ossification is another potential secondary complication. Bone can form in the soft tissues below the level of the injury. Usually, heterotopic bone develops adjacent to a large lower extremity joint, such as the hip or knee. The etiology of heterotopic ossificans is unknown, although spasticity,

trauma, complete injury, and urinary tract infection are thought to contribute to its development. Clinical signs of heterotopic ossification include range-of-motion limitations, swelling, warmth, and pain; fever may or may not be present. The management of this condition entails pharmacologic intervention with bisphosphonates; physical therapy and range-of-motion exercises to maintain available range; and surgical resection if the patient has a significant limitation (Fulk et al., 2014; Somers, 2010).

Deep Vein Thrombosis

The development of *deep vein thrombosis* is a common and life-threatening complication. The risk appears to be greatest during the first 2 to 3 months after injury. Because patients are often immobile and are medically fragile during this period, prophylactic anticoagulants, such as oral warfarin (Coumadin) or intravenous heparin, may be used for the first few months after the injury to prevent blood clotting. Surgical implantation of a vena cava filter may also be necessary to decrease the risk of pulmonary embolus. Regularly scheduled turning programs and early mobilization including sitting up in bed and transferring to a wheelchair are important to prevent venous pooling. Elastic supports and sequential compression devices for the lower extremities may also be prescribed to assist the patient with venous return.

Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis can be seen after SCIs because of changes in calcium metabolism. Although the exact etiology is not clear, decreased opportunities for weight bearing and limited muscle activity are thought to contribute to decreased bone density. The reduction in bone mass also places patients at an increased risk for fractures, with an incidence as high as 46% of all patients experiencing a pathologic fracture (Somers, 2010). Early mobilization, therapeutic standing, use of functional electric stimulation, administration of calcium supplements, and good dietary management can minimize the development of these potential complications (Fulk et al., 2014).

Respiratory Compromise

Serious and sometimes life-threatening complications can develop as a result of a patient's decreased respiratory capabilities. These complications develop in response to decreased innervation of the muscles of respiration and immobility. The diaphragm, innervated by cervical nerve roots C3 through C5, is the primary muscle of inspiration. Therefore, patients with high cervical injuries may lose the ability to breathe on their own, secondary to paralysis or weakness of the diaphragm muscle. The external intercostal muscles assist with inspiration and are innervated segmentally starting at T1. They act to lift the ribs and increase the dimension of the thoracic cavity. Patients with paraplegia below T12 have innervation of the external intercostals and should be able to exhibit a normal breathing pattern using the chest and diaphragm equally. This is often described as a *two-chest two-diaphragm breathing pattern* (Wetzel, 1985). The abdominals are the other important muscle group needed for respiration. The upper abdominal muscles are innervated by T7 through T9, and the lower abdominals are innervated by spinal segments T9 through T12. The abdominals are activated when the patient attempts forceful expiration, such as coughing. Patients who are unable to generate an adequate amount of muscle force to cough will be susceptible to accumulation of bronchial secretions. This can lead to pneumonia, atelectasis, and respiratory compromise in many individuals. Weakness in the muscles of respiration can also lead to a decreased inspiratory effort and impairment of the patient's ability to tolerate exercise—a factor that ultimately affects endurance for functional activities.

Multiple interventions are used to minimize the effects of impaired respiratory function. These include early acclimation to the upright position, abdominal corsets and binders to assist with positioning of the abdominal contents, assisted cough techniques taught to the patient and caregivers, diaphragmatic strengthening, and incentive spirometry techniques. A more in-depth discussion of these techniques occurs in the treatment section of this chapter.

Bladder and Bowel Dysfunction

Bladder and bowel dysfunction may be considered a clinical finding or a complication of SCI.

Patients with SCIs often experience difficulties with this area of function, and urinary tract infections are a major cause of mortality in individuals with SCI (Fulk et al., 2014). The bladder is innervated by the lower sacral segments, specifically S2 through S4. During the period of spinal shock, the bladder is flaccid or areflexic. Once spinal shock is over, two possible situations can prevail, depending on the location of the injury. If the patient's injury is above S2, the sacral reflex arc remains intact, and the patient is said to have a *hyperreflexic* or *spastic bladder*. In this condition, the bladder empties reflexively when the pressure inside it reaches a certain level. Patients can apply specific cutaneous stimulation techniques to the suprapubic region to assist with bladder emptying. If the patient's injury is to the cauda equina or the conus medullaris, the patient is said to have a *nonreflexive* or *flaccid bladder*. The sacral reflex arc is not intact, and thus the bladder remains flaccid, requiring manual emptying at predetermined time periods (Fulk et al., 2014).

Bladder-training programs are important components of the patient's rehabilitation program. Intermittent catheterization, timed voiding programs, and manual stimulation can be used to empty the bladder and allow the patient to be catheter-free. Residual volumes of urine must be monitored to aid in the prevention of urinary tract infections (Fulk et al., 2014).

Bowel dysfunction is a major concern for many patients and can impact one's involvement in social activities and how one views his overall quality of life. In patients with injuries above S2, the patient will have a spastic or reflex bowel. Reflexive emptying of stool will occur once the rectum is full. In injuries at S2 to S4, patients have a flaccid or areflexive bowel, and as such the bowels do not empty reflexively, leading to possible impaction or incontinence (Fulk et al., 2014).

The establishment of a regular bowel program is also part of the patient's comprehensive plan of care. Patients are often placed on a regular schedule of bowel evacuation. High-fiber diets, adequate intake of fluids, use of stool softeners, and manual stimulation or evacuation may be suggested to assist the patient in the establishment of a bowel program (Fulk et al., 2014).

The rehabilitation team needs to be aware of the patient's schedule for bladder and bowel training. Therapies should not be scheduled during times designated for these activities.

Sexual Dysfunction

A common concern expressed by patients following SCI is the impact the injury will have on sexual relationships. As stated previously, physical function depends on the patient's motor level. Males with upper motor neuron injuries have the potential for reflex erections (ones that occur in response to external stimulation) if the sacral reflex arc remains intact. Psychogenic erections are possible through cognitive activity at the level of the cortex. The ability to ejaculate is limited for patients with both upper and lower motor neuron injuries. Therefore, men experience significant challenges with fertility. Advances in medications, topical agents, and mechanical devices are available to improve erectile function. Women with SCIs continue to experience menstruation and thus are able to become pregnant. Women who do become pregnant and are ready to deliver are often hospitalized as a precautionary measure, because they may not be able to feel uterine contractions (depending on their neurologic level) that would indicate the onset of labor (Fulk et al., 2014).

Physical therapists (PTs) and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) must be comfortable discussing this information with their patients. Because of the time we spend working with our patients, questions related to sexual activity may be directed to us. We must answer questions honestly and accurately. If you do not feel comfortable fielding these types of questions, you need to refer the patient to someone who can.

Spasticity

Spasticity is a common sequela of SCI. The prevalence of spasticity is higher in patients with cervical and incomplete injuries, specifically those classified as ASI B and C (Somers, 2010). Research suggests that increased tone is the result of residual influence of supraspinal centers (cortex, red nucleus, reticular system, and vestibular nuclei) on the spinal cord and ineffective modulation of spinal pathways (Craik, 1991). Spasticity may also be greater in patients who have experienced significant and multiple complications. Investigators have also shown that noxious stimuli tend to exacerbate abnormal muscle tone. In most instances, PTs and PTAs focus treatment on ways to decrease or minimize the effects of abnormal muscle tone. However, in some instances, an increase in muscle tone can be advantageous to the patient. Spasticity can help maintain muscle bulk, prevent atrophy, and assist in the maintenance of circulation. Spasticity can also assist the

patient in performing functional activities including transfers, basic bed mobility, and standing when the patient has adequate innervation and sufficient trunk control. In addition, spasticity can provide increased tone to the anal sphincter, tone that may aid the patient in performing a bowel program.

The management of spasticity can be challenging. At this time, no treatment is available that completely ameliorates the effects of abnormal tone. Physicians may recommend a multitude of interventions to help the patient. Elimination of the stimuli or factors that contribute to increased sensory input is beneficial. Physical therapy interventions may include positioning, static stretching, weight bearing, cryotherapy, aquatics, and functional electrical stimulation. These different treatment interventions are discussed in more depth in the treatment section of this chapter. Pharmacologic intervention may be necessary for some patients with significant abnormal tone. The most common oral medications prescribed include dantrolene sodium, which targets muscle contractility; baclofen (Lioresal) and diazepam (Valium), which target γ-aminobutyric acid receptors in the central nervous system; and clonidine (Catapres), which decreases spasticity through its effects on alpha receptors in the spinal cord (Somers, 2010). All these medications have documented side effects, including hepatotoxicity, bradycardia, sedation, decreased attention and memory, hypotension, and reduced muscle strength and coordination (Somers, 2010 p. 50; Katz, 1988, 1994; Scelza and Shatzer, 2003; Yarkony and Chen, 1996). Patients frequently experiment with these medications and then discontinue their use because of adverse side effects.

Intrathecal baclofen pumps and *botulism injections* are other forms of treatment for spasticity. With the intrathecal pump, a pump and small catheter are implanted subcutaneously into the patient's abdominal wall. Baclofen is then delivered directly into the subarachnoid space of the spinal cord, thereby reducing the dosage needed and some of the side effects. Baclofen has been found to be more effective in reducing tone in the lower extremities compared with the upper extremities because of catheter placement (Katz, 1988; Scelza and Shatzer, 2003). Botulinum toxin A is injected directly into the spastic muscle. This neurotoxin inhibits the release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction, thereby causing temporary muscle paralysis (Cromwell and Paquette, 1996).

Surgical intervention is a final type of management of abnormal tone. Neurectomies, rhizotomies, myelotomies, tenotomies, and nerve and motor point blocks may be administered to assist the patient with management of abnormal tone. *Neurectomy* is the surgical excision of a segment of nerve. *Rhizotomy* is a surgical procedure in which the dorsal or sensory root of a spinal nerve is resected. In *myelotomy*, the tracts within the spinal cord are severed. *Tenotomy* is the surgical release of a tendon. Nerve blocks are performed with injectable phenol and reduce spasticity on a temporary basis (3 to 6 months). A more detailed description of these procedures is beyond the scope of this text (Katz, 1988, 1994; Yarkony and Chen, 1996).

Functional outcomes

A patient's functional outcome following an SCI depends on many factors. Age, the type and level of the injury, the motor and sensory function preserved, the patient's general health and preinjury activity level, status before the injury, body build, support systems, financial security, motivation, access to medical and rehabilitation services, and preexisting personality traits—all play a role in the patient's eventual outcome (Somers and Bruce, 2014; Lewthwaite et al., 1994). In patients with motor complete injuries (AIS A), the neurologic level is the most important factor in determining the patient's eventual functional outcome (Somers and Bruce, 2014).

Key Muscles by Segmental Innervation

Before we can begin to talk about functional capabilities in an individual with SCI, we must review key muscles and their actions. The innervation of key muscle groups allows patients to achieve a certain level of functional skill and independence. Table 12-4 highlights key muscles at each spinal level.

Table 12-4

Key Muscles by Segmental Innervation

Spinal Level	Muscles
C1–C2	Facial muscles, partial sternocleidomastoid, capital muscles
C3	Sternocleidomastoid, partial diaphragm, upper trapezius
C4	Diaphragm, partial deltoid, sternocleidomastoid, upper trapezius
C5	Deltoid, biceps, rhomboids, brachioradialis, teres minor, infraspinatus
C6	Extensor carpi radialis, pectoralis major (clavicular portion), teres major, supinator, serratus anterior, weak pronator
C7	Triceps, flexor carpi radialis, latissimus, pronator teres
C8	Flexor carpi ulnaris, extensor carpi ulnaris, patient may have some hand intrinsics
T1–T8	Hand intrinsics, top half of the intercostals, pectoralis major (sternal portion)
T7–T9	Upper abdominals
T9–T12	Lower abdominals
T12	Lower abdominals, weak quadratus lumborum
L2	Iliopsoas, weak sartorius, weak adductors, weak rectus femoris
L3	Sartorius, rectus femoris, adductors
L4	Gluteus medius, tensor fascia latae, hamstrings, tibialis anterior
L5	Weak gluteus maximus, long toe extensors, tibialis posterior
S1	Gluteus maximus, ankle plantar flexors (gastrocnemius, soleus)
S2	Anal sphincter

Functional Potentials

Each successive motor level provides the patient with the potential for greater function. Strength of a muscle must be at least fair-plus to perform a functional activity (Alvarez, 1985). Table 12-5 provides a review of functional potentials based on the patient's motor innervation and limitations encountered because of decreased muscle strength or range of motion. A description of each level and the patient's potential for achievement of functional activities is provided. It is important to keep in mind that these functional expectations should serve only as a guide and that individual patient differences must be considered when developing patient goals or plan of care.

Table 12-5

Functional Potential for Patients with Spinal Cord Injuries

Level	Muscles	Present Potential	Limitations
Above C4	C1–C2: Facial muscles	Vital capacity 20%–30% of normal	Dependent on ventilator
	C3: Sternocleidomastoid, upper trapezius	Power recline wheelchair with breath or chin control and portable ventilator Ability to perform pressure relief in wheelchair with power recline feature Full-time attendant required Ability to direct care verbally Use of environmental control units with set-up	Dependent in all ADLs Dependent in bed mobility and transfers
C4	Diaphragm Upper trapezius	Vital capacity 30%–50% of normal Power wheelchair with mouth stick or chin control 30° of cervical motion needed to drive a wheelchair with a chin control Maximal assistance with bed mobility Independent pressure relief with power reclining wheelchair Full-time attendant required Ability to direct care verbally Use of environmental control units with set-up	No upper extremity innervation Dependent in all ADLs Dependent in bed mobility and transfers
C5	Deltoid Biceps Rhomboids Lateral rotators (teres minor and infraspinatus)	Vital capacity 40%–60% of normal Power wheelchair with hand controls Manual wheelchair with rim projections Moderate assistance for bed mobility Maximal assistance needed for transfers (sliding board or sit pivot) Independent forward raise for pressure relief with loops attached to the back of the wheelchair Possible independence with some grooming tasks with adaptive equipment (wrist splints) and set-up Attendant needed Use of environmental control units	Has only elbow flexors, prone to elbow flexion contractures Must consider energy and time requirements for activity completion Dependent in bathing and dressing
C6	Extensor carpi radialis Pectoralis major (clavicular portion) Teres major	Vital capacity: 60%–80% of normal Independent rolling Independent pressure relief via weight shift Independent sliding board transfers possible or patient may require minimal assist Modified independent manual wheelchair propulsion with rim projections Modified independent feeding with adaptive equipment Independent upper extremity dressing Requires assistance for lower extremity dressing Ability to drive automobile with hand controls Vocation outside the home possible Prehension with flexor hinge splint Attendant needed for am and pm care Assistance needed for commode transfers	No elbow extension or hand function (patient prone to contractures)
C7	Triceps Latissimus dorsi Pronator teres	Vital capacity 80% of normal Independent living possible Independent pressure relief via lateral pushup Independent self-range of motion of lower extremities Modified independent transfers, wheelchair propulsion, pressure relief, and upper and lower extremity dressing	No finger muscles Transfers to floor require moderate or maximum assistance Assist needed to right wheelchair Some assistance needed for wheelchair propulsion on ramps and uneven terrain
C8	Flexor carpi ulnaris Extensor carpi ulnaris Hand intrinsics	Same potential as individual at C7 Independent living Negotiation of 2- to 4-inch curbs in wheelchair Wheelies in wheelchair	Some intrinsic hand function Writing, fine-motor coordination activities can be difficult Assistance with floor transfers
T1–T8	Hand intrinsics Top half of intercostals Pectoralis major (sternal portion)	Independent in manual wheelchair propulsion on all levels and surfaces (6-inch curbs) Therapeutic ambulation with orthoses in parallel bars (T6–T8)	No lower abdominal muscle function Minimal assistance to independent with floor transfers and righting wheelchair
T9–?T11	Abdominals	Independent wheelchair mobility Therapeutic ambulation with orthoses and assistive devices possible T10 vital capacity 100%	No hip flexor function
T12–L2	Quadratus lumborum	Household ambulation Independent in coming to stand and ambulation with orthoses	No quadriceps function Wheelchair used for community ambulation
L3–below	L3: Iliopsoas and rectus	Community ambulation with orthoses	No gluteus maximus function
L4–L5	Quadriceps, medial hamstrings	Community ambulation; may only need ankle-foot orthoses and canes for ambulation	
S1–S2	S1: plantar flexors, gluteus maximus S2: anal sphincter	Ambulation with articulated ankle-foot orthoses	Loss of bowel and bladder function

ADLs, Activities of daily living.

C1 Through C3

A patient with an injury above C4 has limited muscle innervation. Because the diaphragm is only

minimally innervated by C3, most patients with injuries at these levels will likely require mechanical ventilation. Some patients with high cervical lesions may, however, be able to tolerate electric stimulation to the phrenic nerve (phrenic nerve pacing). Stimulation to the phrenic nerve causes the diaphragm to contract, thereby reducing the patient's reliance on mechanical ventilation (Atrice et al., 2013). Patients with injuries at C1 through C3 require full-time attendants and will be totally dependent in all ADLs, bed mobility, and transfers. A power wheelchair with a reclining feature will be needed to allow for pressure relief and rest. The patient should have adequate breath support or neck range of motion to operate a power wheelchair by a sip-and-puff mechanism or with a chin cup. With a sip-and-puff unit, the patient either sips or blows into a straw mounted in front of his or her face to provide the stimulus for the wheelchair to move. A few patients may be able to use a chin cup. The device requires that the patient have at least 30 degrees of active cervical motion. Patients with injuries at C1 through C3 may or may not have sufficient active range of motion in the cervical spine. Advances in technology have improved the capabilities of all patients with SCIs, especially those with injuries at higher levels. Environmental control units that can be operated from the wheelchair allow some patients an increase in control over their home and work environments. These control units can be networked with one's personal computer and can operate appliances, lights, speaker phones, and so forth. Individuals with injuries at this level must be empowered to direct their care through instructions provided to attendants and caregivers. This provides the patient with a certain level of independence and autonomy regarding his or her situation and care.

C4

A patient with a C4-level injury likely has some innervation of the diaphragm. This has significant functional implications because it means that a patient may not have to depend on a ventilator. The vital capacity of patients with diaphragmatic innervation is still markedly decreased. Individuals at this level should be able to operate a power wheelchair using a chin cup, chin control, or mouth stick. Patients still must have sufficient range of motion to drive a wheelchair with a chin control. Environmental control units may also be prescribed for these patients. Individuals with C4 innervation continue to require full-time attendants because they are completely dependent in all transfers and ADLs.

C5

Patients with C5 innervation have some functional abilities. A patient with C5 innervation has deltoid, biceps, and rhomboid function. However, even though these muscles are innervated at this level, they may not have normal strength. Each patient has different motor capabilities, and the PT must thoroughly examine muscle function. Because of innervation of these key muscles, a patient with innervation at C5 should be able to flex and abduct the shoulders to 90 degrees, flex the elbows, and adduct the scapulae. The ability to flex and abduct the shoulders means that the patient will be able to raise his or her arms to assist with rolling and can also bring his or her hand to the mouth. He or she cannot, however, extend the elbow because the triceps are not innervated. The patient will be able to operate a power wheelchair with a hand control. A few patients are able to propel a manual wheelchair with rim projections. Although manual wheelchair propulsion may be possible, one must consider the high energy costs associated with this activity. For this reason, power wheelchairs are preferred for patients with innervation at this level.

The individual with C5 innervation may be able to be independent with some self-care activities, but the patient will require setup of the activity by an attendant or a family member. Patients also need to use adaptive equipment, including splints and built-up ADL devices, to perform self-care activities. Our experience has shown that even though patients may be able to perform a self-care activity independently after setup, the time and energy required to complete the task are often too great to continue performance on a regular basis. Individuals with innervation at the C5 level can provide minimal assistance with sliding board transfers from their wheelchairs and will require assistance for bed mobility. They can perform independent pressure relief by leaning forward in the wheelchair or by looping one of their upper extremities over the push handles on the back of the wheelchair and performing a weight shift. The rhomboids provide limited scapular stabilization for upper extremity self-care activities and for assuming functional positions, such as prone on elbows and long sitting with extended arm support. Driving is possible with a van and adaptive hand controls.

C6

Patients with C6 innervation have some greater functional abilities. Because of innervation of the wrist extensors, the pectoralis major, and the teres major, patients at this level are able to be independent with rolling, feeding, and upper extremity dressing. The patient should be able to propel a manual wheelchair independently with rim projections, and the potential exists for the person to be independent with sliding board transfers. Patients may need assistance in the morning and at night with self-care activities, and some patients need assistance for transfers, especially to the commode. Assistance is also required for lower extremity dressing. The ability to drive a motor vehicle with adaptive controls and gainful employment outside the home are possible for individuals with innervation at this level.

C7

An individual with a C7 injury has the potential for living independently because patients at this level have innervation of the triceps. With triceps strength, the patient can use his or her upper extremities to lift the body during transfers. In addition, the person will be able to perform a wheelchair push-up for pressure relief. Independence in self-care activities is possible, including upper and lower extremity dressing. A person should become independent in transferring from the wheelchair to the bed or mat, at first with a sliding board and eventually without the use of a board. Additional functional capabilities include independence with pressure relief, self–range of motion to the lower extremities, and operation of a standard motor vehicle with adapted hand controls.

C8

With innervation at C8, a patient can live independently. An individual is able to perform everything that a patient with innervation at a C7 level is able to complete. With the addition of some increased finger control, the patient may also be able to perform wheelies and negotiate 2- to 4-inch curbs in the wheelchair.

T1 Through T9

We look at capabilities of individuals with T1 through T9 innervation as a group. With increased motor return in the thoracic region, the patient demonstrates improved trunk control and breathing capabilities including the ability to clear secretions because of increasing innervation of the intercostals. Individuals are able to operate a manual wheelchair on all levels and surfaces and should be able to transfer into and out of the wheelchair to the floor. Patients with innervation at the T1 through T9 level may also be candidates for physiologic standing and limited therapeutic ambulation in the parallel bars with physical assistance and orthoses. *Therapeutic ambulation* is defined as walking for the physiologic benefits that standing and weight bearing provide. The section of this chapter on ambulation discusses this concept in greater detail.

T10 Through L2

Patients with innervation at the T10 through L2 level have abilities similar to those mentioned for individuals with T1 through T9 function. Therapeutic ambulation and ambulation in the home with orthoses and assistive devices may be possible, although manual wheelchair propulsion is the typical mode of functional mobility.

L3 Through L5

The quadriceps are partially innervated by L3. The presence of lower extremity innervation improves the patient's capacity for ambulation activities. Patients with innervation at this level should be independent in household ambulation and may become independent in community ambulation at the L3 level. Knee-ankle-foot orthoses or ankle-foot orthoses are necessary. Patients with injuries at the L4 and L5 levels should be independent with all functional activities, including gait. These individuals can ambulate in the community with some type of orthoses and assistive device.

Physical therapy intervention: acute care

The acute-care management of the patient with an SCI centers around the following goals:
1. Prevention of joint contractures and deformities
2. Improvement of muscle and respiratory function
3. Acclimation of the patient to an upright position
4. Prevention of secondary complications
5. Pain management
6. Patient and family education

The patient's initial physical therapy examination includes information on the patient's respiratory function, muscle strength, muscle tone, reflex activity, skin status, cardiac function, and functional mobility skills. The PT develops a plan of care to address the patient's primary impairments, functional limitations, and activity restrictions. In this early stage, interventions should focus on breathing exercises, selective strengthening and range-of-motion exercises, functional mobility training, activities to improve the patient's tolerance to upright, and patient and family education.

A patient with a cervical or thoracic injury may not immediately undergo surgical stabilization; therefore, the PT may be involved in the care of the patient in the intensive care unit. Any patient with an unstable spine must be carefully assessed by the physician for the appropriateness of physical therapy innervation. Because of the acuity of the patient's condition and the potential for unpredictable patient responses, it is best for the patient to be treated by the PT at this stage. Cotreatments with the PTA or other members of the team may be appropriate.

Breathing Exercises

Exercises performed in the acute stage should emphasize maximizing respiratory function. Much depends on the patient's current level of muscle innervation. For those patients with innervation between C4 and T1, emphasis is on increasing the diaphragm's strength and efficiency. These patients possess diaphragm function and often demonstrate a diaphragmatic breathing pattern. If the diaphragm is weak, use of accessory muscles, such as the sternocleidomastoid and scalenes, may be evident. A good way to assess respiratory function is to observe the epigastric area and to watch for *epigastric rise*. An exaggerated movement of the abdominal area indicates that the diaphragm is working. The PTA can place a hand over this area to determine how much movement is actually occurring, as depicted in Figure 12-7. If the patient is having difficulty, a quick stretch applied before the diaphragm contracts can help facilitate a response. If the patient is able to move the epigastric area at least 2 inches, the strength of the diaphragm is said to be fair (Wetzel, 1985). To strengthen this muscle even more, the PTA can apply manual resistance during the inspiratory phase of respiration. If the patient is able to take resistance to the diaphragm during inspiration, the strength of the muscle is considered good. Care must be taken to gauge the amount of manual resistance applied. Early on, patients may experience difficulties in breathing as a consequence of diaphragm weakness. In addition, respiratory muscle fatigue may become evident. Observation of the neck area can provide the clinician with valuable information regarding accessory muscle use. Patients often use accessory muscles extensively when the diaphragm is weak. Visible contraction of the sternocleidomastoids, scalenes, or platysma indicates accessory muscle use.

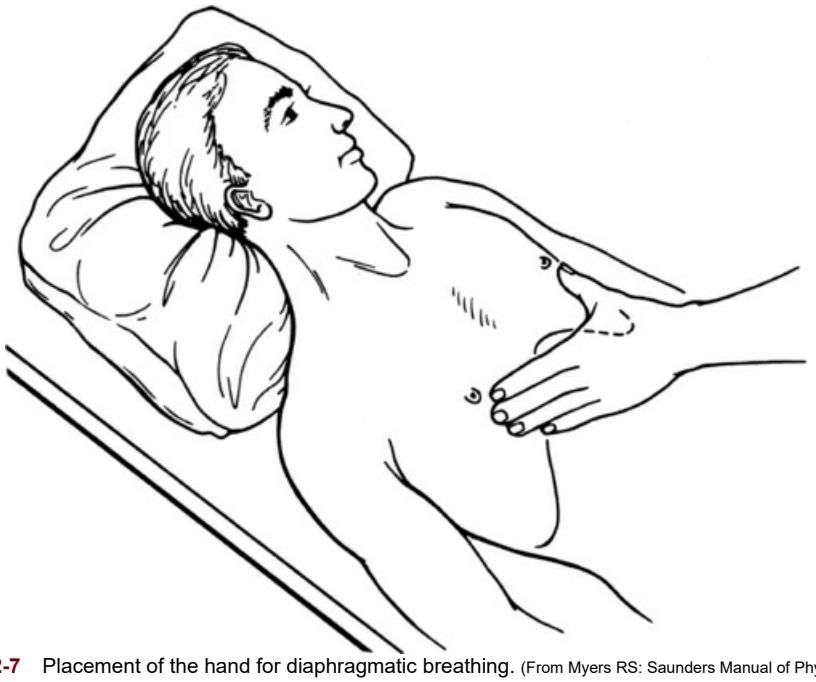


FIGURE 12-7 Placement of the hand for diaphragmatic breathing. (From Myers RS: Saunders Manual of Physical Therapy Practice. Philadelphia, 1995, WB Saunders.)

Glossopharyngeal Breathing

Patients with injuries at the C1 through C3 level and some patients with injuries at C4 require mechanical ventilation. These patients need to be taught a technique to assist their ability to tolerate short periods of breathing while they are off the ventilator. *Glossopharyngeal breathing* is a technique that can be taught to patients with high-level tetraplegia. The patient takes a breath of air and closes the mouth. The patient raises the palate to trap the air. Saying the words "ah" or "oops" accomplishes this. The larynx is then opened as the tongue forces the air through the open larynx and into the lungs. This technique is extremely beneficial if, for some reason, the patient needs to be disconnected from the ventilator for a short time because of equipment failure, power outage, showering, or another unforeseeable circumstance. This technique allows the patient to receive adequate breath support until mechanical ventilation can be resumed.

Lateral Expansion

For patients who have some intercostal innervation (T1 through T12), lateral expansion or basilar breathing should be emphasized. Patients are encouraged to take deep breaths as they try to expand the chest wall laterally. PTAs can place their hands on the patient's lateral chest wall and can palpate the amount of movement present. Manual resistance can eventually be applied as the patient gains strength in the intercostal muscles. Progression to a two-diaphragm, two-chest breathing pattern is desirable if the patient has innervation through T12 (external intercostals).

Incentive Spirometry

Another activity that can be used to improve the function of the pulmonary system is *incentive spirometry*. Blow bottles at the patient's bedside can encourage deep breathing. A measurement of vital capacity can be taken with a handheld spirometer. Vital capacity is the maximum amount of air expelled after maximum inhalation. Measurements of the patient's vital capacity can be taken throughout rehabilitation to document changes in ventilation (Wetzel, 1985). Patients can also be instructed to vary their breathing rate and to hold their breath as a means to promote improved respiratory function.

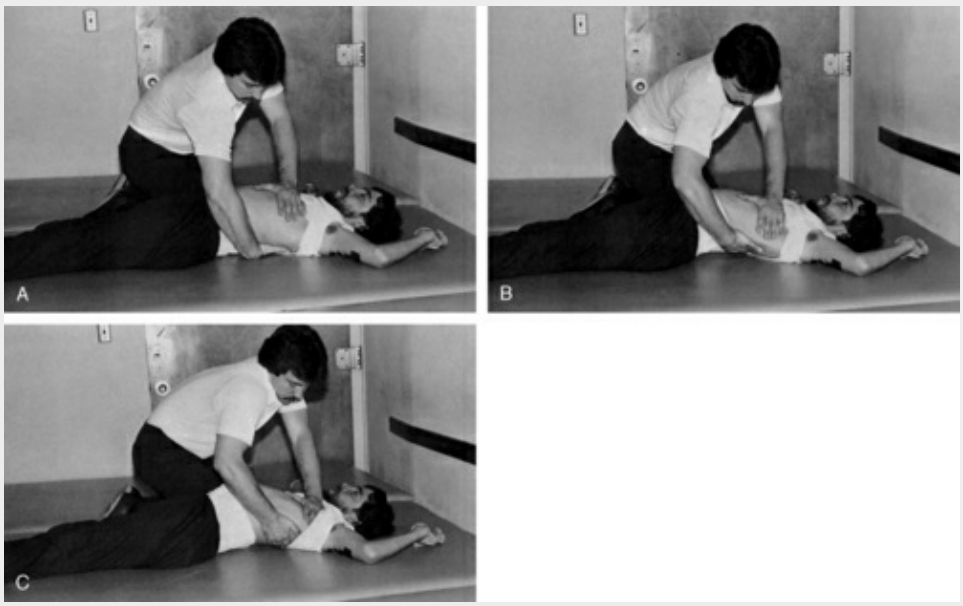
Chest Wall Stretching

Spasticity and muscle tightness within the chest wall can develop. *Manual chest stretching* may be indicated to increase chest expansion. The PTA can place one hand under the patient's ribs and the

other on top of the chest. The clinician then brings the hands together in a wringing type of motion, moving segmentally up the chest. This procedure, however, is contraindicated in the presence of rib fractures (Wetzel, 1985). Intervention 12-1 illustrates a clinician performing this technique.

Intervention 12-1

Chest Wall Stretching



A. Starting position for manual chest stretching with one hand under the patient's ribs and the other on top of the patient's ribs.
B. Ending position of the clinician's hands after applying a wringing motion to the patient's chest for manual stretching.
C. The last hand position after the clinician progresses up the patient's chest for manual chest stretching with the clinician's top hand just inferior to the patient's clavicle.

(From Adkins HV, editor: *Spinal cord injury*, New York, 1985, Churchill Livingstone.)

Postural Drainage

Postural drainage with percussion and vibration may be necessary to aid in clearing secretions. Many facilities employ respiratory therapists who are responsible for these activities. However, the PT or PTA may be the health-care provider responsible for the patient's *bronchial hygiene* (removal of secretions). Postural drainage positions are outlined in Chapter 8.

Physical therapy plays an important role in teaching the patient assisted cough techniques. For patients who lack abdominal innervation, it is imperative to identify ways in which the patient can expel secretions. If the patient is unable to perform these assistive cough techniques independently, a caregiver or a family member should be instructed in the technique. These techniques are discussed in the next section. Maintaining good bronchial hygiene assists in the prevention of secondary complications, such as pneumonia.

Coughs

Coughs are classified into three different categories, based on the amount of force the individual is able to generate. *Functional coughs* are those that are strong enough to clear secretions. *Weak functional coughs* produce an adequate amount of force to clear the upper airways. *Nonfunctional coughs* are ineffective in clearing the airways of bronchial secretions (Wetzel, 1985).

Assisted Cough Techniques

Several methods are available to assist patients with the ability to cough. Depending on the patient's medical status, these techniques can be initiated in the acute-care setting or during the early phases of rehabilitation.

Technique 1

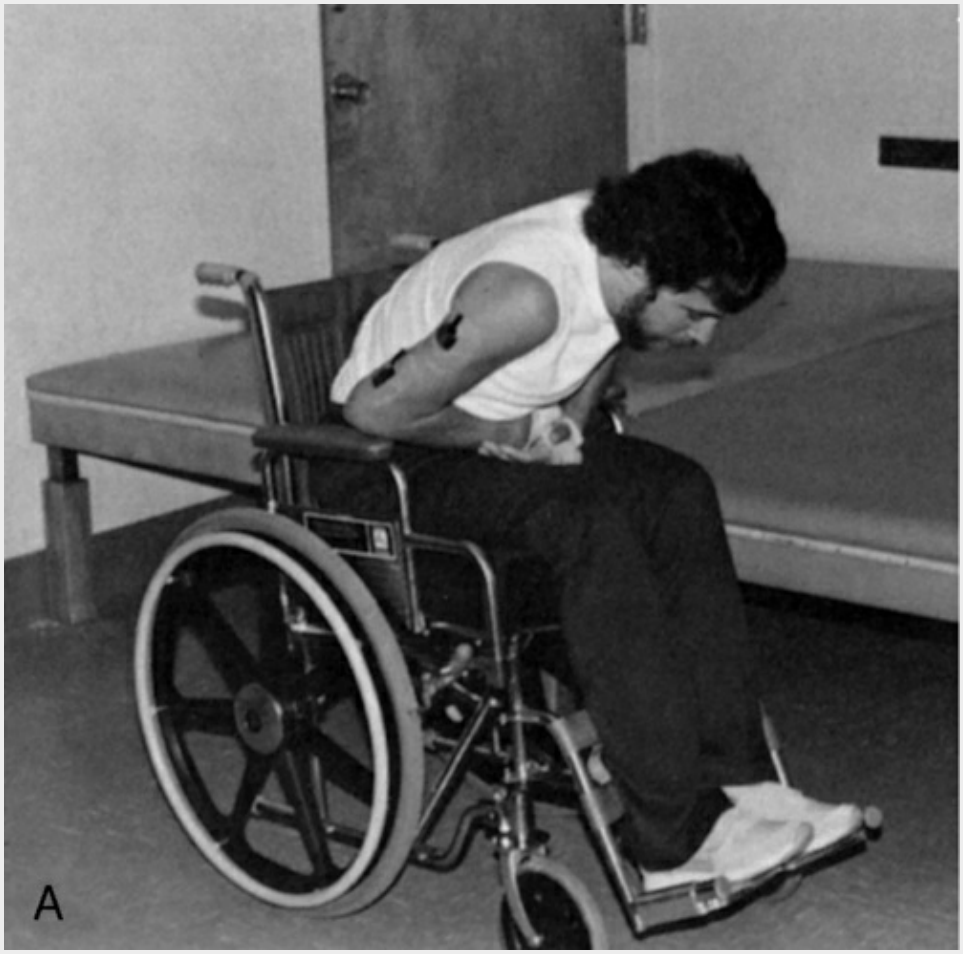
The patient inhales two or three times and, on the second or third inhalation, attempts to cough. Intrathoracic pressure increases which allows the patient to generate a greater force to expel secretions.

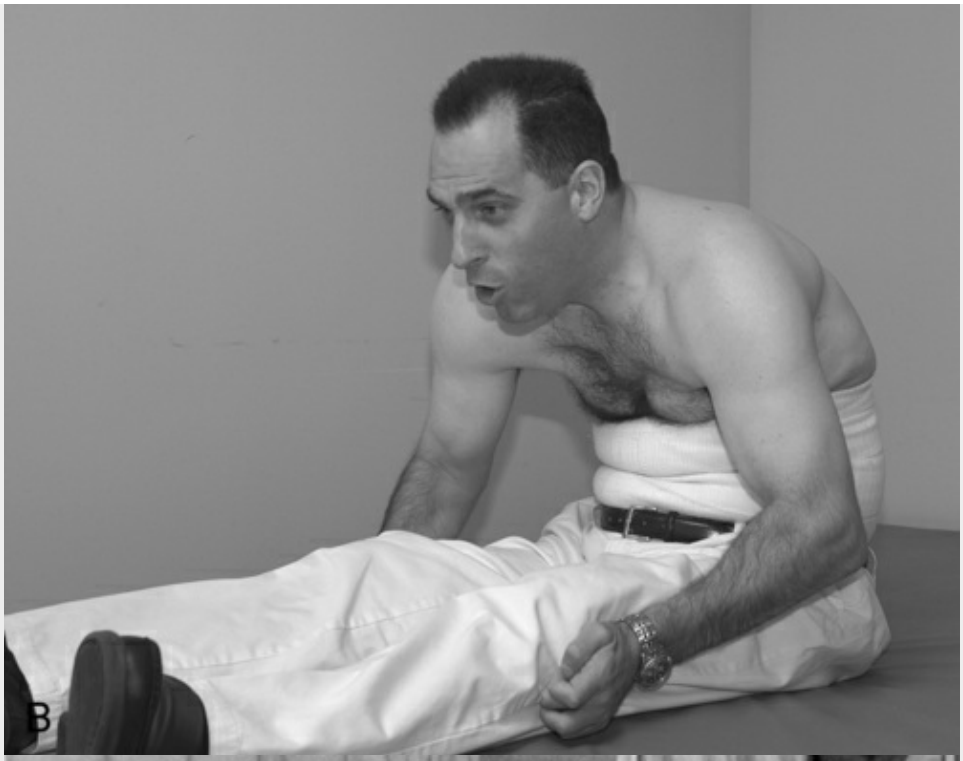
Technique 2

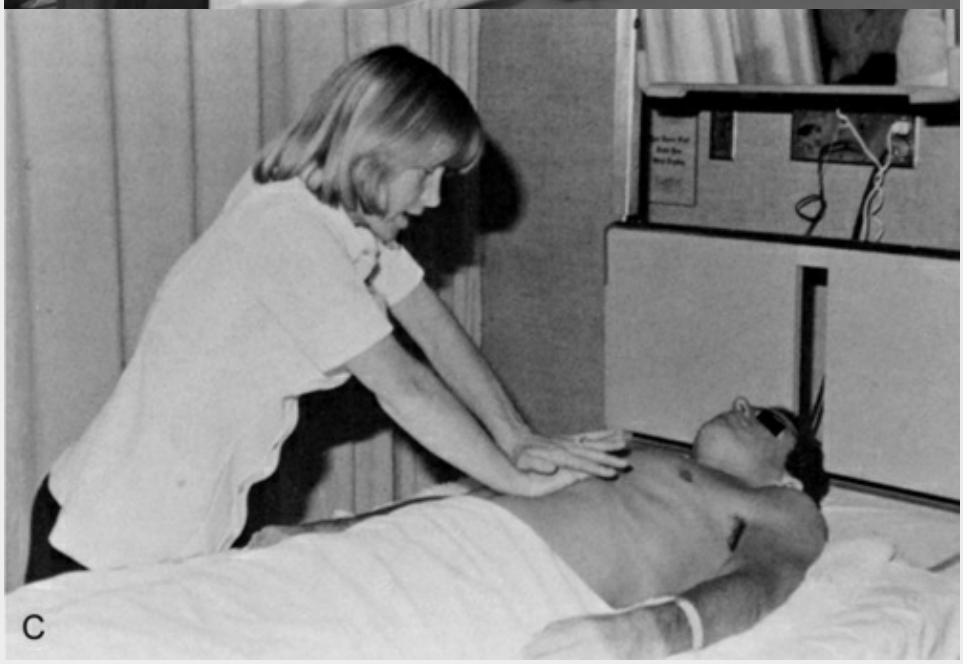
The patient places his or her forearms over the abdomen. As the patient tries to cough, the patient pulls downward with the upper extremities to assist with force production. This can be completed in either a supine or a sitting position. This technique can also be modified by having the patient fall toward his or her knees as he or she attempts to cough. This is illustrated in Intervention 12-2, *A*.

Intervention 12-2

Assistive Cough Techniques







A. Self-manual coughing by the patient.*
B. Assisted cough technique in long sitting.*
C. Assistive cough technique administered by the therapist.†

* (From Sisto SA, Druin E, Sliwinski MM: *Spinal cord injury: management and rehabilitation*, St Louis, 2009, Mosby.)
† (From Adkins HV, editor: *Spinal cord injury*, New York, 1985, Churchill Livingstone.)

Technique 3

In a prone-on-elbows position, the patient raises his or her shoulders, extends his or her neck, and inhales. As the patient coughs, the patient flexes the neck downward and leans onto the elbows.

Technique 4

If the patient is unable to master any of the previously mentioned assistive cough techniques, a caregiver can assist the patient with secretion expulsion. A modified Heimlich maneuver can be performed by placing the caregiver's hands on the patient's abdomen just below the rib cage and providing resistance in a downward-and-upward direction as the patient coughs (Intervention 12-2, *B*).

Range of Motion

Range-of-motion exercises are an important component of the early stage of rehabilitation. For patients with tetraplegia, stretching of the shoulders, elbows, wrists, and fingers is essential. Patients immobilized in a halo will be limited in their ability to perform active or passive range of motion of the shoulder. The halo vest sits over the patient's shoulders, thus limiting shoulder flexion and abduction to approximately 90 degrees. The following shoulder ranges of motion are necessary to maximize function in the patient with tetraplegia. Approximately 60 degrees of shoulder extension and 90 degrees of shoulder external rotation are desirable. The patient needs shoulder extension to perform transfers from supine to the long-sitting position. External rotation of the shoulder is needed so the patient can perform the elbow-locking maneuver to assume a sitting position. Full elbow extension is essential to ensure that the patient is able to use elbow locking for the long-sitting position and for transfers. Patients who lack innervation of the triceps (patients with C5 and C6 tetraplegia) use the elbow-locking mechanism to improve their functional potentials.

Adequate forearm pronation is necessary for feeding. Patients who lack finger function need 90 degrees of wrist extension. When an individual extends the wrist, passive insufficiency causes a subsequent flexing of the finger flexors referred to as *tenodesis* (Figure 12-8). Tenodesis can be used functionally to allow a patient to grip objects with built-up handles using passive or active wrist extension. As a result of this functional movement, stretching of the extrinsic finger flexors in combination with wrist extension should be avoided. If the finger flexors become overstretched, the patient will lose the ability to achieve a tenodesis grasp. Sitting on the mat with an open hand will overstretch the finger flexors. The patient should be encouraged to maintain the proximal interphalangeal joints and the distal interphalangeal joints in flexion. Overstretching of the thumb web space should also be avoided, because tightness in the thumb adductors and flexors allows the thumb to oppose the first and second fingers during tenodesis. Patients are then able to use the thumb as a hook for functional activities.

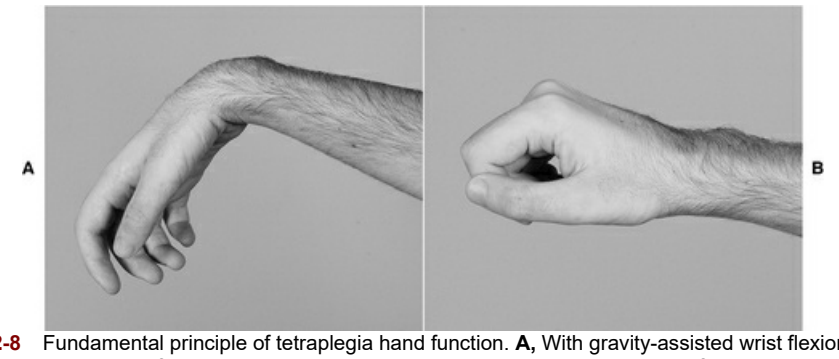


FIGURE 12-8 Fundamental principle of tetraplegia hand function. **A,** With gravity-assisted wrist flexion the fingers and thumb passively open for grasp. **B,** With volitional wrist extension, the thumb and fingers passively close for grasp. The tenodesis hand function provides sufficient force for light objects.

Once the halo is removed, clinicians should also avoid overstretching the cervical extensors. Stretching of the cervical extensors predisposes one to forward head posturing. This head position interferes with the patient's sitting balance and can limit the patient's respiratory capabilities by inhibiting the use of accessory muscles.

Passive Range of Motion

Passive range of motion must be performed to the lower extremities when they are paralyzed. Special attention must be given to the hamstrings. The desired amount of passive hamstring

flexibility needed to maintain a long-sitting position and to dress the lower extremities is 110 degrees, although the amount of hamstring range required depends on the length of the patient's upper and lower extremities. When stretching the lower extremities, the PTA should make sure that the patient's pelvis is stabilized so movement is from the hamstrings and not from the low back. Some tightness in the low-back musculature is desirable because this assists the patient with rolling, transfers, and maintenance of sitting positions. Tightness in the low back provides the patient with a certain degree of passive trunk stability. In addition, maintenance of a "tight" back and the presence of adequate hamstring flexibility prevents the patient from developing a posterior pelvic tilt that can lead to sacral sitting and pressure problems when sitting in the wheelchair.

Stretching of the hip extensors, flexors, and rotators is necessary because gravity and increased tone may predispose patients to contractures. Hip flexion range of 100 degrees is needed to perform transfers into and out of the wheelchair. The patient needs 45 degrees of hip external rotation for dressing the lower extremities. Early in rehabilitation, it may not be possible to position the patient in prone to stretch the hip flexors because of respiratory compromise. The prone position can inhibit the diaphragm's ability to work. However, as soon as the patient can safely maintain this position, it should be initiated. Stretching of the ankle plantar flexors is necessary to provide passive stability of the feet during transfers, to allow proper positioning of the feet on the wheelchair footrests, and to allow the use of orthoses if the patient will be ambulatory. Table 12-6 provides a review of passive range-of-motion requirements.

Table 12-6

Range-of-Motion Requirements

Movement	Range Needed
Shoulder extension	60°
Shoulder external rotation	90°
Elbow extension	Full elbow extension
Forearm pronation	Full forearm pronation
Forearm supination	Full forearm supination
Wrist extension	90°
Hip flexion	100°
Hip extension	10°
Hip external rotation	45°
Passive straight leg raising	110°
Knee extension	Full knee extension
Ankle dorsiflexion	To neutral

Caution

If the patient's cervical spine is unstable, passive range-of-motion exercises to the shoulders should be limited to 90 degrees of flexion and abduction to avoid possible movement of the cervical vertebrae. Instability in the lumbar spine requires that passive hip flexion be limited to 90 degrees with knee flexion and 60 degrees with the knees straight (Somers, 2010). Passive straight leg raising should be limited to ranges which do not produce movement (lifting of the pelvis). Once the spine is stabilized, more aggressive range-of-motion exercises can begin.

Strengthening Exercises

Strengthening exercises are another essential component of the patient's rehabilitation. During the acute phase, certain muscles must be strengthened cautiously to avoid stress at the fracture site and possible fatigue. Initially, muscles may need to be exercised in a gravity-neutralized (antigravity) position secondary to weakness. Intervention 12-3, *A* and *B*, illustrates triceps strengthening in a gravity-neutralized position. Application of resistance may be contraindicated in the muscles of the scapulae and shoulders in patients with tetraplegia and in the muscles of the hips and trunk in patients with paraplegia, depending on the stability of the fracture site. When the PT is designing the patient's plan of care, exercises that incorporate bilateral upper extremity movements are beneficial. For example, bilateral upper extremity exercises performed in a straight plane or in proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation patterns offer the patient many advantages. These types of exercises are often more efficiently performed and reduce the asymmetric forces applied to the spine during upper extremity exercises. Key muscles to be strengthened for patients with tetraplegia include the anterior deltoids, shoulder extensors, and biceps. Key muscles to be emphasized for patients with paraplegia include shoulder depressors, triceps, and latissimus dorsi.

Intervention 12-3

Triceps and Upper Extremity Strengthening

A and B. Triceps strengthening performed in the gravity-neutralized position. The patient's forearm must be carefully guarded. Weakness in the upper extremity may cause the patient's hand to flex toward her face.
C. Using a Velcro weight for additional resistance during triceps strengthening.
D. Using an elastic band for biceps strengthening.

During this early stage of rehabilitation, the PTA may use manual resistance as the primary means of strengthening weakened muscles. In addition, Velcro weights or elastic bands may be used (Intervention 12-3, *C* and *D*). As the patient progresses, these items may be left at the patient's bedside to allow the patient the opportunity to exercise at other times during the day. If you do decide to leave one of these items for the patient, make sure that the patient can apply the device independently. Often, when a patient has decreased hand function, applying one of these devices can be difficult. Fairly rigorous upper extremity exercises can be performed by patients with paraplegia. Barbells, exercise equipment, free weights, and elastic bands can be used for resistive exercise.

Acclimation to Upright

In addition to passive stretching and strengthening exercises, the patient should also begin sitting activities. Because of the initial trauma and secondary medical conditions, the patient may have been immobilized in a supine position for several days or weeks. As a consequence, the patient may experience orthostatic hypotension. Initially, nursing and physical therapy can work on raising the head of the patient's bed. One should monitor the patient's vital signs during the performance of upright activities. Baseline pulse, blood pressure, and respiration rates should be recorded. As stated previously, as long as the patient's blood pressure does not drop below 80/50 mm Hg, kidney perfusion is adequate (Finkbeiner and Russo, 1990). If the patient can tolerate sitting with the head

of the bed elevated, the patient can be progressed to sitting in a reclining wheelchair with elevating leg rests. Often, the patient is transferred to the wheelchair with a draw sheet or mechanical lift initially. Transfers into and out of hospital beds are often difficult, based on the height of the bed and the presence of a halo. As the patient is better able to tolerate sitting, the time and degree of elevation can be increased. The tilt table can also be used to acclimate the patient to the upright position (Figure 12-9).

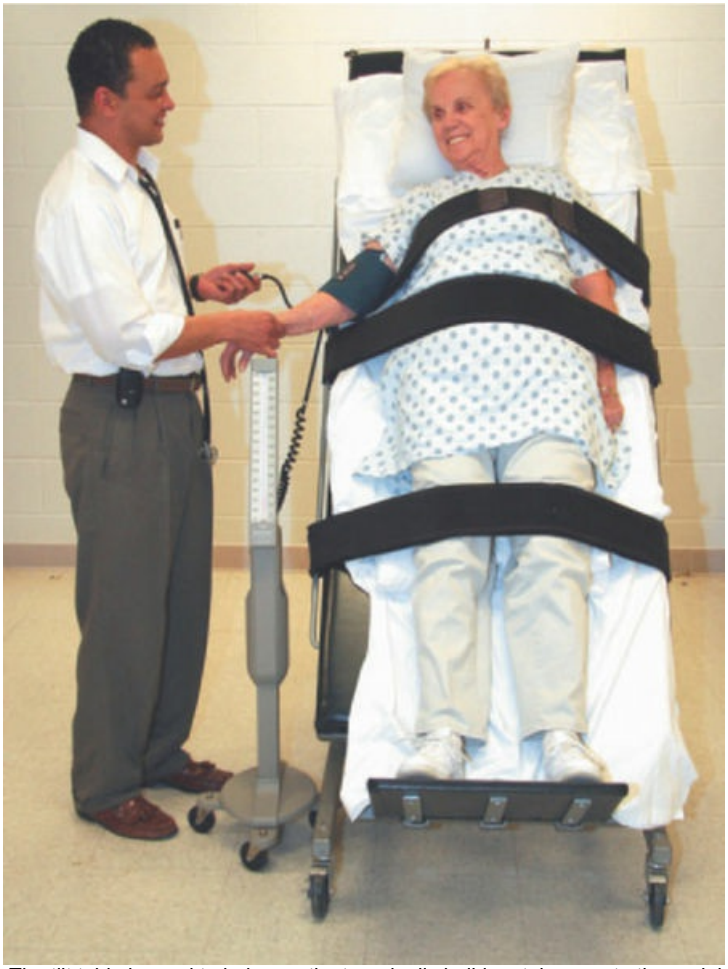


FIGURE 12-9 The tilt table is used to help a patient gradually build up tolerance to the upright position. (From Fairchild SL: *Pierson and Fairchild's principles and techniques of patient care*, ed 5. St. Louis, 2013, Elsevier.)

Weight bearing on the lower extremities has many therapeutic benefits, including reducing the effects of osteoporosis, assisting with bowel and bladder function, and decreasing abnormal muscle tone that may be present. To assist the patient with blood pressure regulation during any of these upright activities, it may be necessary to have the patient wear an abdominal binder, elastic stockings, or elastic wraps. The abdominal binder helps support the abdominal contents during upright activities by minimizing the effects of gravity. The top of the binder should cover the two lowest ribs, and the bottom portion should be placed over the patient's anterior superior iliac spines. The binder should be tighter more distally. Elastic wraps or elastic stockings assist the lower extremities with venous return in the absence of skeletal muscle action in the lower extremities. The patient should also be carefully monitored for possible autonomic dysreflexia during these early attempts at upright positioning.

Physical therapy interventions during inpatient rehabilitation

Once the patient is medically stable, the patient will likely be transferred to a comprehensive rehabilitation center. Most patients spend approximately 11 days in an acute care center. During the inpatient rehabilitation phase of the patient's recovery, the emphasis is on maximizing functional potential. The average length of stay for inpatient rehabilitation is approximately 36 days (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013). Activities that were initiated during the acute phase of recovery continue. Interventions should focus on maximizing respiratory function, range of motion, positioning, and strength of innervated muscles. Additional interventions are incorporated to assist the patient in the development of motor control, acquisition of self-care and functional activities including gait (if appropriate), therapeutic exercises to improve flexibility and overall fitness, patient and family education and training, and recommendations for equipment.

Physical Therapy Goals

The goals of intervention at this stage are many and variable. Much depends on the patient's level of innervation and resultant muscle capabilities. Examples of goals for this stage of the patient's recovery include the following:

1. Increased strength of key muscle groups
2. Independence in skin inspection and pressure relief
3. Increased passive range of motion of the hamstrings and shoulder extensors
4. Increased vital capacity
5. Increased tolerance to upright positioning in bed and the wheelchair
6. Independence in transfers or independence directing a caregiver
7. Independence in bed and mat mobility or independence directing a caregiver
8. Independence in wheelchair propulsion on level surfaces
9. Independence in the operation of a motor vehicle (if appropriate)
10. Return to home and school or work
11. Independence in a home exercise and fitness program
12. Patient and family education and instruction

Goals regarding ambulation may be appropriate, depending on the patient's motivation and motor level and the philosophy of the clinic and rehabilitation team.

Development of the Plan of Care

The primary PT is responsible for developing the patient's plan of care. The treatment interventions selected to achieve patient goals can be separated into two different approaches: *compensatory* and *restorative*. The compensatory approach is guided by the premise that the patient will learn new motor skills through the use of compensatory strategies including strengthening intact muscles; using muscle substitution, momentum, and principles, such as the head-hips relationship; and the incorporation of adaptive equipment and environmental modifications. Patients that are classified as AIS A or B (voluntary motor function is absent below the injury site) must utilize a compensatory approach to achieve functional skills. When using the restorative approach to SCI rehabilitation, the focus is on the patient's ability to use normal movement patterns in the acquisiton of functional skills. Relearning previous motor skills and limiting the use of compensatory strategies form the basis of the restorative approach. Functional gains can be achieved through the incorporation of either approach exclusively or in combination (Somers and Bruce, 2014; Somers, 2010).

In addition to mastery of functional skills, the PT will want to promote certain behaviors in the patient. Patients who have sustained SCIs must become active problem solvers. The patient needs to determine how to move using his or her remaining innervated muscles. The patient also needs to know what to do in emergency situations. For example, the patient must be able to direct someone if he or she should fall out of the wheelchair and is unable to transfer back into it. During the treatment session, tasks should be broken down into component parts, and the PTA should allow the patient to find solutions to the patient's movement problems. Patients should practice the activity in its entirety but must also work on the steps leading up to the completed activity. An

example is practicing the transition from a supine-on-elbows position to long sitting. Patients should also be taught to work in reverse. Once the patient has achieved the desired end position, the patient should practice moving out of that position and back to the start posture.

Patients who have sustained SCIs should experience success during rehabilitation. Activities to be selected should provide the patient with the opportunity to succeed. These tasks should be interspersed with activities that are challenging and difficult. Treatment activities selected should help the patient to develop a balance of skills between different postures and stages of motor control. The patient does not need to perfect movement in one postural set before attempting something more challenging. Finally, interventions within the plan of care should be varied. Examples of some of the different components of the patient's treatment plan that are possible include pool therapy, mat programs, functional mobility activities, group activities, and strengthening exercises.

Early Treatment Interventions

Mat Activities

Early in treatment, the patient should work on rolling. Learning to do this independently can assist with the prevention of pressure ulcers. As the patient practices rolling, the PTA can also work on the patient's achievement of the prone position. As stated previously, prone is an excellent position for pressure relief and stretching hip flexors. If the patient is wearing a halo, it will often be necessary for the PTA to help the patient with rolling. Prepositioning a wedge under the patient's chest is desirable when the patient is prone. If the patient does not have a halo, rolling can be facilitated in the following way:

Step 1. The patient should flex the head and neck and rotate the head from right to left.

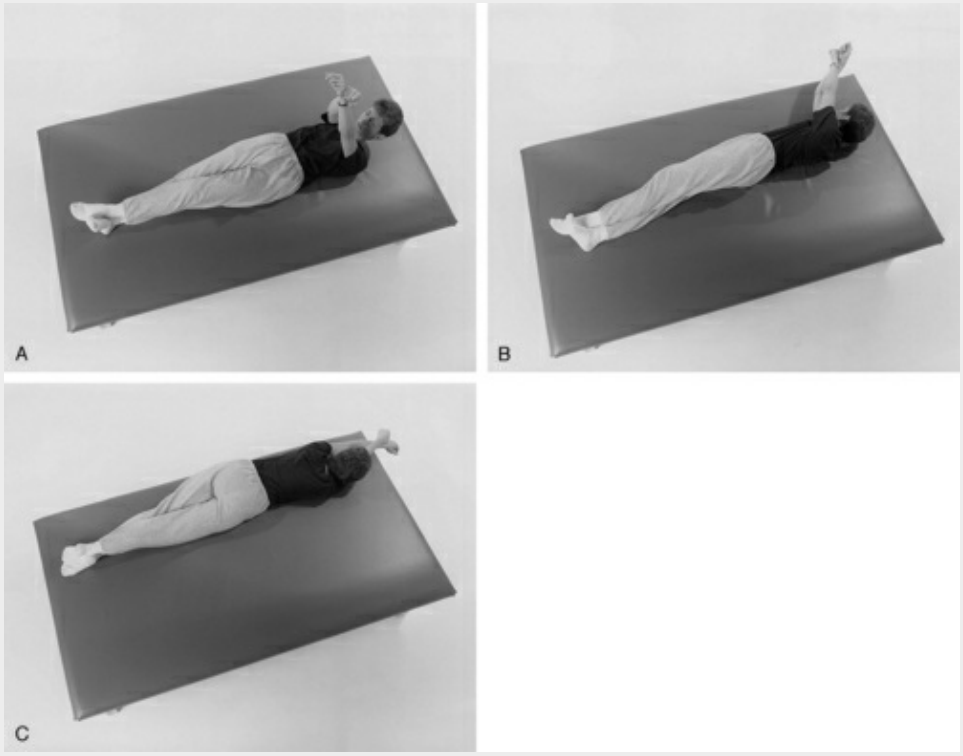
Step 2. With both upper extremities extended above the head (in approximately 90 degrees of shoulder flexion), the patient should move the upper extremities together from side to side.

Step 3. With momentum and on the count of three, the patient should flex and turn the head in the direction he or she wishes to roll while moving the arms in the same direction.

Step 4. To make it easier for the patient, the patient's ankles can be crossed at the start of the activity. This prepositioning allows the patient's lower extremities to move more easily. To roll to the left, you would cross the patient's right ankle over the left. Intervention 12-4 illustrates a patient who is completing the rolling sequence. Cuff weights applied to the patient's wrists can add momentum and can facilitate rolling.

Intervention 12-4

Rolling from Supine to Prone

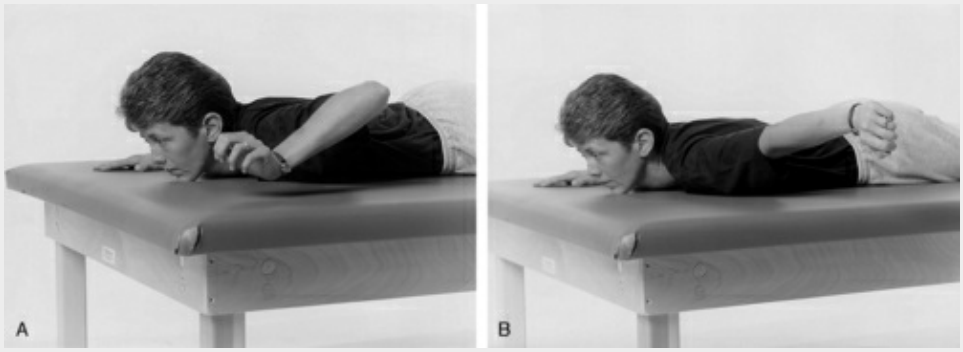


A. Rolling from supine to prone can be facilitated by having the patient flex her head and use upper extremity horizontal adduction for momentum. The patient's lower extremities should be crossed to unweight the hip to assist with rolling.
B and C. With momentum and on the count of three, the patient should flex and turn her head in the direction she wishes to roll while throwing her arms in the same direction.

Once the patient has rolled from supine to prone, strengthening exercises for the scapular muscles can also be performed. Shoulder extension, shoulder adduction, and shoulder depression with adduction are three common exercises that can be performed to strengthen the scapular stabilizers. Intervention 12-5 shows a patient performing these types of exercises.

Intervention 12-5

Scapular Strengthening



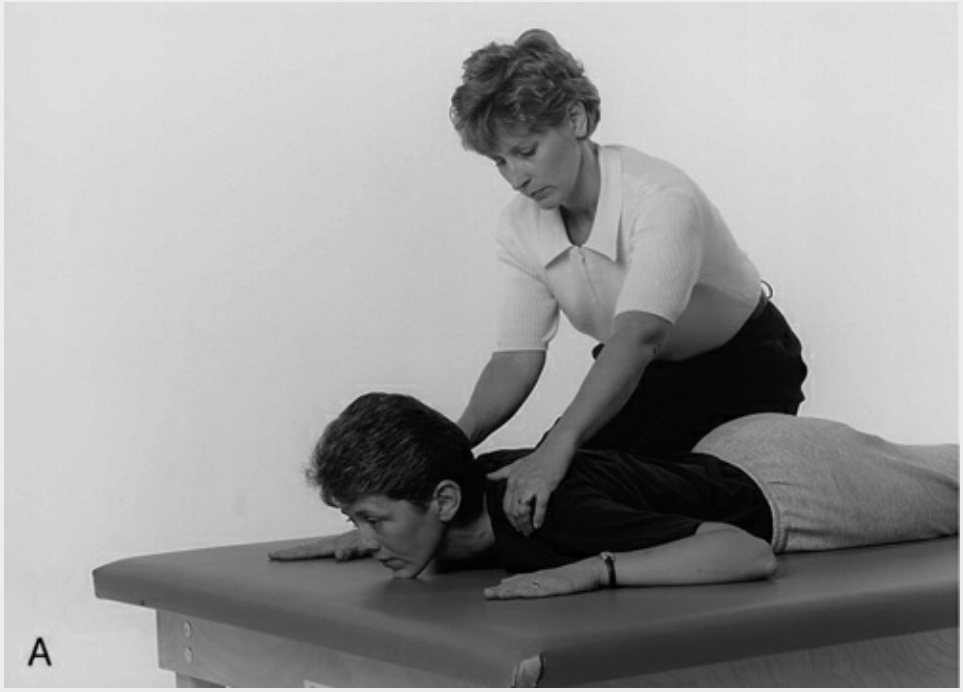
Scapular-strengthening exercises can be performed in a prone position.

Prone

From the prone position, the patient can attempt to assume a prone-on-elbows position. Prone on elbows is a beneficial position because it facilitates head and neck control, as well as requiring proximal stability of the glenohumeral joint and scapular muscles. For the patient to attain the prone-on-elbows position, the PTA may need to help. The PTA can place his or her hands under the patient's shoulders anteriorly and lift them (Intervention 12-6, *A*). As the patient's chest is lifted, the PTA should move his or her hands posteriorly to the patient's shoulder or scapular region. If the patient is to attempt achievement of the position independently, the patient should be instructed to place his or her elbows close to the trunk, hands near his or her shoulders. The patient is then instructed to push the elbows down into the mat while lifting his or her head and upper trunk. To position the elbows under the shoulders, the patient needs to shift weight from one side to the other to move the elbows into correct alignment. This is accomplished by movement of the head to the right or the left. The PTA can facilitate weight shifts in the appropriate direction during these activities (Intervention 12-6, *B*).

Intervention 12-6

Prone to Prone on Elbows



A. The assistant may need to help the patient achieve the prone on elbows position.
B. Weight shifting from one side to the other allows the patient to move her elbows into correct alignment.

Prone on Elbows

Before beginning activities in the prone-on-elbows position, the patient needs to assume the correct alignment, as shown in Figure 12-10. The patient should also try to keep the scapulae slightly adducted and downwardly rotated to counteract the natural tendency to hang on the shoulder ligaments. The PTA may need to provide the patient with manual cues on the scapulae to maintain the correct position. Downward approximation applied through the shoulders or tapping to the rhomboids is often necessary to increase scapular stability. Approximation promotes tonic holding of the muscles. In the prone-on-elbows position, the patient should practice weight shifting to the right, left, forward, and backward. The patient should be encouraged to maintain good alignment and to avoid shoulder sagging as he or she performs exercises in this position.

FIGURE 12-10 The elbows should be positioned directly under the shoulders when the patient is in prone on elbows. The physical therapist assistant is applying a downward force (approximation) through the shoulder to promote tonic holding and stabilization of the shoulder musculature.

Once the patient can maintain the position, he or she can progress to other exercises that will increase proximal control and stability. Alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization can be performed. To perform alternating isometrics, the patient should be instructed to hold the desired position as the PTA applies manual resistance to the right or left, forward or backward. Intervention 12-7, *A*, illustrates this exercise. With rhythmic stabilization, the patient performs simultaneous isometric contractions of agonist and antagonist patterns as the therapist provides a rotational force. Intervention 12-7, *B*, shows a PTA who is performing this activity with a patient. Other activities that can be performed in a prone-on-elbows position include lifting one arm, unilateral reaching activities, and serratus strengthening (Intervention 12-8, *A*). To strengthen the serratus, the patient is instructed to push her elbows down into the mat and to tuck the chin while lifting and rounding the shoulders. For patients with paraplegia, the PTA can provide instruction on prone push-ups, as depicted in Intervention 12-8, *B*.

Intervention 12-7

Alternating Isometrics and Rhythmic Stabilization

A. The physical therapist assistant is performing alternating isometrics with the patient in a prone-on-elbows position. Force is being applied in a posterior direction as the patient is asked to hold the position.
B. Rhythmic stabilization performed in a prone-on-elbows position. The physical therapist assistant is applying simultaneous isometric contractions to both agonists and antagonists. As the patient holds the position, a gradual counterrotational force is applied.

Intervention 12-8

Other Scapular-Strengthening Exercises

A. The patient reaches for a functional object. The physical therapist assistant stabilizes the weight-bearing shoulder to prevent collapse.
B. The patient with paraplegia performs a prone press-up.

Prone to Supine

From a prone-on-elbows position, the patient can transition back to supine. The patient shifts weight onto one elbow and extends and rotates his or her head in the same direction. As he or she does this, the patient "throws" the unweighted upper extremity behind. The momentum created by this maneuver facilitates rolling back to a supine position.

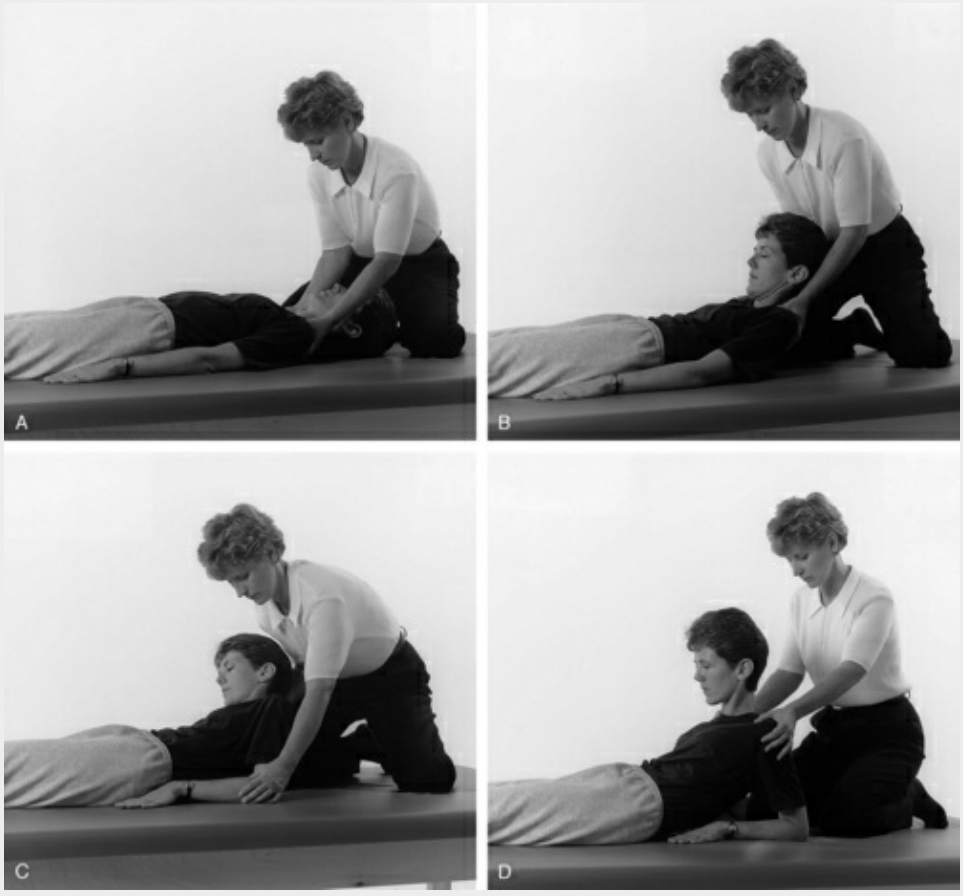
Supine on Elbows

The purpose of the supine-on-elbows position is to assist the patient with bed mobility and to prepare him or her for the attainment of long sitting. Patients with innervation at the C5 and C6

levels may need assistance to achieve the supine on elbows position. Intervention 12-9 depicts a PTA helping a patient make the transition from supine to the supine-on-elbows position. Several different techniques can be used to assist the patient in learning to achieve this position. A pillow or bolster placed under the upper back can assist the patient with this activity. This technique helps acclimate the patient to the position and assists the patient with stretching the anterior shoulder capsule. As the patient is able to assume more independence with the transition from a supine position to supine on elbows, the PTA can have the patient hook his or her thumbs into his or her pockets or belt loops or position the hands under the buttocks. Intervention 12-10 illustrates this approach. As the patient does this, he or she stabilizes with one arm as he or she pulls back with the other, using the reverse action of the biceps. The PT or PTA may need to position the patient's arms at the end of the movement. Once the patient is in the supine-on-elbows position, work can begin on strengthening the shoulder extensors and scapular adductors. Activities to accomplish this include weight shifting in the position, transitioning back to prone, and progressing to long sitting. Supine pull-ups can also be practiced. While the patient is in a supine position, the PTA holds the patient's supinated forearms in front of the body and has the patient pull up into a modified sit-up position. This exercise helps strengthen both the shoulder flexors and the biceps. From supine on elbows, the patient can roll to prone by shifting weight onto one elbow, looking in the same direction, and reaching across the body with the other upper extremity. This maneuver provides the patient with another option to achieve the prone position.

Intervention 12-9

Supine to Supine on Elbows

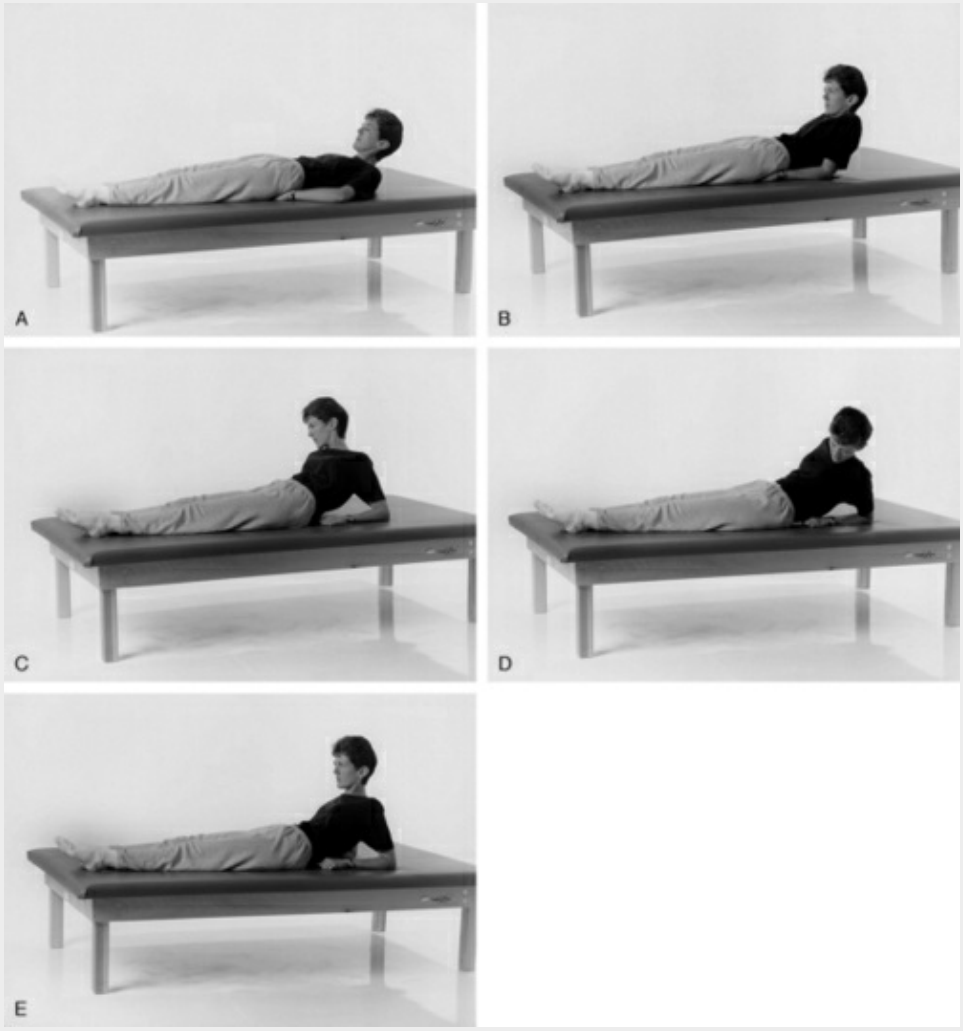


A. The patient flexes her head to initiate the activity.
B. With her hands on the patient's shoulders, the physical therapist assistant helps to lift the patient's upper trunk.

C. The head is used to initiate a weight shift to the right so that the left elbow can be unweighted and brought back.
D. The final position.

Intervention 12-10

Independent Supine to Supine on Elbows



A. The patient prepositions her hands under her buttocks.
B. The patient flexes her neck.
C and D. Using her head to initiate the weight shift, the patient pulls her elbows back.
E. The final position.

Long Sitting

Long sitting can also be achieved from a supine-on-elbows position. Long sitting is sitting with both upper and lower extremities extended and is a functional posture for patients with tetraplegia. This position allows patients with C7 innervation a position in which they can perform lower extremity dressing, skin inspection, and self–range of motion. It may be necessary for the assistant to help the patient achieve the position initially. The technique to assume long sitting is as follows:

Step 1. In the supine-on-elbows position, the patient shifts her weight to one side. The patient's head should follow the movement (Intervention 12-11, *A* and *B*).

Intervention 12-11

Supine on Elbows to the Long-Sitting Position

A and B. In supine on elbows, the patient shifts her weight to one side by moving the head in that direction.
C. With her weight on one elbow, the patient throws her other upper extremity behind her buttocks into extension and external rotation.
D. Once the weight is shifted onto the extremity, the elbow is biomechanically locked into extension because of the bony alignment of the joint when it is positioned in shoulder external rotation and then depressed.
E. The patient shifts her weight back to the midline.

F. Once the patient has the elbow locked on one side, she repeats the motion with the other upper extremity.
G. The final position.

Step 2. With the weight on one elbow, the patient throws her other upper extremity behind the buttocks into shoulder extension and external rotation (Intervention 12-11, *C*). Once the hand makes contact with the surface, the shoulder is quickly elevated and then depressed to maintain the elbow in extension. The elbow is locked biomechanically (Intervention 12-11, *D* and *E*).
Step 3. The patient shifts her weight back to the midline (Intervention 12-11, *E*).
Step 4. Once the patient has the elbow locked on one side, she repeats the motion with the other upper extremity (Intervention 12-11, *F* and *G*).

Special note

The fingers should be maintained in flexion (tenodesis) during performance of functional activities to avoid overstretching the finger flexors. This is illustrated in Intervention 12-11, *F* and *G*.

Initially, the PTA may need to help the patient with the movement and placement of the upper extremities. Patients who lack the necessary range of motion in their shoulders have difficulty in performing this maneuver. As mentioned earlier, patients who have developed elbow flexion contractures are not able to achieve and maintain this position because of their inability to extend their elbows passively.

Patients who do not possess at least 90 to 100 degrees of passive straight leg raising should refrain from performing long-sitting activities. Failure to possess adequate hamstring range of motion causes patients to overstretch the low back and ultimately decrease their functional abilities.

Patients with injuries at C7 and below also use the long-sitting position. However, it is easier for these patients because they possess triceps innervation and may be able to maintain active elbow extension. Once the patient has achieved the long-sitting position with the elbows anatomically locked and is comfortable in the position, additional treatment activities can be practiced. Manual resistance can be applied to the shoulders to foster cocontraction around the shoulder joint and to promote scapular stability. Rhythmic stabilization and alternating isometrics are also useful to improve stability. If the patient has triceps innervation, the PTA will want to work with the patient on the ability eventually to sit in a long-sitting position without upper extremity support (Figure 12-11). The patient moves his or her hands from behind the hips, to the hips, and finally to forward at the knees. Hamstring range is essential for the patient to be able to perform this transition safely. Once the patient can place his or her hands in front of the hips and close to the knees, he or she can try maintaining the position with only one hand for support and eventually with no hands. In this position, the patient learns to perform self–range of motion and self-care activities. The PTA guards the patient carefully during the performance of this activity. In addition, the patient's *vital signs* should be monitored to minimize the possibility of orthostatic hypotension or autonomic dysreflexia.

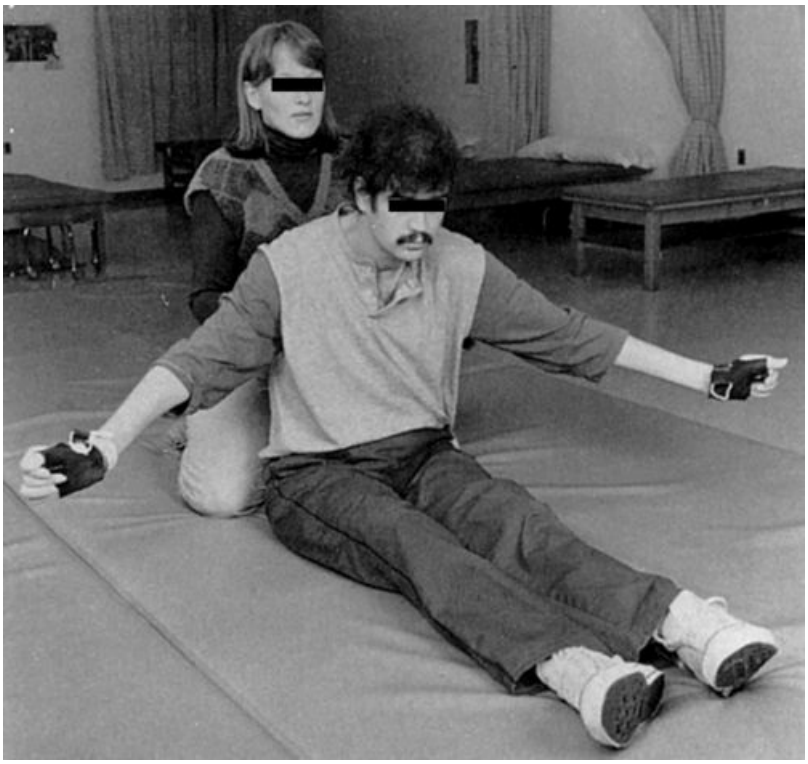
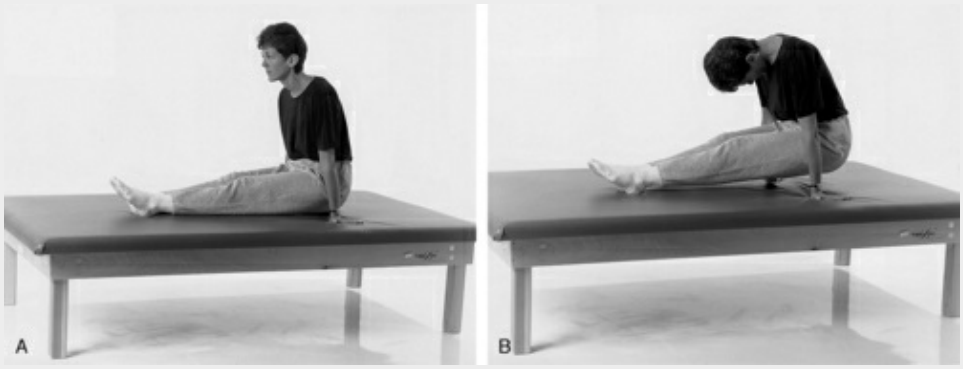


FIGURE 12-11 Balance activities should always be emphasized in the long-sitting position to prepare the patient for numerous functional activities. (From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

A goal for the patient with triceps function is to do a push-up with the upper extremities in a long-sitting position (Intervention 12-12). This activity usually requires that the patient have at least fair-plus strength in the triceps. To complete the movement, the patient straightens the elbows and depresses the shoulders to lift the buttocks. The patient flexes the head and upper trunk to facilitate a greater rise of the buttocks. Tightness in the low back also allows this to occur. The patient uses this technique *(the head-hips relationship)* to move around on the mat. This relationship is a compensatory strategy that patients use to complete functional activities. This phenomenon is illustrated when a patient moves the head in one direction and the hips move directly opposite (Somers, 2010). Upper extremity push-ups are also used for transfers in and out of the wheelchair and as a means for the patient to perform independent pressure relief.

Intervention 12-12

Push-Up in the Long-Sitting Position



The patient uses the head-hips relationship to assist with lifting the buttocks.

Transfers

Transfers into and out of the wheelchair are an important skill for the patient with a SCI. Patients with high cervical injuries (C1 through C4 level) are completely dependent in their transfers. A two-person lift, a dependent sit-pivot transfer, or a Hoyer lift must be used.

Preparation Phase

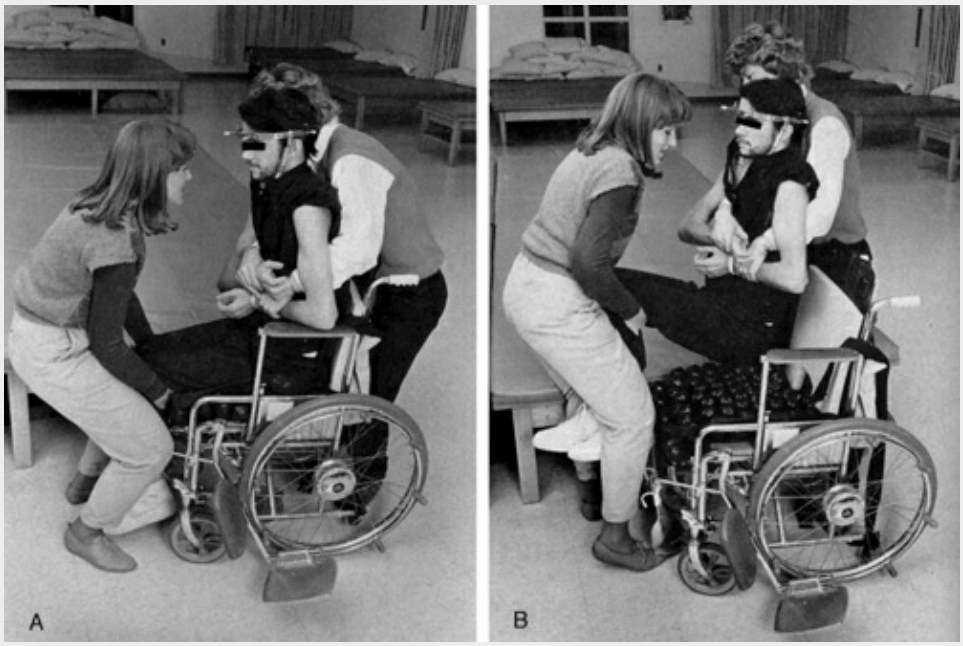
Before the transfer, the patient and the wheelchair must be positioned in the correct place. The wheelchair should be positioned parallel to the mat or the bed. The brakes must be locked and the wheelchair leg rests removed. A gait belt must be applied to the patient before the PTA begins the activity.

Two-Person Lift

A two-person lift may be necessary for the patient with high tetraplegia. This type of transfer is illustrated in Intervention 12-13.

Intervention 12-13

Two-Person Lift



Care must be taken so that the patient's buttocks clear the wheel during the two-person lift. Good body mechanics are equally important for the individuals assisting with this type of transfer.

(From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

Sit-Pivot Transfer

The technique for a dependent sit-pivot transfer is as follows:

Step 1. The patient must be forward in the wheelchair to perform the transfer safely. The PTA shifts the patient's weight from side to side to move the patient forward. Often, placing one's hands under the patient's buttocks in the area of the ischial tuberosities is the best way to assist the patient with weight shifting. The PTA must monitor the position of the patient's trunk carefully as he or she performs this maneuver because the patient does not possess adequate trunk control to maintain the trunk upright. Once the patient is forward in the wheelchair, the armrest closest to the mat or bed should be removed.

Step 2. The PTA then flexes the patient's trunk over the patient's feet. The PTA brings the patient

forward over his or her hip that is farther away from the wheelchair. This maneuver allows the PTA to be close to the area where most individuals carry the greatest amount of body weight. The PTA also guards the patient's knees between his or her knees.

Step 3. A second person should be positioned on the mat table or behind the patient to assist with moving the patient's posterior hips and trunk.

Step 4. On a specified count, the PTA positioned in front of the patient shifts the patient's weight forward and moves the patient's hips and buttocks to the transfer surface. The position of the patient's feet must also be monitored to avoid possible injury. Generally, prepositioning the feet in the direction that the patient will assume at the end of the transfer is beneficial.

Step 5. Once the patient is on the mat, the PTA who is in front of the patient aligns the patient to an upright position. The assistant does not, however, take his or her hands off the patient because of the patient's lack of trunk control. Without necessary physical assistance, a patient with tetraplegia could lose balance and fall. Intervention 12-14 shows a PTA performing a sit-pivot transfer with a patient.

Intervention 12-14

Sit-Pivot Transfer

A. The physical therapist assistant helps the patient to scoot forward in the wheelchair.
B. The patient is flexed forward over the physical therapist assistant's hip.
C. The patient's hips and buttocks are moved to the transfer surface.

Modified Stand-Pivot Transfer

A modified stand-pivot transfer can also be used with some patients who have incomplete injuries and lower extremity innervation. Additionally, patients with lower extremity extensor tone may be able to perform a modified stand-pivot transfer. The steps in completion of this transfer are similar to the ones described earlier and the techniques discussed in Chapter 10. Intervention 12-15 illustrates this type of transfer.

Intervention 12-15

Modified Stand-Pivot Transfer

Leverage principles and good body mechanics facilitate this stand-pivot transfer. The patient may assist with this transfer by holding her arms around the person who is completing the transfer.

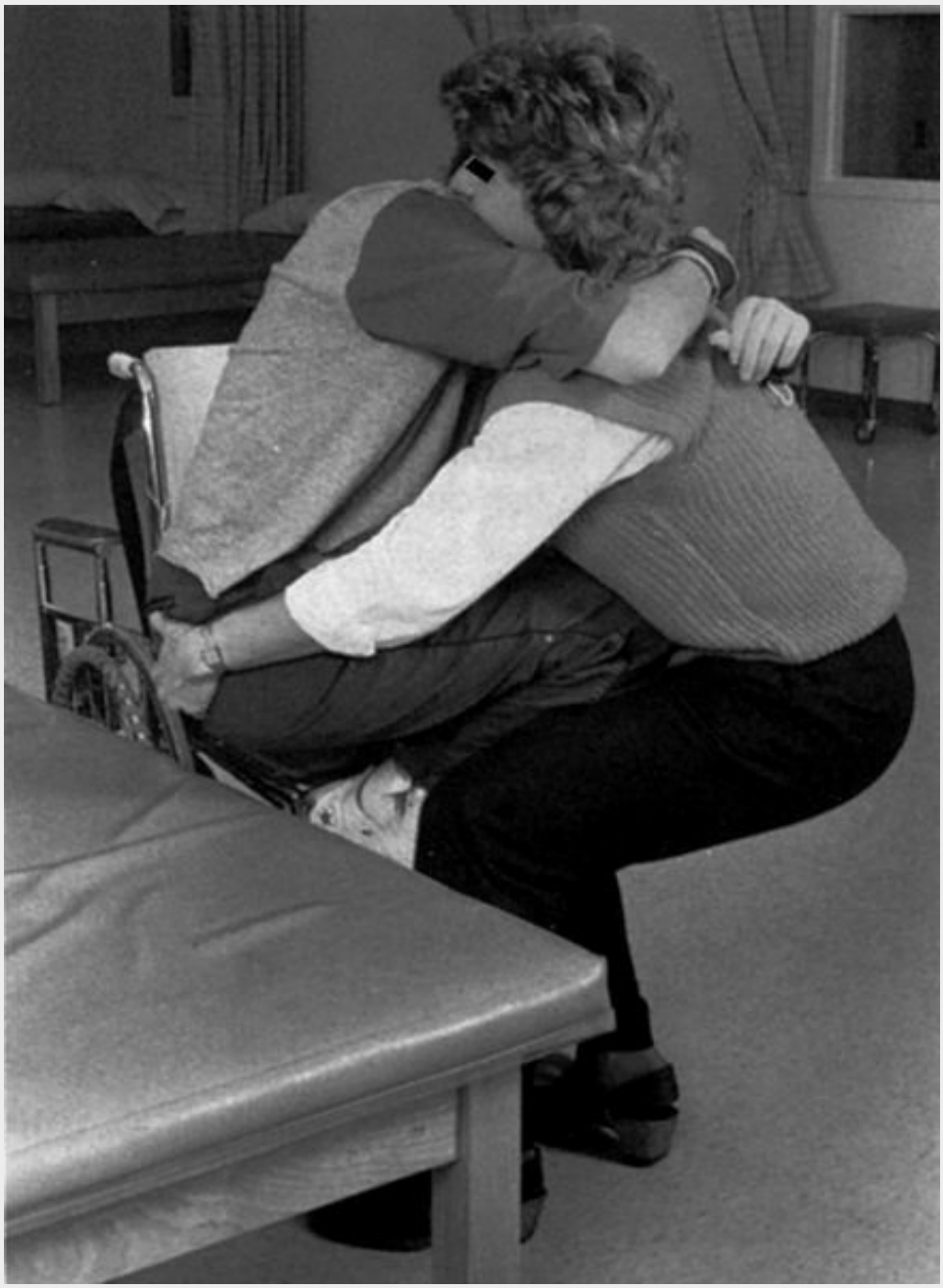
(From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

Airlift

The airlift transfer is depicted in Intervention 12-16 and may be the preferred type of transfer for patients with significant lower extremity extensor tone. The patient's legs are flexed and rest on the clinician's thighs. The patient is then rocked out of the wheelchair and moved to the transfer surface. The therapist must maintain proper body mechanics and lift with her legs to avoid possible injury to the low back. This type of transfer is often preferred because it prevents shear forces on the buttocks.

Intervention 12-16

Airlift Transfer



In the airlift transfer, the patient's flexed legs rest on or between the therapist's thighs. The patient can be "rocked" out of the chair and lifted onto the bed or mat. The patient's weight is carried through the therapist's legs and not the back.

(From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

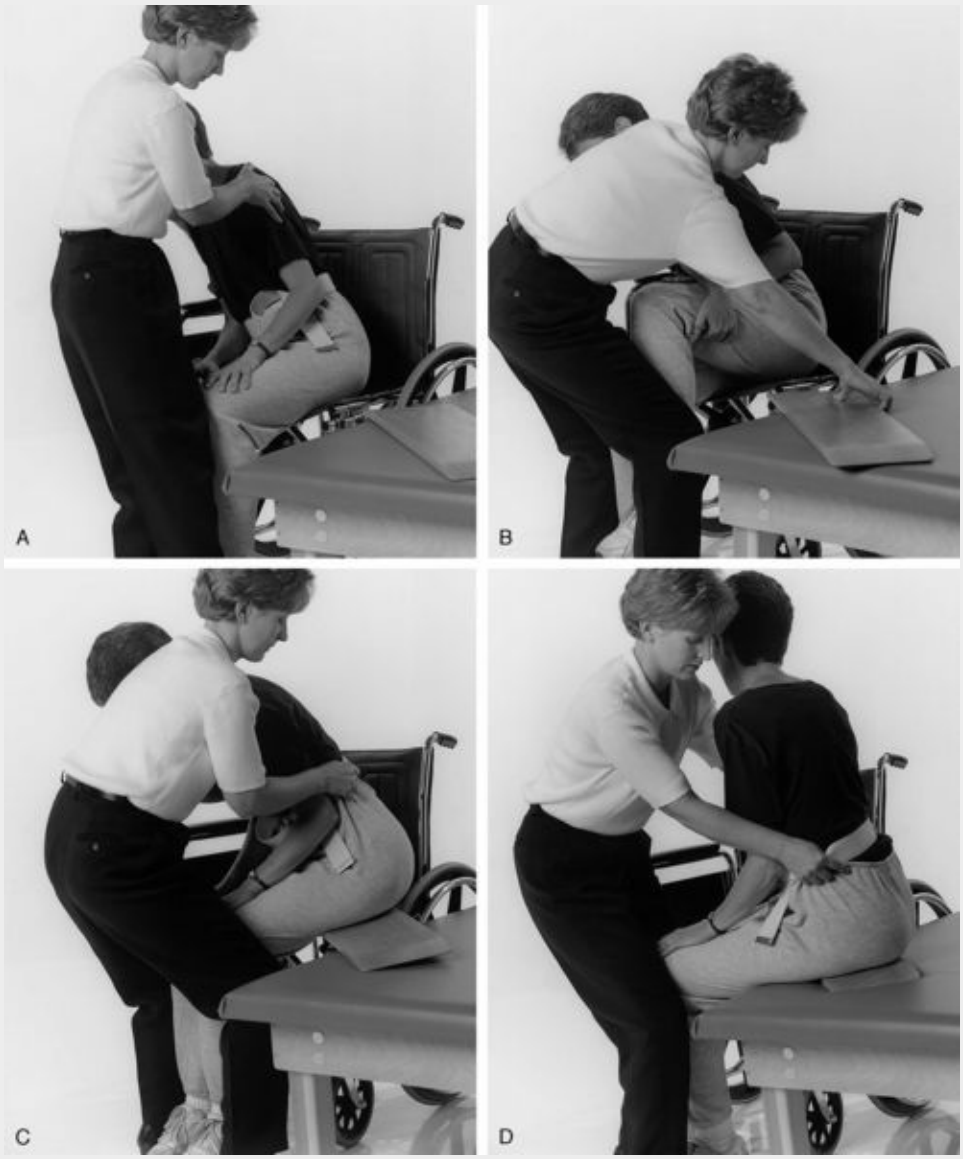
Sliding Board Transfers

A sliding board can also be used to assist with transfers. The chair should be prepositioned as close as possible to the transfer surface and at approximately a 30-degree angle. As the patient's trunk is flexed forward over his or her knees, the PTA can place the sliding board under the patient's hip that is closer to the mat table. The PTA may need to lift up the patient's buttocks to assist with board placement. Clinicians must be aware of the patient's active trunk control. Many of these individuals are not able to maintain their trunks in an upright position. Once the board is in the proper position, it helps support the patient's body weight during the transfer. The board also provides the patient's skin some protection during the transfer. The patient's buttocks may be bumped or scraped on various wheelchair parts. This can be dangerous to the patient and can lead

to skin breakdown. Intervention 12-17 illustrates a patient who is performing a sliding board transfer with the help of the PTA.

Intervention 12-17

Sliding Board Transfer



A. The patient's weight is shifted to the side farther away from the transfer surface.
B. The patient's thigh is lifted to position the board. The physical therapist assistant remains in front of the patient, blocking the patient's lower extremities and trunk.
C and D. The patient is transferred over to the support surface.

Special note

Although patients with high cervical injuries are not able to physically assist in the transfer, the patient must be able to verbally direct caregivers in the completion of the task.

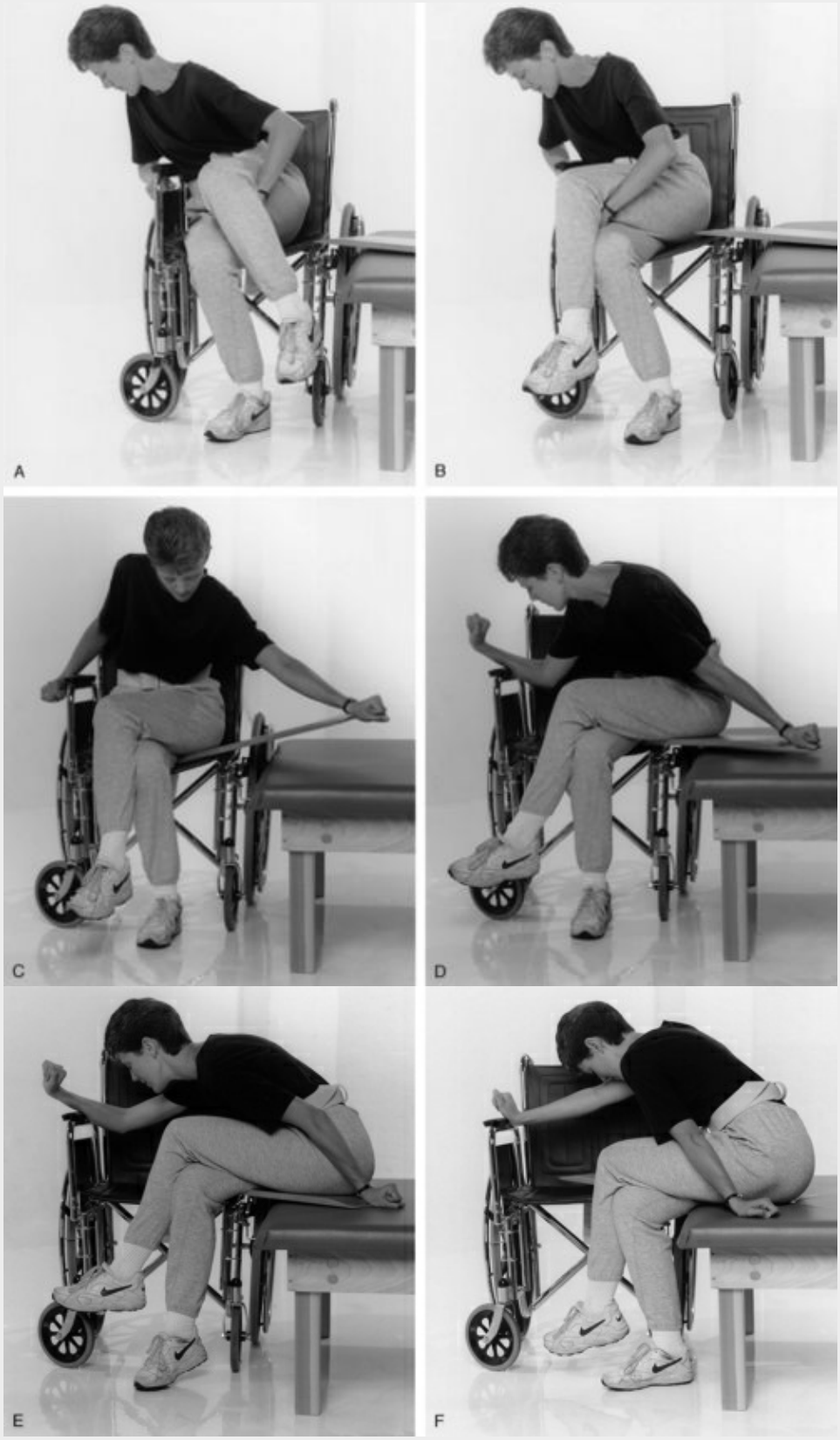
A patient with C6 tetraplegia has the potential to transfer independently using a sliding board.

Although the patient has the potential for this type of independence, patients with C6 tetraplegia often use the assistance of a caregiver or a family member because of the time and energy involved with transfers. To be independent with sliding board transfers from the wheelchair, the patient must be able to manipulate the wheelchair parts and position the sliding board. Extensions applied to the wheelchair's brakes are common and allow the patient to use wrist movements to maneuver these wheelchair parts. Leg rests and armrests may also be equipped with these extensions to provide the patient with a mechanism to negotiate these wheelchair parts independently. In an effort to prevent the development of upper extremity overuse injuries, patients should be instructed to limit the numbers of transfers they perform each day and avoid extremes of joint range (Somers, 2010).

To position the board, the patient can use tightness in the finger flexors to move the board to the proper location. The patient can also place his or her wrist at the end of the board and use wrist extension to move the board to the right place. Placement of the sliding board under the buttocks can be facilitated by lifting the leg up. Loops can be sewn onto the patient's pants to make this easier. Once the board is in position, the patient can reposition the lower extremities (Intervention 12-18).

Intervention 12-18

Independent Sliding Board Transfer



A. and B. The patient prepares to position the sliding board by moving the leg closest to the mat table over the other leg.
C. The patient positions the sliding board under the buttock of the leg closest to the mat table.
D. Pushing with the forearm closest to the wheelchair armrest and pushing down against the sliding board, the patient lifts herself off of the wheelchair seat.

E. The patient then slides her buttocks down the length of the board until she is on the table.
F. Continuing to push off the wheelchair arm and using the other arm on the mat table, the patient scoots off the board and onto the table itself.

Several different transfer techniques can be used for the patient with C6 tetraplegia. When working with a patient at this level, one must find the easiest method of transfer for the individual. Trial and error and having the patient engage in active problem solving to complete movement tasks are best. Too often, PTs and PTAs provide patients with all the answers to their movement questions. If a patient is allowed to experiment and try some things on his or her own with supervision, the results are often better.

Prone-on-Elbows Transfer

The modified prone-on-elbows transfer is one method the patient may employ. The patient with C6 tetraplegia rotates his or her head and trunk to the opposite direction of the transfer while still in the wheelchair. Once the patient is in this position, he or she flexes both elbows and places them on the wheelchair armrest. The patient then flexes his or her trunk forward and pushes down on the upper extremities, thus scooting over onto the mat or bed. Some patients may also use the head to assist with the transfer. The patient can place her forehead on the armrest to provide additional trunk stability while attempting to move from the wheelchair. Once the patient is on the mat table, he or she hooks the arm under the knee and uses the sternal fibers of the pectoralis major to extend the trunk.

Rolling Out of the Wheelchair

After removing the wheelchair armrest, the patient rotates the trunk to the mat table. The patient then positions the lower extremities onto the support surface. The patient can use the back of his or her hand or Velcro loops attached to his or her pants to lift the lower extremities up and onto the support surface. Once the patient's lower extremities are up on the bed, the patient actually rolls out of the wheelchair. The patient can move to a side-lying position or can roll all the way over to a prone-on-elbows position.

Lateral Push-Up Transfer

If the patient possesses triceps function, the potential for independent transfers with and without the sliding board is greatly enhanced. As stated earlier, a patient with a C7 injury and good triceps strength should be able to perform a lateral push-up transfer without a sliding board. Initially, when instructing a patient in this type of transfer, the PTA should use a sliding board. The patient positions the board under the posterior thigh. With both upper extremities in a relatively extended position, the patient pushes down with his or her arms and lifts the buttocks up off the sliding board. The patient's feet and lower extremities should be prepositioned before the start of the transfer. Both feet should be placed on the floor and rotated away from the direction of the transfer. The patient moves slowly, using the board as a place to rest if necessary. As the strength in the patient's upper extremities improves, the patient will be able to complete the transfer faster and will not need to use the sliding board. Patients with high-level paraplegia also perform lateral push-up transfers. Not until a patient possesses fair strength in the lower extremities are stand-pivot transfers possible.

Intermediate Treatment Interventions

Mat Activities

A major component of the patient's plan of care at this stage of rehabilitation includes mat activities. Mat activities are chosen to assist the patient in increasing strength and in improving functional mobility skills. The functional mobility activities previously described, including rolling, supine to prone, supine to long sitting, and prone to supine, continue to be practiced until the patient masters the tasks. Other, more advanced mat activities are now discussed in more detail.

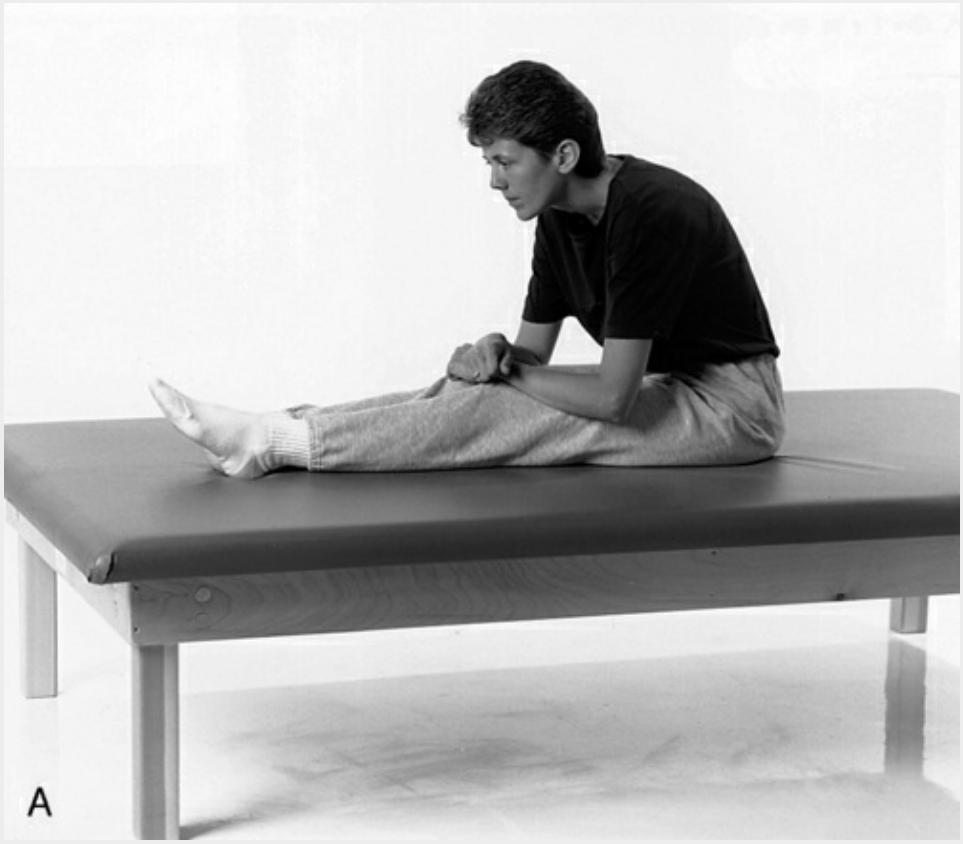
Independent Self–Range of Motion

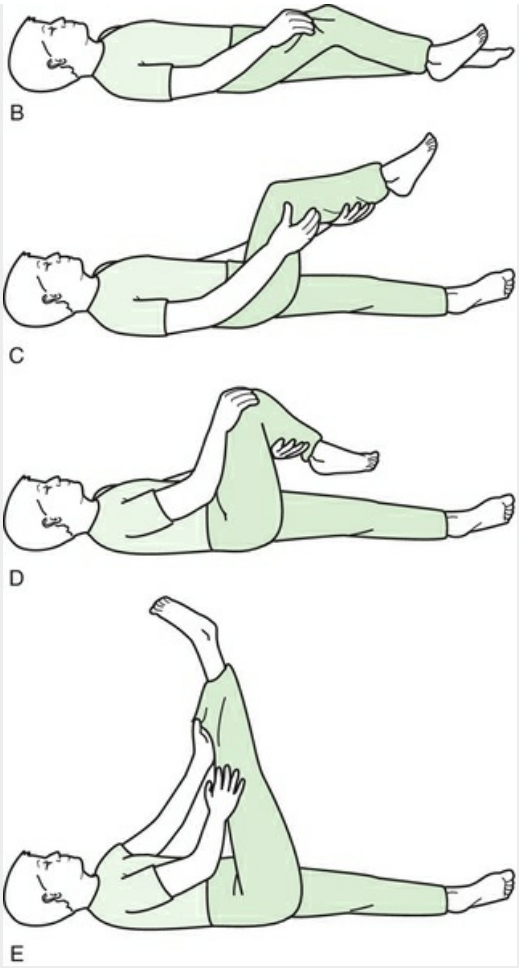
A patient with C7 tetraplegia should also be instructed in self–range of motion to the lower

extremities. Assuming long sitting without upper extremity support is a prerequisite for becoming independent in self–range of motion. The first exercise that should be addressed is hamstring stretching. Two methods can be employed. The patient can assume a long-sitting position and then can lean forward toward the toes. The patient may rest the elbows on his or her knees to assist in keeping the lower extremities extended. The maintenance of a lumbar lordosis is important in preventing overstretching of the low-back musculature (Intervention 12-19).

Intervention 12-19

Hamstring Stretching





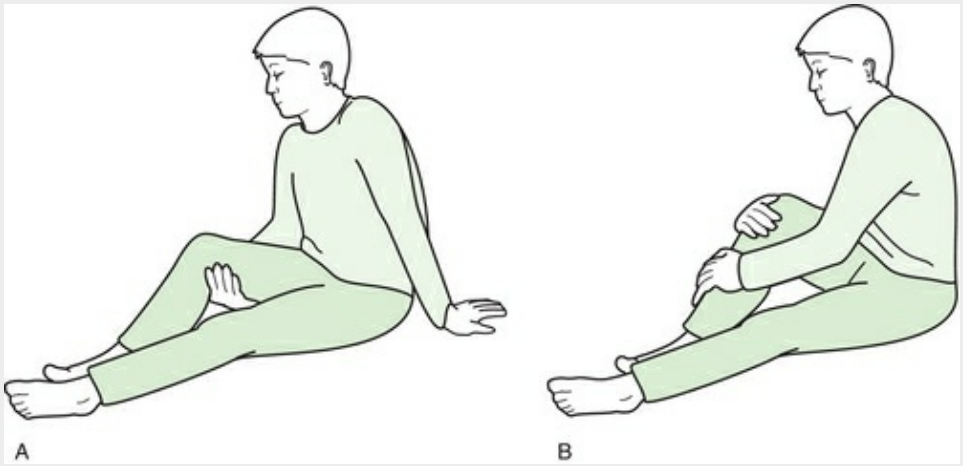
A. When stretching the hamstrings in the long-sitting position, the patient may rest her elbows on her knees to assist in keeping the lower extremities straight.
B to E. Stretching the hamstrings in the supine position.

The second method entails having the patient place his or her hands under the knee and pull the knee back as he or she leans backward into a supine position. With one hand at the anterior knee and the other at the ankle, the patient raises the leg while trying to keep the knee as straight as possible. The patient can then pull the lower extremity closer to the chest to achieve a better stretch. If the patient does not possess adequate hand function to grasp, he or she can use the back of the wrist or forearm to complete the activity. Intervention 12-19 shows a patient who is performing hamstring stretching.

The gluteus maximus should also be stretched. In a long-sitting position with one upper extremity used for balance, the patient places his or her free hand under the knee on the same side. The patient then pulls the knee up toward his or her chest and holds the position. Once the lower extremity is in the desired position, the patient can bring the volar surface of the forearm to the anterior shin and pull the leg closer. This maneuver gives an added stretch to the gluteus maximus (Intervention 12-20).

Intervention 12-20

Gluteus Maximus Stretching



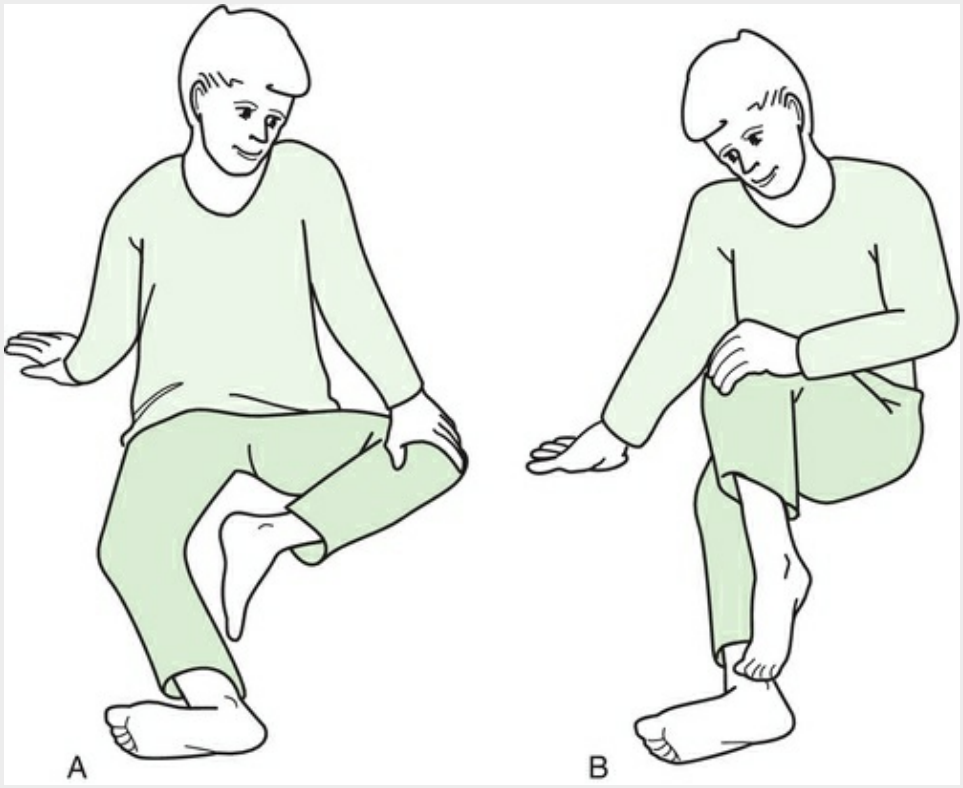
A. In the long-sitting position the patient uses one upper extremity for support and his free hand to pull the knee on the same side up toward his chest.
B. Once the lower extremity is in position, the patient grasps the knee and shin with both hands and pulls the leg toward his trunk.

Patients must also spend a portion of each day stretching their hip flexors. This is especially important for individuals who spend a majority of their day sitting. The most effective way to stretch the hip flexors is for patients to assume a prone position. Patients should be advised to lie prone for at least 20 to 30 minutes every day. Patients can do this in their beds or on the floor if they are able to transfer into and out of their wheelchairs.

To stretch the hip abductors, adductors, and internal and external rotators, the patient should assume a long-sitting position as described earlier. The knee is brought up into a flexed position. With the nonsupporting hand, the patient should slowly move the lower extremity medially and laterally. The patient can maintain the arm under the knee or can place his or her hand on the medial or lateral surface of the knee to support the lower extremity (Intervention 12-21).

Intervention 12-21

Stretching the Hip Rotators



A. Hip lateral rotation.
B. Hip medial rotation.

Stretching of the ankle plantar flexors is also necessary. The patient supports himself or herself with the same upper extremity as the foot he or she is stretching. With the knee flexed approximately 90 degrees, the patient places either the dorsal or volar surface of the opposite hand on the plantar surface of the foot. Placement of the hand depends on the amount of hand function the patient possesses. Patients with strong wrist extensors can use motion at the wrist to stretch the ankle into dorsiflexion slowly (Intervention 12-22). Patients with paraplegia who possess wrist and finger function are able to complete this activity without difficulty. Stretching the ankle plantar flexors with the knee flexed stretches only the soleus muscle. The patient can stretch the gastrocnemius in a long-sitting position with a folded towel placed along the plantar surface of the foot. The ends of the towel are pulled to provide a prolonged stretch.

Intervention 12-22

Ankle Dorsiflexion

Ankle dorsiflexion. When completing this stretch, patients with C7 innervation will need to maintain one upper extremity in extension for trunk support.

Advanced Treatment Interventions

Advanced Mat Activities

For the patient with paraplegia, practicing more advanced mat exercises is also appropriate. In a short- or long-sitting position, the patient can practice maintaining his or her sitting balance and finding his or her center of balance and limits of stability. Use of the upper extremities to maintain sitting balance will be dependent on the patient's motor level. Weight shifting, reaching, and other functional upper extremity tasks can be performed while the patient attempts to maintain his or her posture and balance. As the patient progresses, the therapist may choose to alter the surface. Other advanced mat activities that can be performed include sitting swing-through, hip swayers, trunk twisting and raising, prone push-ups, forward reaching in quadruped, creeping, and tall kneeling. The techniques used to execute each of these activities are as follows:

Sitting Swing-Through:

Step 1. The patient assumes a long-sitting position with upper extremity support. The patient's hands should be approximately 6 inches behind the patient's hips.

Step 2. The patient depresses the shoulders and extends the elbows. The buttocks should be lifted off the support surface.

Step 3. The patient swings the hips back between his or her hands.

Hip Swayer:

Step 1. The patient assumes a long-sitting position with upper extremity support.

Step 2. The patient places one hand as close to his or her hip as possible; the other hand should be placed approximately 6 inches away from the other hip.

Step 3. The patient raises his or her buttocks and moves the hips toward the hand that is farther away.

Step 4. The patient travels sideways across the mat.

Step 5. The patient should practice moving in both directions.

Trunk Twisting and Raising:

Step 1. The patient assumes a side-sitting position.

Step 2. The patient places both hands near the hip that is closer to the support surface.

Step 3. The patient straightens his or her elbows to raise the hips to a semi-quadruped position and then lowers himself or herself to the mat.

Step 4. The activity should also be practiced on the opposite side.

Prone Push-Ups:

In a prone position with the hands positioned next to the shoulders, the patient extends the elbows and lifts the upper body off the support surface.

Forward Reaching:

Step 1. The patient assumes a four-point position. Some patients may need assistance achieving the position. This can be accomplished by having the patient assume the prone position and facilitating a posterior weight shift at the patient's pelvis while the patient extends his or her elbows. Assistance may be needed. With a gait belt around the patient's low waist or hips, the PTA, in a standing position, straddles the patient and pulls the patient's hips up as the patient pushes with the upper extremities.

Step 2. If the patient is having difficulty maintaining the four-point position, a bolster or other object can be placed under the patient's abdomen to maintain the position. Care must be taken with patients who have increased lower extremity extensor tone; if the patient is unable to flex the hips and knees, the patient's lower extremities can spasm into extension.

Step 3. Once the patient can maintain the quadruped position, the patient can practice anterior, posterior, medial, and lateral weight shifts, as well as alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization.

Step 4. The patient can also practice forward reaching with one upper extremity while maintaining balance.

Step 5. If the patient possesses innervation of the trunk musculature, the patient can practice arching the back and letting it sag.

Creeping:

A patient's ability to creep depends on lower extremity muscle innervation. Strength in the hip flexors is also needed to perform this activity.

Step 1. The patient assumes a quadruped position.

Step 2. The patient alternately advances one upper extremity followed by the opposite lower extremity.

Tall Kneeling:

Step 1. The patient assumes a quadruped position.

Step 2. Using a chair, bench, or bolster, the patient pulls up into a tall-kneeling position. The hips must remain forward while the patient rests on the Y ligaments in the hips.

Step 3. Initially, the patient works on maintaining balance in the position.

Step 4. Once the patient can maintain balance, the patient can work on alternating isometrics, rhythmic stabilization, and reaching activities.

Step 5. The patient can advance to kneeling-height crutches. The patient can balance in the position with the crutches, lift one crutch, advance both crutches forward, or pull both crutches back.

The functional significance of these activities is widespread. The sitting swing-through, hip swayer, and prone push-up exercises work to improve upper extremity strength necessary for transfers and assisted ambulation. The trunk twisting exercise helps improve the patient's trunk control for transfers, including those from the wheelchair to the floor. Unilateral reaching in the quadruped position assists the patient in developing upper extremity strength and coordination and improves the patient's ability to transfer from the floor into the wheelchair. Creeping on all fours helps develop the patient's trunk and lower extremity muscle control. It is also a useful position for the patient to be able to assume while on the floor. Tall kneeling promotes the development of trunk control. It can be used as a position of transition for patients as they transfer from the floor back into their wheelchairs, and it serves as a preambulation activity. Stages of motor control (mobility, stability, controlled mobility, and skill) must also be considered when implementing these interventions.

Transfers

Wheelchair-to-Floor Transfers

Patients with paraplegia should be instructed how to fall while in their wheelchairs and how to transfer back into the chair if, for some reason, they are displaced. In addition, the floor is a good place to perform hip-flexor stretching. In the clinic, the PT or PTA will initiate practice of this skill by lowering the patient to the floor as shown in Figure 12-12. The patient should be instructed to

tuck his or her head and to keep the arms in the wheelchair. The patient must be cautioned against trying to soften the fall by using the arms. Extension of the upper extremities can result in wrist fractures. The patient may also want to place one of his or her upper extremities over the knees to prevent the lower extremities from coming up and hitting the patient in the face.

FIGURE 12-12 The physical therapist assistant lowers the patient to the floor.

Once the patient is on the floor, he or she has several options for transferring back into the wheelchair. It may be easiest for the patient to right the wheelchair and then to transfer back into it. If the patient can position himself or herself in a supported kneeling position in front of the wheelchair, he or she can pull herself back into the wheelchair, as depicted in Intervention 12-23. If the patient possesses adequate upper extremity strength and range of motion, he or she can back up to the wheelchair in a long-sitting position, depress the shoulders, and lift the buttocks back into the wheelchair. The patient's hands are positioned near the buttocks. Flexion of the neck while attempting this maneuver aids in elevating the buttocks through the head-hips relationship. Although this type of transfer is possible, many patients do not have adequate strength to complete the transition successfully. In the clinic, one can practice this by using a small step stool or several mats. In a long-sitting position, the patient transfers first to the step stool and then back up into the wheelchair. Intervention 12-24 illustrates a patient who is performing a transfer from the floor back into the wheelchair. The patient rotates the wheelchair casters forward and places one hand on the caster and the other on the wheelchair seat and pushes upward.

Intervention 12-23

Transfer to Wheelchair from Tall Kneeling

The patient pulls herself into the wheelchair from a tall-kneeling position. The patient must rotate over her hips to assume a sitting position. The sequence can be reversed to transfer out of the wheelchair.

Intervention 12-24

Transfer to Wheelchair from Long-Sitting Position

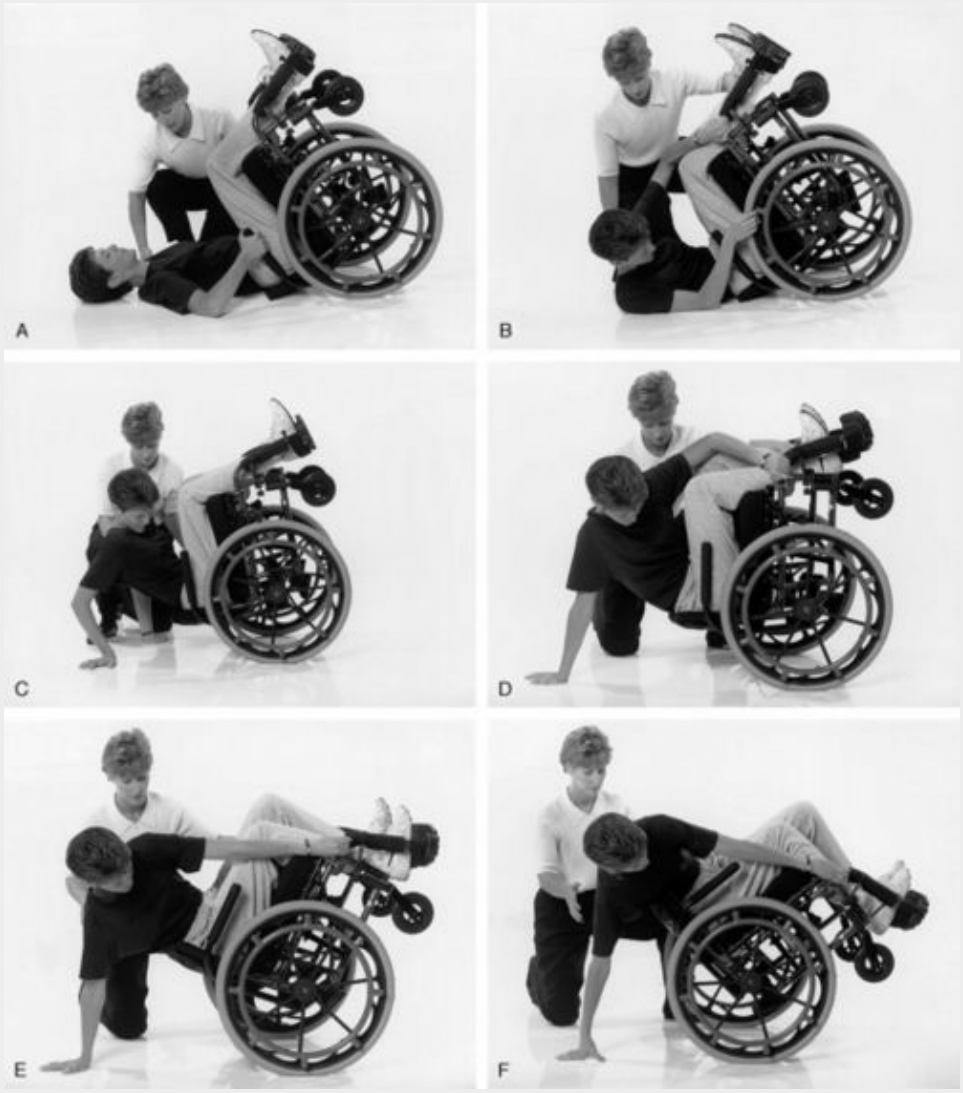
Transfers from the floor to the wheelchair can be practiced in the clinic with a small step stool.
A to C. The patient first transfers from the floor to the stool. The patient uses the head-hips relationship to lift the buttocks.
D and E. From the stool, the patient depresses her shoulders and lifts herself back into the wheelchair.

Righting the Wheelchair

Individuals with good upper body strength may be able to right a tipped chair while remaining in it. To be successful with this activity, the individual must be able to push down with the arm in contact with the floor, use the head and upper trunk to shift weight, and remember to push down on the hand in contact with the wheelchair instead of pulling on it. Intervention 12-25 shows an individual who is completing this activity.

Intervention 12-25

Righting the Wheelchair While Seated



Some patients will be able to right their wheelchairs while they remain seated. Patients should be carefully guarded while they practice this skill.

Caution

A word of caution must be expressed during the performance of these activities. Patients who lack sensation in the lower extremities and buttocks must monitor the position of their lower extremities during activity performance. Patients can accidentally bump themselves on sharp wheelchair parts, and these injuries can cause skin tears during these activities.

Although patients with tetraplegia cannot complete wheelchair to floor transfers independently, they should practice the task. These individuals must be able to instruct others in ways to assist should this situation occur in the community.

Advanced Wheelchair Skills

Patients with innervation and strength in the finger muscles should receive instruction in advanced wheelchair skills. Attaining wheelies and ascending and descending curbs should be taught so that the patient can be as independent in the community as possible.

Wheelies

Before the patient can learn to perform a wheelie independently, the patient must be able to find her balance point in a tipped wheelchair position (Figure 12-13). The easiest way to do this is to tip the

patient gently back onto the rear wheels. The PTA should find the point at which the wheelchair is most perfectly balanced. The patient must keep his or her back against the wheelchair back. The patient then grasps the hand rims. If the wheelchair begins to tip backward, the patient should be instructed to pull back slightly on the hand rims. If the front casters begin to fall forward, the patient should push forward on the handrims. Most patients initially overcompensate while learning to attain a balance point by leaning forward or pulling or pushing too much on the rims.

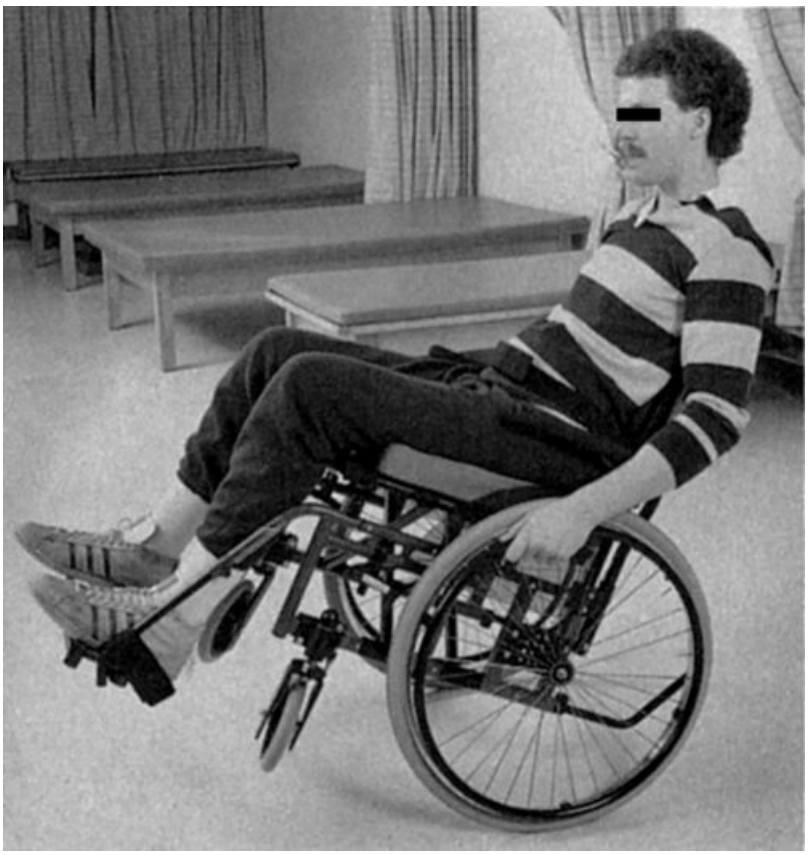


FIGURE 12-13 Finding the balance point is a prerequisite to popping and maintaining a wheelie position. (From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

During these early stages of practice, you must guard the patient carefully. Standing behind the patient with your hands resting near the push handles of the wheelchair and standing near the backrest are the best places to guard the patient. Once the patient is able to maintain a wheelie with your assistance, the patient must learn to achieve the position independently. The patient must master this activity to negotiate curbs independently. To attain the wheelie position, have the patient lean forward in the wheelchair. The patient pulls back on the wheelchair rims and then quickly pushes forward at the same time he moves his or her shoulders posteriorly against the back of the wheelchair. The quick forward movement of the chair, combined with the shifting of the patient's weight backward, causes the front casters of the wheelchair to pop up. With practice, the patient learns how much force is needed to attain the position. Eventually, the patient is able to achieve the wheelie position from a stationary or rolling position.

Ascending Ramps

A patient should ascend a ramp while in a forward position. The length and inclination must be considered before the patient attempts to negotiate any ramp. When the patient is going up a ramp, instruct him or her to lean forward in the wheelchair. If the ramp is long, the patient uses long, strong pushes on the hand rims. If the ramp is relatively short and steep, the patient uses short, quick pushes to accelerate forward. A grade aid on the wheelchair may be needed to prevent the chair from rolling backward between pushes. The grade aid serves as a type of braking mechanism to assist the patient to change hand position for the next push without rolling backward.

Descending Ramps

Patients should be encouraged to descend ramps with their wheelchairs facing forward. The patient is instructed to lean back in the wheelchair. The patient then places both hands on the hand rims or on the rims and wheels themselves. The movement of the wheelchair is controlled by friction applied to the hand rims and wheels by the patient. The patient must let the rims move equally between both hands to guarantee that the wheelchair will move in a straight path. Patients may also elect to apply the wheelchair brakes partially when descending ramps. Although this technique provides added friction to the wheels, it can cause mechanical failure to the braking mechanism of the wheelchair.

Ramps can also be descended with the patient in a backward position if the patient feels safer using this technique. The patient is instructed to line the wheelchair up evenly at the top of the ramp. The patient leans forward and grasps the hand rims near the brakes. The rims are then allowed to slide through the patient's hands during the descent. Patients must be careful at the bottom of the ramp because the casters and footrests can catch on the ramp and cause the chair to tip backward. Figure 12-14 shows two methods for descending a ramp.

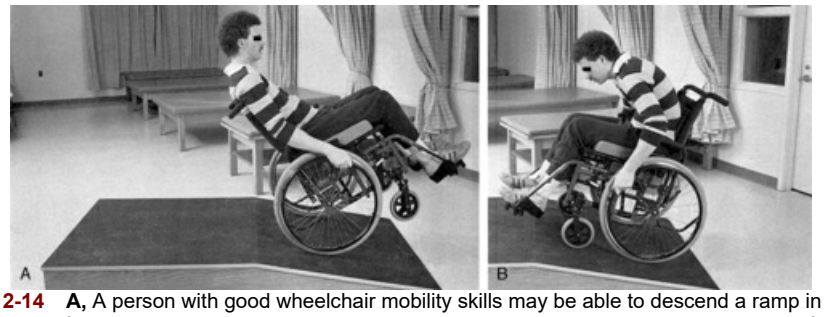


FIGURE 12-14 **A,** A person with good wheelchair mobility skills may be able to descend a ramp in a wheelie position. **B,** The safest method to descend a ramp is backward. The person must remember to lean forward while controlling the rear wheels. Ascending a ramp is performed in a similar manner. (From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins.)

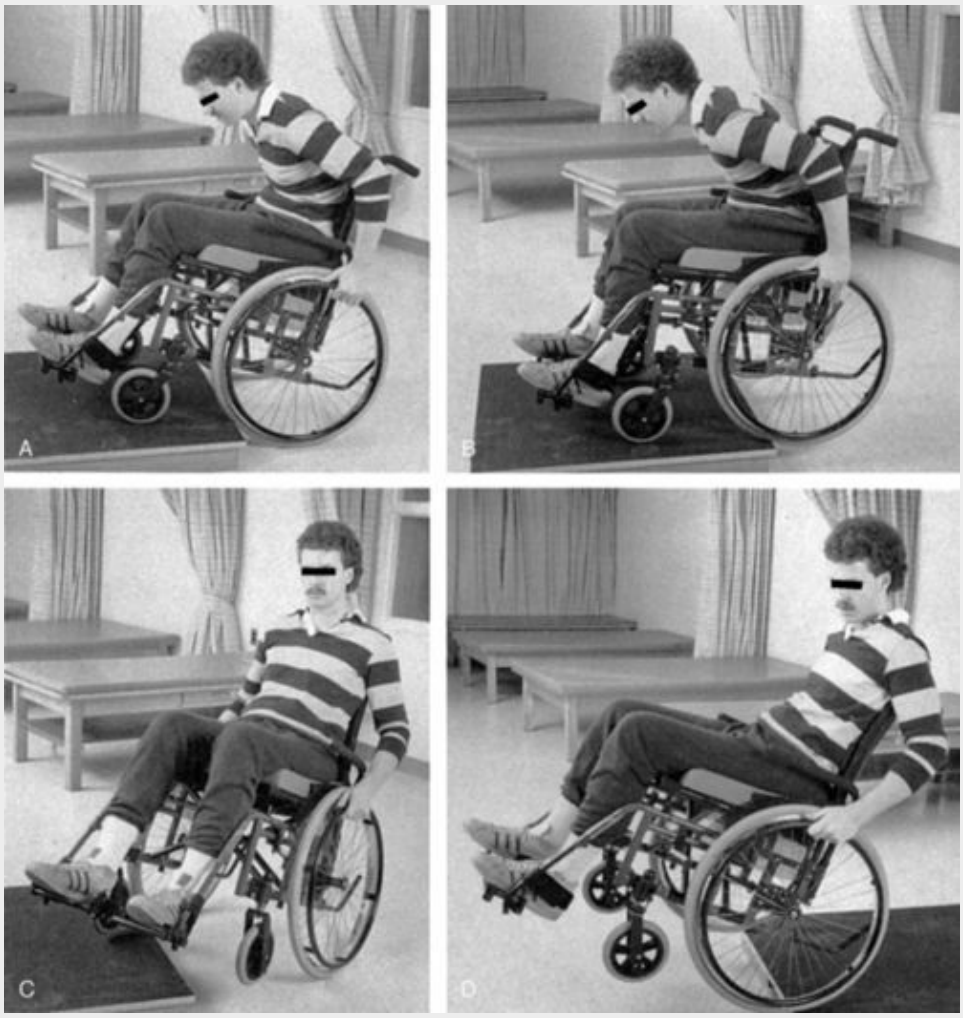
Ramps can also be ascended or descended in a diagonal or zigzag manner. Negotiating the ramp in a diagonal pattern decreases the tendency to roll down the ramp during ascent and decreases speed during descent.

Ascending a Curb

Going up a curb should always be performed with the patient in a forward direction. If the patient is going to be independent with this activity, he must be able to elevate the front casters of the wheelchair. As the patient approaches the curb, he or she pops the front casters up with a wheelie. Once the casters have cleared the curb, the patient leans forward and pushes on the hand rims. Patients require a great deal of practice to master this activity because the timing of the individual components is extremely important and the completion of the task takes considerable muscle strength. Intervention 12-26, *A* and *B*, illustrates this skill.

Intervention 12-26

Ascending and Descending a Curb



A and B. A person ascends a curb by "popping a wheelie" to place the front casters onto the curb, then pulls the rear wheels upward. Timing and good upper extremity strength are important for this activity.
C. Descending a curb may be performed by lowering the rear wheels evenly off the curb and completing the activity by spinning the chair to clear the front casters.
D. A person may descend the curb forward in a controlled wheelie position.

(From Buchanan LE, Nawoczenski DA: *Spinal cord injury and management approaches*, Baltimore, 1987, Williams & Wilkins, 1987.)

Descending a Curb

It is often easiest to instruct patients to descend curbs backward; however, most clinicians agree that it presents more danger to the patient because of the risk from unseen traffic. In this technique, the patient backs the wheelchair down the curb. Again, the patient should lean forward and grasp the wheel rims near the brakes on the chair. The position of the footplates must also be observed during performance of this activity. The footplates may catch on the curb as the chair descends. If this occurs, the patient will need to lean back into the chair to allow the casters to clear the curb (Intervention 12-26, *C* and *D*).

A second method of descending a curb is for the patient to go down in a forward position. Before the patient attempts this maneuver, he or she must be able to achieve a wheelie and roll forward while in a tilted position. As the patient approaches the curb, he or she pops a wheelie. The rear wheels are allowed to roll or bounce off the curb. Once the rear wheels have cleared the curb, the patient leans forward so that the front casters once again are on the ground. Care must be taken when patients learn this task because incorrect shifting of the patient's weight either too far backward or too far forward can cause the patient to fall out of the wheelchair. It is often easiest to begin training the patient to ascend and descend low training curbs. A 1- to 2-inch curb should be

used initially with patients as they try to perfect these skills.

Powered Mobility

Patients with high-level tetraplegia need to master powered mobility. Often, equipment vendors will provide power chairs for individuals on a trial basis. A portion of your treatment session should be devoted to assisting the patient with the operation of the power chair. Descriptions of different types of power wheelchairs and the operation of these units are outside the scope of this text. Clinicians are encouraged to work with equipment vendors to become knowledgeable about the different wheelchairs and accessories that are available.

Wheelchair Cushions

Individuals who will be spending a considerable amount of time each day sitting in a wheelchair should also have some type of wheelchair cushion. Specialized cushions are available that reduce some of the pressure applied to the individual's buttocks. No cushion completely eliminates pressure, and individuals must continue to perform some type of pressure relief throughout the day in order to minimize the risk of pressure ulcers.

Cardiopulmonary Training

Cardiopulmonary training should also be included in the patient's rehabilitation program and must be based on the patient's exercise capacity as determined by the motor level. Incentive spirometry and diaphragmatic strengthening should be continued to further maximize vital capacity. Endurance training can be incorporated into the patient's treatment plan and can include activities, such as wheelchair propulsion for extended distances, upper extremity ergometry (arm bikes), swimming, and wheelchair aerobics. Although these activities improve the patient's endurance, the upper extremity muscles are smaller and are more able to perform at a higher intensity for a shorter duration of time than the muscles in the lower extremities. Therefore, these muscles fatigue more quickly (Decker and Hall, 1986; Morrison, 1994).

Patients with SCIs lack normal cardiovascular responses to exercise. Individuals with injuries above T4 will generally exhibit maximal heart rates of 130 beats/min or less with exercise while patients with lower level paraplegia will present with increased heart rate responses comparable to the general public (Jacobs and Nash, 2004). Blood pressure, heart rate, cardiac output, and sweating responses are altered secondary to autonomic sympathetic dysfunction and the resultant disturbed blood flow. Therefore, the use of target heart rate alone may not be an appropriate indicator of exercise intensity for patients with spinal cord injuries. Additional methods of monitoring the patient's exercise response, including blood pressure and the Borg Perceived Exertion Scale (a subjective measure of individual exercise intensity), should be employed (Borello-France et al., 2000).

Aerobic training effects are, however, still possible and patients can benefit from exercise programs to decrease the risk of secondary complications including hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and elevated cholesterol. Improvements in overall health and quality of life can also be achieved with regular exercise (Burr et al., 2012; Jacobs and Nash, 2004; Lewthwaite et al., 1994). Exercise recommendations for persons with SCI do not vary drastically from those for the general public. Duration of exercise should be 150 minutes a week of moderate intensity aerobic activity or 75 minutes of vigorous-intensity exercise. If a patient is unable to tolerate 20 to 60 minutes of continuous activity, aerobic activity performed for at least 10 minutes is preferred (Department of Health & Human Services, 2008; Jacobs and Nash, 2004). Evidence suggests that cardiovascular fitness can be achieved through several shorter bouts of exercise instead of one longer session (Lewthwaite et al., 1994). Frequency of aerobic exercise should be at least two times a week and not more than six times a week. Possible activities that may be performed include: leg cycling with electric stimulation, body-weight-supported treadmill ambulation, upper extremity and wheelchair ergometry, circuit training, swimming, and wheelchair sports (SCI Action Canada, 2011; Somers, 2010). A break of 1 to 2 days should be taken between exercise sessions to allow for musculoskeletal recovery (Morrison, 1994).

Circuit Training

Researchers have also studied the effects of circuit training (weight training with exercise

equipment and upper extremity ergometry) in individuals with paraplegia. Significant increases in shoulder strength and endurance were noted in individuals who participated in a training program three times a week for 12 weeks. The results of a study by Jacobs et al. (2001) support the beneficial effects of circuit training on fitness levels in individuals with paraplegia. Additionally, upper extremity strengthening programs which target the serratus, middle and lower trapezius, and shoulder external rotators combined with selective stretching of key areas (the pectoralis muscles, upper trapezius, long head of the biceps, and posterior capsule of the shoulder) have been effective in reducing shoulder pain and improving function in patients with paraplegia (Nawoczenski et al., 2006). Maximal-intensity lower extremity strength training has also been shown to improve strength, gait, and balance outcomes in patients with chronic motor incomplete SCI (Jayaraman et al., 2013). Guidelines from the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (2008) recommend 8 to 10 repetitions (progressing to three sets) of general whole body muscle-strengthening exercises for 2 or more days a week to achieve maximal health benefits.

Aquatic Therapy

Pool therapy can be a valuable addition to the patient's overall treatment plan. Water offers an excellent medium for exercising without the effects of gravity and friction and for practicing ambulation skills. Many facilities have warm-water (92° to 96° F) therapeutic pools for their patients. The warm water provides physiologic effects, including increased circulation, heart rate, and respiration rate and decreased blood pressure. In addition, general relaxation is usually accomplished with warm-water immersion. These effects must be kept in mind as the PT develops a pool program for the patient.

When designing a therapeutic pool program for a patient with SCI, the PT should consider the following as therapeutic benefits of this type of treatment intervention. Activities performed in the water will help to:

1. Decrease abnormal muscle tone
2. Increase muscle strength
3. Increase range of motion
4. Improve pulmonary function
5. Provide opportunities for standing and weight bearing
6. Exercise muscles with fair-minus strength more easily
7. Decrease spasticity

Although most patients can exercise safely in the water, several situations have been identified as contraindications to aquatic programs. A patient with any of the following medical conditions should not be allowed to participate in the program: fever, infectious diseases, tracheostomy, uncontrolled blood pressure, vital capacities less than 1 liter, urinary or bowel incontinence, and an open wound or sore that cannot be covered by a waterproof dressing. Patients with halo traction devices can be taken into the pool as long as their heads are kept out of the water and components of the device that retain water are replaced. Individuals with catheters may participate in pool programs if the drain tubes are clamped and storage bags are attached to the lower extremity (Giesecke, 1997).

Pool Program

Several logistic factors must be considered before taking the patient in the water for a treatment session. As stated previously, warm water is desirable. However, to accommodate the many patients who may need to use a therapeutic pool at a given facility, the temperature of water may be cooler. This factor must be considered when one works with patients with SCIs because their temperature regulation is often impaired. Different facilities have specific requirements regarding safety procedures that must be followed when working with the patient in the water. Previous water safety experience may be necessary. A minimum number of people may also be needed in the pool area to ensure safety. To prepare the patient for the treatment session, the PT or PTA must discuss the benefits of the program and describe a typical session. The patient's previous affinity for water must also be determined. Many individuals profoundly dislike water and may be apprehensive about the experience. Reassuring the patient should help. The patient should arrive for the treatment session in a swimsuit. Catheters should be clamped to avoid the potential for leakage. The patient should also be instructed to wear socks, elbow, and knee pads, depending on the treatment activities to be performed. Because sensory impairments are common, areas that

could become scraped during the session must be protected.

Transfers into and out of the pool can occur in a number of different ways and depend on the type of equipment and facilities present. Frequently, a lift transfers the patient into the pool, or the pool may have a ramp, and entrance is in some type of wheelchair or shower chair. Once the patient is in the water, the PTA must guard the patient carefully. Patients with tetraplegia and paraplegia have decreased movement, proprioception, and light touch sensation. The patient may have difficulty maintaining position in the water. At times, the lower extremities may float toward the surface of the water, and the PTA may have a difficult time keeping the patient's feet and lower extremities on the bottom of the pool in a weight-bearing position. Gentle pressure applied to the top of the patient's foot by the PTA's foot can help alleviate this problem. Flotation vests are helpful and can be reassuring to the patient. Once the patient is more confident in the water, the vest can be removed if allowed by facility policy.

Pool Exercises

Many pools have steps into them or an area where the PTA and the patient can sit down. This feature provides an excellent environment to work on upper extremity strengthening. With the upper extremity supported, the patient moves the arm in the water and uses the buoyancy of the water to complete range-of-motion exercises. The patient can also work on lifting the extremity out of the water to provide more challenge to the activity. The anterior, middle, and posterior deltoids, as well as the pectoralis major and rhomboids, can be exercised in this position. Triceps strengthening can also occur in a gravity-neutralized or supported position. In addition to working on upper extremity strengthening, use of the sitting position serves to challenge the patient's sitting balance and trunk muscles that remain innervated. Alternating isometrics and rhythmic stabilization can be applied at the shoulder region to work on trunk strengthening.

Exercises to increase pulmonary function can be practiced while the patient is in the water. Having the patient hold his or her breath or blow bubbles while in the water assists in improving pulmonary capacity.

The patient can practice standing at the side of the pool while in the water. The PTA may need to guard the patient at the trunk and to use the lower extremities to maintain proper alignment of the patient's legs. Approximation can be applied down through the hips to assist with lower extremity weight bearing. Some therapeutic pools possess parallel bars within the water to assist with standing and ambulation activities. If the patient has an incomplete injury with adequate lower extremity innervation, assisted walking can be performed. As stated previously, this is an excellent way to strengthen weak lower extremity muscles and to improve the patient's endurance. Kickboards can also be used to assist with lower extremity strengthening.

Floating and Swimming

Patients with tetraplegia or paraplegia can be taught to float on their backs. Floating assists with breathing, as well as general body relaxation. Patients can also be instructed in modified or adaptive swimming strokes. Patients with tetraplegia can be taught a modified backstroke and breaststroke. Performance of these swimming strokes assists the patient with upper extremity strengthening and also improves the patient's cardiovascular fitness. Patients with paraplegia can be instructed in the front crawl or butterfly stroke, which also increase upper extremity strength and improve the patient's cardiovascular endurance.

Other Advanced Rehabilitation Interventions

Other treatment activities may be performed as part of the patient's treatment plan. Neuromuscular stimulation (NMS) may be used in patients with muscle weakness to increase strength and to decrease muscle fatigue. NMS is often suggested when a patient has muscle innervation and weakness as a consequence of an incomplete injury. Other benefits of NMS include decreasing range-of-motion limitations, decreasing spasticity, minimizing muscle imbalances, and providing positioning support for patients who are attempting ambulation. Clinicians can also apply NMS to the upper or lower extremity musculature to assist with arm and leg ergometry.

As stated previously, patients with incomplete injuries often have increased muscle tone that interferes with function. Therefore, a component of the patient's treatment plan is the management of this problem. Stretching, ice, pool therapy, and functional electrical stimulation may be appropriate forms of intervention. Electrical stimulation can be applied either to the antagonist

muscle to promote increased strength or to the agonist to induce fatigue. Patients with excessive amounts of abnormal tone may also be receiving pharmacologic interventions, as mentioned previously in this chapter.

Ambulation Training

One of the first questions that patients with SCIs often ask is whether they will be able to walk again. This question is frequently posed in the acute-care center immediately following the injury. Early on, it may be difficult to determine the patient's ambulation potential secondary to spinal shock and the depression of reflex activity; however, once this condition resolves, many patients expect an answer to this question. In a study by van Middendorp et al. (2011), the researchers developed a clinical prediction rule for ambulation based on a patient's age and his or her results on four neurologic tests (motor scores for the quadriceps and gastrocsoleus and light touch sensation in dermatomes L3 and SI). A patient's motor scores, sensory status, and age can provide health-care providers with an early prognosis regarding the patient's ability to walk independently after injury (van Middendorp et al., 2011).

Different philosophies regarding gait training are recognized, and much depends on the rehabilitation team with which you work. Some health-care professionals believe that it is best to give patients with the potential to ambulate every opportunity to do so. These individuals believe that most patients, given the opportunity to try walking with orthoses and an assistive device, will not continue to do so after they realize the difficulty encountered. It may be best to allow the patient to come to his or her decision on ambulation independent of the PT or health-care team. Other health-care professionals believe that a patient should possess strength in the hip-flexor musculature before ambulation is attempted because of the high energy costs, time, and financial resources associated with gait training. Most patients with higher-level injuries choose wheelchair mobility as their preferred method of locomotion after trying ambulation with orthoses and assistive devices because of the energy expenditure and decreased speed associated with the activity (Cerny et al., 1980; Decker and Hall, 1986; Somers, 2010).

Compensatory versus restorative approaches to the treatment of the patient with SCI are best illustrated in the therapist's approach to gait training. The use of orthoses, assistive devices, functional electrical stimulation, and robotic exoskeletons are examples of compensatory strategies that can be employed to assist patients with ambulation on level surfaces. Locomotor training through partial body-weight-supported treadmill ambulation provides an excellent example of the restorative approach to patient care.

Benefits of Standing and Walking

Although functional ambulation may not be possible for all of our patients with SCIs, therapeutic standing has documented benefits. Standing prevents the development of osteoporosis and also helps decrease the patient's risk for bladder and kidney stones. In addition, improvements in circulation, reflex activity, digestion, muscle spasms, and fatigue levels have been noted in individuals who are able to participate in standing programs (Eng et al., 2001; Nixon, 1985).

Guidelines have been established regarding assessment of the patient's likelihood for success with ambulation. Factors to consider include the following: (1) the patient's motivation to walk and to continue with ambulation once discharged from rehabilitation (given the opportunity to try assisted ambulation with orthoses, some patients decide it is too difficult a task and prefer not to continue with the training); (2) the patient's weight and body build (the heavier the patient is, the more difficult it will be for the patient to walk, and taller patients usually find it more challenging to ambulate with orthoses); (3) the passive range of motion present at the hips, knees, and ankles (hip, knee, or ankle plantar flexion contractures limit the patient's ability to ambulate with orthoses and crutches; in addition, patients need approximately 110 degrees of passive hamstring range of motion to be able to don their orthoses and transfer from the floor if they fall); (4) the amount of spasticity present (lower extremity or trunk spasticity can make wearing orthoses difficult); (5) the cardiopulmonary status of the patient (patients with better pulmonary function have an easier time meeting the energy demands of walking); and (6) status of the integumentary system. All of these factors must be considered by the rehabilitation team when discussing ambulation with the patient (Atrice et al., 2013; Basso et al., 2000).

Depending on the patient's motor level, different types of ambulation potential have been

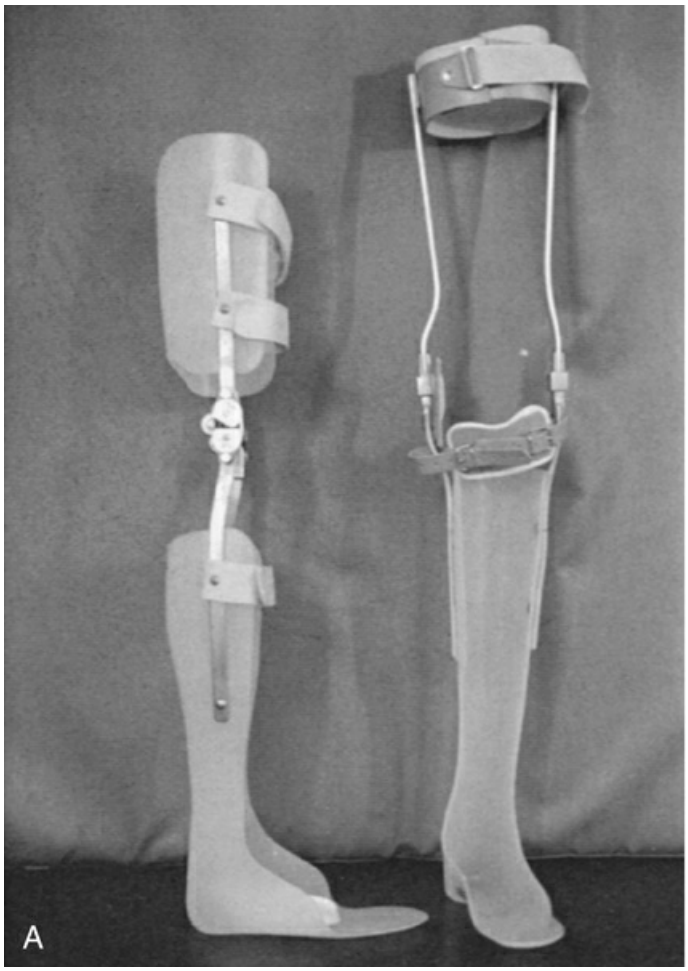
described. The literature varies on the specific motor level and the potential for ambulation. For patients with T2 through T11 injuries, therapeutic standing or ambulation may be possible. This means that the patient is able to stand or ambulate in the physical therapy department with assistance. However, functional ambulation is not possible. Therapeutic ambulators require assistance to transfer from sitting to standing and to walk on level surfaces. These patients ambulate for the physiologic and therapeutic benefits it offers. Patients with injuries at the T12 through L2 level have the potential to be household ambulators, whereas patients with innervation at L3 can achieve functional community ambulation (Atrice et al., 2013).

Individuals who achieve household or community ambulation are able to ambulate in their homes with orthoses and assistive devices. Patients at this level are able to transfer independently, to ambulate on level surfaces of varying textures, and to negotiate doorways and other minor architectural barriers. The energy cost for ambulation in patients with complete injuries above T12 is above the anaerobic threshold and cannot be maintained for an extended period (Atrice et al., 2013). Cerny et al. (1980) reported that gait velocities for patients with paraplegia were significantly slower than normal walking, and gait required a 50% increase in oxygen consumption and a 28% increase in heart rate. Consequently, individuals with paraplegia discontinue ambulation with their orthoses and assistive devices and use their wheelchairs for environmental negotiation (Cerny et al., 1980).

Community ambulation is possible for patients with injuries at L3 or lower. These patients are able to ambulate with or without orthoses and assistive devices. Community ambulators are able to ambulate independently in the community and can negotiate all environmental barriers (Atrice et al., 2013; Decker and Hall, 1986).

Orthoses

Patients with paraplegia who decide to pursue ambulation training need some type of orthosis. Figure 12-15 depicts the most common lower extremity orthoses prescribed. Knee-ankle-foot orthoses may be recommended for patients with paraplegia. These orthoses typically have a thigh cuff and an external knee joint with a locking mechanism (drop locks or bail locks are the most common). They have a calf band and an adjustable locked ankle joint. Scott-Craig knee-ankle-foot orthoses are frequently prescribed for patients with paraplegia. These orthoses consist of a single thigh and pretibial band, a bail lock at the knee joint, and modified footplates. The design of this orthosis provides built-in stability for the patient while standing.


A

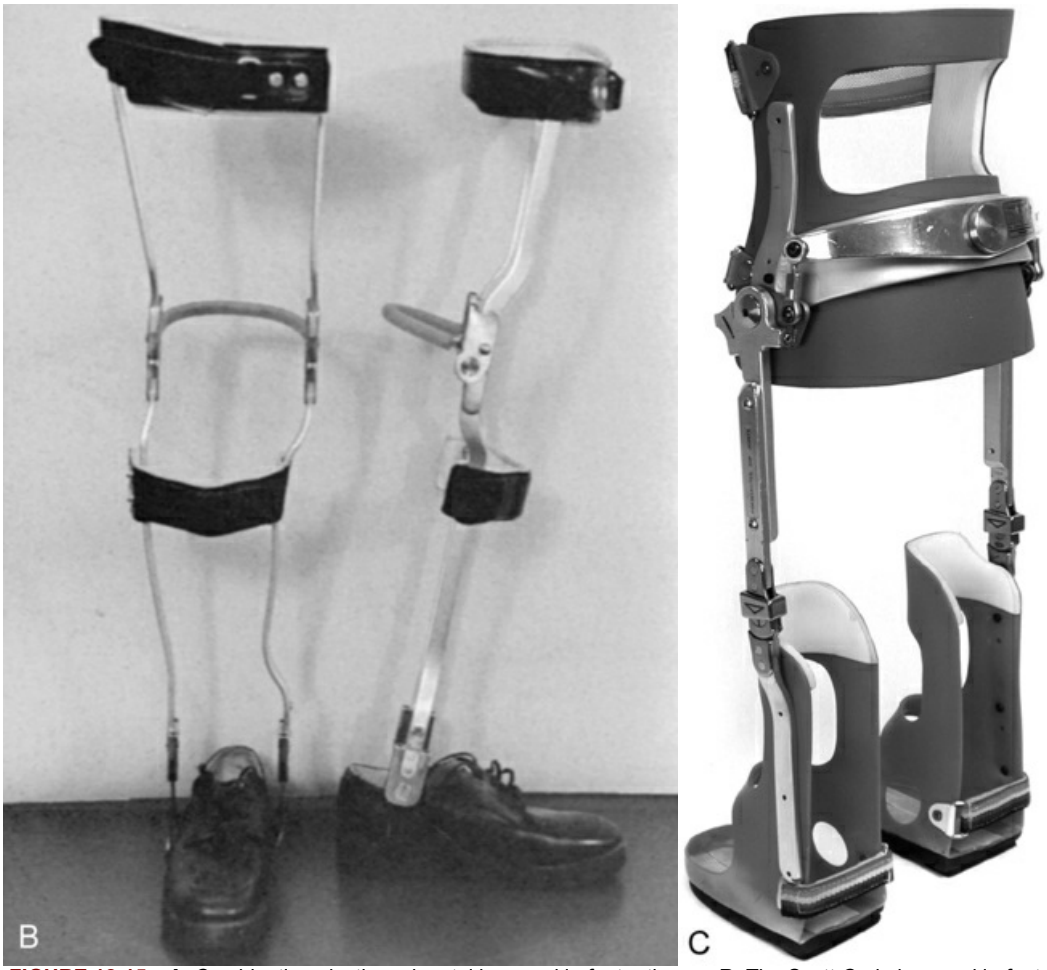


FIGURE 12-15 **A,** Combination plastic and metal knee-ankle-foot orthoses. **B,** The Scott-Craig knee-ankle-foot orthosis is a special design for spinal cord injury. The orthosis consists of double uprights, offset knee joints with locks and bail control, one posterior thigh band, a hinged anterior tibial band, an ankle joint with anterior and posterior adjustable pin stops, a cushion heel, and specially designed footplates made of steel. **C,** The reciprocating gait orthosis, although generally used with children, is also used with adults. Its main components are a molded pelvic band, thoracic extensions, bilateral hip and knee joints, polypropylene posterior thigh shells, ankle-foot orthosis sections, and cables connecting the two hip joint mechanisms. (From Umphred DA, editor: Neurological rehabilitation, ed 6. St Louis, 2013, Elsevier).

The reciprocating gait orthosis is another type of orthosis that may be prescribed for patients with SCIs. This device can be used with patients with little trunk control because of the midthoracic and pelvic support. The reciprocating gait orthosis has an external hip joint that is operated by a cable mechanism. When the patient shifts weight onto one lower extremity, the cable system advances the opposite leg. Individuals using reciprocating gait orthoses often use a walker instead of Lofstrand crutches as their preferred assistive device. The reciprocating gait orthosis is frequently prescribed for children with lower extremity weakness secondary to myelomeningocele. Refer to Chapter 7 for a review.

A new type of orthotic system is now available for patients with SCIs. The ReWalk system is similar to the reciprocating gait orthosis, but it has a robotic exoskeleton that is interfaced with a computer and motion sensors and allows patients to transfer from sitting to standing more easily. This system appears to have excellent potential for patients with higher-level thoracic injuries (fda.gov, 2014).

Preparation for Ambulation

The decision to attempt gait training is made by the patient and the rehabilitation team. As stated previously, the patient's motor level and other factors must be considered. Patients with motor complete, AIS A and B, do not possess adequate lower extremity motor function to ambulate from a restorative treatment approach but may be able to ambulate using compensatory strategies and appropriate bracing and assistive devices.

In general, the patient should be independent in mat mobility, wheelchair-to-mat transfers, and wheelchair mobility on level surfaces before beginning gait training. Many clinics possess training orthoses that allow the patient to practice standing before permanent orthoses are prescribed and manufactured. An orthotist should work with the patient to assist in identifying and fabricating the best orthosis for the patient.

Special note

Depending on the patient's length of stay in the rehabilitation facility, gait training may begin at the end of the patient's inpatient hospitalization, or it may begin in earnest in the outpatient setting.

Once the permanent orthoses have been delivered, it is time to begin the first gait training session. If possible, the orthotist should be present for this session. Having the patient don the orthoses is the first step. It is often easiest for the patient to do this on the mat in a long-sitting position. The patient should be encouraged to do as much as possible on this first attempt. He or she should start by placing one foot into the shoe and then locking the knee joint. During the performance of this activity, one realizes the necessity of possessing 110 degrees of hamstring range. Once the knee is in the orthosis, the patient can tighten the thigh pad. From there, the patient should start to put the other foot in the orthosis. Once both orthoses are on, the therapist and the orthotist, if present, will inspect the orthoses and check the fit. The orthoses must not rub the patient's skin. This situation can cause areas of redness and can lead to skin breakdown. If everything looks satisfactory, the patient should then be instructed to transfer back to the wheelchair to begin standing activities in the parallel bars. Upon completion of the gait training session and removal of the orthoses, the patient's skin should be inspected once again to ensure that there are no areas of pressure or skin breakdown.

Standing in the Parallel Bars

The first thing the patient needs to do is to transfer to standing. The therapist should initially demonstrate this maneuver for the patient. It is easiest to have the patient hold on to the parallel bars and pull forward. In preparation for this transition, the patient needs to move forward in the wheelchair. Having the patient push up and lift the buttocks forward is best to prevent shearing of the patient's skin. Once the patient is forward in the chair, the therapist will want to make sure the patient's orthoses are locked. If this is the patient's first time to stand up, it will be safest to have two individuals assist. While the patient is wearing the safety belt, one person is positioned in front of the patient and the other person is at the side or the back of the patient. On the count of three, the patient pulls himself or herself forward on the bars. The individuals assisting the patient also provide the patient with the needed strength and momentum to complete the transfer.

Once upright, the patient must work to find his or her balance point. The patient's lower extremities should be slightly apart; the low back should be in hyperextension; the shoulders are toward the back; and the hands must be forward of the hips and holding on to the parallel bars. Essentially, the patient is resting on the Y ligaments in the hip and pelvic region. The lower extremity orthoses and positioning allow the patient to move his or her center of gravity behind the hip joints. Once the patient is able to find his or her balance point, he or she will eventually be able to stand and maintain balance without the use of the upper extremities. To guard the patient during this activity, the therapist will be behind the patient or off to the side. The therapist holds on to the gait belt and should avoid holding on to the patient's upper arms. The therapist may place a supporting hand on the patient's anterior shoulder as long as the therapist does not provide a counterbalancing or rotational force.

During practice of achievement of the balance point, the patient should initially have both hands on the parallel bars. The patient should be encouraged to hold the bars lightly and should avoid grabbing or pulling on them. Often, just having the patient rest the hands on the bars may be best. Eventually, you will want the patient to balance with one hand, and finally with no hands. The patient should ultimately be able to stand in the orthoses without any upper extremity support.

After the patient feels comfortable finding and maintaining the balance point, he or she can begin to practice push-ups in the bars. With the hands in a forward position, the patient pushes down on the bars by depressing the shoulders and tucking the head. Depending on the type of lower

extremity orthosis and the presence or absence of a spreader bar, the therapist will want to note what happens to the patient's lower extremities during the push-up. Most often, the legs dangle free. If a spreader bar is attached to the orthoses, the legs will move as one unit. Performing a push-up is a prerequisite activity for the patient to ambulate in a forward direction.

After the patient practices maintaining the balance point, he or she should also practice jack-knifing. *Jack-knife* can be described as movement of the patient's upper body and head forward of the pelvis. Although jack-knifing is an undesirable occurrence, the activity should be practiced in the parallel bars during early gait training sessions. With the hands forward, the patient bends forward at the waist and lowers the trunk down toward the parallel bars. The patient then pushes himself or herself back up to an upright position. Once the patient feels comfortable with this activity, he or she can practice falling into a jack-knife position. The patient can initiate this fall either by moving the hands posterior to the hips or by flexing the head forward. The therapist can also assist the patient with the achievement of the jack-knife position by gently pulling the patient's hips and pelvis in a posterior direction.

To review, the jack-knife position is the position the patient will likely assume if he or she loses balance during ambulation activities. The patient should recognize this position and needs to know what to do if it occurs during gait activities. If this position should occur during gait, the patient will want to straighten his or her elbows while extending the head and trunk.

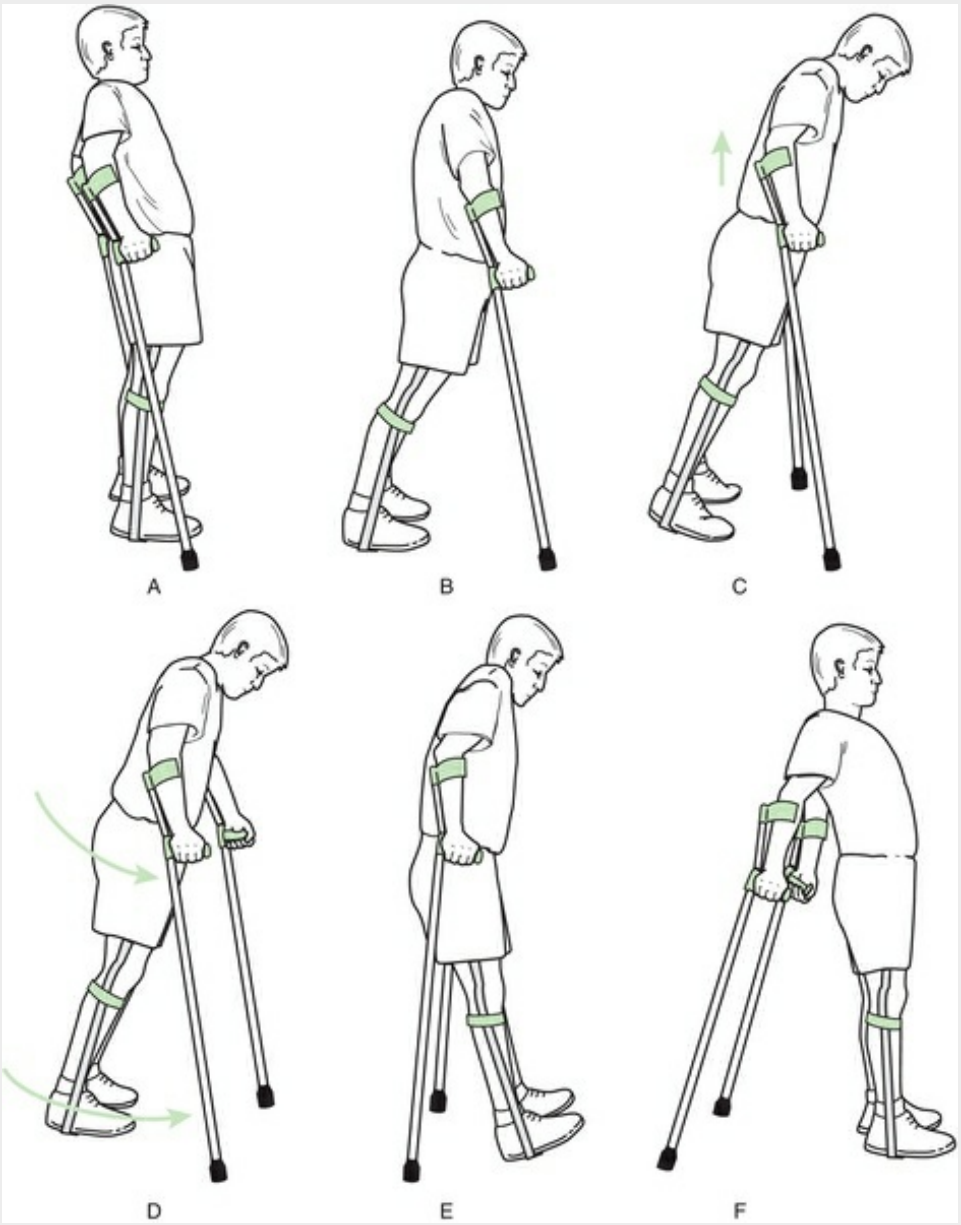
Gait Progression

Once the patient can maintain his or her balance point and can perform a push-up to clear his or her feet from the floor, he or she is ready to begin forward ambulation in the parallel bars. You may be wondering how long this typically takes. Normally, you will want to progress the patient to taking a few steps on the first standing and ambulation attempt. However, the clinician has to monitor the patient's responses closely during standing and ambulation. The effects of fatigue, orthostatic hypotension, decreased cardiopulmonary endurance, and the anxiety associated with standing and walking can easily overwhelm the patient. To monitor physiologic responses during the treatment, the clinician should take baseline pulse, respiration, and blood pressure readings before the patient is standing. Careful monitoring of vital signs during the gait training portion of the treatment session is also indicated. In addition, the patient must be instructed to report any feelings of light-headedness or dizziness immediately.

The PTA should instruct the patient to find his or her balance point before advancing forward in the parallel bars. The patient's head should be held upright, looking forward. The patient then flexes his or her head, pushes down on the hands, depresses the shoulders, and lifts the lower extremities off the ground. As the patient depresses his or her shoulders and straightens the elbows, he or she must extend the head and neck and return it to a neutral position. To maintain balance, the patient needs to move his or her hands forward of the hips immediately. If the patient were to maintain his or her hands in the same place after completing the lift, he or she would jack-knife. After the patient's feet make contact with the floor, he or she must retract the scapula and move the upper trunk and head posteriorly. This type of gait pattern is known as a swing-to pattern because the patient is moving the feet the same distance as his or her hands. The patient should repeat the steps just described until he or she progresses to the end of the parallel bars. Using the verbal instructions "Lean, lift, and land" can be helpful. At this point, someone can pull the wheelchair up behind the patient, or the patient can be instructed in performing a quarter-turn. If the patient is not too tired, he or she should continue and learn the turning technique at this time. Intervention 12-27 illustrates the correct head and trunk positions for gait-training activities.

Intervention 12-27

Gait Progression



A. The patient finds his balance point.
B. He advances the crutches forward.
C. The patient tucks his head and pushes down on the crutches.
D. His pelvis and lower extremities swing forward.
E. His feet strike the floor.
F. The patient lifts his head and resumes a lordotic posture.

Quarter-Turns

To complete a quarter-turn, the patient depresses his or her shoulders and lifts the legs while changing his or her hand position on the parallel bars. In essence, he or she is completing two quarter-turns to change direction. The patient must practice turning in both directions.

Sitting

Before transferring back to sitting, the patient should be instructed in the proper technique. The wheelchair should not be pulled up to the back of the patient's legs. Remember, the patient transfers from standing to sitting with the lower-extremity orthoses locked in extension. For this reason, the chair should be at least 12 inches from the patient so he or she will be able to land in the

wheelchair seat. If the chair is too close to the patient, he or she might tip the chair over backward. The PTA should have the patient keep both his or her hands on the parallel bars during the descent. In time, the patient will be instructed in other methods to perform transfers from sitting to standing and from standing to sitting without the use of the parallel bars.

Swing-Through Gait Pattern

Once the patient feels comfortable with the swing-to gait pattern, the patient can progress to a swing-through pattern. The technique is the same as the swing-to pattern, except the patient advances his or her legs a little farther forward, and instead of stopping between steps, the patient moves his or her hands forward again and takes another step. This gait pattern allows the patient to move forward a little faster and is more energy-efficient.

Other Gait Patterns

If the patient possesses lower extremity innervation, specifically hip flexion, the patient may have the potential to use a four-point or two-point gait pattern. Both patterns more closely resemble normal reciprocal gait patterns with upper and lower extremity movement. These patterns are described in standard texts and are not discussed here.

Backing Up

Patients should also be instructed in backing up. This is important when the patient begins to use his or her crutches on level surfaces within the physical therapy department. Initially, backing up should be practiced in the parallel bars. The patient tucks the head, depresses the shoulders, and extends the elbows. This position causes the patient to perform a mini–jack-knife and allows the patient's legs to move backward by virtue of the head-hips relationship. The patient repeats this sequence several times to move the desired distance backward.

Progressing the Patient

After the patient has practiced ambulation in the parallel bars several times, it is time to progress to ambulation outside of them. It is advisable to progress out of the bars without delay because patients can become reliant on them and may find it difficult to make the transition to overground ambulation in a less secure environment. To assist with this transition, the clinician may elect to introduce Lofstrand (Canadian or forearm) crutches while the patient is still ambulating in the parallel bars.

Care must be exercised when practicing transitions into and out of the wheelchair. These techniques are best practiced with the back of the wheelchair positioned next to a wall for greater safety. In addition, the patient should check to make sure the wheelchair brakes are locked.

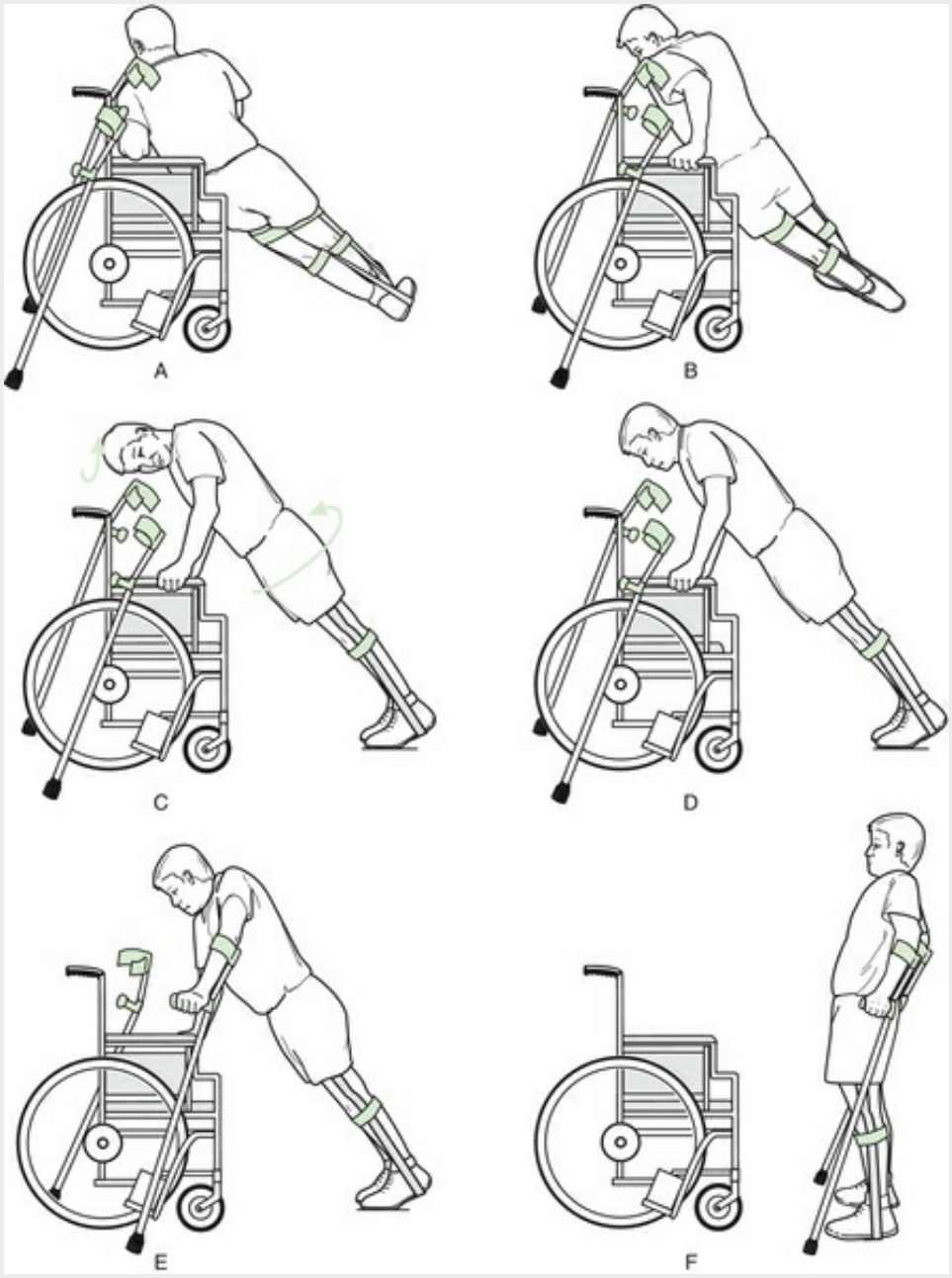
Standing From the Wheelchair

If the patient is to become independent in ambulation activities, he or she must learn to transfer from sitting to standing independently. Several methods are possible for the patient. The first method described is probably the easiest.

Step 1. The patient places the wheelchair against the wall and locks the brakes.
Step 2. The patient places his or her crutches behind the wheelchair to rest on the push handles.
Step 3. The patient moves to the edge of the wheelchair. The patient needs to complete mini–push-ups as he or she does this. Scooting forward can cause unnecessary shearing to the patient's skin.
Step 4. With the orthoses locked, the patient crosses one leg over the other.
Step 5. The patient then pivots over the fixed foot and pushes up to standing.
Step 6. Holding on to the wheelchair armrest, the patient secures one crutch, positions it, and then secures the second crutch.
Step 7. Once the crutches are in place, the patient backs up from the wheelchair, taking two or three steps backward. Intervention 12-28 shows the steps needed to transfer from sitting to standing with lower extremity orthoses and Lofstrand crutches.

Intervention 12-28

Sit-to-Stand Transfer with Orthoses



The sequence for transferring from sit to stand with lower extremity orthoses. (See text description on steps 1 through 7.)

An alternative way of completing this transfer is to unlock one of the orthoses and pivot over the unlocked lower extremity. This technique can be less stressful to the hip joint than the one previously described. The patient completes the transition to upright in the same way as noted earlier, except that the patient needs to lock the knee joint of the bent knee once an upright position has been achieved. The patient can also assume standing from the wheelchair by transferring forward.

Step 1. The patient moves forward to the edge of the chair.

Step 2. With the arms in the crutches, the patient places the crutches flat on the floor, slightly behind the front wheels.

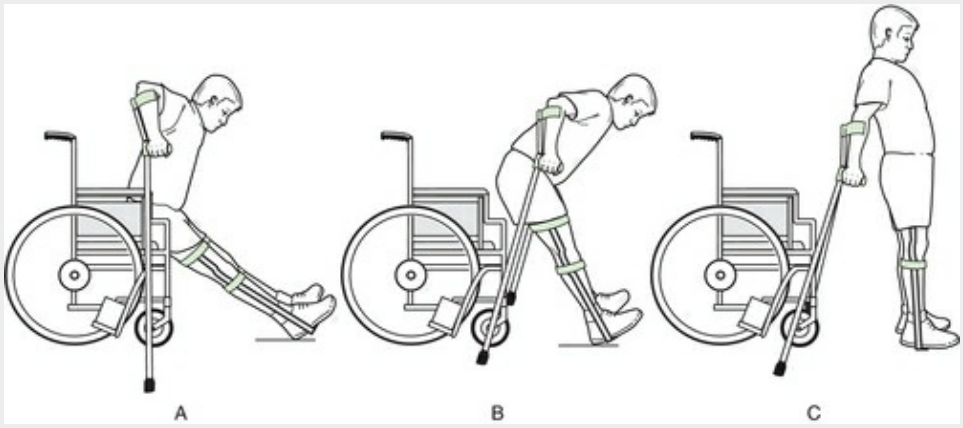
Step 3. The patient flexes his or her head and pushes down on the crutches to propel out of the wheelchair.

Step 4. Once standing, the patient must quickly extend the head and trunk to regain the lumbar lordosis necessary for standing stability.

Step 5. The patient's upper extremities remain behind until the patient feels he or she has regained balance. Then he or she can move the arms and crutches forward. Intervention 12-29 shows a patient completing this activity.

Intervention 12-29

Coming to Stand From the Wheelchair



A. The patient flexes his head and upper trunk.
B. The patient uses the head-hips relationship and muscle action from the latissimus dorsi and triceps to push himself upright.
C. Upright standing.

This method is difficult for many patients because it requires a great deal of strength, balance, and coordination.

Once the patient is standing and has regained balance, he or she can begin to ambulate using a swing-through gait pattern, as described previously. The clinician guards the patient from behind, with one hand on the gait belt and the other on the patient's posterior shoulder, as depicted in Figure 12-16. The clinician must be careful to avoid the tendency to apply excessive tactile cues to the patient. Pulling on the gait belt or impeding the movement of the patient's upper trunk may, in fact, cause the patient to experience balance disturbances.

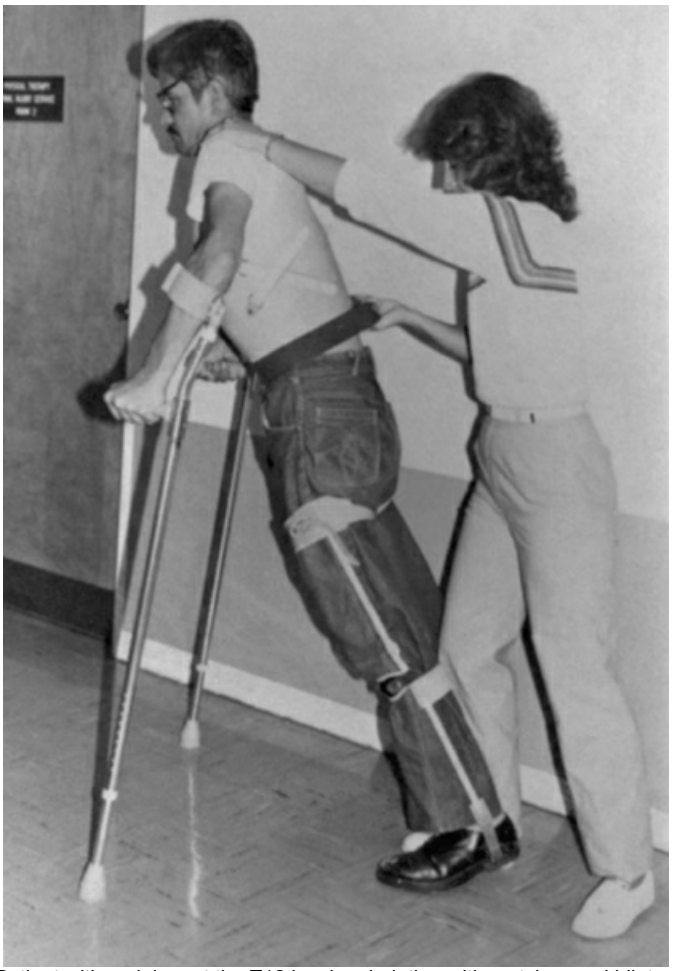


FIGURE 12-16 Patient with an injury at the T12 level ambulating with crutches and bilateral knee-ankle-foot orthoses for balance and lower extremity advancement. (From Adkins HV, editor: *Spinal cord injury*, New York, 1985, Churchill Livingstone.)

To regain a sitting position after walking, the following is recommended:

Step 1. The patient faces the wheelchair initially.

Step 2. The patient places the crutches behind the chair.

Step 3. The patient unlocks one of the knee joints and rotates over that knee to assume a sitting position.

Patients can return to sitting using a straight-back method. This technique is difficult, however, and may be best used when a second person is present to assist with the transition to stabilize the wheelchair.

Gait Training with Crutches

As the patient begins ambulation training on level surfaces with the crutches, he or she once again needs to find his or her balance point. The patient must maintain the hands forward of the hips to prevent jack-knifing. Initially, the clinician may elect to perform a swing-to gait pattern with the patient. The clinician should guard the patient from behind by holding on to the gait belt as necessary. Some clinicians may find it easier to guard the patient from the side initially by holding on to the gait belt and placing the other hand on the patient's shoulder. Verbal and tactile cueing may be necessary to assist the patient with head positioning and the hyperlordotic posture. Should the patient lose balance and begin to jack-knife, the clinician will push the patient's pelvis forward and shoulders back to resume the hyperextended posture. Because the patient will be moving relatively quickly, the clinician will need to take bigger steps. As the patient becomes more proficient, the patient can begin a swing-through gait pattern.

Falling

All patients who attempt gait training with crutches should also be instructed in proper falling techniques to avoid injury. The first attempts at falling should be completed in a controlled manner. You will want to have the patient fall onto a floor mat. The patient is instructed to let go of the crutches and remove the hands from the hand grips. The patient then reaches toward the ground and flexes the elbows to avoid trauma to the wrist. If the facility has a crash mat (these mats are higher and softer), having the patient fall onto it is an easier starting point for the patient.

Getting up From the Floor

Once the patient has practiced falling to the floor, the patient must also learn how to get up from the floor. The following steps should be used to assist the patient with this activity.

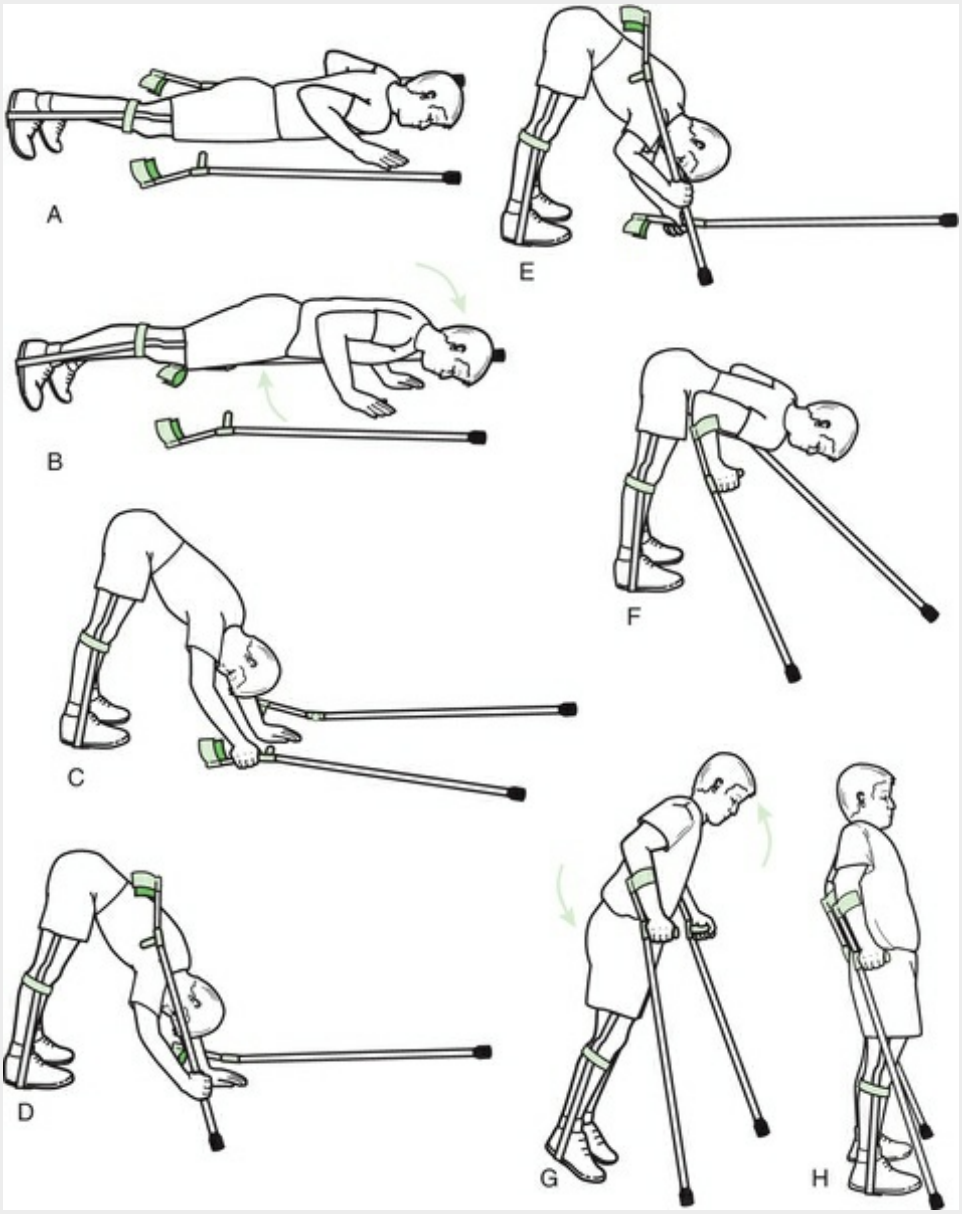
Caution

This transfer should be practiced close to a wall so the patient has something to lean against as he or she transitions to upright.

Step 1. The patient is instructed to assume a prone position on the floor.
Step 2. The patient positions the crutches with the tips pointing toward the head and the hand gripping at the hips.
Step 3. The patient pushes up to a plantigrade position. (The patient ensures that both orthoses are locked before attempting this maneuver.)
Step 4. The patient reaches for one of his or her crutches and puts the crutch tip on the floor to assist in the transition to an upright position. The patient's hand is on the crutch handle, and the crutch rests against the shoulder.
Step 5. The patient uses the crutch on the floor as a point of stability as he or she reaches for the other crutch and positions it on the forearm.
Step 6. The patient turns the opposite crutch around and places the forearm cuff at his or her elbow region.
Step 7. The patient regains balance with the crutches. Intervention 12-30 depicts this sequence.

Intervention 12-30

Getting Up From the Floor



A. Instruct the patient to assume a prone position on the floor. Have the patient position the crutches with the tips pointing toward his head and the hand grips at the patient's hips.
B. The patient pushes up to a plantigrade position. (The patient will want to make sure that both orthoses are locked before attempting this.)
C and D. The patient reaches for one of his crutches, using it for balance. The crutch rests against his shoulder.
E and F. The patient uses the crutch on the floor as a point of stability as he reaches for the other crutch and positions it on his forearm.
G and H. The patient regains his balance with the crutches.

Negotiating Environmental Barriers

If the patient is to be independent with ambulation in the community, he or she must be able to negotiate ramps, curbs, and stairs with orthoses and braces.

Ascending a Ramp

Step 1. The patient uses a swing-to gait pattern to move forward up the ramp.
Step 2. To maintain balance, the patient keeps his or her crutches several inches in front of the feet.
Step 3. To increase hip stability, the patient's pelvis must be forward in a lordotic posture.

Descending a Ramp

The same technique used for ambulation on level surfaces can be employed. A swing-through gait pattern is recommended.

Ascending a Curb

Step 1. The individual approaches the curb head-on.
Step 2. In a balanced position near the edge of the curb, the patient places the crutch tips on the curb.
Step 3. The patient leans forward, tucks the head, extends the elbows, and depresses the scapulae (jack-knifes) to elevate his or her lower extremities onto the curb. (The patient's toes drag up the elevation of the curb.)
Step 4. The patient can step to or past the crutches.
Step 5. Once the patient's feet land on the curb, he or she will need to regain the balance point.

Descending a Curb

Step 1. The individual approaches the curb head-on.
Step 2. In a balanced position near the edge of the curb, the patient steps off the curb, tucking the head, straightening the elbows, and depressing the scapulae.
Step 3. Once the patient's lower extremities have swung past the edge of the curb, he or she lowers the legs by eccentrically contracting the elbow and shoulder musculature.
Step 4. When the patient's feet come in contact with the ground, he or she needs to regain the balance point.

Although the Americans with Disabilities Act increased the accessibility of many public and private buildings, many homes and community buildings are not accessible to certain individuals. For this reason, we review the techniques for instructing the patient in stair negotiation.

Ascending Stairs

Patients can ascend stairs using the same techniques described to go up a single curb. In addition, patients can be instructed in an alternative approach to ascend the stairs backward.
Step 1. The patient stands with the back to the stairs and in a balanced position.
Step 2. With the crutches on the step above, the patient leans into the crutches, straightens the elbows, and depresses the scapulae. This maneuver causes the lower extremities to be lifted onto the step.
Step 3. Once the patient's feet have landed, he or she extends the neck and retracts the scapulae to regain a forward pelvis position.

The patient repeats these steps until he or she has successfully ascended all the required steps.

Descending Stairs

The patient who must descend a series of steps can use the techniques described for going down a curb. However, the patient must be careful because the space in which he or she can land is limited. The patient must accurately gauge the length of his or her step so he or she will not miss a step.

Body-weight-supported treadmill

Research in the basic sciences has been conducted in an effort to attenuate the deficits caused by SCI. Animal research suggests that cats with complete spinal cord transections can regain the ability to walk on a treadmill after training. This research "suggests that the spinal cord is able to integrate and adapt to sensory information during locomotion" (de Leon et al., 2001). Of particular interest to researchers and clinicians alike is the existence of central pattern generators (CPGs), a network of nerve cells in the spinal cord. CPGs produce locomotion and are facilitated by supraspinal input; however, CPGs can be activated by external stimuli in the absence of cortical influence (Basso, 2000; Hultborn and Nielsen, 2007). Key to our understanding of the recovery of locomotion abilities is the role that sensory feedback plays in stepping (Hultborn and Nielsen, 2007).

Locomotor training for patients with incomplete spinal cord injury is based on principles of activity-dependent plasticity and automatic movement patterns. Activity-dependent interventions focusing on limiting compensation while activating the nervous system below the injury level are important components of the plan of care for these patients. Locomotor training provides the nervous system with "appropriate sensory input to stimulate the remaining spinal cord injury networks to facilitate their continued involvement even when supraspinal input is compromised" (Harkema et al., 2012). The use of body-weight-supported treadmill training (BWSTT) with manual or electric stimulation or robotic assistance has provided patients with improved outcomes relative to distance and walking speed (Field-Fote and Roach, 2010; Harkema et al., 2012). The patient is suspended by a harness over a treadmill, which provides for upright posturing and decreased loading of the lower extremities. Approximately 35% to 40% of the patient's weight is supported. Trainers can assist with movement of the patient's lower extremities while the treadmill is moving. Intervention 12-31 illustrates this type of locomotor training. The movement of the treadmill pulls the hip into extension and facilitates the swing phase of the gait cycle thus providing patients with the sensory experience of walking. Treadmill speeds of 0.8 to 1.0 m/sec are recommended for training. As the patient progresses, treadmill speed, amount of body weight supported, and length of time the patient spends walking can be increased. To review concepts presented in Chapter 10, BWSTT supports the premise of activity-dependent neuroplasticity and the performance of task-specific activities in the treatment of patients with neurologic impairments.

Intervention 12-31

Locomotor Training

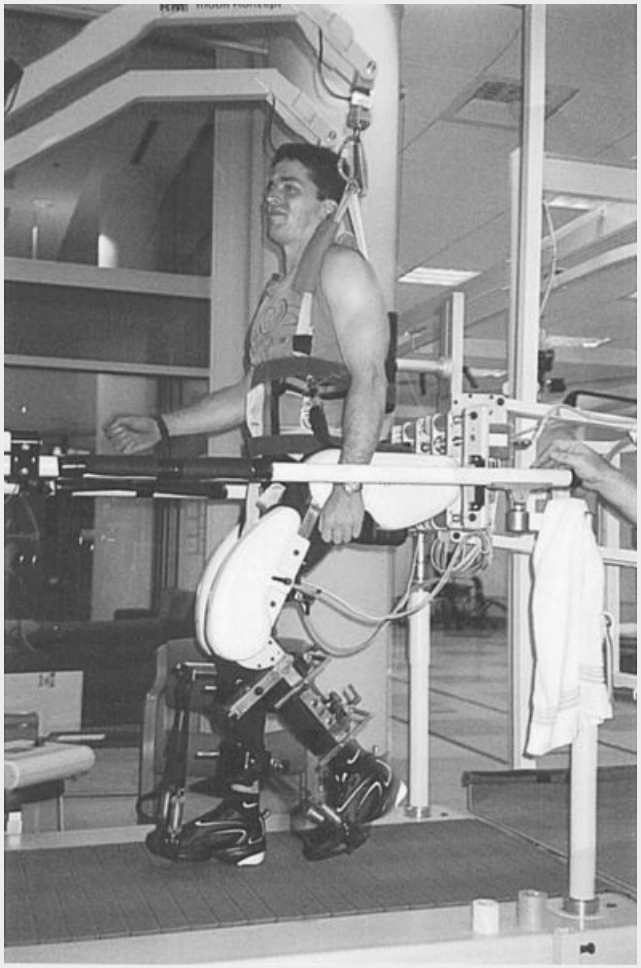
A patient performs body-weight-supported treadmill ambulation.

(From Sisto SA, Druin E, Sliwinski MM: *Spinal cord injury: management and rehabilitation*, St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.)

In some research studies, BWSTT and overground ambulation is combined with electrical stimulation. The electrical stimulation elicits reflex-based movements (a flexor-withdrawal response) in the lower extremities to promote stepping and can be used as an orthosis. This approach is thought to facilitate the spinal circuitry underlying locomotion (Field-Fote and Roach, 2011; Field-Fote and Tepavac, 2002; Somers, 2010). Robotic-assisted BWSTT is also available, providing the patient with kinematically appropriate lower extremity movements. Proprioceptive input is therefore precise and is thought to improve motor learning as it promotes development of an internal reference of correctness (Field-Fote and Roach, 2011). Although less physically demanding for the therapist, there are some concerns with robotic-assisted gait relative to the passive nature of the lower extremity movement and the fact that movement occurs only in the sagittal plane. Intervention 12-32 illustrates robotic-assisted ambulation (Somers, 2010).

Intervention 12-32

Robotic-Assisted Locomotor Training



A patient with spinal cord injury is supported in a harness from above while he uses the Lokomat robotic-assisted gait training device.

(From Sisto SA, Druin E, Sliwinski MM: *Spinal cord injury: management and rehabilitation*, St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.)

Harkema et al. (2012a) has described four guiding principles for locomotor training: (1) maximize weight bearing on the lower extremities while limiting upper extremity weight bearing; (2) optimize the sensory experience associated with the activity; (3) promote proper limb kinematics and; (4) maximize independence and limit compensations. To improve the patient's functional abilities, locomotor training must also be performed overground and in the community. For motor learning to occur, the patient must be able to translate skills from one environment to the next.

In recent studies conducted by Field-Fote and Roach (2011) and Harkema et al. (2012b), outcome measures including the 10-meter walk, Berg Balance Scores, and walking speed were improved in patients with incomplete injuries who participated in intensive activity-based locomotor programs.

Discharge planning

As stated previously, lengths of stay for inpatient rehabilitation continue to decrease. As a consequence, one must begin discharge planning during the patient's first visit to physical therapy. All members of the patient's rehabilitation team including the patient, family members, significant others, and caregivers must be included in the process. The combined efforts of all involved parties help the patient make a successful transition from the hospital to his or her previous home and work environments.

The discharge planning process ideally includes a number of different activities aimed at improving the patient's functional outcome and providing an easy transition from health-care facility to home. Activities that should be a part of the discharge planning process include (1) a discharge planning conference; (2) a trial home pass; (3) an assessment of the home environment to ensure accessibility; (4) development of a vocational plan; (5) procurement of all necessary adaptive equipment and supplies; (6) driver's training (if appropriate); (7) education regarding community resource availability; and (8) recommendations regarding additional rehabilitation services and the need for long-term health and wellness services.

Discharge Planning Conference

The discharge planning conference should be held approximately 1 to 2 weeks before the patient's anticipated discharge date. At this time, continued medical and rehabilitation follow-up should be addressed, and a review of resources available to both patient and family should be provided. Ideally, patients will have access to comprehensive follow-up services. Spinal cord clinics that offer routine reassessments at predetermined times are beneficial. At these follow-up appointments, many potential long-term complications are discovered and are successfully managed. Unfortunately, many patients are discharged to areas where medical specialists trained in providing long-term care to this patient population are not available. For this reason, patients must be educated regarding their injuries, possible secondary complications, and potential outcomes for their recovery.

During the discharge planning conference, certain issues must be addressed. Areas of concern include the following:

1. The patient's attitude and discharge plans must be discussed. Is the patient realistic regarding what it will be like at home? Is discharge to home possible?
2. The knowledge base and understanding exhibited by the patient's primary caregivers regarding SCIs and management should be assessed. Do caregivers understand the patient's condition and the level of care required?
3. The availability of a physician who can deal with the medical problems and secondary complications encountered by patients with SCIs should be discussed.
4. The amount and degree of professional and attendant care required by the patient must be determined. Does the patient possess the financial means (insurance or income) to pay for personal care? Has the patient received all of the adaptive and ADL equipment necessary to function at home? Equipment, including wheelchairs and seat cushions, should be received before the patient's discharge, so any necessary training or modifications can be performed in the facility. In addition, a relationship with a durable medical provider is suggested.
5. Transportation issues associated with school, work, leisure activities, and doctors' appointments must be confirmed. Patients with power wheelchairs need access to vans with hydraulic chair lift capabilities. Patients who want to resume driving need to have adaptive hand controls installed in their automobiles. The timetable to receive these items can be long. Therefore, one is advised to begin this planning process early.
6. The accessibility of the patient's home, school, or workplace must be addressed. Architectural modifications should be completed in advance of the patient's discharge.
7. Other issues related to accessibility of community resources and support for the patient and his or her family members must be discussed. Support groups for patients and their family members are available in many communities. These groups can often provide the patient both emotional support and a social outlet.

Therapeutic passes are often given to patients close to their discharge and are extremely

beneficial to the discharge planning process. When a patient is given a pass, the patient is released from the health-care facility for several hours or, in some cases, overnight in the care of a family member. The pass is used to determine how the patient will function once he or she is discharged from the rehabilitation unit. During the pass, the patient and the family can practice essential skills that will be needed once the patient is at home full time. These passes also offer opportunities for the patient to solve problems that may be encountered at home, such as inaccessibility of various rooms. The passes assist the patient in regaining the confidence needed to function outside the safe confines of the rehabilitation setting. Many patients are often anxious about their discharge from rehabilitation. The rehabilitation hospital or unit is considered a safe environment with 24-hour daily care and the comfort of individuals with similar problems and physical deficits.

After the pass, the patient returns to the rehabilitation unit for continued intervention and planning for discharge. The patient and family are expected to share their experiences regarding the pass so that additional training and problem solving can occur. Concomitantly, if additional environmental modifications to the dwelling must be made, the pass provides the information necessary to complete those changes.

As a component of discharge planning, the patient and the rehabilitation team need to discuss vocational planning. A referral to a vocational rehabilitation specialist or, in some instances, a psychologist can foster adjustment toward the patient's disability and can assist the patient in having an optimistic attitude toward the future. Many times, the patient is not ready at this particular point to think about the future, especially his or her place in the work world. However, beginning a vocational evaluation and discussing the patient's return to school or work is extremely positive and helps to foster the expectation that participation in these activities can be resumed. Unfortunately, data show that only 34.9% of individuals with SCI are employed 20 years after initial injury (The National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013).

Procurement of Equipment

A detailed discussion about securing equipment that the patient will need before discharge from the facility is beyond the scope of this text. Some of the common items that must be considered are presented here. The occupational therapist and the rehabilitation team should be consulted for more specific information.

Items frequently needed by the patient at discharge include the following:

1. *Wheelchair:* The type and specific requirements are determined by the rehabilitation team. The benefits of power versus manual wheelchairs must be considered. Cost and reimbursement issues may be concerns for some patients.
2. *Wheelchair cushion to assist with pressure relief:* Although pressure-relieving devices are beneficial, they do not take the place of regularly performed pressure-relief or weight-shifting activities. Selecting the proper wheelchair cushion depends on the patient's ability to transfer on and off the cushion and the degree of support needed.
3. *Hospital or pressure-relieving bed:* Patients with high tetraplegia who are to be discharged to home may require hospital beds, other specialized beds, or air mattresses.
4. *ADL adaptive equipment:* Examples of items that may be needed include dressing sticks to assist with donning clothing, loops attached to pants to assist with putting them on, button and zipper hooks to assist with securing these items, Velcro straps and elastic shoelaces to increase the ease of donning shoes, bath brushes, handheld shower attachments, and tub benches. Built-up utensils, toothbrushes, and handles may be needed for patients with tetraplegia. Dorsal wrist supports or universal cuffs may be necessary to assist the patient with feeding activities.
5. *Environmental control units:* Environmental control units interfaced with personal computers, the telephone, and appliances within the home may be recommended. These electronic systems allow the patient with tetraplegia some control over the environment. By activating the environmental control unit, the patient can turn on the lights, television, or other appliances within the home. Referral to a rehabilitation engineer or other provider with expertise in this area is advisable.

Home Exercise Program

For some patients, discharge from your facility is the end of their rehabilitation. Not all patients receive follow-up services once they are discharged. Therefore, the supervising PT and PTA must design a home exercise program for the patient that will meet the patient's immediate and long-

term needs. It is not reasonable to expect that once a patient is discharged, he or she will spend hours each day performing a home exercise program. The individual will spend a considerable amount of time each day completing ADLs. Thus, the physical therapy team should select only a few activities that will provide the patient with the greatest functional benefits.

Things to Consider When Developing a Home Exercise Program

Several factors must be considered when developing a home exercise program for your patient. The following is a list of questions you should ask yourself before you finalize the patient's home program.

1. What activities will the patient be able to perform when he or she is discharged? Will the patient be able to transfer independently? Is progress likely in other functional skills?
2. What motor and cardiopulmonary capacities will the patient need to possess to complete ADLs? Areas to consider include range of motion, strength, flexibility, balance, and vital capacity.
3. How will the patient maintain his or her skin integrity and respiratory status and prevent possible secondary complications?
4. What skills and capacities can the patient maintain by completing his or her daily routine? For example, getting dressed and bathing assist in maintaining upper and lower extremity range of motion.
5. What areas will require extra attention because they are not addressed during routine performance of ADLs? Areas to consider include the maintenance of hip extension and ankle dorsiflexion and cardiopulmonary endurance.

In addition to asking these questions about the patient's motor and cardiopulmonary function, one should also consider the patient and the role of the family or caregivers in designing the home exercise program (Nixon, 1985). As stated earlier, patients who have SCIs must become active problem solvers and must be able to direct and initiate their care. Patients who become reliant on others for making decisions relative to their care may have difficulty in directing a home exercise program. Failure to understand the possible complications of immobility and contractures may lead to lack of interest in a home exercise program. Stretching activities and active wheelchair propulsion each day will do a great deal to assist the patient in maintaining an optimal level of functional independence.

Family Teaching

As discussed throughout this chapter, family involvement and training are of the utmost importance. Family teaching should be initiated early during the patient's rehabilitation stay and should not be deferred until a few days before discharge. Family members or caregivers should assist PTs and PTAs with patient transfers, ADL tasks, skin inspection, wheelchair mobility, equipment usage and maintenance, and range-of-motion exercises. We should be patient with family members as they begin to learn these activities because they are often anxious and afraid of causing the patient pain or additional injury. Not only is it important to teach families how to assist patients physically, but families must also be educated about the injury, potential complications, precautions, safety factors, and probable functional outcome. This instruction is best if given over a period of time to give the family member or caregiver adequate time to digest and assimilate information. If the patient is to be discharged home, all individuals responsible for assisting with the care of the patient should demonstrate a level of competence with techniques before the patient's release from the facility.

Community Reentry

As the patient prepares for discharge, a final area that must be considered is the individual's reentry into the community. The patient should be encouraged to resume previously performed activities as his or her level of functional independence and interests warrant. Significant advances have been made in the areas of employment, recreational activities, sports, and hobbies for patients with disabilities. Approximately 34.9% of individuals with SCI are employed 20 years after their injury (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2013). Factors that positively affect employment following injury include younger age, being a white male, higher educational levels, motivation, and prior employment (DeVivo and Richards, 1992). A thorough review of recreational and sports

programs is beyond the scope of this text.

Quality of Life

Research suggests that most individuals who sustain a SCI report that, in time, they achieve a satisfactory quality of life and psychosocial well-being (Lewthwaite et al., 1994). Evidence suggests that the depression often experienced initially after the injury decreases over time, and the individual gains acceptance of the disability. Despite this, individuals with SCI have a decrease quality of life compared with healthy adults and the most pronounced areas are noted in physical functioning and limitations in the ability to carry out physical roles. An individual's social support systems can positively affect the individual's adjustment to his or her injury. Neurologic level and extent of the injury must also be studied to determine their impact on quality of life (Boakye et al., 2012).

Long-Term Health-Care Needs

As the population in the United States ages, so do the survivors with SCIs. Investigators have estimated that 40% of individuals with SCIs are more than 45 years old. Research studies are investigating how the normal aging process affects the preexisting musculoskeletal and cardiopulmonary deficits experienced by individuals who have had an SCI and how cumulative stresses sustained from years of wheelchair propulsion, repetitive upper extremity activities, and assisted ambulation may accelerate problems encountered with aging. As patients age, they can experience declines in function and the need to use greater assistance. Fatigue, weakness, medical complications, shoulder pain, weight gain, and postural changes have been attributed to declines in function. Fortunately, many of these functional limitations are amenable to physical therapy intervention, including the procurement of adaptive equipment, seating systems, and power wheelchairs (Gerhart et al., 1993).

An important point for health-care providers working with individuals with SCIs is that many of the problems associated with aging and overuse may be preventable through education, health promotion, and wellness activities. Comprehensive follow-up services are extremely important to these individuals and may enhance fitness and decrease the incidence of secondary complications (Gerhart et al., 1993; Somers and Bruce, 2014).

Chapter summary

Patients with SCIs benefit from comprehensive rehabilitation services to optimize their functional independence. Physical therapy treatment sessions started shortly after the patient's injury can help improve the patient's strength, mobility, and cardiopulmonary function. Treatment should continue with admission to a comprehensive rehabilitation center where additional resources can be devoted to the patient's optimal recovery. Multiple therapeutic interventions and modalities are available to assist the patient in achieving the highest level of functional independence. Emphasizing the patient's active participation in the rehabilitation process is essential. In addition, patient and family education must be included from the very start of rehabilitation to ensure a successful transition from health-care facility to home. Early discussions with the patient regarding returning to home and work or school assist the patient with reintegration into the community. Adequate long-term follow-up care remains absolutely essential in order to eliminate or minimize the potential secondary complications that can develop in this patient population. Changes in our approach to physical therapy have developed as our understanding of nervous system plasticity have emerged.

Review questions

1. List the four most common causes of SCIs.

2. Differentiate between a complete SCI and an incomplete SCI.

3. What are the characteristics of spinal shock?

4. What is autonomic dysreflexia? Describe the clinical manifestations of a patient experiencing this

condition.

5. What is the functional potential of a patient with C7 tetraplegia?

6. List three physical therapy interventions that will improve pulmonary function.

7. List the three primary goals of physical therapy intervention during the acute care phase of rehabilitation.

8. Discuss a typical mat exercise program for a patient with C6 tetraplegia.

9. What is the most functional type of wheelchair-to-mat transfer for a patient with C7 tetraplegia?

10. List the benefits of a therapeutic pool program.

11. Discuss the gait training sequence for a patient with paraplegia who will be using orthoses.

12. Describe important areas for patient and family teaching for a patient with SCI.

Case studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Examination and Evaluation

History

Chart Review

The patient is a 20-year-old man who was transferred to the University of Evansville Medical Center 1 week after diving into a shallow wave and hitting a sandbar while surfing. He sustained a teardrop fracture of C5 resulting in a medical diagnosis of C6 incomplete tetraplegia. He aspirated water and lost consciousness. He was initially taken to a local hospital, placed in Gardner-Wells tongs, and treated for aspiration pneumonia. On admission to the Medical Center the patient was conscious and alert. He had decreased breath sounds with crackles over the lateral bases. Light touch and pinprick were intact to T1 with intact perianal sensation. Proprioception was intact in all extremity joints. Computed tomography showed no blockage and surgery was not indicated. X-ray showed diaphragm movement of two intercostal spaces. Past medical history includes childhood asthma and is otherwise unremarkable. Medications: Tylenol for pain as needed. A halo and vest are to be applied tomorrow to provide immobilization of the fracture and to allow for participation in the rehabilitation process.

Physical therapy has been ordered for examination and treatment with possible transfer to rehabilitation unit.

Subjective

The patient states that he is not in pain but that the tongs are annoying. He is a part-time college student and lives at home with his parents. The home is a one-story house with a one-step entry with a railing. At school, all of the buildings have elevators. The patient's goals are to return home to live with his parents and to learn to get around by himself. He gives consent to participate in examination.

Objective

Appearance, Rest Posture, Equipment: The patient is lying supine in bed with his head in tongs. His arms are in extension at his sides, and his legs are also in extension. He has a Foley catheter in place. IV present left forearm. He is resting on an air fluid mattress.

Systems review

Communication/Cognition: The patient is alert and oriented × 3. Communication is intact. Yes-no responses are reliable. He is able to follow complex verbal commands with 100% accuracy.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: BP = 120/75 mm Hg, HR = 70 bpm, RR = 16 breaths/min.

Integumentary: Skin is intact. No redness is noted. He is dependent in pressure relief.

Musculoskeletal: Gross strength and range of motion (ROM) are impaired bilaterally. No postural asymmetries are noted.

Neuromuscular: Movement is impaired bilaterally.

Tests and measures

Anthropometrics: Height 5′9″, weight 160 lbs, Body Mass Index 24 (20–24 is normal).

Ventilation/Respiration: Vital capacity is 1,000 mL taken with spirometer in supine. Breathing pattern is 4-diaphragm. Epigastric rise is 1″. Cough is nonfunctional.

Range of Motion: Passive ROM: Upper extremity (UE) passive ROM limited bilaterally at shoulders to 90 degrees flexion and abduction due to cervical instability. Shoulder internal and external passive ROM within functional limits (WFL). Elbow, wrist, and hand passive ROM WFL. Lower extremity (LE) passive ROM WFL except passive straight leg raise limited to 60 degrees bilaterally.

Active ROM: UE active ROM limited bilaterally at shoulders to 90 degrees flexion and abduction due to cervical instability. No active ROM of neck, trunk, and shoulders past 90 degrees due to cervical instability. Bilateral elbow flexion WFL. Bilateral wrist extension WFL. All other joints: no active ROM noted.

Reflex Integrity: Deep tendon reflexes: biceps: 2 + bilaterally. Triceps, patellar, and Achilles: 0 bilaterally. Babinski present bilaterally. There is a mild increase in tone bilaterally in ankle plantar flexors and hamstrings.

Motor Function: The patient is dependent in log rolling and all other motor functions.

Neuromotor Development: Unable to assess postural reactions secondary to spinal instability.

Muscle Performance: All testing was done in the recumbent position. Neck, trunk, and shoulder girdle muscles limited to trace and humeral active motion only without resistance due to cervical instability.

	Right	Left
Sternocleidomastoid	1/5	1/5
Upper trapezius	1/5	1/5
Deltoid	1/5	1/5
Pectoralis major	3/5	3/5
Teres major	3/5	3/5
Biceps	3/5	3/5
Wrist extensors	3/5	3/5
Triceps	0/5	0/5
Finger flexors	0/5	0/5
Finger abductors	0/5	0/5
Hip flexors	0/5	0/5
Knee extensors	0/5	0/5
Ankle dorsiflexors	0/5	0/5
Long toe extensors	0/5	0/5
Ankle plantar flexors	0/5	0/5

Gait, Locomotion, Balance: The patient is dependent in gait and locomotion. He is limited to recumbent position due to cervical instability.

Sensory Integrity: Light touch and pinprick intact through T1, absent below; perianal sensation intact. Proprioception: intact in all UE and LE joints.

Self-Care: Patient is dependent in all self-care activities.

Assessment/evaluation

The patient is a 20-year-old man. His status 1 week after C5 teardrop fracture shows a neurologic level at C5 with an incomplete lesion and anterior cord syndrome.

ASIA Impairment Scale: C Motor Incomplete

Functional Independence Measure: transfer—1, walk/wheelchair—1 (wheelchair), stairs—1

Problem list

1. Decreased respiratory function
2. Decreased tolerance to upright
3. Decreased strength all intact muscle groups
4. Decreased passive ROM of hamstrings
5. Dependent in pressure relief and skin inspection
6. Dependent in mobility and ADLs
7. Lack of patient and family education

Diagnosis

Patient exhibits impaired motor function, peripheral nerve integrity, and sensory integrity associated with nonprogressive disorders of the spinal cord. He exhibits neuromuscular APTA Guide pattern 5H.

Prognosis

Patient will improve his level of functional independence and functional skills as muscle strength and stability of the cervical spine improve. Rehabilitation potential for stated goals is good. The patient is motivated and has good family support and financial resources. Physical therapy visits in acute care: up to 10 visits with continuation to rehabilitation up to 150 additional visits.

Short-term goals (2 Weeks)

1. Patient will tolerate being upright in wheelchair for 2 consecutive hours.
2. Patient will increase strength of innervated UE muscles by one muscle grade.
3. Patient will perform pressure relief and skin inspection with minimal assist of 1.
4. Patient will perform bed/mat mobility with moderate assist of 1.
5. Patient will perform a lateral transfer with a sliding board with maximal assist of 1.
6. Patient will propel wheelchair with rim projections 25 feet with minimal assist of 1.
7. Patient will maintain balance in short sitting with elbows biomechanically locked for 5 minutes independently.
8. Patient will require moderate assist of 1 to perform assisted cough.

Long-term goals (6 Weeks, the Anticipated Discharge to Home with Family)

1. Patient will be independent in diaphragm-strengthening exercises and assisted cough techniques.
2. Patient will tolerate being upright in his wheelchair for 8 consecutive hours.
3. Patient will increase strength of innervated UE muscles to 5/5.
4. Patient will increase passive ROM of hamstrings to at least 90 degrees to allow for long sitting.

5. Patient will be independent in pressure relief and skin inspection.
6. Patient will be independent in bed/mat mobility.
7. Patient will perform a modified prone-on-elbows transfer independently.
8. Patient will independently propel wheelchair with rim projections over level surfaces and ramps.
9. Patient will perform ADLs with minimum assist of 1.
10. Patient will be able to direct someone how to help him get back into the wheelchair in case of a fall.
11. Family will demonstrate how to assist patient with ADLs, transfers, home exercise program, and stretching.

Plan

Treatment Schedule: The PT and PTA will see the patient for 45-minute treatment sessions twice a day 5 days a week, and once on Saturday for the next 6 weeks. Treatment sessions will include improving tolerance to upright, respiratory training, strength training, stretching, pressure relief and skin inspection, functional mobility training, family education, and discharge planning. A home assessment will be recommended. The physical therapy team will reassess the patient weekly.

Coordination, Communication, Documentation: The PT and PTA will communicate with the patient and his family on a regular basis. The acute-care PT will communicate with the rehabilitation team on his discharge from this facility. Outcomes of physical therapy interventions will be documented on a daily basis.

Patient/Client Instruction: The patient and his family will be instructed in stretching exercises and pressure-relief techniques as his condition stabilizes. In rehabilitation, the patient's family will participate in family training to learn to assist him with ADLs, transfers, and functional mobility activities.

Procedural interventions

1. Improve tolerance to upright:
   a. Elevate head of bed, monitoring vitals, and gradually increasing length of time in this position
   b. Sitting in a reclining wheelchair with footrests elevated, monitoring vitals, and gradually increasing length of time and decreasing amount of recline
   c. Standing on a tilt table, monitoring vitals, and gradually increasing incline and length of time
2. Respiratory training:
   a. Manual chest wall stretching
   b. Teach huffing
   c. Assisted cough techniques in supine progressing to prone, short sitting, and then long sitting
   d. Inspiratory strengthening with manual resistance progressing to weights
3. Strength training:
   a. Isometric strengthening of neck, trunk, and shoulder girdle muscles with halo in place after receiving approval from physician
   b. Active movements of humerus without resistance (limited to 90 degrees of flexion and abduction)
   c. Biceps strengthening against gravity progressing to using TheraBand or cuff weights
4. Stretching:
   a. Passive stretching of hamstrings and other lower extremity muscles by therapist
   b. Prolonged stretching of hamstrings using overhead sling in bed
5. Skin inspection and pressure relief:
   a. Instruct on the importance of pressure relief and skin inspection
   b. Implement a turning schedule for when patient is in bed
   c. Implement prone-positioning program—at least 20 minutes in prone three times a day
   d. Teach weight-shifting techniques while in wheelchair—1 minute of pressure relief for every 15 to 20 minutes of sitting
   e. Teach skin inspection techniques using mirror
6. Functional mobility training:
   a. Mat activities—gradually decreasing amount of assistance while rolling prone over a wedge
   b. Transition to prone on elbows
   c. Rhythmic stabilization, alternating isometrics in developmental positions
   d. Weight shifting in prone-on-elbows transition to supine
   e. Pull-ups using therapist's hands

f. Transition to supine on elbows
g. Rhythmic stabilization, alternating isometrics, and weight shifting in supine on elbows
h. Transition to long sitting once hamstring range is sufficient
i. Teach elbow locking and rhythmic stabilization, alternating isometrics in long sitting

7. Transfers—gradually decreasing amount of assist:
   a. Assisted sliding board transfer with elbow locking initially progressing to prone on elbows independently
   b. Bed to wheelchair
   c. Wheelchair to car
   d. Toilet transfers
8. Wheelchair mobility—gradually decreasing amount of assistance:
   a. Education about wheelchair parts (armrests, footrests, etc.) and how to use them to propel wheelchair over level surfaces, gradually increasing distance
   b. Propel wheelchair up and down ramps
   c. Educate on how to safely fall/tip over in wheelchair
   d. Educate caregiver in how to assist the patient in getting back into wheelchair after a fall
9. Family education:
   a. Educate family members on appropriate ways to assist with transfers
   b. Have family members assist with transfers
   c. Educate family on how to assist with ADLs
   d. Have family demonstrate assistance with ADLs
10. Discharge planning:
   a. Consult with other members of rehabilitation team, patient, and family regarding discharge to home with assistance of family
   b. Perform home and school assessment as needed
   c. Secure equipment such as universal cuff, sliding board, pressure reducing bed
   d. Obtain lightweight wheelchair with ROHO cushion, projection rims, push handles for pressure relief, swing-away desk arms, and swing-away leg rests with heel loops
   e. Instruct patient in home exercise program and long-term fitness program to address cardiopulmonary fitness, flexibility, and strengthening
11. Refer patient to driver's training and vocational rehabilitation

Questions to think about

- What type of specific upper extremity strengthening exercises should be included in the patient's plan of care?
- How can aerobic conditioning be included in the patient's treatment program?
- What types of activities or exercises would be included as part of the patient's home exercise program?

References

Alvarez SE. Functional assessment and training. In: Adkins HV, ed. *Spinal cord injury.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1985:131–154.

American Spinal Injury Association (ASIA). *International standards for neurological classification of spinal cord injury.* Atlanta, GA: ASIA; 2013.

Atrice MB, Morrison SA, McDowell SL, et al. Traumatic spinal cord injury. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St Louis: Elsevier; 2013:459–520.

Basso DM. Neuroanatomical substrates of functional recovery after experimental spinal cord injury: implications of basic science research for human spinal cord injury. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80:808–817.

Basso DM, Bebrman AL, Harkema SJ. Recovery of walking after central nervous system insult: basic research in the control of locomotion as a foundation for developing rehabilitation strategies. *Neurol Rep.* 2000;24:47–54.

Boakye B, Leigh BC, Skelly AC. Quality of life in persons with spinal cord injury: comparisons with other populations. *J Neurosurg Spine.* 2012;17(1 Suppl):29–37.

Borello-France D, Rosen S, Young AB, et al. The relationship between perceived exertion and heart rate during arm crank exercise in individuals with paraplegia. *Neurol Rep.* 2000;24(3):94–100.

Burns S, Biering-Sorensen F, Donovan W, et al. International standards for neurological classification of spinal cord injury, revised 2011. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil.* 2012;18(1):85–99.

Burr JF, Shephard RJ, Zehr EP. Physical activity after stroke and spinal cord injury. *Can Fam Physician.* 2012;58(11):1236–1239.

Cerny K, Waters R, Hislop H, et al. Walking and wheelchair energetics in persons with paraplegia. *Phys Ther.* 1980;60:1133–1139.

Craik RL. Abnormalities of motor behavior. In: *Contemporary management of motor control problems: proceedings of the II step conference.* Alexandria, VA: Foundation for Physical Therapy; 1991:155–164.

Cromwell SJ, Paquette VL. The effect of botulinum toxin A on the function of a person with poststroke quadriplegia. *Phys Ther.* 1996;76:395–402.

de Leon RD, Roy RR, Edgerton VR. Is the recovery of stepping following spinal cord injury mediated by modifying existing neural pathways or by generating new pathways? a perspective. *Phys Ther.* 2001;81:1904–1911.

Decker M, Hall A. Physical therapy in spinal cord injury. In: Bloch RF, Basbaum M, eds. *Management of spinal cord injuries.* Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1986:320–347.

Department of Health & Human Services. *2008 physical activity guidelines for Americans summary.* October 2008. http://www.health.gov/paguidelines/guidelines/summary.aspx Accessed November 30, 2011.

DeVivo MJ, Richards JS. Community reintegration and quality of life following spinal cord injury. *Paraplegia.* 1992;30:108–112.

Eng JJ, Levins SM, Townson AF, et al. Use of prolonged standing for individuals with spinal cord injuries. *Phys Ther.* 2001;81:1392–1399.

Field-Fote EC, Roach KE. Influence of locomotor training approach on walking speed and distance in people with chronic spinal cord injury: a randomized clinical trial. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(1):48–60.

Field-Fote EC, Tepavac D. Improved intralimb coordination in people with incomplete spinal cord injury following training with body weight support and electrical stimulation. *Phys Ther.* 2002;82:707–715.

Finkbeiner K, Russo SG, eds. *Physical therapy management of spinal cord injury: accent on independence.* Fishersville, VA: Woodrow Wilson Rehabilitation Center, through Project Scientia, a grant from the Paralyzed Veterans of America; 1990:51–58.

Fulk GT, Behrman AL, Schmitz TJ. Traumatic spinal cord injury. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GT, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* ed 6 Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:889–963.

Fuller KS. Traumatic spinal cord injury. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology implications for the physical therapist.* ed 3 St Louis: Saunders; 2009:1496–1516.

Gerhart KA, Bergstrom E, Charlifue SW, et al. Long-term spinal cord injury: functional

changes over time. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1993;74:1030–1034.
Giesecke C. Aquatic rehabilitation of clients with spinal cord injury. In: Ruoti RG, Morris DM, Cole AJ, eds. *Aquatic rehabilitation.* Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1997:134–150.
Harkema SJ, Hillyer J, Schmidt-Read M, Ardolino E, Sisto SA, Behrman AL. Locomotor training: as a treatment of spinal cord injury and in the progression of neurologic rehabilitation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012a;93(9):1588–1597.
Harkema SJ, Schmidt-Read M, Lorenz DJ, Edgerton VR, Behramn AL. Balance and ambulation improvements in individuals with chronic incomplete spinal cord injury using locomotor training-based rehabilitation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012b;93(9):1508–1517.
Hultborn H, Nielsen JB. Spinal control of locomotion: from cat to man. *Acta Physiol (Oxf).* 2007;189:111–121.
Jacobs PL, Nash MS. Exercise recommendations for individuals with spinal cord injury. *Sports Med.* 2004;34(11):727–751.
Jacobs PL, Nash MS, Rusinowski JW. Circuit training provides cardiorespiratory and strength benefits in persons with paraplegia. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2001;33(5):711–717.
Jayaraman A, Thompson CK, Rymer WZ, Hornby GT. Short-term maximal intensity resistance training increases volitional function and strength in chronic incomplete spinal cord injury: a pilot study. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2013;37(3):112–117.
Katz RT. Management of spasticity. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1988;67:108–115.
Katz RT. Management of spastic hypertonia after spinal cord injury. In: Yarkony GM, ed. *Spinal cord injury medical management and rehabilitation.* Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen Publishers; 1994:97–107.
Lewthwaite R, Thompson L, Boyd LA, et al. Reconceptualizing physical therapy for spinal cord injury rehabilitation: physical activity for long-term health and function. *Infusions Res Pract.* 1994;1:1–9.
Morrison S. Fitness for the spinal cord population: establishing a program in your facility. *Neurol Rep.* 1994;18:22–27.
National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center. *Spinal cord injury facts and figures at a glance.* Birmingham, AL: University of Alabama; March 2013.
Nawoczenski DA, Ritter-Soronen JM, Wilson CM, Howe BA, Ludewig PM. Clinical trial of exercise for shoulder pain in chronic spinal cord injury. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86(12):1604–1618.
Nixon V. *Spinal cord injury: a guide to functional outcomes in physical therapy management.* Rockville, MD: Aspen Systems; 1985 pp 41–66, 177–188.
Scelza W, Shatzer M. Pharmacology of spinal cord injury: basic mechanism of action and side effects of commonly used drugs. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2003;27(3):101–108.
SCI Action Canada. *Physical activity guidelines for adults with spinal cord injury.* 2011. http://sciactioncanada.ca/docs/guidelines/Physical-Activity-Guidelines-for-Adults-with-a-Spinal-Cord-Injury-Health-Care-Professional.pdf Accessed September 15, 2014.
Somers MF. *Spinal cord injury functional rehabilitation.* ed 3 Boston, MA: Pearson; 2010 pp 527–551, 67, 130, 136–153, 194–198, 29–300, 345–346.
Somers MF, Bruce J. *Spinal cord injury.* Clinical Summaries American Physical Therapy Association; 2014. http://www.ptnow.org/ClinicalSummaries.aspx Accessed September 15, 2014.
U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA allows marketing of first wearable, motorized device that helps people with certain spinal cord injuries to walk.
van Middendorp JJ, Hosman AJF, Donders ART, et al. A clinical prediction rule for ambulation outcomes after traumatic spinal cord injury: a longitudinal cohort study. *Lancet.* 2011;377(Mar):1004–1010.
Wetzel J. Respiratory evaluation and treatment. In: Adkins HV, ed. *Spinal cord injury.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1985:75–98.
Yarkony GM, Chen D. Rehabilitation of patients with spinal cord injuries. In: Braddom RL, ed. *Physical medicine and rehabilitation.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1996:1149–1179.

CHAPTER 13

Other Neurologic Disorders

Objectives

After reading this chapter, the student will be able to:

1. Describe the incidence, etiology, and clinical manifestations of Parkinson disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, or postpolio syndrome.
2. Understand the typical medical and surgical management of persons with Parkinson disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, or postpolio syndrome.
3. Identify specific treatment interventions relative to the stage or degree of progression, activity limitations, and participation restrictions of persons with Parkinson disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, or postpolio syndrome.
4. Discuss strategies for patient/family education to address functional limitations in persons with Parkinson disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, or postpolio syndrome.

Introduction

Many neurologic disorders are chronic in nature such as Parkinson disease (PD) and multiple sclerosis (MS), and some are progressive in nature such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) and Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS). ALS is a terminal degenerative disease of the upper motor neurons (UMNs) and lower motor neurons (LMNs). Individuals with postpolio syndrome (PPS) experience new symptoms decades after having overcome polio. Recovery is not expected in these neurologic disorders, except for individuals with GBS. GBS is a peripheral as opposed to a central nervous system (CNS) phenomenon, and remyelination of nerves can occur.

Parkinson disease and multiple sclerosis are both progressive disorders. Despite that fact, life expectancy in all of the neurologic conditions discussed, except ALS, is not usually seriously diminished. There are a few exceptions such as when the cardiopulmonary system is involved or there is rapid progression of the disease. ALS is a major exception as death usually occurs within 4 years of diagnosis. Regardless of whether the disease is acute or chronic, or whether recovery occurs as part of the pathologic process, physical therapy can assist these individuals and their families to function optimally and participate in their life.

Intervention strategies must relate to the level of involvement and stage of disease progression or, in some cases, recovery of abilities. For example, a person diagnosed in the early stages of MS, PD, or even ALS may be able to participate in a moderately intense exercise program while a person in the later stages of PD, MS, or ALS would not. Exercise and other physical therapy interventions must be specific to the type and severity of the movement dysfunction. For example, in a patient with MS who exhibits ataxia (a condition of too much movement), stability is more important than mobility. However, in PD where the body, especially the trunk, exhibits rigidity, mobility is more important than stability. As muscle weakness progresses in ALS, the person is able to do less and interventions move from being restorative or preventative in nature to compensatory and palliative. Fatigue is an ever-present finding or concern in all of the neurologic disorders discussed in this chapter, and its management must be an integral part of any plan of care. Each disorder will be presented with its clinical features, incidence and etiology, physical therapy goals, and sample interventions.

Parkinson disease

Parkinson disease (PD) was first described in 1817 by James Parkinson in an essay on the shaking palsy. It is a chronic, progressive neurologic condition that affects the motor system. The four primary symptoms are bradykinesia (slowness of movement), rigidity, tremor, and postural instability. These symptoms are caused by a decrease in dopamine (DA), a neurotransmitter, stored in the substantia nigra. The substantia nigra is a component of the basal ganglia (see Chapter 2, Figure 2-6). The basal ganglia are primarily responsible for the regulation of posture and movement. Lesions in the basal ganglia change the character of movement rather than produce weakness or paralysis (Fuller and Winkler, 2009).

In actuality, parkinsonism is a group of disorders involving dysfunction of the basal ganglia. The most common type of parkinsonism is primary parkinsonism or PD. It is also known as idiopathic Parkinson disease (IPD) because there is no apparent cause. Other types of parkinsonism include secondary parkinsonism and Parkinson-plus syndromes. Secondary parkinsonism occurs as a result of other conditions and can be associated with encephalitis, alcoholism, exposure to certain toxins, traumatic brain injuries, vascular insults, and use of psychotropic medications. Long-term use of medications used to control mood and behavior can produce Parkinson-like symptoms. Parkinson-plus syndromes include disorders such as multisystem atrophy, progressive supranuclear palsy, and Shy-Drager syndrome. These syndromes produce other neurologic signs of multiple system degeneration such as cerebellar dysfunction and autonomic system dysfunction (dysautonomia) in addition to the classic signs indicative of degeneration of the DA-producing neurons of the substantia nigra.

PD is one of the most common movement disorders in the United States (Sutton, 2009). It is the most prevalent degenerative CNS disorder. PD accounts for 85% of the cases of parkinsonism. Further description and discussion will be confined to primary or idiopathic PD with only minimal references to the other types of parkinsonism. Incidence is 20.5 per 100,000 in the United States and between 5 and 24 per 100,000 worldwide. The incidence is rising as the Baby Boomers age because PD becomes more common with advancing age. Individuals over the age of 85 have a 1 in 3 risk of PD (Aminoff, 1994). Currently, at least a million people are living with PD in the United States (Melnick, 2013). The average age of onset is 62.4 years, with the majority of cases occurring between 50 and 79 years. Ten percent of cases occur before the age of 40.

The etiology of Parkinson disease is probably multifactorial because many factors contribute to the clinical entity. Risk factors are increasing age and having an affected family member. Although very few cases of PD are solely genetic in origin, there is evidence to support a role for genetic factors. Also, there is evidence to support environmental factors, such as significant use of pesticide and herbicide, as playing a role in causing the disease process. In all likelihood, there is an interaction between genetic and environmental factors that cause Parkinson disease (Singleton et al., 2013).

Pathophysiology

Parkinson disease is a disorder of the DA-producing neurons of the substantia nigra in the basal ganglia. The substantia nigra is subcortical gray matter that contains pigmented neurons. As these neurons degenerate, they lose their color. A 70% to 80% loss of neurons occurs before symptoms become apparent. The severity of loss of DA correlates well with the amount of movement slowness or bradykinesia exhibited by the patient. Loss of DA neurons and the production of Lewy bodies within the pigmented substantia nigra neurons are hallmarks of idiopathic PD. Lewy bodies contain neurofilaments and hyaline. They are part of the aging process and are seen in certain vulnerable neuronal populations. Lewy bodies are found in smaller numbers in other neurodegenerative disorders, such as Alzheimer disease, but in different brain areas.

DA is both an excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmitter. Because of the role of the basal ganglia in movement initiation and in releasing one movement sequence in order for another one to begin, basal ganglia circuitry is altered. As DA is depleted, some pathways are insufficiently activated while other pathways become hyperactive. Insufficient activity slows movement and affects timing. The cholinergic system becomes more active because of the lack of inhibition from dopamine. Acetylcholine is used by the small interconnecting neurons in the basal ganglia. The increased

cholinergic activity means more acetylcholine and causes an increase in muscle activity on both sides of a joint. This results in symptoms of rigidity and further slowing of movement or bradykinesia.

Clinical Features

Clinically, a patient with PD exhibits bradykinesia, rigidity, tremor, and postural instability. Bradykinesia is particularly evident in the performance of activities of daily living (ADLs). Slowing of oral movements can result in poor speech intelligibility and inadequate breath support often manifested as a soft monotone voice. Swallowing may become impaired. Handwriting can be cramped and small; an occurrence known as micrographia. Akinesia is an inability to initiate movement such as rising from a chair, turning in bed, or simply crossing the legs. As movement slows, the patient tends to adopt a fixed forward-flexed posture, and the ability to extend against gravity is lost.

Rigidity occurs in the trunk and the extremities. An early sign of this problem occurs when the individual loses the ability to swing the arms during walking. Rigidity is resistance to passive movement regardless of the speed of the movement. Two forms of rigidity, lead-pipe and cogwheel, can be demonstrated in a person with PD. In lead-pipe rigidity, there is constant resistance to passive limb movement in any direction regardless of speed. Cogwheel rigidity is the result of combining lead-pipe rigidity and tremor. The rigidity causes a catch, and the tremor allows the letting go. This type of rigidity results in a jerky, ratchet-like response to passive movement characterized by a tensing and letting go. Rigidity of the trunk impairs breathing and phonation by restricting chest wall motion. Rigidity can increase energy expenditure throughout the day and its presence may be related to the postexercise fatigue experienced by these patients.

Tremor is often the first sign of PD. Because it manifests at rest and disappears on voluntary movement, it is classified as a resting tremor as opposed to an intention (on action) tremor. The tremor of the hand has a regular rhythm (4 to 7 beats per second) and is described as "pill-rolling." Tremors can also occur in the oral area or within postural muscles of the head, neck, and trunk. Tremors may begin unilaterally and progress over time to all four limbs and the neck. Tremors rarely interfere with ADLs.

Postural instability is a very serious problem for patients with PD and is a major reason for restriction in a person's activities and participation in life. Loss of postural extension and the inability to respond to expected and unexpected postural disturbances can cause falls. A person's fall potential increases the longer the person has the disease. People with PD also have lower confidence in being able to avoid a fall while performing ADLs than healthy controls (Adkins et al., 2003). Whether an increased fear of falling further contributes to a greater risk of falling in this population is yet to be determined. Visuospatial deficits and slow processing of sensory information related to balance do contribute to postural instability (Melnick, 2013). The person with PD does not accurately perceive proprioceptive and kinesthetic input (Konczak et al., 2009). Patients with PD mix hip and ankle strategies, which produces maladaptive balance responses (Horak et al., 1996; Horak et al., 2005). Anticipatory postural responses were found to be poor or absent in several studies (Glatt, 1989; Mancini et al., 2009). Abnormal postural responses result from an inability to distinguish self-movement from movement of the environment. The person with PD is overdependent on vision for movement cues and cannot make use of vestibular information from the inner ear to make appropriate postural responses (Bronstein et al., 1990).

Other typical features of PD include a flexed posture, masked facies, dysphagia, festinating gait, freezing episodes, and fatigue. Postural deficits include flexion of the head, neck, and trunk, which create a forward displacement of the center of gravity (Figure 13-1). However, exaggeration of flexion in the hips and knees may assist in bringing weight more posteriorly. Over time these postural changes become fixed because of the rigidity of the trunk and have been described as flexion dystonia. Loss of trunk extension occurs early in the disease, followed by loss of rotation and subsequent loss of arm swing. The face becomes rigid and shows little or no facial expression. As oral structures lose their ability to move and become rigid, swallowing becomes more and more difficult, leading to concerns about the person's nutritional intake.

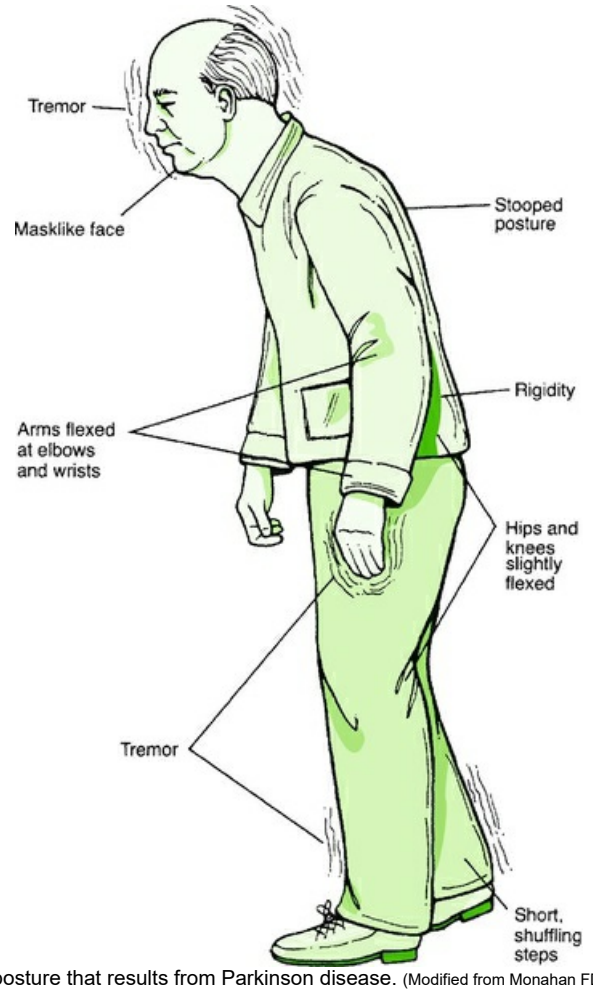


FIGURE 13-1 Typical posture that results from Parkinson disease. (Modified from Monahan FD, Neighbors M: Medical-surgical nursing: foundations for clinical practice, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1998, WB Saunders. In Copstead LEC, Banasik JL: *Pathophysiology*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2005, Elsevier Saunders.)

The gait of a person with PD is shuffling, punctuated by short steps and a progressive increase in speed as if trying to catch up. This is called *festination*. If festination occurs while walking forward, it is referred to as *propulsion*; if it occurs while walking backward, it is referred to as *retropulsion*. Foot clearance is decreased because of the short, slow shuffling, therefore increasing the person's risk for falling. Freezing occurs when the person becomes stuck in a posture. This usually occurs while walking and can be triggered by environmental situations, such as a doorway or change of floor surface. Freezing episodes can occur at any time, such as when making arm movements, speaking, or blinking. Festinating gait, postural dysfunction, and freezing of gait (FOG) are three contributing causes of the postural instability seen in patients with PD.

Fatigue

Fatigue contributes to postural instability because of the difficulty the person with PD experiences while trying to sustain an activity. Fatigue affects 50% of this population and is often one of its most disabling effects (Friedman and Friedman, 2001). People with PD exhibit lethargy as the day progresses. A sedentary lifestyle with decreased activity contributes to general deconditioning. Fatigue is strongly correlated with high emotional distress and low quality of life in patients with PD who are nondemented or depressed (Herlofson and Larsen, 2003). Patients with increased levels of fatigue are more likely to be sedentary and have poorer levels of physical function than those with lower levels of fatigue (Garber and Friedman, 2003).

Gait

Up to a third of patients with PD initially present with postural instability and gait disturbances (PIGD) that constitutes a group (O'Sullivan and Bezkor, 2014). Gait speed is slow with a narrow

base and a characteristic festination or shuffling. Arm swing is lost early in the disease process. Posture becomes more and more forwardly flexed and lower extremity range of motion (ROM) becomes more and more restricted. Heel strike and toe-off are both lost, resulting in decreased foot clearance. Because of an inability to change a motor program once it has begun, the person has difficulty altering gait speed or stride length in response to changes in environmental demands. Bradykinesia and rigidity are the causes of the absent arm swing and trunk rotation seen during typical ambulation and turning. Bond and Morris (2000) demonstrated that the gait dysfunction in persons with PD got worse when they were asked to perform a complex task while walking. Difficulty stopping a motor program, such as when walking or running, predisposes the person with PD to slips, trips, and falls (Morris and Iansek, 1997).

Falls

Falls are a very common problem in persons with PD. Forty-eight percent of early-stage optimally medicated individuals with PD reported a fall in a study by Kerr et al. (2010). Schrag et al. (2002) found that 64% of their community-based subjects with PD had experienced falls with postural instability. Self-selected gait speed can be used to predict fall risk in individuals with PD (Nemanich et al., 2013). A community-dwelling older adult with PD is twice as likely to experience a fall as is a community-dwelling older adult without PD (Wood et al., 2002). Additionally, it was found that previous falls, disease duration, dementia, and loss of arm swing were predictors of falling. Therefore, people with PD who have fallen previously are more likely to fall again, and individuals with dementia or loss of arm swing are more likely to fall. FOG increases the risk for falling (Bloem et al., 2004). The longer a person has PD, the greater the risk for falling.

Systemic Manifestations

Half of the individuals with PD exhibit dementia and intellectual changes caused by the neurochemical changes in the basal ganglia (Fuller and Winkler, 2009). Dementia along with bradyphrenia, depression, and dysautonomia are systemic manifestations of the disease. Bradyphrenia is a slowing of thought processes. It is usually accompanied by a lack of ability to attend and concentrate. Low motivation and passivity can also be related to depression or to sensory deprivation from a lack of movement. Depression is common in patients with PD and some researchers think that depression may begin even before the onset of PD (Fuller and Winkler, 2009).

Stages

The Hoehn and Yahr classification of disability (Hoehn and Yahr, 1967) (Table 13-1) is used to stage the severity of involvement of PD. New stages have been added to better describe the progression of the disease. Stage 0 indicates no signs of the disease. Stage 1 indicates minimal disease and stage 5 indicates that the person is in bed or using a wheelchair all of the time. In addition to stage 0, there are stages 1.5 and 2.5 (Goetz et al., 2004). The average patient shows slow, gradual progression of the disease over a period of 5 to 30 years. Therefore, the life expectancy of someone with PD is only a little shorter than someone without PD of the same age (Weiner et al., 2001).

Table 13-1

Hoehn and Yahr Staging Scale for Parkinson Disease

Stage	Progression of Symptoms
0	No signs of disease
1	Unilateral symptoms only
1.5	Unilateral and axial involvement
2	Bilateral symptoms, no impairment of balance
2.5	Mild bilateral disease with recovery on pull test
3	Balance impairment, mild to moderate disease, physically independent
4	Severe disability, but still able to walk or stand unassisted
5	Needing a wheelchair or bedridden unless assisted

Modified from Goetz CG, Poewe W, Rascol O, et al: Movement Disorder Society Task Force report of the Hoehn and Yahr staging scale: Status and recommendations. *Mov Disord* 19:1020–1028, 2004.

The Hoehn and Yahr scale is commonly used to describe how the symptoms of Parkinson disease progress. The original scale included stages 1–5. Stage 0 has since been added, and stages 1.5 and 2.5 have been proposed to best indicate the relative level of disability in this population.

Diagnosis

There is no diagnostic test for Parkinson disease; therefore diagnosis is based on the person's clinical presentation of signs and symptoms and history. Presence of two of the four cardinal features and exclusion of the Parkinson-plus syndromes is usually employed to make the diagnosis (O'Sullivan and Bezkor, 2014). The Parkinson-plus syndromes do not respond typically to anti-Parkinson medication. Neuroimaging and lab tests are usually normal unless there are coexisting morbidities.

Medical Management

The mainstay of medical management of patients with Parkinson disease is pharmacologic. Selegine also called deprenyl (Eldepryl) or rasagiline (Azilect) are often used as first medications after diagnosis because they delay the need for giving levodopa (L-dopa). These monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors block the breakdown of dopamine and are thought to slow the progression of PD and delay the need for replacement medication for up to a year (Sutton, 2009). The major mainstay in treatment of Parkinson disease remains L-dopa, which is used to replace the lost DA. It works best to decrease rigidity and make movement easier. Dopamine cannot be given because it cannot cross the blood-brain barrier (BBB). L-dopa can cross the BBB. However, because a lot of the L-dopa gets broken down before it reaches the brain, scientists add carbidopa to the L-dopa to delay its breakdown. This addition allows more L-dopa to reach the basal ganglia and smaller doses of medication can be given. Sinemet is the brand name of a commonly used combination of carbidopa and L-dopa. Anticholinergics are medications that block the increase in acetylcholine that results from the decrease in available DA. Anticholinergics are helpful in reducing the resting tremor but have little or no effect on the other symptoms including postural instability. A list of medications and their intended use is found in Table 13-2. The physical therapist should alert the physical therapist assistant to look for possible side effects of the patient's medications.

Table 13-2

Medications Used for Neurologic Disorders

Brand Name of Medication	Usage
Artane	Moderate tremor and dystonia associated with wearing off in PD
Avonex	RRMS
Betaseron	RRMS, CIS
Copaxone	RRMS, CIS
Cogentin	End-of-dose "wearing off" in PD
Cortisone, corticosteroids, prednisone	Shorten acute attack in MS
Dantrium	Spasticity
Ditropan	Bladder urgency and frequency in MS
Eldepryl	Enhances levels of dopamine in early PD
Immunoglobulins	Duration and severity of GBS
Klonopin	Severe tremors in MS
Lioresal	Spasticity
Novatrone	SPMS, PRMS, advanced RRMS, IV delivery
Parlodel	End-of-dose "wearing off" and dyskinesias in PD
Probanthine	Bladder urgency and frequency in MS
Provigil	Fatigue in MS
Rebif	RRMS
Requip	Bradykinesia, rigidity, and motor fluctuations in PD
Sinemet IR or CR	Bradykinesia and rigidity in PD
Symmetrel	Bradykinesia and rigidity in PD Fatigue in MS, PPS
Tegretol	Tonic spasms in MS
Tysabri	RRMS not used initially, IV delivery
Urecholine	Urinary retention in MS
Valium	Night spasms in MS

CIS, clinical isolated syndrome; *CR*, controlled release; *GBS*, Guillain-Barré syndrome; *IR*, immediate release; *MS*, multiple sclerosis; *PD*, Parkinson disease; *PPS*, postpolio syndrome; *PRMS*, progressive relapsing multiple sclerosis; *RRMS*, relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis; *SPMS*, secondary progressive multiple sclerosis.

Unfortunately, with long-term use, L-dopa becomes less effective therapeutically. The medication usually works for only 4 to 6 years before its benefits are no longer evident. As the medication benefits decrease, other movement problems occur such as motor fluctuations, dyskinesias, and dystonia. Motor fluctuations are times when symptoms increase because the L-dopa is no longer able to cause a smooth and even effect. These times are also called "on/off" fluctuations or "on/off" phenomenon. Dyskinesias are involuntary movements involving the face, oral structures, head, trunk, or limbs. The timing of dyskinesias can vary. In some individuals, they may occur at the peak effect of the medication. This is the most common pattern. For other individuals, they occur at the beginning or end of a dose. The medication-induced dyskinesias can be reversed by decreasing the dose of anti-Parkinson medication given; however, the tremors, slowness of movement, and gait difficulties worsen. Therefore, some patients prefer to experience the dyskinesias rather than have

more severe PD symptoms. Dystonia is a twisting or torsion of body parts caused by a prolonged involuntary contraction. Patients report toe clawing or cramping of back, neck, face, and calf muscles. Wearing-off phenomenon is the deterioration of movement often noted at the end of the time-frame of medication. The therapist needs to be familiar with all of the medications a patient with PD is taking and their side effects. Balancing medications is very challenging in this patient population.

Surgical Management

Deep brain stimulation (DBS) has emerged as a viable treatment option for patients with PD. Electrodes are implanted into the brain to stop nerve signals that produce symptoms. DBS is safer than formerly used surgical ablation or destruction of structures because it is reversible. Electrodes are implanted into the subthalamic nucleus (STN) with a stimulation box placed subcutaneously in the subclavicular area much like an implantable cardiac pacemaker. The stimulation can be turned on and off by the patient. The amount of stimulation delivered is determined by the physician. Infection and hemorrhage are potential surgical risks. DBS reduces the need for medication and, therefore, the dyskinesias that accompany long-term use of L-dopa. Benefits of STN-DBS include improvement of all motor symptoms such as tremor, rigidity, and bradykinesia but variable results for gait (Kelly et al., 2006). Recent studies have found selective improvements in daily activities, freezing of gait, and turning performance (Rochester et al., 2012; Nui et al., 2012; Lohnes and Earhart, 2012).

Physical Therapy Management

Patients may be thought to present in three broad categories: tremor predominant, bradykinesia/akinesia, and rigidity/postural instability/gait difficulty. Goals can be related to the type of presentation on examination, but there is considerable overlap. Physical therapy is a beneficial adjunct to medication for people with PD (de Goede et al., 2001; Melnick, 2013; Morris, 2000). The primary physical therapy goal is to maximize function in the face of progressing pathology. Therefore the focus should be on early intervention. Gait hypokinesia or slowness affects almost everyone with PD. Stride length continues to shorten as the disorder progresses. Therefore teaching the patient strategies to move more easily is of utmost importance (Morris et al., 1998). A second goal is to prevent secondary sequelae, such as deconditioning, musculoskeletal changes related to stiffness, and loss of extension and rotation. Most individuals with PD succumb to respiratory infections (Melnick, 2013). The longer a person with PD is mobile, the less likely he or she is to develop pneumonia. Physical therapy interventions should focus on slowing the onset of predictable changes in posture, locomotion, and general activity level.

Gait Interventions

The physical therapist needs to ascertain the cause of the gait disturbance to pick the correct strategy for intervention. The physical therapist assistant should also understand the rationale behind the selected gait intervention. One of the assistant's major roles with this population is to educate the patient and the family members about the importance of good posture and daily walking and the benefits of sustained activity.

Using visual and auditory cues to improve attention during a movement task are strategies that appear to be helpful in treating the gait hypokinesia (Frazzitta et al., 2009; Nieuwboer et al., 2009). Walking while holding onto poles can vary the motor program enough to elicit a faster gait. Markers can be placed on the floor and the person directed to step on or over them. Walking toward a mirror allows use of visual feedback to maintain an upright trunk. This strategy can be helpful in the early and middle stages. Attentional strategies can also be used to enhance walking including having the person think about taking long strides, mentally rehearsing the path to be taken before walking, and avoiding any additional mental or secondary motor tasks during walking (Morris et al., 2001). In general, regardless of the task, breaking down the task into its component parts so the person can focus attention on each part separately is a very useful strategy (Morris, 2000). Step hesitation is often the beginning of gait problems for the patient with PD. Anticipatory postural adjustments (APAs) depend on proprioceptive awareness of the changes in weight displacement during step initiation (Mancini et al., 2009). Mancini et al. (2009) found that

medial lateral anticipatory adjustments were smaller in individuals with early and untreated PD. An accelerometer on the trunk can be used to measure APA. Proprioceptive deficits may appear before motor deficits in PD (Konczak et al., 2009). Slow gait in PD is characterized by a short stride so a way to document change in response to practice is to measure stride length before and after intervention. A measurable goal could be that the person would increase stride length by a certain amount or take less steps for a given distance.

Practice alternative walking patterns, such as side stepping, walking backward, braiding, and marching to various rhythms. Giving the person a mark on the floor to work toward or footprints to try and match or step on can also be helpful. Peripheral movement cues to walk are useful. The assistant would stand slightly to the side of the patient so that the patient could see his or her move as the request to walk is given. Freezing strategies that are often employed include having the person kick a box or pick up a penny. Freezing tends to happen in more confined spaces, such as going through a doorway. However, it can happen in an open environment, so several strategies need to be kept in mind.

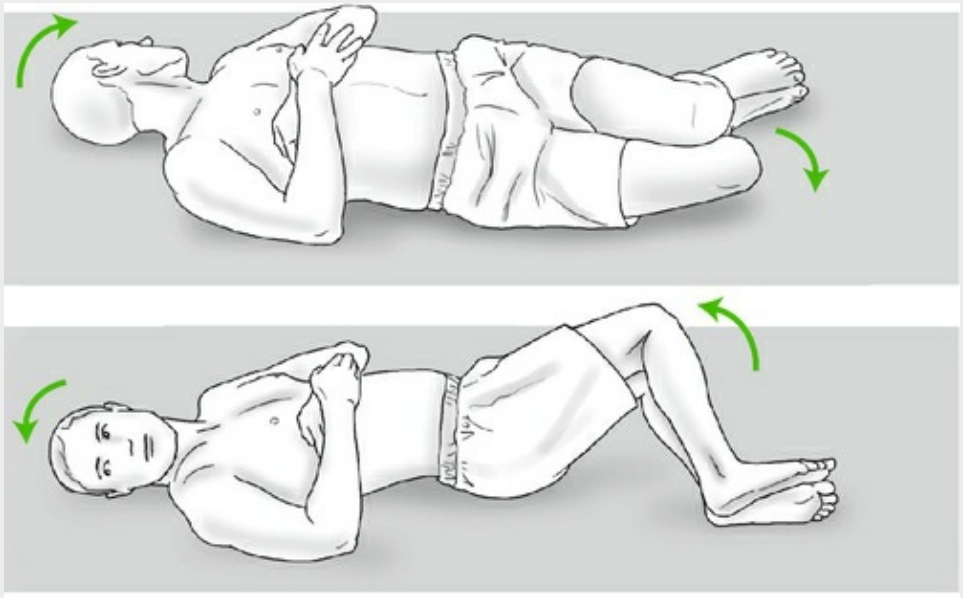
There are no definitive guidelines regarding the use of assistive devices in persons with gait difficulty secondary to PD (Melnick, 2013). The physical therapist will make a determination of the efficacy of using an assistive device. Use of a cane or a walker will depend on the degree of coordination present in the upper and lower extremities. A rolling wheeled walker with pushdown brakes can be helpful for some people, whereas a reverse-facing walker may assist the person who loses balance in a backward direction. Regardless of the device, it should be adjusted to promote trunk extension not flexion. A U walker projects a laser line for the person with PD to step over. Research is being done on developing glasses that would project lines in the same manner. A cane may be useful during a freezing episode. The person can turn it upside down and use it as a cue to continue walking. To date, no one assistive device has been found to be correct for everyone nor is everyone going to be able to benefit from using a device all of the time.

Postural Interventions

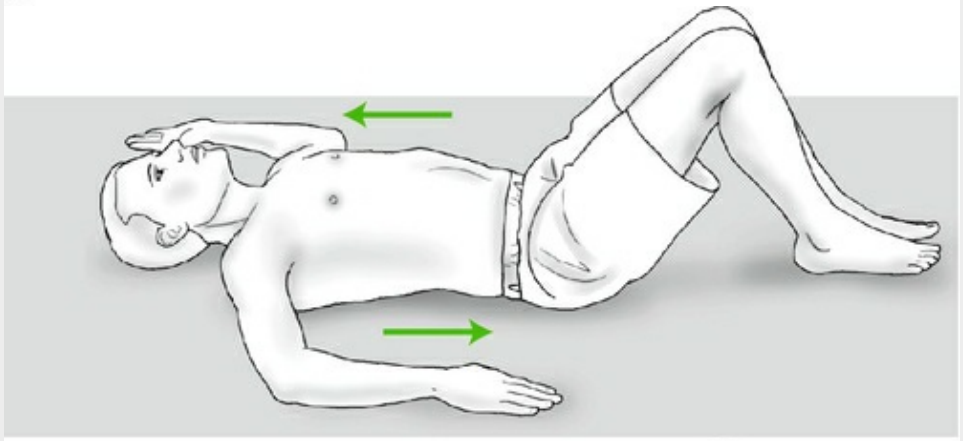
Because trunk extension and rotation are lost early in the disease process, exercises to strengthen postural extensors are important to emphasize soon after diagnosis (Bridgewater and Sharpe, 1998). Additionally, stretching exercises for tight pectorals are indicated if these muscles are shortened, thus preventing thoracic trunk extension. Stretching heel cords is indicated to maintain a plantigrade foot and normal weight transfer during gait. Rotational exercises of the trunk and limbs, such as those depicted in Intervention 13-1 and 13-2, have routinely been recommended. Rotational exercises were used to decrease the incidence of freezing in a small group of patients with advanced stage PD (Van Vaerenbergh et al., 2003). Rhythmic initiation, a PNF technique, can be used to assist the person to begin a movement or increase the ROM through which the movement occurs (see Chapter 9). This technique is most helpful when the patient is performing functional patterns of movement such as rolling and coming to sit or stand.

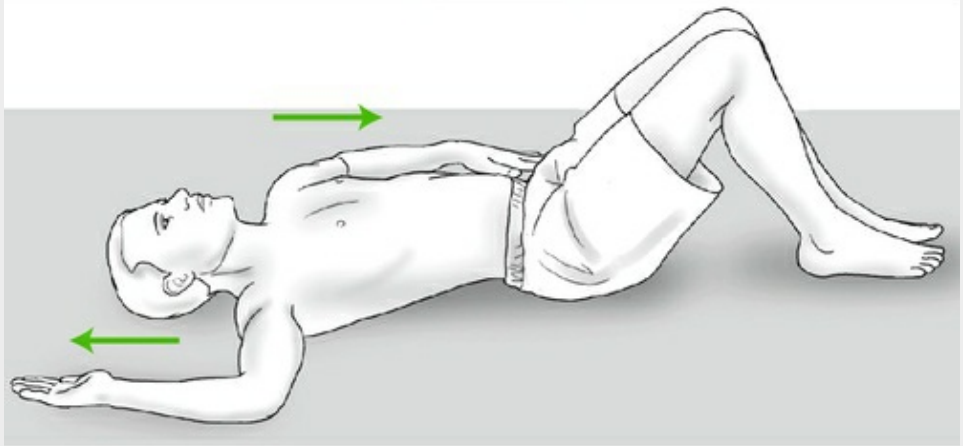
Intervention 13-1

Rotational Activities in Supine

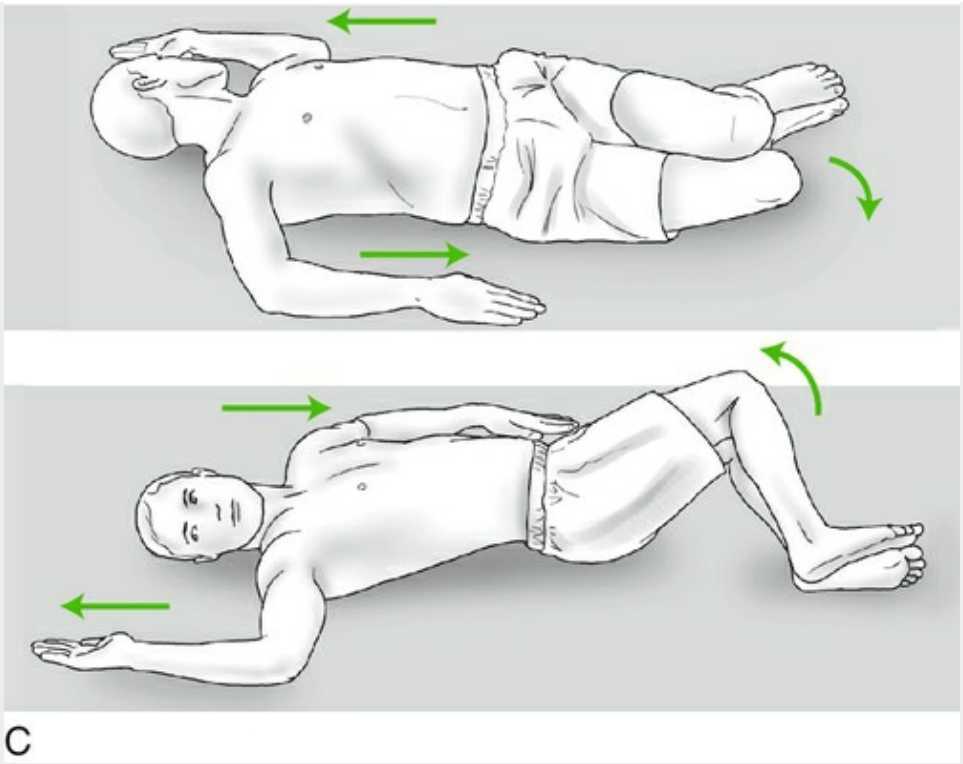


A





B



Rotational exercise sequence in supine can be used to increase range of motion (ROM) of the neck and trunk. Any combination of motions can be used.

A. The head is rotated slowly side to side within the available ROM while lower extremities are rotated side to side in the opposite direction.

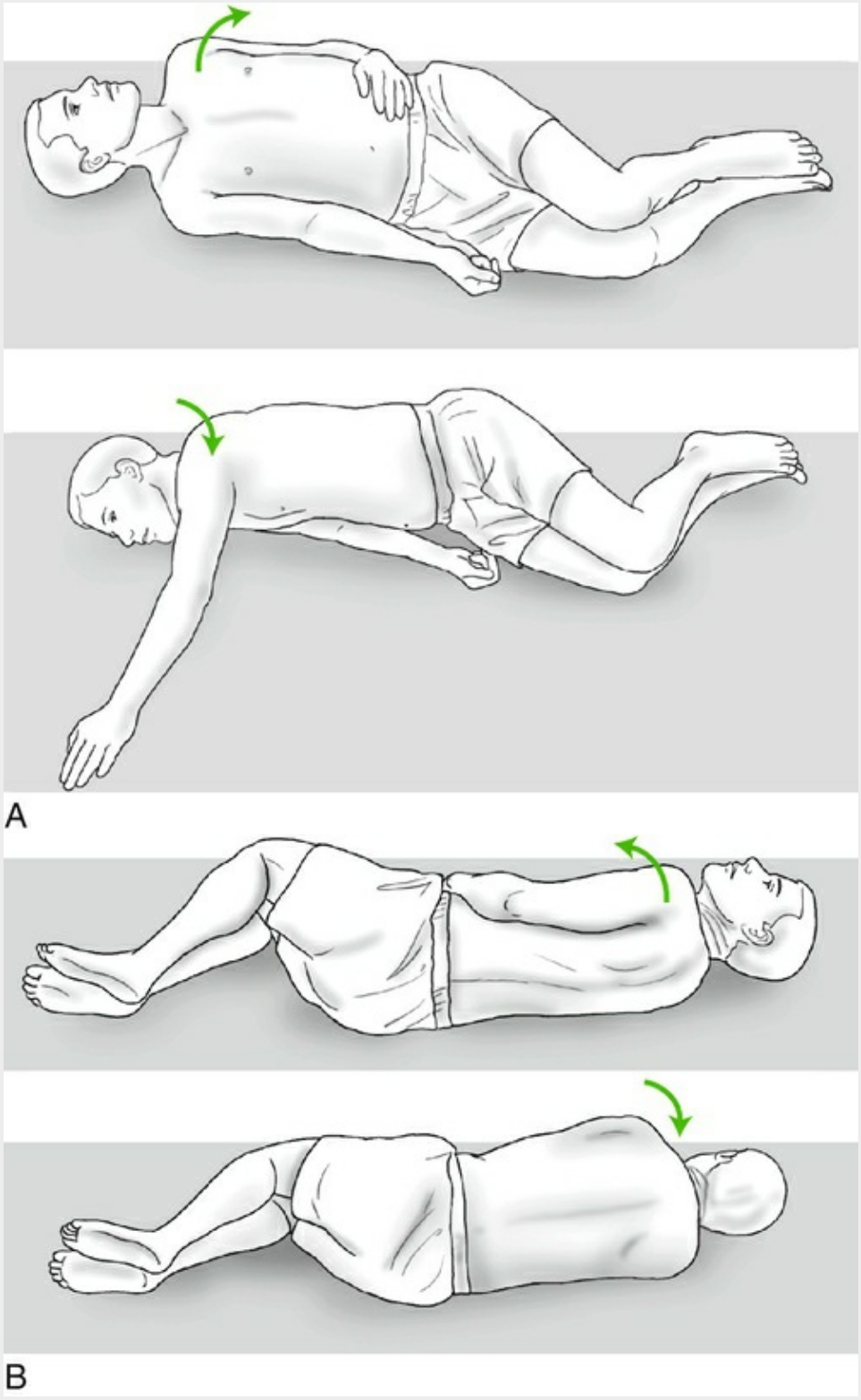
B. The upper extremities are positioned in 45 degrees of shoulder abduction with 90 degrees of elbow flexion. One shoulder is externally rotated while the other shoulder is internally rotated. From this initial position, the shoulders are slowly rotated back and forth from an internally to an externally rotated position.

C. Advanced exercise: The head, shoulders, and lower extremities are rotated simultaneously from one position to the other. The head rotates opposite to the hips providing for counterrotation within the trunk. The upper extremity on the face side is externally rotated while the other arm is internally rotated.

(Modified from Turnbull GI, editor: *Physical therapy management of Parkinson's disease*, New York, 1992, Churchill Livingstone, Fig. 9-11, p. 177.)

Intervention 13-2

Rotational Activities in Side-Lying



Side-lying is also a good position to obtain a stretch of the trunk. In side-lying, the thorax is slowly rotated forward and backward relative to the position of the pelvis while the upper extremity is protracted and retracted relative to the thorax.
A. Forward view of this movement.
B. Posterior view.
C. Advanced exercise: The patient rotates the pelvis backward as the thorax is rotated forward. The patient then rotates the pelvis forward as the thorax is rotated backward. These two combinations result in counterrotation of the trunk.

(Modified from Turnbull GI, editor: *Physical therapy management of Parkinson's disease*, New York, 1992, Churchill Livingstone, Fig. 9-11, p. 178.)

Relaxation techniques are used to treat rigidity and fatigue (Melnick, 2013; O'Sullivan and Bezkor, 2014). Gentle, slow rocking of the trunk and rotation of the extremities can decrease rigidity. These techniques are best used while the person is sitting because in a supine position rigidity may be increased. Also, rhythmical rotation should be started proximally and then applied distally as proximal muscles are often stiffer than distal ones. After a decrease in rigidity, movement is often easier and less fatiguing. Large movements are especially helpful and need to encompass the entire range and should emphasize extension. Bilateral symmetrical movements are easier than reciprocal ones. The person can then be progressed to the use of diagonal patterns of movement, such as chops and lifts (see Chapter 9).

Deep breathing can be done to promote relaxation. The person can be in a comfortable supported position in supine and be taught to take slow deep breaths using the diaphragm. Progress the patient to sitting and standing while still concentrating on using the diaphragm and lateral chest expansion. Complete chest wall expansion is difficult for the patient to obtain because the trunk is often rigid. Therefore, chest wall stiffness and any postural malalignment need to be addressed using visual feedback, stretching, and strengthening exercises. For example, the individual can perform bilateral D_2 flexion proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) patterns while taking a deep breath, and expiration can be carried out during D_2 extension. Stretching and flexibility exercises should be performed daily if possible but at a minimum of 2 to 3 days per week. Holding each stretch for 15 to 60 seconds for at least 4 repetitions is recommended (Protas et al., 2009). As the loss of extension is predictable, stretching of cervical, shoulder, trunk, hip, knee, and ankle joints is a must. If the person can lie flat in supine or get into a prone position for any amount of time, it can be beneficial. When implementing a stretching program, it is important to recognize when a deformity is fixed versus flexible. Some patients with PD require multiple pillows to support a permanently kyphotic spinal deformity. Such persons will not be able to regain normal postural alignment and compensations in sitting and lying need to be made. Before the development of fixed contractures, wall and corner stretches for the pectorals and lying over a bolster or towel roll placed along the length of the spine to stretch the axial skeleton are all appropriate interventions.

Make automatic postural adjustments throughout the day to perform movement transitions of sit to stand, changing directions while walking, turning, talking and walking, carrying books, and going through a cafeteria line. Postural instability may be a major problem for someone who is moving slowly or for someone with advanced disease and is rigid. People with PD lose the ability to perform simple automatic postural adjustments like standing up straight and rising from a chair. Cognitive coaching can be a powerful tool to give the person with PD to think about a way on performing an activity that used to be done automatically. Telling a person to move his head forward and upward may be all that is necessary to help him rise to standing after many unsuccessful attempts. The exact cognitive strategy may differ from person to person, depending on the movement task and where the sequence is breaking down. Motor learning theory would indicate that practice of specific task is needed in an appropriate environmental context. It is very important to teach family members or caregivers the cognitive strategies that have been successful in therapy.

Lee Silverman Voice Treatment (LSVT®) BIG

Training BIG is the application of motor training principles used with the voice to train individuals with PD to move more. The premise is that the person with PD perceives that he or she is moving normally and does not recognize how small the movements are being done. By encouraging BIG movements, the person resets kinesthetic awareness of self-generated movements. The individual who uses LSVT BIG undergoes a certification program to be allowed to use this treatment approach. The person must maintain certification by retaking courses at certain intervals. Exercise is a therapeutic medium that has the potential to modify the manifestations of disease in the case of PD (Farley et al., 2008). Eighteen people with PD participated in an intervention program of four times a week using big movements and big stretches. The program lasted 4 weeks. Disease severity based on the Hoen and Yahr classification ranged from stage 1 to 3 with a relatively equal number of participants in each stage. Results of the study showed that subjects increased gait speed and reaching. Those with less severe disease showed greater change.

As the tremors usually do not interfere with ADL function, those individuals are not as likely to be seen in physical therapy unless they also have problems with slowness of movement, postural instability, or gait difficulties. The patient and family can be taught strategies to deal with freezing episodes and the slowness in movement transitions, such as coming to stand, turning over in bed, or changing directions while walking. Dyskinesias are the least amenable to therapeutic intervention (Morris et al., 2001).

Fatigue is an important determinant of the physical function of persons with PD (Garber and Friedman, 2003). Fatigue can be the cause or result of inactivity; therefore, aerobic conditioning should be begun as soon as the diagnosis of PD is made. The greater the level of fatigue, the less a person with PD participates in leisure activities and in moving around during the day. Additionally, people with PD show a greater decline in activity than age-matched peers (Fertl et al., 1993). However, Canning et al. (1997) believe that with regular aerobic exercise, people with mild to moderate PD have the potential to maintain normal exercise capacity. Therefore, incorporating an aerobic element into movement interventions is strongly suggested (Dean and Frownfelter, 2012). Not only does aerobic exercise provide musculoskeletal benefits but also can keep airway secretions mobilized while maximizing ventilation.

Exercise Strategy and Results

Exercise is a cornerstone of the intervention strategies used for people with PD. Exercise promotes physical activity, maintains flexibility, improves initiation and fluidity of movement, and decreases postural instability and fatigue. Exercise must be designed within the context of ADLs and should represent the range from practicing writing on lined paper to turning over and getting out of bed. Functional improvement has been seen after 3 months of twice-a-week physical therapy (Yekutiel et al., 1991). Clients were able to demonstrate a decrease in the amount of time it took to stand from a seated position. Teaching strategies for coping with functional problems is a large part of the basic training routine. Strategies used to enhance performance of daily tasks, such as walking, turning around, standing up and sitting down, turning over, and getting out of bed, are clearly described in Table 13-3. Morris (2000) also recommends exercises for upper extremity function, which are depicted in Table 13-4.

Table 13-3

Strategies to Enhance Daily Tasks

Task	Strategy
Walking	Instruct to walk with long steps Swing arms Place lines on the floor spaced at appropriate step lengths for person's age and height
Turning around	Instruct patient to use a large arc of movement
Standing up and sitting down	Use mental rehearsal before moving Use gentle rocking back and forth before moving Ensure sufficient forward lean to get weight over the feet Increase height of seat or use armrests
Turning over and getting out of bed	Use a night light Use a lightweight bedcover Use mental rehearsal before moving Use verbal cues to trigger each part of the sequence Sufficient bed height to stand easily
Reaching, grasping, manipulating objects, and writing	Mentally rehearse before moving Use the object as a visual cue Break down the task into component parts Use verbal cues for each part of the sequence Avoid distractions or secondary tasks at the same time

From Morris ME: Movement disorders in people with Parkinson disease: A model for physical therapy. *Phys Ther* 80:578–597, 2000.

Table 13-4

Exercises for Upper Extremity Function

Task	Exercises
Buttoning	Button clothing, practicing with buttons of different sizes and shapes.
Handwriting	Practice handwriting by doing crossword puzzles, writing on lined paper, signing name, and filling in forms with multiple boxes.
Reaching/grasping	Reach, grasp, and drink from cups of different sizes, shapes, and weights.
Pouring	Pour water from one cup to another.
Opening/closing	Open and close food jars of different sizes.
Lifting	Lift jars and boxes of different weights onto and off of pantry shelves of different heights.
Fine-motor skills	Pick up grains of rice with the thumb and forefinger and place them in a teacup.
	Pick up a straw between the thumb and forefinger and place it in a soda can.
Dressing	Practice dressing, such as putting on a coat or sweater using verbal cues, such as "left arm," "right arm," and "pull."
Pressing/pushing	Practice pushing the correct sequence of telephone buttons to call family, friends, and local businesses while sitting or standing.
Folding	Fold napkins and place folded paper into envelopes.

Modified from Morris ME: Movement disorders in people with Parkinson disease: A model for physical therapy. *Phys Ther* 80:578–597, 2000, p. 588.

Multiple sclerosis

MS is a chronic debilitating demyelinating disease of the CNS. It is a disease of young adults between the ages of 20 and 40. The incidence for females is two times higher than for males. The disease is aptly named because sclerotic plaques form throughout the brain and spinal cord. Charcot's triad of intention tremor, scanning speech, and nystagmus were described as early as 1869. Today, visual problems, such as optic neuritis, are often part of the initial event. However, presentation of symptoms is not always consistent within an individual or from one attack to another. Before the availability of magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), it was more difficult to diagnose a person with MS because the person might present with only one symptom, or symptoms might be mild or remit after a time.

MS affects more than a 400,000 people in the United States (Hassan-Smith and Douglas, 2011). The incidence has been reported to be 4.2 per 100,000 (Hirtz et al., 2007). Rates are higher in the United States, Canada, and northern Europe, possibly because people of northern European heritage are more likely to be affected than other racial groups. Incidence is very low in Asians, Eskimos, and North- and South-American Indians (Sutton, 2009). A U.S. study found that black women have a higher risk for MS than black men whose risk is similar to whites (Langer-Gould et al., 2013). MS does, however, have a worldwide distribution. More cases of MS are found in temperate climates with fewer cases closer to the equator. Although the etiology is still as yet unknown, viral infections and autoimmune dysfunction have been implicated. Viral infections can trigger an MS attack, and immune cells are present in acute MS lesions (Fuller and Winkler, 2009). Susceptibility to immune system dysfunction may be inherited but not the disease of MS.

Pathophysiology

Patches of demyelination occur in the white matter of the brain and spinal cord. Areas of the nervous system with a high concentration of myelin appear white because it is partially composed of fat. In the CNS, myelin is produced by oligodendrocytes. Their destruction leaves the axon unprotected and vulnerable to possible damage. Inflammation accompanies the destruction of the myelin sheath and can lead to axon damage and plaque formation. Plaques are replaced by scar tissue produced by glial cells, and the trapped axons degenerate (Fitzgerald and Folan-Curran, 2002). Glial cells constitute the connective tissue of the nervous system. Because the immune-system response in the brain of a patient with MS is more robust than normal, it may also play a role in plaque formation. Plaques are part of acute or chronic lesions that may be evident on MRI. The areas of the nervous system more likely to be involved include the optic nerve, periventricular white matter, corticospinal tracts, posterior columns, and cerebellar peduncles.

Clinical Features

Sensory symptoms are often the first signs of MS. The person may complain of "pins and needles" (paresthesias) or abnormal burning or aching (dysesthesias). Visual symptoms occur in 80% of individuals with the disease and can present as decreased visual acuity, inflammation of the optic nerve (neuritis) that causes graying or blurring of the vision, or double vision (diplopia). Nystagmus, also a common symptom, is caused by a lesion of the cerebellum or central vestibular pathways. Nystagmus is an oscillating movement of an eye at rest. The type of nystagmus depends on the direction the eye is moving. Horizontal nystagmus is the most common type although the person may exhibit vertical or rotatory eye movements. Nystagmus is named for the direction of the fast component of the oscillating movement.

Motor pathways are involved, as well as sensory pathways in MS. Motor weakness, typically in one or both legs, indicates involvement of the corticospinal tract. Clumsiness in reaching is often seen with the person overshooting the target. Coordination of alternating movements like flexion and extension are impaired resulting in walking difficulty. Gait is often characterized by poor balance and lurching. Ataxia or general incoordination is evident when there is involvement of the white matter of the cerebellum. A postural tremor of an extremity or the trunk may be evident in sitting or standing. Difficulty coordinating oral movements may interfere with speaking and swallowing. Scanning speech is slow with long pauses and lacks fluidity. There is an increased risk

for aspiration in a person who cannot adequately coordinate breathing and eating.

Fatigue

Fatigue is a major problem in people with MS. It is the most frequently reported symptom, slightly ahead of walking difficulty as cited in one study of almost 700 patients with MS (Aronson et al., 1996). Although fatigue is a major symptom of the disease, its relationship to disease severity is weak. In other words, someone does not have to have a severe case of the disease to be severely fatigued. In fact, the fatigue is often out of proportion to the extent of the disease. Despite a decade of research, the underlying pathophysiologic process of fatigue in MS remains obscure. There is no laboratory or physiologic marker of fatigue in patients with MS. Fatigue is worsened by heat. This fact distinguishes it from fatigue seen in healthy individuals or those with other progressive neurologic diseases. Uhthoff phenomenon is the heat-related onset of blurred vision, increased paresthesias, or overwhelming fatigue. It is considered a pseudoattack that is resolved when the body temperature returns to normal.

Fatigue has a profound effect on the individual's ability to complete ADLs and to continue to be employed. It is very important to understand the patient's perception of fatigue, because MS fatigue is closely linked to how the person perceives his quality of life (QOL) and general and mental health (Bakshi, 2003). In a meta-analysis, exercise was found to modify behavior and positively affect the QOL in individuals with MS (Motl and Gosney, 2008). Cakit et al. (2010) found that exercise decreased depression, and Dalgas et al. (2010) saw an improvement in mood, fatigue, and QOL.

Cognitive Impairment

Half of the patients with MS will experience some degree of cognitive deficit (O'Sullivan and Schreyer, 2014). These deficits range from mild to moderate in severity and may involve problem solving, short-term memory, visual-spatial perception, and conceptual reasoning. Fortunately, only 10% have problems severe enough to interfere with ADLs. Although persons with MS often associate higher levels of fatigue with poorer cognitive performance, a recent study showed that level of fatigue did not affect cognitive performance (Parmenter et al., 2003). Lesions in the frontal lobe can affect executive brain functions such as judgment and reasoning, making the patient cognitively inflexible. Global deterioration of intelligence or dementia is rare but may occur if the disease is the rapidly progressive type.

People who have chronic diseases are more prone to depression, and individuals with MS have more bouts of depression than the general population (Patton et al., 2000; Berg et al., 2000). The rates reported in these studies range from 14% to 54%. Higher levels of helplessness were associated with more fatigue and depressive mood in one study (van der Werf et al., 2003). It appears that the experience of fatigue and depression may be mediated by similar factors. Additionally, depression is also related to emotional stability. Patients with MS can demonstrate emotional lability, being euphoric one minute and crying uncontrollably the next.

Autonomic Dysfunction

Bowel and bladder problems in patients with MS are indicative of involvement of the autonomic nervous system. The bladder can fail to empty completely, leading to urinary retention, and thus setting up a perfect culture medium for bacterial growth. The reflex control of the bowel and bladder can be impaired and lead to constipation or inadequate emptying, urinary frequency, and nocturia (frequency at night). Complete loss of bowel and bladder control, as well as sexual dysfunction, are possible in the later stages of the disease. Some medications used to treat these bladder problems can be found in Table 13-2.

Disease Course

The course of the disease is unpredictable because its presentation is highly variable. The majority of cases of MS are the *relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis* (RRMS) in which there are definable periods of exacerbations and remissions. Exacerbations occur when symptoms worsen acutely and then remit or recover with a time of symptom stability. Symptoms may completely resolve or there may be residual neurologic deficits. The amount of time that passes between attacks or relapses can be as long as a year at the beginning of the disease. The time between attacks may shorten as the disease progresses. Despite the relapsing-remitting course, there is evidence that the disease is

active even when symptoms appear stable (Miller et al., 1988). Many individuals with RRMS go on to develop secondary progressive multiple sclerosis.

The other three types of MS are primary progressive, secondary progressive, and progressive relapsing. Primary progressive (PPMS) is characterized by a relentless progression without any relapses. This form is rare, affecting only about 10% of those with MS. Secondary progressive (SPMS) begins with relapses and remissions but then becomes progressive with only occasional relapses and minor remissions. Progressive relapsing (PRMS) is progressive from the onset but has clear, acute exacerbations with and without full recovery.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of MS continues to be based on clinical evidence of multiple lesions in the CNS white matter, distinct time (temporal) intervals, and occurrence in an individual between the ages of 10 and 50 years old. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually examined for the presence of higher amounts of myelin protein and oligoclonal bands. The former would be elevated during an acute episode and be indicative of immune system involvement. Presence of oligoclonal bands is not specific to MS. If sensory pathways are involved, recording evoked sensory potentials may provide further evidence of demyelination. As vision is often affected, assessing visual evoked potentials can be helpful part of the diagnostic process. MRI is the best tool to assist in confirming the diagnosis of MS. An MRI can visualize small and large lesions. With the proper enhancement, it is possible to tell if the lesions are new and active. McDonald criteria for MS are used to make the diagnosis easier (Polman et al., 2011).

Medical Management

Medications are the mainstay in the management of MS. The majority of these disease-modifying agents (DMAs) are synthetic immune system modulators developed for the most common form of MS, which is relapsing remitting. They are approved by the Food and Drug Administration for that form but are used off-label for other forms of MS. The purpose of a DMA is to modify the disease and reduce the frequency and severity of attacks. Avonex, Betaseron, and Copaxone modify the disease. Copaxone has been shown to reduce the frequency of attacks. All of the drugs are injected. Avonex is taken weekly, Betaseron every other day, and Copaxone daily. These medications are currently recognized as standard treatment for patients with RRMS. Newer medications such as Tysabri and Novantrone have to be delivered by IV while the person is in a medical center, because constant monitoring is indicated. Individuals may need to try several DMAs to find one that is best tolerated.

A person with MS may exhibit myriad symptoms that reflect the diverse areas of the nervous system that are involved. Common symptoms that are treated pharmacologically include muscle spasms, spasticity, weakness, fatigue, visual symptoms, urinary symptoms, pain, and depression. Refer to Table 13-2 for a partial list of medications that might be prescribed for a patient with MS. Symptoms related to muscle spasms or spasticity can be managed by using physical therapy interventions in addition to medication.

Physical Therapy Management

The goals of rehabilitation in the patient with MS are to:
1. minimize progression;
2. maintain an optimum level of functional independence;
3. prevent or decrease secondary complications;
4. maintain respiratory function;
5. conserve energy/manage fatigue; and
6. educate the patient and their family.

These goals are met by managing the symptoms that the patient presents with in such a way that the impact on function is minimized.

Weakness

The most common neurologic symptoms of MS are weakness, spasticity, and ataxia. Weakness can result directly from lesions involving the corticospinal tract or cerebellum. Weakness also develops

secondary to inactivity and generalized deconditioning. Therefore, strengthening is an important goal of physical therapy, and exercise should be initiated early before secondary impairments develop (O'Sullivan and Schreyer, 2014). Many types of exercise can be used, but only low to moderate intensities are tolerated. Frequent repetitions are needed to obtain a training effect. Because of fatigue, a delicate balance must be achieved between rest and exercise. Shorter bouts of exercise with 1 to 5 minute rests between exercises may be indicated. Overwork and overheating must be avoided.

It is possible to increase strength and endurance in patients with MS (Cakit et al., 2010; Dalgas et al., 2010). Resistance training can use isokinetic or progressive resistive modes or water. Exercises can be made more functional by having the person perform PNF patterns because functional movements almost always have some rotational component. Additionally, the rotation may help to reduce tone. Resistance within the PNF diagonals should be graded to match the patient's abilities. Energy consumption can be decreased during functional activities by placing an emphasis on strengthening proximal muscle groups. Exercise for this population should also have an aerobic component as a means of preventing or treating deconditioning.

Individuals with MS have been shown to have a normal cardiovascular response to exercise. Even a short-term exercise program had a positive effect on aerobic fitness, health perception, fatigue, and activity level in individuals with MS (Mostert and Kesselring, 2002). These researchers recommended that regular aerobic training be part of any rehabilitation program. A low-level graded exercise test is indicated before having the person take part in an aerobic training program, because as the disease progresses, the potential for autonomic cardiovascular dysfunction increases. A low-level graded exercise test consists of using established protocols, as in cardiac rehabilitation, to assess a person's ability to respond to increasing working loads using either a treadmill or a cycle ergometer.

Increases in core body temperature in patients with MS can result in a temporary increase in clinical symptoms. Precooling (lowering the body temperature) was found to be effective in preventing increases in core temperature during exercise (White et al., 2000). To avoid any adverse effects of heat, exercise should be performed in cool environments. Additional cooling sources, such as fans, and even personal cooling suits can be used. Heat sensitivity is related to MS fatigue. Exercise in a cool pool that is between 80° F and 85° F is recommended for patients with MS. The water provides challenges and support to balance and can be an effective medium for exercise in this population (Roehrs and Karst, 2004).

Patients with MS can experience fatigue related to the disease process. Secondarily, fatigue is related to deconditioning and respiratory muscle weakness and overuse. Exercising to fatigue is contraindicated. Submaximal levels of exercise appear to be the safest with a discontinuous schedule of training. Submaximal levels are less than 85% of the person's age-predicted heart rate (220 minus age) or less than 85% of the maximum heart rate achieved on a graded exercise test. For deconditioned patients, starting at 50% to 60% of their maximum heart rate may produce aerobic conditioning. A discontinuous schedule builds in sufficient rest times to prevent or lessen fatigue. The person's heart rate, blood pressure, and perceived exertion using the Borg scale should be used as a way to monitor exercise response. Nonfatiguing exercise protocols are discussed under postpolio syndrome.

Spasticity

Stretching should always precede an exercise session. Stretching is an integral part of preparation for exercise, especially in muscles that exhibit increased tone. Individuals with MS have spasticity secondary to the UMN lesions and decreased flexibility secondary to decreased movement and activity. Slow static stretching is indicated with no bouncing. The patient and family should be taught self-stretching with particular attention to stretching the cervical region, hamstrings, and heel cords. Self-stretching combined with slow rhythmical rotation can be an effective means to gain range. The new stretched position should be held for 30 to 60 seconds to allow the muscle to adjust to the new length. PNF techniques, such as hold relax and contract relax, can be used to gain ROM. Refer to Chapter 9 for more information on PNF techniques.

The muscle groups exhibiting spasticity vary from patient to patient. However, the plantar flexors, adductors, and quadriceps are often involved in the lower extremity. Stretching the hamstrings can be accomplished several different ways, as seen in Intervention 13-3. Methods include static stretching in supine and in sitting. Hip flexors and hamstrings can also be kept

flexible by using a program that consists of lying in a prone position on a firm surface several times a day for at least 20 to 30 minutes. A tilt table can be used if the person is unable to get into a prone position, but straps are necessary to maintain hips and knees in extension. Some benefit is derived from weight bearing in an upright position for tone management. Heel cords can be stretched passively using the tilt table. If the ankles are plantar flexed, a wedge may be used to ensure weight is borne through the entire foot. Over time, the size of the wedge may be decreased.

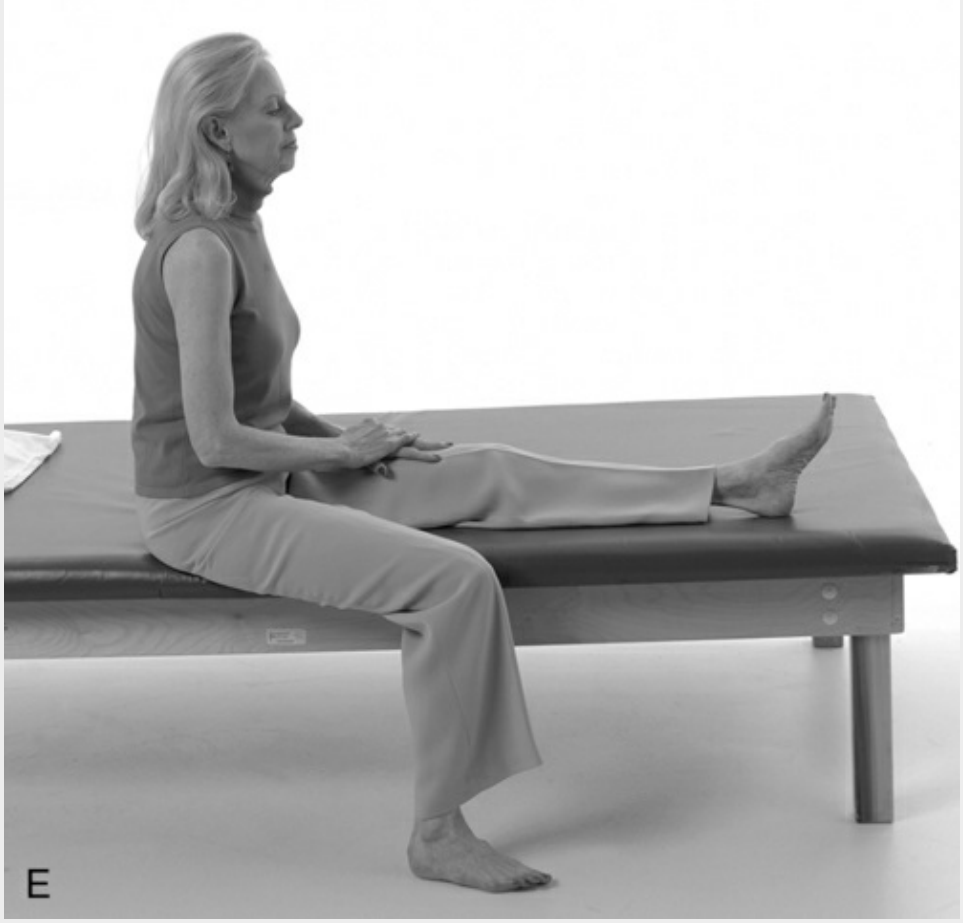
Intervention 13-3

Stretching Activities


B


C


D


E


F

Supine static stretch of the heel cords and hamstrings using a towel:

A. The patient lies on a firm surface in the hook-lying position. Then while one leg is bent, the other leg is raised. A towel is placed around the foot. The free ends are grasped and pulled gently to stretch the ankle into dorsiflexion. The stretch is held for 30 to 60 seconds.

B. To stretch the hamstrings, the patient slowly straightens the raised leg as far as possible and holds the stretch for 30 to 60 seconds. The stretch is repeated with the other leg.

Supine static stretch of the hamstrings using another person:

C. The patient lies on a firm surface. The clinician raises one leg keeping the knee straight as in a straight-leg raise. The end position is held for 30 to 60 seconds. The other leg may be bent or straight, as pictured. If a pull is felt in the low back, the patient should bend the leg that is not being stretched to avoid lumbar strain. The clinician may use the proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) technique hold relax in this position to gain additional range of motion (see Chapter 9 for an explanation of the technique).

Sitting stretch of the hamstrings using a stool:

D. The patient sits with the heel of one leg resting on a stool or other stable raised object. The trunk is kept erect and the patient leans forward while maintaining a lumbar lordosis as much as possible. The patient reaches with one or both hands toward the ankle of the raised leg and tries to keep the knee as straight as possible to maximize the stretch of the hamstrings. The stretch is held for 30 to 60 seconds and repeated several times. The stretch is then repeated with the other leg. When stretching the heel cords in this position, the patient uses a towel around the foot as in Intervention 13-3A and pulls the foot gently into dorsiflexion while keeping the knee as straight as possible.

Sitting stretch of the hamstrings on a low mat:

E. The patient sits on a low mat with one leg on the floor and one leg on the mat table. The trunk is kept erect and the patient leans forward at the hips to ensure that the stretch occurs in the hamstrings and not the low back. The patient may reach with one or both hands toward the ankle. Again, the heel cord can be stretched by using a towel (as in Intervention 13-3A) in this

position. The stretch is held for 30 to 60 seconds and then repeated with the other leg.

Wall stretch of the hamstrings and hip adductors:

F. The patient lies on the floor on her back with the legs supported by the wall. The hips should be as close to the wall as possible to obtain the greatest stretch of the hamstrings. The patient may need assistance to get into and out of this position. The patient should not lift the pelvis or arch the back. When the patient slides the legs out to either side, the hip adductors are stretched. Depending on the patient's ability, the legs can be moved one at a time or together. The legs are slowly separated and the stretched position held for 30 to 60 seconds.

Hamstring stretch against a wall:

G. The patient lies on the floor on her back (preferably in a doorway). One of the patient's legs protrudes through the doorway; it can be bent at the knee, as pictured, or straight. The leg to be stretched is propped up against the wall or door frame with its knee straight. The patient brings her hips as close to the wall/door frame as possible to obtain the best possible stretch.

Lower trunk rotation is quite effective in reducing tone in the trunk and proximal pelvic girdle muscles. Use of a ball in modified hook lying is shown in Intervention 13-4. The ball supports the weight of the legs, keeping them in flexion as the assistant guides the ball and the patient's limbs to either side, producing trunk rotation. A person can also practice trunk rotation when moving from a hands-and-knees position to side sitting, as seen in Intervention 13-5. The person may need assistance to attain the four-point position and may need to be guarded while moving through the available range. If the person cannot get all the way to side sitting, pillows or a wedge can be used to allow the person to go through as much range as possible. Hand position can be varied. Hands can be on the support surface or on a raised bench. In the case of the latter, the person can move from kneeling to side sitting.

Intervention 13-4

Rhythmical Rotation of the Lower Trunk


A


B


C

The patient lies supine on a firm surface. A therapy ball is used to support the lower extremities. The ball should be large enough to support the lower legs but small enough to keep the hips and knees in a flexed position. This technique is used as a preparation for functional movements, such as rolling and coming to sit.

A. The clinician places the patient's knees and lower legs on the ball and uses manual hand contact on the outside of the patient's knees.
B. The clinician gently rotates the patient's lower extremities, supported by the ball to one side.
C. The clinician moves the patient's lower extremities back to center.
D. Then the clinician gently rotates the patient's lower extremities, which are still supported by the ball to the other side. Trunk rotation will occur with greater amounts of rotation.

Intervention 13-5

Movement Transition from Four-Point to Side Sitting


A


B

Movement transitions, such as from four-point to side sitting, can be used to practice trunk rotation. The clinician's hand placement provides manual cues for either moving into side sitting or back into four-point.

A. The patient begins in a hands-and-knees or four-point position. The clinician uses manual hand contacts on the sides of the hips to guide the patient.
B. The clinician guides the patient to rotate diagonally backward from four-point into a side-sitting position.
C. The clinician then guides the patient's return from side sitting to the four-point position. The movements can be assisted at first and then resisted.

Ataxia

Control of static postures or postural stability is difficult for the patient with MS exhibiting ataxia. Postures that enable the person to load the trunk and other extremities not involved in movement

are helpful in providing stability. Unilateral limb holding in mid ranges and weight bearing, especially in antigravity postures, with slow controlled weight shifting can be beneficial. The limits of stability of these individuals can be quite precarious. The developmental sequence, especially the prone progression, can provide a wealth of treatment ideas. PNF techniques that are helpful with this problem include alternating isometrics, rhythmic stabilization, and slow reversal hold in an ever-decreasing range.

Functional movement transitions are very important to focus on for the patient with MS to ensure safety. Should the patient have the upper extremities loaded when moving from sit to stand to give more stability to the upper trunk? Does the person reach more smoothly if the nonreaching arm is in weight bearing (loaded)? Does the person have more distal control if the elbow is loaded? Can the person benefit from the use of weights around the waist or trunk? Weight belts and vests are available that may increase proprioceptive awareness and enhance stability in sitting, standing, and walking. Light distal weights have been used to improve coordination of the upper extremities during reaching and of the lower extremities during walking. Although such weights can provide some improved awareness, they can also produce a rebound phenomenon when removed. Dysmetric movements (overshooting) may appear to worsen after weights are removed so caution must be practiced when deciding to weight a limb distally. Using the least amount of weight to achieve the desired effect, and loading the axial skeleton (trunk) rather than the extremities is preferable. TheraBand wrapped around a limb can provide resistance to movement in both directions, such as reaching out and returning the arm to the lap. Of course, graded manual resistance can do the same thing but that requires having an assistant or caregiver available any time the person wants to reach, which is not practical.

Balance training incorporates dynamic as well as static interventions. However, movable surfaces are more challenging for the patient and the assistant. The patient must be safe at all times, which may necessitate the need of additional support staff. Use of a tilt board, a biomechanical ankle platform system (BAPS) board, a ball, or a balance master may all be indicated but safety must always be the first consideration. If the person is not safe when trying to control movement on a movable surface, a nonmovable surface may be indicated. Another modification that can be used would be to have the person seated while an extremity or extremities are placed on a movable surface. For example, the person could be seated on a low mat table with hand support and the feet could be placed on a tilt board or a BAPS board. Another modification would be to use a DynaDisc or an inflatable disc for the person to sit on while the feet are supported on the floor and the hands are on the support surface. As the person is better able to deal with a disturbance of balance at the pelvis, hand support could be decreased.

Frenkel exercises are classic coordination exercises that can be done in four standard positions: lying, sitting, standing, and walking. Although described for the lower extremities, similar ones can be developed for the upper extremities. These exercises are intended to be done slowly with even timing. The patient may initially need to have a limb supported so that the exercises can be progressed from assisted to independent and from unilateral to bilateral. See Table 13-5 for a complete list of these exercises.

Table 13-5

Frenkel Exercises

Position	Movements
Supine	
	1. Flex and extend one leg, heel sliding down a straight line on a table. 2. Abduct and adduct hip smoothly with knee bent, heel on a table. 3. Abduct and adduct leg with knee and hip extended, leg sliding on a table. 4. Flex and extend hip and knee with heel off a table. 5. Place one heel on knee of opposite leg and slide heel smoothly down shin toward ankle and back to knee. 6. Flex and extend both legs together, heels sliding on table. 7. Flex one leg while extending other leg. 8. Flex and extend one leg while abducting and adducting other leg.
Sitting	
	1. Place foot in therapist's hand, which will change position on each trial. 2. Raise leg and put foot on traced footprint on floor. 3. Sit steady for a few minutes.

Modified from Umphred DA: *Neurological rehabilitation*, ed 5. St. Louis, 2001, Mosby, p. 735.

Ambulation is challenging for a person with ataxia. As an immediate compensation, the base of support is widened and the knees are often stiffened to increase stability. Some individuals may compensate by bending the knees, thereby lowering the body's center of gravity. The arms are also used to counteract the increased postural sway. The increased postural sway is also exhibited in sitting and often necessitates that the person lean on outstretched arms to provide stability. Despite difficulties, a majority of patients with MS are still able to walk after 20 years (Schapiro, 2003).

Mobility options are many and varied. For persons with ataxia, a weighted walker may be the best option as it affords stability and mobility. A wheeled walker with hand brakes and a seat can provide for frequent rest periods. A motorized scooter or other forms of power mobility may be indicated when fatigue is the overriding problem or tremors and weakness make propulsion of a standard wheelchair difficult. Wheelchairs should be prescribed using typical seating guidelines with a seatbelt for safety. A cushion should always be used to provide extra protection from pressure when an individual becomes wheelchair-dependent. Using a three-wheeled scooter may have less social stigma than using a wheelchair.

There are also many types of orthotic options. Probably the most typical type of orthosis used by someone with MS is an ankle-foot orthosis (AFO). Indications for use of an AFO include saving energy, improving foot/toe clearance, providing greater ankle stability, controlling knee hyperextension, and improving overall gait pattern. Guidelines for use of an AFO can be found in Table 13-6. The rehabilitation team consisting of the PT and the orthotist will make a final recommendation. Rocker clogs have also been found to be helpful in accommodating for loss of ankle mobility (Perry et al.,1981). Some have reported use of a reciprocal gait orthosis (RGO), a type of hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis (HKAFO) for patients with MS.

Table 13-6
Guidelines for use of Ankle-Foot Orthoses (AFO)

Type of AFO	Advantages	Disadvantages	Relative Contraindications
Standard polypropylene	Saves energy Improves toe and foot clearance Improves safety Improved knee control during midstance Avoid knee hyperextension Greater ankle stability	Impedes tibial advancement during sit to stand	Moderate or severe spasticity Severe edema in the foot Severe weakness (2/5 or less at the hips
Polypropylene with articulating ankle joint	All of the above Tibial advancement during sit to stand More normal ankle movement during gait Able to squat May have a plantar flexion stop or a dorsiflexion assist		Same as above
Double upright metal with articulating ankle joint	All of the above May have straps to correct valgus or varus May accommodate significant fluctuations in limb volume		Weight Poor cosmesis

(Data from Schapiro R: Multiple Sclerosis: A Rehabilitation Approach to Management. New York, 1991, Demos Publications; Edelstein JE, Wong CK: Orthotics. In O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, editors: Physical Rehabilitation, ed 6. Philadelphia, 2014, FA Davis, pp. 1325–1363; and Lusardi MM, Bowers DM: Orthotic decision making in neurological and neuromuscular disorders. In Lusardi MM, Jorge M, Nielsen CC: Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation, ed 3. Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders, pp. 266–307.)

Additional Concerns

Some patients with MS exhibit emotional lability. They demonstrate rather volatile swings in mood, ranging from euphoria to crying. These abrupt changes in behavior need to be managed with calmness and firm direction in order for them to not totally disrupt a treatment session. In some cases, the patient can benefit from psychologic intervention. Another challenging situation occurs when a patient continuously exhibits nystagmus. The patient extends the head to minimize the amount of movement of the eyes. The tilted head posture should not be corrected as that will remove the compensation and may negatively affect the patient's balance. Other patients may experience vertigo with sudden head movements. In this situation, the person needs to move the head more slowly or actually fix the head in a position before attempting a movement so as to not produce a loss of balance.

Summary

Exercise is a crucial part of the physical therapy intervention for a person with MS. Exercise balanced with rest can improve the quality of life of an individual dealing with this chronic disease. Although symptoms vary depending on the sites in the nervous system that are involved, fatigue is a pervasive problem. Whether the fatigue is stress-related or heat-related, it can produce immobility, which may all too quickly become part of a cycle of disuse and deconditioning. Therefore, regular exercise is essential to preserving function in this population.

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis

ALS is a terminal progressive disease involving both UMNs and LMNs. It is commonly known as Lou Gehrig disease. UMNs degenerate in the cortex and corticospinal tract, LMNs degenerate in the brainstem (cranial nerve nuclei) and anterior horn cells in the spinal cord. Therefore, signs of both UMN and LMN involvement will be evident. The loss of LMNs results in muscle atrophy and weakness (amyotrophy) and the destruction of the corticospinal and corticobulbar tracts, which results in the lateral sclerosis (UMN symptoms) (Hallum and Allen, 2013). Muscle weakness is the cardinal sign of ALS (Dal Bello-Haas, 2014).

Incidence and Etiology

ALS is the most common motor neuron disease in adults, with an incidence of 3 to 5 per 100,000 individuals. There are an estimated 30,000 people with ALS in the United States, with a prevalence of between 4 and 10 per 100,000 (Dal Bello-Haas, 2014). ALS usually occurs between middle and late sixth decade of age. Men are slightly more likely to be affected than women. The cause of ALS is unknown, with the exception of an inherited form. In about 20% of inherited cases, the person has a mutation of a gene involved in producing enzymes that eliminate free radicals. The majority of people with ALS have no prior family history. Theories as to the cause of ALS include protein-folding errors, neurotoxicity, programmed cell death (apoptosis), and autoimmune reactions (Hallum and Allen, 2013; Dal Bello-Haas, 2014).

Clinical Presentation

ALS can present with limb loss onset or bulbar loss onset. The majority of people with ALS (70% to 80%) present asymmetric weakness in an arm or a leg. A smaller percentage (20% to 30%) presents difficulty swallowing or speaking. Fasciculation (twitching of muscle fibers) may be seen in the tongue. Earliest signs of ALS include muscle cramps, weakness, atrophy, and fatigue. Involvement spreads regionally with distal symptoms occurring before proximal ones. Bulbar signs commonly occur later in the disease progression, unless the initial presentation of loss is in the cranial nerves, which are responsible for tongue movements, chewing, and swallowing.

There is no one definitive laboratory test for ALS. However, elevation of creatine phosphokinase levels is present in 70% of cases (Ilzecka and Stelmasiak, 2003). Diagnosis is based on the combination of signs and symptoms in the UMNs and LMNs, supplemented by electromyography, nerve conduction velocity tests, neuroimaging, and nerve and muscle biopsies. According to the revised El Escorial criteria, a "definite" diagnosis of ALS requires LMN + UMN findings in 3 regions (Brooks et al., 2000). Regions include bulbar, cervical, thoracic, or lumbosacral.

There is no sensory involvement or eye muscle involvement in typical ALS. Spinocerebellar and sensory systems are sparred. Previously, the presence of cognitive deficits would exclude a diagnosis of ALS. However, the prevailing thought is that mild to extreme cognitive problems are part of the disease (Lomen-Hoerth et al., 2003). More than half of patients with ALS have cognitive impairments (Woolley and Jonathan, 2008). A therapist should be suspicious of cognitive involvement in a patient with ALS who exhibits delays in executive function, such as not following through on exercise or medication recommendations and verbal fluency (Abrahams et al., 2000). A small group of people with ALS coincidentally exhibit a frontotemporal dementia (FTD) characterized by behavioral and personality changes as well as decline in executive function. FTD can present before the ALS or with the ALS or develop after the ALS. The overlap of these two diseases is being studied to gain insight into their neuropathology (Giordano et al., 2011). The diagnosis of FTD, along with ALS, decreases median survival time (Olney et al., 2005).

Because of the relentless progression of ALS, staging is best thought of as early, middle, and late. More in-depth staging has been devised for drug research, but to provide a framework for intervention, three stages works well. Early on, the person has mild to moderate weakness in specific muscle groups. Realize that a person may have lost 80% of motor neurons before reporting weakness (Hallum and Allen, 2013), so there may not be an extreme impact on gait, ADLs, or speech. By the end of the early stage, the person is experiencing difficulty with ADLs and mobility. During the middle stage, mobility continues to decrease with a wheelchair needed for long

distances. ADLs continue to decline. Pain is manifested because of decreased ROM, faulty posture, or spasticity. Late stage is marked by total dependence in mobility and ADLs, dysarthria and dysphagia, respiratory compromise, and pain. The patient may be restricted to bed. Death results from respiratory failure as muscles of ventilation, the diaphragm, intercostals, and accessory muscles become weak.

Medical Management

There is no cure for ALS, and medical management focuses on symptom management. A multidisciplinary clinic is best equipped to provide the most optimal and comprehensive care for individuals with ALS and their families. Riluzole (Rilutek) is the only disease-modifying medication presently approved for the treatment of ALS. Other medications may be prescribed for muscle cramping, spasticity, sialorrhea, and depression. With bulbar involvement, swallowing and nutrition issues are best addressed by a speech-language pathologist and a nutritionist or registered dietitian. The need for augmented feeding via a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tube may be considered in the middle stage of the disease. Some individuals choose invasive mechanical ventilation during the later stage of the disease.

Physical Therapy Management

During the early stages of the disease, individuals may participate in preventive exercise programs to forestall activity limitations. Exercise involving moderate loads and moderate resistance was found to improve function in a group of patients with early-stage ALS compared with a matched control group doing stretching (Dal Bello-Haas et al., 2007). Research from other patients with progressive neuromuscular disorders has resulted in several suggestions or guidelines for exercise in the ALS population. These general suggestions include: (1) avoid heavy eccentric exercise; (2) moderate resistance can increase strength in muscles with a manual muscle testing (MMT) grade of 3 or higher out of 5; (3) overuse is not an issue if the muscles exhibit an MMT grade of 3 or better out of 5. As the disease progresses, mobility concomitantly decreases so the strategy becomes one of support for weak muscles and modification of the home and workplace. Some individuals are helped by a custom orthosis to support the neck and upper thoracic spine. It is appropriate to assess the person's need for pressure-relieving devices, such as a mattress or a wheelchair cushion. As with all the diseases discussed so far, the balance between rest and activity is essential. Pulmonary care in the patient with ALS must be geared to prevention and education regarding potential for aspiration and difficulty with airway clearance as the respiratory muscle weaken. The physical therapist can play a very important role in assisting the patient with ALS and the family to cope with this devastating disease.

Guillain-barré syndrome

GBS is the most frequent cause of acute generalized weakness now that polio is all but eradicated. It is referred to as a syndrome because it represents a broad group of demyelinating inflammatory polyradiculoneuropathies. There are many forms of GBS. Two major subgroups can be distinguished based on pathologic and electrophysiologic findings: acquired inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (AIDP) and acute motor axonal neuropathy (AMAN). Cranial nerves, which are a part of the peripheral nervous system, may also be involved. Seventy percent of patients with GBS exhibit facial nerve palsy (van Doorn et al., 2008). Another common variant of GBS involving cranial nerves is Miller-Fisher syndrome, consisting of ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, and areflexia. GBS is a classic LMN disorder because nerve roots (radiculopathy) and peripheral nerves (polyneuropathy) are affected, resulting in flaccid paralysis.

Incidence and Etiology

GBS is rare with an incidence of about 1.2 to 2.3 cases per 100,000 people (Hughes and Cornblath, 2005). It occurs in all age groups, both children and adults. The majority of individuals who acquire GBS experience a respiratory or gastrointestinal illness before the onset of weakness and sensory changes. It is a postinfectious disorder. *Campylobacter jejuni*, a common cause of gastroenteritis, is the most frequent infectious agent. Although certain viruses, bacteria, surgery, and vaccinations have been linked to GBS, there is no one causal agent. It is a reactive, self-limited autoimmune disease with a good overall prognosis.

Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of GBS is complex because it involves autoimmune reactions. The infection-induced immune responses cause a cross-reaction with neural tissue. When myelin is destroyed, destruction is accompanied by inflammation. These acute inflammatory lesions are present within several days of the onset of symptoms. Nerve conduction is slowed and may be blocked completely. Even though the Schwann cells, which produce myelin in the peripheral nervous system, are destroyed, the axons are left intact in all but the most severe cases. Two to three weeks after the original demyelination, the Schwann cells begin to proliferate, inflammation subsides, and remyelination begins.

Although GBS is the most common cause of acute paralysis, the exact pathogenesis is as yet unclear. The progression of the demyelination appears to be different in the AMAN type of GBS versus the AIDP type. Patients with the AMAN GBS have a more rapid progression and reach nadir earlier. Nadir is the point of greatest severity. The only way to classify a patient with GBS as having axonal or nonaxonal type is electrodiagnostically (Hiraga et al., 2003).

Clinical Features

GBS is characterized by a symmetrical ascending progressive loss of motor function that begins distally and progresses proximally. Distal sensory impairments often present as paresthesias (burning and tingling) of the toes or hypesthesias (an abnormal sensitivity to touch). The sensory involvement varies and is usually not as significant as the motor involvement. The progression of motor and sensory changes may be limited to the limbs, or the progression of weakness can impair the diaphragm and cranial nerves. The diaphragm is the major muscle of ventilation. Weakness of shoulder elevators and neck flexion parallels diaphragmatic weakness. The diaphragm is innervated by cervical nerve roots 3, 4, and 5. If the diaphragm becomes involved, the person will need to be placed on mechanical ventilation. Additionally, 50% of the people with GBS experience changes in the autonomic nervous system such as fluctuations of blood pressure and pooling of blood with poor venous return, tachycardia, and arrhythmias.

Pain is reported by patients as being muscular in nature, which is myalgia. Pain can be an early symptom and requires constant intervention. Hypesthesias may cause using a bed sheet uncomfortable. Pain can be difficult to manage and can add to the person's fear and anxiety. The cause of pain is often unclear but it may come from spontaneous transmissions from demyelinated nerves (Sulton, 2002).

Half of the patients with GBS have oral-motor involvement in the form of weakness that causes difficulty speaking (dysarthria) and swallowing (dysphagia). Alternative means of communication may need to be explored as well as measures taken to prevent aspiration. The facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) is frequently involved and bilateral facial weakness is common. Double vision (diplopia) can result from eye muscle weakness secondary to cranial nerves III, IV, and VI involvement. Paralysis of cranial nerves is termed bulbar palsy. Cranial nerve involvement is referred to as bulbar because the majority of cranial nerves exit the bulb or brainstem. Deep tendon reflexes are absent because of the demyelination of the peripheral nerves, therefore making areflexia a core feature of this LMN disorder.

Medical Management

Plasmapheresis, or plasma exchange (PE), or infusion of intravenous immunoglobulins (IVIGs) has been found to be equally effective in treating GBS (Van Doorn et al., 2008; Van Koningsveldt et al., 2007). However, IVIG is the preferred treatment because of availability and greater convenience (Hughes et al., 2006). Either of these interventions needs to be initiated within the first or second week of symptom onset to shorten the course of the disease (Van Doorn et al., 2008). Despite the use of either PE or IVIG treatment, 20% of severely affected patients are unable to ambulate after 6 months (Hughes et al., 2007).

There are three phases of GBS: acute, plateau, and recovery. The first stage lasts up to 4 weeks. During this time, symptoms appear; 80% of individuals present with paresthesias, 70% with areflexia, and 60% with weakness in all limbs. In time, the percentages of patients exhibiting the core symptoms increase to close to 100%. The plateau phase is defined by the stabilization of symptoms. Although symptoms are present, they are not progressing or worsening. This phase can also last up to 4 weeks. Lastly, the recovery phase is evident when the patient begins to improve. Eighty percent of patients recover within a year but may have some neurologic sequela or residual deficits. The recovery phase can last a few months to a couple of years. Patients who tend to have a poorer outcome are those who needed ventilatory support, had a rapid progression of demyelination, and demonstrated low distal motor amplitudes on electromyography (EMG) (Ropper et al., 1991). The latter finding is reflective of the amount of axonal damage incurred.

Physical Therapy Management

Acute Phase

Supportive care during the acute stage is a necessity. Because of the possibility of respiratory involvement, people with GBS are hospitalized and may spend a long time in intensive care. During the acute phase, it is most appropriate for the physical therapist to treat the patient as symptoms are usually progressing. If a patient's respiratory musculature becomes involved, he or she will likely require ventilatory support and be in an intensive care unit (ICU). Physical therapy goals during the acute stage include minimizing the acute signs and symptoms; supporting pulmonary function, preventing skin breakdown and contracture formation; and managing pain. Exercise is limited to those movements that can be made without pain or excessive fatigue (Hallum and Allen, 2013).

If the physical therapist assistant is providing passive ROM and positioning under the supervision of the physical therapist, the therapist needs to provide information about oxygen saturation and vital capacity parameters in order for the assistant to be alert to the changes in the patient's respiratory status. The physical therapist assistant may also provide postural drainage with percussion to maintain airway clearance. Gentle stretching of the chest wall and trunk rotation may be done while the patient is still on a ventilator. The person is positioned to decrease potential contractures with hand and foot splints. Extra care should be taken when performing ROM as denervated muscles can easily be damaged. The assistant should be careful to support the limb to prevent overstretching. Always ensure that the ankle is in a subtalar neutral position before stretching the heel cord. Subtalar neutral is the position in which the talus is equally prominent when palpated anteriorly, as seen in Figure 13-2. ROM should be performed at least twice a day. The schedule of positioning, splinting, and the ROM program should be posted at the patient's bedside (Hallum and Allen, 2013).

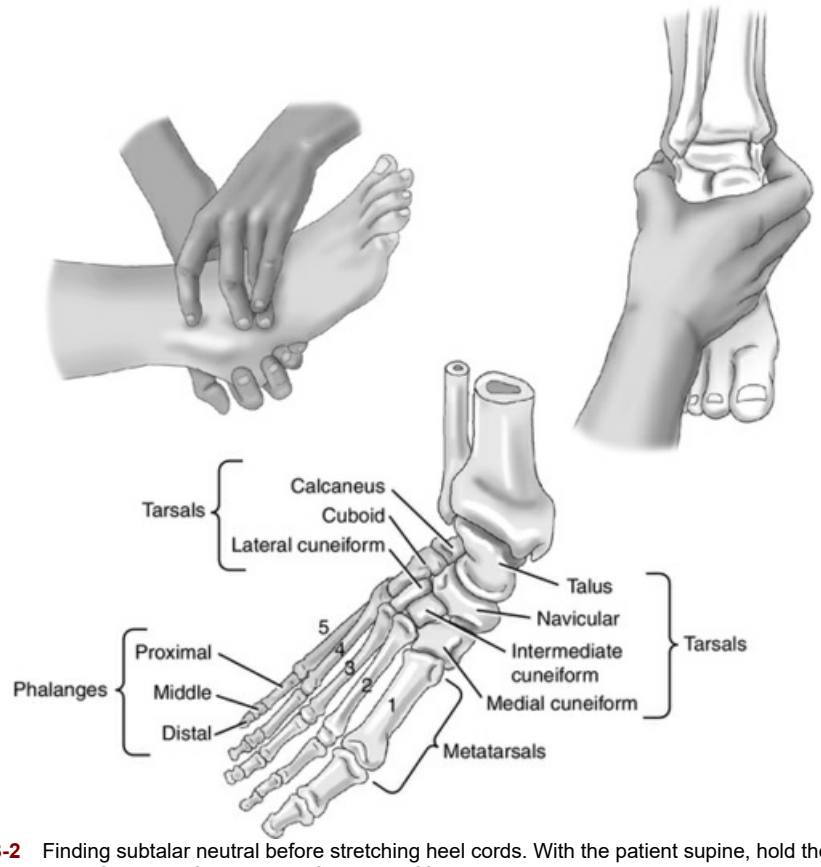


FIGURE 13-2 Finding subtalar neutral before stretching heel cords. With the patient supine, hold the heel of the foot with one hand. Grasp the foot over the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads using the thumb, index, and ring fingers of the other hand. Palpate both sides of the talus on the dorsum of the foot (refer to the frontal view and skeletal structure). Passively dorsiflex the foot until resistance is felt. In this position, supinate and pronate the foot; the talus will bulge laterally and medially, respectively. Positioning the foot so that there is no bulge is subtalar neutral.

Pain is one of the most difficult symptoms to treat in patients with GBS. Medications are not always effective. Passive ROM, massage and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) may be helpful. If the patient demonstrates an increased sensitivity to light touch, a cradle can be used to keep the bed sheet away from the skin. Low-pressure wrapping or a snug-fitting garment may provide a way to avoid light moving touch on the limbs. Pain may be heightened by the patient's fear as to what has happened. Reassurance and an explanation about what to expect may help alleviate anxiety that could compound the pain.

Plateau Phase

When respiratory and autonomic functions stabilize, a program to increase tolerance to upright can be begun. This must be initiated gradually as the patient may still be on a ventilator. Physical therapy goals during the plateau phase include acclimation to upright posture, maintenance of ROM, improvement in pulmonary function, and avoidance of fatigue and overexertion. The patient is acclimated to sitting upright with appropriate postural alignment and truncal support because it may still have minimal innervation. Pressure relief is still provided by changing positions on a regular basis. If the patient continues to experience pain, it may lead to holding limbs in potentially contracture-prone positions. Heat may be used before stretching if there is no sensory loss. Return of oral musculature may signal the need for additional team members to work on the movement patterns needed for swallowing, eating, and speaking. The physical therapist assistant may provide postural support for the patient during these sessions. At the very least, the assistant needs to be aware of any precautions regarding potential aspiration and any requirement for maintaining an upright upper body posture after any oral intake of food or fluids.

Recovery Phase

Muscle strength is gradually recovered 2 to 4 weeks after the condition has reached a plateau. The

muscles return in the reverse order or descending pattern. This is opposite from the ascending order of loss. As the neck and trunk muscles recover, the patient may begin to use a tilt table for continued acclimation to upright and weight bearing on the lower extremities. Positioning splints may be needed for the lower extremities as well as TED stockings to decrease venous pooling. Muscles of respiration can be weak if the person required ventilatory assistance and this weakness may limit tolerance to upright.

Physical therapy goals at this time now encompass strengthening and maximizing functional abilities in addition to carrying over any goals from the previous phases. Strengthening activities and exercise prescription for these individuals is challenging. Depending on the number of intact motor units present in any given muscle, the same amount of exercise can be harmful or beneficial. If there are too few motor units, working the muscle may be detrimental to its recovery. Unfortunately, there is no easy way to ascertain how many motor units are present in a patient recovering from GBS.

Once the patient has stabilized or reached a plateau, active exercise can begin. Each patient must be progressed individually based on his or her response to exercise. Rehabilitation should begin as soon as improvement starts (Van Doorn et al., 2008). Gupta et al. (2010) found that patients continued to improve over a one-year period following initial hospitalization. Patients were transferred from the hospital to a neurorehabilitation unit on average of 29.5 days after initial hospital admission. The mean length of stay in the unit was 32.9 days. Longer stays were associated with autonomic dysfunction but not with cranial nerve involvement of need for ventilator assistance. In a recent systematic review by Kahn and Amatya (2012), "satisfactory" evidence was found for both inpatient rehabilitation and physical therapy/exercise to produce positive functional gains in patients with GBS. There was "good" evidence for outpatient high intensity rehabilitation to produce long-term gains even 6.5 years after initial diagnosis with GBS. The authors did point out that there is still a need for more high-quality randomized controlled trials (RCTs) to determine effectiveness of timing, intensity, and progression of rehabilitation programs for this very challenging and complex condition.

Bensman's recommendations in 1970 are still useful guidelines for exercise in this population:

1. Use short periods of nonfatiguing exercise matched to the patient's strength.
2. Increase the difficulty of an activity or level of exercise only if the patient improves or if there is no deterioration in status after a week.
3. Return the patient to bed rest if a decrease in strength or function occurs.
4. Direct the strengthening exercises at improving function not merely at improving strength.

Overworking a partially denervated muscle produces a profound decrease in that muscle's ability to demonstrate strength and endurance. Signs of overuse weakness are delayed onset of muscle soreness, which gets worse 1 to 5 days after exercising, and a reduction in the maximum amount of force the muscle is able to generate (Faulkner et al., 1993). Bassile (1996) recommends training muscles that are at a 2/5 muscle strength in a gravity-eliminated plane using only the weight of the limb. Once the person can move the limb against a resistance equal to the mass of the limb, the person can perform antigravity exercise. Exercise progression in this population must be taken slowly. Care must be taken to avoid straining weaker muscles while increasing resistance to those showing good recovery. The distal muscles of the hands and feet are often the ones most likely to not recover fully. Use of lightweight orthoses can be helpful to support muscles around the ankle from overuse.

Regardless of the terminology, everyone agrees that it is best to start with low repetitions and short, frequent bouts of exercise matched to the patient's muscular abilities, that is, muscle strength. For example, someone who has poor (2/5) deltoid muscle strength could exercise in a pool, or with an overhead sling apparatus or a powder board. All of these situations are gravity-eliminated. Facilitation techniques, such as stroking, brushing, vibration, and tapping of the muscle, can be combined with gravity-eliminated exercise. The patient is restricted from moving against gravity until the deltoid muscles' strength is a 3/5. The lower extremities are going to recover after the upper extremities. Most people walk within 6 months of the onset of symptoms (Van Doorn et al., 2008) but 20% of the severely involved do not achieve this milestone. The dilemma comes as to whether to attempt ambulation with a patient before the muscles of the lower extremities have at least a fair grade (3/5) (Bassile, 1996). To date, there are no valid outcome measures to use to evaluate functional progress.

Adaptive equipment needs change as the patient recovers. Once acclimated to upright, mobility may initially be limited to a wheelchair. When ambulation is achieved, a walker, forearm crutches,

or a cane may be needed as an assistive device. Orthotic assistance needs to be lightweight. A plastic AFO or even an air stirrup splint can provide support for weak ankles. Residual weakness is most often apparent in the distal muscles of the hands and feet such as the wrist extensors, finger intrinsics, ankle dorsiflexors, and foot intrinsics. The gluteal and quadriceps may also remain weak. Endurance is often lacking and may be a major obstacle even if the person is strong enough to return to work. Endurance training should be included in the patient's home exercise program; otherwise the patient may continue to be minimally active despite adequate strength. Pitetti et al. (1993) studied a 54-year-old man who has been 3 years post-GBS. He was able to improve leg strength and total work capacity after a thrice-a-week aerobic exercise program using a bike ergometer. He was even able to return to gardening. A recent case study of a highly trained athlete with GBS (Fisher and Stevens, 2008) was reported in the literature. The individual recovered within 3 weeks using a combined treatment with IVIG, PE, and corticosteroids.

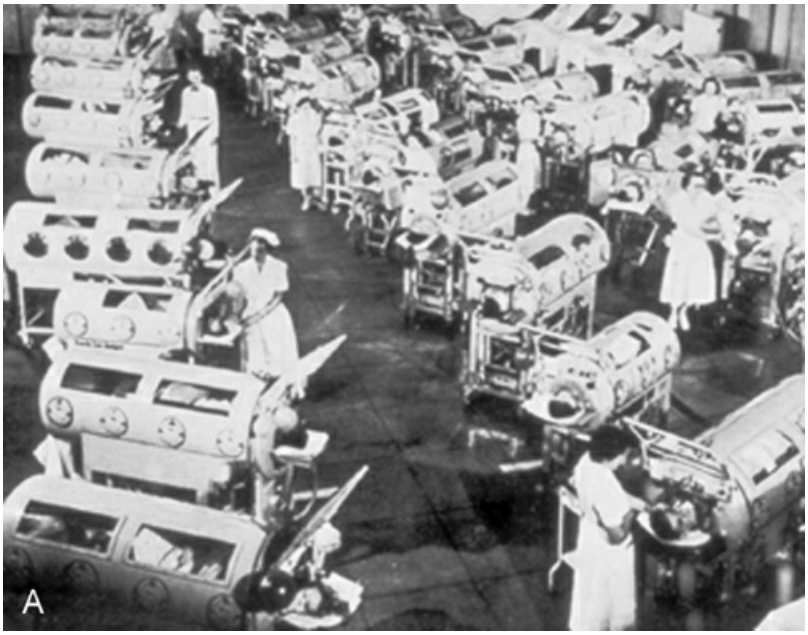
Summary

The prognosis for a person with Guillain-Barré syndrome is usually very good. Fortunately, the muscle weakness is reversed as the peripheral nervous system recovers. However, patients with GBS are often immobilized for lengthy periods of time because of the slow nature of the recovery process. The health-care team's role during that time is to safeguard the musculoskeletal and cardiopulmonary systems so that when recovery occurs, the patient is able to make the most of the changes. The role of exercise in this neuromuscular disease is to improve function without causing overuse damage. The use of nonfatiguing exercise protocols is indicated. These protocols will be further discussed in the next section.

Postpolio syndrome

PPS is the name given to the late effects of poliomyelitis. Polio is a viral infection that attacks some of the anterior horn cells in the spinal cord and results in muscular paralysis. Polio was epidemic in the United States from 1910 to 1959. Decades after having survived polio, 25% to 40% of these individuals experience fatigue, new muscle weakness, and loss of functional abilities (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke [NINDS], 2012). PPS was first described and recognized as a clinical entity in 1972, when Mulder et al. published criteria for its diagnosis. The latest criteria consist of: (1) having had polio based on history; (2) a positive neurologic exam or EMG; (3) a period of relative stability lasting at least 15 years; and (4) development of new neurologic weakness and abnormal fatigue, which persists for at least a year and is unexplained by any other pathology (NINDS, 2012).

Because records are not as accurate as one might expect, we only have an estimate of the number of people who actually experienced polio. According to Post-Polio Health International (PHI), the estimates on which people may experience PPS range from 12 million to 20 million people worldwide. The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS) (2012) report that more than 443,000 individuals in the United States may be at risk for PPS. The severity of PPS is related to the severity of the original polio infection. If a person had a mild case of polio, the PPS is also going to be mild. Conversely, if a person had a severe case, which required use of an iron lung (Figure 13-3), the PPS may be just as severe. Postpolio syndrome shows a slow progression over a long period of time and is rarely life-threatening.



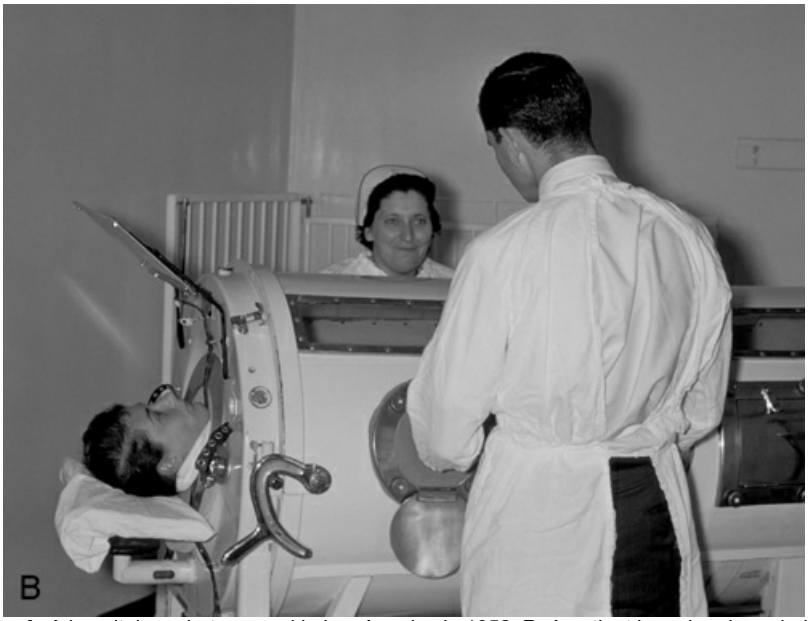


FIGURE 13-3 **A,** A hospital respiratory ward in Los Angeles in 1952. **B,** A patient in an iron lung during the Rhode Island polio epidemic of 1960. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.)

Etiology

Most sources accept the theory that postpolio syndrome is caused by decades of increased metabolic demand made on the body by giant motor units (Gonzalez et al., 2010; Trojan and Cashman, 2005). These giant motor units were formed during the recovery process from the original viral infection. After the poliovirus destroys anterior horn cells, muscle fibers innervated by those anterior horn cells are orphaned. During recovery, the anterior horn cells not destroyed by the virus reinnervate some of these orphaned fibers, creating giant motor units. The repair process involves branching and cutting back of neural processes. This repair process continued after the original infection, but as time passed, the ability of the body to keep up with the necessary changes diminished. Stress and overuse of the large motor units is hypothesized to lead to distal degeneration of axons (Wiechers and Hubbell, 1981). The body's response to the original pathology is compounded by age-related changes in the nervous system. Because there is a loss of motor units during normal aging, a person who had polio may lose some giant motor units. The end result is a subsequent loss of function in the person with PPS.

Clinical Features

Fatigue

One of the most commonly reported and debilitating problems in patients with PPS is fatigue (Gonzalez et al., 2010). In fact, fatigue is one of a triad of symptoms, which include pain and a decline in strength. This fatigue goes beyond the typical fatigue everyone has felt after working hard. This fatigue is described as an overwhelming tiredness or exhaustion occurring with only minimal effort. It can be so severe that the person's ability to concentrate is affected. The fatigue may occur at the same time of day and be accompanied by signs of autonomic distress, such as sweating or headaches. Some people have described the feeling of fatigue as "hitting the wall." Defects in neuromuscular transmission caused by the degeneration of the distal motor unit in PPS may contribute to muscular fatigue (Trojan and Cashman, 2005). Fatigue is multidimensional. Muscular factors, such as overuse, high-energy cost of even submaximal workloads, and decreased cardiopulmonary deconditioning, can contribute to physical fatigue. Mental fatigue may impact psychosocial function and lead to a decreased QOL. Modifiable risk factors for fatigue, such as stress and physical activity, must be considered in the management of patients with PPS (Trojan et al., 2009).

New Weakness

New muscle weakness is a hallmark of postpolio syndrome. It occurs in muscles already involved and in muscles that did not clinically show any effects of the original polio infection. There is evidence that these "new muscles" may actually have been involved subclinically, based on EMG results. The weakness is asymmetric, usually proximal and slowly progressive in nature.

As mentioned previously, overuse has been associated with the new muscle weakness seen in individuals with PPS. If fatigue is a contributing factor, the weakness may be transient. Motor units normally break down with increasing age, and in the case of individuals with PPS, these may be giant motor units. After years of increased metabolic effort, these giant motor units break down and cause new weakness, which is permanent. Because of increased muscle weakness, patients with PPS may experience impaired balance and, therefore, be at greater risk for falls. Assistive devices for ambulation including use of a wheelchair may need to be considered.

Pain

Muscle and joint pain are common manifestations of PPS. Muscle pain is related to overuse of weak muscles. The pain and fatigue in these muscles occurs 1 to 2 days after an activity. It is lessened by rest and responds well to pacing of activities to avoid excessive fatigue. Muscle pain is diffuse and takes a long time to recover from, as evidenced by research on patient's adherence to recommendations regarding pacing and lifestyle changes (Peach and Olejnik, 1991). Those subjects that followed the recommendations had a higher percentage of resolution or improvement in muscular pain.

Joints can become unstable when muscles are weak or when excessive daily physical activity overstresses these muscles and their surrounding soft tissues. Mobility is often curtailed in the presence of joint or muscle pain, which then leads to muscular atrophy. Pain is usually the result of repetitive microtrauma from years of moving joints that are misaligned or malaligned, secondary to weakness or frank postural deformity. Joint pain is a result of wear and tear on joints, of poor posture, and of deterioration of soft-tissue or orthopedic surgical procedures done to treat the residual effects of polio. Reports of joint and muscle pain are more likely from women with PPS than men with PPS (Vasiliadis et al., 2002).

Other Symptoms

Cold Intolerance

Because of sympathetic involvement, the person with PPS is intolerant of cold. The limbs are often cold and require extra clothing to minimize heat loss. Because of this intolerance, use of cold as a modality is usually met with resistance. If the person has difficulty with edema, heat is often not the modality of choice. Therefore, extensive patient education may be required to convince a person with PPS to use local cold as a treatment for edema.

Decreased Function

Fatigue, pain, and weakness conspire to produce a cycle of inactivity in the person with PPS. When asking a person with PPS what he or she does on a regular basis, his or her reply is "not much." However, with probing, you may realize that the person used to be very active and do a lot but has curtailed his own activity level because of a combination of fatigue, pain, and weakness. With less activity comes deconditioning of the cardiopulmonary systems. The deconditioning further exacerbates fatigue and weakness, leading to less activity and an even lower level of social engagement. Any one of the triad of symptoms, fatigue, pain, or weakness, can trigger the cycle of decreased activity and function.

Vital functions, such as eating and breathing, can be affected if the person originally had bulbar involvement. Cranial nerves exiting from the brain stem or bulb support oral motor and cardiorespiratory function. If the poliovirus attacked the brain stem, the central control of breathing could have been compromised in addition to the muscles of ventilation, such as the diaphragm and intercostals. Subsequently, after years of working, the person with PPS may be so exhausted at the end of the day that he or she collapses at night. Shortness of breath is a common complaint. Sleep may be interrupted by periods of apnea or pain and, thus, further compounds the problems with fatigue, pain, and weakness encountered during waking hours. The individual with oral-motor, a significant pulmonary involvement, or sleep disturbances will be more appropriately treated by a team member with expertise in that area, such as an occupational therapist or a speech therapist. A

pulmonologist may recommend use of a positive-pressure breathing device at night to ensure adequate oxygenation.

Having walked for years with significant gait deviations, people with PPS are at risk for falls and loss of bone density. These individuals have prided themselves on using assistive devices only when absolutely necessary, although others have walked with knee-ankle-foot orthoses (KAFOs) and forearm crutches. Many have established compensatory movements with or without orthoses and assistive devices that allowed them functional movement. With the onset of fatigue and new weakness, these compensations may no longer be adequate and may put them at high risk for falls and other musculoskeletal injuries. These risks interfere with the accomplishment of tasks of daily living. Many postural abnormalities are seen in patients with PPS including a forward head, forward-leaning trunk, an absent lumbar curve, uneven pelvic base, and scoliosis. People with PPS have a greater chance of having osteoarthritis than the general population.

Medical Management

Medications for fatigue have not been proven effective. High dose of prednisone and amantadine have not been shown to improve strength or treat fatigue (NINDS, 2012). Management of patients with PPS is based on physical activity and an individualized muscle training program. Additionally, healthy diet, positive-pressure ventilation, treatment for sleep apnea, and staying warm are all recommendations that might be made to an individual with PPS. The medical focus has been on managing the signs and symptoms of the syndrome for these individuals to improve their QOL. In a recent review, Gonzalez et al. (2010) recommended that physical therapy be emphasized as part of a multidisciplinary and multiprofessional approach to rehabilitation for patients with PPS.

Physical Therapy Management

Goals for physical therapy management of the individual with PPS are to:
1. Decrease work load on muscles;
2. Avoid fatigue;
3. Ambulate safely;
4. Achieve an optimal level of functional independence; and
5. Educate the patient and the family.

Physical Activity/Exercise

Individuals with PPS benefit from physical activity. Individuals who engage in regular physical activity reported a higher level of functioning and fewer symptoms than those who are not as active (Fillyaw et al., 1991; Willen et al., 2001). Every exercise program needs to be tailored to the person's presentation, as most people with PPS exhibit asymmetrical muscle weakness. General guidelines include avoiding overuse and disuse and modifying the level of physical activity to decrease pain. Heart rate, blood pressure, and rate of perceived exertion should all be monitored. Trojan and Finch (1997) recommended a Borg rating of 14, which equates to "hard." The original Borg scale is preferred over the newer 10-point one. In keeping with a nonfatiguing protocol, the duration of the exercise should be short and use a submaximal workload.

Customized exercise programs have been shown in multiple studies to be effective in improving mild to moderate weakness without causing muscle overuse (Bertelson et al., 2009; Farbu, et al., 2006; Jubelt and Agre, 2000). Short intervals of exercise are recommended with rests in between to recover. Nonfatiguing protocols consist of submaximal and maximal strengthening exercises combined with short duration repetitions. An every-other-day schedule of exercise is used to avoid overuse and to provide for full recovery. Exercise should be supervised by a physical therapist or physical therapist assistant to ensure that correct techniques are being used and to monitor that the patient avoids increasing muscle or joint pain and producing excessive muscle fatigue. Studies have found exercise and lifestyle modifications to positively contribute to reducing signs of overuse, improving fatigue, and improving function (Cup et al., 2007; Klein et al., 2002; Oncu et al., 2009). For examples of nonfatiguing protocols, see Table 13-7.

Table 13-7

Nonfatiguing Exercise Protocols

	Nonfatiguing Aerobic Interval Training	Nonfatiguing Strengthening Exercise
Resistance	Target heart rate—low range, 60%–70%	60%–80% of one repetition maximum
Frequency	3 times per week	3–5 times per week
Repetitions	NA	Goal of 5–10
Duration	15–30 minutes	NA
Contract time/rest time	NA	5 seconds/10 seconds
Intervals	Start with 2- or 3-minute exercise bouts interspersed with 1-minute rests for a session of 15 minutes; when able to do this comfortably for a total of 20 minutes for 2 weeks, increase each exercise bout by 1 minute. Goal: 4 minutes each exercise bout, 1-minute rest interval, total session: 30 minutes total of exercise bouts.	NA
Kinds of exercise	Walking, swimming, pool walking, stationary bicycling, arm ergometer—selection is based on strongest muscle group to achieve heart rate goals and avoid joint trauma.	Concentric
Measurable and reproducible testing	Pretest, then 2 and 4 months.	Pretest, then at 1, 3, 6 months, and yearly intervals.

Data from Owen RP: Postpolio syndrome and cardiopulmonary conditioning, in rehabilitation medicine—adding life to years, special issue. *West J Med* 154:557–558, 1991; McNelis A: Physical therapy management of post-polio syndrome. *Rehab Manag* 38–43, 1989; Dean E, Ross J: Modified aerobic walking program: Effect on patients with postpolio syndrome. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 69:1033–1038, 1988; and Jones DR, Speier J, Canine K, Owen R, Stull GA: Cardiorespiratory responses to aerobic training by patients with postpoliomyelitis sequelae. *JAMA* 261:3255–3258, 1989.

Exercise plays a pivotal role in managing PPS. To date, no prospective data has linked increased physical activity to muscle weakness (Farbu et al., 2006). Exercises must strengthen muscles, not induce muscle fatigue. A relaxed pace is best for any exercise routine. Teach your patients with PPS to avoid overdoing it in a workout and to not go beyond the point of pain or fatigue. They must learn that if it takes several days to regain their strength, what was done was too much. Aerobic exercise, such as walking on a treadmill, bicycle ergometry, and swimming, are recommended. Aquatic exercise can be very beneficial because water decreases the stress on the joints, bones, and muscles. Studies have shown improvement in flexibility, strength, and cardiorespiratory fitness in patients with PPS who participated in aquatic exercise programs (Willen et al., 2001). Tiffreau et al. (2010) also found that aquatic physical therapy had a positive impact on muscle function and pain.

Stretching

Stretching overworked muscles may not be indicated because of the potential for increasing joint instability. The person with PPS may have already achieved a delicate balance of ligamentous and muscular tightness that has substituted for weak or absent musculature. A mild shortening of the plantar flexors may increase knee stability when there is quadriceps weakness. In such a case, stretching the heel cord could impair function. Any increase in ROM must be able to be supported by adequate muscle strength, which may not be possible in this population. Gentle stretching may be indicated as a strategy to combat pain or cramping from occasional overuse (Gawne et al., 1993).

Pain Management

Pain management depends on the type of pain that the patient with PPS is experiencing. There are three types of pain that have been described in the literature: cramping, musculoskeletal, and biomechanical (Gawne et al., 1993). Gentle stretching after application of heat is indicated in the presence of cramping. This is very similar to the way people with polio were initially treated. As musculoskeletal pain often results from overuse; the structure involved, such as the tendon, bursa, fascia, or muscle, must be identified before an appropriate treatment can be determined. Treatment for inflammation or strains should incorporate use of an antiinflammatory medication and appropriate modalities and changes in patterns of use of the involved extremities. By far, the most frequent type of pain comes from biomechanical changes, resulting from degenerative joint disease, low back pain, and nerve compression. Posture education and recommending the use of an assistive device are the best strategies to use in this instance.

Orthoses may be indicated to provide better biomechanical alignment of the feet and lower extremities. In PPS, the individual usually has a combination of biomechanical malalignment and muscle imbalance. An orthosis may only be able to support better joint alignment, not accomplish a complete correction. The most frequently prescribed orthoses include shoe lifts, AFOs and KAFOs. These orthoses often improve gait quality and gait safety and reduce knee and general pain. Kelly and DiBello (2007) provide a useful classification system for making decisions about orthoses for people with PPS. Use of assistive devices may also need to be considered.

Lifestyle Modification

People with PPS must change their lifestyle. Although this is easy for us to say, it is very difficult for them to do. Having survived polio and not let it get the best of them, these individuals often resist seeing the need for and implementing change. Mobility is freedom and independence, which is something they fought for and achieved a long time ago. Change is going to come slowly. The adage of working through pain was used successfully before and so they might think that this strategy will work again. Slowing down seems a poor option when it is equated in their mind to give in. A recent review by Gonzalez et al. (2010) suggests reducing physical and emotional stress, joint protection, modification of work and home environments, and the use of mobility aids to reduce fatigue and preserve function. Others recommend energy conservation, weight loss, and use of an assistive device as lifestyle changes to combat fatigue and musculoskeletal pain (joint and muscle pain).

Energy Conservation

Because of the far-reaching effects of fatigue and the danger of overuse, energy conservation must be an integral part of the management of a patient with PPS, and may be the most important aspect of management. Energy conservation is a means of modifying a person's lifestyle to conserve energy. It can incorporate changes in the environment, the task, or the way the mover performs the task. One person with PPS may need to use an assistive device when none was used before to conserve energy relative to ambulation. Someone else may require the use of an electric scooter. When performing ADLs, the person has to ask if the task can be done in one trip rather than three. For example, can all the dishes be unloaded from the dishwasher onto a cart and the cart moved to a location where all the dishes can be put away rather than making multiple trips to and from the dishwasher to various locations. Can the person sit rather than stand to perform filing (if that is part of the person's job)? Analysis of activities that constitute a person's day can be helpful in determining where changes can easily be made.

Activity pacing is part of energy conservation and, therefore, of lifestyle modification. Pacing requires a balance between rest and activity. Does the person have more energy in the morning or in the afternoon? Taking advantage of planning activities according to when energy is available makes good sense. Taking more frequent rest breaks may allow someone to continue to work as well as perform daily household activities. Adequate rest may be different for every individual with PPS. Daytime naps may be needed. Continuing to do our "jobs" whatever that entails leads to having a better sense of self and quality of life. Therefore, the assistant should council the person with PPS to increase the amount of rest while reducing stress (Halbritter, 2001).

Balance Between Activity and Rest

Physical therapy management of the patient with PPS is aimed at decreasing the workload of muscles used on a daily basis. Nonfatiguing exercise protocols, energy conservation, activity pacing, breathing exercises, and coordination of breathing with activity are all strategies that are used at some point with a person experiencing PPS. The biggest challenge comes not in identifying intervention strategies but in helping the person find the most beneficial balance between activity and rest. How much exercise can the person do while conserving energy throughout the daily routine? This is a real balancing act. More is not better in this case, less is best.

Chapter summary

The neurologic disorders reviewed in this chapter have several things in common. They all significantly impact the ability of a person to function. Mobility, daily living activities, job performance, and participation in leisure activities may all be seriously compromised as a result of these disorders. All of these disorders produce fatigue and create the potential for deconditioning regardless of the underlying pathologic process involved. Exercise is beneficial for the individual with any of these neurologic disorders, even in the case of an individual with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Exercise is the central strategy and the most crucial part of the overall therapeutic management plan. Precautions regarding overuse are applicable to all patients with these types of neurologic disorders. Regardless of specific disorder, interventions require all individuals to find a balance between the amount of rest and activity that can be tolerated while continuing to optimize function. Early intervention, which in this context means "soon after diagnosis," provides the person the best possible plan of care. This initial plan of care may contain many episodes and

allows for continual modification of the intervention strategies based on disease progression or recovery. The plan is instituted and carried out by a team of health-care practitioners. The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant are part of the team that play an important role in managing individuals with Parkinson disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and postpolio syndrome.

Case Studies

Rehabilitation Unit Initial Evaluation: JB

History

Chart Review: JB was transferred to a regional medical center from a rural county hospital for severe progressive weakness 3 weeks ago. The patient was admitted through the emergency room on the day before the transfer, complaining of weakness in all extremities. He had a viral infection a few days earlier, with diarrhea, fever, and chills. No previous history of diabetes, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), heart disease, or hypertension. Patient had previous hospitalization via the emergency room for kidney stones. He has no allergies and is on no medications. He recently completed a course of IV gammaglobulin. PT order for examination and treatment received upon transfer to the rehabilitation unit.

Subjective

JB states that he is married and is a high school math teacher. He reports having a viral illness lasting 3 days from which he fully recovered. Three weeks ago, he noticed that he had difficulty writing because of arm weakness. On admission to the rural hospital, he had partial paralysis of his arms and total paralysis of his legs. He had no pain. He and his wife were anxious about the reason for his transfer to a regional medical center, but following diagnosis and treatment of Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS), they are looking forward to his recovery. He grows tomatoes as a hobby. He lives in a one-story house with two steps to enter. He gives consent for the examination.

Objective

Appearance/Equipment: Patient is supine in bed on an egg-crate mattress. A Foley catheter in place.

Systems Review

Communication/Cognition: Speech is normal. He understands multiple step directions, is alert and cooperative.

Cardiovascular/Pulmonary: HR 82 b/min; BP 130/90 mm Hg; RR 20 b/min;

Integumentary: Skin intact, no redness or edema

Musculoskeletal: PROM intact; AROM impaired

Neuromuscular: Gait, locomotion, and balance impaired. UE and LE paralysis; sensation intact proximally, impaired distally.

Psychosocial: Wife is at bedside.

Tests and Measures

Anthropometric: Height, 6' 3", weight, 190 lbs.

Arousal, Attention, and Cognition: Oriented × 3, mental status intact.

Circulation: Skin is warm to touch, pedal pulses present bilaterally, strong radial pulse

Ventilation/Respiration: Breathing pattern is 2-neck, 2-diaphragm. No chest wall expansion noted. Epigastric rise is 1½". Vital capacity is 3 L, 50% of normal.

Cranial Nerve Integrity: Cranial nerves intact.

Reflex Integrity: Biceps 2 +, patellar, Achilles 0 bilaterally; Babinski absent bilaterally; muscle tone is flaccid in the lower extremities, trunk, and below the elbows; tone in the arms, shoulders, and neck appears normal.

Range of Motion: PROM WFL; active shoulder flexion/abduction in sitting to 60 degrees bilaterally, active elbow flexion to 90 degrees bilaterally, elbow extension lacks 15 degrees from complete extension, neck motion WFL, no other active movement.

Motor Function: Patient requires max assist 1 for rolling and coming to sit. Patient can sit up supported in bed for 20 minutes at a time. He is dependent in sitting and standing. Patient requires max assist of 2 for bed ←→ W/C transfer.

Muscle Performance: Tested per Berryman Reese manual muscle testing procedures. Patient is

in supported sitting with appropriate stabilization. Muscles of facial expression are intact bilaterally.

	R	L
Upper trapezius	3	3
Deltoid	3–	3–
Biceps	3–	3–
Triceps	0	0
Wrist extensors	0	0
Finger flexors	0	0
Hip flexors	0	0
Quadriceps	0	0
Anterior tibialis	0	0
Gastrocsoleus	0	0

Sensory Integrity: Pinprick intact throughout the upper extremities except diminished below the wrists; intact on the trunk and lower extremities to the knees, absent below.

Pain: 0 on a scale of 0–10.

Posture: At rest, the patient is in supine on an egg-crate mattress with a Foley catheter in place. His upper limbs are flexed across his lower trunk. His lower limbs are externally rotated at the hips, extended at the knees, and plantar flexed at the feet.

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance: Dependent in gait and locomotion. Patient is unable to take any challenges in a supported sitting position.

Self-Care: Dependent in feeding, dressing, personal hygiene.

Assessment/evaluation

JB is a 53-year-old married, male teacher who, after experiencing a viral illness, was hospitalized with paralysis of his arms and legs. On day 2, he was transferred from a local hospital to a regional medical center for continued evaluation and treatment. The diagnosis of GBS was made and he underwent IV infusion with gammaglobulin. He is dependent in transfers and locomotion. Functional Independence Measure: transfers 1, locomotion 1. He is being transferred to the rehabilitation unit at the medical center.

Problem List

1. Dependent in mobility
2. Dependent in activities of daily living (ADLs) and transfers
3. Decreased strength and endurance
4. Dependent in pressure relief
5. Lacks knowledge of disease course and rehabilitation

Diagnosis: JB exhibits impaired motor function and sensory integrity associated with an acute polyneuropathy which is guide pattern 5G. This pattern includes Guillain-Barré syndrome.

Prognosis: Over the course of 2 months, JB will improve his level of functional independence and functional skills. Changes will be limited by the degree and rapidity of recovery of muscle function and strength and any residual musculoskeletal or neuromuscular deficits.

Short-Term Goals (2 weeks)

1. JB will maintain passive range of motion of all joints within functional limits for ADL.
2. JB will increase vital capacity to 100% to improve cough effectiveness.
3. JB will demonstrate a 2-chest, 2-diaphragm breathing pattern to increase tolerance to upright.
4. JB will increase strength in all innervated muscles to 3 + to improve sitting and standing balance.
5. JB will increase tolerance to upright sitting in a wheelchair to 4 hours a day with no loss of skin integrity.
6. JB will roll supine → prone and back with min assist of 1 for pressure relief.
7. JB will transfer from bed to wheelchair with min assist of 1 using stand pivot.

Long Term Goals (6 weeks at Discharge from Rehabilitation Unit)

1. JB will ambulate 150 feet × 3 independently with or without and assistive device.
2. JB will negotiate a set of 4 stairs with handrails.
3. JB will stand for 45 consecutive minutes (class period) without a break.
4. JB will drive his car from home to school.
5. JB will plant 5 tomato plants without a rest break.

Plan

Patient will be seen twice a day 5 days a week and once on Saturday and Sunday for 45-minute treatment sessions. Treatment sessions are to include positioning, range of motion, pulmonary rehabilitation, functional mobility training, patient/family education, and discharge planning.

Patient will be reassessed weekly.

Coordination, Communication, and Documentation: The physical therapist and physical therapist assistant will be in constant contact. The physical therapist will also be communicating with the occupational therapist, the respiratory therapist, the physician, the nursing staff, and the nutritionist.

Patient/Client Instruction: JB and his wife will be educated regarding the pathologic process involved in GBS, the importance of range of motion, monitoring for changes in muscle function, and avoiding overuse.

Procedural Interventions

1. Passive range of motion to all extremities that lack voluntary movement.
2. Positioning program to prevent contractures including low top tennis shoes.
3. Turning schedule for pressure relief.
4. Chest wall stretching.
5. Diaphragm strengthening and incentive spirometry.
6. Transfer training progressing from sit pivot→stand pivot to and from the bed to commode, bed to wheelchair (W/C); W/C to car.
7. Tilt table for standing.
8. Strengthening exercises as muscle function returns.
9. Endurance training using a nonfatiguing protocol.
10. W/C mobility training.
11. Gait training progressing from parallel bars to level ground to elevations.
12. ADL training with upper extremity support and hand over hand progressing to independent feeding, dressing, and toileting.
13. Monitor muscle and sensory return.

Discharge Planning

JB will be discharged to home with spouse. A home and school assessment will be performed if needed and equipment secured as necessary. Vocational rehabilitation will be contacted.

Questions to think about

- What procedural interventions are appropriate for the physical therapist assistant to perform?
- When would transfers to sitting and standing be initiated?
- What signs and symptoms should the physical therapist assistant use to indicate a negative change in status?

Review questions

1. What is the most common cause of acute paralysis in adults?
2. What is one of the three most common movement disorders seen in the United States?
3. What is the most pervasive symptom seen in all the neurologic disorders discussed?
4. Give several interventions that could be used to improve lower extremity (LE) extensibility in a person with multiple sclerosis (MS) who exhibits increased LE tone.
5. Identify three factors that could lead to inactivity and deconditioning in a person with postpolio syndrome.
6. List signs and symptoms of overuse weakness.
7. What is the most prevalent type of MS?
8. How long can a person with Parkinson disease (PD) usually benefit from taking L-dopa?
9. Describe strategies to use when a person with PD freezes.
10. Who should use a non fatiguing exercise protocol?
11. What are three exercise guidelines for a patient with Guillain-Barré syndrome?

References

Abrahams S, Leigh PN, Harvey A, et al. Verbal fluency and executive dysfunction in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Neuropsychologia.* 2000;38:734–747.

Adkins AL, Frank JS, Jog MS. Fear of falling and postural control in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord.* 2003;18:496–502.

Aminoff MJ. Treatment of Parkinson disease. *West J Med.* 1994;161:303.

Aronson KJ. Quality of life among persons with multiple sclerosis and their caregivers. *Neurology.* 1997;48:74–80.

Bakshi R. Fatigue associated with multiple sclerosis: diagnosis, impact, and management. *Mul Scler.* 2003;9:219–227.

Bassile CC. Guillain-Barré syndrome and exercise guidelines. *Neurol Rep.* 1996;20:31–36.

Bensman A. Strenuous exercise may impair muscle function in Guillain-Barré patients. *JAMA.* 1970;214:468–469.

Berg D, Supprian T, Thome J, et al. Lesion patterns in patients with multiple sclerosis and depression. *Mult Scler.* 2000;6:256–262.

Bertelson M, Broberg S, Madsen E. Outcome of physiotherapy as part of a multidisciplinary rehabilitation in an unselected polio population with one-year follow-up: an uncontrolled study. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41:85–87.

Bloem BR, Hausdorf JM, Visser JE, Giladi N. Falls and freezing of gait in Parkinson's disease: a review of two interconnected and episodic phenomenon. *Mov Disord.* 2004;19:871–874.

Bond JM, Morris ME. Goal-directed secondary motor tasks: their effects on gait in subjects with Parkinson's disease. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81:110–116.

Bridgewater KJ, Sharpe MH. Trunk muscle performance in early Parkinson's disease. *Phys Ther.* 1998;78:566–576.

Bronstein AM, Hood JD, Gresty MA, Panagi C. Visual control of balance in cerebellar and parkinsonian syndromes. *Brain.* 1990;113:767–779.

Brooks BR, Miller RG, Swash M, et al. El Escorial revisited: revised criteria for the diagnosis of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Amyotroph Lateral Scler Other Motor Neuron Disord.* 2000;1:293–299.

Cakit BD, Nacir B, Gene H, et al. Cycling progressive resistance training for people with multiple sclerosis: a randomized controlled study. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;89:446–457.

Canning CG, Alison JA, Allen NE, Groeller H. Parkinson's disease: an investigation of exercise capacity, respiratory function, and gait. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1997;78:199–207.

Cup EH, Pieterse AJ, Ten Broed-Pastoor JM, et al. Exercise therapy and other types of physical therapy for patients with neuromuscular diseases: a systematic review. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2007;88:1452–1464.

Dal Bello-Haas V, Florence JM, Kloos AD, et al. A randomized controlled trial of resistance exercise in individuals with ALS. *Neurology.* 2007;68:2003–2007.

Dal Bello-Haas V. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. In: O'Sullivan SS, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2014:769–806.

Dalgas U, Stenager E, Jakobsen J, et al. Fatigue, mood, and quality of life improve in MS patients after progressive resistance training. *Mult Scler.* 2010;16:480–490.

de Goede CJ, Keus SH, Kwakkel G, Wagenaar R. The effects of physical therapy in Parkinson's disease: a research synthesis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82:509–515.

Dean E, Frownfelter D. Individuals with chronic secondary cardiovascular and pulmonary dysfunction. In: Frownfelter D, Dean E, eds. *Cardiovascular and pulmonary physical therapy: evidence to practice.* 5 ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:522–542.

Farbu E, Gilhus NE, Barnes MP, et al. EFNS guideline on diagnosis and management of postpolio syndrome: report of an EFNS task force. *Eur J Neurol.* 2006;13:795–801.

Farley BG, Fox CM, Ramig LO, McFarland DH. Intensive amplitude-specific therapeutic approaches for Parkinson's disease: toward a neuroplasticity-principled rehabilitation model. *Top Geriatr Rehabil.* 2008;24:99–114.

Faulkner JA, Brooks SV, Opiteck JA. Injury to skeletal muscle fibers during contractions: conditions of occurrence and prevention. *Phys Ther.* 1993;73:911–921.

Fertl E, Doppelbauer A, Auff E. Physical activity and sports in patients suffering from

Parkinson's disease in comparison with health seniors. *J Neural Transm Park Dis Dement Sec.* 1993;5:157–161.
Fillyaw M, Badger G, Goodwin G, et al. The effects of long-term non-fatiguing resistance exercise in subjects with post-polio syndrome. *Orthopedics.* 1991;14:1253–1256.
Fisher TB, Stevens JE. Rehabilitation of a marathon runner with Guillain-Barré syndrome. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2008;32:203–209.
Fitzgerald MJT, Folan-Curran J. *Clinical neuroanatomy and related neuroscience.* ed 4 Philadelphia: Saunders; 2002.
Frazzitta G, Maestri R, Uccellini D, Bertoti G, Abelli P. Rehabilitation treatment of gait in patients with Parkinson's disease with freezing: a comparison between two physical therapy protocols using visual and auditory cues with and without treadmill training. *Mov Disord.* 2009;24:1139–1143.
Friedman JH, Friedman H. Fatigue in Parkinson's disease: a nine-year follow-up. *Mov Disord.* 2001;16:1120–1122.
Fuller KS, Winkler PS. Degenerative diseases of the central nervous system. In: Goodman CC, Fuller KS, eds. *Pathology: implications for the physical therapist.* 3 ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:1402–1448.
Garber CE, Friedman JH. Effects of fatigue on physical activity and function in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Neurology.* 2003;60:1119–1124.
Gawne AC, Ozcan E, Halstead L. Pain syndromes in 40 consecutive post-polio patients: a guide to evaluation and treatment. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1993;74:1263–1264.
Giordano MT, Ferrero P, Grifoni S, et al. Dementia and cognitive impairment in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: a review. *Neurol Sci.* 2011;32:9–16.
Glatt S. *Anticipatory and feedback postural responses in perturbation in Parkinson disease.* Phoenix: Society for Neuroscience Abstract; 1989.
Goetz CG, Poewe W, Rascol O, et al. Movement Disorder Society Task Force report of the Hoehn and Yahr staging scale: status and recommendations. *Mov Disord.* 2004;19:1020–1028.
Gonzalez H, Olsson T, Borg K. Management of postpolio syndrome. *Lancet Neurol.* 2010;9:634–642.
Gupta A, Taly AB, Srivastava A, Murali T. Guillain-Barré syndrome: rehabilitation outcome, residual deficits, and requirement of lower-limb orthosis for locomotion at 1-year follow up. *Dis Rehabil.* 2010;32:1897–1902.
Halbritter T. Management of a patient with post-polio syndrome. *J Am Acad Nurse Pract.* 2001;13:555–559.
Hallum A, Allen DD. Neuromuscular diseases. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation.* ed 6 St. Louis: Elsevier; 2013:521–570.
Hassan-Smith G, Douglas MR. Epidemiology and diagnosis of multiple sclerosis. *Br J Hosp Med (Lond).* 2011;72:M146–M151.
Herlofson K, Larsen JP. The influence of fatigue on health-related quality of life in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Acta Neurol Scand.* 2003;107:1–6.
Hiraga A, Mori M, Ogawara K, Hattori T, Kuwabara S. Differences in patterns of progression in demyelinating and axonal Guillain-Barré Syndromes. *Neurology.* 2003;61:471–474.
Hirtz D, Thurman D, Gwinn-Hardy K, Mohamed M, Chaudhuri A, Zalutsky R. How common are the "common" neurologic disorders? *Neurology.* 2007;68:326–327.
Hoehn MM, Yahr MD. Parkinsonism: onset, progression, and mortality. *Neurology.* 1967;17:427.
Horak FB, Frank J, Nutt J. Effects of dopamine on postural control in parkinsonian subjects: scaling, set, tone. *J Neurophysiol.* 1996;75:2380–2396.
Horak FB, Dimitrova D, Nutt JG. Direction-specific postural instability in subjects with Parkinson's disease. *Exp Neurol.* 2005;193:504–521.
Hughes RA, Cornblath DR. Guillian-Barré syndrome. *Lancet.* 2005;366:1653–1666.
Hughes RA, Raphael JC, Swan AV, van Doorn PA. Intravenous immunoglobulin for Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2006;1: CD002063.
Hughes RA, Swan AV, Raphael JC, Annane D, van Koningsveld R, van Doorn PA. Immunotherapy for Guillain-Barré syndrome: a systematic review. *Brain.* 2007;130:2245–2257.
Ilzecka J, Stelmasiak Z. Creatine kinase activity in ALS patients. *Neurol Sci.* 2003;24:286–287.
Jubelt B, Agre JC. Characteristics and management of postpolio syndrome. *JAMA.*

2000;284:412–414.
Kahn F, Amatya B. Rehabilitation interventions in patients with acute demyelinating inflammatory polyneuropathy: a systematic review. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2012;48:507–522.
Kelly C, DiBello TV. Orthotic assessment for individuals with postpolio syndrome: a classification system. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2007;19:109–113.
Kelly VE, Samii A, Slimp JC, Price R, Goodkin R, Shumway-Cook A. Gait changes in response to subthalamic nucleus stimulation in people with Parkinson disease: a case series report. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30:184–194.
Kerr GK, Worringham DJ, Cole MH, Lacherez PF, Wood JM, Silburn PA. Predictors of future falls in Parkinson disease. *Neurol.* 2010;75:116–124.
Klein MG, Whyte J, Esquenazi A, et al. A comparison of the effects of exercise and lifestyle modification on the resolution of overuse symptoms of the shoulder in polio survivors: a preliminary study. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83:708–713.
Konczak J, Corcos DM, Horak F, et al. Proprioception and motor control in Parkinson's disease. *J Mot Beh.* 2009;41:543–552.
Langer-Gould A, Brara SM, Beaber BE, Zhang JL. Incidence of multiple sclerosis in multiple racial and ethnic groups. *Neurology.* 2013;80:1734–1739.
Lohnes CA, Earhart GM. Effect of subthalamic deep brain stimulation on turning kinematics and related saccadic eye movement in Parkinson disease. *Exp Neurol.* 2012;236:389–394.
Lomen-Hoerth C, Murphy J, Langmore S, et al. Are amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patients cognitively normal? *Neurol.* 2003;60:1094–1097.
Mancini M, Zampieri C, Carlson-Kuhta P, et al. Anticipatory postural adjustments prior to step initiation are hypometric in untreated Parkinson's disease: an accelerometer-based approach. *Eur J Neurol.* 2009;16:1028–1034.
Melnick ME. Basal ganglia disorders. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Umphred's neurological rehabilitation.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2013:601–630.
Miller DH, Rudge P, Johnson G. Serial gadolinium-enhanced MRI in multiple sclerosis. *Brain.* 1988;111:927.
Morris ME. Movement disorders in people with Parkinson disease: a model for physical therapy. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80:578–597.
Morris ME, Iansek R. Gait disorders in Parkinson's disease: a framework for physical therapy practice. *Neurol Repo.* 1997;21:125–131.
Morris ME, Iansek R, Churchyard A. The role of physiotherapy in quantifying movement fluctuations in Parkinson's disease. *Aus J Physiotherapy.* 1998;44:105–114.
Morris ME, Huxham FE, McGinley J, Iansek R. Gait disorders and gait rehabilitation in Parkinson's disease. *Adv Neurol.* 2001;87:347–361.
Mostert S, Kesselring J. Effects of a short-term exercise training program on aerobic fitness, fatigue, health perception, and activity level of subjects with multiple sclerosis. *Mult Scler.* 2001;8:161–168.
Motl RS, Gosney JL. Effect of exercise training on quality of life in multiple sclerosis: a meta-analysis. *Mult Scler.* 2008;14:129–135.
Mulder DW, Rosenbaum RA, Layton Jr DD. Late progression of poliomyelitis or forme fruste amyotrophic lateral sclerosis? *Mayo Clin Proc.* 1972;47:756–761.
National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. *Post polio brochure.* 2012.
Nemanich ST, Duncan RP, Dibble LE, et al. Predictors of gait speeds and the relationship of gait speeds to falls in men and women with Parkinson disease. *Parkinson's Dis 141720.* 2013;doi:10.1155/2013/141720 Published June 5, 2013.
Nieuwboer A, Baker K, Willems AM, et al. The short-term effects of different cueing modalities on turn speed in people with Parkinson's disease. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2009;23:831–836.
Nui L, Ki LY, Li JM, et al. Effect of bilateral deep brain stimulation of the subthalamic nucleus on freezing of gait in Parkinson's disease. *J Int Med Res.* 2012;40:1108–1113.
O'Sullivan SB, Bezkor EW. Parkinson's disease. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation: assessment and treatment.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:807–858.
O'Sullivan SB, Schreyer RJ. Multiple sclerosis. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical rehabilitation: assessment and treatment.* 6 ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:721–768.
Olney RK, Murphy J, Forshew D, et al. The effects of executive and behavioral dysfunction on the course of ALS. *Neurology.* 2005;65:1774–1777.

Oncu J, Durmaz B, Karapolat H. Short-term effects of aerobic exercise on functional capacity, fatigue, and, quality of life in patients with post-polio syndrome. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23:155–163.
Parmenter BA, Denney DR, Lynch SG. The cognitive performance of patients with multiple sclerosis during periods of high and low fatigue. *Mult Scler.* 2003;9:111–118.
Patton SB, Metz LM, Reimer MA. Biopsychosocial correlates of lifetime major depression in a multiple sclerosis population. *Mult Scler.* 2000;6:181–185.
Peach P, Olejnik S. Effect of treatment and noncompliance on post polio sequelae. *Orthopedics.* 1991;14:1199–1203.
Perry J, Gronley JK, Lunsford T. Rocker shoe as walking aid in multiple sclerosis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1981;62:59–65.
Pitetti KH, Barrett PJ, Abbas D. Endurance exercise training in Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1993;74:761–765.
Polman CH, Reingold SC, Banwell B, et al. Diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis: 2010 revisions to the McDonald criteria. *Ann Neurol.* 2011;69:292–302.
Protas E, Stanley R, Jankovic J. Parkinson's disease. In: Durstine JL, Moore G, Painter P, Roberts S, eds. *ACSM's exercise management for persons with chronic diseases and disabilities.* 3 ed. Champaign: Human Kinetics; 2009:350–356.
Rochester L, Chastin SF, Lord S, Baker K, Burn DJ. Understanding the impact of deep brain stimulation on ambulatory activity in advanced Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol.* 2012;259:1081–1086.
Roehrs T, Karst G. Effects of an aquatics exercise program on quality of life measures for individuals with progressive multiple sclerosis. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2004;28:63–71.
Ropper AH, Wijdicks E, Truax BT. Guillain-Barré syndrome. Philadelphia: FA Davis; . *Contemporary neurology series.* 1991;vol 34.
Schapiro RT. *Managing the symptoms of multiple sclerosis.* 4 ed. New York: Demos Publications; 2003.
Schrag A, Ben-Shlomo Y, Quinn N. How common are complications of Parkinson's disease? *J Neurol.* 2002;249:419–423.
Singleton AB, Farrer MJ, Bonifati V. The genetics of Parkinson's disease: progress and therapeutic implications. *Mov Disord.* 2013;28:14–23.
Sulton LL. Meeting the challenge of Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Nursing Manage.* 2002;33:25–31.
Sutton AL, ed. *Movement disorders source book.* 2 ed. Detroit: Omnigraphics; 2009.
Tiffreau V, Rapin A, Serafi R, et al. Post-polio syndrome and rehabilitation. *Ann Phys Med Rehabil Med.* 2010;53:42–50.
Trojan DA, Cashman NR. Post-poliomyelitis syndrome. *Muscle Nerve.* 2005;31:6–19.
Trojan DA, Finch L. Management of post-polio syndrome. *NeuroRehabilitation.* 1997;8:93–105.
Trojan DA, Arnold DL, Shapiro S, et al. Fatigue in post-poliomyelitis syndrome: association with disease-related, behavioral, and psychosocial factors. *PM & R.* 2009;1:442–449.
Van der Werf SP, Evers A, Jongen PJH, Bleijenberg G. The role of helplessness as mediator between neurological disability, emotional instability, experienced fatigue and depression in patients with multiple sclerosis. *Mult Scler.* 2003;9:89–94.
Van Doorn PA, Ruts L, Jacobs BC. Clinical features, pathogenesis, and treatment of Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Lancet Neurol.* 2008;7:939–950.
Van Koningsveld R, Steyerberg EW, Hughes RA, et al. A clinical prognostic scoring system for Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Lancet Neurol.* 2007;6:589–594.
Van Vaerenbergh J, Vranken R, Baro F. The influence of rotational exercises on freezing in Parkinson's disease. *Funct Neurol.* 2003;18:11–16.
Vasiliadis HM, Collet JP, Shapiro S, et al. Predictive factors and correlates for pain in postpoliomyelitis syndrome patients. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83:1109–1115.
Wiechers DO, Hubbell SL. Late changes in the motor unit after acute poliomyelitis. *Muscle Nerve.* 1981;4:524–528.
Weiner WJ, Shulman LM, Lang AE. *Parkinson's disease: a complete guide for patients and families.* Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 2001.
White AT, Wilson TE, Davis SL, Petajan JH. Effect of precooling on physical performance in multiple sclerosis. *Mult Scler.* 2000;6:176–180.
Willen C, Sunnerhagen KS, Grimby G. Dynamic water exercise in individuals with late poliomyelitis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82:66–72.

Wood BH, Bilclough JA, Bowron A, Walker RW. Incidence and prediction falls in Parkinson's disease: a prospective multidisciplinary study. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry.* 2002;72:721–725.

Woolley SC, Jonathan SK. Cognitive and behavioral impairment in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2008;19:607–617.

Yekutiel MP, Pinhasov A, Shahar G, Sroka H. A clinical trial of the re-education of movement in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Clin Rehabil.* 1991;5:207–214.

Index

Note: Page numbers followed by *b* indicate boxes, *f* indicate figures and *t* indicate tables.

B

G

Q

S

W

X

Z